J. DE RENOU

MEDICINAL DISPENSATORY

LONDON
1657

43671/C

To

Thomas Cochrane

from his friend

Robt S. Edwards.

From a bookstall in Birmingham

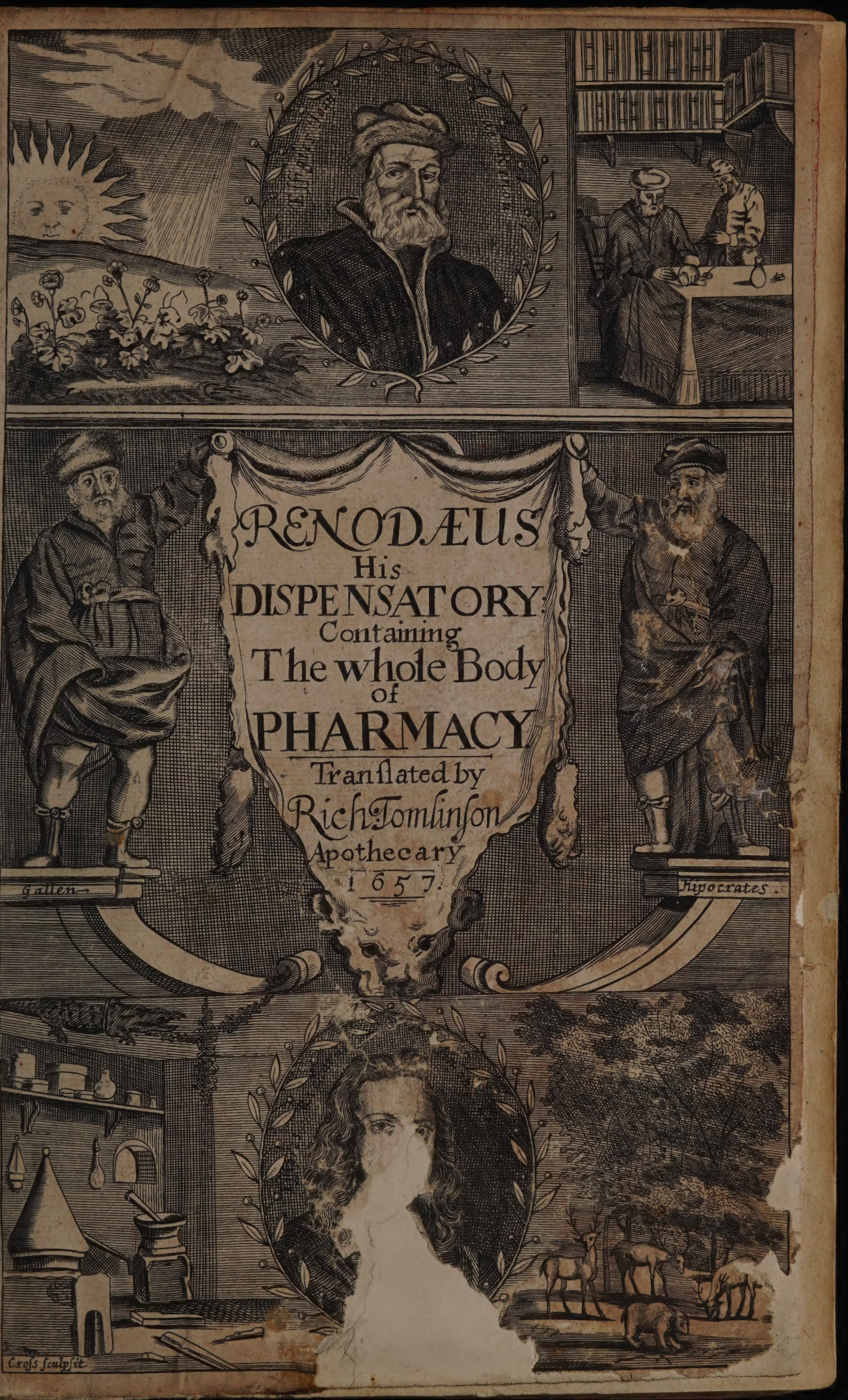
April 17. 1863.

Priory Stroude

Friday Evening.

My dear Cochrane

At a favourite "old-book stall" of mine I lighted upon this old treasure - It is, as I know well, a remarkably scarce book at all times as there is but one edition I believe: and at any rate this is of the first. The pictorial titlepage tho' damaged a little, is very seldom met with in the copies


RENODÆUS
His
DISPENSATORY:
Containing
The whole Body
of
PHARMACY
Translated by
Rich. Tomlinson
Apothecary
1657.
Gallen.
Hipocrates.
Cross sculpsit

A Medicinal

DISPENSATORY,

Containing

The whole Body of Physick:

DISCOVERING

The Natures, Properties, and Vertues of *Vegetables*, *Minerals*, & *Animals*:

The manner of Compounding MEDICAMENTS, and the way to administer them.

Methodically digested in

FIVE BOOKS

OF

Philosophical and Pharmaceutical

INSTITUTION

THREE BOOKS

OF

PHYSICAL MATERIALS

Galenical and Chymical.

Together with a most Perfect and Absolute

PHARMACOPOEA

OR

Apothecaries Shop.

Accommodated with three useful TABLES.

Composed by the Illustrious RENODÆUS,

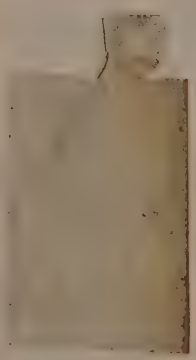
Chief Physician to the Monarch of *France*;

And now Englished and Revised,

By *Richard Tomlinson* of London, Apothecary.

LONDON:

Printed by *Ja: Streat* and *Ja: Cottrel*; and are to be sold by *Francis Tyton* at the three Daggers in Fleet-street. 1657.



WELLCOME
HISTORICAL
MEDICAL
LIBRARY

VIRIS OPTIMIS,

Arte MEDICINALI, Prudentia, necnon Rerum usu Spectatissimis, omniq; Virtutum genere Cumulatissimis :

D. D.

Edwardo Greaveo, & *Timotheo Clerko*;

IN

Medicorum Societatem

venerandam COLLEGII *Londinensis* meritò ac ritè cooptatis :

Hanc suam

METAPHRASIN, sive METABOAH'N,

D. D.

ILLUSTRISSIMI

Joannis de Renou,

Medici apud Gallos Professoris

REGII:

RICHARDUS TOMLINSONUS.

PHARMACOPOLA,

Summo Observantiæ vestræ, & Utilitatis Publicæ desiderio, Patrocinii spe exoptatissimi;

Piè, Humillimè, Submisseq;

Dicat, Dedicat, ac Amandat.

VIRIS ORNATIS,

Artis Medicinalis Prudentiâ, rerumque Literarum ob
Specimina, omnifq; Virtutum genere
Cumulatissimis :

D. D.

TO THE READER;

But

Especially to his Brethren the Apothecaries of LONDON.

SIRS, If the unspotted *innocency* of an Action (as to the rendring of a prejudice) be a sufficient *Barricado* to oppose the thundring and pell-mell *Granadoes* of impertinent Contradiction, and malevolent Censure, we question not but this harmless Essay of our *early Lucubrations* may withstand the first Lash of the *Criticks Rod*, and in some measure mitigate, if not gag or stop the rigidness of your Censures; or at least induce your Charity to connive at our *imbecillity*, by glancing through the Lattice of a diminishing *Telescope*.

The advantage and commodement of the *publick* in general, was the perfect *Achme* of this enterprise, in trimming our Author in this *Garb*, to which, if these endeavours adde but one grain, or Atome, (though scattered by the hands of weather-beaten Imperfection) we shall acknowledge it not onely the *Heroick Carac*, but also the *Laureat Apex* of our Glory.

Doubtless (Sirs) this was the fundamental *Syntax* of our thoughts, to which we determined the designation of

this *Translation*: but we presume it may meet with a greater influence upon your Acceptations, as most congruous to your *Stations*, being the professed Sons of *Apollo*, soaring in the highest sphear of Natures *Oeconomy*, inhabiting the Thurifick Groves of *Rerum Natura*, attending the sproutings of their variegated Offspring.

The benefit you may receive hereby (after some serious exagitation) we partly understand by the *glimpse* of that more than ordinary *Illustration* our formerly clouded *Genius* is now bespangled with. The *peroration*, as to reversion of that *utility* which may by *futurity* accrew, here imploreth (Sirs) both your *resentment* and *communication*.

Can any *Copy* be so gratefull to ingenious persons, than that whose *Stamp* appears in the beaten path of *Antiquity*? wherein there is no *Jurgia Mentis* to pertarr your cogitations from delabing through the Golden Chanels of Experience.

Sirs, in [illegible] you will finde the confused *Recipes*, and *linsy-woolsy-conceptions* of *Physicians* ranged into an exact method, their *Enigmatical expressions* unforked and unvailed, their *cloudy sentences* artionobolized into rayes of Light.

Ignorance beskreens the soul, here our *Author* discovers the dawnings of *knowledge*, by breaking open the hidden Caverns of *Nature*, and explaining the *secreta*, or occult qualities of her *multifarious Vegetables*.

Here the whole *Pharmaceutical Art* is denuded, and redacted to the clear intelligence of the meanest *capacity*, claiming your attentions, whil'st it affords instructions to conduct you to a clear prospect of *Via recta ad vitam longam*, promising a Medicine for every Malady, and a Balm for every Soar.

Here you may behold *Phœbus* skipping from the Bowers of *Neptune*, and by his darting through the Casements of Heaven, gracing the *cincture* of the day with his radiant *complexion*, glistering with *Robes* of silver, shooting life and spirit

ſpirit by his beams into the fruits of the Earth.

Here you may ſee our *Author* traverſing many lofty Heaven-aſpiring *Mountains*, and anon conducting you into the pleaſant *Penæan Valleys*.

Here you may ſit upon the diapred brim of the Univerſe, and accumulate Noſe-gayes of Roſes and Gilliflowers, Medicines for ſcent and ſavour, cordial and reviving.

Here you may view how this lofty Turret the *Earth* is beſpread with Daffadils and Prime-roſes, Cowſlips and Columbine; and the Amber Locks of *Ver* dallying with the Eglantine Banks of Bravery.

Here you may view the ſuperbious *Trees* preſuming to elevate their tops in the ſacred Skyes, the delicious *Bowers* of the Woods adorned with the Treaſure of *Flora's* beſpangled *Drapery*, the curled *Groves* rattling with the bloomy gales, the *verdant Leaves* flouriſhing, the *Silver ſtreams* of pleaſant Rivers gliding, the *flagrant Meadows* braving it with the riches of *Autumn*, diſplaying the pride of their beauty; the *pleaſant Umbrages* ſporting with *Zephyrus*-*Nectar*-*Blooms*, ſhining with *Titan's* tranſpiercing Darts; and the whole Garden of the Univerſe embelliſhed with curious Tapeſtry, gliſtering Ingeny, and interchangeable Jollity. In the three Books of Medicinal Materials.

Here may you ſee *Rhenodæus* plowing through the liquid *Intrals* of *Nereus*, dancing *Lovalto's* upon the azured waves, making *Amphitrite* diſplay a delicate apparition of *Paphian allurement*, diſcovering as it were the ſtately Battlements of the Mint of *Mexico*, and the Minerals of *Peru*; the nature of the *Porphyrie*, with the virtue of the *Saphyre*, the *Carbuncle* with the *Topaz*, the *Emerald* with the *Chryſolite*, the *Smaragd* with the *Margarite*. Millions of thanks to *debonaire* Fortune, that theſe Ambroſian Delicacies are diſcovered, before the *Poſtilions* of *Eolus* have fled to *Neptune's* azured Common-wealth, and our *Horizon* over-veiled with the Canopie of drouſy *Veſper* (Ignorance.)

In a word, here may you view the *enamelled Robe* of the Universe, Lady-like, spotted with its rosy-locks; whose hair doth not more adorn than profit; whose ruby cheeks are not more admired for their beauty, than for their salubrious virtues desired; whose frank, free, fragrant, and fruitfull *Breasts* do nourish her own Children sprung from her never resting womb, affording nourishment both to *Man* and *Beast*. Insomuch that we may well cry out with *Du Bartas*;

'Good Lord! how many gasping Souls have scap't
'By th'aid of Herbs, for whom the Grave hath gap't;
'Who even about to touch the Stygian Strand,
'Have yet beguil'd grim *Pluto*'s greedy hand.
'O sacred Simples, that our Life sustain,
'And when it flyes, can call it back again;
'Tis not alone your Liquor inly tane,
'That oft defends us from so many a bane;
'But even your savour, yea, your neighbourhood,
'For some diseases is exceeding good.
'O great is the powerfull Good that lyes
'In Herbs, Trees, Stones, and their true qualities:
'For nought so vile, that on the Earth doth live,
'But to the Earth some secret good doth give;
'And nought so rich, on either Rock or Shelf,
'But, if unknown, lyes useless to it self.
'Therefore who thus doth make his Secrets known,
'Doth profit others, but not hurt his own.

Sirs, Communication is the *primo-genito* of Goodness; and why should so singular a benefit longer lye hid? Doth not the immense *Excellency* of *Eternity* delight himself in expanding the beams of his *Goodness*? and why should the younger Sister, the Sun-burned beauty of *Knowledge*, and *Science Sublunar*, be encloystered within the obscure verge of a forreign *Language*, barbarous, and almost inexplicable

Idiome?

Idiome? Undoubtedly (Brethren) Heaven will follow it with a correſpondency of Bleſſings.

We deſire not (Sirs) to degrade, or go about to darken the ſplendour, or obſtruct the luſter of the Oriency of that never fading *Crown* due to the Seraphick Founts of Learning; but to exclaim (and not without cauſe) againſt the *Saturnine tyrannie* of ſuch, whoſe endeavours are to monopolize all *Arts* and *Sciences* in an uncouth *Magazine*, and to inhance them, as by Letter-Patent, locking them up, with the feculent *bolts* of Self-exaltation, beyond the uſual extenſion of vulgar Capacities, not allowing them the priviledge to *peep within the veil.*

How many thouſands of poor Wretches that are arreſted by the virulent malignity of a diſtemper, and by its creeping Gangrena, prepoſterouſly hurried into the *boats* of *Charon*; whereas a ſmall matter, and it may be, a Plant ſprouting at their own doors, might diſſipate its vehemency at its firſt onſet, if throughly underſtood, and rightly applyed.

Was it not the practice of the Heathens *Magi*, *Dæmones*, and *Sophoi*, to captive the People under the *hatches* of blindneſs? and did they not receive the juſt *Guerdon* of fallacy? Shall *Science* be a peculiar mans property? *God forbid.*

Is not *Salus Populi* the Palliſado of Republicks? and Experience *Corona Scientiarum*? It importeth you, Sirs, whom God hath called in a peculiar manner to be as it were his Vice-gerents, to operate in things about life and death, to endeavour a promotion of the former, by preparing fitly Natures Offspring for convenient and ſuitable Nutriment to ſo ſublime a ſubject; and to increaſe the latter, by making confuſed things (every where occurrent) diſtinct; and abſtruſe, obvious.

Sirs, you live in a *City*, which the Eternal Being hath bedubbed and adorned with variety of bleſſings, clarified Intellectuals, and well poliſhed Judgements; you are ſub-

servient to the refinedst Artists under the *Cope* of Heaven, crowned with never-fading-Palms, for their boundless knowledge in the *Botannick Art.* What *Plant* is there in the fertile womb of the Earth, that is not now found out, and known? What glistering and shining Stars do daily appear in your *Horizon*? Can every *age* boast of a *Gerard*, *Parkinson*, or *Johnson*? what an incomparable * *Garden* have you hourly access unto, which may contend with the greatest part of the World for *Glory*, *Beauty*, and *Variety!* and shall not these Considerations alarm you? you that are called *Opiferque per Orbem*, to demonstrate your zeal to your Native Countrey, by discovering in intelligible Characters, the virtues, properties and qualities of such *Simples* as this Climate is luxuriant with; which (Sirs) would be an overflourishing *Herald* to emblazon your Escutcheons without *Star, half Moon, spot*, or *blemish*; and eternize your *names* in indelible *Stamps*, upon the pinnacle of *Fame*; and when your *Works* shall redeem sick consumed *persons* from their expected *Coffins*, you shall be adored as so many *Deities* adumbrated in bodies of *flesh.*

* Cheapside.

Be ye the *Golden Heliotropes* of Gods right hand, shutting and opening at his good will and pleasure, not wrapping your *Talents* in the *Napkin* of *secresy*, but rather laying out your endeavours for the good of your *Countrey.* Then would *exotical* Plants submit to the excellency of *domestick* Simples; and *homebred remedies* be sought after for *homebred diseases.*

You cannot be ignorant what *calumnies* of late have been hurled upon both *Physicians* and *Apothecaries*; the cause of such detraction is Ignorance.

Succesit odium in Literas ab Ignorantia vulgi.

Which *Junius* well perceived. And can these men judge of a *Scholars* worth and pains, that are not acquainted with study-labours? That long since unforked *dilemma*

of

of *Pliny* hath often been revived, and to this day foſtered; which is thus ſtated; "Every Diſeaſe is either curable or "incurable; a man either recovers of it, or is killed by it; "both wayes Phyſick is to be rejected; if it be deadly, it "cannot be cured; if it may be helped, it requires no Phy-"ſick, Nature will expell it of it ſelf. Doubtleſs (Sirs) it concerns you to diſpell ſuch *Clouds*, ſeeing ſome have been ſo impudent to hold, that it is no *Art* at all, nor worthy the name of a *Liberal Science*, as *Pet*, and *Canouherius*, a Patrician of *Rome*, and a famous Doctor, goes about to prove by 16 Arguments; becauſe it is mercenary, as now adayes uſed, as Fidlers play for a reward; and that the Devil himſelf was the firſt Inventor of it. *Inventum eſt Medicina meum*, ſaid *Apollo*.

Neither have the *Paracelſian Order* (as ſo many *Promethei* that would fetch Fire from Heaven) the leaſt ſhare in theſe Contumelacies: how are *Galen* and *Hippocrates* (who were the firſt that ever writ of Phyſick to any purpoſe) cenſured by them, for immethodical and obſcure, terming their Medicines *obſolete*, and their Precepts *confuſed*, and for the moſt part *rejected* by them, calling them *Mountebanks*, *Empericks*, *Impoſtors*, *Infants*, *Idiots*, *Sophiſters*, and ſuch like, not worthy the name of *Phyſicians*, who were not verſed in the knowledge of ſuch Remedies as they had, boaſting that *he* himſelf could make a man live 160 years by his *Alexipharmacums*, *Panacea's*, *Mumia's*, *Unguentum Armarium*, and ſuch Magnetical Cures; *Lampas vitæ & mortis*, *Balneum Dianæ*, *Balſamum*, *Electrum*, *Magico-Phyſicum*, *Amulets*, *Martiala*. What will not *he* (who ſtiles himſelf *Theophraſtus*, *Hariolum*, *Bombaſtum*, *Hohanhein*) and his Diſciples effect? He proclaims himſelf to be *Primus Medicorum*, and did more famous Cures than all Phyſicians in *Europe*, vapouring that a *drop* of his Preparations ſhould go further than an *ounce* of theirs.

How is *Galen* taxed by *Cardan* (without a due conſi-

deration

deration of his worth) for presuming out of his Ambition (as he terms it) to correct *Theriacum Andromachi*? and why there must be just so many Simples in Mithridate; and why such and such a quantity. How are the Receipts of *Myrepsius, Mesue, Celsus, Scribanius, Actuarius*, and others, for the most part now condemned and neglected? Every private man must have his own Compositions and Magisterials, as if he scorned Antiquity; each fellow must correct and alter, to shew his skill, and maintain his own Paradox, be it what it will, and in the mean time the Patients must pay for their new Experiments.

But we will not urge these cavilling Arguments any further, we hope (Sirs) you understand the frothiness of such Positions, and that you will be ready to vindicate it from such Aspersions, and acknowledge it to be a noble and divine Science; insomuch that *Apollo, Esculapius*, and the first Founders of it, *merito pro diis habiti*, were worthily accounted Gods by succeeding ages.

Are we not enjoyned to honour the *Physician* for necessity sake? 'The knowledge of the Physician lifteth 'up his head, and in the sight of great men he shall be 'admired; the Lord hath created Medicines of the earth, 'and he that is wise will not abhor them.

Ecclesiasticus 38. 3.

Let such prattle what they will, mixed Diseases must have mixed Remedies. It is a most noble invention, saith *Quercitan*, found out and brought into Physick with great judgement, counsel, wisdome and discretion, so that the greatness of the Composition bespeaks the elegancy of the Medicine. For *Brassavola* and *Cardan* maintain, *Nullum Medicamentum simplex esse sine noxa*: Therefore in every Composition such Simples are mixed as have affinity to the part affected, some to qualify, the rest to roborate, some one part, some another. It's true of old, Physicians were compelled in the Infancy of this Art, to make use of ordinary Simples; but now necessity compells us to make

Burton's Anatomy of Melancholy.

use

use of new Remedies, and to make Compounds of Simples; as well to correct their nocumental qualities, if cold, dry, hot, thick, thin, insipid, noysome to smell, to make them savoury to the palate, pleasant to the gust; as also to preserve them for continuance, by admixtion of Sugar and Honey, to make them last months and years for many future uses.

Truly (Sirs) 'tis a general fault (as *Severinus* the Dane complained) in Physick. 'Unhappy men, we spend our 'dayes in unprofitable questions and disputations, intri-'cate subtilties, *de Lana Caprina*, about Moon-shine in the 'water, leaving in the mean time the chiefest of Natures 'Secrets untouched, wherein the best Medicines for all 'manner of diseases are to be found, and do not onely ne-'glect them our selves, but hinder, condemn, forbid, and 'scoff at others that are willing to enquire after them. Yet I presume few of you but are affected with a passio-nate speech, a well penn'd and elegant Poem, or some pleasant and bewitching discourse. We presume (Brethren) that is an extraordinary delight for you to study, and to swallow down the Ambrosian sweetness of *Natures Arca-na*, let the World taste of the fruits of your labours; fear not the gurmundizing jaws of *Zoilus*, that with the Ma-stives of *Cyrum*, bark against the Moon. What an infinite number of Books offer themselves in all subjects, Arts and Sciences, even to allure your minds to seek complacency in their contemplation? in *Arithmetick*, *Geometry*, *Per-spective*, *Astronomy*, *Optick*, *Architecture*, *Sculpture*, *Picture*; in *Musick*, *Metaphysick*, *Natural* and *Moral Philosophy*, *Philology*, in Mechanicks, and their Mysteries; *Military mat-ters*, *Navigation*, riding of *Horses*, Fencing, Gardning, Hunting, Fishing, Fowling; in Policy, Heraldry, Genealogy, Chronology. What vast Tomes are extant in Law, Physick, and Divinity, for profit, pleasure, speculation, and practice?

Burton's Melancholy.

Burton's Melancholy.

Which of you will not be ravished to reade the de-

ſcription of that *Geometrical Tower* of *Garzenda* at *Bologn*? to ſee the *Steeple* and *Clock* at *Strasburgh*, and will not thence admire the effects of *Art*? Or that Engine ſo much talked of by *Archimedes*, to remove the Earth it ſelf, if he had but a place to faſten his Inſtrument in.

Loco citato. What greater pleaſure, Sirs, can there be to ingenuous perſons, than to view thoſe elaborate Maps of *Ortelius*, *Mercator*, *Hondius*, *&c.* to peruſe *Bellonius* his Obſervations, *Gillius* his Surveys, *Harvey's* Circulation of the Blood, *America* ſet out and cut in Pictures by *Fratres-A-Bry*; to ſee a well cut *Herbal*, Herbs, Trees, Flowers, Plants, all Vegetables, expreſſed in their proper colours to the life; as that of *Matthiolus* upon *Dioſcorides*, *Delacampius*, *Lobel*, *Bauhinus*, and that voluminous Herbal of *Beſler*, where every Plant is deſcribed to his own bigneſs; to ſee all Creatures deciphered by the ſame art, with an exact deſcription of their names, natures, virtues, and qualities, as hath been accurately perform'd by *Elian*, *Geſner*, *&c.* and truly the like pleaſure there is in all other ſtudies to ſuch as are addicted to them.

Who can reade over the *Elogiums* of other mens praiſes of certain *Herbs*, and not be amazed at their occult qua-

Plin. l. 25. c. 22. l. 26. c. 13. L. 24. c. 17. lities? As *Nepenthe*, in expelling ſadneſs; *Hippuriu*, in ſtenching blood; *Nictegretum*, or *Nyctilops*, that ſhines like a Lamp in the night, and above all other Creatures, ſcareth the *Geeſe*. *Collicia* turns water into ice; *Hemlock* meat to Storks, but poyſon to Men; *Flabia*, if cut, ſends forth warm blood.

Du Bartas Summary. The Herb *Achimedis*, if it be applyed to any thing locked or bolted, it will preſently open it. Who cannot but ſtand amazed at the Herb *Sentida*, growing in *India*, which if any come near unto it, or touch it, or throw any thing upon it, it preſently withers, (*Purchas Pilgrim. lib. 5. c. 12.*)

Which of you can give a reaſon of the diverſity of Meteors, that it ſhould rain Stones, Frogs, Mice, and Rats?

Who

VVho would not but examine the truth of Astronomers reasons, whether the Stars be of that bigness and distance as they relate, 29000 Myriads, as *Galilee* discovers by his glasses, and some Rabbies stifly maintain? VVho would not but know whether the least visible Star in the eighth *Sphere*, be 18 times bigger than the Earth, and 14000 semidiameters distant from it? Burton's Mel. Loco citato.

Is it not worth the inquiry (Sirs) whether the Sun be 140 times bigger than the Earth, as *Tycho* would have it, and the Moon to be lesser than any Star? For he makes *Mercury* 19 times lesser than the Earth, and the Moon lesser than he 42 times? VVho would not but know how the Stars move in the Heavens? Doth one Sphear cut another? Or are there no solid Orbs? Are not the Planets now higher, then lower? *Mars* sometime lower than the Sun, and anon in *Jupiter*'s Sphear? Are the Heavens not impenetrable, as some maintain? Or do they differ from the Air we live in? Swan's *Speculum Mundi.*

Are they living Creatures, as some of late do maintain, and endowed with sense and reason, as others would have them? Are the Stars of such a nature and substance that they should stand in need of sustentation, as some judge? Or can they give light no otherwise than as a lamp replenished with Oil? VVhich is not altogether unconsonant to reason, for the Heavens are subject to change and alteration.

VVhich of you that would not dive into that main paradox of the Earths Motion? For if the Earth being the center of the VVorld, stand still, and the Heavens move, by what power is the Heavens carried about with such an incommprehensible celerity in 24 hours? which as * *Clavius* calculates, every point of the Firmament must needs move 176650 leagues in one 24th part of an hour. Loco citato. * Comment. 2. Ch. Spher. Io. de sac. Bosc.

VVho can determine what becomes of Cranes, Cuckoes, Swallows, Nightingales, Storks, Red-starts, that some Burtonus?

are seen onely in Summer, some in VVinter? do they sleep? or do they lye hid in the bottoms of Lakes and Rivers? or do they follow the Sun, as *Peter Martyr* believes?

VVho is not desirous to know whether Mount *Atlas*, *Athos*, *Caucasus*, *Olympus*, and *Ossa*, be so high as *Pliny* relates, above both Clouds and Meteors 1250 paces high? or as *Mazonius* calculates them, 78 miles perpendicularly high? *Loco citato.*

VVhy doth *Africa* breed so many venemous Beasts? *Ireland* none? *Athens* Owls? *Crete* none? VVhy hath *Thebes* no Martins? *Pontus* no Asses? *Ithaca* no Hares? and *Scythia* no Swine?

Why so many strange Birds found in *America* alone, as *Acosta* demands, insomuch that neither Greek, Latine, or Hebrew ever heard of them before? VVhy are the *Spaniards* white? and yet the Inhabitants of *Caput bonæ Spei* black? and both alike distant from the Equator.

VVe would also traverse the Thickets of the VVoods, and finde out where the Phœnix builds her nest, and where the Unicorn lodges, or whether there be any such Creatures.

VVe would also post to *Lebanus*, to see whether there be any Cedars yet growing of *Salomon*'s planting, as some maintain; and also enquire of the Indians, whether their Territories bear any such a Tree as is called *Arbor-de-Rais*, which is by some averred to be the Tree of *Adam*'s transgression, yielding many boughs, which put forth certain threads of a golden colour, which growing downwards to the Earth, there take root again.

VVe would also dive into the bowels of the Earth, and there see the Generation of Minerals, Fossiles and Metals; and would also know, whether the Mountains of *Jamaica* afford more Metal than the Valleys of *Peru*. But whether doth the clue of our thoughts leade us? VVe have too long roved in the depths of *Nocturnus*, we profess our selves not to be able to fathom with the Plummet of our Juvenility, these profundities; we leave the determination of these things to stronger VVits, that have better leisure

leisure to wade into such Phylosophical mysteries; neither do they tend much to our present purpose.

Therefore (Sirs) we will not detain you too long in the Portal of the Rows of our own cogitations, but enode the knot, and throw open the gates; onely tender you a preparatory advertisement of such specifications, whose precognition must be absolutely requisite to your satisfactory Lecture.

And first, we crave a due and equitable consideration of our defects and impediments, to the refraction and lopping off the rigour of your censures; and to ruminate with an unprejudicial ratiocination upon that known Canon, Μομφὴν τῶν ἔργων ῥᾴδιον εὑρεῖν, That one may sooner finde a fault, than mend it.

We confess our selves to have been more than ordinarily conversant in an uncouth stile, in Pleonasms, Tautologies, perturbations of senses, Printers Errata's, our Translation in many places being not *ad verbum*, but sometimes Paraphrases, rather than Interpretations. We acknowledge with the Sciolist, *Feci nec quod potui, nec quod volui*, It is neither as we would, nor as it should. *Aliquando bonus dormitat Homerus.*

The minority of our * *years* proclaims the nerves of our Intellect to be too slender and feeble to answer the curious expectation of every ones fancy, in rendring a perfect illustration of every Ambiguity couched in the whole, and our Pencil too rude and gross to express in our idiome in draughts respondent to the nicety of the subject; not onely in regard of our too frequent submission and stooping of our most serious cogitations below the dignity and due height of the Authors strain, but also the vast contrariety between our *Cranium*, and the obscurity (by reason of the wide admission of variety of Interpretations) of the stile, stuffed with many long Parenthesis, and clouded with dark Enigma's, which we presume will draw this construction from the Oracle of your Impartial Censures, that we had the visible appearance of more than one disadvantage to encounter with. If * XXIII.

If we had been cautious to have observed the rule of that known Critick; *Nonumque prematur in annum*; and taken that care that *Alexander* did in refining *Lapis Lazuli*, we should have revised this Tract, but we could not be allowed that time from the pressure of our imployments; but *quicquid in Buccam venit*, and that *volante Calamo*, being not at all affected with *fustian strains*, *rhetorical plumes*, and *intricate tropes*.

For the obscureness of our present station, backed with the tenuity of our fortunes, confining us yet to the constant *attendance* on, and *submission* to our *Profession*, subjecting us to the *observance* of an *invidious Phalanthes*, inspired with the flames of *self-plaudite*, which must needs render us *obnoxious* to many more heart-renting *distractions*, auroral *avocations*, and nocturnal *interturbations*, continually plucking us by the sleeve, and arresting us from the obtainment of any minute of retirement for *lection*; which we hope your candour, Sirs, will confess to be the *causation* of those many *Errata's*, which will appear as so many *black patches* upon the soyl of our *Physiognomie*, to the observation of the *austere* and *curious*, often meditating on the *Poets* confession;

Cum relego, scripsisse pudet, quia plurima cerno
Me quoque quæ fuerant Judice digna lini.

As also the natural sedentary condition of our life, which hath made the *wheels* of our Intellect to jar, by warbling out a *Chorus* of *confusion*, instead of *Trisagions* of *harmony*, which hath begulfed us into a *Labyrinth* of many private *Remora's*; the least whereof we presume may draw from your *unbiassed Cogitations* a venial excuse for the *injury* offered our Author, in trajecting these lines through the sieve of our Crebrosity.

Yet

Yet be it as it will, we have assayed and put our self upon the Stage, and are resolved, *velis, nolis, audacter studium imitare*, with those Elienſian Wreſtlers in *Philoſtratus*, boldly to ſhew our ſelves; arming our interiour Lineaments with this reſolve, to abide your cenſures; though we are not ignorant what *Eraſmus* ſaid, *Nihil mordacius hominum judiciis*, there's nought ſo peeviſh as mens judgements; *ſed linguas mancipiorum contemno*, and even as the barking of a Dog, do contemn the ſcurrilous obloquies of railers and detracters. And howbeit *Stultus labor eſt ineptiarum*, to be buſied in foolery is to ſmall purpoſe, yet hear *Seneca*, Better *aliud agere, quam nihil*; better do to no end, than nothing. But it may be you will inferr, it is *actum agere, Cramben bis coctum apponere*; ay but *Nihil prætermiſſum quod quovis dici poſſit*. Go then, and cenſure, criticize, and rail. *Burton.* *Lucubratio.*

We queſtion not but if our Head had been decked with the title of Honourable, Worſhipfull, Doctor in Phyſick, Maſter of Arts, &c. it had been well enough; yet for all this, we ſhall think our ſelves not a little offended, if we ſhould be debarred from admiſſion into their Libraries.

Be pleaſed to accept of this our ingenious confeſſion, and then with the greater encouragement we ſhall conclude, by craving pardon in the lines of *Medeas*.

----Illud jam voce extrema peto,
Ne, ſiqua noſter dubius effudit dolor,
Muniant in animo verba, ſed melior tibi
Memoriam ſtri ſubeat, hæc iræ data
Obliterentur----

And out of an aſſured hope and confidence thereof, we will begin with our Author.

R. TOMLINSON.

The Author's EPISTLE, by way of Preface, to the Reader.

COURTEOUS READER,

HEre thou haſt a large *Diſpenſatory*, or, if thou wilt, the *Univerſal Doctrine of the Medicinal Art*; which yet ſcarce was ever congeſted into one Work, or digeſted into an exact Method, as to make the Art perfect. This, I ſay, is the firſt-born of Curative Medicine, which I may term, The Phyſicians Right-hand, or Skilful Artificer; not onely preparing Salutiferous Antidotes, but alſo directing how they ſhould be exhibited and applyed; demonſtrating Salubrious Remedies for the curing of every Malady: To thee therefore (Courteous Reader) have I dedicated theſe my Labours; endeavouring to purge the whole Body of Pharmacy from the Errata's of the Ancient Græcians; and alſo, from the obſcurity of the Idiome of many other Barbarous Nations, that have been famous for Phyſicians; and have compiled the abſtract of all into this Method, which I hope I may term, The moſt abſolute of any yet extant.

Though I am not ignorant, that there are many Books extant in Latine, that handle the Pharmaceutical Art, which Fernelius hath augmented by many Precepts, Sylvius illuſtrated with ſeveral Preparations, Rondeletius with Compoſitions, and Wekerus with Confections; yet (without oſtentation do I ſpeak it) none but may modeſtly be reproved; each deſcribing many Compound Medicaments, whoſe Simples they knew not, neither could they render a Reaſon or Method of the Compoſition. I have not here preſcribed any thing, but that both the aforeſaid Scruples may be ſatisfied; neither can any doubt (how ignorant ſoever he be) how to ſelect, prepare, and mingle his Simples, becauſe theſe things are clearly enough demonſtrated and explained, not onely from my own particular knowledge, but from the famouſeſt Phyſicians in Paris (of which I acknowledge my ſelf the leaſt) which may contend with the greateſt part of Europe, for the ableſt Doctors in Phyſick: for as many Phyſicians as there be, ſo many Oracles, ſo many Apollo's, ſo many Princes in Phyſick, which have made famous the Art, both by Teaching and Curing; ſparing no Pains nor Coſt to adorn Lutetia with merited Renown: for ſcarce have our Colleagues any ſpare hours alotted from their quotidian Avocations to the viſiting of the Sick.

Yet notwithſtanding the preſſure of my Imployments in particular, and defatigable diuturnal Labours, I have endeavoured to illuſtrate the Pharmaceutical Art, in this Method thou now ſeeſt it in.

The whole Work is divided into two Parts: the firſt contains Pharmaceutical Inſtitutions, or the Theorical part of Pharmacy; the latter, An

Apothecaries Shop, or Practical part of Physick: Between these two, are contained three Books of Medicinal Materials, which are, as it were, subservient to them both; demonstrating such matter as the Institutions require, and explaining such as is expedient to be used in the Shop; which I have so placed, that thereby every Simple which ingredes the Compositions, may be dignoted in its nature and quality.

Now in the first Book of the Institutions, is handled the manner of Electing Medicaments; in the second, the preparation; in the third, the Composition; in the fourth, the Rules to be observed in Compounding them; and in the fifth, the Forms of Remedies are prescribed. To these are subjoyned other three Books, treating of Plants, Minerals, and Animals: and lastly, The Shop, or Antidotary, divided into Two Parts; the first Treating of Medicines to be inwardly taken; the latter, of such as are to be outwardly applyed: which are again divided into three Books; and subdivided into several Sections, by reason of the variety of the matter handled, and for the more elegant disposing of the Method prescribed. All which (Good Reader) I desire thee kindely to accept of; and what I have delivered, to take in good part. Farewel.

Richard

RICHARD JACKSON

Master of Arts, and Student in Philosophy,

TO

The Gentlemen of England.

GENTLEMEN,

HEalth is the onely Diamond of Price and Dignity, which deserves to be pursued with all manner of Expence, whether of Time or Money, Pain or Labour, Sweat or Blood; and purchased at any peril; rather hazarding Life, then not to have it: for without it, all lawful sensualities, together with Science and Vertue, do vanish or cloy, (*Morborum fastidiis ipsum animum in perpetuam sui contemplationem mancipantibus.*) And life it self becometh so noysome and injurious, that the most notable and ingenious Cynick, answered the salutation of *Spensippus*, crying from his Litter (wherein he was carried, because of his Dropsie and Disease, *All hail to thee* Diogenes; not without some scorn or exprobation, *viz. And to thee, no Health at all, who from weakness of minde, or cowardise of heart, endurest such a wretched condition, as willingly to continue languishing in the want of it.* Health then being of all mortal Excellencies most desirable; and, according to that Philosophical Axiome (*Plut.* ὑγίεια μὲν τίμιον ἀλλ' ἐυμπαίσατον) Health is Precious and desirable, and easily alterable. Those men are highly to be praised, who have endeavored any thing for its Recovery or Preservation: for though some wandering Empiricks, and Quacksalving Mountebanks, have impaired the Repu-

tation of the Physical Profession, as appears in the History of *Alexander* the son of *Podalirius*, who (to one complaining of his stomach) προσάξαι ἐκέλευσε μηλόμυος ὖειον πόδα, μὴ μαλάχης ἐσκευασμένον ἐδέσει, ὅπως μὴ ἐχρησμῴδηται,

Μάλβακα χοιρείων ἱερὴ μυμένευε Σιπύδκῳ.

Willing to prescribe him a Sows foot; he so expressed it, as if the choyce had been Mysterious and Divine: whereas the imitation of him in this our latter Age, in singling out such Drugs, as the Foot of a Tortoise, the Dung of an Elephant, the Liver of a Mole, so strange and monstrous Trash, seemeth rather to savour of Chaldean Charms, or Magical Spells, then of any curious Art, or solid Science: It being absolute folly, according to the purest Philosophy, both Greek and Latine, to perswade a man to his Profit, by wayes and means never understood or apprehended,

(*Terrigenam Herbigradam, Domiportam sanguine castam.*)

Yet there is no question, but that amongst so many of Natures Works, there are some things proper for the preservation of our health, as salt-water serveth the Stork, or the herb Dittany the wounded Goat, had we but skill to cull out and apply them: and if the Sow, the Goat, and the Tortoise, by indivinable instinct, be directed unto them; why should we, or how can we think or imagine, but that there is an Art of it, which advanced *Asclepius* unto divine honours? And though its incertainty hath abated of its estimation, arising not onely from the diversity of conceptions, in such as *Hierophilus*, *Asclepiades*, and *Erasistratus*, *Diocles*, *Strato*, and *Hippocrates*; but also the consideration of so many external circumstances, as of the nature of the place, the condition of the Air, the quality of the Weather, the situation of the Planets, and their efficacious influence upon the inferiour Bodies, which seem ne-

neceſſary to direct their deſign aright, in an aſſured aim at the end hoped for, or intended: and moſt eſpecially, *Ex multitudine artificum & imperitia pleriſq; ad ea quæ promittunt rudibus, & vanum modo nomen (quo commendentur lucri & laudis avidi quærentibus)* yet hath *Renodæus* ſo reſtored it in the Parmaceutical part, (moſt eſſential to the Profeſſion, both by his Theoretical Inſtitutions, and Practical Directions, proper and neceſſary for every Apothecary) that he ſeemeth fully to have anſwered *Apollo*'s expectation, in ſuch a ſtudious Recovery of thoſe collapſed Arts, as ſhall render every Apothecary inexcuſable, if he erre in compoſing his Drugs; and wilfully obſtinate, if without this Book, to the detriment of others, he ſhall preſume to exerciſe his own Art, in ſingling out, preparing or mingling of thoſe ſimples which he muſt make uſe of: It being, by the Renowned Author's Lucubrations, a Book no leſs uſeful for him, then is *Horace* or *Homer* for a Pædant, or a Breviary for a Romiſh Prieſt. In which ſenſe, it recommendeth it ſelf to the ſerious peruſal of every Gentleman, who is not ſottiſh or infrunite: both to ſecure his own health, and to ſee into the oſtentatious ſhifts of many ſelf-over-weening Novelliſts; who, with a Doctorly arrogance, preſume to direct their notes unto their Apothecaries, which they cannot well or ſafely perform, without the aſſiſtance of a Pocket-Breviate, or the pretty Compendium of ſome ſuch Diſpenſatory; which inſinuateth the deſerved Commendation of the Juvenile Author, in making ſuch judicious choice, and managing the Tranſlation with ſuch care, pains, and induſtry, as hath overcome the difficulty of the ſtyle, and the variety of interpretations, which the ambiguity of ſuch phraſes and ſentences doth afford; keeping himſelf (ſo far as my importunate occaſions would admit of ſerious peruſal) cloſe to the Authors ſenſe, and poliſhing the ſame with an Engliſh Elegancy, which might have induced the learned Doctor to have renounced his *Lutetian* Priviledges, for the

rich

rich Freedom of *London*, and rare Liberties of *England*: Of all which, this ingenious Translator (Mr. *Richard Tomlinson*) hath faithfully laboured to make him free Denizon; which, in all probability, will redound to the utility publick, no less then to the private interest of his own Tribe: according to the desire of

(Gentlemen)

Your cordial Friend, and spontaneous Well-wisher to the Common Good,

RICHARD JACKSON,

Master in Arts, and Student in Philosophy.

AN

An INDEX

Of the several Chapters contained in the First Part of this Work, which is divided into Five Books of Physical Institutions.

The first Book;

Wherein is handled the use, antiquity, and dignity of Pharmacy; the qualities and effects, together with the mode of electing Medicaments.

The Contents of the Chapters are as followeth.

Chap. Page.

1. *What Pharmacy is, and its use.* 1
2. *What an Apothecary is, what he ought to be: his subject, object and end.* 3
3. *Of a Medicament and Aliment, what they are, and what a medium between both.* 5
4. *Of the ancient use of Simples; and of their wonderful properties.* 6
5. *Of the matter of Medicaments, and whence it proceeds.* 8
6. *Of the faculties of Medicaments, and how many sorts there be accordingly.* 9
7. *Of the first and second faculties of Medicaments.* 11
8. *Of the third faculty, commonly called, The occult quality.* 12
9. *Of the faculty of Purging Medicaments; whence it proceeds, and how it operates.* 14
10. *Of such which besides the laxation of the belly, perform the cure of divers diseases by an occult quality.* 16
11. *Of simple Medicaments, which by a specifical property have respect to certain peculiar parts.* 18
12. *Of Amulets operating by an occult vertue.* 20
13. *Of the operation of Poysons, by the manifestation of their obscure qualities.* 24
14. *Of the faculties of such as are comprehended under a general consideration, being nominated from their effects.* 28
15. *A general disquisition, demonstrating how to elect Catharticks.* 32
16. *How or when this election may be taken.* 33
17. *How this election may be made, from those things that have been premised.* 34
18. *A particular disquisition of Tastes.* 36
19. *What manner of election may be made by Tastes.* 39
20. *At what time Medicaments are to be gathered, how long their vertue lasts, and when they have it most valid.* 40
21. *How Medicaments may be elected, from the nature of the soyl where they grow.* 43
22. *What election may be made, from their faculties.* 45

The

The second Book:

In which is handled the Preparation of Medicaments.

Chap. Page.

1. *Whether some preparation be not required to all Medicaments, as well as Aliment.*
2. *Of the variety (as to the genus of difference) of preparations.* 50
3. *Of the manner of washing Medicaments.* 52
4. *Of the purgation or cleansing of them.* 55
5. *Of Infusion.* 56
6. *Of Humectation, with its differences.* 57
7. *Of Nutrition.* 58
8. *Of Maceration, Infection, and Digestion.* 59
9. *Of trituration or pulveration.* 60
10. *Of the several kinds of trituration.* 62
11. *Of coction.* 64
12. *Of assation and fixion.* 66
13. *Of the manner of burning Medicaments.* 67
14. *Of extinction.* 70
15. *Of calefaction, insolation, and refrigeration.* 71
16. *Of putrifaction and fermentation* 72
17. *Of dissolution.* 73
18. *Of liquation.* 74
19. *Of mollition and duration.* 75
20. *Of siccation.* 76
21. *Of expression.* 77
22. *Of extraction.* 78
23. *Of Chymical extracts.* 79
24. *Of cribration.* 81
25. *Of colation and filtration.* 82
26. *Of spumation.* 83
27. *Of clarification.* 84
28. *Of aromatization.* 85
29. *Of colouration.* 86
30. *Of conditure, salniture, and farture.* 87
31. *Of Distillation.* 88
32. *Of Distillation by descent.* 90

The third Book:

Of the general composition of Medicaments.

Sect. 1.

Of Internal Medicaments.

Chap. Page.

1. *Why Medicaments are compounded.* 94
2. *Of Syrups in general.* 97
3. *Of Propomates.* 99
4. *Of Syrups mixed with honey.* 101
5. *Of Juyces mixed with honey.* 102
6. *Of Sapes.* 103
7. *Of Conserves.* 104
8. *Of Condites in general.* 106
9. *Of Powders.* 107
10. *Of Eclegms in general.* 108
11. *Of Electuaries in general.* 109
12. *Of Hiera.* 111
13. *Of Opiates in general.* 112
14. *Of Pills.* 114
15. *Of Troches.* 116

Sect. 2.

Of External Medicaments.

Chap. Page.

1. *Of Oyls.* 118
2. *Of Unguents.* 121
3. *Of Medicaments made of wax, or Cerates.* 123
4. *Of Plaisters.* 124
5. *Of Sparadraps.* 127

The

The fourth Book:

The rules or laws that ought to be observed in the compounding of Medicaments.

Chap. Page

1. *Who first Compounded Medicaments; and the reason of Composition.* 128
2. *Of the basis of Medicaments, and the mode of their Collocation in receipts.* 130
3. *Of the forms and end of Medicaments.* 132
4. *Of the Several weights of Medicaments, and their marks.* 134
5. *Of the measures that Physitians use.* 136
6. *Of the quantity of Medicaments to be exhibited.* 137
7. *A just proportion of Medicaments can scarce be defined: yet a little in excess or defect is not perilous.* 139
8. *Of such Medicaments as may without harm be taken in a great quantity: for whom they are Convenient, and when.* 140
9. *Of such as must be prescribed in small quantity.* 142
10. *In what quantity Simples should be mixed in Composition.* 143
11. *Of the manner how to repose Medicaments conveniently.* 145
12. *Of the Conservation and duration of Medicaments.* 147
13. *Of such as by a certain Antinomasia are preferred before others, from which their denomination is desumed.* 148
14. *Of such roots, seeds, flowers, stones, and waters, as excel others in dignity.* 150
15. *Of Succedaneous Medicaments.* 151
16. *What Medicaments are, and when they are rightly substituted.* 153
17. *Of adulterate Medicaments.* 157

The fifth Book:

The several forms of Medicaments, whose use is Excellent in preventing and profligating diseases.

Sect. I.

Of such as may be assumed at the mouth.

1. *Of some ordinary Decoctions, common by their long use.* 161
2. *A description of a dose.* 163
3. *Of a Purgative potion.* 164
4. *Of Juleps.* 166
5. *Of distilled Restoratives.* 167
6. *Of decoctions or Apozemes.* 168
7. *Of Gargarismes.* 160
8. *Of Emulsions.* 161
9. *Of Amidalates.* 163
10. *Of the Ptisane, or Hordeate, used by the Ancients.* 164
11. *Of Lohochs, or Eclegms made for present use.* 165
12. *Of Apophlegmatismes.* 166
13. *Of a purging Bolus.* 167
14. *Of Opiates.* 168
15. *Of Condites or preserves.* 169
16. *Of the regal paste.* 170
17. *Of Marchpane.* Ibid.
18. *Of Piniolates or Pignolates.* 171
19. *Of Pandalea's.* 172
20. *Of Hypoglottian Medicaments, commonly called Sublingues.* 173
21. *Of Tabels or Tabulets.* Ibid.
22. *Of Powders.* 176

Sect. 2.

1. *Of Errhines.* 178
2. *Of Pessaries.* 172

3. Of *Nadils or Penicills.* 180
4. Of *Suppositories.* 181
5. Of *Glysters.* 183

SECT. 3.

Of such as are extrinsecally to be applyed.

1. OF *Bathes.* 185
2. Of *A Semicupium or Insess.* 186
3. Of *a Vaporary.* 187
4. Of *a Hypocaust or Sudatory.* 188
5. Of *Fomentations.* 189
6. Of *Epithemes.* 190
7. Of *the manner of Lotion.* 191
8. Of *an Embroch or sprinkling.* 192
9. Of *a Liniment.* 193
10. Of *Muslidges.* 194
11. Of *Collyries.* 194
12. Of *Virgins Milk.* 197
13. Of *Alome-water.* 198
14. Of *Irontals.* Ibid.
15. Of *Cataplasms.* 200
16. Of *Empasms and Diapasms.* 201
17. Of *Sinapisms & Phœnigms.* 202
18. Of *Dropax and Piccation.* 203
19. Of *Psylothers.* 204
20. Of *Vesicatories.* 205
21. Of *Pyroticks and Cauteries.* 206
22. Of *Plaisters for the stomach, or de scuto.* 208
23. Of *Quilted Caps.* 209
24. Of *Bags.* 210
25. Of *Dentifrices* 211
26. Of *Odoraments.* 212
27. Of *perfumes and Suffumigatories.* 213

Three Books of Medicinal Materials,

Treating of such things as are requisite for Compositions made and kept in Apothecaries Shops.

The first Book:

Of Plants.

SECT. 1.

Chap. Page.
1. OF *Water.* 217
2. Of *Wine.* 219
3. Of *Vinegar.* 221
4. Of *Omphacy.* 222
5. Of *Sugar.* 223
6. Of *Honey.* 224
7. Of *Manna.* 226
8. Of *Cordial-flowers; and first of Violets.* 227
9. Of *Bugloss-flowers.* 228
10. Of *Borage-flowers.* Ibid.
11. Of *the four common Emollitives; and first of Mallows.* 229
12. Of *Brank-Ursine.* 230
13. Of *Mercury.* 231
14. Of *Pellitory of the wall.* Ibid.
15. Of *Bete and Arack.* 232
16. Of *the five Capillaries; and first of true Maiden-hair.* 233
17. Of *common Maiden-hair.* 234
18. Of *Polytrich* 235
19. Of *Ceterach.* Ibid.
20. Of *Salvia vitæ.* 236
21. Of *some other Plants that are of the second sort of Capillaries; and first of Moon-fern.* Ibid.
22. Of *Dodder.* 237
23. Of *the five opening roots; and first of Smallage.* Ibid.
24. Of *Petroseline.* 238
25. Of *Sperage.* 239
26. Of *Fennel.* Ibid.
27. Of *Butchers-Broom.* 240
28. Of *the four greater Coole-seeds.* Ibid.
29. Of *the four lesser Coole-seeds; and first of Lettice.* 241
30. Of *Purslain and its seed.* 242
31. Of *other less Cooling-seeds; and by the way, of Succeraceous Plants.*

Plants. 243
32. *Of the four hot seeds; and first of Annis.* 244
33. *Of Cummin.* 245
34. *Of Caraway.* 246
35. *Of The other four seeds which are hot in a lesser degree: and first of Ameos.* Ibid.
36. *Of Our Ladies-Rose.* 247
37. *Of Carret.* 248
38. *Of Some flowers from which most efficacious waters and Oyls are extracted; and first of Roses.* Ibid.
39. *Of Water-Lillies.* 249
40. *Of Lilly.* 250
41. *Of Saffron.* 251

Sect. 2.

Of Purgative Simples.

Chap. Page.
1. *Of Rhabarb.* 252
2. *Of Cassia.* 253
3. *Of Tamarinds.* 254
4. *Of Myrabolans.* 255
5. *Of Aloes.* 256
6. *Of Senna.* 257
7. *Of Mechoachan root.* 258
8. *Of Agarick.* Ibid.
9. *Of Polipody.* 259
10. *Of Carthamus.* 260
11. *Of Wallwort or Dwarf-Elder.* 261
12. *Of Devills-Milk or Esula.* Ibid.
13. *Of Hermodacts.* 262
14. *Of Turbith.* 263
15. *Of Scamony.* 264
16. *Of Hellebore.* 265
17. *Of Coloquintida.* 266
18. *Of Widdow-wail and Spurge-Olive, or Mezereon and Chanilæa.* 267
19. *Of Thymellæa or Spurge-flax.* 268
20. *Of Laurel.* Ibid.
21. *Of Kicinus or Palma Christi.* 269
22. *Of Soldanella.* Ibid.

Sect. 6.

Of Exotical Calefactives.

Chap. Page.
1. *Of Ginger.* 270
2. *Of Zerumbet.* 271
3. *Of Setwel.* 272
4. *Of Galanga.* Ibid.
5. *Of Acorus or Water-flag.* 273
6. *Of Calamus Aromaticus, or the Aromatical-reed.* Ibid.
7. *Of Costus.* 274
8. *Of Both Beens.* 275
9. *Of Scecachal.* 276
10. *Of Cinamon.* Ibid.
11. *Of Nutmeg, Mace, and Macer.* 278
12. *Of Pepper.* 279
13. *Of Cloves.* 280
14. *Of Cardamoms.* Ibid.
15. *Of Cubebs.* 281
16. *Of Carpobalsamum and other Balsams.* 282
17. *Of Kermes.* 283
18. *Of Squinant.* 284
19. *Of Indian-Leaves.* 285
20. *Of Seltick nard and Spicknard.* Ibid.
21. *Of Aloes-wood.* 286
22. *Of Saunders.* 287
23. *Of Sassafras.* Ibid.
24. *Of Guaiacum.* 288
25. *Of Sarsaperilla.* 289
26. *Of China-root.* Ibid.

Sect. 4.

Of Indigenous Calefactives.

1. *Of Pellitory-Spain.* 291
2. *Of Mustard.* 292
3. *Of Treacle-Mustard.* 293
4. *Of Rocket.* 294
5. *Of Netle.* 295
6. *Of Orris.* 296
7. *Of Enula-campane.* 297
8. *Of Cyperus.* Ibid.
9. *Of Angelico.* 298

10 Of Lovage 299
11 Of Seſelios or Heartwort Ibid.
12 Of Gentian 300
13 Of Tormentil 301
14 Of Pyony Ibid.
15 Of Madder 302
16 Of Reſt-Harrow Ibid.
17 Of Eringo or ſea-holly 303
18 Of Common Graſs Ibid.
19 Of Licoriſh 304
20 Of Sow-bread Ibid.
21 Of Sea-Onyon 3
22 Of Bulbus or the ſea-bulb 306
23 Of Satyrion or Dogs-ſtones Ibid.
24 Of Leeks 307
25. Of Radiſh-root. 308
26. Of Winde-flower. 309
27. Of Keiry or Wall-flowers. Ibid.
28. Of Thyme. 310
29. Of Mother of Thyme. Ibid.
30. Of Sampſuchum and Marjoram. 311
31. Of Penyroyal. 312
32. Of Polium. Ibid.
33. Of Baſil. 313
34. Of Origanum. Ibid.
35. Of Mint. 314
36. Of Calamint. 315
37. Of Wormwood. 316
38. Of Mugwort. 317
39. Of Balme. Ibid.
40. Of Horehound. 318
41. Of Betony. Ibid.
42. Of Speedwel. 319
43. Of Dittany. Ibid.
44. Of Stæchas or French Lavender. 320
45. Of Sage. 321
46. Of Clary. Ibid.
47. Of Scordium. 322
48. Of Rue. Ibid.
49. Of Gromwel. 323
50. Of Saxafrage. 324
51. Of Birthwort. Ibid.
52. Of Aſarabacca. 325
53 Of Burnet or Pimpinel. Ibid.
54. Of Germander. 326
55. Of Groundpine. Ibid.
56. Of Feaverfew. 327
57. Of St. Johns-wort. Ibid.
58. Of Peters-wort. 328
59. Of Gith or Nigella. Ibid.
60. Of Hyſſop. 329
61. Of Cranes-bill. Ibid.
62. Of Leopards bane. 330
63. Of Carduus Benedictus. 331
64. Of Cardiaca or Mother-wort. 332
65. Of Black Chamæleon Thiſtle. Ibid.
66. Of Scolymus or Artichock. 333
67. Of Valerian. Ibid.
68. Of Fumatory. 334
69. Of Eybright. 334
70. Of the leſſer Centory. 335
71. Of Rha-ponticum. Ibid.
72. Of Spignel. 336
73. Of Dill. Ibid.
74. Of Macedonian Parſly. 337
75. Of Coriander. Ibid.
76. Of Capers. 338
77. Of Honey-ſuckles or Woodbind. Ibid.
78. Of Broom. 339
79. Of Savine. Ibid.
80. Of Roſemary. 340
81. Of Agnus-Caſtus or white Willow. Ibid.
82. Of the Aſh and Aſhton keyes. 341
83. Of Miſſelto of the Oake. 342
84. Of Poplar. Ibid.

SECT. 5.

Of Refrigerative Simples.

Chap. Page.
1. OF Mandrake. 344
2. Of Nightſhade. 345
3. Of Winter-cherries. 349
4. Of Henbane. Ibid.
5. Of Poppy. 348
6. Of Semper-vinum or Houſe-leeke. 351
7. Of Dogs-tongue. 352
8. Of Plantain. Ibid.

9. Of Knotgrass. Ibid.
10. Of Comfrey. 350
11. Of Sorrel. 353
12. Of Sowre-dock. 356
13. Of Liverwort and Egrimony. Ibid.
14. Of Primrose. 357
15. Of Cabbage or Garden-Colewort. 358
16. Of Fleabane. Ibid.
17. Of Coltsfoot. 359
18. Of Hops. Ibid.
19. Of Bistort. Ibid.
20. Of Strawberries. 360
21. Of Cinquefoil. 361
22. Of Goose-grass or Cleavers. Ibid.
23. Of Scabiose. 362
24. Of the Cotton-Tree or Plant. Ibid.
25. Of Cats-foot. 363
26. Of Melilot. Ibid.
27. Of Line. 364
28. Of Fenugreek. Ibid.
29. Of Red Cicers. 365
30. Of Orabus or bitter vetch. Ibid.
31. Of Lupines. 366
32. Of Barly. Ibid.
33. Of Sumach. 367
34. Of Mirtles. Ibid.
35. Of Milfoil or Yarrow. 368
36. Of Tamarisk. 369

SECT. 6.

Of Fruits.

Chap. Page.
1. OF Apples. 570
2. Of Peares. 371
3. Of Lemons and Citrons. 372
4. Of Orenges. 373
5. Of Pomegranates. Ibid.
6. Of Quinces. 374
7. Of Medlars. 375
8. Of Sorb-Apples. Ibid.
9. Of the fruit of the Cornel Tree. 276
10. Of Prunes. Ibid.
11 Of Apricocks. 377
12. Of Peaches. 378
13. Of Cherries. Ibid.
14. Of Mulberies. 379
15. Of Wild Mulberies and Rasberries. 380
16. Of Sebestens. Ibid.
17. Of Jujubees. 381
18. Of Figs. Ibid.
19. Of Dates. 382
20. Of Olives. 383
21. Of Raysons. 385
22 Of Red-Currans. 386
23 Of Berberies. Ibid.
24. Of Filberds. 386
25. Of Pistaches. Ibid.
26. Of Almonds. 387
27. Of Wallnuts. Ibid.
28. Of Pine-Kernells. 388
29. Of Cypress-Nuts. 389
30. Of Bay-berries. 390
31. Of Juniper-berries. 391
32. Of Galls. 392

SECT. 7.

Of Gums.

Chap. Page.
1. OF Juyces or the humors of Plants. 393
2. What Gum is, and how it differs from Rosine and other Concreted humors. 394
3. Of Gum-Arabick. 395
4. Of Gum-Traganth. 396
5. Of Amoniacum. Ibid.
6. Of Gum-Lacc. 397
7. Of Dragons blood. 398
8. Of Assafœtida. 399
9. Of Sagapenum. 401
10. Of Galbanum. Ibid.
11 Of Opoponax. 402
12. Of Sarcocolla. 403
13. Of the Gum of Ivy. Ibid.

Sect.

SECT. 8.

Of Rosines.

Chap. Page.

1. What Rosine is, and its varieties. 377
2. Of Pitch. 378
3. Of Turpentine. 379
4. Of Frankincense. 381
5. Of Belzoin. Ibid.
6. Of Euphorbeum. 382
7. Of Gum Elemni. 383

SECT. 9.

Of Gummeous Rosine.

1. Of Mastich. 384
2. Of Camphyr. 385
3. Of Storax. 386
4. Of Myrrhe. 387
5. Of Bdellium. 388

SECT. 10.

Of other humors and juyces arising from Plants.

1. Of Opium. 589
2. Of Elaterium. 390
3. Of Laudanum. 391
4. Of Hypocistis. Ibid.
5. Of Tartar. 392
6. Of juyce of Liccoriſh. Ibid.
7. Of Wax. 393
8. Of Certain other juyces more fitly to be described in another place. 394

The second Book:

Of Mineralls.

The Preface. 395
1. Of Lemnian-Earth. 396
2. Of Bole-Armeniack. Ibid.
3. Of some other Earths less in use. 397
4. Of Certain Fossiles extracted either from Sea or Land, which are referred either to Metals, Stones, or earths: and first of Borax. 399
5. Of Vitrol or Calcanth. Ibid.
6. Of Alome. 400
7. Of Salts. 402
8. Of Bitumen. 403
9. Of Sulphur. 404
10. Of Amber-grise. 405
11. Of Yellow-Amber. 406
12. Of Corral. Ibid.
13. Of Auripigmentum. 407
14. Of Cinabaris. 408
15. Of Quicksilver. 409

SECT. 2.

Of Medicinal & precious Stones.

1. Of the Smaragd. 412
2. Of the Saphir. 413
3. Of the Rubi 414
4. Of Granates. 415
5. Of the Sardis. Ibid.
6. Of the Hyacinth. Ibid.
7. Of the Topaz. 416
8. Of the Azure-stone. 417
9. Of the Loadstone. Ibid.
10. Of some other Gems, more seldome used in Medicine. 419
11. Of Certaine Physical, but not precious Stones: and first of Marble. 421
12. Of Chrystal. 422
13. Of Gypsum. Ibid.
14. Of Chalk. 423
15. Of Stones found in Spunges. Ibid.
16. Of Bricks. 424

SECT. 3.

Of Metalls.

The Preface. 425
1. Of Gold. 426
2. Of Silver. 427
3. Of Tinn. Ibid.
4. Of Lead. 428
5. Of Brass. 429

6. Of Verdegreuse. Ibid.
7. Of Iron. 430
8. Of the seventh Metal. 432
9. Of Ceruss. Ibid.
10. Of Cadmia both Fossile and factitious. 433
11. Of Spodium. 434
12. Of Pompholix. 436
13. Of Litharge. 437

The third Book:

Of Medicaments taken from Animals either whole or in part.

The Preface.

Chap. Page.
1. OF Mans blood. 440
2. Of Mummy. 441
3. Of Goats-blood. 442
4. Of Hares-blood. 443
5. Of Fats; and first of the marrow of Harts Ibid.
6. Of Goats-suet. 444
7. Of Hogs-grease. 445
8. Of Beares-grease. Ibid.
9. Of Goose-grease. 446
10. Of Ducks-grease. Ibid.
11. Of Capons-grease. 447
12. Of Butter. 448
13. Of Foxes-Lungs. 449
14. Of Castoreum. 450
15. Of the Excrements of animalls; and first of Musk. Ibid.
16. Of Civet. 451
17. Of Isinglass. 452
18. Of Oesypus. 453
19. Of Medicinal bones; and first of a Harts Heart-bone. 454
20. Of Ivory. Ibid.
21. Of the Unicornes-horn. 456
22. Of the Bezoar-stone. 457
23. Of Margarites and Unions. 458
24. Of the Sea-Navel. 460
25. Of the Dental. Ibid.
26. of Antal. 461
27. Of Tortoises. 462
28. Of Frogs. Ibid.
29. Of Crab-fishes. 464
30. Of Vipers. Ibid.
31. Of Stincus mar. or scincks. 467
32. Of Scorpions. Ibid.
33. Of wormes. 468
34. Of Spanish-flies. 469
35. Of Ants. 470
36. Of the silk-worm. 471

The APOTHECARIES Shop.

An Introduction, containing these following Particulars.

1. OF the House and Shop of an Apothecary. 471
2. Of the Instruments necessary for the Shop. 472
3. Of Morters and Pestells. 481
4. Of Spatula's and Spoons. 482
5. Of Kettles, and other Metalline vessels. 483
6. Of Torcularies and Presses. 484
7. Of Sieves. Ibid.
8. Of Strainers. 485
9. Of Fornaces. 486
10. Of Stills and Alembecks. 487
11. Of Tables and Counters necessary for the Shop. 488
12. Of little Drawers, Boxes, and other Shop-utensils. 489
13. Of the conservation of parts, or whole, of Medicinal materials in the Shop. 490
14. Of Minerals and Metals that are

are to be kept. 493
15. Of Such animals or parts thereof, that are to be kept. 494
16. Of Compound Medicaments, to be kept in Shops. Ibid.

PART 1.

The first Book:

Of Preparative and Alterative Medicaments.

Sect. Page.
1. OF Syrups approved by use. 498
2. Of Syrups that may be made at any time. 518
3. Of such Syrups as are dulcorated with Honey. 529
4. Of such juyces as are to be cocted with Honey. 530
5. Of Rob Sape, or Robub. 533
6. Of Conserves. 536
7. Of Fruits and other parts of Plants that are to be condited and preserved. 540
8. Of Such Eclegms that must be kept in Shops. 549

The second Book:

1. OF Selected and approved Purgative Medicaments. 554
2. Of Hieras. 567
3. Of Solid Electuaries and Troches that are Purgative. 571
4. Of Pills. 577

The third Book:

1. OF Select Cordial Powders. 599
2. Of Liquid Antidotes. 615
3. Of Alterative and Roborative Troches. 630

PART 2.

Of External Medicaments.

The fourth Book

Of all oyls.

Sect. Page.
1. OF Oyls made by infusion. 647
2. Of Such Oyls as may be made at any time. 659
3. Of Such Oyls as are made either of animals or their parts. 664
4. Of Oyls made be Expression. 667
To which is added an Appendix of Balsams. 685
5. Of Oyls extracted by distillation, and that either by ascent or descent. 674

The fifth Book:

Sect. Page.
1. OF Unguents. 690
2. Of Cerecloths. 711

The sixth Book:

TReating onely of Plaisters, beginning at fol. 715.
An Appendix of Certain waters made by art. 733

The End of this Index.

An INDEX of such Diseases, whose Cure is contained in this WORK.

Good for the Pain of the Head.

Purslain 242. Laurel 268. Pellitory 261. Night-shade 345. Oxymel of Squills 526. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Venice-Treacle 626. Unguentum Populeon 691. Electuary of Fleabane 560. Hiera Picra 567. Hiera Pachii *Ibid.* Pil. Mastichinæ 578. Pil. sine quibus 581. Pil. Aureæ *Ibid.* Pil. Cochiæ 583. Pil. Asaiaret 587. Troch. Narcotici *Fernelii* 683. Oyl of Roses 651. Oyl of water-Lillies 652. Oyl of Mandrake 656. Oyl of Euphorbium 662.

For the Weakness of the Brain and Head.

These following Corroborate the whole brain and head: the powder for Suffumigation 214. Saffron 351. Pyony 302. Marjoran 311. Balm 317. Betony 318. Stæchas 320. Sage 321. Amber-grise 405. Coral 406. Smaragd 412. Mosch 450. Honey of Rosemary 531. conserve of Roses 536. conserve of Rosemary flowers 539. conserve of Betony *Ibid.* conserve of Balm and Sage 539. Emplastrum de Janua 719. Troches de Gallia Moschata 634. Troch. Aliptæ Moschatæ *Ibid.* Oyl of Marjoran 684. Aromaticum Rosatum 603. pulvis Dianthos 605. Oyl of Mirtles 656. Oyl of Mastich 660.

To cause Sternutation, or to provoke Sneezing.

The powder prescribed 179. Mustard-seed 292.

For the Vertigo.

These cure the Vertigo: Coloquintida 266. China-root 289. Oxymel of Squills 526. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Venice-Treacle 626. Treacle-water 733. Electuary of Fleabane 560. Hiera Picra with Agarick 568. Hiera Pachii *Ibid.* Pills of Agarick 582. Pills of Nitre 589.

For madness and Hypochondriack Melancholy.

To root out the Hypochondriack Melancholy, and such like Affections, use the true black Hellebore 265. Topaz 416. syrup of Borage, and syrup of Bugloss 510. Antidotum Asyntricum 620 Oyntment of Roses 690. Confectio-Hamech 562. Electuary of Senna 564. Hiera Pachii 568. Oyl of Mandrake 656.

For a Lethargie.

To cure the Lethargy, use that Embroch 192. Sacculus 210. Mother of Thyme 310. Castoreum 450. Honey of Rosemary 531. Treacle-water 733. Claret 734. Hiera with Agarick 568. Hiera Pachii *Ibid.* Hiera Diacolocynthidos 569. Pills of Agarick 582. Oyl of Euphorbeum 662.

For the falling sickneſe.

To expel the falling sickness, make use of Pyony 301. Hellebore black 265. Coloquintida 266. Pellitory 291. Pyony 301. Squills 305. Peniroyal 312. Betony 318. Misselto of the Oak 342. Coral 406. Smaragd 412. syrup of Stæchados 520. Oxymel of Squills 526. conserve of Rosemary-flowers 539. Pyony-roots condited 546. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Venice-Treacle 626. Troches of Squills 632. Oyl of Vitriol 679. Oyl of Sulphur 681. Treacle-water 733. Claret 734. Electuary of Senna 564. Hiera Picra with Agarick 568. Hiera Pachii *Ibid.* Hiera Diacolocynthidos 569. Troch. Alhandal 575. Pills of Nitre 589. species Dianthos.

The Apoplexie.

To cure the Apoplexie, use the Glyster in page 184. Sacculus 210. Coloquintida 266. Pellitory 291. Honey of Rosemary 531. syrup of Rosemary *Ibid.* Treacle-water 733. Claret 734. Hiera Diacolocynthidos 569.

For an Aſthma and Coagh.

To cure a Cough, uſe Nettle-ſeed, 295. thoſe Eclegms preſcribed in 165. Sugar, 223. Manna, 226. common Maidenhair, 234. Mechoachan-root, 258. Coloquintida, 266. Nettle, 295. Enulacampane-root candid, 548. the Decoction of the root drunk, 297. Liquoriſh, 304. Origanum, 313. Calamint, 315. Birthwort, 324. Gith, 328. Hyſſop, 329. Honeyſuckles, 338. Coltsfoot, 359. the ſeed of the Cotton-tree, 362. Sebeſtens, 380. Jujubees, 390. Pine-nuts, 388. Gum Thraganth, 396. Maſtich, 384. Storax, 386. Sulphur, 304. Amber, 406. Syrup of Coltsfoot, 499. ſyrup of Poppies ſimple, 502. ſyrup of red Poppies, 503. ſyrup of Liquoriſh, 520. ſyrup of Jujubees 521. ſyrup of Hyſſop, 522. conſerve of Bugloſs, 537. Coltsfoot-leaves condited, 544. Lohoc of Squills, 549. lohoc of Pine-kernels, 552. lohoc ſanum, 551. Diapenidion, 513. confectio de Rebecha, 614 Penidees, *Ibid.* Antidotum Aſyncritum, 620. Venice-Treacle, 626. oyl of Sulphur, 681. oyl of Turpentine, 682. Claret, 734. Hiera Puchii, 568. Hiera Diacolocynthidos, 569. Troches Alhandal, 575. Pills of Agarick, 582. pills of Hounds-tongue, 592. pil. Bechicæ nigræ, 596. Bechicæ albæ, 597. Diamarg. frig. 599. Pulvis Dianiſi, 605. Diacalaminthes, 607.

For the Pleuriſie.

To cure a Pleuriſie, uſe the Fomentation, 190. the Litus, 193. Carduus Benedictus, 331. Petroſeline of Macedonia, 337. ſyrup of Violets, 498. ſyrup of red Poppies, 503. ſyrup of Jujubees, 521. Lenitive Electuary, 555. Diapenidion, 513. confectio de Rebecha, 614. Antidotum Aſyncritum, 620. oyl of Violets, 648.

For the Pthyſick.

Theſe cure the Pthyſick: Lettice, 421. the ſeed of the Cotton-tree, 362. Piſtaches, 386. Pine-kernels, 388. Milk, 448. Decoctum Teſtitudum, 162. ſyrupus Reſumptivus, 523. Lohoc of Foxes lungs, 550. Antidotus Analeptica, 619. Venice-Treacle, 626. Treacle-water, 732. Diamarg. frig. 599. ſpecies Diatrion ſantalon 602.

For Swounding.

Theſe recover ſwounded perſons: Bezoar-ſtone, 457. ſyrup of Apples ſimple, 515. confection of Alkermes, 615. confection of the Hyacinth, 656. Antidotus Analeptica, 619. Venice-Treacle, 626. Treacle-water, 732. Diamarg. frig. 599. Electuary of Gems, 600. pulvis Dianthos, 605.

For the palpitation of the Heart.

Theſe cure the palpitation of the heart: Doronicum, 330. Ambergriſe, 405. Silver, 427. Moſch, 450. Bezoar-ſtone, 457. ſyrup of the juyce of Bugloſs and Borage, 510. ſyrup of Apples ſimple, 515. conſerve of Bugloſs, 537. conſerve of Roſemary-flowers, 539. confection of Alkermes, 615. confection of Hyacinth, 656. Venice-treacle, 626. Treacle-water, 732. electuary of Gems, 600.

For weakneſs and faintneſs of the heart.

Thoſe Opiates comfort the heart, preſcribed in 168. that Condite in 169. cordial Tablets, 174. powder in 175. Epithema in 190. Sac-

culus

culus, 210. the powder for ſuffumigation, 214. Borage-flowers 228. Roſes 284. Saffron 251. Myrabolens 255. Zerumbet 272. Coſtus 274. Cinamon 276. Kermes 283. Lignum-aloes 286. Saunders 287. Angelico 298. Woodſorrel 353. Citrons 372. Oranges 373. juyce of Pomegranates *Ibid.* Benzoin 381. Storax 386. Ambergriſe 405 Coral 406. Ruby 414. Granate 415. Hyacinth *Ibid.* Silver 427. Moſch 450. ſyrup of the juyce of Woodſorrel 510. ſyrup of Grapes 513. ſyrup of Lemons and Pomegranates 501. ſyrupus Regius 519. Rob Ribes 533. conſerve of Bugloſs 537. conſerve of Borage 538. Enulacampane condited 548. antidotus Analeptica 619. oyl of Cloves 683. Claret 734. common Claret 735. Electuary of Citron ſolutive 573. troches of Gallia Moſchatæ 634. troches of Aliptæ Moſchatæ, *Ibid.* ſpecies Diambræ 601. Diamoſchum, *Ibid.* Aromaticum Roſatum 603. Pulvis lætificans 604. Diacynamomum 606.

To increaſe native heat.

Calamus Aromaticus 273. Cardamomes 280. ſyrup of five roots 505. antidotum Aſyncritum 620. Venice-treacle 626. Electuary of Senna 564. troch Hyſterici 641.

For the Plague.

Againſt the Plagne, drink of the decoction of the roots of Enulacampane 290. Angelica 297. Gentian 300. Tormentil 301. Dittany 319. Scordium 322. Leopards bane 330. Carduus benedictus 331. Lemnian earth 396. Hyacinth 415. Unicorns horn 456. Bezoar-ſtone 457. Enulacampane-roots condited 548. Solomons Opiate 622. Electuary of an Egge *Ibid.* Mithridate 624. oyl of Vitriol 679. oyl of Sulphur 681. Emplaſtrum Diapalma, very good for peſtilent tumors 722. Treacle-water 732. Pil. Ruffi 578. troches Alexiterii 641. powder againſt the Plague 608.

To cauſe Sweat.

To provoke Sweat, take Tormentil 301. Carduus 331. ſyrup of Apples ſimple 515. Treacle-water 732. Mithridate 624. Venice-Treacle 626. troches of Vipers 630.

To reſiſt Poyſon.

Theſe reſiſt Poyſon: Wine 219. Marſhmallows 229. Fennel 239. Cummin 245. Caraway 246. Amomum 247. Zerumbet 271. Setwel 272. Rocket-ſeed 294. Nettle-ſeed 295. decoction of Elecampane-root drunk 297. Angelico 298. Tormentil 301. Dittany 319. the root and ſeed of Lovage 299. Gentian 300. Mother of Thyme 310. Peniroyal 312. Polium *Ibid.* Balm 317. Horehound 318. Betony, *Ibid.* Dittany 319. Scordium 322. Birthwort 324. Groundpine 326. Leopards bane 330. Carduus 331. Valerian 333. Rhaponticum 335. Agnus caſtus 340. Aſh-leaves 341. Biſtort 559. Citrons 372. Oranges, *Ibid.* Juniper-berries 391. Galbanum 401. Storax 386. Ruby 414. Saphire 413. Caſtoreum 450. Unicorns horn 456. Bezoar ſtone 457. the reins of Stincus 467. ſyrup of Grapes 513. conſerve of Betony 539. Enulacampane-roots candid. 548. confection of the Hyacinth 656. the Opiate of *Solomon* 621. Mithridate 624. Venice-Treacle 626. Troches of Vipers 630. Troches

For the Dropſy.

Theſe are convenient for the Droſy: that Sacculus mentioned in fol. 210. Salvia vita 236. Annis 244 Cummin 245. Laurel 268. Salendine 269. China-root 289. Orris-root 296. Cyperus-root 297. Polium 313. Aſarabacca 325. Hopps 389. ſyrup of Hopps 500. ſyrup of damask-Roſes 501. confection of Bayberries. Oyl of Aniſeed, Unguentum *Agrippæ*, playſter of Bayberries, 618. Barbers plaiſter, 724. Troches of Rhabarb 574. Troches of Capers 639. Pil. Mechoachanæ 589.

For the Jaundiſe.

Theſe remedy thoſe that are ſick of the Jaundiſe: Spleen-wort 235. Dodder and Epithimum 237. Petroſeline 238. Aſparagraſs 239. Ruſcus 240. Madder-roots 302. the roots of reſt-Harrow 302. Sowe-bread 304. Polium 312. Calamint 315. Aſarabacca 325. Ground-pine 326. Roſemary 340. Agnus Caſtus 340. Hopps 359 ſyrup of Hopps 500. ſyrup of the five opening roots 505. ſyrupus Byzantinus 512. Antidotum Aſyncritum 620. Troches of Rhabarb 574. Pil. of Egrimony 580. Troches of Capers 639. ſpecies of the 3 Saunders 602.

For the Obſtruction and pain of the Spleen.

Theſe diſſolve and take away the obſtruction of the Spleen: the fomentation in 189. true Maiden-hair 233. Spleen-wort 235. Salvia vita 236. Dodder and Epithimus 237. Aſparagraſs 239. Senna 257. black-Hellebore 265. Rocket-ſeed 294. Madder-ſeed drunk in Vinegar 302. Graſs-root 303. Peniroyal 312. Polium *Ibid.* Dittany 319. Birth-wort 324. Aſarabacca 325. leſſer Centory 335. Rhapontick *Ibid.* the root and fruit of Capers 338. Honey-ſuckle 338. Broom 339. Agnus Caſtus 340. Aſh 341. the ſeed of the Cotten-Tree 462. Fenugreek 364. Tamarisk 369. Peaches 378. Amoniacum 396. Coral 406. ſyrup of Maiden-hair 504. ſyrup of the five opening-roots 505. ſyrup of Fumatory 508. ſyrup of the juyce of Bugloſs and Borage 510. ſyrupus Byzantinus 512. Oxymel Compoſitum 527. Antidotum Aſyncritum 620. Philonum Romanum 621. Unguentum Agrippæ 704. Unguentum Martiatum 706. Unguentum Spleniticum 708. Barbers plaiſter 724. Hiera Pachii 568. Pills of the 3 Solutives 579. Pil. Imperiales 580. Troches of Capers 639. Oyl of Capers 661.

For the Dyſentery, and other flixes of the Belly.

To ſtop the bloody flix, and other looſeneſſes, uſe that Glyſter in 184. Plantain 352. Comfrey 350. Cinqfoile 361. Sumach 367. Quince-apple 374. the kernels of Medlars beaten to powder and taken 375. Sorb-apples *Ibid.* the fruit of the Cornel-Tree 376. wild-Mulberries 380. Rayſons with the ſtones 385. red Currans 386. Berberies *Ibid.* Cypreſs-Nuts 389. juyce of Ciſtus 391. Bole-armeniack 396. Coral 406. Saphire 413. Milk 448. ſyrup of red Currans and Berberries 513. ſyrup of Grapes *Ibid.* ſyrup of Quinces 515. ſyrup of Mirtles 516. ſyrup of dryed Roſes 518. conſerve of Berberries 533. Rob de Cornis 535. Rob of Quinces *Ibid.* Troches of Berberries 638. Oyl of Quinces 658.

For the Worms.

To expel and kill Worms in the belly, make trial of Aloes 256. the Suppository 282. Setwel 272. Gentian 300. Calamint 315. Wormwood 316. Gith 328. Carduus 331. Motherwort 332. Lupines illited with Honey 366. Calcanth 399. Ebony 261. syrup of Peach-flowers 500. Oxisaccarum 511. the opiate of Solomon 622. Venice-Treacle 626. the Balsam of the Florentine Medicks 687. the Unguent for the Worms 702. Oyl of Wormwood 654.

For the supression of the Urine.

When the Urine is stopped, use wine 219. Spleen-wort 235. Salvia vita 236. Dodder 237. Epithimus *Ibid.* Smallage 238. Petroseline 238. Asparagras 239. Fennel *Ibid.* Ruscus 240. Annis 244. Caraway 246. Bishops-weed 247. Carret-seed 248. Squinant 284. Indian-Leafe 285. Spicknard *Ibid.* China-root 289. Rocket-seed 294. Nettle 295. Elecampane-root 297. Cypress-root *Ibid.* the roots and seed of Lovage 299. the seed of Hart-wort *Ibid.* the roots of Madder 302. the roots of rest-Harrow *Ibid.* Eringo-root 303. Mother of Thyme 310. Polium 312. Basil 313. Origanum *Ibid.* Dittany 319. Sage 321. Gromwel 323. Saxifrage 324. Asarabacca 325. Groundpine 326. St. Johns-wort 327. Artichoak 333. Valerian *Ibid.* Spignel 336. Dill *Ibid.* Macedonian Parsly 337. Honey-suckle 338. Broom 339. winter-cherries 349. Hopps 359. Sebestens 380. Juniper-berries 391. Amoniacum 496. Turpentine 387. Bdellium 388. syrup of the five opening-roots 505. syrup of Wormwood 519. compound Oxymel 527. Vinous Hydromel 528. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Venice-Treacle 626. Oyl of Vitriol 679. Claret 734. species Diacalaminthes 607.

Heat of Urine.

To asswage the Vehement heat of the Urine, use Lettice 241. Sebestens 380. Jujubees 381. syrup of Marsh-Mallows 506.

For the heat of the reines.

The heat of the reines may be asswaged by that Emulsion prescribed in 162. Oyntment of Roses 690. Oyl of water-Lilies 653. Oyl of Mandrakes 656.

For the Stone in the Bladder, and gravel in the kidnyes.

These break the stone: the powder of a Hare burnt 67. El. Justinum 143. the bath in 186. the Fomentation 190. Pellitory 231. true Maiden-hair 233. Geterach 235. Salvia vita 236. Parsly 238. Ruscus 240. Cypress-root 297. the root of rest-Harrow 302. Eringo-root 303. Grass-root *Ibid.* Sowe-bread 304. Gromwel 323. Saxafrage 324. Pimpinel 325. Garduus. 331. Macedonian Parsly 337. Honey-suckle 338. winter-cherries 349. decoction of Primrose 357. the seed of the Cotton-Tree 362. both Cicers 365. the stones or kernels of Medlars 375. pistaches 386. Amoniacum 396. Turpentine 379. Bdellium 388. Lapis Spongiæ 423. syrup of Maiden-hair. 504. syrup of the five opening-roots 505. syrup of Marsh-Mallows 506. syrup of Hyssop 522. Oxymel compound 527. Diasatyrion 618. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Philonum Romanum 621. Venice-Treacle

Treacle 626. Oyl of Turpentine 682. the Balsam of the Florentine Medicks 687. Plaister of Bayberries 720. Claret 734. Diaprunum simplex 557. Diaprunum compound 558. Benedicta Laxativa 561. Oyl of Scorpions 665.

Gonorrhæa.

The Gonorrhæa or Flux of Sperm is cured by that Emulsion prescribed in 162. Lettice 241. water-Lilies 249. Amber 406. Coral *Ibid.* Aqua ad Gonorrhæam 735. Troch. ad Gonorrhæam 642.

To stir up Lust, and excite to Venery.

To provoke to Venery, use Sparrows brain 66. Secacul 276. Cloves 280. Cubebs 281. Rocket-seed 294. Nettle 295. Eringo-root 303. Seabulb 306. Dogs-stones or Satyrium *Ibid.* Leeks 307. Clary-seed drunk in Wine 321. Ash 341. both Cicers 365. Pistaches 386. Pine-Nuts 388. the reines of Land-Crocodiles called Scinci 467. Eringo-roots condited 546. Satyrion-roots condited 547. Diasatyrion 618. Oyl of Pismires 667.

To allay the heat of Lust.

Use water-Lilies 249. Rue 322. Agnus Castus 340. Smaragd 412. syrup of water-Lilies 504. Oyl of water-Lilies 653.

Ruptures.

These cure Ruptures: the Cauterie prescribed in 206. Horehound 318. Rhapontick 335. Comfrey 350. Cats-foot 363. Bdellium 388. Gypsum 422. Emp. contra Herniam 726.

To stop the Hemorrhoids.

Use that Vaporary mentioned 187. Aloes 256. the Leaves of the Figg-Tree 381.

To provoke the Hemorrhids, or to open them.

The Vaporary in 188. Sumach 367. Quince 374. the Cornel-Tree 276. syrup of Quinces 515.

To bring down the Terms.

That Vaporary mentioned in 188. that Suffumigation 215. common Maiden-hair 234. Salvia vita 236. Smallage 237. Parsly 238. Asparagras 239. Fennel *Ibid.* Ruscus 240. Caraway 246. Bishop-weed *Ibid.* Ladies-Rose 247. Carret-seed 248. Aloes 256. Calamus Aromaticus 273. Cinamon 276. Squinant 284. China-root 289. Treacle-Mustard-seed 393. Nettle-seed 295. Orris 296. Elecampane 297. Cyperus-root *Ibid.* Angelico 298. the root and seed of Lovage 299. the seed of rest-Harrow 302. Madder-root *Ibid.* Eringo-root 303. Sowe-bread 304. two drachms of the seeds of Wall-flowers given in Wine 309. Thyme 310. Mother of Thyme *Ibid.* Marjoran 311. Peniroyal 312. Polium *Ibid.* Origanum 313. Calamint 315. Mugwort 317. Balm *Ibid.* Horehound 318. Dittany 319. Sage 321. Birthwort 324. Asarabacca 325. Ground-pine 326. Germander *ibid.* Featherfew 326. St. Johns-wort 327. Gith 328. Valerian 333. juyce of the lesser Centory 535. Spignel 336. Savine 339. white-Willow 340. both Cicers 365. Amoniacum 396. Sagapenum 401. Galbanum *Ibid.* Storax 386. Myrrhe 387. Bdellium 388. Elaterium 390. Castoreum 450. syrup of the five opening-roots 505.

sy-

syrupus Byzantinus 412. syrup of Hyssop 522. syrup of Mugwort *Ibid.* conserve of Borage 538. Venice-Treacle 626. Cinamon-water 734. Claret *Ibid.* Hiera Pachii 568. Troches of Myrrhe 640. Troch. Histerici 041. species Diacalaminthes 607.

To stop the Immoderate Fluor of the Terms.

The Vaporary in 187. Sumach 187 roasted-Quince 374. the Cornel-Tree 376. Coral 406. syrup of Quinces 515.

For the Whites.

To stop the Whites, use the Vaporary mentioned in 187. Amber 406. Coral *Ibid.*

The Suffocation of the Womb.

Mustard-seed 291. the root and seed of Lovage 299. Marjoran 311. Assafœtida 399. Sagapenum 401. Bitumen 403. Civet 451 Bezoar-stone 457. syrup of Mugwort 522. Emp. pro Matrice 726. Elect. Sennatum 564. Oyl of Rue 653. species Diambræ 601. species Diamosch 601.

For the falling down of the Womb, and the Intestinum Rectum.

Unguentum Stipticum 694. Emp. pro Matrice 726. ad Herniam 726.

To increase Milk in the Brests.

Fennel 239. Dill 336. both Cicers 365. Pine-Nuts 388.

For the Gout, and other affections of the joynts.

Hermodacts 262. Turbith 263. Coloquintida 266. China-root 289. Sage 321. Birthwort 324. Asarabacca 325. Peniroyal 312. Poplar 346. Fenugreek with Oxymel made into a pultis 398. Ducks grease 446. Oyl of Foxes 666. Oyl of Honey 681. the Balsam of the Florentine Medicks 687. Unguentum Aragon 705. Unguentum Martiatum 706. Emplastrum Oxicroceum 718. Benedicta Laxativa 561. Hiera Picra Gal. 567. Hiera Pachii 568. Troches of Alhandal 575. Pil. of Hermodactyls 584. Pills of Nitre 589. Oyl of Chamomile and Dill 654. Oyl of St. Johns-wort 659. Oyl of Wall-flowers 649. Pil. Fœtidæ 590. Oyl of Wormes 664. Oyl of Foxes 666.

For the cure of the Feavers.

Saunders 287. Rhapontick 335. Cherries 378. red Currans 386. syrup of Violets 468. syrup of water-Lilies 504. syrup of Succory compound 507. syrup of Endive 508. syrup of Fumatory *Ibid.* syrup of Wood-sorrel 510. syrupus Byzantinus 512. syrup of Berberries 513. syrup of Lemons and Pomgranates 501. conserve of water-Lilies 538. Populeon 691. Diacatholicon 557. Diaprunum simple *Ibid.* compound 558. Diaphœnicum 555. Electuary of Flea-bane 560. Triphera Solutiva 563. Electuarium Sennatum 564. Electuarium Diacarthamum 571. Electuary of Citron-Solutive 573. Pil. of Egrimony 580. Pil. Agregativæ 585. Troch. de Antispodio 637. Troch. of Berberries 638. Trochisci Narcotici Fernel. 643.

A quartane Feaver.

Black Hellebore 265. Venice-Treacle 626. Unguentum Aragon 705. Pil. de Lapide Lazuli 586.

To cause sleep.

The Julep in fol. 167. that Lotion for the feet in 191. the Frontal in 199. Wine 217. Lettice 241. water-Lilies 249. Saffron 251. Oyl of Mandrake 344. Night-shade 345. Poppy 348. syrup of Poppies simple 502. syrup of red Poppies 503. syrup of water-Lilies 504. conserve of water-Lilies 538. Antidotum Asyncritum 620. Philonum Romanum 624. Oyntment of Roses 690. Unguentum Populeon 691. Troch. Narcotici 643. Oyl of water-Lilies 653. Pil. de Cinoglosso 592.

Immoderate thirst.

To Extinguish thirst, use Lettice 241. ripe Mulberries 379. Sebestens 380. red Currans 386. syrup of Violets 498. syrup of water-Lilies 538. syrup of Berberries 513. conserve of Violets 536. conserve of water-Lilies 538. Lettice stalkes preserved 545. Troches of burnt Ivory 637. Troches of Berberries 638.

For an Inflammation.

Marsh-Mallowes 229. Pellitory 231. Lettice 241. Coriander 337. Night-shade 345. Houseleeke 351. Plantaine 352. Knotgrass *Ibid.* Melilot Line 363, 364. unripe Mulberries 379. wild Mulberries 380. Oyntment of Roses 690. Ung. de Bolo 693. the cooling Cerate of Galen 711. the Cerate of Saunders *Ibid.* Emp. de Cerussa 724. Troch. Narcotici Fernelii 643. Oyl of Violets 648. Oyl of Mandrakes 656.

For unnatural Tumors.

To take away preternatural Tumors, Cummin 245. Misselto of the Oak 342. Amoniacum 396. Bdellium 388. Ceratum Oesypatum 713. Diachylon simplex 716. Diachylon Magnum *Ibid.* Diachylon Magnum cum Gummis 716. Diachylon compositum 717. Melilot 363. Oyl of Orris 649. Oyl of Mastich 660.

To asswage any pain.

Oyl of Mandrake 656. the Liniment in 193. the Cataplasm 200. Gum Elemni 383. Unguentum Resumptivum 697. Ceratum Oesypatum 713. Emplastrum Divinum 723. Troch. Narcotici Fer. 643. Oyl of Chamomile and Dill 654. Oyl of Rue 655. Oyl of St. Johns-wort 656. Oyl of Violets 648. Oyl of Lilies 652. Oyl of water-Lilies 653. Oyl of Mandrake-Apples 656.

To take away all vices of the Skin, and to beautify the same.

That Bath mentioned in 186. the Lotion 191. Virgins-Milk 197. Lily-root 250. Rocket-seed 294. Madder-root sprinkled with Vinegar 302. Sowe-bread 304. Honey-suckle 338. Strawberry-water 360. the Oyl of Cotten-seed 362. Oyl of Linseed 364. decoction of Lupines 366. Oyl of Bayberries 390. Galbanum 401. Gum of Ivy 403. Pitch 388. Sulphur 404. syrup of Fumatory 508. Oyl of Sulphur 681. Unguentum Album 691. Unguentum Enulatum cum Mercurio 701. Ung. Citrinum 707. Ceratum Refrigerans 711. plaister of Cerus 724. Aqua Fucatoriæ 737. Confectio-Hamech 562. Pil. de Fumaria 586. Pil. Fœtidæ 590. Oyl of Vipers 665.

To take away Scabs.

Knotgrass 349. Scabious 362. decoction of Lupines 366. Oyl of Bayberries 390. Alome 401. Unguentum Album 691. Unguentum ad Pruritum 696. Ung. Enulatum cum Mercurio 701. Ung. Egyptiacum 704. Pil. de Fumaria 586.

For the French Pox.

It may be cured by the Fumigation 214. Radix Mechoach. 258. Sassafras 287. Guaiacum 288. Sarsaperilla 289. China *Ibid.* the Neapolitan Opiate 628. plaister of Froggs 730. Electuarium Sennatum 564. Pills of Quicksilver 591.

To cause hair to grow, and to prevent it from falling off.

The true Maiden-hair 233. the common Maiden-hair 234. Ladanum 391. Oyl of Honey 681. Oyl of Mirtles 657.

For the Canker.

Powder of burnt Crafish 12, 68. Lead 428. Pompholyx 436. Ung. Diapompholygos 695. Confection of Hamech 562. Pil. de Lapide Lazuli 586.

For the Leprosy.

Black-Hellebore 265. Confectio-Hamech 562. El. Sennatum 564. Pil. de Lapide-Lazuli 586. Pil. Fœtidæ 590.

For St. Anthonies fire.

Houseleeke 351. Plantaine 352. Knotgrass 349. Unguentum Rosatum 690. Ung. de Bolo 693. Galens cooling Cerate 711. Troch. Narcotici Fer. 643. ol. Omphacinum 119.

For burnings.

Leekes 307. Tutsan 315. the lesser Centory 335. Ung. Album 691. plaister of Cerus 724.

For Tetters, and Ring-wormes.

To cure Tetters, take Houseleeke 351. Plantaine 352. the juyce of Knotgrass mixed with the white of an Egge *Ibid.* Oyntment of Roses 690.

For wounds.

To cure wounds, make use of that powder in 107. Aloes 256. Kermes 283. Rocket-seed 294. Polium 312. St. Johns-wort 327. Tutsan 328. Comfrey 350. Milfoile 361. Dragons-blood 398. Assafœtida 399. Turpentine 379. Sarcocolla 403. Comfrey-roots condited 547. Oyl of Honey 681. Oyl of Turpentine 682. Oyl of Cloves 683. Balsam Vulnerary 687. Balsam D. Evonym. *Ibid.* Balsamum Mirabile 688. Ung. Rubrum Desiccativum 694. Ung. Apostolorum 703. Emp. De Janua 719. Emp. de Gratia Dei 722. tela Galteri 727.

For Ulcers.

Cypress-roots 297. Tutsan 328. Goats-beard 329. decoction of Lupines 366. Milfoil 562. Sarcocolla 403. Borax 399. Vitriol *Ibid.* Alome 400. Lead 428. Brass 429. Verdigrease *Ibid.* Cerus 432. Cadmia 433. Pompholyx 436. Litharge 437. syrup of dried Roses 518. Honey of Violets 531. Oyl of Sulphur 681. Oyl of Cloves 683. common Balsam 688. white Oyntment 691. Oyntment of Litharge

692. the red drying Oyntment 694. Ung. Diapompholygos 695. Oyntment of Lead 697. Ung. Resumptivum *Ibid.* Ung. Mundificativum 699. Ung. Aureum 700. Ung. Apostolorum 703. Ung. e Calce 706. the Egyptian Oyntment 704. Emp. de Janua 719. Diapalma 722. Gratia Dei *Ibid.* plaister of Cerus 724. Tela Galter 727. Aqua Calcis 757. Troch. Cypheos 633. Troch. Gordonii 639.

Against the biting of a mad-dog.

Powders of burnt Crabs 12. Betony 318. Pimpinel 325. Venice-Treacle 626. Troch. Vipers 630. the cleansing Oyntment 699. the Powder 107.

For fractured bones.

Comfrey 350. Mirtle-berries 367. Oxycroceum 718. of Betony 719. Emp. Catagmaticum 728.

To draw out fixed weapons out of Wounds.

Take Dittany 319. plaister of Betony 719.

To draw pricks out of the feet.

Purslaine 242. Mastich-wood 384.

The End of this Index of Diseases.

SIRS,

SIRS,

MAny Errata's have escaped the press, which particularly to correct, would but augment the disgrace of the Printers, and no way gratify the desires of the Readers, by reason of the vastness thereof: yet this venial excuse may be passed upon their Endeavors, that the strangeness of the character, and uncouthness of the style, was the chief causation thereof; which could not particularly be emended, by reason of the constant attendance upon my Profession, the daily pressure of my Imployments, and the tediousness of the Work. Be pleased therefore with your pen to correct what is amiss, to excuse what is past, and courteously to entertain what is tendred out of a hearty Inducement to do good, which is the sincere desire of him who is

Yours in all observances,

Covent Garden.
Feb. 1. 1657.

R. T.

The more unexperienced Reader may please to observe,

that ℔ ℥ ʒ ℈ signifies Pound, Ounce, Drachm, Scruple.

JO. RENODÆUS;

Medick, his five Books of Physical Institutions.

Of Election of Medicaments.

His first Book.

CHAP. I.

What Pharmacy is, and its use.

PHARMACY is the second part [a] of a curing Medicine, which is [b] effected by Drugs; or it is an Art, shewing the way; first, to select; secondly, to prepare; thirdly, to mix Medicaments: for in these three things consists the whole Body of Pharmacy, which affords a wholsome Remedy to every Disease; for Nature (the best Parent) in her Physical operation hath opposed a Contrary to every thing: but through imbecillity, or some other accident, cannot alwayes attain to the end for which it was [c] ordained; for mans life being short, sooner yieldeth to Fate, than it can attain to Art; which was the reason why *Hippocrates* complained, (*Epist. ad Damoget.*) that he was an old man, and had not yet acquired the end of Physick. And truly no wonder; for this Art is very long and difficult, treating of all sublunary things created for mans supportation; [d] primarily, for nutriment; secondarily, for cure, or any help conducing to health.

[a] *Cor. Cels. cap. 2. lib. 1.*
[b] *Gal. com. ad part. 2. 3.*
[c] *Fernel. præfat. ad Meth.*
[d] *Aristot. l. 5. polit.*

The Materials therefore of Medicine are many, and almost innumerable; insomuch that the Bowels of the Earth do swell therewith, and its superficies deck'd and adorn'd with variety of Herbs

The matter of Physick is large.

and Flowers, as with an Ornament; nothing flyeth or doth move in the Air, nothing groweth or doth swim in the Seas, which may not be made use of to humane remedy; for health many times is maintained and procured by most vile and contemptible things, as by a [e] Snail, Snake, Dung, *&c.* From Medicaments we often receive nutriment, and Nutriments often become [f] medicinal.

[e] *Gal. c. 1. l. 2. de simplicib.*
[f] *Hip. lib. de aliment.*

The dignity and antiquity of Pharmacy.

Pharmacy then is to be deemed praise-worthy, and esteemed of honourably, which affords and ministers the Instruments of Medicine, to wit, Drugs; for the sacred Scriptures shew, that they were not onely extant from the beginning, but also [g] created of the most High for the good of man: for God created all living Creatures, Vegetables, and Medicinal materials, purely for the service of man; out of which, our Fore-fathers, by their industry, (out of regard to their healths) found out many occult virtues, and thereby prolonged their lives to old age.

[g] *Eccles. 38. chap.*

[h] *cap. 20. l. 4. Reg.*

King [h] *Ezechias* was sick even to death, and was recovered by the prescript of *Isaiah*, with a Plaster made of Figs, and applyed to the place affected.

Mithridates freed himself from all pestilence and poyson, with an Antidote of his confection, which derived its name from him; insomuch that being not able with Poyson, he put a period to his dayes with his own Sword.

Reges olim multa medicamenta paravisse.

Emperours in time past thought it a Princely thing to prepare and carry about them certain convenient Medicaments upon all occasions and accidents, and withall to present them to those persons, of what degree soever, whose favour they sought for, as a sufficient inducement to an obligation of gratitude. For this end and purpose *Cambyses* sent Unguents and Spices to the King of *Egypt*, (as a Present becoming so sublime a Person) therewith to preserve his health. For it is more safe for a King or Captain in his Tent to want his Buckler and Helmet, than salubrious remedies fit and convenient for all accidents of War: hence many wise men have more esteemed of wholsome Medicines, than a rich Treasure. It is reported of *Darius*, that he so much valued a certain Balsam, that he not onely reposed it amongst his pretious goods, but preferred it before all his outward enjoyments. We reade the same of the Emperour *Tiberius*, who alwayes carried with him Trochisks, a certain epidemical remedy.

Kings also are wont not onely to command a Box or Bottle of Oil and Balsam, to be ready in their Tents, but also a whole Apothecaries Shop, furnished with variety of operating Medicaments for help and comfort, whereby they have oftentimes freed themselves and Army from great perils that would otherwise have accrued, and sometimes from death it self.

Medici Deorum filii.

[i] *L. de med. c. 3.*

[k] *L. 6. comp. med. locis.*

Hence Physicians are called *Dii Tutelarii*, Tutelary Gods; or, as *Galen* hath it, [i] the Sons of *Apollo*: hence *Heraphilus* calls [k] Medicaments, Gods omnipresent hand, which frees the sick from the danger of their diseases, and restores perfect health; whence a certain

tain Antidote is called θεος, *i. e.* equal to God, because it is endued with power to operate, as from a Deity. And in *Mirepsius*, another Antidote is called [l] *Sanitas*, *i. e.* health. Another also by the same *Mirepsius* is called [m] *Theodoretos*, *i. e.* the gift of God, by reason of its excellent virtue in curing internal and external maladies.

[l] L. 2. 45.
[m] L. 2. 14. 2. 15. 2. 16.

This medicinal Art doth prepare and afford infinite Medicines of admirable virtue, and wonderfull operation, which no publick City, nor private Family can want, without manifest prejudice, and great detriment to the preservation of their healths; nay, it is of such a transcendent worth, that God would not have his Tabernacle destitute of this Art; and therefore [n] *Moses* anointed it with holy Oil, compounded of Myrrhe, Cinamon, Calamus, Cassia, and Oil.

[n] *Exod. c. 30. unguentum sanctum.*

Joseph also had Pharmacy in great esteem; for when his Father *Jacob* dyed, (*Gen.* 50.) he commanded his Servants and Physicians to imbalm his Corps. Is this Art therefore to be contemned and despised, that is by Holy Writ thus honoured? which affords to the sound a preservative, to the sick a remedy, and to the dead honour and renown.

Chap. II.

What an Apothecary is, and ought to be; and what also is his Subject, Object, and End.

Chirurgus quis dicatur, quid præstat.

As a Chirurgeon takes his denomination from his Vocation, or Art, whereby he cures external distempers dexterously, quickly, safely, and easily: so doth the Pharmacopœan derive his name from the Physick which he makes, or rather aptly compounds into a convenient Medicine. So also is the Druggist nominated from those Simples and Drugs he sels; as the Apothecary from the Apothecæ, or Shop where his Medicines are placed; who in times past was called a Seplasiary, from *Seplasia*, a Market-place in *Capua*, where the best odoriferous Unguents are made. But these names are often used indistinctly, and the concertation about the bare denomination, is vain and frivolous, when the substance is in handling.

Vitæ probitas in Pharmacopœo desideratur.

Probity is not so requisite in a Philosopher as an Apothecary, whose sole work is to prepare Medicines for the Physicians administration, either for preserving, or procuring health, for in his hands consists health and sickness, life and death; and he hath free power in the composure of his Physick, not onely to obstruct the current of health, but also deprive us of life, when he is wickedly bent thereunto,

unto, either out of malice or ignorance; so that if *Hippocrates* be honest and upright, it's no matter if *Socrates* be a Knave.

What conversation an Apothecary ought to be of.

But first of all, an Apothecary ought to be a Lover of Piety, one that fears God, voyd of Envy and Malice, of a sound judgement, well skilled in Grammar, of a good competency, not covetous, patient of labour, of great industry, not given to corpulency and epicurism, one that makes conscience of his actions: for an Atheist, as he doth not respect the Creator, so neither the Creature; and an envious man repines at another mans good; and a foolish man hath an inseparable property in him, *viz.* a desire to hurt; and the unskilfull thinks nothing right but what he doth himself; and the covetous man is good to none, worst to himself; and a poor man is easily corrupted, for need will compell him to deal dishonestly.

They also are unworthy of the name and dignity of the Profession, who are by natural inclination Scoffers, Drunkards, Jesters, Voluptuous, Erroneous, Garrulous, Impostors, Jugglers, Day-lurkers, and Deceivers, who with gilded pretences do deceive the Vulgar with trifles, guiles, boastings, vain promises, adulation, and lyes, cheat them of their moneys, deprive them of their health, and by their delusion bring their lives in jeopardy. Therefore nothing is more noxious to the Republick, of a greater stain and blemish to the honour of the Profession, and scandalous to good Letters, than these kinde of men, who ought to be eschewed as the vilest of Creatures, and their company avoyded as pestilentious.

But whereas the subject of Pharmacy and Medicine is all one, *viz.* mans body, as it is capable of health or sickness, the Physician and Apothecary ought to participate of many good qualities, as prudence, experience, diligence, and knowledge of Medicaments.

Pharmaciam medicinæ inservire.

The subject of Pharmacy is the Materials of Medicine; the end and scope thereof, the due composure of the same; and the Apothecary that dares to attempt or assay further, breaks his bounds and limits, and is to be accounted a Mountebank, a Quack, and Deceiver.

What Apothecaries are to be looked on as Deceivers.

I have known in *France* many Apothecaries, amongst whom I found some bold Attempters in the practick part of Physick, who with flattery, and large promises of great wonders, did deceive the richer sort of women; whom they did not onely deprive of their money, but by exhibiting incongruous Medicines, operating *contra naturam*, without method, or due observation, left their bodyes more diseased, than *in statu quo prius*.

And others also, who by their cunning sophistry did circumvent certain men of knowledge and repute, even the Senators themselves, (*Plin. c. 1. lib. 29.*) by stiling themselves Physicians, Learned men, and the like; they would feel the Pulse, look upon the Urine, and discourse of the Causes, Symptomes, Prognosticks, and Cure of Diseases, pretend to great things, promise far greater, and so affirm many ridiculous things, and prescribe Medicines that rather augment

than

than abate of the vehemency of the distemper; and thus they impiously thrust their Sickle into the Physicians harvest, and most unjustly exercise Pharmacy, to the great prejudice of many, by confiding in a bare *Recipe*, without either giving cause or reason why it ought to be administred; for we ought not to rest and rely upon the judgement of antient Sciolists, who assert meerly upon their bare testimony, and single apprehension, certain Medicines, which may prove benign and agreeable to Constitution at some certain time; and thereupon presume to be safely exhibited at all times, without advice. As for instance, [o] Lettice unseasonably, and in too great a quantity administred, may as easily kill as Hemlock; it is both nutriment and poyson, accordingly as 'tis used. Doth not daily experience manifest, that more perish by surfeting, than any other distemper? Doth not Wine (though most agreeable to our nature) destroy more than War? For though it be very cordial, and as it were the *succus & sanguis senectutis*, as it were old mens milk, and restorative to life, yet taken at an unfit season, and immoderately, proves noxious and destructive.

[o] *Lactuca medicamentum esse potest, alimentum & venenum.*

The office therefore of an Apothecary is onely to exercise or compose certain Ingredients to a medicinal form, and to adhibit them in a decent manner to salutiferous use, according to the prescript of some skilfull Physician: which, that he may with good success accomplish, and answer the expectation of the Physician, he ought, first, to select his Ingredients; secondly, to prepare them; and thirdly, to compound them; of which we intend to speak in order. But before we treat of the first, let us enquire what a Medicament is.

The duty of an Apothecary.

Chap. III.

What a Medicament is, and what an Aliment, and what a Medium between both.

THE whole Man is a whole Disease, saith *Hippocrates*, (*Epist. ad Damog.*) for such is he when he proceeds into the world from the inquination of the wombe, that he is ready for the Physician, by reason of his imperfections and diseases which he is liable to, either as a consequent from the dissent of the four qualities, or from the ill use of such things which Nature appointed for nutriment, but through the abuse thereof causes innumerable Diseases in the Body, which the medicinal Art (out of a due observation thereof) doth infallibly either prevent or cure, either by the prescript of

a wholsome Diet, or by Medicaments, either internally assumed, or externally applyed, as *Hippocrates* describes, *Lib. de diata, & Gal. de sanit.*

And these are either simple, which for the most part *Hippocrates* used, or compounded according to Art; they are called Simples, which remain, and are as Nature produced them; as Cassia, Rhabarb, Polipody, Colocynth, with many others, which have onely obtained their natural composition of the four Elements. But they are called Compounds, which consist of many Simples of divers virtues united together by Art and Industry.

Medicamentum quid. Now a Medicament differs from Aliment, thus: for that is called a Medicament, which being either internally assumed, or externally applyed, can work an alteration in our bodyes, as Pepper, Euphorbium, Pelitory, &c.

Alimentum quid. And that is called Aliment, which internally assumed, doth nourish and augment the body, as Bread, Wine, the flesh of all flying and four footed Creatures, except ravenous and rapacious; for those Creatures that live by rape, are of an evil humour, and engender ill blood, and are to be rejected as unclean. And therefore in Divine Writ, the Israelites were forbidden to eat either Eagle, Vulture, Griffon, Raven, Hawk, or the like; and we, according to this Sacred Decree, do prudently abstain from the flesh of Foxes, Wolves, Lyons, and such rapacious Creatures.

Alimentum medicamentosum. Now the medium between both, is a medicinal Aliment, which sympathetically partakes of both natures; for it partly nourisheth, and partly altereth the body, as Lettice, Radish root, Gourd, Garlick, and many such like. As there is betwixt Aliment and Medicament a certain medium, so also is there betwixt Nutriment and Poyson; for the one preserveth, refresheth, and augmenteth; the other destroyes, kils, and corrupts; betwixt both there is a Medicament, which doth effect neither.

Chap. IV

Of the antient use of Simples alone, and of their admirable proprieties.

Galen observes out of *Hippocrates*, *Lib. de Elem.* that a man could never be sick, if he consisted onely of one Element, for then every mans Nature would be one, the Effect one, the Cause of his return to his natural station one. But now the absurdity lyes in this, that whereas the species of diseases are infinite, so also the reme-

dies

dies both simple and compound, that are to be appropriated thereunto, are almost innumerable.

Those Medicaments that are compounded, and yet tearmed simple, are but comparatively and improperly so stiled, in as much as they are referred to others more compound, as *Oximel simplex*, *Diapruinum simplex*, and the like: but the Rose, Endive, Plantain, Mint, Wormwood, and all kinde of Vegetables that are created, which have received no composition or mixture by Art, are properly called Simples by Physicians; which they sometimes use alone, as the juice of Plantain for astringent Lotions; the juice of Water-Lillies *ad Erysipileta*, or St. *Anthonies* fire; the juice of Betony the Canker, with which it hath an admirable sympathy; the juice of Vine-tendrels, by *Galens* advice, against the Shingles; the flesh or meat of Quinces, applyed plaisterwise to the region of the stomack, against choler, and assumed against the bloody flux, the body being first purged; as also Betony against *Cephalalgia*; as almost all Plants to the expelling of most Diseases.

That which is recorded of many Plants exceeds credit, which produce admirable effects; for the root of Peony applyed to the head, or hung about the neck, doth cure the Epilepsy; Mint put into milk hinders its coagulation and condensation into Cheese, as it hath been proved by men of good credit.

The herb *Æthiopis* (if *Pliny* speaks true) *cap.* 4. *lib.* 26. will pull off Iron if it be touched; which *Matthiolus* also asserts of the herb Lunary, or Moon-wort, which because it wresteth off Iron shoes from travelling horses, is called by the Italians *Sferra cavallo*. *Herba Ethiopis.*

The Author of *Libri sanitatis* doth aver with *Tribius*, that the Bird called *Pye*, shutting the orifice of her nest, can cause the doors to fly open onely by the touch of a certain herb; some attribute this vertue onely to the Bird, others to the herb. *Theophrastus*, a most skilfull Herbalist, makes mention of a certain herb, which so powerfully provokes to Lustfull Copulation, that if the Noble Author speaks true, it is more than credible that Nature hath devoted this to the cold and weak constitutions, as the Nymphea to the lecherous.

Clymenum rubrum, or Pile-wort, hath such power in curing the Piles, that whoso carries with him the root of this herb, shall be preserved safe from this Disease. It is scarce credible, that which *Josephus* writes of that admirable Plant which is called *Baarà*, from *Baaran* a Valley of *Judæa*, which being sprung out of the earth, doth cast out a certain bright fulgur, and in the night shines like a burning Lamp; which cannot be touched by any, unless it be first wet with urine, or womans blood, for otherwise who ever toucheth it, presently dyed; but by the aforesaid sprinkling, it may be eradicated, by which it loses its destructive quality. And that which was most wonderfull, it cured Mad-men, and Demoniacks; which when the Inhabitants adjoyning perceived, they very discreetly tyed a Dog fast to it, which incited or compelled by hunger, or called upon, with much struggling pulled up the Plant. *Herba Ficaria.*

Many

Many other Miracles doth God work in this his Foot-ſtool, the eſtimation whereof, Experience alone doth teach. Yet hath he produced nothing any way noxious to Mankinde, to which he hath not ordained a convenient and wholſome Remedy; for he oppoſes one Contrary to another, and one Diſſentany to another. As to the herb Wolfs-bane he hath oppoſed *Ariſtoloch. Long.* to Hemlock, Smallidge-ſeed; to Henbane, Garlick; to Helmet-flower, Radiſh-ſeed; to a Viper, wilde Bugloſs; to Scorpions, Trefoile or Jaſmine; the root of which doth vindicate and preſerve the Bearer from bitings by Scorpions, or frees him from pain that is bitten; his hands alſo that are anointed with the juice of May-weed, cannot be ſtung with Bees or Waſps.

Contrario contrarium Deus opponit.

It will not be beyond our ſcope here to take notice of the various natures of Plants; for ſome are green, and flouriſh in the middle of Winter, as Wolfs-bane, and black Hellebor; other Plants in the Equinoctial, or Spring tide; others in the heat of Summer, and ſome in Autumn; at which time all others are, for the moſt or greateſt part, deprived both of leaves and flowers.

Chap. V.

Of the matter of Medicaments, and whence it proceeds.

THE principal differences of medicinal Ingredients, as well forreign as domeſtick, are taken either from their matter or faculties. From the Matter, which according to *Dioſcorides* and *Galen*, is three-fold; whereupon three general differences of Medicaments do ariſe, to wit, drawn either from Plants, Minerals, or Animals.

Medicamenta ex plantis ſumpta.

In the firſt genus are contained all kinds of Plants, their ſeveral parts, and what is deduced from them, as roots, barks, ſtalks, woods, boughs, leaves, flowers, fruits, ſeeds, gums, roſins, juices, drops, liquors, miſſel-dews, moſſes, cottens, nuts.

In the ſecond are contained the Elements themſelves, as Fire, Flame, Smoke; Air, ſerene, or turbid, hot, cold, moyſt, or dry; Water, pleaſant, ſalt, winy, ſaltiſh, clammy, ſulphurous, taſting of Nitre, Braſs or Iron; all kinds of Earth, as *Bole*, *Terra Lemnia*, *Mellitea*, *Chymolia*, *Rubrica*, *Ampelitis*, *Erithrea*, *Ochra*, *Creta*, and in a word, all Minerals which are digged out of the Bowels of the Earth; as the ſeveral kinds of Stones, as the *Lapis Ethites*, *Cyaneus*, *ſeu Lazuli*, *Judaicus*; as alſo Metals, which are acknowledged by

Metalla ſeptem.

all

all to be seven, Gold, Silver, Tin, Lead, Iron, Copper, and Quick-silver, according to the number of the Planets, whence according to the *Spagyrians*, they borrow their names. These also are improperly referred to the Minerals, *Bitumen Petrol.* all kinds of Salts, Calchanth, and Amber.

In the third genus are contained all Animals, whether Integrals, or In-parts. Integrals, as an old Cock in pottage, to make the belly laxative, and to nourish the body; a Swallow eaten, for to quicken the eye sight; a roasted Lark, against the Collick; Crab fishes, for such as are in Consumptions; old Scorpions, against their bitings; Cantharides, for Ruptures. *Medicamenta ex animalibus sumpta.*

Parts of Animals, as the brains of Sparrows against *Stimulum veneris*, Hairs brain, against Tooth-ach in Children, Fox lungs against the consumption of the Lungs, Wolfs liver against the consumption of the Liver, an Asses liver against the Epilepsy, the intestines of a Wolf against the Collick passions, the back of *Stinci marini* against the stifness of the Yard, Goats blood against the Stone, Partridge or Kites gall to clear the eyes, *Cran. Human.* against the Falling sickness, the bone in the heart of a Hart against doting or roving, Boars tooth against the Plurisy, an Elephants tooth to corroborate the heart, *Monoceros* or *Rhinoceros* horns to infringe Poyson, an Elks hoof against the Falling sickness.

There are also yet many other parts of Animals, whence Medicaments are assumed, as Marrow, Suet, the fat of Calves, Harts, Hogs, Kids, Ducks, Capons and Geese, the milk of Women, Asses, and Sheep, Cheese, Butter, Curds, Cream, Whey, Butter-milk, Hens eggs, Fish-shels, the hairs and other excrements of Animals, which we particularly prescribe in the composition of Medicaments in our *Pharmacopœia.*

Chap. VI.

Of the faculties of Medicaments, and how many sorts there be accordingly.

THE faculty of a Medicament is a certain efficient cause, on which its action depends, (*Gal. l. de plenitud. & lib. 1. de simp.*) whence we gather, that the faculties are answerable in number to the actions, as it is demonstrable in Aloes, What the faculty of a Medicine is.

Aloes facultas. and many other ſimple Medicaments; for Aloes hath a faculty of purging, corroborating the Ventricle, killing and expelling Worms, and exiccating the humours of the head.

Every Medicament therefore, as to its faculty, is three-fold, alterative, purgative, and corroborative. That is ſaid to be alterative, which is either internally aſſumed, or externally applyed, and ſo doth work a manifeſt mutation on our bodies, and that according to *Fernelius*, either in temperament, in matter or form; whence ariſe three kinds of alterative Medicaments; firſt, that which impenſly heats, cools, moyſtneth, or dryeth; ſecondly, that which changeth the commoderation and conſiſtency of the matter: ſo as either too much to obdurate or mollify, too much to rarify or condenſe, too much to bind or looſe, too much to thicken or attenuate; thirdly, which corrupterh or weakneth the ſubſtance or form it ſelf, ſuch as beſides their manifeſt quality, whereby they heat, erode, refrigerate, or ſtupify, by a certain occult propriety, and ſo deſtroy the ſubſtance it ſelf, and induce corruption with nauſeouſneſs, as *Cicuta*, *Anchora*, *Napellus*, *Aconitum*, *Sublimatum*, and many more; ſome are noxious to the whole body, as the fore-named; others to certain peculiar parts, as the Sea-hare to the Lungs, Cantharides to the Bladder, Wolfs-bane to the Womb, Hemlock to the Brain.

Tertia medicamentorum alterantium.

Roborativum quid. The roborative, or as vulgarly tearmed, ſtrengthening Medicament, is that which with or by a certain propriety reſpects Corroborates; and conſerves ſome part of our body, as Cephalick medicaments to the head, Otick to the ears, Ophthalmick to the eyes, Odentick to the teeth, Stomatick to the mouth, Stomachick to the ſtomack, Cordial to the heart, Hepatick to the liver, Splenetick to the ſpleen, Nephritick to the reins, Hyſterick to the belly, Nervical to nerves; of which or moſt ſhall be ſpoken to in their places.

Cathartícum quid proprie. The Cathartick or purgative Medicament is that which extracts a vitious and excrementious humour out of the body. Now that which promiſcuouſly and generally expels all humours out of the body, cannot truly be called purgative, as *Antimonium*, *Cataputia major*, and the like, but ſuch as educes and purges proper and congruent humours, to which its faculty is directed and ordained; for thoſe more violent Medicaments do often precipitate us to death, of which *Galen* ſpeaks, when he * ſaith, that a Purge hath a certain deletary and poyſonous quality; which *Actuarius* thus confirmeth; *Purgative Medicaments in a general notion* (ſaith he) *are accounted to be ſuch as procreate deſtruction, and by moſt adjudged deletary, poyſonous, and mortiferous: but they differ from thoſe which are abſolutely poyſon, or of greater power to hurt, in that they kill rather by quantity, than corrupting.*

* *cap. 2. lib. de vict. acut.*

And there is ſuch an antipathy betwixt our nature and Purgations, that the very ſmell of them is inacceptable; which no ſooner approaches to the noſtrils of ſome perſons, but it affects the whole body; in ſome it ſubverts the Ventricle, and in others it contracts the belly.

belly. But of the faculty of Purges, how it acts, and whence it proceeds, shall be largely treated of in the ninth Chapter.

Chap. VII.

Of the first and second Faculties of Medicaments.

Whereas simple Medicaments have often two, sometimes three faculties incorporated, we will speak of them in order. The first is called Simple and Elementary, which arises from the commixtion of the four Elements. The second, substantial or material, which proceeds from a commoderation and consistency of the matter, in which the four qualities inhere in a divers proportion. And there is something found besides these, a third, namely purgative, which *Fernelius* calls an occult quality. And *Sylvius*, with others of no mean knowledge, affirm four qualities to be universally resident in some Medicament, whereof he asserts the third to be little known, and the fourth altogether unknown, yet both these are often taken for one and the same: for whatever Medicament acts by any inexplicable, or not sufficiently perspicuous property, not proceeding from the first or second qualities, are said to act from the third qualities, or property of the whole substance, or occult virtue.

The first qualities of Medicaments.

The first faculty of Medicaments is common, and as it were the Basis of the rest, proceeding immediately from the Elements themselves, and it consists chiefly in calefaction, refrigeration, moystning, or drying; in every of which it is seen either obscurely, as when it acts in the first degree; or apparently, as in the second; or vehemently, as in the third; or perfectly, as in the fourth; and that either in the beginning, middle, or end of every one: so that there are twelve orders of hot, cold, moyst and dry Medicaments, which take place amongst them that have conjugated faculties, which are either hot and moyst, or hot and dry, or cold and dry; for they produce these faculties not onely obscurely, manifestly, vehemently, and perfectly, but also gradually, and that either in the beginning, middle, or end of their operation.

The several qualities of Medicaments.

The second qualities are concomitants of the first, Elementary or simple, by whose help it is that they exist and manifest their virtues; for the faculty of Apertion, Rarefaction, Attraction, Attenuation follows Calefaction; the faculties of Crassitude, Density, Occlusion, and Repulsion, follow Refrigeration; of Mollification follows Moysture; the faculty of Induration follows Siccity, for Siccity obdurates,

durates, as it is plain with Clay hardned by the North winde, or Summers heat, and brick with fire. As also Humidity mollifies, while any moderate heat perseveres; for the moysture of Ice becomes hard, because it wants heat.

The second virtues and qualities are also apparent in austere, sharp, tart, bitter, opening, attenuating, resolving, contracting, repelling, mollifying, and easing Medicaments; and do as evidently perform their operation, as the first or elementary qualities.

Chap. VIII.

Of the third faculty, or occult quality of Medicaments.

NOW besides the first and second qualities, there is a third, which being occult, and inexplicable, no certain account can be rendred of it, nor yet any exact knowledge thereof be apprehended, but is known onely by experience. For why, the Jasper stone, saith *Galen*, by touching the wound, should stop the flux of blood, I know not; and if I knew perfectly how to find out the nature of every thing particularly, I should think my self such an one as I do conceive *Esculapius* was. But some properties can neither be known nor explained; for no man can bring any firm and invincible argument or reason, why those Spanish flyes, or Cantharides, should vex the bladder with an inflammation, or hot disposition, being applyed far from it; or why the ashes of Crabs, being of a drying nature, should have such an admirable property against the biting of mad Dogs; or why, being mixed with Gentian or Frankincense, it operates better and more effectually than with other Medicaments.

The property of Sea-crabs.

Galen admiring the never failing success of this Medicament, busied himself no little, to finde out the cause why, and at length promised to publish a Book concerning those things that act by an occult property; but performed not his promise, perchance fearing lest it might detract from his great Fame, if he should relinquish his Enterprise imperfect, or not satisfie himself or his Readers, if he did not with his accustomed learning and dexterity repleniſh and accomplish it. Yet this third faculty is very ample, containing under it Purgatives, curing distempers by a certain occult virtue, having respect to certain peculiar parts, of which we intend to discourse particularly.

The extent of the third faculty.

There is in Aliments an inexplicable quality.

Neither do we acknowledge this inexplicable property to consist solely in Medicaments and Poysons, whereby the one cures, and the other

other kils, and ſometimes expels diſeaſes: but alſo in Aliments; which repair the loſs of ſtrength by that continual *Effluvium*; for many abhor many meats, which others take with a greedy appetite; which though at firſt they are unlike, yet after many concoctions become like and proper to our bodyes; whence ariſeth a great ſimilitude betwixt the thing nouriſhing, and that which is nouriſhed, which ſcarce can be defined; and why this man is more delighted with this meat, and that with another. The eating of fiſh and fleſh is familiar to our whole Nation, yet have we known many, ſaith *Amatus Lucianus*, who altogether abſtained from eating of fleſh; and others, to whom not onely the eating, but alſo the very ſmell of Cheeſe was as poyſon. Another have we known, a Spaniard by Nation, who never taſted of Fiſh, but when he was invited by his Friend once to a Supper, and had eaten Eggs, with which the aſhes of dryed Fiſh was cunningly mixed, he fell into ſuch a pain and anguiſh by vomiting, that he was almoſt killed thereby. The ſame famous Author alſo ſaw another, a Venetian Monk, in whom the ſmell of Roſes would cauſe Madneſs; which alſo I have obſerved in a Noble Lady. And *Julius Scaliger*, in a learned Cardinal, as he affirms in his Exerciſes againſt *Cardan*, *viz.* (*Exercit.* 153. *part.* 10.) where he commemorates a certain woman of excellent virtue and beauty, named *Francis*, who could by no means be perſwaded, before ſhe was fourteen years of age, to eat Fleſh. He affirms alſo, that one of his Children as much abhorred Cabbages, as himſelf did the Creſſons. As alſo a maid in the City *Mediolim* dyed with a draught of *Caſſia fiſtula*; for every mans peculiar appetite is proper to himſelf; and many eſchew Wine as Poyſon, others adore it as their God.

Hiſtoria notatu dign.

Moreover, this inexplicable occult faculty is obſerved in the food of other Animals. For who by reaſon can declare why the Oſtrich delights in Iron? why the Hart deſires Serpents; the Bear, Ants; the Aſs, *Ferula*. Some Animals live onely by fiſhing, others by hunting, others by Corn, others by the natural increaſe of Plants. The Mallet devours the bird Hirron; the Beaver, little Fiſhes; the Hawk, the Eagle, and Fox, are nouriſhed and fed upon little Birds; the Hen, the Partridge, and the Horſe, on Corn; the Oxe, Deer, and Hart, on little Plants, or their tender parts. And why theſe do delight and grow fat rather with that Aliment than this, and thoſe rather with this than that, cannot eaſily be explained by reaſon. For the Vulture will ſooner periſh with Famine, than touch Wheat; the Pheaſant rather dye, than eat by ſtealth.

Chap. IX.

Of the faculty of purging Medicaments, whence it proceeds, and how it operates.

THE disquisition of the faculty of purging Medicaments hath been the exercise of many ingenious men; and yet nevertheless, as many men as have endeavoured after its knowledge, so many several opinions have they left to us their Posterity. The Alcumists not without some pains endeavour to demonstrate, that it proceeds from the saltness of the Compounds; for they lay down this for a general Axiom, that all Salts are purgative. Others maintain, that this faculty is altogether occult, not apparently explicable by reason. There are others who judge, that it arises from the special temperament of the mixture, or compound. Others look upon it as a fifth quality. *Mesue* would have its original in Heaven, and calls it a Heavenly Faculty. *A purgative Medicine* (saith he) *is not such from its temperament, not as a Contrary acting upon its Contrary, not as a Simile attracting its Simile, nor as a heavy matter driving the humour downwards, nor as a light substance driving it upwards; but it hath this faculty alotted from above, acting by a Divine power.*

This Celestial Faculty is also by some Medicks, (*Fernel.*) and Philosophers, (*Scaliger.*) called an Occult Faculty; sometimes also the property of the matter alone, sometimes the internal principle of every thing, sometimes an unknown cause, a super-elementary virtue, a property of the whole substance, and by some, a fifth quality; so that one and the same thing hath divers denominations.

The divers denominations of this quality.

But because that this purgative virtue, according to Philosophers of best note, must needs be deduced from the Stars, *Mesue* calls it most properly Celestial; but he aims amiss in judging that it draws out humours, not as a simile attracting its simile, contrary to the Antients opinions, reason, and experience. For *Hippocrates* declares; (*lib. de nat. human.*) that purgative Medicaments have a certain congruity with the humours: *A Medicine* (sayes he) *when it is assumed into the body, first attracts whatsoever is consonant, and most like to its nature in the body, and afterwards draws down and purges away the rest.*

Which he proves clearly by this elegant comparison; As seeds and plants sown and eradicated in the ground, attract to themselves whatever in the earth is congruent to their nature, whether sharp or pleasant,

pleasant, bitter or salt, or whatsoever else they primarily or chiefly allure, as having propinquity with their essence.

Galen demonstrates this more clearly, illustrating it with many evidences, (*lib.* 1. *de nat. facult. & cap.* 23. *lib.* 3. *de simplic. & lib. de Ther.*) writing in express words, that the operations are effected and perfected by the property of the qualities, which are in the substances: therefore some purgative Medicaments, if perchance they be frustrated of their acquired purgation, do not hurt the body (as some foolishly have imagined) but become nutrimental; others are turned into corruption and poyson, yet a poysonous virtue is not alwayes mixed with them. Wherefore they do not alwayes hurt, when they do not purge, but they concoct and produce such humous as they should have educed, which never happens to stronger Medicaments.

Therefore purgative Medicaments, by a certain similitude and congruity to the substance, attract and educe humours, and by the same principle that the Loadstone attracts Iron, and Amber Straw, not Iron the Loadstone, or Straw Amber: for although there be a great similitude betwixt the Loadstone and the Iron, yet every simile is not the same, neither is the Loadstone Iron, nor the Iron a Loadstone; yet the thing attracting should be more potent than the thing attracted, and therefore the Iron, as weaker, is drawn, and draweth not.

Since Traction comes by the similitude of the substance, why doth not one Loadstone attract another, and one piece of Iron another?

I answer; One and the same thing doth not draw the same, but such things as have an affinity and similitude with them; so Agarick draws flegm, Rhabarb choler, Senna melancholy, because there is betwixt them a certain conjugal quality, or rather a convenience or similitude; which conformity is not altogether manifest; for Rhabarb differs much from choler, Agarick from flegm, and Senna from melancholy.

Although all Catharticks do attract humours, yet some of them do purge more especially by attraction, to wit, such as are of a more potent force, and have an excrementious humour, saith *Mesue*, as Scammony, Turbith, and Euphorbium; others by repression, as all the five Myrobalans, and Rhabarb; others by loosning and mollifying the belly, as Cassia, Tamurinds, and others, which onely by lenating and solving the belly, educe humours; as the herb Orage, Violets, Mallows, Sorrel, and many Pot-herbs.

Que attrahendo.

Que comprimendo.

Que lubricando.

CHAP.

Chap. X.

Of Medicaments, which besides their solution of the Belly cure many diseases, by an occult poperty.

MEdicinall Materialls, are as well innumerable as admirable, which assumed at the mouth, or applyed to the externall parts, by a certain occult vertue and specifiall propriety perfectly cureth: and undoubtedly preventeth present, and future distempers: or produceth other admirable effects; as before in some few we have demonstrated.

This occult faculty also is not only discernable in plants, but also in animalls, and minerals. For it is recorded that *Pirrhus* his thumb, by touching such as laboured under the distempers of the spleen, cured them; and that most Christian, and potent Monarch of *France*, cured the Kings Evill, with the touch of his hand: this occult and most effectuall quality, is also seen in dead bodyes: for *Simplicius* affirmes, that the mouth of the fish *Milvus*, doth draw Gold, to which also *Scaliger* sets seal. *Exercit* 102. & 112: The reines of *Scincus Marinus* pulverized, and drunk, with wine, or commixed with fit conserves and so taken, doth cause stiffness of the yard, and powerfully provoketh to Lechery.

Os Arium trahens.

Scaliger do-

A *Harts* pizzle dryed, pulverized, and drunk with *Coltfoot* or *Cardnus* water, is much commended against the Plurisy.

A Boares tooth pulverized and drunk, worketh the same effect, especially if taken at the beginning of the disease.

The *Monoceroes* his horn doth admirably defend the heart from poysons, and is much available in pestilent distempers.

The same effects are performed in the use of *Harts horn* and *Rhinoceroes* his horn. The huckle bone of an Oxe pulverized and drunk with *Oxymell*, doth mitigate the spleen.

The flesh of Hares burnt, sifted and drunk doth break and expell stones out of the bladder.

The skin of a Viper pulverized and Applyed to a bald place, doth admirably cause haires to grow where naturall humidity is not too much decayed. The same effect is wrought by rosted Mice, and anointing the place with honey.

A Cocks c mbe rosted, or boyled, and often eaten of, doth much and effectually help such as are possessed with Chollicks passions. *Galen. lib. de Theriac.*

A Goates hoof or its bladder, or Egg-shells burned and taken in drink, help those that pisse their beds.

Galen. lib. 8. *comp. med. Local.* writes, that a Wolfs liver, by a certain specificall property, will helpe diseases in the Liver.

An Aspes skin dryed, and pulverized, and mixed with honey, will cleer the eye-sight.

The excrements of animalls, by an occult property, expell certain diseases; as the dung of Peacocks the Epilepsy; the dung of Swallows and Doggs the Quinsy. Creatures Excrements.

Let these few examples suffice, that are assumed from animalls. That I may omit such as are hurtfull, as the Sea Hare, the Crampe-fish. For the one by an obscure vertue, affecting the Nerves stupifies them, the other hurts the Lungs. As Cantharides by Inflammation hurts the bladder, and stops the urine, or causes the strangury.

We may observe also (which is most to be admired) this same occult quality in many vegetables, and plants: as *Sarsaperilla*, *Lignum vitæ*, *Sasafras* and *China*, all which by a specificall property availe much in the cure of *Lues venerea*.

Ragwort or Satirion, and the hearb Kocket, causes the yard to stand; irritates Lust, and frequent copulations. The occult property of plants.

The Chast tre, and water Lyllyes on the contrary doth allay the ardor of Lust, extinguish seed, and hinder the excretion of the Stones. *Vitex aut Agnus Castus.*

Opium mitigates frensy and madness, and procures sleep, though be taken in a very little quantity: Misleto of the Oak pulverised and drunk, doth effectually cure the Epilepsy.

Dry grapes by a certaine sympathy are very commodious to the Liver.

Staves-acre, by vertue not well known; kills Lice; so Fleabane Gnatts.

Colewörth and Ivy cures Drunkennesse.

Ptarmica provokes to sneezing. As also both kinds of Hellebor.

Dittany by an occult property pulls out thornes and pricks, if thereunto applyed.

The Ash tree drives away serpents, and cures their bitings.

Stone-crop, Saxifrage, and Goates blood expell stones: Savine brings down the monthly tearmes, and the fruit of the wombe, whether alive or dead.

The greater Comfrey doth speedily close wounds.

Betony doth search maligne ulcers, and accellerate their cure.

Turpentine is the best Balsam to wounds, and doth both speedily and easily cure them.

But that which is most strange is this: that one plant in a certain part should have one effect, in another, a different or contrary one: as Chamomile flowers which help the head-ach by smelling to them, Variety of effects in the selfe same plant.

whose leaves are very hurtfull, if we credit *Galen. lib. 2. comp. Med. cap. 2.*

Sorrrell relaxes the Belly, the seed makes it costick.

The decoction of Colewort solves the belly. But the Colwort it self eaten, either binds it, or makes it more adust.

As also Cock-broth moves the belly, whilst its flesh binds, and *Gal. lib. de Ther. cap. 6.* assertes the same of Oysters and Cockles.

The wheyish or Butterish part of milk dissolves the belly, the cheesy part constraines and makes it costick.

Gallen thinks it a miracle that the decoction of Trefoile applyed plaisterwise to the bitings of Serpents and Vipers should presently asswage the paine thereof, and take out the poyson; whereas being applyed to a sound part, it provokes paines, yet the reason of this effect doth not seeme very obscure, nor far different from the nature and temperament of other hearbs. For it is no wonder if the Medicine, by whose help, the corrupt part was cured, and from which it drew some malignity or other, being applyed to a sound part, should leave an impression there of that malignity, whereof it participated.

But we intend to discourse more particularly and largely of the specificall, and admirable vertue of Quicksilver, in curing the Venerian disease, and of the occult and almost divine vertues of other mineralls.

Chap. XI.

Of simple Medicaments, which by a specificall property have respect to certain peculiar parts.

MAny simples are adjoyned with such a sympathy to certaine Parts; that either assumed, or applyed, or often by their very smell, help, refresh and free us from diseases. Yet I cannot conceive, that they are for this sympathy and correspondency so devoted to particular members, as thereon to spend all their effects, or not to confer any upon other parts, but that by a speciall faculty they respect this more than that, and that more than another part.

Cephalica. So that many are called Cephalicks, or head Medicaments that have their whole substance, congruent and familiar to the head; So fitted and prepared by the long experience and use of learned men, that with a certain kinde of sympathy, they may be with safety appropriated thereunto. As amongst aromaticks these following, Muske, Amber, Civet, Cloves, Mace, Cinamon, Calamus aromaticus, Squinant, Camphire, and amongst other more common simples, Betony, Rosemary,

Rosemary, Sage, Marjorum, Balm, *Stæchados*, the Mirtle-tree, the flowers of Betony, Clove-gilliflowers, and Orange.

Ophthalmick, or Eye-medicaments, are these, and such like, Eye-bright, Salendine, Fennil, Rue, and Clary; the grains whereof put under the eye-lids, for they are so small that they cause no sense or trouble, purge eyes exceedingly from corrupt matter. *Ophthalmica.*

Those are called Odonticks, which roborate the teeth, and cleanse them, as the Mastick-tree and Mirtle, Sage and Bay. *Odontica.*

All dulcid things are agreeable and pleasant to the Lungs; yet a certain herb, called Lung-wort, by a peculiar faculty is more especially attributed to the pains thereof.

If Foxes Lungs help, or any way profit Mens lungs, as many of the Antients believed, then it must happen through the familiarity of the substances; no other reason can be rendred. *Pulmonica.*

Reysons, Figs, Jujubees, Pistac-nuts, Dates and Honey, do somewhat refresh and benefit the Lungs, and that onely by their sweetness; Orrice, Maiden-hair, Hyssop, and Horehound, onely by attenuation.

Cardiacks or Cordials, are these and such like; Gold, Silver, pretious Stones, Cinnamon, and other suavolent Aromaticks; and also Borage, Bugloss, Carduus, Scabious, Goats-beard, Meadow-sweet, Violets, Roses, and Saffron. *Cardiaca.*

Stomachick, or Medicaments belonging to the Stomack, are Nut-megs, Mastick, Wormwood, Mint, and Dill; for these by a particular property help it; and also innumerable more benefit it, but that by heat rather than any special virtue, as Pepper, Ginger, Mustard, and Wine. *Stomachica.*

Hepaticks, or Medicaments proper to the Liver, are these; Tansy, Egrimony, Succory, Fumatory, Rhabarb. *Hepatica.*

Splenick, or Medicaments proper to the spleen, are Cetrack, Capars, Tamarisk, Epithymus, with many more, which for brevities sake I omit. *Splenica.*

Sage, Rosemary, and Primrose, by a certain property corroborate the Nerves, Ground-Pine the Arteries. *Nervalia.*

I shall not hereunto reduce such as respect several parts; for even a Critick Reader may be content with these; for a grain of Salt is sufficient for him that would know its virtue, and learn its taste.

Chap. XII.

Of Amulets, which carried or hanged up, do cure many Diseases by an occult virtue.

THose Remedies that are called *Periammata*, *Periapta*, and *Amuleta*, that is, tryed and suspended Medicaments, appertain to such as cure Diseases by an occult faculty: and they are of two kinds; one sort consists solely of characters and words, another of simple Medicaments hanged about the neck, or any other member of the body. Physicians laugh at the former, and reject it as a thing fabulous, delusive, uncertain, and incredulous: for we finde, that neither Physician nor Metaphysician ever spake thereof, unless some Cacodemoniack, that refers them to his Philosophy. But a Physician and Philosopher being a Moralist, and an Advancer of Nature, who in honesty of life and conversation, setting the fear of the Almighty before his eyes, assayes nothing, but by the just, good and lawfull rule prescribed by Nature, and doth not go about to deceive the ignorant and illiterate people with vain toyes, and unlawfull Arts; but studies the knowledge of things by their natural causes: for Knowledge is the understanding of a thing by its cause; and happy sure is he that knows the causes of things. Whence *Galen* concludes, that Medicine is not made for the Disease, but for the morbificous cause, which being removed, the effect is hindred. But Amulets neither take away the cause, the disease, nor symptomes, as those falsly perswade themselves, to whom they have been suspended, being deceived by their perswasion, who worship and invoke Devils; who also imagine, that all things may be done in their name, and by their virtue, without any other cause. Of which, and such like impious fellows, the Poet thus writes:

Amulets are of two sorts.

Periammata.

Gens invisa diis maculandi calida cæli,
Quæ nunc stare polos & fulmina mittere novit,
Æthera sub terras adigit, montésque revellit.

Which they perform two manner of wayes: for some by the virtue of most Divine names invoke and compell evil spirits, and that because every Creature fears and reverenceth his name that created: yet others more impious than these wicked men, submit themselves, offer sacrifice, and worship Devils.

The reason why Witches use onely evil spirits, is manifest; for good

good Angels are very seldome, and not without great difficulty obtained, because they wait on Gods command, and accompany none but such as are of a clear heart, and pious conversation. But evil spirits do yield themselves prompt and ready to be invoked, falsly favouring and feigning Divinity, they are alwayes present, that they may deceive, and that they may be worshipped and adored. *Cur cacodæmones ab improbis viris invocentur.*

Out of this Shop of Devil-adoring Witches issued all those Books of Darkness, which *Ulpianus* by no means will allow to be read, but ordains that forthwith they be burned. The first Founder whereof was (as it is recorded) one *Zabulus*, that was addicted to the illicite Arts. Afterwards succeeded one *Barnabas*, a Cyprian; and in our times, *Cornelius Agrippa*, and many other impious men; amongst which Crew, *Paracelsus* deserves not to have the lowest seat, whose impiety was accompanied with the baseness of all vices. *Libri improbatæ lectiones qui.* *Paracelsi impietas.*

Now since that these Characters and Amulets have issued out of these impious mens Shops, being grounded on no reason, and pestiferous to Mankinde, not onely Physicians, but also all Worshippers of God, ought to reject and abhor them. *Characteres inde prodierint.*

Yet *Fernelius*, that excellent Physician and Philosopher, yea, the most famous of our times, attributes great virtue to Words and Amulets. And certainly if we assent to the Hebrews, the best Authors of Virtue and Discipline, they tell us, we shall finde greater power in words, than natural things; *For* (say they) *whatsoever is in the minde, voice, word or speech, all that is in Scripture, the letters whereof are full of heavenly mysteries, are according to the position of the Stars; whence the great Creator of all things will have himself named by two letters*, A & Ω. *Vis verborum secundum Hebræos.*

Furthermore, the more critical *Matchiavels* of the Hebrews, do profess and promise to explain all things by the figure of Letters, and by the simplicity, composition, crookedness, defect, abundance, colligation, revolution, coronation, apertion, order, and transmutation of letters, points, and pricks. *Literarum figura.*

Words therefore and Characters are said to be powerfull in the curing of Diseases: and *Trallian* omitted not this way of curing. *To cure the Gout* (saith he) *dig up the herb Henbane before the Sun rise, when the Moon is in Aquarius, or Pisces, and say, Adjuro te, herba sacra, per sancta nomina Jaoth, Sabaoth, Adonai, Eloi, Deus, qui terram firmavit, & fixit mare fluviis abundans fluentibus, & qui exsiccavit uxorem Loth in statuam salinariam. Adjuro, inquam, te, ut sistas fluxionem pedum.*

For the Tooth-ach this ridiculous speech is given to some, *Galbes, galbat, Galde, galda.*

To stay an issue of blood, some use these words, *Charat, Cara, Sarite, Confirma, Consona, Imaholite.*

These words are given to some with a piece of bread, against the biting of a mad Dog, *Irioni, Rhicloti, Estera, Rhuder, Fere*; or these, with a piece of an apple, *Hax, Pax, Max, Deus, Adimax*, which he presently eats up.

That of *Quint. Serenus* of *Samos*, againſt the ſemi-tertian Feaver, is well known, to wit, *Abracadabra*, which is ſo deſcribed, that it ends broad below, and ſtrait above, like a Pine-apple, even to the laſt letter, and ſo it is annexed to the neck.

A thin plate of Gold engraven with theſe words, ιησο ιησου, and hung about the neck, cures bleared eyes, or purblindneſs, according to *Marcellus*.

That thou mayſt ſtay bleeding, touch the part with thy ring-finger, and repeat theſe words, *Socnon, Socnon*, twenty ſeven times, or as oft as thou wilt, till the iſſue ceaſe; it is good, and much profitable, if you rightly conſider it.

To cure the Felon, or ſoar under a mans nail, touch the part with thy finger, (ſaith *Marcellus*) and drawing thy finger back again, ſay thrice, *Pu, pu, pu, Nunquam ego te videam per parietem repere.*

So doth the ſame *Marcellus* fooliſhly perſwade the cure of Lippitude, or Purblindneſs. *Take* (ſaith he) (*cap. 8. lib. de medic.*) *a Fly with thy left hand, and whil'ſt thou catcheſt it, repeat his name on whom thou art to work this cure, and ſay that thou catcheſt the Fly to cure his eyes; then binde her alive in a linnen cloth, and hang it about the neck of him or her that is affected, and look not behind thee.*

Many examples of the like ſort may be read in *Mercury, Marcellus, Trallian, Albertus, Villanovanus*, and amongſt thoſe in latter time, in *Fernelius, lib. 2. de abdit. rerum cauſ.* all which (moſt ſage men) attribute ſuch virtue to words, that they believe them to be able to ſubvert nature. *Apuleius* alſo, that learned man, aſſerts, that by a magical ſuſurration, ſwift running rivers are turned back, the ſlow ſea gathered on a heap, the winds unanimouſly and with great force ſent forth, the ſun ſtaid, the ſtars deduced, the day abbreviated, the night continued: of which the Poet ſaith,

Levis Poetarum credulitas.

Carmine vel cœlo poſſunt deducere Lunam;
Carminibus Circe ſocios mutavit Ulyſſis.
Frigidus in pratis cantando rumpitur anguis,
Atque ſatas alio vidi traducere meſſes.

As alſo *Ovid.*

Cum volui, ripis ipſis mirantibus, amnes
In fontes rediere ſuos, concuſſaque ſiſto.

Alſo *Lucan.*

Ceſſavere vices rerum, dilataque longa
Hæſit nocte dies, legi non paruit æther,
Torpuit & præceps audito carmine mundus.

But the power of words is moſt apparent in repelling Diſeaſes; for either ſpoken, or engraven and carried, do diſſolve many affections with wonderfull celerity, which, as *Pomponatus* relates, no little exerciſed

exercised a certain Physicians ingenuity and judgement, admiring such things; for when he had undertaken the cure of two boyes, the one whereof laboured under a disease not unlike Erysipely, the other had fallen into the fire; now a certain man intervening, cured those boyes with words onely, and Charms. He adds moreover, that out of another who had a sword so fastned in him, that it could be got out by no medicinal Art, which notwithstanding the same man drew out by the same method of curing. *Historiæ notatu dignæ.*

In almost every Town there are certain old women who can cure the diseases of the Matrix by words unknown to any; for so much they profess and promise, and sometimes perform, not without great admiration.

I could relate a thousand more examples, which because they are ridiculous and foolish, I judge them better to be omitted; for in those that are bettered by these words, either suspended or rehearsed, the cure comes rather by a certain opinion, than any virtue in them.

One was not ashamed to assert, that he was freed from a Feaver by an Amulet, in which these words were written, *Sancti Petre & Paule stultum hunc persanate*, that is, *Saint Peter and Saint Paul cure this fool.* Another was restored to health by this Amulet, *Rapiat eum Dæmon & similes ejus*, that is, *The Devil take him and such like.* But I relate these sore against my will: we will now turn our discourse to others more approved. Those Amulets which consist of simple Medicaments, tyed or suspended, are not altogether disapproved of by Physicians; indeed they often produce salutary effects by an occult property. For Experience teacheth us, that the root of Peony hanged about the neck, cures the Epilepsy; Misleroe will do the same, as also a piece of an Elks hoof included in a ring. Wolfs-dung applyed plaister-wise about the middle, will mitigate the cholerick pains, saith *Aetius*, (*cap.* 13. *tet.* 3. *ser.* 4.) Their intestines dryed, and applyed to the belly, have like effects; the root of Hounds-tongue hung about the neck, cures the blackness of the tongue, which the unskilfull Vulgars call Canker; for some things of small quantity and bigness, by contract onely produce greatest alterations, saith *Galen*, (*cap.* 5. *lib.* 6. *de loco aff.*) Dittany being applyed, doth by an incredible property draw out Darts; Quicksilver carried about with us, frees us from many pestilent Diseases; the stone *Æthites* bound betwixt the paps, or on the ventricle, doth retain the young; but being annexed to the thigh, precipitates the birth. Which also is recorded of the root of Henbane. The gem *Selenitis* put into a ring, onely by touching the flesh, stayes blood flowing from any part. The green Jasper suspended, helps the stomack, and the mouth of the ventricle, as *Aetius* testifies, (*cap.* 35. *tet.* 1. *ser.* 2.) The Heraclean stone, commonly called the Loadstone, besides its faculty of attracting Iron, being onely holden in the hand, it eases the grief of the Gout both in the hands and feet. He that will carry the feet and the fore-

fore-legs of the Lobster, he shall not fear the coming of a Boar. See *Democritus in Geopon.*

Ictheri curatio miranda.

The curing of the Jaundies is also to our purpose here; which is then effected, when the diseased attentively beholds that Bird which *Holerius* calls *Galbula*, that is, Woodwall; the French give it the name of *Loriotus*. And it is wonderfull, that this Bird cannot endure the sight of him that hath the Jaundies.

curatio morsus venenati per musicam.

Also the cure of the bitings of *Tarantula*, a beast like a Lizard, hath respect to this discourse, which may not be cured by Medicaments, but onely by Musick.

I have known and heard of many such like cures, which I omit for brevity sake.

Chap. XIII.

Of Poysons.

There is also an occult quality in Poysons, of which Physiologers, and searchers of natural things, do sometimes speak, as also impious Witches: the Physiologers, that they might acknowledge the prudence and sagacity of the Omnipotent Nature, in good as well as pernicious things, and contemplate the Ornament of the World: but those Witches, more pestilent than Pestilence it self, and most pernicious Enemies of Mankinde, that they might exanimate and extirpate out of the world all those whose life and fortunes they envy or hate. For they most artificially adulterate the taste, odour, and colour of Poysons, which they so craftily convey into Meats and Medicaments, that they may deceive the most wise and wary, and in stead of Bread give them a Stone, in stead of a Fish a Scorpion, instead of Sugar a sugared Poyson. And so good men are not so safe from evil men, as all men from Scorpions, and other destructive Beasts.

Of which the Physician speaks, as the Logician of Sophisms and Fallacies, which he admonishes us to observe and avoyd, as the Theologer speaks of Vice, which he perswades us to shun. Neither doth he treat of evil, that thence good might follow; wherein he differs from the Physician, who disalloweth of poysonfull Sorcerers, and yet treats of Poysons, either as they are generated, or by ill luck ingested into our bodyes, or else as they are requisite to the curing of malign diseases; otherwise to discourse of them, or use them, is pernicious. And indeed *Galen*, (*cap.* 42. *lib.* 2. *de Antidot.*) reproves them that teach composition of Poysons, as *Horummendesius*, *Aratus*, *Heliodorus* the Athenian, and *Orpheus*.

Improbantur, qui venena componunt.

Yet doth he himself write largely concerning poysonous Simples,

as before him *Dioscorides*, and after both *Nicander*, that they might be known, avoyded, and by the advice of a learned and skilfull Physician, used in some diseases. For Arsenick is sometimes applyed to the dead flesh in Ulcers, Vipers oil to Pocks-marks, pimples, and corrupt swellings; Scorpions oil to their stings; a hair of a mad Dog to the wound made by his own teeth. Trochisks made of Vipers, both internally assumed, and externally applyed, to all poysonous affections and diseases.

Poysons also are not onely put into, but sometimes generated in the body, as *Galen*, (*cap.* 5. *lib.* 6. *loc. aff.*) which produces both like affections and effects, as those that come by pernicious poyson drunk, or otherwise assumed; for a Plague is a Poyson which is sometimes generated in the body without any manifest cause; and the Sperm retained in Histerick women, is partaker of a poysonous quality. Dogs also in the heat of Summer easily become mad. But these things are to be fore-known by Physicians, that they may preserve health without fault, and drive away all diseases. *Venena in corpore hominis interdum genita.*

And although Poysons be destructive, yet by custome they become nutritive; for I think the story of the Girl is sufficiently known, of which *Avicenna*, *Rufus*, and *Gentilis* speak, who being fed with Poyson onely from her Infancy, was so infectious, that her breath was pestiferous and destructive to such as came near her. *Venena aliquando nutrive.* *Historia.*

Another woman lived at *Coleyn* in *Germany*, who, as *Albertus* relates, did usually eat Spiders, whereas one Spider bruised in Wine would kill many.

One *Porus*, King of *India*, did daily eat Snakes and Poysons, who being a long time nourished with this kinde of Aliment, was so poysonfull, that he would kill men by his touch or breath, or by his spitting, as a Serpent, or any other poysonous Creature. *Rex anguivorus.*

There is a certain kinde of men in the Hellespont, who are nourished with Poysons onely; and thence they are fitly called *Ophiogenes*, that is to say, generated of Serpents. *Ophiogenes.*

The Marsians and Psyllians delighted much in the same nutriment, who feared not at all the bitings and poysons of Serpents; which was experienced in one of that Family, *Exagon* by name, who by the Decree of the Roman Consuls was put into a Hogshead filled with Serpents, who nevertheless escaped without detriment. (*Plin. cap.* 29. *lib.* 6.)

Athenagoras the Grecian, as it is related, could not be hurt by Scorpions. The same is affirmed of the Ethiopians that inhabit neat the River *Hydaspes*.

Galen makes mention (*lib.* 3. *simp. cap.* 13.) of a certain Athenian woman, which had often eat a great quantity of Hemlock, without any prejudice to her health. *Sext. Emperic.* hath the same story of another old woman.

'Tis generally reported of *Lysis*, that she would eat Opium in a great

great quantity, without impairing her health; and I saw a woman of *Nemoxium*, who daily took half a dram of the same.

A certain maid of *Crete* did kill several with her looks, and bring boyes into a consumption. What need of more? they that are accustomed to Poysons, are free from the mischief of them.

Whence Poyson proceeds.

Poysons are drawn either from Plants, Animals, or Minerals. From Plants, as from all kinds of Poppy, from Henbane and Mandrakes; whose qualities, though they be poysonous, yet often times effectual for curing many Diseases. And those very things which sometimes are present poyson both to man and beast, yet being rightly handled, prepared, and applyed, they are a secure help.

Poysons sometimes are medicamental.

The herb Wolfs bane is poyson, yet it is added to Ophthalmick Medicaments; and Hemlock, though poysonous, yet effectual in extinguishing Tetters, Ulcers, and Leprous spots.

Nerium also drunk in Wine, is good against the bitings of Serpents. House-leek killeth the Ringworm, and spreading soars. All kinds of Night-shade, rightly applyed, doth mitigate any pain.

But all these, according to *Dioscorides*, are poysonous; as also *Ranunculus*, *Esula*, *Hermodactylus*; yet the use thereof is not onely wholsome, but effectual in many distempers. As also *Aconitus*, *Herba Paris*, yea Antimony and *Stibium*, and many others, are both medicamental and poysonous, for they both cure and kill.

Mushrooms also are not altogether Medicaments, but sometimes Aliment, and sometimes Poyson; for by the use of these, five young Students of *Paris* were killed; and yet Courtiers are much taken with such Dishes.

I shall not here renumerate other poysonous Plants, which are daily and fortunately put to medicinal uses, for it may suffice that I have touched upon a few, because it is not necessary, neither can they all be comprehended in one Chapter.

Medicines daily assumed from poysonous Animals.

Medicaments also are taken from poysonfull Animals; for the flesh of *Stinci marini* is often given to decayed Nature to excite Venery.

Vipers do admirably benefit such as are leprous; as also Snakes, whose flesh rightly prepared, is a sure Antidote against many Poysons.

Sea-dragon is both Poyson and Aliment.

That which is asserted *de Dracone marino*, exceeds credit; for he hath a sharp pointed bone upon his back, so noxious to man, that whomsoever he pricks, is precipitated to death, unless he be helped in time; yet his flesh is both pleasant and wholsome nutriment, insomuch that the common sort of Frenchmen call it Flesh of Life. And so it may seem wonderfull, that some Animals do at once suggest Aliment, Nutriment, and Poyson; for some part of them is life, in others death to the Assumers.

Yet 'tis very strange that poysonfull Animals, whose bodies are enemies to ours, and present death, should by application safely cure the wounds and bitings that they themselves have made; and they alone,

alone, in many cases, are able to free us from such wounds, and the perils ensuing. The reason is, because one simile attracts another to it; and as it were revoking its own substance, frees the part affected from Poyson. So Crocodiles grease cures those that are smitten by him; and those that are hurt with Scorpions, are cured by the same, bruised and applied plaisterwise; *Mus Araneus* will work the same effect, if pulverised when it hath bitten any.

It is also worthy our notice taking, that Poyson doth not onely attract Poyson, but also extract pricks and darts out of our bodies without pain, which can scarce be by any strength or art effected.

Many small Creatures are altogether noxious to humane bodies, and yet usefull and commodious to health; as Cantharides, the Venemous Fly *Bupréstis*, Salamanders, Palmer-worms, a Sea-hare, a Toad, a Fen frog; for we use Cantharides, Lizards, Scorpions, and Ants daily and effectually to the outward parts, but not to the inward; for it is altogether unsafe to put those Creatures into the body which are naturally endowed with an evil quality. Thus did one *Agyrta*, a forreign and unskilfull Physician, apply Cantharides to a man well known to be honest, but not wise, who desired a Medicament to provoke him to Venery; which sent him not to the pleasant Fields of *Venus*, but to the Boat of *Charon*.

Idem fecit maledictus ille Hebræus Francofurtanus, Aaron vocatus, qui ante biennium ad Cacodæmones suas abiit.

Yet there are some, although noxious, which hurt either by biting or touching; which being prepared by expert Artificers, and prescribed by skilfull Physicians, and opportunely applyed, do not onely no hurt, but produce admirable and salutary effects; for Wine, wherein by mischance a Viper had been suffocated and extinguished, cured a Leper, long before separated from the society of his Fellow-Citizens. A Snake may perform and effect the same. What then will their flesh do, skilfully prepared?

Many efficacious Poysons also are drawn from Minerals, and these as well growing of their own accord, as Quick-silver, red Lead, Parget, Vitriol, Sory, Sandarach, the Loadstone, crude Antimony, also the Adamant: as those that are made such by Art, as Sublimate Chalk, Verdegrease, Ceruse, *Aqua fortis*, and almost innumerable others, which are much better unknown, than known; for it is enough to treat of some Simples beneficial to some Diseases, amongst which some are to be preferred before others, as less averse to nature, and more conducing to health.

Ex mineralibus venena multa.

Chap. XIV.

Of the faculties of those Medicaments in general, which are named from their effects.

WE have before shewed, that some Medicaments respect and corroborate some parts by a specifical virtue, as Cephalick respect the head, Ophthalmick the eyes, Pulmoniack, Hepatick, the Lungs, Liver, Spleen, and others, other parts, from whence they had their denomination: Now we shall speak briefly and generally of such as are named from their effects, that the Apothecary may have in readiness the name and knowledge of Medicaments, with their respective quality, to the proposed and desired effects. For since names are the marks of things, if they be conveniently and rightly fitted to them, they will more aptly teach, guide, and direct the Artificer.

Medicamentorum appellatio a quibus.

But almost all Medicaments retain their Greek idioms first imposed on them. Some named from the Arabian Language, have scarce re-obtained their first and proper euphony; yet have they in process of time been somewhat refined. Medicaments therefore from their effects are thus named by Classical Authors.

A Medicament is called *Cathartick*, or purging, because by some way it draws noxious humours out of our bodies, as by vomiting, or secession.

Physicians call that *Cholagogon*, or a choler-purging Medicament, which extracts cholerick humours; that which purges flegm, *Phlegmagogon*; that which purgeth melancholy, *Melanagogum*; that which purgeth watry or liquid humours, *Hydragogum*; and that which purgeth all humours, *Panchymagogon*.

Another Medicament is called *Polychrestum*, because it is of much use.

Eccoproticon is reckoned amongst the benign Medicaments, and is so called, because it onely moves the dregs.

Those are called *Hypercatharctica*, or too much purging Medicaments, which first purge that humour to which it is congruent and familiar, afterwards other humours more apt to follow; last of all, blood; so that they cause the Bloody Flux.

They are called *Emetica*, that provoke vomiting, and educe the humours by the mouth.

They are called *Alliotica*, that is, altering, which alter any distemper, as hot alters cold, cold hot, moyst dry, *Euchyma* and *Cacochyma*, that

that is meats of good & evill juice, have respect to aliments, and those are called *Euchyma*, which get good blood, those *Cacochyma*, that get ill blood, they are called *Epicerastica*, which afford good juice by little and little, in stead of ill juice leasurely drawn out, whence comes *Epicrasis*, that is, a leasurely evacuation of vitious juice.

That Medicament is called *Hypnotycum*, which rather causes drowsinesse than sleep. (*Galen. lib. 9. Method.*) and that is called *Narcoticum*, which doth not only cause sleep, but stupidity, and oftentimes *Necrosy* or death.

That is called *Ureticum*, which by dividing, relaxing, and compelling the passages, moves the urine and gravell, and often expells them.

They are called *Lithontriptica* that is Saxifrage, which break or sever the stones or pebles in the bladder, and eject them.

That is called *Anodynum* which delineates and mitigates any paine with a moderate heat, it is called also *Paregoricum*, and sometimes *Lysiponium* that is a labour easing, or pain mitigating medicament.

That Medicament is in generall called *Chalasticum*, which eases the part to which it is applyed, or refreshes it with moderate heat; but taken strictly it is that onely which relaxeth and cureth any swelling, without excesse of any quality, as fat, butter, grease, &c.

That poysonous Medicament, which divides and opens the orifices, and excites the blood to an issue by its heat or acrimony, is called ἀνακαυματικὸν, such as be Ramsons, Savine, Leeks, Sow-bread, and many others.

The Greeks call a repercussive Medicament, καταπιστικὸν, becaus by its refrigerating and binding power, it repells the humours breaking out into the members: as Plaintain, *Sorbe Ayles*, the hearb Mouse-eare: other repell by a refrigerating quality only, as water and other such repercussours, *Galen. lib.* 14. *Method.*) but according to *Galen* and *Oribasius*, all repelling Medicaments are onely to be used in the beginning of a fluxe.

That is called *Helcticum* or *Epispasticum* which draweth the humors downwards; and it is contrary to repelling Medicaments, for it is hot and thin, but repercussives, cold and grosse *Galen. lib.* 10 *compos. Med. loc. cap.* 25. *lib.* 1. *sympos. c.* 16. *lib.* 5. *simplic.* And every hot Medicament draweth, every cold one repells. That which is hot in the second degree, doth apparently draw; that which is hot in the third partly drawes, and partly disposes, and it is called μετασυγκριτικὸν. Now there are foure different kinds of attracting Medicaments. Some draw by an Elementary quality, which are hot in the second degree; Others by accident, as in putrefaction, and of this sort, Leaven hath the strongest attractive quality, others by a certain similitude, as poysons attract poyson, others by an occult property, As Dittany attracts and extracts pricks and darts, the Loadstone Iron. *Attrahentia quadruplicia.*

That is called διαφορητικὸν, which whether internally assumed, or externally

ternally applyed, doth not only open the passages by attenuation and scowring, but which cutts, divides, and resolves obvious humours by sweat or breath. Of which there are two kindes, some weaker called διαπνοικὰ that is relaxing, which indeed are hot and subtill; but doe not dry up, which rather dispose the humors for resolution, than resolve them: The matter of resolving Medicament is abundant, for all those that are moderately hot in the second, and hot in the third degree, and subtil, resolve.

That which is called στυπτικὸν, or σωματικὸν, that is stopping or obstructing is contrary to that which is called *Anastomoticum*, for it obstructs the entry of the vessells, and hinders evacuations, because its substance is grosse, and therefore obstructive.

That is called πυκνωτικὸν, that is closing, which hath power, but more unable and weak to obstruct, and it onely closes the pores of the skin as *Stegnoticum* doth the orifices of the veines.

That is called ἐμπλαστικὸν, that is clammy, which applyed to any place sticks tenaciously, and obstructs the pores of the skin, and fils them with much stuffe, as Rosin or Gum.

Some are also called *Emphrastica*, which obstruct the pores with a glewish humour, and fill them with clammy matter.

A condensing Medicament called by the Greeks παχυντικὸν, is that which makes liquid and subtill juices more grosse, its power consists in grosse and terrestriall matter, void of all Acrimony.

The Med. called λεπτυντικὸν, is contrary to this, which attenuates grosse and compact humour, and variously dissolves them. It is of a very subtill substance, whether cold, as vinegar, or hot, as *Aqua vitæ*, otherwise called *Aqua vini*, and by many Alcumists an *Elixir*, or quintessence.

That is called ἐκφρακτικὸν, that is a pore-opening Medicament, which delivers the passages from viscid and clammy humors, & its faculty is various according to the various manner of the humour causing obstruction, for that obstruction, which proceeds from a glewish juice, must be dissolved by an attenuating, and cutting Ecphracticke, that obstruction which is hard withall must be resolved by a mollifying quality.

That is called μαλακτικὸν, that is, mollifying, which mollifies a hard body as (a hard boyle) and reduces it to its naturall state, and it is at least hot in the second degree, and temperate, both in humidity, and siccity, *cap.* 4. & 8. *lib.* 5. *simpl.*) that which is more temperate in heat is rather a cause of imposthumes. But that which is applyed to a hard swelling caused by siccity, should be both more moist and moderate, in heat, as oyle of much marrow.

That is called διαπυητικὸν, or a suppuratory, which is most congruent and like to our nature, and as it were a symmetry of heat and moisture (*c.* 5. 7. & 8. *lib.* 5. *simpl.*) whence if our finger be put to any part, where we desire to change the matter into corruption, if it be long therein detained, it shall easily make a suppuration, but mollifying

fying Medicaments are hotter, yet not so hot, that they discusse by that quality their exuperant humidity, and therefore suppurating Medicaments performe what they may, rather by quantity, and mollifying by quality than any other thing.

To the former πεπαντικὸν, is very simular: but taken strictly, it is a Medicament which concocts the humour, *Diapyeticum* is that which changes it into corruption.

That is called ῥυπτικὸν, or cleansing, which purges out all grosse and subtill humours and all filth, whence it is called a purgative Medicament: It is altogether bitter of taste, full of salt, and drying; that is called, ἔναιμον, which is applied to green wounds, it is also called ἐγκαιμὸν, that is, a blood-stenching Medicament.

That Medicament is called σαρκωτικὸν, or incarnative, which is effectuall in regenerating flesh, and it is dry in the first degree, and cleanseth moderately, and without paine. (*cap.* 15. *lib.* 5. *simpl.* & 3. *Method.*)

That Medicamnet is called κολλητικὸν, or glutinatory, which conjoynes and agglutinates parts disjoyned, that they may returne to their naturall unity, when it is applyed to bloody wounds, ἔναιμον, & τραυματικὸν, by some *Symphyticum & Aggregativum.*

That is called κατακλαστικὸν, which is effectuall in solidating broken bones, and in conjoyning flesh-pores.

That is called ἐπουλωτικὸν, or *Synuloticum*, which makes a skar in the ulcer, which it doth by its most efficacious siccity and astriction, for this is dry in the third degree, *Coleticum*, in the second, and *Sarcoticum* in the first onely.

That Medicament is called καθαιρετικὸν, which consumes the superfluous flesh, to which it is applyed, and reduces the part to its native superficies, whence it is called of some σκληραγωγὸν, it is hot in the third degree.

That Med. is called ἐσχαρωτικὸν, which by burning the part, to which it is applyed by its most vehement and fiery heat, it leaves a pill, or crust upon it, as sublimate, or a Caustick.

That Medicament is called σηπτικὸν, that is, putrifying, which partakes of some maligne quality, and destroyes and putrifies the place it touches, by induring its stink and ill quallity, as *Sandarach* the Monks hood, and such like.

Some are called ἐκπωματικὰ, which take away hard thick skin, and these may easily be used in their stead, which are called *Catharetica*, that is superfluous-flesh-consuming Medicaments.

And since these are the chief names taken from the effects of Medicamentall faculties, we will omit those that are of lesse use.

CHAP.

Chap. XV.

Of the choice of purging Medicaments in generall.

IF an Apothecary ſufficiently know theſe three things, he is moſt expert in his Art, to wit to ſelect, prepare, and compound Medicaments; now Election denotes knowledge, for no man can well ſelect, and diſcerne this good from that evill, unleſſe he have known both: preparation alſo preſuppoſes an induſtrious artificer, who being long exerciſed in the Art, doth correct and amend maligne ſimples many wayes, as by fire, water, and his hand, making the good better, and weak ſtronger, and of more vertue. And there is no compoſition without election and preparation, for a confuſion of many ſimples together is no compoſition.

Delectus quid. Therefore to elect Medicaments, ſhould be an Apothecaryes firſt duty and imployment: which choiſe is thus defined. Election is a ſeparation and diſtinction of that which is evill from that which good, of the noxious from the innoxious, and of the maligne from the benigne. Now that is a benigne purging medicament, which purges gently, and looſes the belly calmely, as *Caſſia*, *Manna*, *Tamarinds* and *Rhabarbe*; and that is a maligne and unwholeſome medicament, which purges by a violent traction, and diſturbes our bodyes, by reaſon of that adverſe eſſence it hath to our natures.

Benignum Medicamentum quid.

Malignum.

Medicamentum malignum quotuplex. This malignant medicament is twofold, the one totally ſo, to wit whoſe univerſal genus is violent and unruly, of what ſort ſoever it be, or whenceſoever it is taken, as *Euphorbium*, Laurel, Antimony. The other in ſome ſpecies, or by accident in ſome individual of its genus, which hath revolted and degenerated from its proper nature, as black Agarick, black Turbit, Colocynth, only in the Plant, or of one plant in the field, *Meſue* onely in Plants or of the Aple-trees in the field, becauſe it is believed to take away all bitternes and malignity of the field and plants.

Quando malignis purgantibus liceat uti. But we ought to abſtain from both theſe kinds of malignant purges, unleſſe in ſome great affections, in which gentle, little or nothing profit; for then a skilfull Phyſician may uſe malign medicaments duely prepared, becauſe even poyſons are ſalutary in ſome diſeaſes, as Vipers fleſh to the Leproſy, Scorpions fleſh, to wounds made by themſelves, madd doggs blood to them that are bitten by a mad-dogg, whence is that Proverb: *Thoſe that are wounded by Scorpions, ſeek remedy from the ſame.*

We muſt alſo abſtain from benigne purges, unleſſe they be rightly,

in

in a just quantity, and seasonably administred, and also exhibited to such as they may profit, for *Hippocrates* saith, *Aphoris.* 14. *lib.* 4. that a purging medicament is noxious to them that have their health according to that (*Matth.* 9.) *The whole need not a Physician.*

Quando à benignis abstinendum.

CHAP. XVI.

Whence the Election of purgiug Medicaments may be taken.

THe Election of a purging Medicament is made from its essence; nature, and faculties, we call the essence of every Medicament, that very state, which arises from its matter and forme, or that all which is seen, or consisteth absolutely in a Medicament without any preparation.

Essentia medicamenti quid.

And we call the faculty of a Medicament, that very vertue it doth, or can exercise in our bodies.

Facultas medicamenti quid.

Now the substance first qualities, or temperament, second qualities ensuing the temper and the disposition externally acquired, shew the good or ill essence of a Medicament, now we understand by the name substance, the commoderation and consistency of the matter, which flowes from the proportionable mixture of the Elements, whence some are said to be heavy, or light, others dense or rare, others grosse, or subtill, others clammy or friable, from which differencies a certain disposition and proper faculty is ingendred, whereby we may distinguish betwixt the good and evill in the same genus.

Substantiæ medicamentorum.

In the second place Election may be made from the prime qualityes, that is from the Temperament, of which there are eight different kinds, hot, cold, moist, dry, which are called simple qualities, and as many compound hot and moist, hot and dry, cold and moist, cold and dry, to which may be added the mean temperament, in which consists the nature of man, from which flow divers other temperatures, some in one, some in two, some in three, and some in four degrees; and therefore the excesse of severall degrees is distinguished.

Temperamenti quot differentiæ.

Thirdly, the Election is taken from the second qualities, which especially differ in four kinds, for some are tangible, others odorable, others gustable, and others visible; audible qualities are omitted, because no certain election can be made by them. Now those are tangible qualities which can be discerned by the judgment of the touch, some whereof are the properties of the Elements, to wit, in which the first qualities hot, cold, moist and dry, are discerned by the touch, others arise from the temperament, and are called second qualities, by whose means the Medicament is heavy or light, hard or

Secundæ qualitates quot differentiis includuntur.

soft, clammy, or friable, sharp or smooth as above.

Odor quid. Fourthly, Medicaments may be selected from their odour, which is a certain vaporous substance proceeding from an odorable matter, which brought into the nostrills, moves the sence of smelling, and there are as many kinds of them, as sapors: for odors concord with sapours in proportion, and for the most part borrow their demonstrations from them, yet are not the species of odours so distinct as them of sapours, becausе the sense of smelling in men is very dull; hence it is that there are a thousand kinds of odours that want proper names. and therfore all odorables are generally distinguished into well smelling, and ill smelling things.

Sapor quid. *Sapores quot.* Fiftly, the judgement in Election may be guided by the Taste of Medicaments, and that more surely than by Odours; becausе there are more distinct species of sapors than of Odours (*lib. 4. simpl. Med. Gal. cap. 21.*) for sapour is a quality that may be perceived by the sense of Tasting, whereof there be nine different species, three whereof flow from over-powering calidity in a substance, grosse or subtill, to wit, sharpe, bitter, salt, three from exuperant frigidity, sowre, austere, unpleasant; and three from moderate heat, pleasant, fat, unsavory, the last whereof inclines to frigidity, pleasant & fat to heat.

Selectio medicamentorum à dispositione extrinseca. Sixtly, Medicaments may be selected by a disposition extrinsecally acquired, which arises from the season or place (*Gal. cap. 2. lib. 4.*) *Mesue*, addes Magnitude, Parvitude, and Number, for by these the quality of the Medicament is of more or lesse force. A certain and universall rule cannot be given concerning the temper and choise of Medicaments by their colour and sound, that thereby the benigne may be discerned from the malignant: for seeing all benignity and malignity of Medicaments consists in the substance, temperament and faculties, cold, moist, hot and dry, are found in all colours. Neither do the colours themselves shew the temperament of the Medicaments, for the colour of a medicament may very easily be changed by some externall accident.

The judgement also of the benignity & malignity of a medicament from its sound is as uncertain as from its colour: for there is no universall, but onely a particular and accidentall knowledge thereof, as in *Cassia*, *Carthamus*, and some few more.

Chap. XVII.

How Election of Medicaments may be made from the things premised.

EVery Cathartick attracts the humour most like it self; but *Mesue* asserts that some purge more particularly by attraction, as all those that are more valid; some by repression as Stypticks, some by lenitude, as viscid and lubricating Medicaments, and some

some by mollifying, as most Malacticks. But of those that purge by Traction, those are to be judged better that are lighter, and the heavier malignant; for the levity of a substance shews its subtilness and rarity; gravity its crassitude and density. Now those that consist of gross matter, do hurt more; as also those that have superfluous humidity; by how much they are lighter, by so much better; unless they be decayed; for those that are lighter have less superfluous humidity, which subverts the ventricle, and causes pain. *Eorum, quæ trahendo purgant, quænam meliora.*

The state of those that purge by repression from a Styptick faculty consisting in the terrestrial matter, which through their native condition and temper are solid, not rare, is contrary to the former; which are to be judged of from their plenitude or vacuity, because these naturally should be gross, not rare; for by how much these are heavier, by so much better. As also those that purge by leniating, lubricating, and mollifying, because the faculty of mollifying and lubricating proceeds from humidity, which necessarily supposes gravity. But that humidity is natural, and of its proper temper, not excrementious, which makes the Medicaments better. *Quæ comprimendo purgant quomodo feligenda.*

We may judge of rare and dense substances, as of light and heavy, for levity concomitates rarity, as density doth gravity, for the tearms are reciprocal: but thin and friable are not the same, for every friable thing is not thin, nor every pliant gross, nor on the contrary: but if any Medicament be thin and pure, it must necessarily be friable and tender; and if any Medicament be gross and impure, it will be viscid and clammy; these excepted in pliant humid substances, as Honey, Manna, Butter, Oil; that which is purer is better, and what impurer worse. That is properly called gross, which cannot easily be made smooth, or which cannot be bruised into thin parts; and that thin, which can easily be so reduced. That is called thick or dense, that can pass through none or few Orifices. That rare, which is apt to pass through many. That is heavy, which being compact, is more conspicuous by weight than magnitude. That light, which is less in weight than bigness. That which is pliant is so much opposite to that which is friable; that the pliant can scarce be wrought upon by pulling or bruising; whereas the friable is bruised to powder, even with a touch or weight of a finger.

Crassum. *Tenue.* *Densum.* *Rarum.* *Grave.* *Lentum.* *Friabile.*

Now for matter of Temperaments; in simple Temperatures hot Medicaments are better than cold; and moyst than dry; in compounds, hot and moyst are most wholsome, cold and dry most dangerous. But if the election be made from degrees of intention, whereas mans temperament is moderate, by how much the Medicament comes nearer mans temper, by so much it is more wholsome; and by how much it is more remote, by so much more malignant. So that what Medicament soever is four degrees distant from the mean, that Medicament is worst; and those Medicaments that exceed the extream of four degrees, are rather to be adjudged Poysons than Medicaments.

De delectu in secundis qualitatibus.

Now we may thus judge of Medicaments, by reason of their second qualities, as of Tangibles; when one Medicament of the same kinde is hard, another cold; one sharp, and another smooth; in these the soft is to be preferred before the hard, and the smooth before the sharp or rough. We call that hard, according to *Galen*, (*cap ult. lib. 3. de differ. puls.*) which is harder than our flesh, or to which our flesh yields; and that contrary wise soft, which yieldeth to our flesh; and both of them become such two manner of wayes, to wit, either by Nature, or by Art. That also is called smooth, that hath an equal superficies. That rough, which hath an unequal one, by reason of some parts higher, others lower in it; as in Prunes, Sebestens, Myrobolans, and many more.

Durum quid.

Molle quid.

Leve & asperum quid.

Delectus ab odore.

Now election of Medicaments may be made from Odour; for this cause, because a sweet or pleasant smell refreshes the spirits, restores strength and vigour to them, exhilarates the principal members and parts, and corroborates their faculties. An ill and stinking smell on the contrary burthens and aggravates the head, vexes the heart, subverts the ventricle, infects the spirits, moves a loathing, causes grievous and laborious purgings, and oftentimes vomitings. And therefore such purging Medicaments are obdulcorated with cordial Electuaries, whereby their ingratefull odour is amended, and the principal parts fortressed against the malign quality of these Medicaments; for all odoriferous Spices are the fountain and principle of life. Wherefore a good smell is to be preferred before an ill; for an ill smell hurts the heart and brain, and a good one exhilarates both, (*Gal. cap. 25. lib. 4. de simplic.*) for it is familiar to the spirit contained in the ventricle of the brain, which whil'st it is refreshed, it makes the faculties more operative.

Omnia aromata esse cardiaca.

Chap. XVIII.

A particular disquisition of Tasts.

Sapor acer qualis.

WE have with Physicians of best note asserted, (*Oribas cap. 5. lib. 14. collect.*) that three of the nine sapours are hot, three cold, and three temperate. Of all which, the sharp, tart sapour is hotteſt, which being incited by our heat, whereby it is reduced from a potency to an act, bites, corrodes, expresses the sense of a fiery quality, and in a manner burns, as Indian Pepper, as Pelitory, or as a little flame.

Acrium multa genera.

There are of these sharp sapours many kinds, (*Gal. cap. 17. lib. 4. simpl.*) for some are hot and dry, exceeding the fourth degree of heat, and are poyson, as Sublimate, and Arsenicks. Others have much humidity mixed with a fiery heat, whereby they are made somewhat pleasant, and edible, as Garlick, Onions, Leeks, Garden cresses, and such

such like. Others are contained in a third order, as the herb Galingal, Pepper, Savine, Treacle-mustard, Snap-dragon, Helicampane. Others are more moderate, as Thyme, Hyssop, Anise, Coriander, Radish-root, Origane. And others are sharp absolutely and simply, and some are mixed with other sapours, as such Medicaments as are sharp and bitter.

Next to the sharp sapour is the bitter, which proceeds from the *Amarus sapor.* assation of the subtil terrestrial parts; and it hath not the power of corroding as the sharp, but more cleansing than the saltish; so that it troublesomely exasperates the tongue, (*Paul. Ægin. cap.* 1. *lib.* 7. *Galen. cap.* 10. *lib.* 4. *simplic.*) and it is two-fold; the one hot, spoken of before, which arises from the assation of terrestrial parts, by which sweet things are made bitter, either by concoction, or by age; the other cold, which comes by vehement congelation, as in Opium, wild Succory, Lettices, Hemlock, and some unripe Fruits; or which comes from an inchoated or imperfect coction, or rather from remiss heat which is accounted cold, as the other from an intense heat; for there is scarce any compound which is not endued with divers natures and qualities; whence it is no wonder, if Opium and Hemlock be partly hot, and partly cold. One scruple of *Coloquintis* may induce to two pounds weight of water bitterness, but no heat, unless it be very small and occult. Yet *Schegkius* thinks that some are hot, because of their bitterness, and that they refrigerate by an occult virtue, as Poppies and Succory, (*lib. de occult. medic. facult.*) Now a bitter sapour is such, either simply, as in Aloes; or mixed with other sapours, as in Wormwood, to which a stypticity or astriction is annexed. As also we may experience in many unripe Fruits, which not having as yet attained their perfect magnitude, are bitter sour; but being mature, they are bitter, and withall sweet, with a kinde of sourness.

Next to bitter and salt sapour, which is not so dry because of its *Salsus.* watry humidity, wherewith its terrene substance is tempered. (*Orib. & Gal. cap.* 20 *lib.* 4. *simplic.* Furthermore, it cleanseth moderately, yea, it washeth the tongue more moderately than bitter sapours, and it is pleasant enough to the tasters, endued with some astrictive faculty; yet not so much as to contract the tongue, as the austere or acerb sapour.

Now this salt sapour is two-fold; the one natural, the other artificial; Natural, as in Salt, Sea-water, and many salt terrene substances; Artificial, as in Lee, Lime, and in Chymick Salts.

All sour sapour is cold of it self, or so naturally; as in those things, *Aridus.* whose cold temper is conjoyned with tenuity of substance, as the juice of Limmons, Oranges, Sorrel, and such like; or so by accident, as by putrefaction, (*Aet. cap.* 1. *tetr.* 1. *ferm*) by which means Wine is said to be sour, yet not so absolutely, for it hath some Acrimony in it self, as *Galen* attesteth, (*lib.* 1. *simplic.*)

Hence arises another division of sour sapour, to wit, into that

which is exactly such, as the sapours before mentioned, and into that which is not exactly such, but is conjoyned with some other sapour, whether sweet, bitter, or sharp; as sour sweet Fruits, as Apples, Prunes, Mulberries, Cherries. Some Fruits have also bitterness joyned with their sourness, as Persian Apples, and some Cherries. Vinegar partakes of Acrimony, and a mixed quality; as *Galen* saith, (*c.* 19. 21. & 26. *lib.* 1. *simplic.*) because of its acquired heat; yet its sourness exceeds its Acrimony, as Acrimony exceeds sourness, in Oils of Sulphur and Vitriol, educed by Chymical Art; which corrode and bite the tongue; and taken alone, do greatly calefy. Furthermore, sour sapour, as to its impression upon the tongue, it corrodes, bites, penetrates, and exterges, and all without calefaction, unless it have some other quality mixed with it, as *Galen* asserts, (*cap.* 2. *lib.* 4. *simpl.*) in which it differs from sharp sapour, although sour sapours ferment the earth for the tenuity of their parts with heat produced by putrefaction.

Austerus. The austere or styptick sapour doth moderately strain and exasperate the tongue and mouth, and in some measure dry and refrigerate; and it is very peculiar to many immature Fruits, as to Quinces, to the fruit of the Dog-tree, and many Pears, especially wild Pears. The matter consists in a mean, to wit, partaker both of a terrestrial and watry nature, in which frigidity is predominant. Wherefore all austere sapours are frigid, moderately astringing and repelling fluxes; and it differs from an acerb sapour, in that it is more humid, and astringeth and exasperates less. For *Galen*, (*cap.* 7. *lib.* 4. *simplic.*) saith, that watry humidity doth much retund and dullify the strength of every sapour.

But when natural heat begins to domineer in the very matter, and the watry matter mixed with the terrene hath attained to maturity, then the austerity evinced and expelled, dulcity succeeds in the same matter; and so austere Fruits after mutation become sweet, which mutation is not of the matter, but quality.

Acerbus. Acerb sapour, sometimes called Pontick and Styptick, differs from the austere sapour onely by reason of more or less, (*Aet. cap.* 1. *tetr.* 1. *ser.* 1.) for thereby it more grievously and strongly astringes and exasperates the tongue and mouth, (*Aet. cap.* 4. *lib.* 2.) because it consists more of dry and terrene matter, not apertly partaking of watry humidity. And in it cold with siccity is more predominant than heat; for every acerb sapour is cold. Now this sapour is most conspicuous in Gall-nuts, in unripe Medlars, and sorb Apples.

Dulcis. Sweet sapour is mild and pleasant to the taste, and familiar and acceptable to the belly and stomack, saith *Galen*, (*c.* 14. *lib.* 4. *simpl. com. ad aphor.* 37. *lib.* 5.) because it hath a mild calidity, and laudable temper: wherefore sweet things onely nourish, and the Infant in the womb onely draws the sweetest blood. Now sweet differs from oily, because an oily sapour is less pleasant, whereas otherwise their temperaments are one, and their impressions on the tongue

alike;

alike: for that which is sweet, lenifies and dilates the little fibres of the tongue, takes away asperity, and cleanses away whatever inheres to the tongue. Now this sweet sapour is most apert in Sugar, Honey, Manna, Liccorish, Milk, Reysons, Jujubs, and mature Fruits. *Theophrastus* constitutes four species of this sapour, to wit, milky, honey, watry, and winy.

The unctious or oily sapour is sweet, and nourisheth, as *Galen* saith, (*cap. 9. lib. 4. simpl.*) that whatsoever nourisheth is sweet, or of a kinde of sweet sapour: yet they are distinct; for watry humidity is of sweet things, aery of fat things; whence it easily melts in the fire, and is rather sauce than nutriment, (*cap. 10. lib. 3. de Aliment.*) for it lenifies and fills the exasperate parts of the tongue, as Butter, Marrow, Oil. Now unctious sapour is such, either exquisitely, as all oily and fat things; or moderately, as the root of Mallows and Lillies.

The insipid or unsavoury sapour is next to swell, and it deflects more to frigidity, by reason of its watry substance not well elaborated by its inbred heat; and it is evident in things not perfectly concocted and cold; for all unsavoury Aliments are pituitous, (*Gal. cap. 46. lib. 2. de facult. aliment.*) but is more properly observable in Water, Citrul, Gourds, and such like; for it affects the tongue with no manifest quality, neither is it properly a sapour, but rather a privation of sapour, as the name shews. The Latins call it *fatuum*, that is, foolish or unsavoury, because it moves the sense with no manifest quality, it leaves an impression much like to that of Hydræolean. *Insipidus.*

Chap. XIX.

What election of Medicaments may be made by Sapours.

THE preservation of our nature consists in sanity, and sanity in temperament, from which those sapours that recede more, are to be adjudged more malign, and those that more agree to our nature are more wholsome. Now of sapours, sharp and bitter are most unacceptable and averse to our nature, sweet familiar and gratefull. Wherefore by how much a purging Medicament recedes more from sharp and bitter sapours, by so much it is less noxious. For those that are exactly sharp, are to be thought worst, and most nocent; as *Euphorbium* and *Thymelea*, which by reason of their acrimony and vehement heat, exulcerate the bowels. *Exactè acria pessima.*

Next to these are sharp and bitter sapours, as the juice of Buckthornberry. After these, that which is exactly bitter, as wild Gourds, and the juice of wild Cucumbers, called *Elaterium*.

Those

Acria & amara. Aloen venas occludere.

Those which are both sharp and bitter, and also styptical, as Aloes, which contrary to *Serapio*, rather shuts than opens the veins, are not so ill; and they are less ill that are both sharp and styptical, as *Epithymus*, (*Dioſc. cap.* 24. *lib.* 3. *Gal. cap.* 4. *lib.* 5. *meth. Pint. cap.* 4. *lib.* 27.)

Amara & ſtyptica.

Bitter and styptical are least of all ill, as Rhabarb, and Sea-wormwood; for although bitter things putrifie least, and do not generate Worms, yet those that are exactly such, since they are not fit to be eaten of any Creature, much less of Man; *Galen* attesting the same, (*cap.* 9. *lib.* 4. *ſimpl.*) by how much any sapour is less bitter, by so much the rather it is to be chosen.

Dulcia ſalubberrima.

Now of good and wholsome sapours, the sweet ones are most wholsome, as Cassia, Manna, Honey, Licorish, Jujubs.

Secondly, the unsavoury are next to these, as Mallows, Sorrel, Violets.

Thirdly, both sweet and sharp, as Prunes, Tamarinds.

Fourthly, sweet and bitter, as Polypody.

Fifthly, sweet, bitter, and styptical, as Roses; for those that have astriction, are adjudged most wholsome. And therefore where Nature hath not given astriction to purging Medicaments, Art adds it.

CHAP. XX.

Of the time when Medicaments are to be gathered, how long their virtue lasts, and in what time it is most valid.

THat disposition of a Medicament which is extrinsecally acquired, and which gives better knowledge to their selection, proceeds either from the time wherein they are to be gathered, or from the place where they are deposited. As to the time, three things are worthy to be known; first, when they ought to be gathered; secondly, to what time their virtue remains perfect; thirdly, in what time they are better and more usefull; for some are better new than old, others better old than new, others best in the middle of the time.

Quo tempore colligenda medicamenta.

As to the first, we affirm that Medicaments are then to be gathered, when their virtue is better and more usefull. But nevertheless all parts of Plants are not equally, and at one time and season, effectual and wholsome: For Roots should be gathered at one time, Stalks at another, Leaves at another, Flowers and Fruits, Seeds, Juices and Gums, at another time.

Quovis tempore quædam radices colligenda.

And so Roots should be gathered in several seasons of the year, not in Autumn only, as is asserted by *Dioſcorides*, *Avicenna*, and many others.

others. Not also in the Spring alone, as *Saladinus* would have them: but some may be effoded and gathered at any time, to wit, such as are alwayes vegetive and juicy, although the stalks be dry, as the roots of Bugloss, Sorrel, Licorish, Saint *Christophers* herb, Smallage, Butchers broom, Cyperus, Sow-bread, Lillies, Mallows, and many more. Others as soon as their leaves are fallen, at which time the virtue of the Plant goes into the root, and then the humour is more throughly cocted than at other times, as *Enula campana*, *Angelica*, Peony, Briony, Bugloss. Others are to be pulled up and gathered ere the virtue of the Plant be diffused into branches, leaves, flowers, and seed, as Polypody, Flower-de-luce, Saint *Maries* seal, Gentian, Ragwort. And some are best to be gathered in Spring and Autumn, as the roots of Mallows and Lillies, Eringes, Galangal, Sourdock, Radish, & many more which have store of natural juice in them.

But the stocks and stalks are to be gathered when they are perfect; leaves and flowers before they fall of themselves, for then for the most part they are perfect. Fruits, when they are ripe; the juices of herbs and leaves while young branches are sprouting out.

Gums are to be drawn and pressed out of the stalks gashed while it is fresh, in the beginning of the Spring, or beginning of Summer, while the juice ascends into the stalk. And all Medicaments, by *Dioscorides* advice, are to be gathered when the Heavens are clear.

De duratione virtutis medicamentorum.

Now how long the virtue of purging, altering, or roborating Medicaments endure, cannot definitely be shewed and determined upon. For since that every thing hath its proper age, and a peculiar antiquity or recency consists in several Medicaments, the time of duration is not the same in all; for Rhabarb will keep fresh, potent and valid three years, others decay sooner, as of roots such as have thin substances, as the root of Valerian, *Asarum*, Ragwort, which are efficacious and valid onely one year.

Some endure five or six years, as Aristolochy, Butchers broom, Cyperus; others ten years, as the greater Centaury; and according to *Threophrastus*, others thirty years, as Hellebore; others forty years, as black Chameleon; and some a hundred, as *Elaterium*: and if the same Author speaks true, *Elaterium* hath been found of two hundred years old, which was very good and pretious. Therefore we can scarce determine in general for what season or time the virtue of a Medicament, especially purging, is efficacious, but onely specially of some, and several, seeing we shall discourse in our *Officina Pharmacopolarum* particularly of these, wherein we shall most largely declare and treat of the composition of Medicaments.

Quando vis medicamentorum praestantior.

Yet may this rule be laid down as general, if not altogether, yet for the most part true: That all Medicaments consisting of a thin and rare substance, and all such as abound in much humidity, continue but a short time efficacious: but those that are gross and solid, and less humid, endure longer, because their virtue cannot so easily exolve and perish.

The third thing remains yet unapplyed, to wit, at what time the virtue of purging Medicaments is better and more valid, seeing some are better new than old, others on the contrary, and others in their middle age. Now that this dignotion may be certain, and that the election may be good, it ought to be taken from certain differences of sapours, and from the variety of the substance, whereby we judge some new to be better than old Medicaments, as styptick and bitter, which being ill from their imbred siccity, become worse by age, because siccity increases in these by time; but being new, they have humidity, which tempers the excess of heat and siccity.

Quando recentia meliora.

Those also that have but weak virtue, as the flowers of Violets, Borrage, purple colour'd Lilly, Bugloss, Rosemary; or those whose virtue is posited in the superficies, and therefore easily resoluble, because of the rarity of the substance, are better new than old, as almost all Flowers, especially those whose odour quickly fails.

Quando vetusta meliora.

On the contrary, some old ones are better than new, especially sharp Medicaments, which are of thin parts, because the fiery heat posited in the superficies, which causes their biting and burning, by age expires. And what Acrimony remains within, in time waxes mild, and is broken, as *Galen* speaks of *Euphorbium, cap. 2. lib. 3. de comp. med. gen.*

In Onions and Garlick the case is otherwise, for their Acrimony proceeds from heat conjoyned with humidity, which taken away, they are more sharp, and therefore better new.

Secondly, those whose virtue is valid from the temperament, and hardly resoluble for the density of their substance not posited in the superficies, but shut within, are better old than new; for all excrementitious and superfluous humidity is absumed in these by time, and their natural humidity remains, because of their density.

Quæ media ætate meliora.

Many are best in their middle age; first, sweet; secondly, unsavoury; thirdly, salt Medicaments. Sweet, because these newly gathered are flatulent, by reason of their superfluous humidity undigested; and being old, they are bitter.

Unsavoury Medicaments also being new, abound with superfluous humours, whereby they are flatulent and loathed; being old, they are dead and useless.

Salt Medicaments, lastly, ought neither to be too old, nor too new; for being too old, by reason of their siccity increased, and their humidity absumed, they are bitter and sharp; and being new by reason of superfluous humidity, they trouble and subvert the ventricle.

Vetustum & recens non omnibus æquum.

Now they are antient or new naturally, from a like number of dayes, months, or years. Whence an equal age or newness cannot be given to all, because all do not endure altogether the same number of dayes; but some grow old sooner, and some later.

CHAP.

Chap. XXI.

What election of purging Medicaments may be made from the place.

A Good purging Medicament may be discerned from an ill one by the place; and that either from the native place where Plants grow; or from another place near to, or remote from the Plant; or from a place near to, or remote from the Sun; or from a place expoſed to its heat, or obtenebrated and hindred of its heat. Neither is it of ſmall moment to know the place from whence the Plant ſprung up, becauſe from thence together with its Aliment, it partook of ſuch virtue as Nature had imparted to that place, (*Gal. cap. 1. lib. 3. de ſympt. cauſ.*) For a Tree transferred from *Perſia* into *Numidia* and *Egypt*, doth not onely depoſe its malign quality, but conveyed to us, is wholſome, and may bring forth gratefull and wholſome Fruits.

Now the place in which Plants, and Medicaments taken from Plants grow, is either hollow, and polluted with dung, clay, and other naughty vapours, or free from all ſtrong ſmelling inquinations, or hot or cold, moyſt or dry.

In the free place, which admits of no heap, or filth of dunghils, Medicamental Plants, as alſo Nutritive, acquire the property due and convenient to their nature, while by an attractive faculty they draw the humour familiar to them out of the earth, and convert it to their nutriment; as thoſe that are nouriſhed with ſweet, attract ſweet humours; bitter, bitter humours; and ſuch as are nouriſhed by ſalt and nitrous humours, attract ſalt and nitrous humours.

Cloacarum fœtor ac putredo plantas inſalubres reddit.

But in a place not free, but inquinated, as the ſuburban Gardens, which ſmell more of ſmoke and dung than earth, (otherwiſe unapt to nouriſh Melons and Cucumbers) do not acquire the property due to their kinde and nature, but to the mixture of dung, and other things; and therefore Melons, Lettices, and other herbs growing in ſuch putrid places, are more unwholſome; and all Medicaments that grow in a free place, better, and therefore the rather to be choſen.

Hortorum ſuburbanorum inſalubria olera.

Now thoſe that are hot immoderately, ſprung in too hot a place, are worſe; as alſo cold in too cold a place: for the ſimilitude of the place to the Plants intendeth and increaſeth their quality and malignity, diſſimilitude tempers and repreſſes them. Whence thoſe that abound with excrementitious humidity, grow and are nouriſhed in moſt humid places, as Turbith, Hermodactyls, Polypody, becauſe through the humidity of the ground, ſiccity and acrimony are retunded, as it is known from Bartram, or Pelitory, Water-pepper, and others.

Calida loco calido nata, qualia.

The vicinity also, and society of one Plant to another, makes the quality sometimes better, and sometimes worse, and is not to be rejected in the election of Medicaments.

Lupines makes the Vine better; which if they be sown besides, it causeth it to bring forth sweet clusters. The Radish-root also makes Hermodactyls better.

The *Epithymus* that grows about Thyme is good; that which is gathered about Basil is naught; Polypody of the Oak is very good, that which is gathered off old walls is naught.

The tree Cassia alone in the field is not worth a Pease-cod. We have before, to wit, in the 8. Chapter, shewed the contrary of *Colocynthis*; for some become better by vicinity and number, others worse.

Now from a subsolar place, or from a place nearer to, or more remote from the Sun or Stars, some are better or worse: so the Oriental Senny, Illyrium and Florentine Flower-de-luce, the Spanish Angelica, the Cretian Thyme, the Judaical Bitumen, the Ethiopian Cummin, the Macedonian Parsley, the Mompelian Maidenhair, the Arabian Cotten-weed, or *Stachados*, the Thebane Poppy, the Scythian *Amomum*, the Chian Mastick, the Damascen Prune, the Calabrian Manna, the Rhabarb, that is, the root of *Barbary*; those Oranges that are brought out of *France* are judged best, because of the property of the earth, and the virtue of the celestial cause.

But there can be little judgement given from the aspect and vicinity of the Sun and Stars, and the selection of the malignant from the benign thereby is not safe, because we can hardly know from what place every Medicament comes, or whether they grow near others or no, or what good or malignant Star respects every one, we must credit those that effode the roots, and gather the other parts of the Plants.

And as the number in some doth change, intend, or remit their virtue and quality, as one onely Apple of *Colocynthis* manifests, so also doth magnitude or parvity; for the virtue of the Earth and Plant is diffused, and in many is more remiss, but coacted into one Plant, or one Fruit more valid. Yet many Fruits are commended for their parvitude, as Capers; and many Seeds for their magnitude, as *Carthamus*.

CHAP.

Chap. XXII.

Of the choyce of purging Medicaments taken from their faculties.

WE have briefly, but clearly, shewed how purging Medicaments ought to be selected, by a judgement taken from their substance, proper temperament, second qualities proceeding from their temperament, from their disposition extrinsecally acquired, from the circumstances of place, time, number, magnitude, and parvity; it rests that we dispatch briefly what may be spoken, as to that choyce which is taken from their purging faculty; which though it be helped by the first and second qualities, yet (saith *Mesue*) its original is celestial; and it hath that specifical property, whereby the Medicament received into the ventricle, and solicited by our heat, attracts to it self the humour familiar to its nature, as we have noted elsewhere, from the veins and passages of our body, not perceived by the senses, into the belly; and then Nature laden with the burthen of the Medicament, and the humours attracted, prepares a way to excretion, either by vomit at the mouth, or by dejection at the inferiour parts. Whence there are two kinds of purging Medicaments, the one a vomiting or ejective Medicament, the other dejective; which distinction is taken from the manner of excretion or vacuation.

Now the dejective is more desirable than the ejective, because Nature hath alotted the inferiour course to expell Excrements, the superiour to receive Aliments. Whence it frequently happens, that Nature acting spontaneously, and provoked by no morbifical cause, doth abundantly carry and deject excrementious humours at the inferiour parts; and sometimes irritated by the virtue of the Medicament of it self ejective, and by the force of the swelling humour, it ejects both Medicament and humours by the mouth. Whence it comes to pass, that ejective are sometimes better than dejective Medicaments, especially to those whose first region of the body or upper ventricle is stuffed with much choler, which by reason of its levity and the facility of the traction, may more easily and sooner be extruded by vomit. *Hippocrates* also commends vomit to them that are slender, especially in Summer, *Because for the most part they are cholerick; slender folks,* (saith he, *Aphor. 6. lib. 4.*) *are prone to vomit, and are to be purged upward; but take heed in Winter.* And (*Aphor. 40. lib. 4*) *in Summer it is better to purge upwards, in Winter downwards*: for the gross and cold humour collected in Winter, is more easily educed by the inferiour parts; and therefore the skilfull Physician uses sometimes ejective, and sometimes dejective Medica-

πῶς καὶ διὰ quomodo purgandi.

ments, as the condition of the swelling humour requires, or the nature of the diseased will bear. For *Galen* saith, (*lib. 1. de loc. affect.*) *That no man should be compelled to vomit, unless he be prone to vomit; and that consuming men are never to be purged by vomit, nor they who have a strait Thorax, or narrow passage.*

Quæ vomitoria seligenda.

But if a Vomit be prescribed to whom it is convenient, then let it be provoked by those Medicaments which subvert the ventricle without great molestation, and not with white Hellebor, according to *Galens* advice, (*lib. quos, quando, & quibus medicam.*) lest any vessel of the breast should break. And much less by Antimony, whereby crafty beguilers kill many, and sometimes themselves, as it is to be seen in that admirable Historie in *Cornelius Gemma, c. 4. lib. 2. pag. 239. linea 14.*

The same choyce is to be observed in other Purges, that we use the more benign, analogical to the morbifical humours; *For we ought to give a choler purging Medicament to the cholerick,* (saith *Galen*) *a flegm purging Medicament to the flegmatick, and a melancholy purging Medicament to the melancholick; otherwise we offend Nature.*

Now there is no blood purging Medicament prescribed either to purge blood by the mouth or fundament, because (as *Galen* saith, *(cap. 6. lib. de purg. medicam. facult.) that were to jugulate, not to purge men.* Which the Historie of one *Thracius*, a Bithynian Rustick,

Historia notanda.

who found a herb, which if any one assumed, he should first lose his blood, then his life. Now many dying by this means, the Magistrate judging the offence worthy diligent inquisition; apprehended the Malefactor; who being demanded of whom he had learned this deletory Poyson, answered, that he learned it of none; but as he once carried a Hogs liver to a neighbouring place, his belly compelling him, he laid the herb down in a place where a certain herb grew while he had eased himself; which after some respite, and interval, he took up again, and found that all the blood drew towards the herb: whence he conjectured, that the herb would attract blood from the body; and finding it true, by experience made upon one he met, as he had before imagined, he afterwards transferred the herb to evil uses: yet he professed, he never did shew that herb to any, (of which there was much in that Countrey.) Now the Malefactor, amongst other his torments that he was to endure, was first to have his eyes put out, that when he was led along to the place of Execution, he should not shew the herb to any.

Note.

Medicaments therefore that draw blood being omitted as poysonous, others, not analogical to other parts, are to be selected, but such as respect certain parts by affinity. So Physicians prudently prescribe Agarick, *Stœchados*, Betony, to many distempers of the head: Manna, Cassia, to distempers of the stomack and reins: Aloes, Myrobolanes, and Wormwood, to purge and

corroborate

corroborate the ventricle: Senna, Cetrarch, to the ſpleen: Hermodactyls, and Ground-pine, to the Arteries: Sage and Roſemary to the nerves. Yet theſe ſimple Medicaments are not ſo much aſtringed to thoſe parts, but they may be applyed conveniently to others.

And as many Medicaments, as well ſimple as compound, do peculiarly corroborate ſome certain part by ſome familiarity; and ſo ſome on the contrary do manifeſtly deſtroy and hurt ſome parts of the body, as the Sea-hare the Lungs, Cantharides the Liver, Hemlock the Brain, as it is well obſerved by *Galen*, *cap.* 1. *lib.* 1. *compoſ. medic. per genera.*

The end of the firſt Book.

OF

OF MEDICINALL INSTITUTIONS.

The ſecond Book.

In which we ſhall treat of the preparations of Medicament.

CHAP. I.

Where we ſhall demonſtrate, whether ſome preparation be not required to all Medicines that tend to aliment.

A Compound Medicament that is united and made up of many ſimples by Art and Experience (before it exiſts of a convenient conſiſtence) requires not a diſtinct preparation alone, but alſo that vegetable or Medicament which is ſimple, as to its number, and ſuch ſpontaneouſly and naturally may not be exhibited with ſucceſſe (and not without ſome detriment) to the uſe of man without ſome alteration by a due preparation. For thoſe aliments which we daily aſſume unto our bodies, if they want their acquired preparation, as roſting, boyling, or the like, are rather fit for beaſts than men; becauſe it is naturall, and therefore belongs to cattell to feed upon the fruits of the earth, as hay, pulſe, &c. onely prepared by the worke of nature. As alſo the Sea affords neceſſary food agreeable to nature, both for great

great and ſmall fiſhes. But the earth, unwilling to afford ſuch a benefit of her ſelfe, doth render up her fruits ſomewhat incongruous to humane nature without a preparation, and will not afford either nutriment nor aliment to man without the long expectation, and indefatigable labours of the Husbandman, who after much paines rending up the bowells thereof, and caſting in his ſeed, proves as it were ingratefull by bringing forth corne, which at the firſt ſprouting forth becomes ſuitable nutriment to many birds of the aire, and four footed beaſts of the field, but to man in no wiſe without preparation, by firſt making bread of it with Water and Leaven: For as that great Attorney Generall of Nature ſaith (*lib. de veter. Med.*) *That the ſame meat and drink which ſuffices beaſt and Horſes, and other creatures, as they proceed out of the earth, raw and undigeſted* (viz.) *fruits, hearbs, &c. by which theſe are nouriſhed, and on which they live, cannot ſuffice man, nor agree with his conſtitution; For this is apparent, that one body differs from another, one nature from another, and one aliment another.* As the ſame Author hath it (*lib. de flatib.*) for one and the ſame thing cannot be commodious and uſefull, (as to Nutriment) to all kinds of living creatures, but ſome are more convenient than others.

Thoſe meats and drinks which are our daily ſuſtenance, were invented and conſulted of with mature deliberation by *quondam* Phiſicians, who inſtructed us, their poſterity, to make bread of Corne, by being firſt ſeparated from the chaffe, then ground, ſifted, kneaded and laſt of all baked. Phyſicians our firſt Schoolemaſters in teaching us to make bread.

If therfore meat and drinke being familiar, as it were to the temperament and nature of man need preparation, before they be aſſumed; then much more ſimple Medicaments, or thoſe Ingredients which are required to the making up of a Medicine. For there is no Queſtion to be made of compound Medicines, becauſe they cannot be ſuch; till they be firſt condited and fitted by art, and due preparation.

Now amongſt ſimples, that which we call Cathartick is moſt averſe from, and inagreeable to our nature. Therefore according to *Crollius*, 'twas ordained by nature to overcome, and not to be overpowered; hence it is, that every purging Medicine hath ſomething offenſive and ungratefull to the ſtomack, by conſequence therefore it needs preparation and correction before it be exhibited, that its noxious quality may be removed, and its vertues more approximated to the nature of our conſtitutions, and that its operation may be better and leſſe troubleſome to the Patient: For nothing is produced out of the wombe of Nature, which ought to be diſhed up to man without ſuch preparation, as it requires. *Lib. 3. cap. 7.*

Medicaments are prepared, that they may be more cõmodious for uſe and compoſition, for thereby they become either more acceptable, more valid, more wholeſome, or more miſcible, according to the opinion of *Sylvius*. It is our cuſtome to uſe roots and hearbs, waſhed and boyled, and not raw, as alſo powders, infuſions, juices, diſtillations, liquors, decoctions of certaine vegetables, and other materi- The reaſon why Medicines are to be prepared.

alls, and not integrall plants, for by this, either we take away some noxious quality or other from the medicine. As when vipers are made medicinall, we use first well to smite and bombaste them with rods, and then cut off their heads and tailes, and thereby they become lesse venemous, or else by it we detect the desirable faculty. As Goates blood is more efficacious in diminishing the stone, if the Goat be fed with Saxifrage and Grumwell, or else by it, we acquire a new faculty, as when we nourish a female creature, a she Goat, or Asse, with Scammony, Milkweed, or other purging hearbs, that its milkinesse may attaine a purgative faculty.

Chap. II.

Of the differences of preparations.

Præparationes tantum tres generales.

Preparation of Medicaments in generall is made three manner of wayes, either by addition, detraction, or immutation: by addition, and so Agarick is prepared, by adding Ginger and Wine, Coriander-seed with Vineger, Vipers flesh with Bread and Dill: by detraction Cantharides are prepared, their feet and wings cut off; Barly, by taking away its drosse and chaffe; Almonds, by being blanched; roots by washing, cleansing, and cutting off the Fibres, their pith and woody substance taken out: by immutation, when the Medicament it self, is so prepared by a certain artificiall knowledge and Art, that its noxious faculty is either removed or corrected, and the substance thereby made better to use alone, or compound with others. But this artificiall preparation requires two other manner of wayes, either the adjection of those things that profit, or the detraction of those things that hurt. So Castor and Saffron is added to Opium, that its maligne power may be amended, so *Lapis Lazuli*, is appointed to be burned before it be put into *Confectio Alkermes* or Kermeticall confection, that its purging faculty may be taken away.

Quatuor præparationes secundum Mes.

Old *Mesue* delivers foure other particular modes of preparation, coction, lotion, infusion, and grinding, to which our later Physicians have aded many more, as lotion, purgation, infusion, humectation, maceration, dissolution, clarification, emollition, colation, extraction, solution, digestion, fermentation, tundation, pulverization, frixion, assation, liquation, putrefaction, insolation, extinction, refrigeration, despumation, exsiccasion, induration, distillation, digestion, mixtion, scapulation, extraction conservation, duration. But in generall, humectation, maceration, dissolution, emollition and what ever is humified or mollified, with water or moisture, is contained under infusion; Pulverization and scraping, and whatsoever is made smooth with scraping, rubbing, &c. is comprehended under tundation, calefaction, ustion, frixion,

and

and what others are prepared with fire and heat, is comprehended under coction: and thus the infinite manner of preparing may be reduced to some few generall heads.

These subsequent modes of preparations are for the most part frequent with Chymists, calcination, digestion, fermentation, distillation, circulation, sublimation, fixation, to distillation pertaines exalation, exhaltation, circulation, cohobation, rectification, they call a double distillation a cohobation, when the distilled liquor is poured upon the same Ingredient, and distilled over againe.

But to omit these Chymicall tearmes of preparations, which is better to know, than make experience of. We will prosecute more particularly the accustomed preparation of Medicines, the wholesome Remedies of Physicians prescript, that we may securely and without danger make use of to the depelling of our distempers, and the safeguarde of our families, which be such as Apothecaries prepare daily and openly before all mens eyes, and places them in convenient pots and glasses and other vessells in their shops, either for present use or perseverance, till occasion serves: and of those the Physician selects for the necessity of the exigent, sometimes this, sometimes that, and prescribes how much is most convenient to be administred for the expelling of the disease. Now the Physicians work is not to prepare these Medicins, but to prescribe them, hence it is, that Apothecaries are tearmed the Physicians hand (for it is better to commit our lives into the hands of two than one,) to operate according to Prescript, for if the Physician alone should prescribe, prepare, and afford Medicines, It were too great a trouble to ly upon one mans shoulders. Besides, he hath power to save or kill, and not to be liable to punishment, by Law. Which, is an Impious and Intolerable thing, an act not to be indured, therefore it was ordained, that Apothecaries should be appointed, who ought to prepare and preserve Medicaments, and to distribute them out in certain quantities, according to the Doctors Judgment and decree.

Chimica remedia non negligenda.

But I would not abrogate Chymicall remedies totally from Apothecaries shops, for there are many of them of excellent vertue, to the dissipating of many crabbed distempers: but they are such as the learned and skilfull onely should use, and not ignorant Mountebanks, and wandering Quacks and deceivers, who scarce know how to prepare a Medicin, yet will proclaime themselves to the world to be more skilfull than *Galen* and *Hyppocrates*.

Qui debeant uti chymicis remediis.

But to returne to our intended purpose, I say, there are divers modes of preparing Medicins, which that I may prosecute in order, I will begin with Lotion, afterwards I will extend my discourse to those ingredients which are simply prepared with water, often, when medicinall with juice or other liquor; then I will demonstrate what preparations are made with contunding, grinding, or scraping, afterwards I will explaine what preparation heat performes, and I will add to these, those that are finished with a mixed manner.

Chap. III.

Of Lotion.

Primus præparationis modus & cur.

Lotion by learned *Sylvius* is accounted the last manner of preparation, by some, the middle; but by us the first; because most Ingredients, before they will serve our use, before any other preparation can be made, ought to be washed, though some, I confesse, are not to be washed till they be burned, rosted, or scraped.

Duplex Lotio.

This Lotion is twofold, the one a superficiary Lotion, which detracts the adherent filth, from the superficies of roots, hearbs and other Medicinall materialls, and It is common to all other things, which being inquinated with clay, or other pollutions, are to be washed: the other is more intimate, which dilates it self both without and within, and thorow the whole substance: Now this preparation is made in water or other liquor for this end and purpose, to remove some noxious quality, or to introduce some good one, as the disease it self, the nature of the disease, or the occasion requires.

The Ingredient or materiall to be washed is either obdurate, solid, or stony, as the substance of shells, bones, stones, concrete Juices, dry gums and metalls; or such as are of themselves liquid, as Turpenttne, Oyle, or such as are easy to be melted, as wax, pitch, rosin, butter; or such as are dissoluble, as Lime-stones, Bole armeniack, Lytharge of God or Silver.

Those things that are hard and solid, before washing ought to be pulverized, or burned, and so bruised, that they cannot be grinded without ustion, as Ivory, and Harts-horne, and so the water or liquor may reach, wash, and purge every part.

Those that will easily melt as Wax and Rosin, &c. ought first to be warmed, that being melted they may more easily yield, or be made more pliable; if they will easily dissolve of themselves, they are to be sprinkled with some water or juice, and then washed, if liquid of themselves, they are to be washed by continuall stirring and commixing water or other liquor with the body of the thing to be washed.

The liquors in which this Lotion is made, is either pure water, as fountain, or rain-water, or medicinall, as sulphurous Sea-water, or Bituminous or some other humour, as milk, honey, vinegar, the juice of Plants, distilled water and decoctions of simple medicaments. This Lotion is either much and hard, or little and light, or a *medium*, or mean: for the things that are washed for the detraction of their filth ought either to be washed strongly or lightly, and the water so oft changed, till it remaines pure, and all its impurity segregated and ejected.

Thoſe that are waſhed in a medicinall liquor, ſhould lye in the ſame a certain ſpace, according to appointment, as a whole night, or the ſpace of ſome houres, that they may attract the greater power from the liquor, or looſe their malignant quality: This preparation is injuriouſly called by *Sylvius*, A Lotion, when it is rather an Infuſion or Maceration, or rather as another hath it, an Imbution, for the liquor ſeldom or never adds faculties to the Medicin, but rather detracts from it, as we ſee in Rhabarb and others ſteeped in water; whoſe purgative faculty remaines by being tranſmitted into the Liquor. *Imbutio quid.*

Yet are they not waſhed, that they may ſo loſe their vertues, but increaſe them, and ſo in *Meſues* judgement Aloes ſhould be waſhed in odoriferous water, that it may coroborate the more, or in ſome purging juice or decoction (as juice of Roſes, or the infuſion thereof) that it may with more celerity relax the belly; yet it is not alwayes waſhed, that its purging faculty may be intended, but rather that its heat may be remitted; as when it is waſhed in the water of Endive, Succory, or ſuch like, that it may not too much exeſtuate the liver. *Aloe cur abluatur.*

Lotion therefore *ex conſequenti*, either adds to, or detracts from medicinall materialls, and cauſes not onely the filth to be wiped off, but alſo mitigates in ſome their acrimony, in others deſtroyes their malignity, and dulls their violence, and makes them better, either to be aſſumed or applyed.

Now that Metalls may be waſhed, they ought to be pulverized very ſmall, and then to be put into pure water, or any other Medicinall liquor, and to be continually ſtirred with a wooden *Spatula* for a whole day, and in the morning following the water to be powred out, and other water put on, and agitated as before, till the water thats powred off be cleere, and by this means Metalls loſe their Mordacity and Acrimony (if they have any ſuch quality) for *Tutia* waſhed thus is void of all mordacity, and therefore we uſe it, for the fluxions of the eyes, ſo likewiſe many other Metalls being thus waſhed, loſe their Acrimonious quality. As *Galen* ſhewes at large, (4. *Comp. Med. Gener. c.* 2.) *Metallica ut abluenda.* *Tutiæ lotio.*

The Ancients were wont to quench burnt braſſe in Aſſes milk two or three times over, then pulverized it in a morter with water powred on it, and ſo dryed it againe, and ſo preſerved it to dry up ulcers of the eyes, and drive away fluxions. *Cadmiæ lotio.*

Ceruſs is often waſhed in milk, ſometimes in rain-water, and ſometimes in diſtilled water, as the Phyſician orders it. *Ceruſſæ lotio.*

The uſuall cuſtome of our Apothecaries in the preparation of ſteele is to waſh or ſprinkle its duſt with vineger, according to the *Arabians* cuſtome, afterwards they dry it on a large marble in the hot Sun, dryed, they bruiſe it again, and put on vineger as before, and ſo they do ſeven times, but this is not ſimply Lotion, but a manifeſt preparation, yet is the duſt of iron more laborioufly prepared by Alcumiſts, of *Chalybis lotio vulgaris.*

of which they make their *Crocus Martis*, but of this we have spoken elsewhere.

Plumbi lotio. The Lotion of Lead is thus, first burnt well in a Crucible, then pulverized in a Leaden morter, with a Leaden pestill, with rain-water, till the water wax thick, like blackish clay, then the liquor must be strained, dryed, made into balls and kept.

Adipum & medullarum ablutio. To preserve unctuous substances, first the Adeps, or *Medulla* must be melted, then strained from the drossy Membranes, afterwards washed well in water, till it appears pure and cleere.

Jecoris Lupi præparatio. The preparation of a Wolfs Liver consists in ablution & siccation. First, let it be washed over and over, in odoriferous wine; in which wormewood hath first been boyled, being thus washed according to Art; Let it be well dryed in an Oven, then afterwards laid in a dry place with dry Wormwood or Mint.

This Lotion is by some highly commended, as of sufficient roboration to ballance the weakness of the Liver, which is naturally so, by reason of its ill odor and insuavity.

Intestini Lupi præparatio. The intestines also of a Wolfe must be washed and prepared after the same manner, save that they must be dryed in the North-wind, they are commended by some learned Doctors, for some speciall qualities in or against the Cholick passions.

Olei Lotio. Oyle, whilst it is in the water, must not be much beaten, least it be so mixed with the water that it cannot easily be separated from it clearly without some commixtion.

Resinarum & piceis Lotio. As for Rosin, Wax, and Pitch; let them first be melted upon the fire, with a certain quantity of water, and purge away their dross by straining them thorow a cloth. *Galen. cap.* 14. *libr.* 1. *comp. Med. gener. cap.* 58. *lib.* 9. *de simpl. Med. fac. cap.* 3. *lib.* 6. *Meth.*

Calcis ablutio. Lime also, though it burnes vehemently, yet twice or thrice washed its mordacity is taken away, and may be safely applyed to any part, whether Nervous or not, which is a place most exquisitly indued with sense; some wash it seven times over, and make it up into a round ball, which being dryed, they so preserve it for future uses.

To shew gradually the preparation of severall Medicaments distinctly, were superfluous and would be burdensome to the Reader both because *Sylvius* hath treated largely upon this subject, and also because we have added many Lotions to many Medicaments, in the *Pharmacopœia*, with other preparations of those compositions prescribed in it.

CHAP.

Chap. IV.

Of the Purgation of Medicaments.

BY Lotion (of which we have treated in the former Chapter) the filth and corruption mixed with Medicinall materialls is washed off, but their superfluous and noxious parts are not purged thereby, for French Barley, though a thousand times washed, will scarce lose it hilling; nor other seeds their chaff and coverings; nor fruits their skins or barks; nor nuts their shells: neither can fat onely by washing be purged from its Membranes: therefore should be twice cocted, and no more, according to *Hyppocrates* advice, before it be used: in generall all Medicaments more or lesse, should be purged by detraction, which cannot be performed so much by Lotion, as by Section, Rasion and fraction, or some other Artificiall Industry of the hand. Thus the externall part of roots are scraped by cutting off their little fibres, or the heart of them (commonly so called) taken out of them. Yet sometimes they are not purged from their barks, but the barks from every part, as from superfluous and useless matter: for of the Cinamon-tree the bark only is most desirable, of Ginger the root, of Santall-tree the wood, of Canes the marrow or pith; of Maiden haire, the leaves onely; of the Rose-tree, the flowers; of Pepper, the seed; other parts since they are either lesse usefull, or superfluous are purged away.

For this reason the *Medulla* or pith of *Cassia Fistula* is separated from its cane, Raisins from their stones; Dates from their shells; the Colocinth separated from its seeds; the hillings from many seeds, but from many fruits nothing, the Cortex, *Medulla*, juice, seed, and flowers of Citron and Orange are good and usefull.

Whereas Nuts and Almonds are involved in a threefold skin, wherefore they should be thrice purged, the skin which is thick in some, is taken away by the first; the shell is broken, by the second, and the cover next to the kernell is taken away by the third, wherein it is involved.

As a Child in a sheet in the wombe, the usuall custome is to put Almonds or Nuts into water, and when 'tis ready to boyle, rub them between your fingers, and they will easily be cleansed.

Chap.

Chap. V.

Of Infusion.

INfusion is a preparation of certain Medicaments, whereby they are sliced into small peeces, or bruised and so steeped in a liquor fit and convenient to the Physicians intention, and that by the space of one houre or two, or more, dayes or weeks, according to the nature of the Medicament, or the Physicians Order: for those that have a hard compact substance, and a quality firmely inhering in the substance, ought to be steeped or infused longer; those that are small and tender, a lesser space.

The use of this Infusion is chiefly threefold, that the maligne force of the Medicine may be regulated, or altogether absumed, that the benigne or good quality may be made better, or their vertues transmitted into the liquor.

Turpethi præparatio. Turbith before 'tis used, ought to be steeped in new milk, and afterwards dryed, that it may not gripe the bowells, when it is assumed. *Mezeorius & laureola* before they be exhibited in any Medicine, ought to be steeped in white Wine, and afterwards dryed, that their crabbedness might be mitigated.

Quinque radicum aperientium præparatio. The five opening roots after Lotion should be steeped in vineger, that they might the easier cut viscid Phlegme, and sooner deduce humors by the passage dedicated to the expelling of humor;

Urticæ semen quibus conveniat. Nettle-seed, steeped in the decoction of the hearb Draconth, and assumed, helpes any stopping at the stomach, for it is exceeding good for those that are troubled with stoppages. It causes the throat, and other parts, by which it passeth, to cease to burn or itch.

But purging ingredients, and odoriferous spices, are usually infused in Wine, or Water, or some suitable decoction, or some distilled water, or in juices extracted from vegetables, according to the severall ends and purposes of the Doctor, that they might lose their proper qualities, and transmit them into the liquor; thus Rhabarb and Agarick are wont to be infused, not onely that their vertue might go into the liquor, but that it might have a better and more effectuall operation of the body of him that assumes it.

Vinum Hypocraticum. The mixture of *Vinum Hypocraticum* is onely the infusion of Cinamon in the best Wine, with the dissolution of sugar, so much as will dulcorate it: There is also some Ginger mixed with it by the Apothecaries, that it may the better content and please the drinkers palate.

Gummorum infusio. So also *Gummi Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum*, *Oppoponax*, and *Sagapenum* are macerated, steeped or infused in Wine, or Vineger, to bring down their consistences, that the filth mixed therewith, may be separated

rated

rated from them by colature, before they are to be used in the compositions of Electuaries or Plaisters, or for other uses.

So flowers of Violets, Roses, and Water-Lillyes, are infused in warme water, till their vertues be transmitted, and the colature dulcorated with a sufficient quantity of sugar, to bring it into the consistency of a syrup. *Florum Infusio.*

CHAP. VI.

Of Humectation and other differences of Infusion.

HUmectation, Infection, or Triture are wont to be reduced to Infusion or Immersion: And Irrigation, or Insperſion to Humectation; for those Medicaments that are liquored, with Vineger, Milk, Water or other humor grow moist, or are humected, that they may more comodiously and conveniently be used and commixed with others.

Now humectation, is absolute necessary to all forraign Medicaments, which being brought to us from far Regions, are hard, and dry, their juice being evaporated, and therefore we resartiate their native humidity, or cherish and defend that small relique of it that is left, by a light immersion or irrigation, or oftentimes by reposing and keeping them in a coole place, as when we lay and preserve *Cassia* in a cellar, Venetian Treacle in a leaden pot, &c. that their vertues may not so soon be exhaled. What Medicaments need humectation.

Many odoriferous simples also, should be moistned, if they are ordered to be pulverized, or grinded, as Amber, Bezoar, Musk, &c. least the more subtill and odoriferous parts should fly away. The humectation of odours.

Humectation also is very necessary for the preservation of fruits, and blaunching of them, from their skins and hulls. As Almonds, that they may be enucleated, are first to be scalded in hot water, Pine nutts and other fruits and nutts before they can be preserved, must be steeped, moistned, and macerated in water, that their acrimony and bitterness may be abated; for any fruit that hath any apparant quality of acrimony, by a frequent immersion in water or other liquor, doth waxe more mild.

Camphire, Colocynth, *Euphorbium*, and many others that are to be pulverized, must be besprinkled with a little oyl of Almonds, or such other thing before their grinding, and Mastich humected with a little rose water, which causeth it sooner to be pulverized, and its vertue lesse expire, or its subtler part be diminished by flying away. How to powder Camphir, Colocinth, *Euphorbium*. How to powder Mastick.

Irrigation is reduced to humectation, which is as it were a little or Irrigation.

ſparing humectation, for thoſe that muſt be uſed dry, ought to be irrigated or moiſtned, with a gentle ſprinkling, that they may become more uſefull, and their vertues more retained.

Chap. VII.

Of Nutrition.

MEdicaments in a rationall ſenſe, cannot well be ſaid to be nouriſhed, but in a Philoſophicall ſenſe they may; as when a medicament is augmented, by the mutuall appoſition of two, three or more Medicaments, which acretion, the vulgar Apothecaryes call Nutrition, and perchance it was indued with this name, becauſe it is as apparantly altered in mixing, as Nutriment in nouriſhing.

Nutrition is Coſin-german to Humectation.

Now nutrition is not unlike to Humectation, for in both there muſt neceſſarily be mixed ſome liquor or other, which in Humectation is copious, but in Nutrition ſpare, for in the latter, the liquor muſt not be powred on with that quantity, that the former requires; for when it is once irrigated or ſprinkled, it muſt be preſently dryed, and that either by the Sun, or fire; and againe moyſtned and dryed, and ſo irrigated three or foure times, as the Gum *Sarcocolla* which is nouriſhed with a womans, or Aſſes milk, but if macerated with a copious quantity thereof, it preſently diſſolves, and the milk will be ſoure before the Gumme can be dryed.

Sarcocolla nutritur.

Alcumiſts uſually nouriſh metalls by a congruent homour, to the thing nouriſhed, prepared after an occult manner, either that they may the ſooner be melted or diſſolved, or nouriſhed and augmented.

Triapharmacon.

And ſo to the making up of the crude unguent which is prepared with one part of Litharge, foure of oyl, and five of vineger, the Litharge by a continuall beating is ſo nouriſhed by the foreſaid oyl and vineger, that it growes to the conſiſtency of an unguent, without the help of fire, or addition of other hard bodyes.

Many roots are irrigated ſometime with Wine, ſometimes with other liquors, that they may ſwell. As Mirabolans with milk, or with any other liquor, correſpondent to the Phyſicians purpoſe and intent.

The way to waſh Aloes.

So likewiſe Aloes is ſometimes nouriſhed with a decoction of Aromaticks, or ſome other fit and convenient liquor anſwerable to the doctors intent, but oftner with the juice of hearbs, leaves or flowers, as with the juice of roſes, red or damask, of red, to roborate, or damaske to purge, both which do augment the aforeſaid qualities, and ſometimes in the juice of Endive, to mitigate the heat of the ſtomach, but firſt it ſhould be diſſolved in ſome of the aforeſaid juices,

afterward

afterwards dryed, then pulverized, againe washed and nourished with the same proportion of juice, and dried as before, and this reiterated so often, till the Aloes have drunk in the determinated quantity of the juice or liquor.

Chap. VIII.

Of Maceration, Infection and digestion.

Maceration is so neere a kin to humectation, that they are often used for one and the same manner of preparation; for Medicaments are infunded, humected, and macerated for the self same purpose, and by the same way and art. Yet notwithstanding Maceration requires a longer space of time, than the two former, so *Flores Populi* and *semen Abietis*, ought to be macerated in oyle, according to *Galens* advice. *cap.* 14. *lib.* 2. *de sanit. tuend.* for, three, four or more moneths together, and then the oyl to be pressed out, for the commixtion of the other ingredients. Ginger with other hard roots, green Almonds with other fruits are to be macerated so long till they the wax soft, or loose their unprofitable or ungratefull quality. *Oleum Acopum.*

In the making of syrup of Poppyes, the heads of the Poppyes are to be macerated in water for a day or two, or sometimes three, till they wax tender, and their quality transmitted into the water. *Syrupus de papavere.*

Lignum Pali sancti, and that Peregrine root, which the Easterne Indians calls *Lampatan*, will scarce emit their vertues without a long maceration before their coction. *Guaiacum Radix Chinæ.*

The same method must be observed with other woods and roots, which ought to be macerated in some or other convenient liquor, answerable to their propertyes, that their vertues of what kind soever they be, may be transmitted into the water or decoction.

Dates must be macerated three whole dayes in vinegar according to the prescript of *Mesue* before they be pulped, for the composition of Diaphænicon, Tamarinds, and Mirabolans also must be macerated in whey made of Goates milk, that according to the opinion of the same Author their bad and Nocumentall qualities may be amended, and that they may no wayes offend the stomack. Dates.

Tincture or infection is neere a kin to humectation and maceration, for those that are to be infected, must be immerged into some certain juice, yet not alwayes for the colour or tincture only, but that it may acquire a more excellent quality, Tincture of Infection.

As *Sericum Crudum*, tinctured in *Succo Cocci Baphicæ*, before it go into the composition of *Confectio Alkermes*, that it may more increase its Cardiack quality, and give it a more delightfull tincture. Cochaneel, or with a decoction of Kermes Berries.

Digestion also may be reduced to Maceration, by which Medica-

ments are occluded in ſome convenient veſſell or other cloſe ſhut, as meat in the ſtomach; and ſo macerated, adding thereunto Wine, Vineger, Oyle, or ſome other convenient juice.

Chymiſts make a more ample diſcuſſion of digeſtion, but *nihil attinet ad nos*, under which they comprehend rectification, inſolation, and ſometimes nutrition.

Chap. IX.

Of Triture.

When Medicaments of themſelves hard and ſolid, cannot conveniently be aſſumed or applied, therefore they are prepared and changed by Apothecaries with ſuch Art, that they may eaſily and wholeſomely be aſſumed, for they breake and pulverize them, and that either groſſe or fine, as the occaſion requires.

The reaſons of pulverization.

Now this breaking of Medicaments is chiefly for three ends. Firſt, That they may be exactly mixed with others. Secondly, That they may acquire a new faculty. Thirdly, That their malignity may be corrected.

The divers manner of wayes of Triture.

The manner of breaking of Medicaments, is different and various, for many are brayed in a ſtone morter, as in Marble, others in Metall morters, as Iron, Braſs, Lead, and ſometimes glaſſe, others in a Wooden morter, as of Box, or *Guajaicum*, with peſtells uſually of the ſame matter, for an Iron peſtell is moſt apt for an Iron morter, a Wooden one, for a Wooden morter, a Leaden, for a Leaden morter, and a glaſſe peſtell for a glaſſe morter: Some cannot nor will not be ſo exactly pulverated by beating as by grinding and rubbing, and that upon a ſmooth marble made hollow for that purpoſe, where inſtead of a peſtell, we uſe a little marble ſtone called a *Mannipulus*, which we hold in our hand, and circumduce it this way, and that way, round the ſtone, ſo that we leave no part of the Medicamet unrubbed; and after this manner Gemmes and pretious ſtones are made into powder, till we can perceive no knobbs with our fingers, which powder ſo brayed, the vulgar call marbled duſt, after which manner alſo thoſe powders ought to be attenuated, which go to the making up of Ophthalmick unguents.

Gemms.

Some are brayed and ground with turning ſtones, as Wheat and Barly in a Mill, and ſo a great quantity of hard ſeeds may eaſily and ſpeedily be bruiſed, and grinded to powder.

Thoſe Medicaments we prepare onely for coction need but little bruiſing, and thoſe alſo that are of a thin ſubſtance, whoſe vertue is diſſipable, need but little bruiſing alſo, as almoſt all flowers.

And thoſe require much bruiſing, that are hard, thick ſolid, nervous, and not eaſy to be broken, as alſo ſuch as partake of a malig-

nant

nant quality, as Colocinth, the groſſer part whereof aſſumed being not well powdered, inheres in the turning of the Inteſtines, and exulcerates the part, cauſing the bloody flux.

Thoſe that conſiſt of a meane ſubſtance, as many odoriferous ſimples, muſt be bruiſed moderately, leaſt their more ſubtill, and odoriferous parts ſhould exhale, and be diſſipated, yet they muſt be beaten very ſmall, when they go to the confection of any electuary; and when we would have them to ſearch and penetrate to the remoteſt parts, then muſt they be beaten very fine, when we would have them to ſtay long in the body; then they muſt be courſer, provided they be not indued with any maligne quality; ſome muſt be beaten very fine and ſmall, that they may ſooner performe their operation, and manifeſt their power.

Roots and hearbs are ſometimes beaten green, and ſometimes dry, ſometimes raw, ſometimes boyled, for their different ends and uſes, but thoſe muſt alwayes but be bruiſed moderately, that are to be boyled; for alwayes obſerve, that a greater Triture is requiſit for roots than leaves, leſſer for fruits, and a meane for ſeeds: For ſeeds require but a contuſion betwixt roots and hearbs. Note.

So likewiſe many Medicaments can ſcarce be redacted to powder, unleſs ſomething be mixed with them. As *Coloquintida, ſericum crudum*, Camphire, and many more, which onely dilate by beating them alone, unleſſe there be ſome unctious or liquid matter ſuperadded; ſometime we uſe to ſprinkle ſome with wine, other with water, ſome with oyl and vineger, that they may not only ſooner be brought into powder, but alſo better ſerve our intention. The husks of Silkwormes.

The harder part of Animalls as bones, hornes, clawes, nailes may be more eaſily pulverated, if they be firſt filed, or burned in a Crucible.

There are ſome who alſo burn *Sericum Crudum*, wooll and the haires of ſeverall Animalls before they powder them; but thereby they looſe their former vertues, and acquire new ones, and therefore it is better to cut them ſmall, and dry them in an oven, and ſo beat them ſtrongly till they returne into powder; ſome unctious ſeeds, as the four great coole-ſeeds are to be excortiated before they be powdered, becauſe they clog, and ſticke to the peſtell; many gumms, dropps and juices, conveighed to us from far Countryes, are full of tender fibres, and as it were covered with a coare, which are ſo hard to be broken, and diſſolved (the innermoſt not dry of it ſelf) that they cannot be beaten to powder alone, but muſt firſt be cut into ſmall peeces, and then beaten, with other dryer Medicaments; Gum Traganth, Arabick, Maſtick, Franckincenſe, Sarcocolla, and juices that have a pliant humor, cannot eaſily be pulverated by beating, but rather by a gentle rubbing, circumducing the peſtell lightly round the bottome of the morter, and ſome others, not till ſome drops of water be ſprinkled upon them. Sericum muſt not be burned.

And ſome are ſo friable, as ſtarch, white Agaricke, and many kindes

kindes of earths, that they may be easily even with a light rubbing, be brought into powder: other have so gross, hard, and compact a substance, and such a strong and lasting vertue, that they must be long, and laboriously beaten, before they will be sifted.

Those in generall that require strong concoction require much Triture, and those that require lesse concoction, also lesse Triture.

And when any Aromaticke Ingredient, or odoriferous simples, or Gemms and precious stones, are pulverizing, the morter should be covered with a convenient cover, either of wood or leather, least the more subtill part should exhale, and their odour decay, and they more should be closer covered, when *Euphorbium* or Hellibore are beaten, least the fume should offend the nostrills, and cause importunate sneezing.

Learned *Sylvius* hath appointed this order and method to be observed in pulverating Medicaments, that thick, hard, and pliant Medicaments be first put into the morter, and then such as are not so solid, and last of all those that are most unctious.

How lead is to be powdered.

Lead, according to *Fernelius cap. 16. lib. 6. method.* may be pulverated after this manner: First, it must be beaten into small and thin plates, which being cut very small must be macerated in the strongest vineger for three dayes together, the vineger changed every day, afterwards taken out and dryed, but not burned, which, if laboriously beaten in a morter, will quickly be brought into a very fine powder, the vertue whereof is excellent in concreting, purging, and curing of maligne ulcers.

Chap. X.

Of severall kinds of Triture.

As the matter to be powdered is manifold, so also is the manner, for they are not only diminished by beating, grinding and rubbing, but also by crumbling, breaking, knocking, filing, whence there are many kinds of Triture not performed by pestell, or morter, but by other instruments, as rubbing-stones, Malletts, chopping-knifes, hammers, files, whence arise attrition, confrication, section, fraction, rasion, and limation.

Attrition what it is.

Attrition is by *Sylvius* taken for a certaine manner of preparation, whereby some certaine Medicaments were grated or rubbed on a stone, such as are brought to us from *Naxia*, an Isle of *Cyprus*. As *Lapis Judaicus*, or *Collyries* made into the forme of a pill, and so dryed, which being rubbed upon the stone with some convenient humor, and so the matter by this preparation is made so fine and small, that will

will not hurt, or exasperate the eye, to which it is applyed. *Galen. cap. 4. lib. 4. comp. Medicam. local.*

Butter is sometimes so rubbed and fretted in a leaden morter with a pestell of the same, till it acquire and obtaine the same colour, which is effectuall in curing the itch; and such distempers as require mitification, and so the quality of the butter is not comunicated to the lead, but the quality of the lead to the butter, and so we way expect the like from other liquors and juices, fretted in the like matter and manner.

Confrication is a certaine remiss attrition; by which such things as are easily pulverable, are levigated by the crumbling betwixt ones fingers, and such as are more solid by rubbing, as Ceruse; which assoone as it is rubbed, crumbles to powder, so that confrication and attrition, differ onely in more and lesse. Confrication.

First, the roots, woods, and barks of trees, , are cut off with sawes and hatchets, and afterwards cut less to repose in shops, and after all reduced into fine powder, that they may serve to our use; bones, nailes, clawes, hornes, are also divided by the same instruments, that they may be sold by male piece; and now of late, rasped and shaved. Section.

But this preparation made by Section may seeme remote from the Apothecaries purpose, since it rather hath respect to the seller, than the buyer: yet that more nimble Section, by which the unctious seeds of cucumbers, citrulls, mellons, pepons, pistakes, and such like, are excorticated by a knife, neerely concernes them.

Many roots stalkes and leaves of Plants are cut with a paire of sheeres before they be bruised. That they may be boyled for Medicamentall uses.

Tender hearbs are broken from their stalks by twineing and pulling in the hand, but their dryer parts are not broken till they be bended together; Mineralls sometimes are fractured by a fall, oftner by tender knocks and percussions.

Many roots and stalks are cloven after the same manner that Coopers cleave their twiggs, but their thicker and harder parts are divided either with an axe, saw, or wedge and mallet. Fission.

Many roots are scraped, aswell to take away their barke, as to purge them from their decayed parts, but wood and harder substances, as Box and *Guaiacum*, or those substances that are not so compacted, as *Lignum* aloes, Sandalls, Boares-teeth, Harts-horne, Unicorne, and Rhenoceroes horne, Elkes clawes, and dryed yards and peezles, and many more are rasped, that they may transmit their force into humors by coction, and more easily be pulverated: Rhabarbe, Agaricke, Ginger, Nutmeggs, and sugar are oftentimes abraded upon a grater, and sometimes Quinces (saith *Sylvius*) because by this means a greater quantity of juice is gotten out of them, than by bruising of them in a morter. Rasion.

Metalls, especially are filed, because otherwise they could Limatio.

not

not be pulverated by rasion, or beating: for they either not yield at all, or else dilate being beaten, and are no wayes levigated.

Gold and silver are filed, and their dust exhibited without further preparation; Steele, Iron, Brasse, and Lead, are for the most part filed, that they may be burned, and afterwards pulverated for future uses; Teeth also and hornes, and mens sculls, and some hard woods are filed, that they may be divided smaller than by rasion; for that which is filed is smaller than that which is scraped.

CHAP. XI.

Of Coction.

THAT gentle Medicaments might become more wholesome, and fitter for use and Composition, they are wont to be altered by convenient Coction,

What coction is.

For Coction (*Probl. 7. sect. 12. Hip.*) is an Alteration, and Commutation of the thing boyled: now there are three different coctions. Maturation, Elixation and Assation, but because Maturation called by the Greeks *Pepansis*, is a naturall kind of Coction, we will omit it, because we intend onely to treat of Artificiall Coction; to which Elixation, Ustion, Calfaction, Frixion, Despumation, and what ever acquires mutation by heat may be referred as to its Genus.

Now Coction is small, or great, or moderate according to the substance or vertue of the thing cocted, for some, whose vertue is dissolved by long coction, either because tis weak and posited in the superficies, or because the substance of it is contained in a rare texture, as some seeds, many odoriferous spices, and most flowers, require a light and small Coction, others on the contrary, whose vertue is not easily resolved, either because it is vallid, and firme, or because it resides in a grosse or dense substance, or because it is posited in the middle, as in Roots, Woods, Gumms, Stones, and sharp Medicaments, as Onions, and Garlick, which grow sweet and mild by Coction, require long and valid Coction; others whose substance, and vertue is posited in a meane between these two extreames, as all the three Sandalls, Jujubees, Tamarinds, mellow fruits, and many seed, endure but a meane and moderate Coction.

What elixation is.

Now that Coction that is made in liquour of a moderate heat is called Elixation. And that liquor, in which the Medicament is boyled, is for the most part water, and that either simple, as common water, or Medicinall or compound, to which Lees of Wine, Hydromel,

mel, Milk, Buttermilk, Wine, Vineger, juices of plants, Salt-water, or sulphureous waters, and all liquors, in which Medicaments are put and boyled, may be reduced.

The use of this elixation is manifold,

The benefit of Elixation.

First, because it resolves the excrementitious humors of a Medicament in boyling, and hence Colocynth and Turbith are boyled, that they may not gripe, and torment the belly; but it is quite contrary with those Medicaments that purge by Leniating, and Lubricating the belly, and with those that are best when they are fullest. As *Cassia* and Tamarinds, for such become worse by Coction; because thereby their native humidity is diminished, and their purgative faculty destroyed.

Secondly, It dissipates all those flatulent grosse, and corroding humours that provoke the ventricle to loathing of the same, as in *Senna Polipodie, Carthamus, Walworke, &c.*

Thirdly, It breaks all acrimony, violence, and ulcerating faculties; as *Mesue* writes of Scammony, which by his prescript will be better if it be boyled in a sorbe apple, or in a quince, or rose water, as all other sharp sapors, which become better by Coction.

Fourthly, It bridles and corrects, the more vehement and maligne attraction of the Medicament, and therefore we boyle white Hellibor, and most valid Medicaments, that their violence may be broken, and experience hath taught me, that they become more benigne, when they are boyled in water, or juice of hearbs, seeds, or fruits.

Lastly, Elixation doth very comodiously mixe the different qualities of Medicaments, that one quality, as it were concrete, might result from them all, which if it be weak in any plant, it must be boyled easier and lighter; if more potent and valid, more and harder, by how much the substance of the Medicament is grosser, and more solid: Therefore we first boyle the woods, then roots, then seeds, then barks, then fruits, and last of all flowers on a gentle fire free from smoak.

This order of Elixation is to be observed in the preparation of all Medicaments, especially Apozemes, which are made of the decoction of roots, leaves, seeds, and flowers, dulcorated with Sugar or Syrups.

The punctuall time of Coction cannot be defined, as some vainely have limited, but left to the judgment of the Artist: for some require much time of Elixation, others lesse.

Chap. XII.

Of Assation and Frixion.

What Assation is.

Assation is the coction of Medicaments in their own juice; after which manner of preparation, flesh, roots, and fruits are cocted, without any adventitious humour.

The manner of Assation.

Now this Assation is made divers wayes; for flesh is decocted at the fire on a spit, or in an oven, or an earthen pot, or carbonaded on the coals.

Beta Romana.

The roots also of black Beets are roasted in the ashes, and Chesnuts in a frying pan: but those rather appertain to a Kitchin than a Physician.

Now many Medicaments are dryed before the fire, that they may depose their useless, and retain their salutary quality; others, that they may become more mild; others, that they may be easier and sooner pulverated. Rhabarb is sometimes dryed, that it may be less purgative, and more astrictive; as also the Sea-onion, that its vehemency may be obtunded; whereby *Dioscorides* saith, it offends the Intrals. So also Sparrows brains are dryed, that they may be sooner pulverable, fitly to be mixed with those Medicaments that incite to Venery.

Scylla.

The brains of Sparrows excite Venery.

The benefits that come by Assation.

Many also are prepared by Assation, that their copious and excrementitious humidity may be thereby washed. Now they ought to be stirred or moved with a spoon, or *spatula*, while they are broyled on a hot tile, oven, or frying pan, lest they be burned; and they must be taken out before they grow black.

The difference of Assation and Frixion.

Assation and Frixion differ thus; Assation is with its own juice, Frixion with an adventitious humour, as with Butter, Oil, Wine, Vinegar, or other juice or liquor; after which manner many Aliments are fryed and broyled, as Beans and Pease, both that they may be more pleasant, and also that they may more depose their bad qualities, *Gal. 29. lib. 2. de Aliment.*

Coriander seed.

Coriander seed is fryed, that is, it is prepared with Vinegar, that its quality, which is noxious to the brain, may be obtunded. *Semina viticis* are also to be fryed, that the flatulent humour may be discussed, and that they may inhibit Venery. Now some are fryed in the oil of sweet Almonds, *Myrab. Citrin. Chebul. & Nigri*, for the composition of *Triphera Persica*, some in the juice of unripe Grapes; others in Wine, or other Liquor, according to the Physicians purpose and scope, that they may acquire a better quality, or lose their noxious or ill qualities.

Agnus castus.

Chap.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Vstion.

MAny Medicaments, especially such as are more solid, as Minerals, or such as are indued with a malignant quality, are burned before they be fitted for mans use. Some also are burned, that they may be sooner pulverated, as bones, horns, claws, flax, and hairs of Animals; others are burned, that they may change their colour; others, that they may obtain a new faculty; and one fit for our purpose. Many sharp Medicaments are sometimes burned, that they may grow milde, and lose their Acrimony; others not sharp, that they may acquire Acrimony. And thus (as *Galen*, *in proœmio, l. 9. simpl.*) took notice, that many sharp Medicaments lose much heat by burning; and many not sharp, assume and acquire heat thereby. This he proves by the example of Vitriol, which becomes more milde and moderate by ustion; and some not sharp, become more hot and crude by ustion, as *Fex vini*, Quick-silver, crude Lime, and many others. Tartar.

Now how the same efficient produces contrary effects, Physicians thus judge. Acrimony is acquired by heat increased to a certain degree, which degree sharp Medicaments exceeding, lose their Acrimony. But such as were not sharp when they attain to the same degree, whether it be the second or third degree, acquire the same Acrimony; which *Galen* forbids us to use; for he commends Brass burned whil'st it is red, but rejects it when black, because too much burned. The reason why sharp Medicaments by ustion lose their Acrimony.

Alcumists will have Acrimony to be lost by Ustion, because of the dissipation of Sulphur and volatile Salt, and acquired in such as are not sharp, because of the discussion of volatile Sulphur, wherein there is little or no Acrimony; and the remansion of the fixed saltness, whose Acrimony before Ustion was obtruded and obscured with Sulphur.

There are also many manners of burnings, for some crude Medicaments are burned in an oven, some on a dish, some on an earthen pot or furnace, others in an Alcumists Reverbatory and Crucible. The multifarious modes of burning.

A Hare must be burnt in an oven till it may be brought to powder, which is most commodious and usefull for breaking the stone, and expelling the gravel in the kidneys. The pouder of a Hare burnt is good against the Stone.

Galen, (*cap. 2. lib. 11. simpl.*) advises us to burn Vipers in a new pot till they become medicamental; Salt, which is usefull and good to the discussing of saltish humours and tetters. But beware lest their noxious and poysonous vapour in their combustion overcome the brain, and so hurt the operation. So likewise integral Animals that are small, may be burned; but parts onely of great ones, as bones, horns, The Ustion of Vipers.

horns, hairs, feathers, hides, claws, which must be done in a new earthen pot or furnace with burning charcoles, till they may more easily be pulverated, (*cap. 33. lib. de Theriac.*) Boughs, Shrubs, and Twigs of Trees, and many Simples, may be accended alone, or burned in an earthen or metallick pot, or vessel.

The pouder of burnt Crabs effectual in many distempers.

Crabs are sometimes burned in a Crucible, sometimes in a pot, often among burning coals, till they become ashes, or at least may be beaten to small pouder, which is usefull to cure ulcerous affects, and good for those that are bit with a mad Dog.

The Vstion of Stones.

Stone may be burned amongst hot coals blown with bellows, except the Saphyre, and other pretious stones, which should be broken into parts before Vstion, and then put into a new pot covered with a lid full of holes, that the exhalation may have an easy passage, which must be burned till they be ignified.

When Vstion is finished.

For Ignition in some is the end of Vstion; in others, Vstion is not terminated till smoke expire; and yet many stones may be ignified three or four times, and still suffunded with a certain humour, till they be bray'd.

Fex vini.

Wine-dregs must be scorched till they become white, and acquire so much Acrimony, that as it were by burning, they bite the tongue and palate.

Egs, Oisters, and Snails shels, and Animals teeth and horns ought to be burned till they be inflamed, and made white and pulverable.

Rosins, Storax, Frankincense, Pitch, Turpentine, and such things, are sometimes burned and accended, that their fume may become medicamental for several uses.

ustio Aluminis & Vitrioli.

Alume must be burned in a hot platter till it leave bubbling, and Vitriol till it lose its colour.

Salis ustio.

Salt must be burned in a pot close covered, lest it sparkle out; it is not enough burned till it leave sparkling and crackling. Nitre must be burned after the same manner.

Ceruse præparatio.

Ceruse, according to *Dioscorides*, (*cap.* 103. *lib.* 5.) must be brayed and burned in a new pot daily set upon burning coals, till it be of an ashy colour, then it may be taken out, refrigerated, and used. Or it must be burned in a new dish upon coals continually stirred with a wooden *spatula*, till it be of colour like Sandarach; which so prepared, is by some called *Sandyx*, or ruddy.

Sandaracha.
Sandyx.

Now Sandarach is not the gum of the Juniper tree, which the Vulgar call *Vernix*, and the Mauritanians *Sandarax*, but a kinde of golden colour'd Oker, (*Brasaval, in exam. simpl. cap. 66. lib. 9. simpl. cap. 53. lib. 9. simpl.*) for Sandarach and *Auripigmentum* are digged out of the same pit, yea, they are mixed together, and possess the same virtue. Sandarach is by another name called by the Chymists, red Arsenick, as Gold, colour'd Oker, yellow Arsenick. Furthermore, Ceruse by burning becomes *Sandyx*, saith *Galen*, but never Sandarach, which is of a burning faculty. But *Sandyx* calefies by no part, but rather refrigerates, which Painters use, as Ceruse; whose colour they can change by burning, and sometimes by mixing therewith Vinegar.

Gold,

Gold colour'd Oker, or *Auripigmentum*, must be burned in a new earthen pot set upon burning coals, till it be inflamed by the fire, and change its colour. Sandarach must be burned after the same manner, and both their virtues are alike, (saith *Dioscorides*, *cap.* 30, & 31. *lib.* 5.) for by their vehement heat they cause scabs, repress excretions, and discuss swellings. *Auripigmentum.*

Brass ore, or *Lapis calaminaris*, must be overspread with coals, and burned till it shine and bubble up like the dross of Iron, then it must be extinguished, (*cap.* 45. *lib.* 5. *Dioscorid.*) some, when it is thus burned, beat it in wine, and burn it again, till it be hollow, and seem to be full of holes, and burn it the third time after it hath been again brayed in wine, till it be reducted to ashes. *Cadmiæ præparatio.*

The Pumick stone must be burned under most flagrant coals, till it wax white and shine; then must it be extracted and quenched in odoriferous wine, again burned and quenched, and after the third ustion taken out, and refrigerated of it self, and so preserved for use, (*Dioscorid. cap.* 125. *lib.* 5.) *Pumicis ustio.*

Verdigreate broken very small, must be burned in an earthen dish set upon burning coals, till it change it self, and attain an ashy colour, *ibid. lib.* 5. *Eruginis ustio.*

Red Vitriol must be burned in a new earthen pot set upon quick coals. Now its ustion in moyster matters is perfected, when it ceaseth to bubble up, and is perfectly dryed in other matters when it is changed into a splendent colour, and hath contracted a bloody or Vermilion colour. *Chalciteos ustio*

Chrysocolla, or *Borax*, must be burned in a dish upon coals, and Oker after the manner of Brass ore; the virtue of Chrysocal is to purge wounds, and scars, to cohibit excrescent flesh, to astringe, calefy, and wast the body by moderate biting and corroding. But Oker astringes, erodes, and dissipates collections and swellings. *Chrysocollæ ustio*

Lead may be burned after divers manners: but before ustion, it is for the most part attenuated either by filing or slicing; then put into a new earthen pot, and so to be burned, Sulphur being mixed with it, till it may easily be pulverated. Now this Sulphur must be interjoyned with the plates or slices, and so both inflamed together, and stirred with an iron *spatula*. In the interim, beware lest the most noxious exhalation of the Lead pierce the nostrils, for it greatly hurts the brain by its commixture with Quicksilver; because of which also, it offends the nerves, and often causes stupidity, and the Palsey to such especially as work much in Lead. The way to burn Lead. *Halitus plumbi.*

Now Sulphur and Nitre is put to the thing to be burned, being a very valid and strong compage to the thing, whose volatibles would sooner be dissipated otherwise, than their fixed parts overcome by the flame, as Alcumists observe.

And Aflation is related to Ustion, yea 'tis a certain way to Ustion; so is Ustion to Calcination, and Calcination to Cinefaction. But Cinefaction is most competent to Combustion, for all combustible

things are ordained for flames. For in Minerals, where there is scarce any fuel for the flame, few or no ashes are left after Ustion; of wood, nothing but ashes: yet both combustible and incombustible things may be levigated; Combustibles, whil'st they are attenuated into ashes by burning; Incombustibles, whil'st after Ustion, by pulveration or grinding on a Marble stone, they are attenuated into Alcool, or small dust. If these shall not satisfie the Reader, he shall finde a more special ustion of Medicaments daily used of us in our Book called the Apothecaries Shop.

Chap. XIV.

Of Extinction.

Extinctio quid. EXtinction is a suffocation of a matter hot or fiery in some Liquor. Now this matter is extinguished either when often burned, or when onely ignified or heated, as when Gems or Metals are extinguished in Wine-vinegar, pure or stillatitious matter, or some juice or liquor, till they be totally cold ere they have been perfectly burned.

Many things are oft to be extinguished, as *Lapis Pyrites*: some but once, as Galls: and some are extinguished of themselves, without the affusion of any humid matter.

Weckerus saith, that Quicksilver may be extinguished with mans fasting spittle; yet things not ignified are improperly said to be extinguished, but be mended and prepared by fasting Spittle, and mended by Sage; for Spittle makes it more apt to be incorporated with other mixtures, Sage amends, corrects and asswages its fierceness; for Sage is so called, from its preservative faculty, *Salvia*, as it were *Salvatrix*, for it much roborates the brain and nerves, which the malevolent faculty of Quicksilver offends, which should be mended with the juice of Sage.

Aqua extinctionis auri. A lump or mass of Gold often burned in the fire, is sometimes extinguished in common water, which water is good for such as have the bloody Flux, to shut the orifices of the vessels, and for the leprous to roborate their principal parts, and exhilerate their spirits; for it is not a rash conceit that Gold as well refreshes the internals, as the externals.

As the water wherein Steel hath often been extinguished, is usefull to drive away many affects, so Steel it self beaten to dust, burned and extinguished in Vinegar, is excellent for many uses; of which more elsewhere.

The virtue of Extinction is such, that it attracts and retains the virtues of the humour in which it is extinguished. So *Cadmia*, or *Lapis Calaminaris*, is sometimes extinguished in Wine, sometimes in Vinegar,

Vinegar, for the various institutions of the Physician; and Iron is sometimes extinguished in water mixed with oil, that it may be more doctile to be made into Helmets, or such pieces of Armour, sometimes in water onely, that it may be the more fragil.

Chap. XV.

Of Calfaction, Insolation, and Refrigeration.

Calfactio quid.

Calfaction is a certain manner of preparing Medicaments, as well simple as compound, whereby they are neither boyled, nor burned, but moderately calefyed either in the sun, or by the fire, or by the heat of some putrid matter, that these may be strained, mollified, and mixed more commodiously, or that they may be used more easily and happily. So an infused Medicament is calefied before it be strained, not onely that all its quality may be transmitted into the liquor, but that the liquor may more readily permeate, and wholly draw out.

Apothecaries do successfully give hot Glysters prescribed for such as labour in the Collick, if it proceed not from choler; warm ones to such as are sick of a Feaver, not that their grief should wax hotter, but to mitigate it, and help the motion of Nature, and the exclusion of the humour upward may be more easy. Scarce any thing actually cold should be exhibited, whether the remedy be applyed or assumed. Also Baths, and the very Linnen sick folks use, should be moderately warmed. Many Medicaments also must be calefied, that they may more easily be broken, mixed, dissolved, and strained.

Insolatio quid.

Insolation is so like and near to Calfaction, that the one may easily supply the others course and place, for they both promise the same effect. And it is like a certain coction, when Hydromel is calefied by being set in the Sun forty dayes whil'st the Dog-star rules; for being more concoct, it may be a taste like Wine. Yet doth not this Art onely make it become like Wine, but that which is prepared of four pints of running water, and one pound of honey, must be so long cocted before Insolation, till a raw egge may swim above it; which we call Hydromel.

Hydromel vinosum quomodo fiat.

What Hydromel is.

Now Conserves are insolated or calefied in the Sun, that all their parts may be fermented together, and their more humid matter discussed; especially such as are prepared of cold leaves and flowers, and should be kept a long time, which will be a means to hinder their working up.

The juice of the herb *Scylla*, by *Galens* advice, (*cap. ult. lib. de puero epileptico*) must be drawn out by Insolation or Coction in the Sun; when the Air is obscure, it may be extracted with fire; and such Medicaments as by the institution of Winter cannot be insolated,

lated, may be dryed by the Fire in Winter, by the Sun in Summer.

Many Oils may be made by the infusion of flowers, and permixtion of other things, and may be insolated for the space of more or fewer dayes, as the quantity and faculty of the thing infused requires. For things more hot and dry need little or no Insolation, cold and moyst longer Insolation.

Vinegar of Roses. Vinegar altered by flowers, must be prepared after the same manner. For Rose leaves should be more insolated; Elder flowers a shorter time; as also that Vinegar which admits of Garlick, Mint, the flowers of Betony, and Gilliflowers.

Refrigeratio. The Refrigeration also of Medicaments pertains to the Apothecary; for he refrigerates such things as he would have to congeal as jelly; as also such things as are after coction hard, he reposes in his Shop, as solid Electuaries, dry Conserves, and Plasters. Now Refrigeration differs from Extinction in this, that all things extinguished are refrigerated, not on the contrary, &c.

Chap. XVI.

Of Putrefaction and Fermentation.

Galen out of *Aristotle* observes, (*cap. 9. lib. 2. de diff. feb. & comm. ad part. 1. lib. 3. epid.*) that Putrefaction proceeds alwayes from external heat in a humid matter; as also the internal heat cocteth, and corrupteth not. So also whatever is in every part dry, doth never apertly putrifie, as we see neither Brick, nor Gold, nor Silver to putrifie.

Mensis Philosophicus Chymicorum. And because things are putrid from an external heat, Putrefaction is a kinde of Coction; as when some medicamental matter is left in a Vial occinded in dung, or as Alcumists say, a Horses belly (for they give feigned names to their feigned art) for the space of thirty, and sometimes forty dayes, the last term whereof is called by them the Philosophical month; and the Liquor of this Putrefaction, menstruous, or Putrefaction finished in a months space.

Menstruum quid Chymicis. The Alcumists own this kinde of preparation, as peculiar to themselves: but *Galen*, many years before they were hatched, taught how to putrifie the Gem *Calcitis*, and *Litargie*, obruted with dung after they were put into a new pot with Vinegar. And the Apothecaries also of our time have in this owned *Galen*, who macerate and putrifie the branches of black Poplar for many months together, either with Hogs grease, for the confection of the Populeon Unguent, or with Oil for the Medicine, helping weariness.

Fermentatio. Fermentation is not so proper to Medicaments, as to Meats and Drinks: for a lump of Dough is fermented, or leavened, that it may make more pleasant and wholsome Bread.

Wine

Wine and Beer are fermented when they grow cold, and when there is a segregation of the sincere Suck or Juice: Dregs, or *Faces*, Sirrups, Conserves, and Electuaries are also then fermented, when new made, they refrigerate in the Vessels.

Alcumists have their fermentation also, which they sometimes call Vivification, and sometimes Resuscitation; for thereby they say, that the matter perished is as it were resuscitated from the dead, and acquires new virtues.

The vain Gold-mongers also promise, that such a Fermentation will conduce to the transmutation of Metals: but they never yet knew the matter of the Ferment, nor the manner of its confection.

Chap. XVII.

Of Dissolution.

Ad extra.

Medicaments are wont to be variously changed before they be exhibited: for the most part, when whole Medicaments will not serve, they are prepared by some triture, or dissolution in some liquor or other. Now this dissolution is a certain triture, whereby Medicaments, as well simple as compound, are dissolved in some fit humour to a moderate consistency, and sometimes smaller, sometimes thicker, according to the Physicians purpose.

Dissolutionis usus multiplex.

Now Medicaments are dissolved for many uses; first, that they may be easily assumed; secondly, that they may more readily be compounded with others; thirdly, that they may sooner be distributed; fourthly, that they may penetrate into the part affected, and if need be, remain there; as when liquid Medicaments are injected into the belly, bladder, intestines, or any Ulcer in the body; fifthly, Medicaments are dissolved that they may afterwards be strained, and that their virtues purged from excrements, may sooner enter the inward parts.

Lithontriptica.

Thus Medicaments, which break the Stone, are dissolved sometimes in white Wine, sometimes in the juice of Limmons, in the water of Wall-pelitory, Radish-roots, or such like, that they may more easily permeate the holes of the reins, and the passages of the ureters. On the contrary, such as are to be moved with the Spittle, are to be dissolved in a thicker matter, as in Conserves, or Sirrup, that they may appear rather as a Medicine to be sucked, than drunk.

Anachartasis quomodo movenda.

And as Triture, so also Infusion, and oftentimes Calefaction are requisite to Dissolution; for such as are hard, pliant, and viscid, can scarce be dissolved till they be broken, or steeped, or calefied by the Sun, or Fire.

Thus many Medicaments may be dissolved presently after Triture,

ture, and many kinds of Earth; others, not without long agitation, as all shels of Fishes, and many more. Some require both Maceration and Calfaction, as many Gummes, which before dissolution should be macerated with strong Vinegar, *Aqua vitæ*, or strong Wine.

Non quævis in quovis liquore dilui. But Metals and Minerals cannot be dissolved in any juice or liquor, but in the juice of Limmons, in Vinegar distilled, or in such Waters as the Alcumists call strong Waters. Any Medicament therefore is not dissolved in any liquor, but in some fit and determinate one; for Turpentine may lie a whole natural day in water, or in a decoction, and scarce be dissolved, without some Eggs yolks be superadded.

In general, Grease, Marrow, and Fatness are melted at the fire, that they may be more easily dissolved, and ingrede the composition of Unguents and Plaisters. All kinds of odoriferous Medicaments are dissolved in cordial Waters, or altering Waters, for moyst medicinal Plaisters. Pils, or other Purges, whether compound or simple, are dissolved in *Aqua vitæ*, or other convenient Liquor, by an artificial sedulity in drawing out their extracts. Solid things also, which neither can nor ought to be exhibited in that form, are first to be broken and dissolved in some convenient liquor, that they may more safely and easily be assumed.

Chap. XVIII.

Of Liquation.

ALL Medicaments, after due preparation thereunto, may be dissolved, but few can be melted; for Stones may be burned, Wood accended, but in no wise melted, because not congulated with cold. *For* (saith *Aristotle, cap. 6. lib. 7. meteor.*) *Liquation is a solution of those things which are congealed by cold into a more liquid and fluent consistency by heat*; as Fatness, Marrow, Oil in winter, and such like, which with little cold are concreted, and with little heat diffuded.

Liquatio quid.

But such things as are concreted with diurnal cold, are very hard to melt, as Gold, Brass, and Iron, the fusion whereof rather perrains to such as are exercised in Metals, and not in Medicaments, to an Artist, and not a Philosopher.

Dissolutio non nisi fit cum humore. Liquation differs from Dissolution, in that Liquation is alwayes caused by heat, and seldome or never with any humour; Dissolution alwayes with humours, seldome with heat.

Lead is soon melted with heat; Sulphur, Pitch, and Rosin sooner; Salt, Manna, Sugar, Gums of Ivy, Prunes, Juniper, and other Trees, are sometimes melted in hot water, and so diffused, that they may be dissolved.

The

The Alchimists have illustrated a *Pyrotheony*, and have invented many things, whereby the liquative or fusitive Art is enriched; as when *Sal Ammoniack* once sublimated with common Salt, then twice by it self, will make hard Metals forthwith fluid. Copper also may be easily melted otherwise, if onely a little of an Asses hoof be injected to it in melting. *Quomodo metalla facile liquentur.*

Now the use of Liquation in Pharmacy is great, for it causes the Medicaments to change their form, and acquire a new one; and it also purges them, that their impure parts might be separated from the pure and mundane.

Chap. XIX.

Of Mollition and Duration.

MAny preparations of Medicaments hold such affinity with others, that they are often taken for the same, as Liquation and Mollition, which onely differ according to their degree of more or less: so that Mollition is the beginning of Liquation. For all things that are melted, first grow soft; and many things after mollition, if they be longer calefied, melt; yet not all; for Ivory, Claws and Horns may be mollified, but not melted.

Now Mollition happens two wayes; either by heat onely of the Fire, Sun, or Animal, or of some putrid matter, or by some affunded humour, as when wax is mollified in hot water, or some harder medicamental mass is steeped in some sirrup, or convenient liquor, till it be mollified, and yield to the touch, which according to *Galen*, (*cap. ult. lib. 3. de differ. puls.*) is Judge of the hard or soft body. *Mollitionem fieri duobus modis.*

Mother of Pearl, Shell-fishes, and Egge-shels macerated in distilled Vinegar, are so mollified, that they may be wrought or drawn as you please. It is also thought, that Ivory may be mollified with Beer, or by being boyled for the space of six hours with the root of Mandrakes.

Horns rarefied by the fire, or long boyled in water, or buried seven dayes in dung, do grow soft. It is thought the Coral in the juice of Barberies, Pearls in the juice of Limmons, and many Stones in certain Liquors, rightly prepared, will be softned.

Since according to *Galen*, (*cap.* 1. *lib.* 4. *de dignos. puls.*) those things are hard to which our flesh yields, and those soft which yield to our flesh; the doctrine of Mollition and Duration is as opposite in the same consideration. Duration takes place in Pharmacy in compound Medicaments, which being preserved *Duratio.*

for use, ought to be somewhat dryed and solid, as Electuaries, dry Conserves, Salves, Pils, Trochisks, and some Sirrups.

Quot modis medicamenta indurentur.

Now Medicaments are hardned by cold, heat, and the admixtion of dry things. By cold, as when such things as are melted, or onely mollified, are removed from the fire, and being exposed to the air, do refrigerate and harden. By heat, when Medicaments are boyled to their just consistency, and their humid part absumed; for so being dryer, they become obdurate. Medicaments also harden by the admixtion of dry things, either that they may keep longer, or that in such a consistency they may be more easily and safely exhibited or applyed.

Chap. XX.

Of Siccation.

Such Simples as are to be preserved all Winter, or such as are brought from forreign Countryes, ought to be accurately dryed before they be reposed in Chests, Boxes, or Bags; for their excremental humidity coacted, and not dilated, soon corrupteth, and then their wholsome quality faileth.

Quare medicamenta siccentur

Neither are Medicaments dryed onely for conservation sake, but often times that they may be pulverated, & that their virtues may be more effectual. Now whatsoever is moyst, and should be dry, it must be dryed in the sun, or by the fire, or left in a very windy shade voyd of rain and dust, till it be withered, and its superfluous humidity altogether dissipated.

Those things are dryed to pulveration by the heat of the fire, which are burned in a furnace or oven, or on burning coals, as Bones, Claws, Horns, Shels; or in an earthen pot, as hairs of Animals, and such things as are put in a fire-pan, or covered in a dish or platter set in or upon an oven where bread was lately extracted; for so Plums, Pears, Cherries, and such humid Fruits are wont to be dryed.

Quæ in sole melius siccentur

Leaves and flowers, whose colour should remain after drying, are best dryed by the Suns heat, especially in Summer and Autumn. Seeds also gathered before perfect maturity, or in time of rain, or when the necessity of the matter requires it, cannot be exactly dryed, but in the Sun, or by the fire.

Thick and juicy roots also, unless they be cut small, may be dryed better in a place exposed to the Sun, and North-winde, than in a shade not agitated with the winde; and the desiccation of many is to no purpose, unless insolation have preceded.

Yet small roots do easily dry in a shade, as also many great ones, if they be cut into little pieces, fixed on a thread, and exposed to the shady air, so it be windy, not wet. Leaves do more easily dry,

which

which being bound in a bundle, are expoſed to the externall air, partly to the heat of the fire, being ſuſpended for the moſt part on the beames of ſhopps, flowers moſt eaſily; for being laid upon a paper or diſh, and moved, they are preſently dry.

Now leaves when dryed, are to be repoſed in baggs of Canvas, or paper, roots, flowers and ſeeds, in veſſells of glaſs or wood.

The flowers of water Lillyes, becauſe more groſſe and humid, muſt be put upon a thread, that ſo expoſed to the air, they may more commodiouſly dry. The pills of Oranges, Limmons, and Pomegranates, as alſo ſpungy roots, are dryed after the ſame manner in ſhops. *Quomodo cortices & flores ſiccandi.*

Foxes Lungs waſhed in wine may be dryed in an oven not very hot, Harts peezles in the open air, Wolves inteſtines in the ſhade, figgs, and grapes in the Sun, as alſo ſolid Confections, which after their conditure muſt be preſerved in ſugar, or ſyrrup.

Chap. XXI.

Of Expreſſion.

STrong compreſſion is often requiſite to ſeparate the more pure and thin ſubſtance of Medicaments from the terreſtriall and groſſe, which ſince the hands alone cannot execute, *Meſueus* invented a preſſe whereby Medicaments put in a ſtrong hempen or hairy bag, may be ſo ſtrongly preſſed, that the whole thin ſubſtance will be compelled to go out, the groſſe and more compact remaining.

Thus wine is compelled from the grapes into hogſheads, thus the juice of apples is educed to the confection of Sidar; thus Seplaſiaries extract the juice of young corne for that condiment, prepared with a little vinegar, toſted bread and ſome ſuch like things, which they call the green intinct of ſome Greeks ἰντὺς πρασινος i.e. wine made of hearbs. *Pomaceum qui fiat.* *Intinctus viridis.* *Vinum ex herbis.*

Many are put in a cloth, then wringed in ones hands, till they be ſufficiently expreſſed, as the juice of Sorrell, Purſlane, and Plantain, for confecting Alum-water, add whites of Eggs and Alum to the former. *Aqua alumniosa quibus conſtet.*

After the like manner is the expreſſion of Rhabarb, Agarick, and other Medicaments, in ſome decoction, or convenient juice or water; that what is uſefull may be taken, and what is noxious, ejected.

Acacia is drawn by compreſſion out of the juice of the ſeed of the Egyptian bramble or thorn dryed in a ſhade; it looks black, if drawn out of mature ſeed, ruddy of immature. *Acacia.*

Expreſſion therefore is ſometimes of the ſimple juice of ſome Medicament; ſometimes of the ſame macerated in a decoction or water, as when the infuſion of oyles, and decoction of ſyrrups is diſtrained: Anacardian Honey is expreſſed out of ſmall and young Anacards long boyled, for out of theſe thus tabefied, proceeds a thick liquor, which they call *Mel Anacardinum*; which that it may be well made according to *Arnaldus de Villa nova*, *Cap de memor. defunct.* the Anacards ſhould be beaten, and macerated in vinegar ſeven dayes, on the eight day boyled on a ſlow fire, till two parts be diſſipated, then its Colature boyled with Honey is of many called *Mel Anacardinum*.

Mel Anacardinum qui fiat.

Quomodo ſuci diu ſine putredine ſervandi.

That juices expreſſed may be long preſerved without putrefaction, it is requiſite that ſalt be intermixed, or they repoſed in a veſſell of a ſtrait mouth, oyl being ſuperadded to a fingers thickneſs.

Infuſed Medicaments and juices are ſometimes to be ſtrained with a light, ſometimes with a hard expreſſion. And ſimple oyles can ſcarce be extracted without hard compreſſion, whether with or without fire: for oyle of Almonds may be extracted either way, as alſo that which is drawn from Piſtace nutts, and other oyly fruits.

CHAP. XXII.

Of Extraction.

Euphorbium unde & quomodo colligatur

ALl expreſſion is a certain extraction, but not the contrary, for many things are extracted without expreſſion, as juices and roſins of plants cut or ſmitten; thus *Euphorbium* is extracted out of the Lybian tree wounded with a long ſpeare, into ſheep skins bound about the tree, that is ſmitten; for its Acrimony doth ſo infect the taſt and ſmell, and ſtir up ſuch ardour in the mouth and noſtrills: The Ruſticks are called to collect this juice, who allured, with the reward, ſmite the tree at diſtance, that they may be leſſe hurt with the noxious fervour of the *Euphorbium*, who for all this never depart ſafe and without hurt.

Elaterium quomodo parandum.

Elaterium by *Dioſcorides* his adviſe, muſt be extracted out of the wild Cucumbers (*Cap.* 148. *lib.* 4.) after this manner. The Cucumbers being gathered, thoſe which with touching fall off, let them be kept one night, the next day a ſmall ſieve being ſet upon a goblet, or baſin, take the Cucumbers in thine hands, and cleave them one by one on a knife with the edge upward, and the point toward thy face, and then the juice will be expreſſed through the ſieve into the veſſell ſet under, and that the * thicker part ſticking to the ſieve may ſend forth its liquor more eaſily ſtraine it; let the humour be ſtirred in the baſin, then let it ſtand, and covered with a linnen cloth, ſet it in the Sun, when it hath ſtood a while, poure out the water that ſwims

* From that ſubſtance which remains upon the top of the fire, let the ſeeds be ſeparated, and let it be added to the *fœcula*, for it is as effectuall as the other.

at

at top without moving the feces, whereby part of it will be effuded, and part exhaufted, then beat in a morter the fettlements, and make it into little Trochisks, when it is dryed on a fufficient conſiſtency.

Juices onely are not extracted from integrall Plants, or their parts, as *Hypociſtis*, of the ſpriggs growing from the roots of Ciſtus, the juice of Liccorice and Cyrene *Laſerpitium*, but ſeverall other liquors from the inciſions of trees, and barks of ſhrubs and ſtalks, as Gumms, Roſins, *Lachrymæ.*

Amongſt extracted Gumms are counted, Gum Amoniack, Sagapene, Gum of Panan or Opoponax, Galbane, Bdellium, Myrrhe, Storax, Frankincenſe, and many more, which for their ſeverall natures are hard or eaſy to be extracted: Some flow out ſpontaneouſly without wounding the tree; when the bark in Summer gapes, by reaſon of the heat. *Gummi.*

Roſins are more eaſily extracted, becauſe more fluent, falling down without the help of hands, as that which runneth of Turpentine trees, which is the beſt of Roſines, as *Dioſcorides* (*Cap.* 67. *lib.* 1.) The Roſin from the Maſtick tree is the ſecond, thoſe next that are extracted out of the Pine and Fir trees. *Reſinæ.*

Amongſt teares or exudations many things take place, as the water that flowes from a vine cut, the milk of all Tithymalls, and the thick juice of Poppies, which when it is congealed is called Opium. *Lachrymæ.*

In many plants therefore the barke onely is wounded, and thence diſtills δάκρυον, that is tears, into a baſon, or ſome ſuch veſſell hanged for the purpoſe, in many the roots are wounded, or quite cut, ſometimes alſo the boughs, thus Balſam is extracted out of the Phrygian ſhrub, its bark being ſlaſhed with an Ivory knife, for it may not be done wih Iron or Steele without great damage to the juice.

The extraction of oyles is yet unhandled, which is done diverſly after an artificial manner. For they are extracted either by diſtillation, which is by aſcent or deſcent, of which the Alcumiſts maſſe of books is full, or by expreſſion, or infuſion, of which we have ſpoken before, and ſhall treat more largely in our Medicamentall ſhop, or *Pharmacopœa.*

Chap. XXIII.

Of Chymicall Extracts.

There is no little difference betwixt the extractions of Apothecaries, and thoſe of Alcumiſts, for the Apothecaryes extract onely a certain liquor, as Roſin, Gums, or ſuch fluid matters, and ſeparate them from the more groſſe and ſolid ſubſtance; but Alcumiſts do not onely deſert the groſſe body, but exhale the thinneſt ſubſtance, till a very little portion, and that ſomewhat thicker, be left, to which the vertue

vertue of the whole doth adhere as united to its subject, whence they call it an extract, as it were the essence extracted and separated from the body.

For such an Extract doth contain most excellent vertues in a small quantity, a dragme whereof exhibited is of no lesse efficacy than a whole ounce of any Medicament with its grosse substance.

They are wont to give these extracts, to those whose ventricles loathed Apothecaryes Medicines, and who had plenty of wealth: for to prescribe the extract of Rhabarbe or Pearle to a poor man, were to take away his life.

Extractum quomodo parandum.

Now these extracts of Medicaments as well simple as Compound, are often made after this manner, the Medicament is washed, being first small sliced, or if it be a masse of Pills or an Electuary, it is dissolved in the best *Aqua vitæ*, or other fit liquor, so as it be covered two fingers, in a vessell well and close stopped, then it is left two or three dayes in a hot place, then they make a strong expression, which is afterward put in *Balneo Mariæ*, that the *Aqua vitæ* may be separated from the faculty of the Medicament, which lyes somewhat thick in a little quantity in the bottome of the vessell, then it is gathered and reposed in a glasse vessell, or an earthen one well glassed, and so evaporated on hot embers.

If any one will make a more valid extract, then he macerates another Medicament of the same kind, in the former expression, and after a daily and perfect infusion, he extracts it by compression, as before, and this he doth three or foure times, if he desire a more potent extract, and at length the last expression being finished, he segregates the *Aqua vitæ* from it by distillation in a hot bath, or he dissipates it by insolation, till the extract onely remain, which hath great and powerfull vertues in a small body.

They do not cast away Rhabarbe, and other Medicaments of greater value, after the first maceration or expression as the vulgar do, but infuse them twice thrice or four times in other *Aqua vitæ*, till they have lost their colour & sapour, and what ever vertue was in them be left in the waters, for then ought the last expression to be made, which is mixed to the other, from all which the *Aqua vitæ* is separated by *Balneo Mariæ*, and the subsident onely or extract left.

These Extracts are not alwaies made by *Aqua vitæ*, but oftentimes by the decoction of hearbs, stilled waters, and sometimes by rain or fountain-waters, for some masses of pills are sometimes macerated in rain-waters for the space of eight dayes, the juice of Bugloss, Betony, or other thing, as necessity requires, being added, then it is boyled on a slow fire, strained and congealed.

Extractum pilularum.

After the same manner is one pound of the best Rhabarb, and of China sliced small, macerated by the space of one whole day in two pounds of the juice of Borrage and Fumitory, well purified: then it is boyled on a slow fire, till the juice be absumed, then is there made a strong expression, which is again boyled with a slow fire in a *Bal-*

Extractum rhei.

neum

neum Marie, to the Consistency of Honey; some adde two ounces of Sugar, but hereby the quantity is increased, and the faculty of the extract more dull.

Extracts are prepared after many other manners, which, to treat of at large is not our purpose, because we study to institute a method for Apothecaries, not Alcumists.

Chap. XXIV.

Of Cribration.

AS the husbandman with his fanne dissipates the straw and chaffe from his Wheat, so doth he with his sieve segregate the best seed corn from the dead and feeble cornes, to whom Cribration rather appertains than to an Apothecary; yet both of them use this instrument to separate the flower from the bran, which the vulgar call a searce, or sieve, sometimes a rangeing sieve, and sometimes a haire Tamise, which is made sometimes of the haire of a horses taile, sometimes of flax, sometimes of silk; now a sieve is made of a vellume pervious with many round or long holes, through which tares and small seeds may easily descend, the more succulent and good remaining: Cribration therefore is of use for that preparation of Medicaments, which is performed in a sieve.

The use of this preparation is much, for hereby the flower of grounded seeds, or the meale is separated from the branne: boyled roots are cleansed from their barks, and fruits purged from their grains and stones. *Cribrationis usus.*

The Quintessence of *Cassia fistula* is put in a sieve made of horses haire, that the pith alone thus purged from the broken huskes and seeds may be extracted, which is called extract of *Cassia*.

Tamarinds and Dates macerated in vineger or other liquor, are after the same manner put into a hairy sieve for many definite uses, and so pulped through with a *Manipulus*: many seeds are boyled till they crackle, as roots and leaves, till they be very soft, and then are transmitted through a sieve made of haire, to the confection of Cataplasmes and other Medicines of divers forms.

Cordiall powders, as also others which are ingredients in a Medicamentall composition, must be sierced in a small tamise or fine sieve, and especially such as are administred to loose obstructions, and move urine, or monthly flowers; for by how much such are finer, by so much the sooner are they carried to the places affected.

In sifting some powders, a hairy tamise is requisite, in others a silken one, or one of pure and rare linnen.

Cribration is chiefly for the more commodious mixtion of things

pulverated, or of small bigneſſe, and the ſeparation of the ſmaller portion, which is often better, from the groſſer portion, which is often worſe.

Varius cribrandi modus.

Now as there are ſeverall inſtruments that ſerve for Cribration, ſo is the manner of Cribration diverſe; for properly Corn and Pulſe are to be put in a ſieve, ſtirred with a hand, and turning the ſeeds this way and that way in the ſieve holden up, which ablegates the bad ſeed, and retains the good.

Pulveres cardiaci quomodo cribrandi.

After the ſame manner Cordiall powders are ſifted, the tamiſe being moved to and fro in a mans hands, not violently ſhaken, that the ſmaller part of the powder may be tranſmitted, the thicker part left.

Some, that they may be more eaſily tranſmitted, ought in the ranging of the ſieve to be ſhaken into a round, or other ſolid body with many percuſſions, leaſt the groſſer parts be faſtned in the ſieve, and therefore almoſt all ought to be grinded before they be ſifted in the Tamiſe, and thoſe that will ſcarce permeate the tamiſe or ſieve for craſſitude, ought again to be grinded, and beaten, till they may all paſſe through for tenuity and fineneſs.

Chap. XXV.

Of Colation and Filtration.

Upon what account dry Medicaments are ſifted, upon the ſame are moiſt ones ſtrained, for that the filth may be ſegregated, and the pure and ſincere liquor onely extracted, it is tranſmitted through a ſtrainer, and that either thick or rare, or of a mean texture, as the commodious uſe of the thing and exigency requires, therefore the practiſers of Pharmacy hold it requiſite to keep many ſtrainers in their ſhops, both thick and rare linnen, wollen, hempen, or hairy, often old, but oftner new, that in a ſtrong compreſſion, all the juice of the thing ſtrained may be tranſmitted without the rupture of the cloth.

Ad craſſorum & viſcidorum colaturam quid requiratur.

That groſſe and viſcid matters may be rightly ſtrained, three things are required, that they be waſhed in more abundance of humour, that they be put in a more rare and new ſtrainer, and that they be longer calified before colation, for ſo their denſity being more rarified, they may more eaſily permeate; thus the juices of fleſh and hearbs are to be calified before they be ſtrained, and all kinds of Honey and Manna eaten out of any liquor, that that which is extraneous and ſordid, if any ſuch thing be mixed with it, may be ſeparated by Colature.

Thoſe that are thin as the juice of hearbs, Lemmons and many fruits ought to be ſtrained warme, and often cold, for ſo their terreſtriall and groſſer part remaines, the purer and more ſincere being

transfer-

transferred, as it were fined from their dreggs. But Milk and muddy waters are ſtrained cold, that haires, if any be fallen thereinto, may be ſeparated from the one, and mud from the other, yet all that which makes the water muddy is oft ſeparated from it by reſidence, as we ſee in Ciſternes, where water ſtands: Tent-wine alſo is three or more times ſtrained cold in a linnen napkin very long and fine, for procuring the more pleaſant mixture and conſiſtency of the Sugar, wine, and ſweet ſpices, wherewith it is compounded.

Some may not be ſtrained unleſſe very hot, others cold, others warme, and many need onely one colation, ſome two, and ſome three, till they grow cleer.

Apozemes are ſtrained through common ſtrainers, ſometimes through a woollen bag, or linnen ſtrainer, but ſyrrups which are more groſs, becauſe of the admixtion of honey, ſugar, and their long coction, cannot ſo eaſily tranſmeate, and therefore require a thin linnen ſtrainer.

Decoctions, whereof unguents are made, are ſtrained after the ſame manner, as alſo the unguents themſelves liquified, till ſome thick thing, which hath eſcaped the ſtroke of the Peſtell, and the heat of the fire, be ſegregated.

The thinner part of many Medicaments is ſegregated from the thicker, by the other kind of colation called filtration, which apparation thoſe Medicaments onely uſe, which make up the compound called Virgins Milk, or which expoſtulate onely ſome ſmaller and thinner ſubſtance of ſome Medicament; for they aſſume linnen or woollen liſts two or three fingers broad, and very long, and they dip the one end in the veſſell wherein the Medicament to be ſtrained is contained, the other end reacheth to another veſſell that ſtands below it, and bending into it, doth caſt out by drop and drop that humour into it, which it had continently drawn from the former veſſell. *Filtratio.*

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Spumation.

WHen ſcum ſwimming upon a liquor is detracted, either with a ſpoon or feather, if it be ſmall, or by colature, that ſame act is called Deſpumation, becauſe ſcum is a certain viſcid juice including flatulency; for all enumeration of ſcum proceeds from the mixture of two ſubſtances, whereof the one is ſpirituall, the other humid, it is moved and disjected by a various agitation as *Galen* ſaith, (*Comment ad Aphor. 43. lib. 2.*) therefore the ſegregation of ſcums is made by the whites of Eggs, which by their lentor and viſcidity coact and collect the ſcum, as when juices of fleſh, many ſyrrups and Apozemes are in boyling cleanſed from their ſcums. *Spuma quid.*

Spumæ efficientes causæ.

But seeing motion and heat are the efficient causes of scum, and nothing that is crude, and not moved is covered with scum, then despumation appertaines to such things as by agitation and coction ingender scum.

That Honey and Sugar may be cleansed from scum, an equall and sometimes a double portion of liquor is put to them, and in boyling the scum is taken off with a blunt spoon, least together with the scum, the liquor, in which the concoction is made, should be taken off; but if despumation by this rule seem unperfect, then adde to certain pound weights of liquor certain whites of eggs; which assoone as they are hardened by continuall boyling, they gather scum, so that the segregation of it from the liquour will be very easy, because in straining it will be left in the strainer together with the whites of the eggs, the sincere and pure liquour onely transmitted. If the honey be very impure, it must be boyled in a treble portion of liquor till it come to half, that the despumation may be perfect, which rule will hold in scumming other very impure Medicaments.

Quando mel per se despumandum.

Honey may be purged and cleansed from scum by it self, when it hath no aliene quality, or when it cannot sustein so long coction without impairing its vertue, as those things that are mixed with it, for then it were better not to mixe it for despumations sake, than to despume itwith the mixture.

Sugar to be purged of scum ought so long to be boyled, that after despumation, that which was a pound before, may remain no more than a pound, though two or three ounces of liquor have been added to the coction.

Fruits that are to be preserved while they are boyled with sugar, or as some do better boyle them in a portion of sugar, are purged by some few scum onely with a spoon, as things full cocted are with a linnen strainer, for they are wont to be transmitted through a cloth extended, and fastned with nailes at every corner, that the scum and dreggs might be left above.

Chap. XXVII.

Of Clarification.

Clarification is a purging of liquid Medicaments from their grosser matter, for hereby they are more acceptable to the palate, and may more easily be distributed. Now many are clarified by themselves alone, as when the more feculent settleth, as the juice of Apples, Oranges, Lemmons, Buggloss, Sorrell, some by despumation, others by colation, some also by coction, the white of eggs for the most part added, sometimes also without these, as when the juices of plants and fruits are cocted to the consumption of the

third

third part, and then ſtand two dayes till they grow cleere, whence clarification is effected five manner of ways, by reſt, by colation, by deſpumation, by the mixtion of vinegar, or ſome ſharp matter, and by the agitation and coction of whites of Eggs with the thing to be clarified. For if decoctions and ſyrups partake of vinegar, they will be more and more purged by themſelves through the vertue of the vinegar. And whites of eggs muſt be agitated with a ſpoon, till they be all froathy, then put to the ſyrups or decoctions, which muſt be boyled again: and when the ſcum is gathered about the whites of eggs by perfect coction, then muſt the ſcum be artificially eraded and ſeparated, either by common trajection, which is through a four cornered cloath faſtned at every corner with a nail, or by a more peculiar colation which is through *Hyppocrates* his ſleeve. Colation ſhould be iterated three or four times, till the ſyrup or decoction be plainly cleere. *Clarificatio quot modis fiat.*

Men of later times have made certain potions in the form of a Julep, which with their conſiſtency being very clear, they call them Clarets, but ſuch are made after the manners before nominated.

Chap. XXVIII.

Of Aromatization.

Aromatization is an artificiall manner of preparation, whereby Medicaments are made more odoriferous, and ſuaveolent, to the better acceptation of the palate, and heart, and the greater ſtrength and obiectation to the vitall and animall faculties. For, Medicaments ſubverting the ventricle, are made leſſe offenſive, if they be ſeaſoned with Cloves, Cynamon, and other ſweet ſpices, and leſſe moleſt the principall parts, and do more wholeſomely educe excrementitious humours, by ſeceſſion, or by vomit, if it happen. *Aromatizatio quid.*

And though according to *Galen.* (*Cap.* 15. *lib.* 2. *de aliment.*) all odoriferous ſpices are hot, and exhilarate the vitall faculty; yet ſome more particularly reſpect the brain, as Cloves; ſome the heart, the fountain of life, as Cynamon; others the ventricle, as Almonds; others the Liver, as Dates; and ſome the wombe, as muſke, Amber, Civet; not that the wombe is delighted with theſe under the ſpecies of odors: for it hath not an organ of ſmelling, but is affected with ſmells, by reaſon that thin and ſubtil matters, or the aery vapour, wherewith the ſpirits are recreated, with which it is of all granted, that the genitalls ſwell. *Quæ aromata hanc vel illam partem corporis magis reſpiciunt.*

Meſue hath deſcribed many aromaticall confections, as *Diacinamomum*, *Aromaticum Roſat.* *Diamoſchum utrumq;* *diambra*, the electuary of gemms, and many more, whoſe uſe is excellent in getting and preſerving ſtrength in the principall members, in preventing and correcting putrefaction, and in refreſhing the ſpirits.

Thoſe that from ſickneſs recover health, or are very old, and are in riches able to reſartiate their loſt ſtrength, by the preſcript of Phyſicians, are wont to uſe Confections made of Conſerves, Sirrups, and cordial Powders, whoſe excellent virtue is attributed to the ſweet odour of ſuaveolent Spices.

Cur medicamenta aromatizentur.

For the like cauſe, many Sirrups are aromatized with the confection of Alkermes, or Trochisks of *Galliæ moſchatæ*, or with Musk, Amber, Civet, or other ſuaveolent Spices hung in a *Nodula*, and ſo tyed to the Veſſel wherein the Sirrup or Liquor is contained, that it hangs about the middle of it; for ſo the aromatical virtue is equally diſtributed to all the Liquor. Which alſo Vintners have learned, who make the Wine more fragrant and ſweet, by hanging Ginger, Cinamon, and ſuch like, in the Hogſhead.

Quibus ſalaces ad venerem utantur.

Thoſe of the Courtiers that are more rich, leacherous, and ſlothfull, that like Beaſts they may more potently hold on to their Venery, and be more active in that exerciſe; ſometimes they eat raw Eggs, ſometimes fryed with much Musk or Civet, whereby they rather deſtroy than refreſh Nature.

Many Fruits alſo, as Nuts and Pears, are before Conditure ſticked with Cinamon or Cloves, that they may be more gratefull and acceptable both to the palate and heart. Juleps alſo are often aromatized with Roſe-water, as Apozems with yellow Sanders, Sauces with aromatical Confections, Cider with Amber or Musk, as many other Medicaments with Storax, Belzoin, Camphire.

Chap. XXIX.

Of Colouration.

THough Colour, according to *Galen*, (*cap.* 2. *lib.* 1. *ſimpl. cap.* 30. *lib. de Hiſtor. Philoſ.*) cannot ſhew the faculty of the Medicament, yet becauſe it is a quality of a viſible body, which becauſe it hurts or profits, is more or leſs expetible: for as blackneſs and whiteneſs do obtund the faculties of ſeeing, ſo green colour exhilarates them, as beſides quotidian experience, the Philoſopher alſo teſtifies, (*Probl.* 60. *ſect.* 32.) Now ſome Medicaments are more deſirable,

Coloratio quot modis acquiritur.

being white, others black, others red, or of other colour. And Colour is eſpecially acquired four manner of wayes, by Lotion, Agitation, Coction, and Mixtion. By Lotion moſt become white, as Oil, Turpentine, Wax. Some alſo by Agitation, as Penedis, the white unguent of Rhaſis, the plaiſter Diachylon, *Galens* refrigerating Unguent; for all theſe, by how much the longer they are wrought, by ſo much they are the whiter; as white Pils, Bechical confections, and all ſugared Medicaments; for Motion and Agitation do get the deſired colour to Medicaments. But this is not ſo manifeſt in the

Bechical.

fore-

fore-named Medicaments, as in the crude Unguent, which is made of Lytoridge, Oil and Vinegar, for these are so long beaten in a morter, till they acquire the form of a white Unguent. Medicaments by Coction are more colourated, as more white, or more black, as the Coction is valid and long, or as it is weak. So the Plaister made of crude Ceruse is white, of burned Ceruse red. And the Plaister of crude Verdigrease is green, of burned Verdigrease white and yellow. Lastly, according to the several colours of the things mixed, the colour of Medicaments is various; for such as admit Saffron in their mixtion are yellow, such as admit Cinnabrium are red, and such as have Ceruse are white, and such as have the pith of Cassia in their mixture are black. *unguentum crudum ex quibus constat.*

Chap. XXX.

Of Conditure, Saliture, and Farture.

As Saliture and Farture rather seem to appertain to a Cooks, than an Apothecaries shop, so doth Conditure to the Confectioners. Yet Medicaments sometimes need these; for Saliture conduces much to conservation, Farture to good sapour, and Conditure to both. For Flowers and Fruits are not condited onely, but also little stalks, barks, and tender roots, both that they may be longer preserved, and also eat more pleasantly. Thus are the roots of tender Ginger, and husks of *Cassia Fistula*, which are not old. Nutmegs, Myrobolans, and other forreign Fruits, are condited while fresh, that they may be brought to us without any loss of their virtues and faculties, from far Countreys. Many of our own Countrey, sweet, sour, or Fruits of other sapours, pleasant to the palate, as soon as they are gathered, and if need be, their Cortes pill'd off, (for many are not decorticated, as Gooseberries, Barberries) and so are boyled with Sugar, or Honey, or both. Those that are bitter, very sour, and sharp, are so long macerated in water, till they have deposed their vehement quality.

Now Apothecaries do especially make humid Conditures, as they call them; as when they so long concoct Fruits or Roots with Sugar and Water, that they lose all their watry humidity, and after Conditure and Reconditure may be preserved with a Sirup perfectly boyled.

But Confectioners do not onely make such like Conditures as these, but also dry ones, as they term them, which are made of Fruits sugared, with Sugar extrinsecally boyled with them, and afterwards dryed by insolation. Now many Fruits are condited with Salt alone, as Capers; or with some Vinegar added to them, as Cucumbers cut in pieces, Purslain, Lettices, and many Pot-herbs, that they may *Saliture.*

without

without decay be preserved till Winter; for Salt hath an admirable faculty in desiccating and conserving things. Hence Flesh and Fish salted are kept without corruption, not onely some months, but years. Wherefore by some Philosophers, the Soul is called the Salt of the Body, because as long as it remains therein, it vindicates and defends it from putrefaction. It causes also, that Medicaments acquire another quality beside what is peculiar to them; and therefore Vipers flesh, and the parts of many Animals, are besprinkled with white and bay Salt, (for according to *Galen*, there is the same faculty in both) with a little, if it be used for sapours sake; with more, if for conditures sake.

Epicureis anima pro sale.

Fartura.

Whatsoever Aliments are desired to be medicinal, if there be any apparent cavity in them, it is stopped with Fruits, Herbs, or Roots, wherewith Aliments are often stuffed. Now many Aliments are stuffed before Assation or Elixation, that they may be more gratefull to the palate, and sometimes that they may more conduce to procure or keep sanity; as when Polypody, Capers, dry Grapes, Barley, or other parts of Plants are included in the belly of a Capon or Goose. An old Cock is wont to be stuffed with Barley, that besides its faculty of subducing the belly, wherein according to *Galen* and *Oribasius*, it is effectual, it may cleanse and nourish. Night-caps are often quilted with Cephalical Powders put in a double linnen cloth: the topical remedy of the form of a Buckler is prepared after the same manner, but it receives roborating and stomachical Pouders, such as are wont to be prescribed to the weakness of the belly. But it is properly called Farture, by which exenterated Animals, and excavated Fruits are stuffed with medicamental or alimental things, and sometimes with aromatical, onely for jucundity sake.

Chap. XXX.

Of Distillation.

Distillatio quid

Distillation is an eduction of a watry or oily humour out of any thing by heat. And it is effected either by ascension, or descension; and that either by a humid or a dry heat. Distillations by humid heat are made in *Balneum Mariæ*, or in a Vapour made of hot water. *Balneum Mariæ, aut maris*, as some say, is a Vessel containing in it heat, into which another vessel is put, containing the matter to be distilled. It was wont to be called *Cucurbita*, or *Boccia*, upon which is put another Vessel with a beak, commonly called an Alembick or Capitel, which are most strictly closed together with a glew made of Bran, and whites of Eggs.

Balneum Mariæ.

Cucurbita.

Balneum roris.

Distillation in the vapour of hot water is also made in two vessels; the one contains the matter to be distilled, and in the other is put a long

long copper or brass vessel half full of water; so that there is space enough left between the *Cucurbita* and the boyling water, by the vapour of which carried upwards, the matter to be distilled grows hot, and suscitates the vapours to the beaked Capitel, whence it descends into the Receiver.

Both these Bathes are described in various forms; for every one, according to his minde, changes, innovates, adds or detracts something rather form the elegancy of the *Boccia*, than the facility of Distillation. But in all of them, the fire, which is the efficient cause of Distillation, must be made in such place, that with little labour it may calefie the water in the *Boccia*. *Variæ sunt formæ balnei.*

Now the fire should be clear, not smoky or filthy, such as is made of Charcoal or Cannel; and it must be so ordered, that it neither be too potent, and burn the matter, nor so small as to be extinguished before the work be perfected. Before the water begin to be cold, let other be made hot, or at least warm, and calefied according to that degree of heat which the condition of the matter requires; for some may be distilled with a benign vapour, others with a more potent, others best with warm water. *Ignis in distillatione qualis.*

Integral fresh Plants, or parts of them cut into pieces, are conveniently distilled in a humid Bath. If they be dry, they should be wet with some convenient liquor before Distillation; for so the waters distilled do better retain the strength and faculties of the Plants, though they cannot be so preserved, because more excrementitious. Yet many waters do not retain the vapours of the Plants, because they so inhere in their terrestrial substance, that they will not ascend with the most vehement heat. *Plantarum distillatio.*

The humid Bath is expedient in distilling waters; the dry one (if it may be called a Bath, as it pleases most) in educing oils and waters. Now it is properly called dry, because no water is put under the Cucurbita, but fire onely, with dust, sand, or the filings of iron or steel sometimes interposed. Which that it may be commodiously done, the furnace must be built with such industry, that it may have a port open towards the bottome, through which the ashes may be taken out which fall from the burning coals laid upon the little gridiron. Above the gridiron there must be another port, through which the coals may be immitted; above the arch whereof must be inserted little iron beams or grates overthwart: then above must be placed the brazen, earthen, or iron pan, into which the Cucurbita is put, and it must be buried, sand or ashes being cast upon it, then the beaked Capitel may be placed above it. In the top of the furnace must be constituted certain holes, or wind-passages, through which the smoke may pass. *Balneum siccum.* *Fornacis structura.*

The use of a certain Instrument of Copper, called an Alembick, is here requisite and frequent; in whose inferiour cavity are contained iron beams, sustaining the burning coals; in its middle, the *Boccia*; in its superiour part, the beaked Capitel, in form of a Helmet; *Alembicus.*

and sometimes round with a Refrigeratory, formed like a Cauldron, that it might contain an abundant quantity of water; which when it grows too hot, is effunded by a cock placed towards its bottome, and new water and cold is poured in again.

The beak in some Alembicks is very long and strait, and oft times in some of the form of a serpent; whence it is called a twining beak, or worm, that so it may be transferred through a Hogshead full of cold water, whereby the water may be better congealed and tempered.

Retorta vesicæ. A certain *Boccia* made of glass, and crooked, commonly called a Retort, serves for that distillation which is made by sand or ashes; as also another strait one, which hath its name from a bladder, of oval form, made of glass or copper lined with tin, which serves for distilling those things which are easily sublevated, as roots, seeds, leaves, flowers, and suaveolent Spices; such as are not so easily sublevated, as fatnesses, rosins and gums are to be extolled, and that more aptly in a Retort of very thick glass.

Variæ distillandi formæ. The forms of distilling are so many, and the instruments, as also their matter so various, that they can scarce be kept within certain Laws: yet is this old custome still observed, that Apothecaries do commonly distill young Plants, and other Medicaments in Pewter Alembicks, or Leaden, tinn'd within, which are not so noxious as many fear: yet them of Glass and Clay are better, but they may easily be broken, and then useless. Now such things as may not endure the vehemency of heat, may be better distilled in *Balneum Mariæ*, afterwards in hot ashes, wherein, as in the Bath, some temperate and milde heat may be preserved and cherished; not so in sand and filing dust, for these will not be hot but with vehement heat; wherefore they are used in educing Oils by distillation. Now the waters distilled ought to be insolated for some dayes space in Vessels covered with a paper full of little holes, that the more pure and excrementitious portion may be resolved, and that the impression of the fire, which is wont to comitate waters distilled, may be extracted.

Quomodo aquæ distillatæ insolendæ.

Chap. XXXII.

Of Distillation by descent.

Distillation is made both by moyst and dry calour, as well by ascent as descent. By ascent, when by the force of the heat of fire, water, or other body interposed, the thinner part of the matter in the Cucurbita is elevated to the Capitel, where condensed, by its weight it declines to the beak, and runs into a vessel set under the beak. And as the distillations by ascent are multifarious, so also them by descent; for one distillation is properly said

Varii distillationis per descensum modi.

said to be by descent, to wit, when the humour educed without exaltation distils downwards; another is by inclination, another by transudation, another by filtration.

That cannot properly be called Distillation, nor referred to this place, which is made without heat, as by Expression, or Colation.

Distillationem fieri interdum sine calore.

Distillation by descent is sometimes made without heat, as when a bag filled with Myrrhe or Tartar, is suspended in vapourish air, or in a Wine cellar; for these, as many more, long kept in a moyst place, become tabid, and as it were exude a pure juice, which they emit into a vessel set under them. But it is made more frequently by fire, by whose power not onely waters, but also oils are educed by descent. Thus the water of Roses, and other Flowers, may be well distilled. A pot of copper, brass, or clay, is taken and filled with Roses, or other Flowers, close covered with a head, and a vessel full of coals is set under the body containing the Flowers, out of which when they are calefied, very good water will exude into the glass subjected. But the fire is to be so ordered, that the Flowers may not be burned, and therefore many prudently put paper betwixt the vessel containing the fire, and the Flowers; for hereby they may better endure the heat. But this manner of distilling, as it is easy, so is it common.

Quomodo aqua educatur per descensum.

Distillatio in fimo.

Some distill waters in dung, or other putrid matter: but the Apothecary may easily want these modes, who should be neat, and prepare the most select remedies. That distillation which is made in the heat of the Sun after this manner, is more commendable. A pot filled with Roses, or other Flowers, is firmly joyned to another pot set under it; then it is exposed to the Sun; for if its beams beat upon the upper pot, very good water will distill into the lower.

Distillatio in calore solis.

Oleorum distillatio per descensum.

But the distillation of Oils by descent is more difficult, and can scarce be effected without great preparation, labour, and time: yet is it very familiar to the Alcumists who educe Oils by descent after many manners; for they so prepare the vessels and instruments for distillation, that they give no passage by ascent, but the humour as it were melted and educed, exudes downwards by drops. Those Waters or Oils may be thus distilled, which the ascending vapours would destroy, or the potent spirits dissipate, before they were brought to a consistency.

Distillatio per transudationem

There are several modes of this distillation; one is in a furnace by transudation, whereby the humour provoked doth transude, and falls by drops into the subjected vessel, fire being placed above it. Another is made by transudation, but it is in the earth, when a ditch is diffoded in the earth, into which is put a pot, to whose orifice is fitted and joyned the bottome of another pot full of little holes, and the orifice of the upper pot is covered close, in which pot is contained the matter to be distilled; then the earth being adhibited, both pots are interred even to the belly of the upper pot, so that the conjunction is covered: then the fire is put to by degrees, according to the

nature and condition of the matter to be distilled; for a more solid matter requires greater heat, less solid a lesser.

Distillatio per inclinationem.

There is another distillation, which is a mean betwixt the distillation by ascent, and that by descent, which is by inclination, in which there is a little elevation, and afterwards a reflexion downwards. It is also called a distillation by retortion, because it is made in a bending *Boccia*, in whose curvature the spirits united are compelled to descend into the receptacle placed below, and well joyned to the crooked beak. Now this retorted *Boccia* should lye in a furnace built accordingly, the belly whereof must be buried in a pot wherein are ashes or sand, and the beak must hang out through some hole or chink.

Quando vel ortæ in distillationibus usurpandæ.

The retorted *Boccia* is wont to be used in distilling such things as ascend with difficulty, as in the educing Oils out of Metals, and Spirits out of Minerals, to which most vehement heat is required, and therefore heed must be taken lest the Retorts be burst; therefore before they be set upon the fire, they ought to be incrusted with clay, marl, or such convenient matter, if nitrous matters be contained in them; and they must immediately with ashes or sand be adhibited to the most violent fire. But because we purpose not to relate Chymical Distillations, nor their Matrals, nor describe their Cucurbites, Handles, Vessels, crooked, round or long, their Dishes, Pots, and Furnaces, we will no further prosecute their precepts in distillation, for they may be sooner and easier learned with practice and exercise, than by description.

Alcumists prescribe not onely many Distillations, but also other preparations, as Sublimation, Cohobation, Exhalation, Evaporation, Exaltation, and many more, wherewith their Books are stuffed. Sublimation is when the Extract attains to the sublime part of the Vessel, and subsists there. Cohobation is when that which is educed, is put again to the dead Head; now the dead Head as it is taken by them, is as it were dregs without juice, or excrements void of any quality: yet sometimes this is the matter of the Chymical Salt. Exhalation is a dissipation of dry spirits in the air by heat. Evaporation is a resolution of moyst spirits. Exaltation doth not design the same thing that Sublimation doth, for it is an artificial preparation, whereby the matter is after some manner changed and brought to a higher dignity of substance and virtue; as when some rude and crude matter is brought to maturity and perfection. Maturation and Gradation they say conduce to this, as Digestion, and sometimes Circulation do to Maturation. Maturation is an exaltation from a rude crudity to a well cocted and elaborate perfection. Digestion is a simple Maturation, whereby things incocted and untractable, are cocted and made more milde and tractable by a digestative heat. Circulation is an exaltation of pure Liquor by a circular solution, by the help of the heat in *Mercuries* or *Pelicans* Cup. Gradation appertains

Sublimatio.
Cohobatio.
Caput mortuum.
Exhalatio.
Evaporatio.
Exaltatio.
Maturatio.
Digestio.
Circulatio.
Gradatio.

appertains properly to Metals, for it is an exaltation of them to a greater degree of bonity and perfection, whereby their weight, colour and consistency is brought to a more excellent degree. But that I may no longer digress from my purpose, I will leave their Chymical Preparations to themselves; for this Treatise of Distillation compelled me briefly to touch of these, and paint it on the margin as a Work by the by.

The end of the second Book.

OF MEDICAMENTAL INSTITUTIONS.

The third Book.

Of the compoſition of general Medicaments.

CHAP. I.

Why Medicaments are compounded.

AS Simplicity in Nature is before Compoſition, ſo are ſimple Medicaments before compound; and the antient Phyſicians, as *Pliny* relates, (*cap. 2. lib. 26. Nat. Hiſtor.*) firſt preſcribed onely Simples to cure Diſeaſes, as *Diocles*, *Praxagoras*, *Chryſippus*, and *Eriſtratus*. *Hippocrates* alſo, who firſt laid the foundations of the medicinal Art, and gave Laws thereto, cured almoſt all Diſeaſes with ſimple Medicaments alone. Yet (ſaith *Aetius*, *cap.* 25. *tetr.* 4. *ſerm.* 2.) neceſſity conſtrained the exerciſed Medicks to ſeek new remedies, and compound ſome Simples, becauſe Simples cannot alwayes cure; for (ſaith *Galen*, *cap.* 5. *lib.* 1. *comp. med. general.*) if Simples onely could preternaturally cure all affections, there would be no need of Compounds; but this no Simple can do. The uſe therefore of Compoſition in Medicine is neceſſary, eſpecially for ſuch Diſeaſes as require at once contrary faculties in Medicaments, which cannot be in Simples.

The

The causes why Medicaments should be compounded are many (*Serapio. cap. lib.* 7.) first, when in curing or expelling a disease there is no one simple Medicament altogether contrary to it; then must some compound be used, which may supply the defect of the simple, as when we would moderately cleanse an ulcer, we mixe two simple Medicaments: the one whereof would do it too potently, the other too negligently, now from the concourse, and commistion of these two will proceed one moderate detersory: the second cause of composition is, that the violence of the Medicament may be obtunded, or its ignavy excited; now its violence is obtunded by the admixtion of a more benigne or an opposite Medicament, as when with sharp we mixe mild, with bitter sweet, with calid refrigerating, & with maligne Cordiall Medicaments. The third cause or reason is drawn from the variety of the Maladies to be cured, for to every part affected and noxious humour, a Medicament that is Analogicall and destinated to the same must be prescribed; for it is meet that Medicament must be given to the Brain, Lungs, or other parts ill affected, which hath respect to such parts, and will free from such a mortificall cause: the situation also and dignity of the parts affected demonstrate composition to be necessary; for some part doth not onely require roboration, which indeed is a principall effect, as the brain by Cephalicks, and the heart by Cordialls, as *Galen* commands, *Cap.* 1. *lib.* 1. *comp. med. gener.* But also oftentimes alteration, and a vindication from the noxious humour, which one simple Medicament cannot effect: furthermore a part situated farre from the remedy speaks composition to be necessary, for some attenuating Medicament must be mixed with these remedies, that the quality thereof may permeate to the part affected, as *Galen* declares (*lib.* 1. *de comp. per gener.*

Multas esse causas compositionum medicamentorum.

1.

2.

3.

4.

There are also other lesse necessary causes of composition, as when Medicaments are dulcorated with sugar or honey, that they may be more acceptable to the palate and heart, or when they are condited with Cynamon and other sweet spices, or washed in convenient decoctions, or composed into the forme of a bole or solid Electuary; for many Medicaments are conjoyned, mixed and united together for odour, sapour, colour, or jucundities sake, and also for preservation to future uses.

Chap. II.

Of Syrups in Generall.

Whereas many Plants cannot always be had in readinesse and integrall, but either their leaves will be fallen, or their Roots hidden in the ground as in Winter, or their vertue decayed, their leaves and flowers being scattered; or they will not be found when urgent

urgent neceſſity requires: juices are extracted out of them for future uſes, or their decoctions, condited with a ſufficient quantity of ſugar or honey, or both together, are prepared, ſo as they may be kept a long time without impairing their ſtrength and vertue after great coction, till they acquire the the conſiſtency of a ſyrup. Now a ſyrup is a certain liquid Medicament of juices, or decoctions, ſo long co-
Syrupus quid. cted with honey or ſugar, for ſapour and conſervations ſake, till it attain a juſt conſiſtency; which may be known, if one drop of it dropped on a marble ſtone, dilate not, but cleave together, or taken betwixt ones fingers dwawne out in threads or teats.

Syrups were invented by the Arabians, which *Avicena* (*lib. 5. ſerm. 1. tract. 6.*) calls decoctions, or juices thickned with ſweetnes,
Sharab. שרב according to the Arabick word *Scarab*, which denotes a certain drink, but ſweet or *Srab*, which ſignifies ſweet wine, or rather a Syrup, or potion prepared after our manner; the Greeks call them σιροῦμτα, or ὑποσιάσματα, and ſometimes ἀπομελίσματα, the ancients by all theſe often underſtood *Oinomel* or ſweet potions, for the name ſyrup, and the preparation thereof was ſcarce known to antient Græcians.

Nominis ſyrupi etymologia. But ſome hold that the name ſyrup is more probably derived from ὑπὸς juice and and σύρω to draw, as it were a juice extracted, or that they were derived from Syria, or from that which *Alexander Aphrodiſeus* calls σίρον; wine boyled to the half, new wine, wine boyled to the third part, or a ſweet potion of wine and honey.

Syrups are perfectly coćted with honey or ſugar, that they may not corrupt, but be uſefull for a whole yeare, and they therefore have a thicker conſiſtency, a meane betwixt wine boyled to the third, and a julep; as an Apozeme betwixt a julep and a ſyrup; for a ſyrup is not ſo thick as ſapa, nor a julep as a ſyrup, nor an Apozeme as a julep, for as ſyrups, which becauſe thicker may be kept longer & ſafer, ſo Apozemes and Juleps, being thinner, may not be kept long and ſafely, for they will not keep one week, and therefore Phyſicians are wont to preſcribe them to preſent uſe, and have them made ſo oft as neceſſity requires: but we ſhall treat more largely of theſe in the next book, for now we ſhall ſpeak of ſuch as may be kept by the Apothecaries for a long time, of which for preſent uſe are often made Apozemes, if they be diſſolved in the decoction of Plants, or Juleps if in diſtilled waters: they often alſo ingrede the confection of Eclegmes, Opiates; and Condites both, that they may acquire better acceptation and vertue and alſo a conſiſtency more convenient to our purpoſe. Yet they are ſometimes preſcribed alone and unmixed, eſpecially ſuch as muſt be aſſumed by licking by little and little to move flegme, as all brown ſyrups, as the ſyrup of Colts-foot, the juice of Liccoriſh, Maidens-haire, Hyſſop, or of ſome ſuch like, which by reaſon of their ſweetneſſe coćt the ſpittle.

Materia Syruporum. Now ſyrups are made of the decoction of hearbs, roots, fruits, ſeeds, flowers, or their juices, and ſuch like as may be well decoćted, and the matters to be decoćted are ſo choſen, as they may anſwer

our

our intent, whether it be to corroborate some part, or mend some vitious humour, or educe it, thence we have such variety of syrups: for they are composed to calefy, refrigerate, moisten, dry, open, obstruct, cut, thicken and purge.

And the decoction of those things, whereof Syrups are made, ought to be in water, either rain-water, or fountain-water, or running water which is best, because void of all qualities: the quantity whereof must be answerable to the quantity and hardnes of the things cocted: for such things as are harder, as roots and wood can scarce be cocted, save with much time and water without aduction. And therefore the water must be augmented, when simples are long to be cocted, as also when they are too bitter. *Aquæ optimæ quæ.*

The decoction strained and clarified is boyled again, with an equall quantity of sugar or honey, or both; and sometimes with sweet wine, as it will appear in our book, called the Apothecaries Shop.

Chap. III.

Of Propomates.

THe Ancients according to *Aëtius* and *Paulus* (*Aët. cap* 30. *cent.* 3. *ser.* 1. *Paul. Æg. c.* 15. *lib.* 7. *de remed.*) called all drinks dulcorated with honey by the generall name *Propomata*, for they, scarce knowing sugar, made all drinks pleasant to the palate with honey, which we now make with sugar, that they may be more sweet and pleasant, yet some, not for want of sugar, are condited with honey, both for the peculiar condition of the vapour, and the attainment of those excellent qualities wherewith it abounds: for honey besides that sweetnes, which it hath, being most pleasant to the tongue, is such an excellent conservative, that many use it, instead of salt, for the Babylonians (*Dionys. Areop.*) in time past buried their dead bodyes in honey, and *Appius* the Cook (*Herod. in Thalia*) covered flesh with honey, that he might preserve it without salt, many things also condited, and other Medicaments are dulcorated and confected with honey, both that they may be more pleasant to the palate, and also keep more safely without corruption, and acquire more notable vertues: Wherefore *Galen* (*Cap.* 177 *simpl. Medic.*) writes well when he saith, that honey may safely be mixed with all Antidotes, For it is most sweet (*Cap.* 11. *lib. de alim.*) and it produces most thin juice, and being mixed with Medicaments, it causes them to induce and keep better. (*Paul. cap.* 14 *lib.* 7. *de remed.*) yet it is not equally wholesome to all, for as (*Cap.* 8. *lib.* 2. *de fac. nat.*) it is good for old and cold men, for it is noxious to such as are feaverish and young men, especially chollerick, because it is soon changed, ingenders choller, and becomes bitter in hot bodyes, *Propomata quid.* *Melle qui corpora condiebant.*

for if it be holden too long to the fire, it will be bitter; as also, if it be kept too long (*Cap.* 16. *lib.* 4. *simpl.*) for *Galens* father (*Cap.* 11. *l.* 1. *de Antidot.*) had a certain kind of honey, as bitter as if it had been made in *Pontus*, in that part where the Bees gather their honey from wormewood, yet he saith it was Athenian honey, and very good, but that it became bitter by diuturnity of time. Now *Pliny* (*Cap.* 56. *lib.* 7.) saith, that one *Aristæus* an Athenian first invented honey, and the *Curetes* first taught the use thereof, though *Ovid* makes *Bacchus* the Author of it, when he saith:

Pater Galeni mel amarum habebat.

Mellis primus inventor.

Liber & inventi præmia mellis habet.

Furthermore, many Medicaments are made of honey, and also potions either more liquid, called by *Paulus* sweet Potions, as Hydromel that is watry, and not enough boyled, or more thick and longer boyled and insolated, as *Hydromel* of wine, as Oxymel, and other Medicaments which are nominated from honey, as the Medicamentall honeys of violets, *Anacardium*, Roses, and such like.

Many Medicaments are comprehended under this name Hydromel, as Muscadell, Melicratum, Hydromel of water, and of wine simple and compound; yet none is so simple, but it consists of honey and water, as the name demonstrates, but it is called simple to difference it from the more compound, whereof many differences are described every where by the best Physicians, as by *Galen* (*lib. de Dinamid.*) and by *Paulus*. (*lib.* 7. *de remed.*)

Quid hydromelitis nomine intelligendum.

In the Confection of Hydromel, the proportion of honey to the water is various, according to the various scope of the Physician, the temper of the assumer: For in Summer it is prescribed most watry, as also to young men, but in Winter, and to old men, and flegmaticke, with a greater portion of wine or honey; and it seemes good to our Ancients properly to call that Hydromel, which is not very watry, but of wine, and perfectly cocted: for it seems to resemble in sapour and heat most noble Wine, as that of Malmesey; for it much excites spittle, concocts flegmes, cherishes naturall heat, and roborates the stomack, its genuine description, and the manner of its making, shall be handled in the shop divulged by us.

In hydromelite quæ mellis ad aquam proportio.

Hydromel vinosum.

Melicratum, mulsa, & hydromel, idem.

And although the rule of confecting Melicrated Mulsa, or Hydromell (which differ onely in name not in substance) be not one but various, yet *Mesue* (*part.* 3. *distinct.* 6.) delivers the most vulgar, and usuall rule, to wit the admistion of eight pounds of water to one of honey, which must be cocted together, till froth cease to swim above, which opinion the best Authors follow, though many mixe with every pound of honey ten of water; and sometimes twelve, according to their various intentions.

Hydromel Rusticorum.

Rusticks in Summer decoct the Loture of honey-combes, first strained, and they despume it well, and repose it in ample vessells, and having hung a little lump of Leaven in the vessells, they leave it for two or three dayes, and then they drink it with great pleasure, to expell thirst; for this drink is sharp and sweet, and most pleasant to

their

their palates; others boyle six pounds of honey in fifty pound of fountain-water and, scum it well, and then they dissolve an ounce and an half, or two ounces of Leaven, or Barm, and put in the Barrell, leaving a certain space, as about two or three fingers breadth empty.

Apomel is not very watry, and as in strength and vertue, it is equall to vinous Hydromel, so hath it the same manner of preparation, as we shall shew in our shop. *Apomel.*

Amongst sweet potions is reckoned Oinomel, which is made of two parts of old wine, and one of honey, and sometimes of six parts of swee new wine, and one of honey, according to *Oribasius* (*Cap.* 25. *lib.* 5. *Collect.*) and because honey is of thin parts, and most sweet, those Medicaments that admit of its Commistion do conduce most to the attenuation, coction, and expurgation of grosse humours. *Oinomel.*

CHAP. IV.

Of Syrups mixed with Honey.

THat which the Greeks call Oxymel, and the Arabians *Secanjabin*; The Apothecaries, and not improperly, call a tart sweet potion, for it is a sower syrup made of water and honey, or sweet wine, and vinegar, whence, the taste receives it as soure and sweet, and as it hath a mixed and various sapour, so hath it mixed vertues, as by reason of the honey to the vinegar, as of the vinegar to it self: for vinegar hath a purging faculty, and it is (*Gal. l.* 1. *simpl. & li.* 2. *Comp Med loc.*) cold and hot, discussive & repulsive, and therefore Oxymel is commodious for hot & cold diseases, it cuts, attenuates and cleanseth grosse and sliny humours, it educes spittle, takes away obstructions, it prepares cold humours for expulsion, it moderates hot humours, and quenches thirst: for honey is averse to cold humours, vineger to their lentour, and water to heat, and therefore causes that the honey be longer cocted better scummed, and the vertue of the Oximel, better distributed as *Messue* his Interpreter well observes. And the honey should not onely be very good, sweet, and sharp, pale of colour, neither too thick, nor too watrish, nor abounding with spume, but the water also, being a common solace, both to the whole and sick, as *Galen* saith (*Cap.* 27. *lib. de renum dignot. & Medicat.*) and most necessary to all things, ought to be most pure and good, and it may be tryed so to be by taste, sight, and smell: by tast, as if it be free from all qualities, indued with none: by sight, as if it be pure, sincere and exquisitely cleere: by smell, as if nothing can be smelled therein which is in vitious waters, and the vinegar also must necessarily be very good, rather white than red, not stillatitious, nor watrish, but most sharp, which hath a more potent faculty in

Acetum esse calidum & frigidum.

Oxymelitis qualitas.

Mellis optimi nota.

Aquæ bonitas qui dignoscatur.

Acetum quodnam optimum.

in cutting and attenuating. Now that Oxymel is reckoned amongst Medicines, is from vineger, for it is not of them accounted sweet wine, betwixt which Oxymel and Apomel takes place, called by *Serapio Acumel.*

But because all vineger hath not the same vertue, nor all men the same delight in its taste, the same proportion of honey to vineger is not generally used, for some would have more of vineger, others more of honey, whence *Serapio* thinks it should be made according to his mind that drinks, yet the confection described by *Mesue* and *Oribasius* is most received and approved.

Oxymelitis praeparatio.

And it is made of one part of vineger, two of water, and four of honey, and all are boyled together to the consistency of a more liquid syrup, for if it be not perfectly cocted, yet because of the honey, it may be preserved long enough without corruption.

And this is called simple Oxymel, in respect of that which is more compound, which besides water, honey and vinegar receives many roots and fruits, whereof many formes are described by *Nicolaus Myrepsus*, and later writers.

Chap. V.

Of Juices mixed with Honey.

Honey is the Countrey-mans sugar, wherewith they often condite Cherries, Goosberies and Pears, Apothecaryes also, not for want of sugar, but by the Physicians advise confect certain juices, fruits and flowers with honey, and make them into Conserves, sapes, and syrups: conserves, as honey of Roses called by the Arabians Geneljabin, and by the Greeks Rhodomel, which is made of one part of the flowers of red roses bruised, and three parts of honey despumed: Sapes as honey of grapes, which confected of one pound of dry grapes, clensed and macerated for a whole day in three pounds of water, then boyled to the half, afterwards strained, and mixed with an equall quantity of honey despumed: syrups, as another kind of honey of roses, which is made of an equall quantity of despumed honey, and red rose juice; the Mercuriall honey, or *Mel Mercuriale*, is also confected after the like manner, and cocted to the consistency of a thicker syrup.

Galenjabin. Conserva Rosarum.

Mel passulatum.

And as the consistency of these conserves of roses is various, so is their description and preparation, for many take the same quantity of roses purged from their white and of honey, as *Mesue* also did, but they do not as he, boyle them on the fire, but expose them to the heat of the Sun, for the space of ten or twelve dayes before they repose them in their shops, thus also *Rhodomel* prepared without colature, is called

Rhodomel.

Mel Rosatum foliatum.

called by some of a later stampe *Mel Rosatum foliatum*, and by others, *Conserva mellis Rosarum.*

But that which is confected of an equall part of the juice of red roses and of honey, because of its sapour and consistency, is called the syrrup of the honey of roses; That same is a mean betwixt both, because made partly of the leaves and juice of Roses, with an equall weight of honey: yet the former manner of confection is more approved, after which manner also other Medicinall honeys are confected of other flowers.

Yet is it better that these be insolated than decocted with fire; because the odour of flowers, being easily dissipable, perishes, and their qualities do not remain integrall after cocture, but they will easily endure insolation, which acting with a temperate and diuturnall heat, not short, and fervid, better mixes such Medicaments; yet that honey which is made of fresh roses, is used to be cocted with a slow fire, that which is made of dry roses should be insolated. *Cur præstet hæc insolari quàm coqui.*

Now, what way soever honey of roses is made, whether of flowers integrall or broken, it ought first a little to be calefied, that it may be strained, and it is called, *Mel Rosatum Colatum.*

As fruits are harder, more difficult to be cocted, and lesse dissipable than flowers and leaves, so Medicinall honey is made of these after a different manner, for insolation will not suffice, but they must be long concocted in water before honey be put to them, and that fruits may be rightly cocted, they must first be macerated four and twenty houres in thrice as much water as is equall to them, then they must be cocted to the third part, or half, then an equall weight of honey must be added to the colature, and then the concoction must be perfected in the consistency of a syrup.

Chap. VI.

Of Sapes.

IUices educed out of fruits and hearbs, after colation, expurgation, and a consistency obtained by the benefit of the Sun or fire, are called Sapes, or medicinated juices, by the Greeks ἀποκλύσματα, and by the Arabians *Rob*, or *Robub*. Sape is properly wine pressed out of white ripe grapes, and cocted to the consistency of honey, called by the Arabians *Rob*. Now any other juice extracted and cocted to a just spissitude is by the generall name called *Robub*. *Rob & Sapa quid.*

Yet these barbarous names are seldome distinguished, but *Rob* and *Robub*, are used without difference for any thick juice, as it is apparent in *Mesue*, who, not ignorant of the proper name, calls all concrete juices, rather *Rob*, than *Robub*, though his interpreter judges otherwise.

The Juices are extracted either with a press, or by the compression of ones hands, and then trajected through a napkin, that whatever of sorditude is therein may cleave to the cloth, and the pure juice may onely be transmitted; which afterwards put in a pan or other vessel is insolated, or cocted on a slow fire till it grow thick, and acquire a solid form. And its watry humidity thus resolved, it may be preserved many months and years without putrefaction.

Sapæ simplices & compositæ. Some Juices also are simple, others compound. Of the simple, some have a friable substance, and a purgative faculty, which must be longer cocted, that they may acquire perfect solidity, as Aloes, Scammony, and such like; others have a lent and viscid substance, and for the most part an astrictive and acid quality, such as all Robs are said to be by *Mesue*, (*Distinct. 6.*) Those are called compound Sapes or Juices, which besides their concrete Juices, admit of Sugar, as Rob condited of Barberries, Rob of Quinces, Mulberries, and such Fruits.

Defrutum quid As therefore sweet Wine onely boyled to the third, and despumed, still remaining liquid, is called *Defrutum*; so Wine expressed in a harder Consistency, inspissated by heat, is properly called *Sapa*; which also may be called Rob or Robub. If any be more sollicitous about the name than the thing it self, he may equally refer the name Robub to all Juices.

Saparum usus. The use of Sapes is commended to many things, especially to diseases in the mouth; and they are sometimes prescribed alone, sometimes to be mixed with other Confections, as to *Diamorum*, *Diacodium*, and other Syrups.

Chap. VII.

Of Conserves.

SEeing the virtue of Flowers may be eafily dissipated, it can scarce be long retained integral, but is much impaired with coction and time, and often resolved. Now that it may be retained, Flowers are wont to be condited in Sugar or Honey, and a Compound is made, that may be preserved for many months and years, without any great impairing of virtue; whence it is properly called a Conserve; whereof we have two different kinds, the one is liquid and soft, which will yield to the pressure of ones finger, wherein is left some lentor; the other dry, which is much more solid, and made into Pastils or Trochisks, to which our fingers rather yield.

Conservarum differentia.

But because all Flowers have not a like compact substance, or like temper, they are not all condited after the same manner, nor require the same quantity of Sugar in their conditure.

Those

Those that are more humid should taleby a day or two in a place neither too humid, nor too hot, that their superfluous humidity may be resolved. Those that are dryer, by how much they are more fresh and succulent, by so much the better.

Amongst the more humid, whereof Conserves are made, we reckon the Flowers of Water-lillies, Roses, Succory, Violets, Borage, and Bugloss; amongst the dryer Flowers, of Sage, Hyssop, Rosemary, Oranges, Jaimine, Betony, Peach-trees, and many other Simples, which are seldome or never condited.

The more humid require a greater quantity of Sugar to their confection, the dryer a less; to some an equal weight of Sugar is sufficient, to other half their weight, to many twice their weight, to Roses and Water-lillies thrice their weight is requisite.

Some are integrally mixed with twice their weight, or a sufficient quantity of Sugar, and are set to be insolated one or two months, according to the crassitude or tenuity of the Flowers.

Others, as Roses, after their purgation from the white, whereby they are fastned to the bud, and their triture in a stone morter with a pestel of Box wood, are mixed exquisitely with thrice their weight of Sugar, and then reposed in an earthen pot well leaded, aud are well covered with a paper not forated, lest the virtue of the Flowers should be dissipated. *Conserva rosarum qui fiat.*

This done, the vessel is insolated by the space of a whole month, or forty dayes, for hereby the Conditure is excellently fermentated, the heat of the Sun permeating every part thereof, if it be stirred twice or thrice a week with a *Spatula*, which is effected without any dissipation of its virtues or odour.

Some immerge and perfectly mix integral Flowers, sometimes and oft braying in Sugar melted and cocted to the consistency of an Electuary, which when it is cold, they put in boxes, and insolate it.

If in the conditing, a little juice of Lemmon be injected, it will attain a red and lively colour, that it will not lose in a years space, if it be reposed in a Vessel while it is hot; for afterwards refrigerating, a certain scum or crust arises upon the superficies, which preserves the colour, odour, and virtue longer. *Quomodo conserva rubra fiat.*

Conserves are seldome made of leaves, because their substance is more compact, and quality less dissipable; for they may be brought from far Countreys, without impairing their virtues. Yet some, which have excellent faculties posited in their superficies, cannot be dryed without damage, as Sorrel, and *Capillus veneris*. And therefore Conserves may well be made of them well purged, as of Monspelian, Maidens-hair, which is accounted the best, as many other Simples abundant in that Countrey. Yet have I heard the City *Monspelier* more commended for Medicks than Medicaments.

However, excellent Conserves of Maidens-hair is carried from *Monspelier* to all the Countreys in *France*, which is made of an equal quantity of pulverated Sugar, and cleansed Leaves brayed and

mixed

mixed together, after insolated so long as is convenient.

Some hold this Conserve to be better, if a Syrup perfectly cocted be made of the decoction of this herb and Sugar, and then mixed to other cleansed and brayed Leaves of this herb, for thus it acquires a more excellent virtue, and a more fit consistency.

Conserva ex rosis siccis. Dry Conserve is made of dry Roses levigated very small with eight times their quantity of Sugar boyled in Rose-water to the consistency of an Electuary, to which a little juice of some sowr Simple, as Lemmons or Sorrel, may be mixed; for this juice doth not onely make it sweet, and sowr, and pleasant to the taste, but of a more red and pleasant colour.

By the same art may other dry Conserves be made of dry Flowers.

Chap. VIII.

Of Condites in general.

Conditura cur fiat. Roots, Fruits, and other parts of Plants are condited either for conservation, or for sapour, or both. For Conservations sake many are condited with Salt or Vinegar, and sometimes both, as Olives, Capers, Samphire, Cucumbers, and Broom flowers. For Sapours sake, the pils of Oranges, Lemons, Almonds, Pine-apples, Cloves, Nuts, and many Seeds are confected with Honey or Sugar. For both Conservation and Sapours sake, many Roots, Fruits, and Flowers, as the root of Ragwort, Pears, Plums, Barberries, and the flowers of Bugloss and Violets, both that they may taste better, and keep longer.

And such things as are to be condited, are first concocted in an apt syrup, and reposed and reserved with it in an earthen glass or vessel, which are called by Apothecaries, liquid Condites. But if after perfect Concoction they be exposed to the open air till their superficies be dry, and that viscid lentor, wherewith they cleaved to the fingers of such as touch them, be resolved, then are they called dry Confectures.

Condita liquida.

Confecturæ siccæ.

Hereunto by a certain affinity may be referred a certain kinde of Condite, which is called *Pasta regia*, or a Mazapane: but we shall treat of that more positively in our fifth Book, in our Treatise of particular Remedies.

Tragemata. Those Delicates which the Confectioners call *Tragemata*, *i.e.* Junkets, may be referred to solid Condites; for they, as other Condites, are prepared by the help of the fire, and the addition of Sugar, but after a different manner. For examples sake; if Seeds are to be condited, the Sugar must first be cocted into the consistency of a syrup, then is it by little and little poured upon the Seeds; then are they moved

moved with ones hand, and that so long, till the Seeds be covered and incrustated all over with the Sugar. Lemmons pils small cut, as also Cynamon, are condited after the same manner. Now Fruits being humid, they require a liquid Confecture, and Seeds being dry, a dry one.

Chap. IX.

Of Powders.

THE Medicinal Art can by no means want Powders; for when Medicaments are either too humid, or dry, by the Greeks called ὑγρὰ; the dry for the most part are pulverated, the humid are made up and concinnated with these Powders, as Electuaries, solid Conserves, Trochisks, Plaisters, and other Medicaments, both intrinsecally to be assumed, and extrinsecally to be applyed; for nothing in Chirurgery is more frequently prescribed than incarnating, astringing, and closing Powders; and nothing so carefully prepared and kept of Apothecaries as cordial, capital, and roborating Powders, which are not onely mixed with other forms of Medicaments, but oftentimes prescribed alone to divers uses and affections, as to roborate the principal parts, preserve their strengths, extinguish Poysons, stay Fluxes, help concoction, to binde or lose the belly. *Pulverum in Chirurgia frequens usus.*

Many external passions are oft cured with these alone, seldome without them, as any Wound with red Powder compounded of two parts of Dragons blood, and one of Frankincense, as a great Ulcer after detersion with incarnating Powder. Thus a slash or skar of a Wound is closed with an Epulotical Powder, the best whereof are the Powders of *Pompholix*, Brass oar, Ceruse, *Spodium*, *Terra Lemnia*, and Lead, rightly prepared. *Pulvis vulnerarius optimus.* *Pulvis epuloticus optimus.*

Now generally, Medicaments are either given in the form of Powders, or of them other forms are made, borrowing their matter from Powders; for these do not onely serve for to be fitted to the forms of several Medicaments, but whether you look to the body, or the quality of Medicaments, these are for the most part their very Basis. *Pulveres in medicina quid præstent.*

And Powders are made of the most select Medicaments beaten more or less, as the nature of the Medicament, or the exigency of the matter requires. And all that are levigated or redacted into Powder, are called of the Latines by a general name, *Pulveres*; which the Arabians call distinctly by these three idioms, *Sufful*, *Alkool*, and *Sief*. *Sufful* denotes any kinde of Powder, whether small or great. *Alkool* that which is very small. *Sief* denotes the attrition of certain Trochisks upon a Marble, mixed with Rose, Fennel, or other convenient water, to the griefs of the eyes. *Alkool, Sufful, Sief.*

Now ſome Powders, to wit, ſuch as are made by the Confectioners, are deſtinated onely to Sauces, as the Powders of Pepper, Ginger, Nutmeg, Cynamon, and ſuch like ſweet Spices; and they are called of the Seplaſiaries, ſmall Spices, which they uſed to keep in Leather bags. Other Powders are cordial, and roborative, which pertain onely to the Mediciñal Art, as the Powder of *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Diacynamon*, *Dianiſi*, *Lætitia Galeni*, and other cordial Powders, which ſhould be repoſed in boxes, glaſſes, or pots cloſe covered, leſt their virtue ſuddenly expire. Other Powders are alſo made, as Cathartick Powders, which are onely for preſent, not future uſes, becauſe by keeping they are much worſe and weaker.

Yet ſcarce is any Powder internally aſſumed alone, and unmixed, but is put in water, or ſome other liquor, though not ſo applyed externally, which we often lay to Wounds and Ulcers alone.

Coſmeticorum ſtudium. Perfumers, Chamberers, and ſuch as would take away wrinkles from old women with painting, and promiſe to faſcinate and cure ſtinking breaths, make ſeveral Powders of ſuaveolent Spices, as of the root of Orris, of Roſes, Sandals, Storax, *Belzoini*, ſweet Cane, Cynamon, Cloves, Marjorum, Amber, Musk, Civet; of which, and other odoriferous Simples, they make two excellent Powders, which they call *Chyprium & Violetum*; and alſo many other and various Powders for the delectation of them that deſire them. They are wont to repoſe them in ſilken bags, and put them in cheſts with their cloaths. But the Apothecary need not be ſollicitous about theſe, for whom it is more expedient to have good *Pulvis Diamargaritonis*, than *Chyprium*.

Chap. X.

Of Eclegms in general.

A Certain Medicament is made for the diſeaſes of the Lungs, ſomething thicker than a Syrup, and more liquid than an Electuary, which the Arabians call *Lodoch*; the Greeks, ἐκλειγμα, & ἐκλείχειν, and ſometimes ἔγλειγμα; the Latines, *Linctus*: for it is aſſumed by little and little, as it were by licking or ſucking, that by ſtaying and lingering in the paſſage, it may deerre into the breaſt, or at leaſt its cough-curing virtue may reach the cavities of the Breaſt, and the griſles of the Lungs concoct Spittle, and cauſe its excluſion, which by the ſtrength of nature may eaſily be done after concoction of the humour by a Vomit, or Expectoration upwards.

Now they are not onely exhibited in a morning upon a faſting ſtomack, but alſo at evening, and ſometimes betwixt meals, to ſeveral effects, and for ſeveral intentions, and according to the matter, intention and quality whereof the Medicaments conſiſt, for they are

given

given to leniate, deterge, incraſſate, incide, expectorate, and ſtay blood. Eclegms alſo, according to the Antients, may be made of Medicaments of any ſapour: yet very bitter and very ſharp Medicaments we do not approve of for this uſe; for beſides that ingrateful ſenſe they bring to the palate, they exaſperate the hollow artery, and the jaws, and greatly moleſt the lungs: yet are four ones ſometimes preſcribed for the attenuation of groſs humours.

But uſe hath ſo far prevailed, that in the confecture of Cough-curing Eclegms, it is almoſt a Law, that nothing but ſweet Ingredients ſhould make up the Compound, as juice of Liccoriſh, Pines, Jujubs, Sugar-candy, Dragaganth, and ſuch like Electuaries, mixed in Honey, or ſome fit Syrup.

But if the condition of any affection preternaturally require bitter or ſharp Ingredients, then muſt they be mixed with the other Medicaments in a leſs quantity, both that they may be more eaſily aſſumed, and alſo that in altering the humour contained, they may not hurt the part containing. Such Lohochs as theſe are for their notable faculty in inciding and opening, commended to the purſy, and ſuch as breath difficultly, becauſe of groſs humours in their Lungs. *Quæ eclegmata conveniant Aſthmaticis.*

An Eclegm ſhould be aſſumed upon a ſtick of Liccoriſh a little beaten, or out of ſome little meaſure, and holden in the mouth till it melt of its own accord, and till it ſlide down the mouth of the ſtomack, or inſinuate it ſelf into the Artery ſubjected.

They are repoſed in earthen veſſels leaded, and may be kept a whole year without impairing their virtues. Yet ſuch as in their Confecture receive Almonds, or Nuts, as they grow mouldy ſooner, ſo do their faculties ſooner fail and decay.

There is to be ſold in Shops a certain Electuary ſomewhat liquid for Gliſters, and it is made of one pound of the decoction of Violets, *Malva*, the herb *Mercury*, Pelitory of the wall, Beets and Wormwood, with the ſame weight of the Pitch of Caſſia, and Honey deſpumed, which being thicker than any Syrup, and borrowing its colour and virtue from Caſſia, is called Lohoch of Caſſia. *Lohoch caſſiæ.*

Chap. XI.

Of Electuaries in general.

Such Medicaments as externally applyed can cure any Poyſon, whether within the body, or inflicted on the body by ſome bite, are by the Greeks called Ἀλεξιτήρια; and thoſe Ἀντίδοτα which introſumed help many grievous affections. The Latins do not onely retain and confound both theſe names, but alſo denote them by the name of Electuary to us; for the Antients called them Antidotes, the later men Electuaries. Whereof, according to their diffe-

ferent consistency there be two kinds, the one solid, which Apothecaries make into little pieces, which they call Lozenges, the other more liquid made and formed into the consistency of an opiate.

But if according to *Galen*, the difference of Antidotes, or Electuaries be taken from their quality and vertues, some are assumed because of deadly Medicaments, others are prevalent against venemous beasts, others are prescribed to diseases contracted by ill victualls, and some are accommodated to all these uses, which may not only be wholsomley introsumed, but also, externally applyed, as Triacle Mithridate.

Electuaria sicca et tabulata.

Electuaries according to their different solidity, are called Dry and Tabulated, or Liquid, which have the consistency of an opiate, a mean betwixt an Eclegme and Pills, as all Antidotes, whose powders are subacted with sape, honey, or wine, which put to sugar righly prepared, and agitated with a woodden pestell do acquire the just consistency of a solid Electuary: So that wine, and the same Electuary may be formed liquid or solid according to the adjection of sugar or honey with artificiall mixtion, yet they can scarce be brought to a solid Consistency which admit of the extract of *Cassia*, and the inner part of fruits.

The proportion of honey to powders in liquid Electuaries should be the same with sugar to them in dry and solid Electuaries, which is that to one pound of honey or sugar should be mixed three ounces of Powder, yet either may be increased or diminished, as the power of the Antidote is requisite to be more valid or more weak, for by how much more sugar or honey is added to the powders, by so much is the Electuary weaker, and by how much the lesse, by so much the stronger.

In purging Lozenges, one dramme of powder should be mixed with an ounce of sugar cocted in water, or some juice, to a consistency somewhat more solid than a syrup in Cordiall Lozenges; two ounces of sugar often go to one dram of powder, the quantity whereof should be by so much lesser, by how much the quality is stronger, and the sapour more ingratefull.

Medicorum error.

But Physicians should define a just quantity of sugar or honey, for while they prescribe onely according to their custome, as much as will serve of either indefinitly, they leave the Apothecary doubtfull in making the Electuary, and they commit the sick persons safety to his judgement; for he may make the strength of the Medicament more weak, or more intense, as he pleases, and you shall scarce find two Apothecaryes who put the same proportion of sugar or honey to the same remedy, when the quantity is not preseribed.

Electuarium liquidum faciendi modus.

In the Confecture of the liquid Antidote, the honey is washed with a little water, and boyled by little and little on a moderate fire, and despumed, till the water, or other liquor be exhaled, then it is taken off the fire, and before it be absolute cold, three ounces of the mixed powders are sprinkled upon the honey, every pound of honey so prepared

pared requires three ounces of Powder, and then they are mixed with a woodden pestell, till the mixture be equall.

The weight of honey should not be changed, because of the mixture of the pulpe of *Cassia*, Tamarinds, or *Manna*, Dactyls, and Almonds, or other fruits, for in confecting an Electuary of a Legitimate consistency, the weight of dry powders must be answerable to the sape, honey, or sugar.

A soft Electuary should not be reposed in a box, before it be thoroughly cold, least its superiour part be extrinsecally incrusted in a certain Membrane, it is better to let it be fermented, and the crassitude equall.

Electuarium siccum faciendi modus.

Sugar also must be prepared before it receive powders, for it should be dissolved in stillatitious water, or other fit liquour, and then be despumed, and boyled softly on a fire till it be thicker than a syrup, and till a drop thereof will not dilate it self, and after a little refrigeration the severall species must be by little and little added, contounded, and mixed with a Spatula till it have got its wonted solidity and equability, then it must be laid on a marble before it be cold, and with the Spatula dilated and planed, when it is cold, it may be cut into Lozenges square or round, of one, two, or three dramms weight, which after they be brought to the hardness of sugar must be laid in boxes or Chests.

Of what consistency soever the Electuary be; whether solid or soft, it preserves the strength of the simples, well and long. Yet doth the soft preserve it longer than the solid, because its humidity being greater, it more constraines the faculty of the Medicaments, and hinders them from being dissipated by the air.

By how much an Electuary is more gratefull to the Palate, by so much the sooner doth its energy and faculty decay, for its efficacie will scarce endure a year, bitter; and ingratefull will endure two or three years, and the Anadote against wild beasts bitings, or poysons, sometimes ten yeers without damage.

CHAP. XII.

Of Hiera.

Hieræ picræ unde habeant nomen.

Hieræ differ little from the Opiate, Opiates from liquid Electuaries, for they have all the same consistency, and often the same purging faculty, yet Electuaries and Opiates do sometimes purge, neither molesting the belly, nor displeasing the palate with their sapour, but *Hieræ* besides their purging faculty, which they alwayes have, are very bitter and unacceptable, which their name shewes, for they are called *Picræ*, for their exceeding bitterness, as *Hieræ*, or holy for their excellent effects. They are compounded of

looſening and bitter, yet Medicaments good for the ſtomack, which incide and gently purge groſſe, and flegmatick humours out of the firſt region of the body, and eſpecially thoſe that are called *Galens Hieræ*, becauſe changed and mended by him, (*Cap.* 11. *lib.* 8. *comp. med. local.*) which (ſaith he) are the beſt remedy for the Melancholicke affections of the belly; for many ſtomachicall Maladyes have been cured by him in one day therewith; for ſince Aloes is mixed hereunto, which is very good for the ſtomack, and Cynamon, which is effectuall in opening, exterging, and attenuating (for it is of very thin parts) they may be exhibited uſefully for all groſſe and viſcous humours, and all affections about the belly and ſtomach, proceeding from vicious juice, but not if they proceed from a ſharp fever.

Hiera picra Galeni dicitur, quod eam emendarit.

Quibus conveniat, & quibus non.

Hiera whoſe faculty is to calefy and exiccate, may not be ſecurely uſed, in thoſe fevers whereby humours are accended in the veſſells, and whereby the whole body is inflamed, though by *Galens* advice, they may ſafely be uſed in fevers that are not vehement: there are beſides *Galens Picræ*, *Hieræ* variouſly deſcribed, various compoſitions, which from their effects are called *Hieræ*, and from their ſapours *Picræ*, as from that matter, which in compoſition, quantitie, or qualitie is preheminent, one *Hiera* is called the Colloquintidan *Hiera*, others are confected under the names of *Logadius*, *Pacchus*, or *Myrepſius*, either becauſe they firſt invented their compoſitions, or elſe altered, augmented and corrected them.

Hieræ variæ deſcriptæ.

The deſcriptious compoſition and powers of every one ſhall be largely treated of, taught and explained in our book tearmed the ſhop: ſome *Hieræ*, have their purgative power onely from Aloes, and that not potent, and *Galen. cap.* 2. *lib.* 4. *de loc. affect.* ſaith, that they ſcarce condeſcend to the places about the Liver, unleſſe they be taken in a more ample weight, they may be commodiouſly given for the ſuffuſion or web in the eye, becauſe they rather educe noxious humours from the brain, than from the ſtomack; but ſuch as admit of Coloquintida, or Agarick, or both, or ſcammony, do potently move the belly, and draw hurtfull humours from all the parts of the body, and purge them out.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Opiates in general.

OPiates are reckoned amongſt liquid Electuaries, and ſo called, becauſe they have Opium in their mixture, or from their ſimilitude to Hypnoticall Medicaments, or from their conſiſtency preſently after their inſpiſſation, or peradventure from their Colour which in Opium, or the juice of black poppy, and in liquid Antidotes, whether Cordiall, or opening, is the ſame.

And

And although the Ancients call those Medicaments onely Opiates, too strictly, which admit of Opium in their mixture, of what consistency soever, whether solid, as the Alcumists *Ladanum*, and Pills of *Cynoglosson*, or soft, as the Roman *Philonium*; yet are they in a larger sense taken for any soft Confections, Cordiall, altering, purging, or narcoticall, whether they admit Opium, as Antidotes against venemous beasts, or they consist only in cordial and altering ingredients, as *Alkermes*, and the confection of violets, or of purging ingredients as *Triphera*, *Diaprunum*, and such like, which are oftner called by the names of Electuaries, and Confections, than Opiates.

Opiatarum appellatio amplissima.

Now Opiates were invented by Physicians of ancient note (*Gal. cap. 2. lib. 2. de loc. affect. Aet. 6. 12. lib. 2. de sign. & caus. diut morb.*) to leniate the rigour of griefes; for griefe being a sad passion, grievous to nature, and hard to be indured, it doth variously exagitate humours, corrupt the blood, accend a fever, and deject the spirits: so that the Physician is sometimes compelled, to relinquish the former disease, that he may cure this great symptome with these presidies, which though they take not away the cause of the disease, yet they so refresh the senses and spirits by conciliating ease and sleepe, that the strength of the symptomes being debated, they may afterwards extrude the causes of the disease more easily.

Opiatæ eur inventæ.

Dolor quid.

Ejus affectus.

The vehemencie therefore of grief is to be deceived, sometimes with Narcoticall Medicaments, which is sometimes so prevalent, that it drives men to that Madnesse, that they had rather dye than live, and therefore lay violent hands upon themselves.

Doloris vehementia desperationis interdum parens.

Galen hath observed (*Cap. 5. lib. 7. comp. med. loc.*) such vehement vexations and torments in Colicall dolours, which might be leniated by severall Medicaments, that he described certain Narcoticall Opiates, and left them to posterity, which he called Colical confections, which may mitigate the vehemency of the symptome, stay the motion of humours, and stupify the senses: hence they are called Narcoticall opiates, because they bring to the parts a certain necrosy or mortification, and they are called *Annodyna i. e.* grief-absolving Medicines, because for present they mitigate and absolve from paine and griefe. For *Anodynes* are not all of one sort, for some are Paregoricall or leniating, which are temperate, and most agreeing without heat, as Hydreole, the root of Lillies boyled in milk, and oil of Almonds. Others are called Alliotical, which leniate the griefe, to which they are averse by some opposite quality, as oil of roses, of violets to a griefe moderately, oil of water-lillies to a grief impensely hot, oil of Laurall, or Anisseseeds to a cold dolour, others are also called Narcoticall Opiates, which by stupifying the senses take away the dolour, which must not be used rashly, for lying too long to a place, they extinguish the heat thereof, resolve the nerves, and take away at once, both motion and sense: and as *Galen* observeth (*Cap. 18. lib. 5. simplic. med.*) taken in too great quantity kills.

Confectiones Colicæ.

Paregorica quæ.

Alliotica.

Narcotica.

Which is evidenced by the most perillous experiences of jugglars and

and deceivers, who with their ſhining *Stibium* ſtir up torments and other grievous ſymptomes, wherewith they may cover their errour with a worſe, do indeed take away dolours, by their narcoticall Opiates, neither rightly made, nor applyed: For they eaſily conciliate ſleep, but ſuch a one as intrudes the diſeaſed into Charons boate, not in this world again to awake, whence it is true that Empiricks Hypnoticall medicines is often the cure of all evills.

Somniferum Empericorum.

I will not here relate ſtoryes well known to me of theſe impious periclitatours, leaſt I ſhould digreſſe too far from my purpoſe, and becauſe the work would be immenſe, if I ſhould here inſert what I have received from men of credit.

Now Narcoticks are improperly, and onely as to their nomination called Anodynes: for beſides their Elementary quality whereby they refrigerate, they are indued with another that is hoſtile and deletary to our native heat, unleſſe they be taken in a ſmaall quantity, and alſo then, and ſo prepared, as is meet, as Opium, Mandrake, Henbane, and Hemlock.

Anodyna quæ.

Anodynes proper ſo called, are paregoricall, hot in the firſt degree, or temperate, or little exceeding a ſimmetry, which may be ſafely, either aſſumed or applyed.

Medicaments therefore that admit, Opium, or other Narcoticks muſt be taken in a ſmall weight, and are truly called Opiates of what Conſiſtency ſoever they be. Yet other ſoft altering, purging, and roborating Cofections are now alſo tearmed Opiates.

Chap. XIV.

Of Pills.

Pilulæ cur ita dictæ.
Unde dicantur catapotia.

Pills have their name from the forme of a little ball or bullet; which becauſe they are not chewed, but ſwallowed whole, are called by the Greeks καταπότιον, for becauſe of the ingratefull ſapour, and odour of thoſe ſimples, whereof they are confected, as Aloes, Coloquintida, Agarick, Opoponax, Sagapenes and other ſharp, ſtinking and bitter ſimples, they are formed in a ſphericall effigie, in a ſolid conſiſtency, and exhibited in a ſmall quantity, that they may be aſſumed with more eaſe, and leſſe trouble, for the exiguity of the Medicament makes it eaſier to be ſwallowed, and the ſolidity leſſe to be diſſolved; the round forme ſooner to ſlide down, to ſtay longer in the ventricle, to draw more efficaciouſly from parts remote, and not ſo ſoon to paſſe into the inteſtines, or to be excluded by vomiting; for liquid Medicaments are often aſſumed and diſgorged in the ſame inſtant.

Pills are frequently, becauſe of their inſuavity, covered with leafs

of

of Gold, and many odoriferous ſpices are often mixed artificially with them, whereby they are made more pleaſant and gratefull to the palate and bowells, yet if they be a little holden in the mouth, or compreſſed with the tongue or teeth before deglution, they will not onely affect the ſenſe with an ill taſt, but alſo as it were, incite the horrour and ſubverſion of the ventricle; all Pills are bitter, ſave a few, as thoſe that are preſcribed to Coughs which are not preſently, devoured, but kept long in the mouth, that they may melt and be ſwallowed by little and little, and theſe are not ſo properly called *Catapotia* or pills, as paſtills or trochiskes. *Pilularum ſapor ingratus.*

The bitterneſſe of Pills is attributed, eſpecially to Aloes, which is their very baſis, and which can ſcarce be aſſumed otherwiſe becauſe of its egregious amaritude, and becauſe of its viſcidity whereby it conjoynes powders; and compels them into pils.

Now this bitterneſs is increaſed by the commixtion of other ingratefull things, as of Coloquintida, Agarik, Senny, and other purgative Medicaments, which will be ſo much the more unacceptable to the Palate, by how much more bitter ingredients are admixed, as are pills made of Coloquintida, Aloes, Agarick, Scammony and Gum Arabick, which *Galen* preſcribes to purge many kinds of Excrements (*Cap.* 14. *lib.* 5. *Method.*)

Now there are many kinds of Pills, partly drawn from the diverſity of the members, to which they are deſtinated, and partly from the diverſity of humours, which they draw from the parts: ſome are called Capitall pils which purge flegme out of the head, as *Cochiæ*, and ſuch as are made of Agarick: others Opticall, becauſe they conſiſt of many things that are thought good for the eyes; as *Pil. Lucis majoris & minoris*: others ſtomachicall, as pils before meat, and made of Rhubarbe: others Artheticall, which educe humours from the Articles, from the diverſity whereof ſome are called Phlegmagogall, which purge Phlegme, others Cholagogall which purge Choller, other Melanagogall which purge and move Melancholicall ſucce, & from their operation they are ſaid to looſe the belly by aſtringing, as Pils of Rhabarb and Myrobolanes, or by moderate drawing, as Pils of Agarick, or by drawing and expurging together, as pils of Euphorbium. *Pilularum magna varietas.*

The greateſt part of ſimples to be mixed in the Confection of the lumpe for Pils ſhould be beaten into ſmall powder, then put into honey deſpumed, or into the ſlimy matter of Tragaganthum diſſolved in ſome convenient ſucce, or rather into ſome convenient ſyrup, which hath ſome viſcidity fit to make the confuſed ſeeds ſtick in the mixture, and not gape for ſiccity, that alſo the ſimples may be fermented being included in ſuch a mixture, and that their faculty may not ſo ſoon exhale: for this cauſe, ſaith *Sylvius*, all kinds of Pils ſhould be comprehended in coćted honey, for being comprehended in water or ſucce, they do not cohere, but like bread made of bran they are preſently exſiccated, made friable, and decay. *Pilularum compoſitio ut rectè fiat.*

But if Pills admit gumms, and inſpiſſated juices, thoſe juices ſhould be mollifid before in ſome thine Liquor be moved, with a hot Peſtell, and then be put to the mixture of the powders, and laſt of all be confuſedly mixed with as much honey or other viſcid humour, as the mixture requires, that it may be made into dough, or a ſoft lumpe; for it will daily harden, which after two or three dayes muſt be liniated with a little oil of Almonds, and then obvolved in fine leather, or ſome thin bladder, it muſt at laſt be repoſed in a tinne or leaden box.

Craſſities pilularum qualis eſſe debeat.

When a part of that maſſe is to be uſed, it muſt anſwer a definite *Doſis*, and if need be, be beaten with a fit juice, that it may be mollified, and pills may thereof be made greater, or leſſer, or mean, as we deſire they ſhould ſtay more or leſſe time in the belly.

Pilulæ validiores quando ſumendæ.

Pills, that draw humour ſtrongly from the head or other remote parts, ſhould be exhibited foure or five houres after a ſlender ſupper, or about midnight, and it is good to ſleep after they be aſſumed.

Benignæ quando.

Such as purge benignly, may be ſafely ſwallowed an houre or two before any meale, ſuch as are in a mean are moſt ſafely uſed upon a jejune ſtomack in the morning.

Pilularum doſis.

Halfe a dramme is enough to move the belly, often a whole dram is given of the valid to purge more potently, and to ſtrong bodies a dram and half, which purge groſſe humours; ſome there are who are averſe to all pills, others to none, ſome will aſſume none, but the greater ſort, others none but little ones in a ſpoon with much ſyrup, many will ſcarce aſſume any, unleſſe they be involved in cherryes or the skins of dry grapes, ſome will ſwallow them hidden in the yolk of an egge, or in the leaves of ſpinage or lettices cocted; others will ſwallow then after ſome other manner, for their ingratefull ſapour hath invented a thouſand wayes to aſſume them.

Chap. XV.

Of Trochisks.

Some Medicaments are from the forme of little wafers called ἐρίνοι; as it were little round bread like lupines, or ſometimes τροχίσκοι, by the Latines, Paſtills, Orbicles, and they are thus formed for the Medicaments conſervation, and ſometimes correction; for Medicaments are more ſafely kept in that ſolid forme, than in powders.

Pilulæ bechicæ.

Yet they muſt be pulverated for uſe, if they cannot be aſſumed whole; ſuch onely excepted, as by ſome are called Bechicall pills, which muſt melt in the mouth, for Trochisks of *Scilla*, and vipers, in in the confecture of a Treacle, loſe the forme of paſtills, and are pulverated.

And they are made of Medicaments for the moſt part dry or beaten, and

and dissolved with wine, water, or other liquor, till they acquire the consistency of pills, and then they are formed into orbicles, and then dryed in a shade before they be reposed in boxes where they may be kept a whole year, sometimes two or three, especially if they admit of Opium in their confection, or any valid Medicament, whose strength is not easily dissipated, Trochisks, therefore because of their obduriety and density do preserve very long that strength of those Medicaments whereof they consist, and they more easily resist the injury of the air: which Powders cannot do, but being very small condescend to the air, and are therewith easily changed: yet are not all Trochisks made of Powders, but some of Medicaments which cannot be pulverated, as *Scilla* and vipers flesh.

Neither are Trochisks onely introsumed, but also externally applyed, those that are assumed at the mouth, as they may be made of every kind of Medicaments, so do they receive from Medicaments their roborating, purging and altering faculties: those are said to roborate, which having respect to a particular place, augment its strength, as Trochisks of *Galliæ Moschatæ* roborate the brain, of *Terra lemnia* the heart, of Rhabarbe the Liver, of Diarrhodon the ventricle, of Capers the spleen, such as are confected of Catharticks retain the strength of their simples, and by moving the belly, expell the humours, as Trochisks of Agarick, Alhanhal, and of Rhabarbe: we judge the same of altering Trochisks, which by their opposite quality change any distemper, as cold hot, or hot cold, dry moist, or moist dry. *Trochisci roborantes.* *Purgantes.* *Alterantes.*

Neither do we want Trochisks for externall affections, as those which from their forme, colour and Author are called white Trochisks of Rhases, and many other which are grinded on a marble, that Sief may be made for Collyries to many affections of the eyes.

The peculiar Confection of Trochisks shall be more largely explained in our book intitled, the shop, it rests now that we treat of those Medicaments which are only externally applyed.

THE SECOND SECTION OF THE THIRD BOOK;

Wherein is delivered a general explication of external Medicaments.

CHAP. I.

Of Oils.

AS all Diſeaſes are either internally generated, or externally annexed, ſo all Remedies that are preſcribed to them are either internal, of which we have largely heretofore treated; or external, to which we ſhall now ſpeak. And we ſhall begin our explication of local Medicaments with Oil, which by right vindicates the firſt place to it ſelf; becauſe the Apothecary may want many Medicaments, but ſcarce Oil at all, (*Gal. cap. 3. lib. 6. ſimpl. med.*) For it is not onely brought to the table becauſe it is ſweet, and expreſſed out of mature Olives, for hereunto we underſtand the denomination of Oil properly attributed; but the very baſis of Unguents, Plaiſters, and Sear-cloaths, and the common bond of thoſe Simples whereof they are confected. And becauſe it is of it ſelf temperate, or hot and moyſt in the firſt degree, or as *Galen* ſaith, (*cap. 25. lib. 3. ſimpl. medic.*) becauſe it is a medium betwixt hot and cold, moyſt and dry Medicaments, it helps laſſitude and weariſomeneſs, leniates aſperities, mollifies and cleanſes the ſqualid skin, and both wholſomely and pleaſantly cures many affections, which he mentioneth, (*cap. 6, & 7. lib. 2. ſimpl. medic.*)

Oleum alimentum eſt & medicamentum.

Oleorum differentiæ.

Now Oils which are frequently uſed, are either ſimple or compound; thoſe are ſimple which are homogeneal, and receive nothing from Art but extraction, which is made without the mixture of other things. After which manner *Minerva* firſt educed Oil, and taught that Art, as *Diodorus* writes; for before her Garden there was an

Pallas inventrix olei.

Olive

Olive tree unknown to all, as also the use of Oil, which before that time no man had taught how to educe.

And almost all Oils drawn out by expression are simple, as Oils simply so called, which is expressed out of mature Olives, Omotribes, or Omphacinum, which is of unripe Olives; as also Oil of Almonds, Wallnuts, and other Fruits, as other Oils educed out of Seeds, which differ even as the Seeds: for hot Oil is extracted out of hot Seeds, and cold out of cold Seeds. Yet all Oils are somewhat changed with age; and because of the dissipation from the watry part, that which is hot becomes hotter, and the cold refrigerates more slowly; for old Oil, according to *Galen*, (*cap. 6. lib. 1. compos. medic. secundum gener.*) hath power to extenuate; which is an effect of heat. *Oleum omotribes.*

Oil also, according to the diversity of the Fruit out of which it is extracted, as being mature or immature, and according to the manner of preparation and alteration induced by Art, acquires another and different quality and efficacy in alteration. As for example, Oil of Egs yolks, though it be not perfectly mixed, yet by losing some humidity by its preparation, it is more hot and dry, and is a Medicine most usefull in smoothing the skin, and curing an impetiginous itching and other affections of the skin, as also some fistulous and malign ulcers. *Oleum ovorum*

The same quality happens to all, expressed by the force of the fire, from which they perpetually retain their acquired heat. And when Oil of Almonds is thus extracted, it is onely extrinsecally applyed; when without fire, it is sucked up like a gratefull Lohoch, to ease the asperity of the rough artery, and coct and move Spittle; so that it is oft given with a little Sugar to Children that are troubled with coughing, or that have any distillation from the brain to the lungs, without any purging Medicaments, especially without anodynal Medicaments. *Olei amygdalini facultas.*

That Oils may be extracted, the Fruits and Seeds should first be purged, and the Apothecaries do ill that extract Oil out of Almonds before decortication. The Seeds cleansed, are brayed with a pestel; after contusion they are put into a pan, and set upon the fire, and stirred pretty long, that they may calefy: then are they involved in a rough cloth, and subjected to a wooden press, till by valid compression the Oils be expressed. *Olea exprimendi modus.*

Those that we would educe without the help of fire or heat, must after they be bruised very small, be presently put into the press, that the Oil may exude by drops.

Petreol, which is educed out of Salt-petre, from whence it hath its denomination, takes place amongst simple Oils. But our purpose is to treat of such as are made by Art. Liquidambor and Balsam also are simple Oils, which distill by drops out of the incisions of forreign Trees. But more of this in our Shop.

Some simple Oils also are distilled sometimes as well by ascent as by descent, as out of Juniper, *Guaiacum*, Cloves, and such like, both wood *Olea educta per ascensum & descensum.*

wood and dry Fruits, which being put into a pot, Oil aſcends into the veſſel above, by virtue of the fire ſet under; or deſcends into the veſſel ſet under, by virtue of the fire above. Yet are not all Oils extracted by deſcent, nor alwayes by the help of the fire; for Oil may eaſily exude out of *Tartarum* and Myrrhe included in a bag, and ſuſpended in a moyſt place, as in a Wine-cellar. Of all which manners of educing Oils, more elſewhere.

But compound Oils, wherewith the Apothecary ſhould be eſpecially furniſhed, are ſuch, in which the matter of ſtocks, fruits, flowers, and of any ſimple, is infuſed and macerated. After which, the whole is inſolated, till the ſtrength of the matter remain in the Oil, which is afterwards expreſſed and repoſed. After this manner are made the Oil of Violets, Roſes, St. *Johns* wort, Water-lillies, and many more, which the Greeks call Μύρα, the Latines *Unguenta*; and eſpecially thoſe which may be inſpiſſated by the admiſtion of gums, and odoriferous things; whence they are called Myropolitans, or Unguentarians, who ſold ſuch Oils and Unguents as were ſuaveolent, with whom any fragrant Oil was taken for an Unguent, as Unguents for Oils.

We ſcarce approve of their opinion which call onely them ſimple Oils which are made of Flowers, Fruits, or other Simples infuſed, macerated and inſolated in Oil of Olives: and thoſe compound Oils which are cocted on a ſlow fire with wine, water, infuſion, or convenient decoction, till almoſt all the admixed humour be aſſumed; for thoſe ſeem no leſs, but rather more compound than theſe, becauſe not onely the total power of the things infuſed, but a good portion of the ſubſtance in which it inheres, remains with the Oil after expreſſion in the former. Hence that Oil which partakes of no exceſs, but is temperate, is ſuch perpetually from the condition of the thing infuſed; which if cold, then is the Oil cold; if hot, hot; if it have the power to exſiccate, then will the Oil exſiccate.

Quibus vaſis olea ſervanda. Such Oils as are educed by expreſſion onely, or by maceration and expreſſion together, may be moſt ſafely kept, if repoſed in veſſels of glaſs or clay, perfectly before hardned with the valid heat of a furnace. But ſuch as are educed by diſtillation, whether by aſcent or deſcent, which are commonly called Chymiſts eſſences, muſt alwayes be kept in ſolid glaſs veſſels with ſtrait orifices, cloſe covered, leſt their ſubſtance and quality being diſſipable, ſoon expire.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of Vnguents.

UNguents, as *Galen* testifies, (*cap. ult. lib. 7. simpl. med.*) were called by the Antients, Oily Medicaments, confected of suaveolent spices; and according to *Actuarius*, (*cap. 1. lib. 5. meth.*) are onely externally applyed, and being onely spread along, are thought to benefit but such parts as cannot endure other remedies; such parts, as *Oribasius*, (*cap. 27. lib. collect.*) saith, are grieved with Cataplasms, and hurt with fluent madefactions.

Now Unguents are of a grosser consistency than Oils, and a mean betwixt Oils and Plaisters, as Liniments betwixt Oils and Unguents; for a more liquid Unguent is called very often a Liniment; of the confection and use whereof, we shall treat more at large in the fifth Chapter. And because the consistency of Unguents, Liniments, and Sear-cloaths, do not much differ, they are used sometimes indistinctly; for that is called a Liniment, wherewith the parts to be helped are liniated; that an Unguent, wherewith they are anointed; and that a Sear-cloth, which made of Wax and Oil, is applyed. *unguenta cur dicta & inventa.*

The Arabians, under the name of Unguents, oft comprehend Sear-cloaths and Plaisters, and many thick Oils; and the antient Greeks all well smelled Ointments; so *Dioscorides*, (*lib. 1.*) calls many sweet Oils, Unguents; and *Hippocrates*, (*lib. 1. de medic.*) affirms, that Physicians should not onely get fame and glory of the Vulgar by the good constitutions of their bodies, and decent Ornaments, but by sweet Unguents, that is, by aromatical and suaveolent things.

Yet for clearer explications sake they are distinguished from one another: and an Unguent properly is an Oily Medicament, of a middle consistency betwixt Oils and Plaisters, which yet doth not still remain alike: for when heat is more vehement, the unctious and fat matter melts more, and the Unguents become more liquid and soft; and when the heat is weaker, more solid: and therefore Unguentarians use to put less Oil in Summer, and more in Winter to their Unguents; for cold inspissates a fluent Unguent, as Oil it self; which *Galen* observes, (*cap. 1. lib. 8. comp. med. gener.*) in the composition of his stomachical Sear-cloth. *unguentum quid.*

Now that proportion of Oil must be observed in the confection of Unguents, that to one ounce of Oil be mixed one dram of Powder, and two drams of Wax; or as *Galen* saith, (*cap. 2. lib. 4. comp. med. gener.*) that four times as much Oil as Wax be put in the confection of Unguents, and eight times as much Oil as Powder, that is, to every ounce of Oil must be put a dram of Powder, the matter whereof is educed out of dry Herbs, Metals, and Earth, which is mixed with *Olei proportio in unguentorum confectione.*

a cold Cerate, and ſtirred with a *Spatula*, till all lumps be levigated.

When Unguents receive dry juices, we muſt pulverate and diſſolve them; when liquid and fluent, we muſt mix them with the reſt of the matter, and by coction abſume them.

Such as may, ſhould be pulverated very ſmall, as Roots, Wood, Roſines, and ſometimes Gums, when dryer. Such as may not, ſhould be beaten with a hot peſtel till they be mollified, or elſe diſſolved in Vinegar, or ſome fit liquor.

Such as are more humid, as Turpentine, ſhould be inſtilled; humid Herbs alſo, and Animals, or parts thereof that are ſcarce pulverable, ſhould be perfectly cocted in wine or ſuch liquor, till they be tabefied, and their humidity almoſt abſumed: then muſt materials be mixed in the ſtrained liquor, according to the aforeſaid proportion, that the Unguent may be of a legitimate conſiſtency; wherein Oil and Wax do not onely afford form, and a great part of the matter to the Unguent, but conjoyn the efficacies of the other mixtures, and preſerve them longer.

Vnguentum crudum. Now Unguents are made one while by the fire, as all ſuch as admit Wax; another while onely by long ſubaction, as ſuch that receive no Wax, as the crude Unguent, or the Unguent of Lithargy, which is made of Oil, Vinegar, and Lithargy, coacted by the continual percuſſion of a peſtel.

Vnguentarum varietates. There are alſo differences of Unguents taken from their colour, as green, white, yellow, and orange colour; from their effects, as reſumptive, analeptical, cleanſing; from their firſt qualities, whence ſome are ſaid to be hot, as the *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*, *Ægyptiacum*, *Martiatum*, *Enula campane*; others cold, as *Unguentum Nutritum*; others dry, as *Diapompholios*, *& deſicca Rubruni*; others moyſtning, as the Unguent of Roſes.

But white Wax is more expetible to the confection of cold, and yellow to the confection of hot Unguents. But Apothecaries indiſtinctly take one while white, another while yellow, as the matter of either will afford more commodity.

Quibus vaſis unguenta reponenda. Unguents are repoſed in tin boxes, and ſometimes in earthen pots well glazed, and they will keep a whole year, ſometimes two or three.

CHAP.

Chap. III.

Of Medicaments of Wax, or Ceratum.

Cerata are often designed by Unguents, *Ceronea* by Plaisters: by Unguents, because softer; by Plaisters, because harder: Both so called, because they admit of Wax, as many Plaisters, which are therefore indistinctly called Ceroneous Plaisters, of them that apply Catagmatical Plaisters to all diseases, bought in Unguentarians Shops: so that Ceroneous Salves are so usual amongst the Vulgar, that they call all Salves Ceroneous. A certain man in *Lutetia* calls a certain Plaister Ceroneous, which he applyed to all pains and diseases.

Ceratum quid.

But *Ceratum*, of which we now speak, is a Medicament of a middle consistency betwixt an Unguent and a Plaister; not so solid as a Plaister, nor so soft as an Unguent. But every one augments or diminisheth the weight of Oil, and makes this *Ceratum* either more liquid, or more solid than an Unguent, as he thinks fit. And indeed if it were prepared after one and the same manner, it would not be preserved so long safely; for though any liquid thing may be easily concrete with cold and frosty weather, and a solid Unguent soon melted in hot weather, yet we mix more Oil and less Wax in Winter, and more Wax and less Oil in Summer in *Ceratum*.

Olei quantitas in Cerato non semper eadem.

But when the constitution of the air is temperate, and doth not much exceed the first qualities, the fourth part of a pound of Wax, or not much more or less, should be put to one pound of Oil, that the *Ceratum* may not melt, or be thickned by the change of weather. Yet it is seldome kept long in Apothecaries Shops, because it may at any time, and soon be made of Oil and Wax, whence it is called *Ceratum*, or more properly *Cereole*; for such as besides Oil and Wax admit other ingredients, is not so properly called *Ceratum*, *Santalinum*, and stomachical *Ceratum*: and others which may presently be made, as the matter requires, of Plaisters melted with Oil, when the part affected cannot endure the hardness of a Salve or Plaister.

Thus is a certain *Ceratum* called *Acopa*, applyed to the weary nerves and muscles of those that are weak.

Thus may a *Ceratum* spread on leather, cut according to the proportion of the place affected, be applyed to the region of the spleen, ventricle, liver, womb, and to broken bones.

That which is applyed to the spleen must be long, and formed like a Neats tongue to the ventricle in form of a buckler; and thus it must be proportioned and formed to other parts, according to their form and figure.

Ceratorum efformatio quoad rationem partis affectæ.

In the confection of *Cereole*, the Wax is cut small, and cast into

Cereolæi conficiendi modus.

the Oil, and then melted on a slow fire; after liquation it is taken off, and forthwith mixed with a Spatula till it be compact; then a little cold water poured on, it is stirred again, and washed by this percussion; for the *Ceratum* thus compacted by the affusion of so much water as it can drink up; and thus accurately madefied, it is in *Galens* opinion, (*cap. 6. lib. 1. de simpl. med.*) made more refrigerative, and is good for all hot sores, especially if it be removed as soon as it is heated.

Seeing fatness, marrow, and such like liquid things, are added to the *Ceratum*, improperly so called, they must be mixed with it while cold, as also the powders, the proportion whereof to Oil is the same with that in Unguents.

They may be reposed in tin or clay vessels: but it is better to have them new, seeing they may soon be made at any time.

Chap. IV.

Of Plaisters.

THose topical Medicaments which are coacted into a more solid lump, were called by the Arabians *Cerota*, and by the antient Greeks *Emplasta*, (*Gal. cap. 12. lib. 1. comp. medic. gen.*) which the later sort for euphonies sake call *Emplastra*, the letter (*r*) being added; which being detracted, their quality sounds not emplastrical, but emplastical, or emphractical, as it were filling up or insartiating. For an Emplaster super-induced upon a part, seems to shut the pores and passages thereof, by the viscidity of its substance, and retain the halituous spirits, and by constraining the heat of the part sometimes to move suppuration; for its glewish substance doth not insinuate into it self, but remaining without, doth tenaciously adhere to the passages of the body. Yet are not its qualities idle, but being moved and helped by the heat of the part, they produce several effects, (*c. 9. l. 5. de simpl. med.*) if its faculty be to conglutinate, it helps the coagulation of wounds in the lips; if it be catagmatical, it helps the ferrumination of broken bones; if it be sarcotical, herein it helps Nature, that it generates flesh more easily; which is not so much the effect of Medicaments, as of Nature.

Sarcosis non tam medicamentorum quam naturæ est opus.

And as the composition of Emplaisters is various and manifold, so also is their quality, for they are compounded almost of all Medicaments; wherefore all are not emphractical, or such as fill the pores with their lentor, but some are ecphractical, as it were purging fractures; others epispastical, or extracting, and diaphoretical; others chyptical, which take away the filth of the skin, and ulcers; and some that are usefull for many affections, as many other Medicaments, called polychrestical, which consist of contrary Medicaments. (*Gal, initio l. 5. comp. med. gener.*)

An

An emplastical Medicament should want all mordacity, for it can scarce stick to the pores, if any sharp or biting quality be in it, as *Galen*, (*cap. 9. lib. 5. comp. medic. gener.*) but it may be easily discerned by melting some part of it, or by attracting some humour from above; an Emplastick therefore should be of a terrene substance, and viscous.

There are two main scopes in compounded Emplaisters to be minded, that a solid and gross consistency, and faculty, odour and colour are often desired; which rather please the fancy of the diseased, than conduce any thing in effect to the nature of the Medicament.

Wax, and common Oil, Lithargy, and sometimes Rosines, do afford a fit consistency and matter, but small or no virtue. All things almost which are superadded, as Minerals, Metals, Roots, Wood, Flowers, and Seeds, give a body and faculty to the Plaister; which if they be dry, they must be pulverated and mixed with the Plaister removed from the fire; if any of them be not friable, they are dissolved in some liquor, which is absumed by coction, before they be mixed with the Plaister; or else it is mixed with the Plaister, and dissipated by coction afterwards.

Green herbs, which cannot be pulverated, are either cocted in their own juice strained and mixed, or others are cocted in the juice of these brayed and strained; which juice being absumed, the strength thereof being left, if any remains that will not endure long coction, they may be put in and cocted, and then mixed with the Plaister.

But those Emplaisters must be long boyled which receive juice, water, vinegar, wine, or some decoction; because whereas the Emplaister should be all viscid and thick, that it might stick to the place to which it is applyed, humidity, which is oft mixt with it, being contrary to viscidity, must be resolved by heat, if its quality must needs be retained in the Emplaster; for such as are cocted in juices keep their faculties, though the juices themselves be dissipated by exhalation. Humidity also, which is required in confecting Plaisters, causes that the virtues of the rest of the ingredients be surer ingrafted, and that they be carried to parts further distant. Oil indeed is added to the materials of Emplaisters, but not as to constitute their body, but that the Wax might be melted with it, and that it might obtund the sharp and austere ingredients, and that the Emplaisters may obtain a more pleasant and leniating faculty.

Simple old Oil, and Oil made by infusion, as also any compound Oil, may be put into the Emplaister, that besides its matter, it may also afford some virtue thereunto.

Wax, as also some Rosines, allow onely matter to Emplaisters, no power to act. Yet such Emplasters as have other matter analogical to them, as Frankincense, and * *Labdanum*, or such like Medicaments, admit of no Wax nor Rosines in their composition.

* The dew of *Lada*.

But if Wax ingrede the Emplaister, let it be melted in Oil; if Lithargy, let that also be boyled in Oil; and if Juices, Liquors, or o-

ther such like must be mixed with it, let them also be warmed with these, till the watry and humid portion be resolved: then let Rosines and Fats be induced, as also Gums, whereof some are mixed simply with it, others after maceration in Wine, Oil, or Vinegar, and percolation. When the Plaister is throughly boyled, and taken from the fire, let Turpentine be mixed therewith, that it may not feel any force of fire. Last of all, when all these are confounded, and cocted to a legitimate consistency, and refrigerated, let the Powders be by little and little scattered above all, and diligently agitated and moved with a Spatula, till all be compact into a mass, neither too soft nor too hard, but viscid, glewish, and adherent: yet not so as to inquinate the part to which it adheres, nor to be hardly divelled from the place whereunto it is applyed.

And that the form of it may exist in a due consistency, the quantity of Oil must be diminished: when Fats, Marrows, and Turpentine are admitted in its confection, and augmented, when dry Gums, friable Juices, Rosines, and dry Wood or Minerals, that may be pulverated, are mixed therewith.

Olei proportio in emplastrorum confectura

In dry Ingredients the Oil must be thus proportioned; to every ounce of Powder must be allowed three ounces of Oil: to Wax the fourth part of as much Oil as the Wax is in quantity will serve; so that to a pound of Wax we put a quarter of a pound of Oil.

But because this quantity in the tempering of most Emplaisters may be better designed by ones judgement, than defined by certain rules, they now adayes put to a definite quantity of Oil and Powders as much Wax as will suffice, that these liquid, dry, and viscid ingredients, being by malaxation coagulated, a fit, viscous and glewish mass of Emplaisters may be induced. Out of which mass are formed rowls of Plaisters of half an ounce, or a whole ounce weight, which being involved in oiled papers, are reposed in the Apothecaries Shop for future uses.

Thus also are Emplaisters, properly so called, made, which are prepared without Fire and Wax, whose materials malaxated in Honey, or some viscid matter, are coagulated into the consistency of an Emplaister, as *Emplastra de crusta panis*, and *de baccis lauri*, or other such common Emplaisters, which are a medium betwixt Plaisters and Cataplasms.

That *Ceratum*, confected of an equal weight of Wax and Honey, is also referred to Emplaisters, as also *Cerotum* or *Cerones*, of which before.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of Sparadraps.

THere is to be sold in many Shops a Cloth plaistered on both sides, which the later Writers call a Sparadrap, sometimes also *Galterius* his Cloth, peradventure because he was the Inventor, or rather Infector thereof. Which is thus made; a certain Cloth somewhat bare with wearing, is often dipped and inculcated in a fit Emplaister already made up, but now melted till it be all infected, inquinated, and on every side incrusted; which is then extracted and exposed to the air, that by refrigeration it may become obdurate, and so be preserved till future exigency. *Tela Galterii.*

Now hereof are many kinds, the differences whereof arise not from the Cloth, but the Emplaisters wherein it is dipped; for some are catagmatical, which are used in solidating and roborating broken bones, which are made of astringing and roborating Emplasticks: as,

℞. *Oil of Quinces and Roses, and Rams suet, ana* ℥. *iiij. of Frankincense, Mastick, Pitch, Bole armeniack, Wheat-flowr, ana* ℥. *ij. of white Wax, q. s.* that an Emplaister may be made, wherein when melted, the Cloth may be dipped.

Others have an exsiccating and epuloptical faculty, which are applyed to induce skars, as this here described.

℞. *Oil of Roses,* lb. *j. of yellow Wax,* lb. *ß. of Venetian Ceruse, and Thutian, ana* ℥. *ij. of Lithargy of Gold,* ℥. *iij.* let hereof an Emplaister be made, and with a Cloth somewhat worn with age, a Sparadrap.

Joannes Vigonius describes many other forms in his Work of Chirurgy, which I neither will nor ought here to transcribe, seeing any one for any purpose may take any Emplaister with a small labour, and inculcate a Linnen Cloth therein: for whosoever knows how to prescribe and make Emplaisters, he may easily make Sparadraps thereof, by inquinating a Cloth therein liquefied.

OF PHARMACEUTICAL INSTITUTIONS.

The fourth Book.

Of Laws to be obſerved in compounding Medicaments.

CHAP. I.

Who firſt compounded Medicaments, and the reaſon of compoſition.

SEeing every Diſeaſe is the way to Death, all preſidy muſt be uſed for its cure or expulſion, ere it be too far increaſed; and ſuch ſedulity muſt be uſed in finding and ſelecting Medicaments, that we may have alwayes in readineſs ſuch as preternaturally conduce to the expugning of ſeveral affections, and as it were a Wood of the more excellent Medicaments.

Yet may not theſe Medicaments, whether ſimple or compound, be exhibited till they be changed by Art, and after much preparation, as we have before demonſtrated; wherein ſeveral Simples ſhould not onely be waſhed, dryed, beaten, or infuſed, macerated, expreſſed, and made fit for commixtion, but they muſt be united with ſuch care and proportion, that ſome new mixture may ariſe from their complexion in this concourſe, their ſeveral virtues, if not integrally, at leaſt

least preserved so, as they may perspicuously be seen while the commixtion is new, and not perfectly fermented, (*cap. 2. lib. 1. comp. med. gener.*)

But because Medicaments exhibited alone sometimes hurt, and mixed with others, admirably advantage; when the qualities of any Medicament is proved, but the one may hereby be improved; for certain it is, that even simple Medicaments have several and different qualities; and the other which is noxious, either obtunded or ejected, and so the best will be more effectual. And though some Simples hurt not, yet because they do not sufficiently help, they are not used without commixtion with others, as an Emplastical Medicament, of which, according to *Galen*, (*cap. 13. lib. de Ther. ad Pis.*) none is simple; and therefore the first and best Authors of Emplaisters have excogitated how to melt and make some of Oil.

Quis primus medicamentorum compositionem tradidit.

Now compositon of Medicaments is necessary, for many reasons shewed in our former Book, which was first of all approved and defended by *Mautias Herophilæus*, afterwards by *Cappadox*, *Heras*, *Musa*, *Asclepiades*, and *Andromachus*, (*cap. 2. lib. 2. comp. med. gen.*) but chiefly by *Galen*, (*cap. 2. lib. 1. comp. med. gen. Epilogismo*) who having shewed the reason of compounding Medicaments, teaches the legitimate proportion of the Compounds, and the manner of their exhibition: Not like those Empiricks, who refer all Medicaments to imaginations, chance, or fortune, except some few, which (as it is apparent by the common suffrage of all) are bettered by composition, all consisting of one and the same faculty; of which also some are fitted by nature to cure; which tenent *Galen*, (*cap. 3. lib. 6. comp. med. loc.*) denies, and proves by the example of the best Sarcotick, confected of *Ceratum*, and a twelfth part of Verdigrease; that Medicaments of two or more opposite qualities or faculties, may be best of all compounded; for *Ceratum* produces corruption, *Æruzo* erodes ulcerous flesh: yet the Medicament compounded of these is excellent, both for generating flesh, and filling the hollow ulcer. Thus we mix hot with cold, weakning with roborating, and cordial Medicaments with Poysons, compounding our best Medicaments of Simples endued with contrary or different qualities.

Sarcoticum optimum ex facultatibus oppositis.

Galen (*cap. 29. lib. 9. de facult. med.*) tells us of one of that number, who hold that Medicaments should be compounded according to experience onely, (no reference had to reason) to whom a gouty fellow by chance came while he was boasting of his podagrical Medicament; who being so moderately pained before this Empirick applyed his salve to his foot, that he could go, but was with pain after one sleepless night so handled, that he was so far now from going, as before, that he could not endure to be carried.

Historia Galeno nota.

The event therefore of fortuitous Compositions is alwayes fortuitous, and oft unfortunate, as *Galen* shews at large, besides the above-mentioned story, wherewith he derides the vanity and slothfulness

fulness of the Pseudomedick; who also judges it requisite that a Physician should not onely know the causes of Compounds, but the way and manner of their composition; and also that he should compound the best Medicaments for every Disease while it is time, lest that punishment be inflicted upon him which was upon two Physicians well known to *Galen*, (*cap. 1. lib. 2. comp. medic. gen.*) the one whereof was starved with famine, the other not suffered to perform his function; and all for the loss of some forms of Compounds.

Chap. II.

Of the basis of Medicaments, and their collocation in Forms or Receipts.

IN prescribing a Medicament, we should first appoint a basis, that is, some simple Medicament, as the chief in that composition, and most fit for depelling the disease, upon which the rest may depend. As when we undertake to oppugn any disease, if it be simple, accompanied with no ill symptome, we choose onely a simple Medicament of an equal virtue, and just auxiliary: but if no Simple be apt for it, then we must compound one Medicament of many, the basis whereof must be averse to the disease; and adde others, which may corroborate the member affected, or carry the quality of the Medicament to the parts more distant. Others also we must adjoin to make it acceptable and gratefull to the palate, or to felicitate and facilitate the work.

Now the basis is for the most part more prepollent in quality than in quantity, as in aromatical and purgative Confections; and by how much the disease to be depelled is more grievous, by so much must the basis be more potent in its virtue. Often also are many basis confusedly digested into some Compound, for the expugning of some prave affection; which conspiring with their mutual help, make up one perfect basis; as when we confound many anodynous Medicaments to ease some vehement dolour.

Multæ bases aliquando in uno medicamento.

Therefore in compounding Medicaments, a basis must be first sought adequate to the affection, and the part affected, yet it must not alwayes take the first place in composition: for all the ingredients in a Composition must not be promiscuously and inordinately confounded together, but one after another. And when this order is neglected, the Medicament oft times neither acquires its just virtue, nor its apt form; for if those receive little which require much and long coction, and those much which require little, their virtue cannot be integrally procured.

A due order likewise is accurately to be observed in describing forms

forms of Medicaments or Receipts, lest that be last described in the Receipt, which should have been first. Into which errour those happen who are ignorant of the substance, qualities, and preparation of Medicaments; as also sometimes young Doctors, who not sufficiently experienced by long use, describe confusedly what ever comes into their minds, whether they know their qualities, or not. *Ordo servandus in describendis formulis medicamentorum.*

But they offend worse, who boyl those Medicaments long, whose virtues are impaired by fire; who give those Medicaments in drink, which because of their eminent bitterness should be made into Pills, and covered over; who administer those things raw, which should be cocted, those whole, which should be pulverated, and those dissolved without expression, which should onely be infused.

Those who through negligence omit these things, may scarcely eschew the censure of the more antient Apothecaries, who being taught by skilfull Physicians, have not onely found out the manner of compounding Medicaments, but many of them have attained the knowledge of the order wherein Simples should be severally collocated.

Let this then be the first rule to be observed in describing Medicaments, that those which require a longer preparation, as diuturnal coction, or laborious triture, be first described; such as be roots and wood that is not odoriferous; those last which require least, as flowers, and aromatical simples; those in the middle, which require moderate labour and preparation, as herbs, fruits, and seeds. Whoever do otherwise, mixing and concocting in the same instant, wood, roots, leaves and flowers promiscuously and confusedly, either lose the dissipable qualiy of the later sort, or acquire not the strength of the former; and by this improvident manner of mixture make up a Medicament, neither endued with the genuine virtue of the Simples, nor answerable to the Physicians intent. *Prima Lex medicamenti describendi.*

Let the second Law observable in Receipts be this; That if brevity of time be urgent, and some things are to be cocted or infused, and others to be pulverated, that you begin with those that require coction or maceration, that while these are in preparing, others may be levigated and brayed, and so in the same time their several preparations may be accomplished. *Secunda Lex.*

The third observation is, That those which exceed in quantity or quality, be first described; yet so, that the manner of preparation and mixtion be not obverted thereby. *Tertia Lex.*

The fourth observation, which holds good almost continually; is, That those must be described in the last place of the Receipt, which are as the matter of the Medicament, as Honey in great Confections, Sugar in solid Electuaries, Oil or Wax in many Unguents. *Quarta.*

If this order be kept, it will leade the more recent Apothecaries into a readier and better way of preparing and mixing Medicaments, and their virtue will hereby remain more potent and firm; which if they be not rightly ordered by the rules of Art, do wax dull, and perish.

Chap. III.

Of the forms and end of Medicaments.

As thoſe that are ſound in body do not need, (*Aphor. 37. lib. 2. Hippoc.*) ſo neither do they deſire Medicines. And thoſe who had need of Medicaments, either to prevent an imminent, or depell a preſent diſeaſe, either never call the Phyſician till the malady of the diſeaſe be at the height, or utterly refuſe Phyſick; or they will have it prepared with ſuch art and mixture, as in odour, colour, and ſapour, it may pleaſe the noſe, eyes, and palate. But *Galen*, (*lib. 2. de prænot.*) ſaith, that a Cook amongſt theſe children and fools is preferred before a Phyſician; and he is more commended and allauded, becauſe he daily indulges their genius with unaccuſtomed varieties and dainties.

But ſince every one is puniſhed by that by which he offended, and gluttony and ſurfetting is the nurſe almoſt of all diſeaſes, it is as it were by divine ordination conſtituted, that a Medicament aſſumed by the mouth, ſhould leave in the mouth the ultion of the fault therein committed. For it is no wonder that almoſt all Medicaments, eſpecially purgative, ſhould ſo much diſpleaſe our taſte and ſmell, by their quality averſe to our nature, ſince they are inſtituted, not as Aliments to be changed, but to change; and either to correct the noxious quality of the humours, or to extrude it.

Such Medicaments as are inſipid and inodorous, and being exhibited in a ſmall quantity, do variouſly wreſt and exagitate the body, and the humours, are not ſo good as thoſe, which though ungrateſull, and aſſumed in a larger meaſure, do eaſily and with delight educe the vicious humours from the parts affected.

Formam medicatorum quid ſtat.

Now the forms of Medicaments do not onely facilitate their aſſumpſion, (for ſome onely like liquid, others ſolid Medicines) but produce divers effects, as they are in form divers; for an inciding or extenuating Medicament is better accommodated to its function by a liquid form, as alſo by a ſolid form to aſtriction.

Now I call not that ſame, which gives the eſſence, the thing; nor yet that faculty, by which it operates, the form, but the very conſiſtency of the compound Medicament, whether it be ſolid, liquid, or in a mean. Beſides which conſiſtency, another figure is often put upon dry Medicaments by the induſtrious hand of the Apothecary, or imprinted by ſome ſigil; as when the matter is formed into Pils or Trochisks, or planed into Teſſels; and that either equilaterally cubal, or drawn out into an unequal angle.

But this external impreſſed form or ſigillation is of little moment,

as

as nothing conducing either to promote or felicitate the effect of the Medicament, as some superstitious fellows have imagined, that I may omit what some Alchymists dream of, the external signature of some Plants, whereby they profess to accommodate the virtues of those Plants to the parts affected, with which their Medicaments by certain marks and external forms agree. But the form of a Medicament, whereby it is dense, rare, or liquid, is usefull for many purposes, for the same Medicament will sometimes provoke urine, sometimes stools, according to the manner of its composition. *Galen, cap. 13. lib. 4. de sanit. tuend.*

Crassities aut tenuitas pulverum quid efficiat.

Such Medicaments as are levigated to powder, are quickly carried to the reins and bladder; such as are grosser, subsist longer in the intestines, and give stools. If any would be freed from obstructions, and move monthly flowers, they can neither successfully exhibit solid Medicaments, nor yet liquid ones, if they would educe the noxious humour from the brain, or parts more diffite.

And as grosser Medicaments are requisite to roborate some parts, and depell some affections, and liquid to others: so some require Medicaments of a middle consistency, as amongst internal Medicaments, Electuaries, and some Antidotes amongst external Unguents, mucaginous Salves, and Pultises.

We have abundantly before declared what form is fit for several Medicaments, we shall hereafter speak in special of those which should be variously formed, as the condition of the place requires, to which they are fitted; as when a *scutum* or signature of a Buckler is fitted for the region of the ventricle, of a stomachical Emplaister, a Pessary for the secrets, a Suppository for the fundament, a Tent for a wound.

Nimis sumptuosa medicamentorum confectura plerunque vana.

Some upon no grounds do not onely desire a set form, but also a sumptuous confecture of Medicaments, otherwise rejecting them as vile and useless; as a certain rich man, who desired and received of *Galen (cap. 10. lib. 3. comp. medic. gener.)* a Form or Receipt of a cure for a malign ulcer in his servant; who seeing all the Ingredients of a vile price whereon the Medicament consisted, bid *Galen* keep that for Beggars, and give him a costly Medicament.

So many little regard excellent Medicaments, if they know them, but make much of vile ones, if they know them not, admiring them as some celestial remedy. They therefore act to the indignity of Medicaments, who detect the secrets of so Divine an Art; and that they may please the people, describe their Receipts in the vulgar idiome.

Artis arcana non detegenda.

For it is better to make a Medicament gratis, and give it to the poor, than prescribe them any thing of small price, or teach and shew the composition thereof; which they having once with success tryed upon themselves, they will experience on others to their undoing; for many Medicaments, especially purgative, are both good and evil, and heals or kils accordingly, as they are well or ill used.

Finis compositionis. Now the end of composition of Medicaments is the cause for which such composition must be undertaken; or that same purpose to which all things necessary in composition are referred, that the Medicaments compounded by Art may be of use, either to preserve or roborate health, or to profligate diseases.

Chap. IV.

Of the Weights of Medicaments, and their marks.

EVery Nation and Countrey had, and have still their proper Weights and Measures; the Constinopolitan Merchants two pounds Weights, twenty six ounces; the Mediolanians 24. the Parisienians 16. the Lugdunians 15. the Hispanians 14. the Genevians, and many more 12. the Goldsmiths onely 8. commonly called *Markum*.

The antient Greeks, Arabians, and Romanes also, had not onely their proper Idioms and Characters, but Weights also; and unless the Supream Authority forbad them, they would buy with the greatest, and sell with the least Weights, there being no certain Standard.

But because in Medicine one cannot erre twice; and errours in prescribing Weights and Measures are often very perilous, all Medicks should have common and definite Weights, that there might be a mutual consent in their operations.

The Medicks pound alwayes weighs 12. ounces, which is thus described, *lib. j.* their ounce eight drams, whose note is this, ℥. *j.* their dram three scruples, thus marked, ʒ. *j.* so that in one ounce they have as many scruples as there be letters in the Greek Alphabet, to wit, 24. according to the Poet *Faunus*:

Uncia fit dragmis bis quatuor, unde putandum,
Grammata dicta, quod hæc viginti quatuor in se.
Uncia habet, tot enim formis vox Græca notatur,
Horis quot mundus peragit, noctemque, diemque.

By which words, Scruples seem to be Vicegerents of Letters, Drams of Syllables, Ounces of Words, Pounds of Speeches, or at least Sentences. But there are less Weights than Scruples, for a Grain or Minute is the least of Weights, of which is made an *Obolus*, or half Scruple, thus noted, ϑ. ß. and a Grain with two letters conjoyned thus, *gr.* or sometimes with one letter thus, *g.*

When we would describe a pound and a half, or an ounce and a half, we mark the greater number thus, *lib. j.* ß. the lesser thus, ʒ. *j.* ß.

A grain is the most small, indivisible and minute of weights, and therefore called a mite, by the Greeks κόκκος. *Granum.*

Chalcus, or *æreolum* weighs two mites or grains.

Siliqua or *Ceration* in Arabick *Kirat*, two chalci, or 4. grains.

A *Semiobulus* weighs 3. *æreola. i. e.* one *siliqua* and a half, one *obolus* weighs 3. *siliqua*, or six *Chalci*; or 12. grains.

A scruple weighs 2. *obuli*, or 12. *chalci*, or 24. grains.

A *denarius* is the eighth part of a Romans ounce, and weighs 3. scruples, or six *obuli*, or seventy two grains.

A dram is the eighth part of a Greek ounce, lighter than a *denarius*, weighing onely 60. grains, that is, 3 common scruples, every of which should weigh 20. grains.

A *denarius* was accounted formerly for ten pound weight, whence *Sylvius* saith it had its name; now it amounts onely to the 84. part of a pound, as a dram to the 96. I mean of a Medick pound, which weighs 12. ounces.

Many for a *denarius* puts a dram, not much lighter, and for a dram a *denarius*, according to the version of the Greek interpreter, who having no weight that might exactly respond to the Roman *denarius*, put a dram for a denarius.

Sicilicus amounts to two drams, and it is the fourth part of an ounce, a *semiuncia*, or half ounce contains two *sicilici*.

The Medicks ounce weighs 8. drams, the Merchants 8. *denarii*.

I find a dram called sometimes by the ancients *Hexagion*, the Merchants commonly call it *grossum*.

Bes contains 8. ounces, and hath as much as the Medicks *mina*, which contains 16. ounces, and amounts to the Merchants pound. *Ex Dioscor. & Gal.*

But the Medicks λίτρα, *i. e.* pound is lesse, containing onely twelve ounces.

We may contract them all thus, that so they may be better accommodated to memory.

A pound, oft called *pondo*, or *As*, weighs twelve ounces, *deunx* eleven, *dextans*, ten: *dodrans*, nine: *bes* or *octunx*, eight: *septunx*, seven: *semis*, six: or the half part of any weight, *quincunx*, five: *quadrans* or *qurtarium* four: *triens*, three.

An ounce contains four *sicilici*, *sicilicus* two drams, a dram, three scruples, a scruple, two *obuli*, an *obulus*, two *siliqua* and a half, *siliqua*, two *Chalci*; *Chalcus* two grains.

I would not in silence have passed over names or weights familiar to the Arabians, but that I found so many, as made them seem uncertain, who call an ounce *adar*, *alfatil*, *sacros & assathis*, a dram sometimes *alchi*, sometimes *nabach*, and sometimes *darchamet*, a scruple also *guanthus*, often *gormin*, and sometimes *kermec* & *arme*, an *obulus* *Seminen*, *Seminet*, *Onolos*, *Onolosat*, *Ologinat*, indiscriminately, as half a one *Danich*, the third part *Kirat*: but we will leave them to their words, and use our own. *Nomina ponderum Arabica.*

When hearbs must be measured by *Maniples* Medicks note it with this letter *M.* when flowers by *Pugills*, with this letter *P.* now a *Maniple* with the Medicks, is as much as can be contained in a *hand*; a *pugill*, as much as may be holden betwixt three fingers.

Ana quid signet.

When an equall weight of measure or two or more Medicaments are prescribed together, they adde this word *Ana*, which shewes that an equall portion of every Medicament must be assumed.

Amongst other notes of weights, or rather definite quantityes in prescribing receipts, this letter. *N.* is plac'd to denote that some number should be assumed, as of many fruits which cannot by weight or measure be better described, but how great a number, the note of weight thereunto annexed must shew, as for example of Almonds, Plums, or the like, two, three, four, five, or six, more or lesse as the Medick sees cause, should be prescribed, figures should be added to indicate their number, whereunto according to *Rondeletius*, the notes of the ancient Romans numbers are more accommodate, which are thus described I. II. III. IIII. V. VI. VII. VIII. IX. X. XI. XII. than the other characters called Ciphers, and thus described. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. Least some ignorant *tyro* for two or three drams, thus designed ℥. 2. ℥. 3. read thirty two, or thirty three drams.

Chap. V.

Of Physicians Measures.

NOt without reason doe the holy Scriptures attest, that God created all things with weight, number, and measure; for number being an act of reason, therefore *Plato* asserted man to be the wisest animal, because he could number; And God commanded all this to be trutinated by just weight and measure *Levit.* 19. & *Deut.* 25.

By measures I mean certain hollow instruments like boxes thereunto accomodated by certain receptive & mensurative shapes, wherein Apothecaries or Merchants may measure simple or compound, dry or liquid Medicaments.

But they are made cheifely to measure liquors, as oyl, vinegar, decoctions or the like, and they are so fitted by industry, as to respond to weights, for some will contain one ounce, some two, some three, some one pound, others five, others ten, others more and lesse.

Cochlearium.

The least measure will contain ℥. j. and ℈. ß. of wine of a mean consistency, and is called *cochlearium.*

Ligula,

Another is called *Cheme*, twice as capacious as the former, which containes of wine ℥. ij. & ℈. j.

Mistrum.

A third is called *Ligula*, or *mystrum*, and contains of *Wine* ℥. ij. ß or ℥. iij.

Concha

Concha contains two *myſtras*, or twice as much as *Cheme*, that is ℥. v. *Concha.*

Cyathus contains twice as much as *Concha*, that is ℥. x, or ʒ. j. ʃ8. *Cyathus.*

Acetabulum, which the Greeks call *Oxybaphum* contains half as much again as a *Cyathus*, that is ʒ. ij. & ℥. ij. or ʒ. ij. ʃ8. at the moſt. *Acetabulum.*

Quartarius holds twice as much as *Acetabulum*, that is ʒ. iiij. ʃ8. or little more.

Hemina or *Hemiſextarius* holds twice as much as *Quartarius*, that is ʒ. ix. *Hemina.*

Sextarius holds twice as much as a *hemina*, that is ℔. j. ʃ8.

Chœnix ℔. ij & ʒ. iij. *Chœnix.*

Chus or *Congius* ſix *ſextaries* that is ℔. ix.

Urna four *Congii*, that is ℔. XL. *Urna.*

Amphora two *Urns*, that is ℔. LXXX. *Amphora.*

Metretes, in Greek *Geramium*, in Latin *Cadus*, an *amphora* & a half. *Metretes.*

Culeus, twenty *Amphora* or forty *Urns*. *Culeus.*

Thus we proceed from the leaſt of meaſures of liquids to the greateſt by degrees, as from grains, to the greateſt of weights in dry things, and as the greater number contains the leſſer, ſo doth the greateſt meaſure or weight the leſſer.

Some meaſures therefore are great, ſome ſmall, ſome meane, and amongſt thoſe ſome are deſtined to meaſure liquids, others ſolids, others both.

Culeus, *Amphora*, *Urna*, *Congius*, and *Quartarius* ſerve to meaſure liquids, *modius* and *ſemimodius* ſolids, *ſextarius*, *hemina*, *acetabulum*, *cyathus*, both.

Chap. VI.

Of the quantity of Medicaments to be exhibited.

IT is not onely worthy our inquiſition in compounding Medicaments to enquire after the quality of ſimples onely, but alſo to know in what quantity each ſimple ſhould be mixed, & what quantity of a compound ſhould be exhibited. For as too little brings ſmall emolument or profit, ſo too much brings more harme: for a Lettice may kill as well as Hemlock; and wine kills more than Woolfebane.

Now if ſuperabundance of Aliment be as noxious as poyſon, it is the greateſt perfection of the Art & Artificer to deſcribe the juſt quantity of Medicaments, and to define what and how much is convenient for every ſexe, age, nature, and time: For *Turpethum*, colocynthis and Hellebore purge ſtrongly; Polypody, Tamarinds, and the broath of an old Cock weakely: *Caſſia*, Senny, Rhabarbe, moderately: old *Alimentorum nimia quantitas periculoſa.*

old and melanchollick men must be purged hardly in Autumne, boyes and moist men must be purged easily in Winter, and Spring; and cholerick men easily in Summer, such as are of a middle nature, must be moderately purged.

Idem medicamentum non eadem semper præstat.

And since mutations of ages and seasons change the condition of the humours, it happens that one and the same Medicament, taken in the same quantity, hath not alwayes the same effect and operation, for when the humours swell, and are turbulent, then nature, with the help of a gentle Medicament, will worke out the excretion of the troublesome matter, excluding it either by stoole or vomit. Whereas on the contrary, if the matter by its lentour be more tenaciously fixed, and no way provokes nature by its quality to its exclusion; the strongest Medicament will not be of power to relaxe the belly, being only able to move, not to remove these redundant humours.

This diversity of humours often deceives the non-cautious, who having by experience found, that *Cassia* should be prescribed and exhibited by *ounces*, and not by *grains*, *Scammony* by *grains* and not by *ounces*, and Rhabarb by *drams*; think they have prescribed a convenient dosis according to the efficacy of each Medicaments acting, when yet they often see that the Medicament either not at all, or too impensely and strongly moves the belly: For when nature cooperates, and the superfluous humour swells, a few grains of Rhabarb will relaxe, yea, the very odour alone of some cathartick, will sufficiently exagitate the ventricle.

Wherefore the Physician does wisely, who being called by some patient never before seen of him, askes him whether his body needs a weake and gentle, or valid and strong purge, and whether he be most commonly laxative, or restringed, that he may the better accomodate his purgative Medicament; neither too much, nor too little to exagitate his ventricle, nor yet to exclude more in quantity or quality than he should. Yet if the body wholly abound with ill humours, he may not at once, but by little and little, not on one day, but many remove them, for nature cannot beare great evacuations of any humours whatsoever, but delights in graduall actions, wherein is no violence.

CHAP.

Chap. VII.

A just quantity of Medicaments can scarce be defined, yet a little in excesse or defect, is not perillous.

THE Medicinary Art is indeed conjecturall, yet much helped by experience, augmented by reason, and confirmed by reason, and confirmed by the authority of Doctors, who trying effects by the indagation of causes, and being more skilfull and prudent by long observance have left Theorems to posterity, grounded upon many strong and necessary reasons, whereby diseases may be known, remedies invented, and a quantity of Medicaments described, if not just and definite, yet so accomodate to nature and the disease, that one may triumph, and the other be captivated: For what perill can be doubted or expected? If where an ounce of *Cassia* is convenient, seven or nine drams be exhibited, if where one dram of Rhabarb is requisite, two or four scruples be assumed, a small errour should not cause great feare, and as all excrementitious humours cannot alwayes be educed by a Medicament without indangering sanity; so we shall not need to suspect any harme by the eduction of some of them onely that are not of an offensive quality: since meat and drink are not alwayes ingested after the same measere, and at the same time. Nor yet ill humours always bridg diseases with them. Many have often eaten Hemlock instead of Persly in Pottage, which the maid hath mistaken, because of their convenience in externall form, those also who love Froggs eat Toad-stools often without harm.

Yet we must with all judgement and artificiall conjecture, endeavour to make the quantity of the Medicament, respond to the strength of the nature, and the burthen to be educed, which if it be copious, and a proportionate Medicament, cannot with safety be exhibited at once, it is better to wash it away in severall dayes than at once, both deject strength and humours.

Its sad to reiterate purgative Medicaments, where one will accomplish the design, or to minister a violent one where a gentle one would sufficiently exonerate. For suppurgation is dangerous, which by too much opening the veins sometimes excites the dysentary, evacuates blood, and prostrates the integrity of natures strength to danger. Its better therefore to relinquish some of the superfluous humours, than by immoderate vacuation to protrude both necessary and excrementitious ones. *Suppurgatio timenda.*

And as the same quantity of the same Medicament given to the

same man at severall times, may produce different effects, so as its quantity varyes it acts variously, & one while is more proper for this, another while for that disease: for if (*Aphor.* 1. *lib.* 4. *Hippocr.*) a woman with child be advised to purge, which she may without fear or danger do, betwixt the fourth and sixth moneth of her pregnancy, she may confidently assume a roborating Medicament in a small quantity, that the cause of that molestation, whereof pregnant women complain, may be gently removed, and the *fœtus* receive no detriment thereby.

But when the quantity of *Opium*, *Diagredium*, or such Medicaments which have great power, in a little bigness, is to be excogitated, let it be with great care and prudence prescribed, and pondered, that if a just quantity can scarce be defined, the exuberance or defect may be very small, for whereas the least thing is not reached by the Law, nor judged by the Prætor, yet we may easily offend in the least excesse.

Chap. VIII.

Of such Medicaments as may without harme be taken in great quantity, for whom they are convenient and when.

Every Medicament doth more or lesse offend nature, as its faculty is stronger or weaker: by how much a cathartick is more grievous in odour or sapour, by so much it causes more molestation; for all purges (saith *Galen. cap. ult. lib. quos, quando & quibus*) offend the ventricle, especially in its mouth, which, consisting of of many nerves, is of more accurate sensation, and therefore we either mixe benevolent lenocinyes with purgatives, or select, such as are not so ingratefull, nor so much disturb the ventricle. Which if they can be procured, must not yet be presently exhibited, save by those for whom they are convenient, and in such quantity, as may respond to the strength of nature, and be easily born.

Which quantity is various, according to the various faculties of the Medicaments, which if they be weaker, may be exhibited by so much in a greater quantity, if stronger in a lesse. Now I call them purgatives weak, which by gentle and benign motion of the ventricle, cleanse the first region of the body, and are measured rather by ounces, than drams, as *Manna*, the pulpe of Tamarinds, the pith of *Cassia*, or the like: Those valid or strong, which being small in quantity produce great and violent effects, and which are rather weighed by grains and scruples, than by drams, of which hereafter: all them are accounted weak, which are measured by ounces; and they violent which are measured by grains; they indifferent which are measured

measured by drams, as Rhabarb, Senny, Aloes and the like, all which, as also all lubricating and roborating purgatives, may be taken in greater quantity.

This also holds good in alterating Medicaments, which by how much they recede lesse from the symmetry of our body, as being onely hot or cold in the first degree, may be prescribed in greater quantity; by how much they recede more, as hot or cold in the fourth degree, may be exhibited in lesser quantity; it is not then without perill copiously to assume Pepper, Bartram, Euphorbium, or Cicuta, Hedum or Water-Lillies, because by the former the intralls would be inflamed, by the later benummed and chilled. *Alterantium dosis.*

But since roborative Medicaments differ much in their active powers, they must be used in different quantities, as cordiall waters by ounces, conserves, roborating the principall parts by drams, more potent Antidotes, by scruples; Bezoar-stone, and Unicorns horn by grains.

Now such liquids as are assumed either to roborate, alter, or purge, may be given in a greater quantity.

Furthermore not only the efficacy of the Medicament, but also the state of the body and humours require an augmentation, or diminution in quantity; a gentle and weak Medicament will not move a strong and firme body, which hath been either accustomed to labour, and frequent purgation, or pestered with many obstructions; whereas the soft and slender bodyes of women and children, which are either dry or macilent, as also of pregnant women and persons newly recovered from diseases, will not endure strong ones. *Qui Medicamentis validis, qui benignis egent.*

The species also, and plenty of the humour, varyes the quantity of the Medicament; for a viscid, grosse, frigid, Melancholicke, pituitous and tenaciously adhering humour will hardly be deduced, but requires a more valid and potent cathartick for its exclusion, a thin, calid, and chollerick humour will sometimes be ejected by spontaneous vomit, very easily by a purgative Medicament. *Frigidus & crassus humor tardius purgatur.*

Furthermore, the state of the heavens, the nature of the region, and the condition of the season of the year require a different quantity of Medicament, for seeing the belly is obdurate in a cold season, (*Aphor.* 5. *lib.* 3) and a rigid Winter coartactes, and condenses the body, especially in the frigid region or climate, the humour then tenaciously adhering, is not propelled, save either by a strong Medicament once, or a gentle one often and in abundance exhibited, and as the year for the most part causes diseases according to its own constitution (*Aphor.* 5. *lib.* 3.) so according to the species of the humour causing the disease, and its greater or lesser progresse: it is requisite, that not only the kind, but quantity of the Medicament be changed, which must be more copious: if by reason of the body, humour, state of the heavens, region, or custome purgation be difficult, as on the contrary, if purgation be easy in lesser quantity, as shall appear hereafter.

Chap. IX.

Of such as must be prescribed in small quantity.

EVery purgative Medicament hath either a strong or a weak facultie, which by a particular propriety respect the gentle or potent eduction of this rather than another humour. Now that Medicament I call gentle or weak, which assumed in an indifferent quantitie moves the ventricle benignely and educes moderately, but superfluously assumed, educes superabundantly. For if an immoderate quantitie of Rhabarb or *Cassia*, which are of the most familiar Medicaments to nature, be assumed, as an ounce and a half of the former, or half a pound of the later, it will move either stoole or vomit, or both, with a great and immoderate turbation of the ventricle, and agitation of the humours.

Blandum medicamentum quale.

Potenter purgans,

That I call a potent purgative, which in small quantity, as that thats weighed by grains, causes a copious and great dejection, which must be given in small quantity; as also all such as are ingratefull, rare, dear, indued with potent efficacious vertue, or partaker of any malignant quality.

Ingrata qualia,

Those are ingratefull, which by their odour grievously affect our nose or brain, as Castor, Sagapenum, and *Assa-fœtida* which being a stinking gum the Germans call the Devills dung, or by their sapour, such as are bitter Medicaments as Colocynthis, the lesser Centory: sharp, as Euphorbium, Bartram; most acid, as the Oil of Sulphur & Vitriol, a few drops whereof in a due proportion mixed with the syrup violets make it of a red shining colour, and somewhat acid of taste, and thereby very pleasant to the eyes and palate. A certain Court Doctor at his first coming, gave this syrup thus altered by Art, equally for all diseases with his own hands, who deceiving the vulgar with his ostentations, called it the secret of secrets.

Those that are rare and dear, as Gems, Precious stones, Pearle, Balsam, Precious *Aromatas*, Amber, Musck, Civet, and such as work an alteration in the body by their calidity or frigidity in the fourth degree, must be prescribed in small quantity.

Quæ magna cautela sumenda.

Those which by a certain antipathy, and speciall potency impaire the principles of life, spirit and heat, consume the flesh, and destroy the integrity of sanity, must not be exhibited without extraordinary care and prudence; as Vipers flesh against the pestilence or leprosy, the reins, or rather the flesh of the loines of Stincus to provoke to Venery, Cantharides against the retention and obstruction of urine; for these Cantharides rightly prepared and mixed with fit Medicaments, and administred in a small quantity, do move urine without harme,

harm; but in a great quantity they ſtay it, and impenſly calefy the bladder. *Rondeletius.*

Minerals alſo, and all ſuch as have more efficacious faculties, muſt be taken ſparingly; ſuch as are more remiſs, liberally.

Furthermore, thoſe that conduce to the dulcoration, correction, or deduction of other Medicaments, muſt be mixed alwayes in a ſmall quantity, as Cynamon, Sanders, or Squinant, to conciliate ſuavity of odour or ſapour in the Medicament. Ginger to the caſtigation of Agarick, Saffron of Opium, opening and inciding Medicaments to the dilation of the quality of other Medicaments to the parts to be cured.

But nothing doth ſo much dehort from a great quantity of any Medicament, as its effrenate, prepotent, and malign quality; which as ſoon as it is educed into act, doth grievouſly diſturb Nature, and excites a Troop of ſymptomes.

Thoſe which are rare, and by their price fit Princes, and rich men, if neceſſity require, may be preſcribed in ſmall quantity.

Chap. X.

In what quantity Simples muſt be mixed for compoſition.

FEW Compounds are found to conſiſt of many Simples equal in proportion, but two or more exceed the quantity of the reſt. They exceed, which are the matters Vicegerents, and induce an apt form to the Medicaments, as Oil, Wax, Lithargy, in Salves and Unguents; or which are moſt potent in action, and conſtitute the baſis in compoſition, as Aloes in many Pills; as alſo ſuch as have but weak faculties in great quantity, or are adhibited for the preſervation of others, as Honey and Sugar in Electuaries and Syrups.

This rule is chiefly to be obſerved in the proportion of Medicaments to be compounded, that that which brings more utility to the Medicament, ſhould be adhibited in greater quantity in compoſition.

They which are ſymbolical, whoſe matter is equally apt to induce the form of the Medicament, and which are in their faculties equally averſe to the cauſe and ſymptome of the part affected, ſhould be mixed in equal weight: which ſeems to be obſerved in the Tetrapharmacal Unguent, which conſiſts of equal portions of Wax, Roſine, Pitch, and Bulls fat. And alſo in *Fuſtinus* his Electuary, which by *Nic. Mirepſius* his deſcription, *cap.* 403. receives an equal portion of thirty Simples, all which are thought by a certain propriety to break

ſtones, and clear the urinal paſſage. To theſe is added Honey and Sugar in a different proportion, that the Electuary may acquire a convenient form, and apt conſiſtency, and be fitter for long preſervation.

Some portion of ſimple Medicaments is meaſured by number, ſome by weight, others by both; ſome in meaſures, ſome in handfulls, others in pugils.

The quantity of roots are variouſly meaſured for their doſis, according to their various virtue and efficacy in operation. If their faculty gently move the belly, they are meaſured by drams; if potently, by ſcruples; if they onely alter, by whole or half ounces; and when they make up a bath, by pounds or handfulls.

In making Syrups of a great quantity, they may be exhibited from ℥. j. to ℥. ij. or ℥. iij. in decoctions for one doſis, from ℥. ij. to ℥. ß. or ℥. j. or more or leſs, according to the power of the roots. If the decoction be made for many doſes, their quantity muſt be proportionately augmented.

When two, three, or more roots of the ſame, or very like quality are preſcribed, a leſſer quantity of each ſhould be taken, that all conjoyn'd may make up the quantity of one, according to *Rondolet*. Which ſhould alſo be obſerved in all other Simples that are ſimilar in quality, if ſo be they equally conduce to the propugnating of one affection, and roborating one part. And briefly, ſuch as are indued with ſome acrimony, or eximious faculty, muſt be mixed in ſmall quantities, ſuch as weak and gentle, in great.

The ſame rule ſhould be obſerved in recent and dry herbs, which are meaſured by one or more handfulls, according to their faculty, and the nature of the Medicament to be compounded; for to ſome doſis we meaſure them by whole or half handfulls, to a fomenting Medicine by two handfulls, to a bath by more.

Flores. Or ſometimes bundles of little flowers, whether recent or dry, as the flowers of Roſemary, Violets, Bugloſs, we meaſure ſometimes by pugils, ſometimes by weight. Great ones, if recent, as Lillies, Roſes, by handfulls; if arid, by drams or ounces in ſcales.

Semina. All ſeeds, whether hot, cold, temperate, ſharp, acerb, bitter, or ingratefull, are librated by weight; but they ingrede the compoſition in different quantities, according to the different virtue, or the Phyſicians ſcope.

Such as are moſt calid, moſt frigid and narcotical, if externally to be adhibited, may be given from ℥ ij. to ℥. j. if intrinſecally, to be aſſumed from ℈. j. to ß. j. or a little more or leſs, as the faculty is more or leſs potent.

Fructus numero & pondere menſurantur. Fruits, as well as roots, are different in magnitude and quality, whereof various quantities are deſcribed, which are known after ſeveral manners. The leaſt, as Ribes and Barberries are preſcribed by weight; the greater, as Sebeſten and Plums, by number; ſome by both, as Almonds, Jujubs, and dry Grapes. Many, which becauſe

of

of their greatneſs are not integrally requiſite, are cut into ſlices; purged from their cores, ſhells, or ſtones, and then meaſured by drams or ounces.

And that I may conſummate all, Liquids are preſcribed by meaſure, Solids by weight, Fruits by number, Leaves by maniples, Flowers by pugils, every ones doſis anſwering its quality. I hold it ſuperfluous further to proſecute the doſis, meaſure, or weight which ſhould be taken of Woods, Barks, Pulſe, Animals, or things thereunto pertaining, ſince theſe may be diſcerned and judged of by their conſiſtency and quality, as alſo by what hath been already ſaid.

Chap. XI.

Of the repoſition of Medicaments.

THat we might dilucidly explicate the accurate compoſition of Medicaments, we have largely diſcuſſed the manner of their confection, their baſis, form, end, and quantity of every Ingredient, as alſo the reaſon of their equality or inequality. Now it reſts, that the Medicaments thus compoſed be repoſed in ſuch places as may conduce to the preſervation of their virtues integral.

Now a Medicament, whether ſimple or compound, (for both muſt be kept) muſt not be repoſed in any but in a fit and convenient place, that it be not altered and corrupted, but kept in its perfect vigour till opportunity cauſes its delivery to ſuch as it fits.

A Simple muſt firſt be ſelected, and purged from filth, and its excrementitious and uſeleſs parts, and then dryed, that it may be kept; for humid things will not keep without moulding and putrefaction.

Herbs muſt be dryed in a ſhade, or a place where the Sun ſcorches not, yet not marcid, but dry, and voyd of fumes and duſt, and then bound in little bundles, muſt be repoſed in canvaſs or paper bags, leſt they take detriment by the aforeſaid cumbrances. Flowers muſt alſo be thus dryed, repoſed, and ſo conſerved. Now Conſervation and Repoſition are related. *Herbarum repoſitio.*

Dry and groſs herbs take no harm from the rigour of cold, but liquid and humid are eaſily condenſed; which appropinquating to heat, are thereby brought to their priſtine ſtate. Yet diſtilled waters by immoderate congelation loſe much of their bonity, and are often effuſed by the abruption of the glaſſes wherein they are repoſed through the vehemency of cold, unleſs the Confectioners care prevent it.

In *January* and *February*, 1608. while I was diſtilling waters, the rigour of the winter was ſo vehement for ſix whole weeks together, that *Sævitia Hyemis, anno* 1608.

that it broke all my earthen, glaſs, tin, and copper veſſels, (though very ſtrong) wherein I had put the waters: And when bread was drawn hot from the oven, it preſently acquired a ſtony obdurateneſs; neither were the wine-cellars free from froſt. And when the vehemency of the cold aſſwaged, all the houſes in *Lutetia* were white both within and without with horrid ice. In which time many were vexed with the diſeaſe of the Lungs, whereof very many dyed.

Fructum. Fruits are repoſed ſometimes in Store-houſes, as Apples; ſometimes in Barrels, as Plums; often in glaſs or wooden Boxes cloſed with papers, leſt fumes or duſt ſhould alter them, as Jujubs, and alſo leſt Flyes erode and ſpoyl them.

Seminum. Seeds after ſiccation are repoſed in glaſs or wood veſſels, and kept in a dry place.

Radicum. Roots after purgation and arefaction are reſerved in wooden Boxes or Cheſts, wrapt ſometimes in bombaſt; if pretious, as Chinean Rhabarb, leſt the noxious quality of the air, or edacity of heat, ſpoyl their qualities, and corrupt them.

Succorum. Liquid juices are repoſed in bottles, or other veſſels with ſtrait orifices, whereupon Oil muſt be diffuſed, leſt they be altered by the air.

Juices are alſo repoſed in wooden Boxes, or glaſs or earthen Veſſels, as alſo Water-drops, Gums, whole or parts of Animals and Minerals.

Liquorum & Oleorum. Liquors, Oils, Liquidambar, and Balſam, are repoſed in glaſs Bottles ſtopped with cork, or wax, and ſome bladder, that they may not be diſſipated by the air.

Turpentine may not onely be well reſerved in an iron or glaſs Veſſel, but in a figuline alſo.

Some are beſt preſerved in the higheſt part of the houſe, ſome in the middle, and ſome no where ſave in wine-cellars, or ſuch madid place, as Caſſia.

Compound Medicaments, according to their different conſiſtencies and virtues, require for their Cepoſitories different Veſſels, as Hydromel, a Barrel; Syrups, Potters veſſels, and for carriage ſake Boxes of white Iron or Tin; as the Syrup of Mompelian Maidenshair, which repoſed in ſuch a veſſel, may be commodiouſly conveyed to exotick regions; ſolid Electuaries, wooden Boxes; liquid ones, tin or earthen Veſſels well leaded; Powders, glaſs; Unguents, tin pots. Thus every one requires a Repoſitory convenient to its nature.

CHAP.

Chap. XII.

Of the conservation and duration of Medicaments.

As we do not use to confect Compounds, so neither do we gather Simples for one dosis, but select and prepare a greater quantity of each for future uses: which that they may be safe from dust, fumes, putrefaction, or injuries by the air, or insects, as by Flyes, Mice, and the like, we repose in fit Vessels, or include in Bags, or involve in Papers, and keep all in our Pharmacopoly, except such as require a more humid, or more dry place, as Cassia, a Wine-cellar; Sugar, Conditures, Junkets, and most Sweet-meats, an Oven, or Closet near the fire.

Many for their conservation must be condited with Vinegar, Salt, or both, as Cucumbers, Capers, Olives; or with Sugar or Honey, as all kinde of Medicaments; whereof Electuaries or Syrups are composed.

Decoctions will keep in Summer two or three dayes, in Winter a whole week; distilled Waters and Conserves, a whole year.

Syrups perfectly cocted, Electuaries, Trochisks, Pills, Oils, Unguents, and Salves, will often keep two years; as also Roots, Woods, Barks, dry Juices, Tears and Gums, three years, and sometimes four; Elateries, thirty years; Nails, Bones, Horns, an age.

Some can scarce be long preserved without the presence of those things with which they hold familiarity, as the Magnet with Iron, with whose limature it is nourished, and upon whose absence it decayes, and loses its vigour.

Others better preserve their faculties, if by the appropinquation of other things they be vindicated from the injury of the air and worms. Thus Camphyre buried in Linseed is safely kept, Limmons and Oranges in a heap of Wheat will not so soon putrefy, and Mechoacams root involved in Wormwood keeps its faculties entire, and will not be so easily eroded.

Musk and Civet are safely conserved in lead boxes: but that they should resartiate their lost virtue by suspension in the middle of a Bog-house, *Platearius* his nose can only finde. *Platearius* his advice derided.

Saffron, Cloves, Pepper, Mace, and other aromatical Spices, are best conserved in leather bags; Storax, Belzoin, in glass boxes; Sanders, sweet Aloes, Mastick, *Schænantum*, Seeds, and innumerable more, in Coffers, or wooden Boxes; of which, more in our Shop.

Medicaments therefore, as well ſimple as compound, if they be thus ſedulouſly conſerved, will endure long; if not, they ſoon fade and decay.

But the greateſt part of theſe ſhould be changed every year; yet if any change not their colour, odour, and ſapour, they need not. Now thoſe keep longeſt which are of a groſs ſubſtantiality, and whoſe qualities tenaciouſly and firmly adhere to their ſubſtances; as on the contrary, thoſe do not endure long whoſe ſubſtance is rare, as Flowers, and thoſe whoſe virtues are ſuperficial and diſſipable. Yet thoſe are kept better and longer which are included in cloſe Boxes, or Veſſels well operculated, for ſo their virtue is retained more ſecurely. Many think, that Antidotes againſt the poyſon of Beaſts are ſafeſt kept in leaden Veſſels, which in *Galen*'s time were repoſed in pretious, and now in earthen Veſſels.

Chap. XIII.

Of ſuch as by a certain Antinomaſia are preferred before others, from which their denomination is deſumed.

THat God might free Man from thoſe erumnies and egritudes wherewith he is daily peſtered, he hath adorned the Earth like a little Paradiſe, or rich Garden with innumerable Herbs and Plants, that by their pleaſant odour refocillate his ſpirits, by their variegated colours recreate his eyes, which in ſanity allow him nutriment, in ſickneſs refreſhment, and liberty from the all-commanding Tyrant Death.

In which plentifull Soyl, many of the ſame kinde fruticate and occur us, which being indiſtinguiſhable becauſe of their ſimilarity in form and quality, have obtained the ſame denomination. For who can diſtinguiſh of the infinite ſorts of Flowers and Graſs? who can define their number? or deſcribe the differences of *Gerania*, *Heriatum*, *Anemones*, Daffadils, and many more Plants, in whoſe various variety Nature ſeems to delight it ſelf.

Now ſince ſome of theſe are abſolutely deſcribed without any addition of particular or peculiar deſcription, thoſe muſt alwayes be elected and uſed which Experience hath proved better. And this Theorem muſt be perpetually obſerved in ſuch as have ſome analogy among themſelves, that that be alwayes aſſumed which is beſt in every kinde; as when we deſcribe Aloes ſimply, we mean *Aloe ſuccotrine*.

And that I may give you a few examples for many. When we put Vinegar ſimply, we do not mean that they may take Beer, but Wine-vinegar;

vinegar; when Balsam, we mean Egyptian Balsam; when *Benioin*, we mean that same which, from its white spots like Almonds, is called Amygdalite.

And when we put Cassia absolutely, *Cassia Fistula* must be exhibited; when Coral, red, which is accounted best.

So also the rest are understood of the best of that kinde: as

Dittany	of	*The Cretensian Dittany.*
Aristolochy		*Round.*
Sweet root		*Liquorice.*
Endive		*Broad-leav'd Succory.*
Epithyme		*Woodbind growing about Thyme*
Fenicle		*Fennel.*
Earth gall		*The lesser Centaury.*
Gum		*Arabick.*
Pomegranate		*Acid.*
Hepatica		*Liverwort.*
Ivy		*Corymbiferous.*
Jasmine		*White.*
Henbane		*White.*
Lettice		*Garden.*
Lilly		*White and bulbous.*
Horehound		*White.*
Mint		*Garden.*
Githe		*The seed onely.*
Water-lilly		*White.*
Cresses		*The seed onely.*
Oil		*Olive.*
Opium		*Thebane.*
Poppy		*White.*
Polypody		*the Oke.*
The lesser Quercle		*Germander.*
The greater Plantain		*Ribwort.*
Rose		*Red.*
Meadow-green		*Meadow-sweet.*
Stachados		*Arabick.*
Santalum		*The Citron.*
Longwort		*White.*
Turpentine		*Venetian.*
Betony		*Masculine.*
Violet		*Black, or rather ceruleous.*
Xylealoes		*Blackish.*
Iris		*Florentinian.*
Ginger		*Malvaticall, which is the best and most sought of by Persians, Arabians, and Barbarians.*

Chap. XIV.

Of such Roots, Seeds, Flowers, Stones, and Waters, as excell others in dignity.

MAny Simples of several kinds have symbolical qualities; and yet Experience hath demonstrated, that some of them excell others, and are more convenient for the profligation of diseases, as being endued with a better altering, roborating, or purging faculty, and exhibiting more successfull effects; of which are some Plants, or parts thereof, and some Minerals, which being absolutely described, put the Apothecary upon doubts, who is ignorant of the genuine dilucidation: whose tenuity, that we may auxiliate, we will give him the names of the five opening roots; and they are the roots of Smallage, Sperage, Parsley, Fennel, and Butchers-broom. Besides which, other five are much celebrated, to wit, the roots of Grass, the greater Madder, Oenone, Capers, and *Eryngium*.

Radices aperientes majores.

Radices aperitivæ majores.

Semina frigida 4. majora.

The four greater or colder seeds are the seeds of Limons, Gourds, Melons, and Cucumbers; the four lesser, of Lettices, Purslain, Endive and Succory.

Semina valida majora, & totidem minora.

The four greater or hotter seeds, are of Anise, Fennel, Cummin, and Carraway; the four less hot, of *Ameos*, our Ladies Rose, Smallage, Carret.

Cordiales tres.

Cordial flowers are onely three, to wit, of Violets, Bugloss, and Borrage; which if they be such, are then most effectual, when recent and retentive of their colour and odour; for when they are dry, insipid, and inodorous, they have either quite lost, or much weakned their qualities.

And indeed the qualities of all flowers perish with their odour, sapour, and colour.

But I am of opinion, that Roses, which of all flowers retain their suavity longest, as also all such as by their gratious odour exhilarate the spirits, are most cordial; for all suaveolent flowers, whether herbal, as the Lilly of the Valley; or arbustal or arboral, as the flowers of Orange trees are cordial, and may with success be used in medicinary business.

The flowers of Chamemile, Melilote, and Anise, are accounted cordial: but I prefer as more excellent, the flowers of Oranges, Jasmine, Deluce, Sage, Rosemary, Betony, Clove-gilliflowers, and many others, which with their fragrancy delight the nose, and recreate the spirits.

Herbæ capillares quinque.

The hairs or capillary herbs are five, Maidens-hair, commonly called

called Mompiensian hair, common *Adiantium*, *Polytricum*, Citrarch, or Wall-fern, Rue on the wall, without all reason called *Salvia vitæ*, to which we may adde *Epithymum* and Woodbind.

The common mollifying herbs are four, Mallows, Marsh-mallows, black Violet, Garden Bear-foot, or brank Ursine; whereunto four more are adjoyned, Mercury, Pelitory of the wall, Beet, and Arathe, all which are used in making the decoction of Clysters, and laxative Cataplasms. *Emmollientes herbæ octo.*

There are many pretious Fragments, but five artificially in use among Physicians, as of Saphire, Granate, Emerald, Hyacinth, Sardis. *Fragmenta pretiosa quinque.*

The Vulgar know onely four kinds of Cordial Waters, and cannot be perswaded to a fifth, to wit, of Endive, Succory, Bugloss, and Borrage: but I finde eight besides these that are more cordial, to wit, the Water of Carduus, Scabiose, Marigold, Devils-bit, Woodsorrel, Goats-beard, Sorrel, and Water-lillyes.

Some conduce to the roboration of the brain, and are therefore called Cephalical Waters, which are four, to wit, the Water of Betony, Balm, Roses, and Orange tree flowers. *Quatuor aquæ cephalicæ.*

There are also in Shops four hot Unguents, as *Ung. Aregon*, *Martiatum*, *Althæa*, and *Agrippæ*; and as many frigid ones, to wit, *Ung. Album*, *Rosatum*, *Populeum*, *Citrinum*. *Quatuor unguenta calida, & quatuor frigida.*

Chap. XV.

Of succedaneous Medicaments.

PHysicians should not use Succedaneous Medicaments; unless they be thereunto compelled, either having not knowledge, or having not trial of the requisite Medicament: yet an Apothecary by the Medicks advice may substitute a convenient Medicament instead of another that is so rare as it cannot be had, or so dear as it cannot be purchased: yet so, that the succedaneous be in species, kinde, and virtue very similar and answerable to the deficient; and if it may be, a simple Medicament should be put for a simple, and a compound for a compound: as

A Plant for a Plant,	*Mineral for Mineral,*
A Root for a Root,	*Salt for Salt,*
A Bark for a Bark,	*Earth for Earth,*
Seed for Seed,	*Stone for Stone,*
Liquor for Liquor,	*Gem for Gem,*
Gum for Gum,	*Metal for Metal,*
Rosine for Rosine,	*Animal for Animal,*
Oil for Oil,	*Part for Part.*

The same Law must be observed in compounds but not so strictly, for powder must be put for powder, eclegme for eclegme, electuary for electuary, syrup for syrup: Yet there is often such affinity in quality betwixt Medicaments of different consistencies, that a substitution may be easily admitted. For if any hath an aversation to a bechicall eclegme, he may without danger assume syrup of jujubs, and he that refuses pills, why may he not assume some other cathartick of equall vertue in a potion? Thus Physicians do oft indulge their Patients, by prescribing liquids to such as nauseate solids, and on the contrary.

Yet a simple Medicament is not always substituted for a simple one, for since one can scarce find two simples alike in all things: for the want of one, to which no single one responds, we substitute two or more, whose concourse exhibite the similar vertues, whether in elementary qualities, as heat, cold, humiditie, and siccitie, or in secundary qualities, which follow the modification of the matter: For it is enough, if the substituted Medicament effect that, which the genuine and deficient promised. For one that wants a rare and precious Medicament calefying or refrigerating in the seocnd degree, and hath other two, the one hot or cold in the third degree, the other in the first; may by putting these two together, acquire one accommodate to his purpose, to wit calefying or refrigerating in the second recesse, which rule is of use in mixing attenuating, incrassating and other simples.

But becaus the soile and the heavens change the qualities of simples, as we have observed in the Persian tree; we must with diligence observe which are fittest for substitution, for there is much difference betwixt our flower deluce, and that of Florence: for their is Cephalicall, and Bechicall, our Phlegmagogous and strongly purgative. And as Canary wine is more noble than Spanish, and Spanish than French wine: so the grapes from which they are expressed, are of distinct qualities, sapours and degrees of heat: and therefore simples of the same kind and species have not alwayes got the same temperature and degree of qualities, for what growes in a hotter soil is hotter: and in a colder colder.

Quomodo gradu tertio aut quarto calidum substituitur pro minus calido.

When therefore a Medicament, is prescribed, which becaus of its soil is hotter, and cannot be got, another of the same kind may be substituted, through the colder, if in greater quantity.

For that which is hot in the fourth degree may be taken in such a quantity, as it may only calefie in the third degree; as for example, if you take but about four grains of Euphorbium, it will calefy onely in the third degree, which in greater quantitie would calefy in the fourth; and by how much you take lesse, by so much it calefies lesse; but every Medicament hath a determinate dosis, else so small a portion might be given, that though it were fire, yet would it neither burn nor calefie; and Cloves, which are hot in the third degree, if lesse than three grains of them be administred, they calefy not

to the third degree, and so of all qualities in their degrees.

Cujusq; gradus tres partes.

Now there are in every degree three parts or mansions, beginning, middle and end, which are so constituted, that the beginning of one degree coincidates with the end of another, as the beginning of the fourth with the end of the fift. So the end of Winter differs little from the beginning of the spring.

Dosis callidorum in quarto gradu.

The usuall dosis of such as calefy in the fourth degree is of four grains, whereof there being three mansions; the chief dosis which attains the end of that same grade, is of twelve grains: that which attains the middle, sixteen, and the beginning, twenty grains, which is the dosis of such as calefy in the end of the third degree.

Wherefore when any want a Medicament, that califies or frigifies in the end of the first degree, he may substitute one that is calid or frigid in the beginning of the second degree: he that wants a medicament hot in the end of the second degree, may exhibit one thats hot in the beginning of the third.

Now since the doses of compounds are deduced from simples, according to the deficiency of any simple, another may be substituted which is Analogicall to the deficient, in the mixtion whereof, if the aforesaid Lawes be observed, the result in the compound will be no way deficient by substitution.

Chap. XVI.

What Medicaments, and when they are rightly substituted.

LEast our Pharmaceuticall treatise should be defective, or a patient destitute of præsidy, when his auxiliatory Physician prescribes him something, that neither the Pharmacopolitans shops, nor gardens affoard, we will here describe the supplements of such defects, which the Greeks call ἀντιβαλόμενα, the Latins *Succedanea & Substituta*, or more vulgarly *quid pro quo*.

What substitutes ought not to be allowed of.

But as we before observed, such substitutes should be similar, in vertue to those whose place they supply, and whose vicegerents they are; now if such cannot be found, then those must be elected which differ in little, and respond in many things. For its absurd to call those succedaneous Vicegerents, which are indued with opposite not succedaneous and symbolicall qualities, and they write without reason, who substitute *Euphorbium* for Agarick, Pellitory for Sorrell, and Melliote for a Quince, for these have no affinity with each other.

But

But when some weaker are substituted in place of better, their qualities must be augmented by quantity, for quantity reduplicated recompenses the weakness of the quality, as on the contrary, if the substitute be too valid, lesse quantity must be exhibited, that thereby its rigour may be diminished.

Now, this should not be done without the advice of some skilfull Doctor, which many do not onely despise, but themselves prescribe Medicaments to the great damage of their patients, but such are for the most part unconstant, importunate, and talkative knaves, who trimly apparelled intrude themselves to the sicks presence, and deceive them with fair speeches. I speake of that impious rabble, who deceive the incautious vulgar; but the skilfull and prudent, who take nothing rashly, but at a Phisicians advice and preception, may substitute, legitimate Vicegerents in the place of such as want or are decayed.

Those that without choice and care repose for genuine and good, what ever Medicament comes first to their hands, will make dangerous Medicaments, and substitutions.

One was wont pleasantly to inculcate that of the Ninivite to such a busy fellow, *Sæpe loco illius quid pono.*

Least therefore any errour be committed in reposition of suppositories, we shall here place the substitute in opposition to the deficient. You may substitute.

For	
Wormwood,	*Origanum or southernwood.*
Southernwood,	*Origanum.*
The juice of Acacia,	*The juice of Cistus, or Hypocistis.*
Bears foot,	*Mallowes.*
Acorus,	*The root of folefoot, or Radix Asari.*
The true Venus haire,	*The Common.*
Ameos.	*Anise seed.*
Amomus,	*Acorus.*
Gum Amoniack,	*Propolis.*
Bitter Almonds,	*Persian nuts.*
Woolfs grease,	*Weasels grease.*
Harts-grease,	*Goats grease.*
Alum,	*Fossile salt.*
Althea,	*Mallowes.*
Arsenick,	*Sublimatum.*
Rain-water,	*Fountain water.*
Sea-water,	*Salted water.*
Anise,	*Carret.*
Round Aristolochy,	*Long.*
The flower of Pomgranate,	*The rind thereof.*
Balsam,	*Limpid Turpentine.*
Borrage,	*Bugloss.*
Bettony,	*Parsley.*

Spinach,

For

Spinach,	*Arache.*
Butter,	*Oyle.*
Calamus Aromat.	*Squinant.*
Cardamomum.	*Cyperus.*
Calamintha,	*Wild mint.*
Germander,	*Ground pine.*
Cinamon,	*Common Cassia.*
Cinabrium,	*Red Lead.*
Juice of Citron,	*Limmons juice.*
Daucus Creticus,	*English carret seed.*
Dates,	*Massilian figgs.*
Dittany.	*Sage.*
A Bears tooth,	*A hogs tooth.*
Diphryx,	*Burned Brasse.*
Liquorice,	*Raisons.*
Wallwort.	*Elder.*
White Hellebore,	*Elaterium.*
Blacke Hellebore,	*Lapis Lazuli.*
Epithyme,	*Epithymbrum.*
Eruca,	*Erisimum.*
Agrimony,	*Liverwort.*
Sea holly,	*Oenone.*
Fenygreek.	*Orobus.*
Fennell,	*Smallage.*
Partridge gall,	*Cothurnix gall.*
Verdigrease,	*Rust.*
Fumitory,	*Sowthistle.*
The hulls of Senny,	*Twice as much of its leaves.*
Myrtle leaves,	*Its berryes.*
Galangale,	*Acorus.*
Galbanum,	*Sagapenum.*
Gentian,	*Tormentill.*
Liverwort,	*Agrimony.*
Helecampare,	*Flower deluce.*
Hyssope,	*Savoury.*
The juice of Cistus,	*Acacia.*
Jasmins flowers,	*Rormary Flowers.*
Jujubs,	*Raisons.*
Sweet rush,	*Cardomomum.*
Henbane,	*Poppy.*
Lettice,	*Garden Succory.*
Sorrell,	*Black Violet.*
Laureola,	*Misletoe.*
Lacca,	*Storax.*
Sciatick Cresses,	*Cretian Cresses.*
Loadstone,	*The Phrygian stone.*
Mallowes,	*Arash.*

For

Mandrake,	*Poppy,*
Honey,	*Sugar,*
Mumy,	*Piſſaphaltum,*
Spicnard,	*Schœnanthum,*
Nep,	*Wild mint,*
Nutmeg,	*Cloves,*
Water-Lilly,	*Lettice,*
Sheepſgreaſe,	*Calfes marrow,*
Oyle,	*Butter,*
The juice of unripe grapes,	*Juice of Limons,*
Opium,	*Lettice juice,*
Opobalſamum,	*Oyle of Cloves,*
The juice of panax,	*Gum Amoniake,*
Ryce,	*Wheat meale,*
White thorn,	*Gooſeberry tree,*
Poppy juice,	*Mandrake juice,*
Petty ſpurge,	*Sea Lettice,*
Parſley,	*Smallage,*
Plaintain,	*Mouſe-eare,*
Pompholyx,	*Burned braſs ear.*
Walwort,	*Ground pine,*
Quinquenerve,	*Plantain,*
Radiſh-ſeed,	*Its juice,*
Roſemary,	*Majoram,*
Gooſeberryes,	*Berberryes,*
Rue,	*Tanſey,*
Sagapene,	*Pyne gum,*
Sage,	*Calaminthe,*
Elder,	*Wallwort,*
Cantonicum,	*Southernwood,*
New wine,	*Sweet wine,*
Cuttlebone,	*A pumick ſtone,*
Sutureia,	*Thyme,*
Saxifrage,	*Burnet,*
Houſeleek,	*Nightſhade,*
White ſpike,	*Lavander,*
Tanſey,	*Feverfew,*
Sowthiſtle,	*Succory,*
Cuckow bread,	*Sower dock,*
Thyme,	*Satureia,*
Thimelæa,	*Chamelæa,*
Tamariske,	*Citrarch,*
Tuſſilage,	*Lungwort,*
Garden Valerian,	*Wild,*
Maſculine betony,	*The famale,*
White Hellebore.	*Turpethum.*

Black

For
- *Black Violet*, *White.*
- *Red Wine*, *White.*
- *Sweet Cassia*, *Cynamon.*
- *Xylobalsum*, *Radix Ligustici.*
- *Ginger*, *Pepper.*
- *Civet*, *Musck:*

But because it seldom falls out that one can erre twice in a Medicine, let junior Apothecaryes diligently beware, least they substitute any thing without the Physicians advice; if they do otherwise, they may exhibite and sell spurious Medicaments for legitimate; as I have 1000. times observed in some ignorant fellowes who without discretion substitute any simple which of its self is deficient.

Chap. XVII.

Of Adulterate Medicaments.

MEns insatiable avarice hath rapt some to that heighth of iniquity, that they exhibite Adulterate Medicaments for true and genuine; the dignotion whereof is of great moment in making Medicaments, and should be a Physicians and an Apothecaryes imployment accurately to learn, that to be their patients may exhibited none but good, which may conduce to their adjument, and sanity; not adulterate, whose end is perill and languour.

These I thought meet to detect, least some unskilfull Apothecary be deceived by such circumforaneous prestigiatours, who often sell the flowers of Carthamus for Crocus, and Ivory for Monocerots horn; and similate many more, especially rare and precious Medicaments, whose use is frequent, and vertues eximious.

Least therefore the Apothecary, in whose hand the life or death of a patient is, be imprudently circumduced by these wicked slaves, for lucres sake, to circumvent the patient, Ile shew him how to detect and avoid these impious frauds and deceits.

Moschi adulterium

A lump of Kids blood kneaded in hot bread pulverised, and Ladanum dissolved and kept in a box, after they are mixed, wherein true musk had been reposed, doth much similate musk: yet it may be detected by its consistency, colour and odour, which soon failes in the fictitious.

Ambra.

The powder of Xyloaloes, Benjoin, Storax, and Ladanum mixed together similate together.

But the peculiar native odour of genuine Amber may be easily discerned from these: Moreover Amber by long attrition in ones hands becomes more friable, these more soft.

Cinamomi. The barke of Tamariske, macerated in Cinamon water, and dryed very much, similates Cinamon: but the taste will difference them.

Caryophyllorum. Cloves that are inodorous by age will become fragrant by madefaction in wine, wherein good Cloves have been macerated, but this acquired odour is fugacious.

Belzoin. Rosin, Frankincense, and a little Storax, mixed together, do fraudulently similate Belzoin: but as they differ in odour; so also in colour, the spurious being full of white spotts.

Camphora. Some instead of Camphyre sell the gum of Juniper: but none can be thus imposed upon, but such as are very ignorant, for any one thats conversant with *Æsculapius* may at the first sight detect the fraud.

Opobalsamo liquidambar assine. *Opobalsamum* with a little oyle doth very much represent *liquidambar*, wherewith it has affinity in its faculties, and this hath been so peritely adulterated, that it hath deceived the most experienced in *Paris*.

Terra Lemnia orientalis. The Orientall Earth, called *Terra Lemnia*, is represented by Bole, or common Argill dryed, pulverated, kneaded with Plantain water, made into pastills, and signed with the great Turks sigill, with which Character much comes from *Bellonium*: but the falsity will be deprehended, if both be washed with water, for the water of *Terra Lemnia* will be fatter, the other more limpid and tenuious.

Bitumen. They vitiate *Bitumen* also by the mixture of pitch, but the fire will discover it, for that which hath pitch in it, will emit a pleasant odour.

Opii. *Opium* is similated by *Meconium*, or the juice of the leaves, and stalk of black Poppy, but the errour may be discerned by the fatnesse, which is much in the genuine, none in the adulterate.

Manna thuris. *Manna Thuris* may easily be adulterated, since the powder of Rosin doth much resemble it, but fire detects the fraud.

Tacamahaca. *Tacamahaca*, is adulterated with Gum Elemi, which is very like the true one, for they respond in colour, consistency, and odour, only the one is a little more pleasant to the nose.

Sagapene, Galbanum, Opoponax, and Serapinum, being common, are seldom adulterated. But Bdellium being more rare is adulterated by course Mirrh, and so imposed upon idiots.

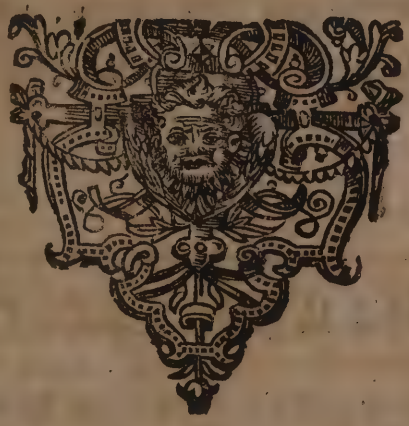
Sassafras was unknown of old in Europe; which at its first allation was sold dear, and was thereupon much sophisticated. I knew a man that sold the powder of Box-wood and Fennell-seed for the powder of sassafras: but when plenty of the genuine was conveyed, the adulteration ceased.

Some knaves sell an Oxes heart-bone, for a Harts heart-bone, but they that know both approve of the Harts, and reject the other, as endued with no eximious vertue.

Some substitute great plums for Tamarinds; but they do ill in calling them Tamarinds, since they differ so apertly in shell, pulpe, and sapour.

I could detect the adulteration and manner thereof of a thousand other Medicaments, out of *Dioscorides* and other; as well ancient as modern Writers, but I hold it better to conceale them, since man is so prone to evill, and so perite to deceive: this Ile say by the way, that waters, liquors, juices and compound Medicaments may be easily adulterated, simples, especially integrall ones, not so easily.

The end of the fourth Book.



OF

OF PHARMACEUTICAL INSTITUTIONS.

The fifth Book.

Of the formes of Medicaments, whose use is celebrous in precaution and profligation of diseases.

THE FIRST SECTION,

Of such as are assumed at the mouth.

THE PREFACE.

AS many Aliments are condited with mixture of severall things, and prepared with laborious artifice, that they may be long conserved without putretude and marcour, as Pastyes, Puddings, many farciments and biscake, on which the Mariners feed sometimes by the space of two years, while they sayle to the Indies, or as that same Powder or meale which the Turkish Souldiers carry in their Zones made like knapsacks, which they knead with water, and coct to the consistence of a pultis, and so feed upon it a whole moneth. Others being conservative not above a day or two, and some not above an houre without

without alteration. So many Medicaments will endure in integrall strength for the space of a year or two, being conserved in Pharmacopolyes, as in a rich store-house for future uses: Others not enduring without dammage the space of two dayes in Summer, as those which are prepared for present use, whereof we have determined in order to discourse in this our last Book, beginning with them, that are intrinsecally assumed, either by the mouth or other convenient place, as Nose, Fundament, and the like; which are variously compounded, not only according to the variety of the nature of the disease, but also of the part affected, which must have some one, some another consistency, that they may be more commodiously applyed, more fitly adhere, or with more ease be deferred to the part affected, as potibles must be liquid, edibles solid, and applicatives indifferent, all which, that we may severally prosecute, we will begin with potulents, and then describe other more solid Medicaments in this first Section: we will in the second subjoyn a speciall treatise of such as are injected into the belly, or uterus: in the third, we will describe those Medicaments which are applyed to the extrinsecall parts of the body.

Chap. I.

Of some ordinary decoctions common by their long use.

Sometimes the substance alone, sometimes the juice, sometimes the decoction of the Medicament is administred, which decoction, that it may be more easily and successefully assumed, must be of simple, distilled, or other convenient water, or humour, as the intention of the Physician and exigency of the matter requires. Now the liquor, wherein the decoction is made that must be assumed at the mouth (of which alone we now speak) should be endued with no insuave, or violent quality. For potulent decoctions made in the juice of Wormewood, lesser Centory, immature grapes, or Lee, or vinegar, are neither safe, nor gratefull: but unguents, Pills Fotus, and whatever is extrinsecally applicable, that requires decoctions to their preparations, may be decocted in any convenient humour, whether bitter, acerb, salty, or oyly, if the condition of the disease or part affected postulate it.

Quarum decoctionum frequens usus.

But now we treat of that more speciall decoction, which after percolation, is assumed by the mouth; either alone or mixed, with other Medicaments dissolved; of which sort, is the common decoction of any Medicament, and the pectorall decoction, which no Medick can well be without.

Now every decoction is either small, or much, or indifferent, according to the substance and strength of the Medicament, which is to

be

Quæ parum aut multum decoquenda.

be cocted; for some must be decocted gently, as having a rare substance, and weak and dissipable faculties; others will sustain a more valid decoction, as consisting of a firm, crass, and dense substance, and endued with faculties not so dissoluble; others require a moderate decoction, whose substance and faculties are of a mean consistency: thus Fruits would not be so little, nor Flowers so much cocted as Roots.

Aquæ quantitas in decoctis parandis.

When a Decoction is prescribed absolutely, without the special designation of any liquor, it ought to be made either in pure and simple water, as fountain or river water, or else in rain water; the quantity whereof must respond to the quantity of the Simples to be cocted, as near as may be, without exuberance or defect; for when Simples through coction depose their qualities into the water, if it be copious, and they few, the decoction after percolation will retain but weak faculties: As on the contrary, if many Simples be cocted in little water, the decoction will be exhaled and dissipated, and the Simples burned rather than brought to elixation; which is acquired by moderate heat in an humour proportionate to the quantity and nature of the thing cocted.

Those that sustain the longest coction, require more abundance of water, the shorter the less, many Simples require much: so that those that are hard, and require long coction, should be demerged in water, and covered two or three fingers therein. Thus a certain measure of water cannot be defined, but is often left to the Apothecaries judgement.

Aquæ quantitas pro dosi parandæ.

When a Decoction is to be made onely for one dosis, it's enough to elixate a few Simples in half a pound of water on a slow fire, till it be boyled to half; if for two dosis, then in a whole pound of water; if for four, in two pounds. And thus may the quantity of water be augmented, as the Simples are augmented.

There are furthermore three Decoctions very usual in making Medicines. The first is called the common Decoction, which is commonly used to the dissolution of Purgatives, sometimes to the coction of Senny leaves, and sometimes to the infusion of Simples.

The second is commonly called the pectoral Decoction, because it is used to all such as bring adjument to the pectoral parts. The third is the glysteral Decoction; of which in its place.

All men do not describe their Confections alike, but every one adds or detracts something according to his judgement. This is the most vulgar and usual description of the common Decoction.

Decoctio communis medicinæ.

℞. *of clean Barley, p. j. of sweet Plums, nu. vj. of Raisons stoned, Liquorice scraped, an.* ℥*ß. of Anise and Fennel seeds, an.* ʒ. *ij. in winter; but in summer of the four greater cold seeds, an.* ʒ. *ij. of the three cordial flowers, an. p. j. let the Decoction be made in two pound of water till half be consumed.* This Decoction percolated will be enough for four ordinary doses, or three extraordinary.

The pectoral Decoction, whereof is frequent use in pectoral affections,

fections, is variously also prescribed: but that which *Rondeletius* gave, is thus amended by *Bauderonius*.

℞. *of whole Barley, p. j. of Figs and Jujubs, an. nu. vj. of Dactyls, nu. vj. of Raisons stoned, and Liquorice, an. ℥ ij. of Hyssop pretty dry, m. ß. boyl them in* ℔ *ij. of rain or fountain water, to the half.* *Decoctio pectoralis.*

Some substitute Sebestens for Jujubs, others augment the quantity of Hyssop, others adde Capillaries, and Cordial Flowers: bu since their virtue is pectoral enough, which are contained in the form prescribed, there is no necessity of loading it with more; especially considering, that by how much more Simples go to the making of them up, by so much is their making and assumption more difficult; and so on the contrary.

Chap. II.

Of a Dosis.

THat certain and convenient quantity of any Medicament, which is prescribed, or rather given to a sick man at once, or necessity compelling at twice, is a Dosis: for Dosis is Dation; whereof there are as many varieties, as there are differences in the nature or properties of Medicaments, or Bodyes to which the Medicaments are offered. For there is one Dosis of Liquids, another of Solids, and another of those that have a middle consistency. Catharticks also are given in various Doses, which having once entred into the body, if they be too valid, or exhibited in too great measure, do not onely exagitate the superfluous humours, but also the good and laudable, and by griping the bowels, hurt the faculties there inhering. One Dosis also is given to children, another to young men, another to men of strength, another to old men, according to their several natures, customes, and strength. The Dosis of Liquids is measured and given in ounces; of Solids, sometimes in grains, often in drams, and sometimes in ounces. *Dosis medicamentorum varia.*

Altering Medicaments are seldome given by one ounce alone, unless it be to children, or else that they be endued with eximious and valid qualities, as *Aqua vitæ*, Cinamon, and those we call Imperial. *Alterantium medicamentorum dosis.*

Their more usual Dosis consists of three or four ounces; if they be exhibited in greater measure, they cause loathings, they subvert the ventricle, and are insuccessfully excluded by vomit.

Roboratives, especially liquid ones, are given from one ounce to three or four; solid ones are sometimes given by grains, as the Powder of *Monoceros*; sometimes by scruples and drams, as Cordial Confections, and many Antidotes. *Roborantium dosis.*

Purgatives are measured and given after the same manner, some by *Purgantium.*

three, six, or eight grains, as *Diacrydion*, and *Stibium* also, which though it be immite and effrenous, yet tamed and castigated by Art, and exhibited by a prudent Physician, often produces successfull effects: And I see no reason why it may not be used in stead of better, to the cure of a contumacious disease.

Neotericorum in inveniendis remediis sedulitas.

For if it be lawfull for mans subsidy to seek remedies from Vipers flesh, and their very skin and excrements, how can it be illegitimate to expect solace from those Medicaments, which Neotericks sedulity have invented, their industrious dexterity have secured, and many experiences have proved; though the Antients either were ignorant of them, neglected them, or administred them unduely, as nowadayes many malevolent Circulators, who kill innumerable with their *Stibium* that is ill prepared, and exhibited in an undue dosis, neither when, nor to whom it is meet.

Quam varia catharticorum dosis.

And that I may return to my purpose; some Catharticks are given onely in a small dosis, as *Colocynthis*, and Hellebor, by a few grains or scruples; others by drams, as *Rheum*; others by ounces, as Manna, Cassia, Tamarinds.

A Dosis then denotes a quantity of a Medicament fit to be exhibited at once; as when any Medicament of three or four ounces at the most is made into the form of a potion, Decoction, or distilled; wherein we dilute Roboratives, as Powders, Antidotes, and Cordial Confections; or infuse Catharticks, as Agarick; or dissolve them, as *Catholicon* or *Diacarthamum*; whereof every one hath its peculiar dosis, whereby it should be given in greater or lesser quantity, as it is of weak or valid faculties. But to describe every of these according to the nature and quality of every Medicament, and body, were to comprehend the whole method of Medicine.

Chap. III.

Of a purgative Potion.

EVery kinde of Medicaments may be given in any form, but not so fit perhaps to cure a Disease, or help any part. The most usual form of such as free the passages of obstructions, deduce the vessels, and provoke monthly flowers and urine, is liquid. But those especially that are purgative, require a more potable form; for hereby they more promptly diffuse themselves, more easily ingrede the small veins, and more efficaciously deduce the humour inhering in those parts. For one dram of a solid Medicament diluted with some humour, will move the belly more than twice as much of it whole. Wherefore when we say a purgative Medicament absolutely, we mean a laxative Potion, whose dosis should seldome exceed three ounces, lest by moving the ventricle, it be presently excluded by vomit.

Purgantia cur in forma potabili convenientiora.

Catharticum liquidum citius ducit.

Now

Now purgative Potions are various, according to the various nature of the Medicaments, and humours to be educed: For every humour except blood, which is vacuated onely by the section of some vein or artery, hath its proper eductive Cathartick; that which purges Choler, is called a Cholagogous; that which purges Melancholy, Melanagogous; and Phlegm, a Phlegmagogous Medicament.

And of each of these, whether simple or compound, are made purgative Potions, when they are macerated, infused, dissolved, or cocted in some fit liquor; as to educe Choler, thus:

℞. *of the roots of Succory, Sorrel, Liquorice, an.* ℥. *ij. of Endive, Fumitory, Agrimony, an. m.* ʃ*ß. of the three cordial Flowers, an. p. j. let a Decoction be made in a small quantity of water, wherein infuse of Rhabarb,* ℥. *ij.* ʃ*ß. of Orange colour'd Sanders,* ℈. ʃ*ß. dissolve in the expression Syrup of Violets,* ℥. *vj. and make a potion thereof.* *Cholagogon.*

When a stronger Purge is required, either you may augment the quantity of the things, or take a stronger Medicament; as this:

℞. *of Diaprun. dissolved, or Electuary of the juice of Roses,* ℥. *iij. let it be dissolved in* ℥. *iij. of the fore mentioned Decoction, or of Endive water; put to it of the syrup of Succory compounded with Rhabarb,* ℥. ʃ. *and make a Potion.* *Alia potio validior.*

Phlegm may be deduced by many Medicaments, as well simple as compound, as well as Choler; whereof I shall take these few prescriptions in stead of many examples.

℞. *Polypody of the Oak, Grass roots, Raisons stoned, of each,* ℥. *iij. of the seeds of Carthamus,* ℥. *ij. Germander, Ground-pine, Betony, of each, m.* ʃ*ß. of Anise seed,* ℥. *j. make a Decoction, in which boyl on a slow fire of the leaves of Senny,* ℥. *ij.* ʃ*ß. in the colature infuse of Agarick,* ℥. *j.* ʃ*ß. of Mace,* ℈. ʃ*ß. in the expression dissolve of the syrup of white Roses,* ℥. *j. make a Potion thereof.*

In such a Decoction after colation you may dilute of the Electuary of Diacarthamus, ℥. *iij, or* ʒ. ʃ*ß. of the syrup of damask Roses,* ℥. *j. that it may be a Potion.*

Senny, Rhabarb, and Polypody, vacuate flegm also, and so do *Turbitum, Carthamus* seed, *Colocynthis*, Widow-wail, white Hellebor, the seed and root of Wall-wort, *Benedicta Laxativa*, and *Diaphœnicum*; whereof a perite Artificer may make various purgative Potions. *Veratrum album.*

Melancholy also hath its peculiar Catharticks, as *Epithymum*, Azure stone, Senny, black Hellebor; and amongst the compounds, the Confection *Hamech, Catholicum, Diasenna*, and King *Sabor's* syrup. Of one or more whereof dissolved, infused, or cocted in some convenient liquor, a purgative Medicament may be confected; as thus: *Melancholiam quæ ducunt.*

℞. *Barks and roots of Capers and Tamarisks, roots of Bugloss, Liquorice, Raisons and Currens, of each,* ℥. *iij. of whole Barley,* ℥. ʃ*ß. Caterac. Maiden-hair, Marigolds, Borrage, of each, m.* ʃ*ß. of the three cordial Flowers, of each, p. j. of which make a Decoction, wherein* *Melanagogon optimum.*

infuse Senna, ʒ. ß. *sweet Fennel seeds*, ʒ. j. *in the Colature dissolve Syr. Regis Saboris*, ʒ. j. *make it into a Potion.*

Or, ℞, *Liquorice, Raisons stoned, an.* ʒ *iij. Jujubs, nu. vj. Epithymus, Spleenwort, tops of Hops, Wood sorrel, Fumatory, an. m. ß. Broom flowers, p. ij. make a Decoction, in which dissolve Confectio Hamech*, ʒ. j. ß. *Diasenna*, ʒ. *ij. Syrup of Violets*, ʒ. *vj. or* ʒ. j. *make it into a Potion.*

Catholicum potychrestum est.

Catholicum also is usefull to purge Melancholy; for being universally commodious to purge any noxious humour, it easily accommodates it self to those wherewith it is mixed; as if it be mixed with Rhabarb, it purges Choler; if diluted in the decoction of Senny, or mixed with the confection of Hamech, it purges Melancholy.

Chap. IV.

Of Juleps.

THE acception of Julep and Syrup with the Arabians is almost one and the same, for they confound them together, and speak of them under the same head or Chapter, understanding nothing more by an absolute Julep, than Sugar dissolved in Rose-water, and cocted to the consistency of a Syrup. But we speaking more distinctly, treat of them both, but in several Chapters and Books, to wit, of Syrups, which should be inspissated by a longer coction in our Officine: but of Juleps, which should be but lightly cocted, and presently assumed, in this our Book of Medicinal Receipts.

Julep quid.

Now Julep is a Persian word, signifying a sweet Potion, which the Greeks call ῥοδόμελι; and they make it of any distilled dulcorate water, as of Syrups of the juice or decoction of Simples, elixated with Sugar or Honey to a more crass consistency.

Serapio, that he might eschew the insuavity of all odour and sapour, confected a Julep, or rather *Hydrosacharum*, of Water and Sugar onely, which he calls a simple Syrup. *Avicenna*, to conciliate more suavity, adds thereto a third part of Rose-water. *Mesue* takes not onely water, but confects Juleps of juices, infusions, and decoctions. And the vulgarity of men call all limpid dulcorate Potions Juleps, whether they be made of distilled waters onely, or of the decoction of a few sweet simples, and much water percolated, clarified, and dulcorated; such as the Julep, or rather Syrup of Jujubs; for when it is made of a hundred great Jujubs, and four pounds of water cocted to the half, and one pound of sugar, it acquires a more crass consistency than a Julep; and therefore when it comes to be used, it requires dilution in simple water cocted, or in a Ptisane, whereas a Julep is limpid enough of it self. And that same Syrup, which

Julepus zizyphorum.

from

from its frequent use there, derives its name from *Alexandria*, is improperly called a Julep, since it is as much inspissiated by coction, and as long kept as any Syrup. *Syrupus Alexandrinus.*

Now the Julep of Roses is right made, when it consists of Rose-water, with half as much Sugar cocted almost to the crassitude of a Syrup, or little less, if it be presently to be assumed, as vulgar Juleps, which are made for present use, of Sugar, or some Syrup, with thrice its quantity of water: as, *Julepus rosatus qui fiat.*

℞. *The water of Endive,* ℥. *iij. Syrup of Limons,* ℥. j. *mingle them.*

Thus Juleps should be of a more liquid consistency, that they may be percolated: but those that are longer cocted, or receive onely a double quantity of Water to their Sugar, as the syrup of Roses, according to *Rondeletius*, or an equal weight of both, according to *Sylvius*, are because of their crassitude scarce fluid, and admit not of percolation. *Syrupus Rosaceus* Rondeletii.

Therefore according to the different coction and quantity of Water to the Sugar, it will be a Syrup, if both be equal; or a Julep, if three parts of Water be put to one of Sugar, according to *Loubertus*.

Since Juleps are easy to make, I shall onely describe one or two forms.

℞. *of the waters of Fumatory and Wood-sorrel, an.* ℥. *ij. of Sugar,* ℥. j. *boyl them on a gentle fire till one ounce be consumed; make it into a Julep for one dose.*

An Hypnotical Julep to conciliate sleep, may be thus made:

℞. *The water of Water-lillyes,* ℥. *ij. of Betony,* ʒ. j. *Syrup of Poppyes simple,* ℥. j. *drink it at the hour of sleep, which is at nine of the clock at night.*

Chap. V.

Of distilled Restoratives.

ALL analeptical and restorative Medicaments, which refocillate the habit of the body absumed by long disease or hunger, which are prescribed to resartiate the vigour of the faculties weakned with languor, are not onely taken from medicinal, but alimental matter. For whereas they conduce partly to the nutriment of the body, and partly to the cure of the part affected, it is manifest by reason, that they should be endued with various qualities.

Now they are called distilled Medicaments, because they are distilled drop by drop from an Alembick into a subjected Vessel; and Restoratives, because they are extracted from nutritive flesh, from Conserves, Cordial Powders, and all such things as either by their odour or substance refresh the spirits, or roborate the principal parts. *Distillata cur dicta.*

Many disapprove of the custome of the ancients, who distilled the raw flesh of Capons or Partridges, purged from their bones and fatnesse, together with the powders and conserves: for seeing raw flesh is hardly concocted, and the faculty of the powders easily, and dissipable, with what reason are these mixed, especially seeing, that the water first distilling from the crude flesh, corrupts soon; they seem to do better, that put the flesh halfe cocted and its own juice, into the Alembick with the other materialls.

Catenarum aurearum decoctio non utilis.

Neither do we approve of their action, who coct golden chains together with the flesh, seeing nothing of them is dissolved; nor yet extracted from them, save that filth they have contracted by touching.

Their custome is more laudable, who cast filings of Gold into coction, as the Apothecaryes of Paris use to do, who spare no cost, that they may confect their restoratives and other compounds well.

This solemn and excellent distillation may be thus accomplished.

℞. *Of the broth of one Capon, and 2. Partridge.* ℔. *ij. of the waters of Bugloss, Wood Sorrell and Water-Lillyes, of each as much as will suffice: of the Conserve of violets, succory and roses, of each* ℥. *ij. Pulveris Diamargariti frigidi, Electuarii triasantali & diarrhodonis Abbatis an.* ʒ. *j. Troches of Camphor.* ʒ. *ij. filings of Gold* ʒ. *j.* ß. *put them all into an Alembeck, and after convenient maceration, let them be distilled according to Art.*

The description of another distillation excellent against hot and malignant feavers.

℞. *Of the waters of Wood sorrell, Goates-beard, Carduus, Succory, of each* ℥. *iiij. Cock broth* ℔. *j. Conserve of Water-Lillyes, Roses, of each* ℥. *j. Treacle* ℥. ß. *of the powder of the roots of Angelico and Tormentill, of each* ʒ. *ij. Dictamus* ℥. *j. Carduus and Citron-seeds, of each* ʒ. *ij. Sage and Orange flowers of each p. iij. put all these into a still, and according to Art proceed to the distillation.*

You may adde to a portion of this same distillation, when you would use it some fit liqour, as the juice of Lemmons or Orenges, with a little common sugar, or conserve of Roses, if the sick desire it.

Chap. VI.

Of Decoction or Apozemes.

GErmany indeed (that I may a little decline from the rode) is happy, in that it is not only a nursery of famous men, but a treasure also of precious things. Yet as the frugiferous tree brings forth with fragrant Apples blasted blossomes, and sometimes pestiferous fruits, so hath she produced a very Monster in nature, I

mean

mean that Pseudomedick *Paracelsus*, who professed the Devill the Authour of his Medicine, calling his characters and words, the Devils Art; our syrups and decoctions, mans inventions; *Herophilus* the ancient Philosopher denoted these, as also all Medicaments, with more sanctity, calling them, the Auxiliatory hand of the Gods; which being indued with divine and admirable faculties, are able to cure the diseased, and preserve the sound body. Upon this account *Heraclitus*, famous also amongst Philosophers, was wont to call sacrifices, Medicaments, because they like some præpotent Physick purge the soul, as medicaments do the body. *Cal. Rhod. cap.* 2. *lib.* 12.

The Impostor said truely, when he called decoctions, mans medicaments, for herewith the quality of the peccant humours is tempered, many pains eased, the violence of the untimely guest death abated, the acerbity of the symptomes mitigated, and the parts reduced to their native bonity and vigour; for they are made of all kinds, but especially of alterative and roborative Medicaments; wherein sometimes some benign purgative simples are infused in small quantity, for it were absurd to call any blackish, ingratefull laxative decoction, wherein much Senny, or half an ounce of some electuary, as *Catholicum*, or some lenitive hath been dissolved, an Apozeme: for ἀπόζεμα with the Greeks comes from ἀποζέω, to fervefy, or decoct; and an Apozeme is onely used for the thin decoction of hearbs. *Apozema quid? & unde dicatur.*

Now the whole matter of Apozemes is from plants, of whose water juleps are made; and of whose decoction, Apozems, and Syrups; amongst which there is this difference, that juleps are tenuious, syrups crasser, and Apozemes in the mean, all dulcorated either with sugar or honey, or both, and according to their different consistency, more or lesse cocted. *Apozematum materia. Julepi, syrupi, & apozemata, quomodo differunt.*

The ancients used sweet water wherein they had cocted the leaves of some plants, instead of Apozemes, as many now a dayes do the broath of green hearbs altered with some mixture: For the vertue of hearbs is as well left in chickens broath, by elixation, as in simple water, and these alterative broaths are both cheaper, and more gratefull than Apozemes: yet a sicke man may use both, receiving broath made of fit hearbs by the Physicians advice, from a Cook that knowes nothing further than a pan or spit, and Apozemes prepared with prudence, and industrious Artifice, from the Apothecary; not for nutriment as the broath, but calefaction, frigefaction, humectation, siccation, apertion, or some such mutation; and therefore sometimes roots or other parts of bitter, or insuave hearbs, are taken, purged, and cocted in a sufficient quantity of water, being usefull for that purpose; and an Apozeme made for many or few doses according to the quantity of the decoction, out of the broath percolated, dulcorated with sugar or honey, and if need be, aromatized with Sanders or Cinamon.

The

These Apozemes are not onely made in Summer, while hearbs are fresh, but in Winter also, when either none, or onely arid ones can be had; though then indeed the use of syrups is more frequent, which differ from Apozemes onely in coction, which should be more valid in syrups that are more crasse and durable, than in Apozemes in Winter, and Apozemes to Syrups in Summer, whereby so that syrups are Vicegerents to Apozemes it seemes two names denote one thing: but in Syrups a greater quantity of sugar is requisite, to wit the weight of the whole decoction, in Apozemes various, as sometime, the third, sometimes the fourth part of sugar or honey to the weight of the decoction: for it is sufficient, if you put to every pound of the decoction one quadrant, that is three ounces of sugar, or syrup, or at most a trient, that is four ounces, But when the sapour of the liquour is very ingratefull, the weight of the sugar must be augmented, and when the Apozeme is made, it must be despumed, and purged with the white of eggs.

An opening Apozeme.

Apozemes are variously confected, according to their severall purposes, as to remove obstructions thus.

℞. *The Roots of Asparagras, Butchers Broome, Saccory, Liquorish, Raisons stoned, of each* ℥. ß. *of the leaves of Maidenhaire, Agrimony, Pimpinell, Topps of Hopps, Mugwort, of each m.* ß. *topps of Hyssop p. ij. The three Cordiall flowers, of each p. j. Boyle these in* lb. *ij.* ℔. *of water, till halfe be consumed, adde to the colature, Syrup of Maidenhaire or sugar* ℥. *iiij. fiat Apozema for foure doses.*

An Apozeme against choller.

Another to moderate and asswage the fervour of Choller, thus.

℞. *Of the Roots of Succory, Wood-sorrell, Sorrell, of each* ℥. ß. *Liquorish, Currands, of each* ℥. *iij. Endive, Succory, Dandilyon, Wood-sorrell, Fumitory, Lettice, Purslane, of each m. j White Roses m.* ß. *or the three Cordiall flowers of each p. j. Boyle them in a sufficient quantity of water, and in the colature dissolve Syrup of the juice of Wood-sorrell, or Lemmons, or Sugar of Roses* ℥. *iiij. aromatize it with yellow Sanders* ℥. ß. *for foure doses.*

Chap. VII.

Of Gargarismes.

Gargarismes are instituted to the diseases and affections of the Mouth, Gumms, Palate and throat, whose faculty, according to *Celsus cap.* 23. *lib.* 5. is either levative, or represtive, or evocative. Creame or milk of Barly leviate; water, wherein lentills, or roses, or black berryes, or quinces, or dates have

have been cocted, represses. And Mustard, Pepper or such sharpe Medicaments evoke. But Gargarismes, in *Actuarius* his judgement (*Cap. 6. lib. 3. Method. Medend.*) should not be confected hereof without the admixtion of some sweet things, least they should too much offend the gust.

For when the liquor hausted to the Gurgulio, is again revoked to wash the whole concavity of the mouth; if it be too sharp, it will with its mordacity offend the gustative organs. Therefore the sharp simples, whereof Gargarismes are confected, are either mixed with Hydromel, or simple water, wherein the syrup of Stecados, dry Roses, or other such sweet decoction hath been dissolved in such quantity, as to abate much of their acrimony, or amaritude.

To educe flegme from the brain or jawes make a Gargarisme thus.

A Gargarisme to purge Pl legme from the Braine.

℞. *Pellitory* ℥. *ij. Cypress root, and Turbith, of each* ℥. *iij. Elecampane,* ℥. *j. Tops of Origanum, Hyssop, and Sage, of each m. j. boyle them in a pinte and half of water till a third part be consumed, in the colature mixe Oximel simplex,* ℥. *iij. fiat Gargarisma, or thus.*

℞. *Liquorish, Carthamus seed an.* ℥. ß. *Bay berryes, Stavesacre, of each* ℥. *iij. Mustard seed, white peper an.* ℥. *ij. Galangal.* ℥. *j. stæchados, Betony an. m.* ß. *boyle them in Hydromel.* pro Gargarizatu.

To roborate the mouth, and deterge its collutions make one thus.

A cleansing Gargarisme.

℞. *The leaves of the Prune tree, tops of Bryers, Plantaine, Fewseare, red Roses an. m. j. balaustians, tops of Mirtles, of each m.* ß. *Barley, Berberies, of each* ℥. ß. *boyle them in two pintes of water, till half be consumed; to the colature add the syrup of dryed Roses, of mulberryes, of each* ℥. *ij. mingle them.*

This following Gargarisme conduces to the cure of the French disease in the throat or other part of the mouth.

A Gargarisme for an Ulcer in the throat.

℞. *Of Guaicum,* ℥. *j. Sarsaperilla, Sasafras, of each* ℥. ß. *lignum Lentisci* ℥ *iij. boyle them in two pintes of water, till a third part be consumed, adding towards the end of the coction Liquorish* ℥. *vi. Roses Sage and Rosmary of each p. j. with the colature often wash the throat.*

Gargarismes may be used at any time, especially in the morning and betwixt meales, but they should be new continually; for by long keeping they corrupt, and rather harme than heale the mouth.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Emulsions.

AS one disease may be cured by many and different Medicaments, so may one Medicament cure many, and different diseases, as the same called by the later Medicks, an emulsion, which may be accomodated to many uses; for it conduces much to

the mitigating the griefes of the heart and lungs, to the conciliating of sleep; to the refrigerating of immoderate heat; to the asswaging of the Urines acrimony, and extinguishing the ardour of the reins. They therefore seem much to be deceived, who think that emulsions serve to nothing, save the cure of the virulent flux of the sperme; for in many things they may be used instead of Apozems and Hordeates, when they are confected of brayed seeds, which refrigerate, leniate, move urine, or conciliate sleep, upon which in the time of contrition either a Ptisane, or decoction of such simples as conduce to that purpose must be superfused; as when purged Almonds and Artichocks, with the decoction of jujubs, and dry grapes are contunded for the asperity of the jawes: the frigid seeds, with the decoction of Lettices, and of the flowers of Water-Lillyes, for the heat of the bowells, and the same seeds with the decoction of the roots or seeds of Althea, Liquorice and Figgs, for the Acrimony of urine.

The quantity of the decoction must be augmented or diminished according to the quantity of the seeds; an emulsion should neither be absolutely crasse, nor absolutely liquid, but in a mean betwixt the consistency of Apozems and Syrups, like the more limpid Amygdalates, which in colour and sapour differ not much from emulsions, but they are somewhat more crasse, as Hordeates are denser than Amygdalates, Syrups than Hordeates, Eclegmes, than Syrups, and Electuaryes than Eclegmes.

These are the best descriptions of Emulsions, for the diseases of the breast and lungs.

An Emulsion to allay the heat of the stomach.

℞. *Of sweet Almonds blanched,* ℥. j. *Pine kernells not rancid* ℥. ß. *the* 4. *greater Coole seeds, of each* ʒ iij. *beat them in a stone morter, and with a pint of the decoction made of Jujubs and Raisons, conquass them together, dulcorate it with* ℥ 4. *of sugar for* 4. *doses.*

To extinguish the ardour of the reins, and abate the Acrimony of urine.

To allay the heat of the urine.

℞. *The* 4. *greater Coole seeds, of each* ℥ ß. *the seeds of Lettice, and white poppyes, of each* ʒ ij. *bruise them well in a marble morter, and mix with them one pinte of water, or Ptisan: in the Colature dissolve syrup Nimphæa* ℥ iij. *for* 3. *doses.*

This following Emulsion conduces to the cure of the virulent flux of the sperme after other universall remedyes.

℞. *Water Lentills, Lettice seed, of each* ʒ ij. *Purslain and Plantain seed, of each* ʒ j. *the* 4. *greater Coole seeds of each* ℥ ß. *beat them in a stone morter, powring on Barley water* ℔ j. ß. *add sugar of Roses* ℥ iiij. *for* 5. *or* 6. *doses.* To be taken two houres before meales.

CHAP.

Chap. IX.

Of Amygdalates.

Almonds are either bitter, which are ſolely Medicinall, or ſweet, which are partly alimentall, partly Medicamentall. Of theſe, a certain potion is confected, white as milk, which Phyſicians preſcribe to feaveriſh and pectorall affections: for though Almonds, according to *Paulus Ægyn. lib. 7. de re Med.* and *Oribaſius cap. 2. lib. 2. Synopſeos*, be moderately hot, or rather temperate, yet being brayed and diluted in water, their fervour is abated, and by a certain inciding and attenuating faculty purge the breaſt and bowells (*Actuar. cap. 7. de ſpirit. animal. nut.*) now of their cremour may be made a certain ſorbicle, which doth both nouriſh and lenify the aſper Artery, and facilitate the projection of ſuch humours as are contained in the breaſt, which is thus made.

℞. *Of Almonds blanched* ℥ij. *beat them in a ſtone morter; and poure on* ℔ ſs. *of water, add* ℥vj. *of ſugar, boyle them a little on the fire, and afterwards let it be given.*

How Amygdalates are made.

Some adde to the mixture two or more grains, others refuſe: it may be adminiſtred at any time, eſpecially to ſuch as love not pottage or broath, but it is moſt frequently given at the houre of ſleep, and then you may put to it a little of the ſeed of white Poppy or Lettice, eſpecially if it be preſcribed to a ſick man, that cannot ſleep. Some bray Almonds with warme water, and ſo by the addition of a little ſugar make it up without fire, and ſo give it. But its better to bray them with luke-warme water, and afterwards elixate them after the uſuall manner; the quantity of ſugar ſhould be augmented or diminiſhed as the condition of the affection requires, for as ſweet things are bechicall, and moſt accommodate to the affections of the breaſt & Lungs, ſo by how much the Amygdalate is more obdulcorated with ſugar, by ſo much it is more convenient to them; by how much its leſſe obdulcorated, by ſo much fitter for the feaveriſh.

Amygdalata Lutetiæ uſitatiſſima.

This ſweet potion is very common at Lutetia, in ſo much that the very women make of it daily, ſo that their Medicks never deſcribe any receipt, but bids the Apothecary make an amygdalate, leaving the materialls to his arbitration. A greater quantity, both of ſugar and Almonds muſt be put in the confection thats made for ſuch as love ſolids, leſſe of each and more of water, for ſuch as love liquids.

Chap. X.

Of the Antients Ptisane or Hordeate.

THe vulgar Ptisane is a potion made of Liquorice-water, and a little barley, and often without: the Ancients Ptisane is a meat made of select barley, decortticated with grinding, and water, hence Ptisana from πτίσσειν, that is to grinde and decorticate, by *Galens* advice (*cap. 2. lib. de Ptisana*) the barley should be fat, partaker of no adventitious quality, neither too new, nor too old, nor yet wrinckled, which Barley thus selected must be macerated in water, then brayed in a morter, that the exteriour shell, and all glumosity may be excussed, then rubbed with ones hands, washed, and purged from the bran, then dryed and kept; and when use calls for it, then must a part of it be cocted in twelve times as much water on a slow fire, till it swell to the height, depose all flatuosity, and become a smooth, continuall, equall, and lubricall juice: thus the Ancients at first cocted their Ptisane, and exhibited it to the sick: yet some of them mixed with it boyled wine or honey, or cummin, and others a little oil, vineger and salt, but we being more delicate, add none of these, but onely sugar, and sometimes a few Almonds, and as we retain not the mixture of the Ancients, so neither do we keep the name, calling that a hordeate, which *Hippocrates* and *Galen* called a Ptisane, and its thus made at Lutetia.

Hordeati praeparatio.

Antiquorum Ptisana.

℞. *The best Barley well purified* ℥ *ij. boyle it upon a gentle fire in cleere water, till the barley begins to swell, pour off the water, and let fresh be poured on, then boyle it upon a cleare fire for four or five houres, afterwards straine it; add to the colature* ℥ *vj. of sugar, afterwards boyle it againe, and so make use of it.*

For thus your Hordeate will be more crasse and nutritive, in Italy they do not boyl it after colature, and it is more liquid, and more greedily assumed by some patients, but it nourisheth not so much, and therefore is assumed not only once a day about the houre of sleep, but twice, or thrice like a julep.

And seeing barley however prepared cannot be made to calify, but is alwayes cold according to *Galen* (*com. ad part.* 30. *lib.* 1. *de vict. acut. cap.* 16. *lib.* 1. *de aliment.*) a Ptisane made of these two is both good Medicament and aliment for the feaverish, for it both nourishes and cures, and in nourishing supplies the place both of meat and drink, and operates like Alita and Rice. (*Gal. lib.* 1. *de alimen. lib.* 1. *de vict. acut. cap.* 237. *libr. de simpl. medicament.*)

Chap.

Chap. XI.

Of Lohoch or Eclegms made for present use.

WE have spoken at large of Eclegmes in generall, now we come to treat of those in speciall, which must be made and exhibited presently, being not conservative without alteration, because in two or three dayes they rise so much through fermentation, that they cannot be kept within their potts, unlesse they be agitated with a spatula or liquorice stick; for so the sugar is more accurately mixed with the liquor, and the mixture settles more easily, and may be more securely kept. Now Lohochs are prescribed for various effects, according to the various matter, and qualities of the Medicaments whereof they consist, which if they be sweet and gratefull to the palate, leniate the asper artery, concoct the humours, move and educe spittle: if dulcoacid incide, attenuate, and prepare viscous and crasse Phlegme; if dulcoamare deterge, coct and expurgate. But because amaritude very much offends the guste, bitter things, save in small quantity, never ingrede this confecture, for it is always almost compounded of sweet things, as Liquorice juice, Jujubs, Pine Apple, Sugar-Candy, Penidis, Electuary of diaireos, or diatragacanthum, or such like confections pulverated, and subacted with honey, some fit syrup, or both. *Eclegmatum usus.*

A lohoc thus confected conduces to the incision and attenuation of crasse humors.

℞. *Electuarii diaireos simplicis*, ℥ j. *sugar candy* ℥. ß. *Annis condited* ʒ *ii. syrup of Hyssop, and oximell simplex, of each* ℥. *i.* ß. *mixe them well together*, which you may use often, either fasting in the morning, or betwixt meales, upon a Liquorish stick. *Lohoch incidens.*

To coct and expectorate humours, the frequent use of this following lohoch doth much conduce.

℞. *Diatragacanthi frigid.* ʒ. *vi. diairis Solomonis, Alphenici, of each* ℥ ß. *with the syrup of Liquorish, or Maidenhaire, make it into a Lohoch.* A Lohoch to cause Concoction.

This Eclegme following stops Rheums falling upon the lungs.

℞. *Penides, Diatrag. frigid. of each* ℥. ß. *sugar of Roses,* ʒ *vi. Terræ Lemniæ* ℥ *ii. with the syrup of Poppyes, make it into a Linctus.* To stay a Catarh.

This cures eroding fluxions, and the distempers of the Lungs, or at least reduces them to a better state.

℞. *Manus Christi perlatæ* ℥. j. *Ter. Sigill. pulv. Diatragan. frigid. of each* ʒj. *red corall* ℥ ß. *Lapis Hæmath.* ℈. j. *with syrup of Balme, make it into a Lohoch.*

Chap.

Chap. XII.

Of Apophlegmatiſmes.

THE head aggravated with excrementitious humours, eſpecially with phlegme, may, be emptied with many kindes of Medicaments, but none can effect this without the moleſtation of other parts; for phlegmagogous potions or pills, while they educe Phlegme from the brain, do importunately moleſt the ventricle and members adjoyning, and by moving the belly cauſe grievous pains, and very often excite heart-aches and ſwoonings; but Apophlegmatiſmes, being indued with a ſapour not ſo ungratefull, affects the concavity of the mouth more gently, atracting abundance of Phlegme through the emiſſaryes of the palate from the brain, which may be eaſily excluded by frequent ſputation. Now all ſimples, whereon Apophlegmatiſmes conſiſt, are hot, and often indued with acrimony, whereby they do not onely attenuate, incide, and attract the cold humour, but alſo excite the expulſive faculty to its worke.

Apophlegmatiſmorum utilitas.

Theſe things project Phlegme, Maſtick chewed, or made into a gargariſme, ſage, ſtaveſacre, thyme, penny-royall, carthamus, pepper, muſtard, bartram, ginger, acorus, the roots of deluce, and Cyperus, whereof ſome cut into ſmall pieces are maſticated and grinded with the teeth, or pulverated, and put into ſome convenient liquour, and ſo formed into pills or trochiskes; or obvolved in ſome thin cloath, and made up like a knot: or elixated, and their decoction percolated and kept in ones mouth, like a gargariſme.

Their more uſuall forme is ſolid, that they may be longer detained in the mouth, and maſticated whence a maſticatory is uſed for an Apophlegmatiſme and an apothegmatiſme for a maſticatory: the head muſt decline while the Medicament is maſticated or chewed, and the lips be open, that the humour attracted and congeſted may have more free and ſpeedy paſſage.

Many formes or receipts of this Medicament might be deſcribed, but that I may not be tedious, one or two ſhall ſerve: as,

℞. *Staves-acre* ℥ *iij. maſtich* ℥ *ij. cubebs* ℥ *j. pellitory* ℥ ß. *make of theſe a fine powder, and with ſyrup or juice of damasks roſes make them into little troches*, or thus:

℞. *The roots of orris* ℥*ij. long pepper, muſtard-ſeed, pellitory, Agaricke, of each* ℥ *j. ſtaveſacre* ℥ *i* ß. *beat theſe into a very fine powder, and with the beſt honey make them up into the forme of pills globular: and rowle them up in ſarſnet, which at the time you would uſe them, hold in your mouth, till Rheume diſtills.*

CHAP.

Chap. XIII.

Of a Purging bolus.

Such as nauseate and abhorre liquid purgations, and cannot receive pills, because of their insuavity, or the squalour of their ingredients; stand in need of a Medicament which is of a middle consistency betwixt a potion and a pill; which antiquity hath named a Bolus, for so that is called, which is taken by pieces or morsells, as the vulgar tearme it; so that a Bolus is a piece of a purgative Medicament of the consistency of an opiate, fit for ingestion, and of such crassitude, as it may be easily swallowed whole, some of the Latins call it *Buccea.* *Bolus quid.*

It may be made of any kind of purgative, except such as by their insuavity move loathing and abhorrence, or such whose malignity cannot be castigated, nor yet their substance be assumed. *Ejus materia.*

Sometimes alteratives, and Aromaticall simples are mixed therewith to correct the efferous nature of the purgatives, or to conciliate a more gratefull odour, and sapour, or to helpe to the roboration of some part, but yet in small quantity, least the bulk of the bolus swell too much, which the sick do much abhor, for many are moved at the first taste of a Medicament, are angry at the second, and mad at the third. *Delicatuli purgantia avertantur.*

The manner of the boles confection is most simple, as being oft made of nothing but Cassia alone; for this is the basis of boles, as Aloes is of pilis; the use of boles as it is frequent, so it is wholesome in hot weather.

℞. *Of the Pulpe of Cassia newly extracted* ℥ j ß. *powder of yellow Sanders* ϑ j. *mix them well together, and with syrup of violets,* make it into a Bolus, which take upon the point of a knife, drinking broth after it. A Laxative and cooling Bolus.

Rhabarb or some scamoniall Medicine is often added to Cassia, as to the deduction of choller, thus:

℞. *Ext. Cassiæ* ℥ j. *diapruni solutivi* ℥ ij. *powder of liquorish* ϑ j. *make it up into a bole with sugar, or syrup of succory.*

But because Cassia by its flatuosity oft causes dolours in the belly, which by its molestation brings swounings to the delicate, its quantity should be small, that it might be extracted with the other vapours, or something mixed with it, that might discusse its wind.

℞. *Pulp of Cassia, extracted with the decoction of Aniseseeds.* ℥ vi. *the Electuary of the juice of Roses.* ℥ ii. *Rhabarb* ℥ ß. *with sugar, make it into a bole.*

If

Boli non semper cassiam habent pro base.

If Cassia be wanting, yet boles may be confected, for they be made of the Pulpe of prunes, tamarinds, Raisons, and many Electuaries; for of these and many other purgative Medicaments, as well simples, as compounds, may be made laxative opiats, which may be taken fasting in the forme of a bole.

Chap. XIV.

Of Opiates.

WE have abundantly discoursed afore. *cap.* 13. *lib.* 3. of opiates in generall, and we hold it superfluous to speak the same things over again, therefore we shall now onely describe some receipts of particular opiats, after which paradigme it will not be difficult to confect others.

Opiarum usus.

Now opiates, are not prescribed solely to conciliate sleep (though they derive their denomination from *Opium*) but to purge, roborate, or other wayto alter, as other liquid Electuaryes, in which order they may justly be ranked, as partaking of the same consistency and manner of composition.

Materia.

Their materialls are powders put into honey, or a syrup, and sometimes into sweet wine, and accurately subacted with a pestell, wherewith some conserves, or other cordiall or cephalicall confectures have been compounded, such as roborate the heart, and conserve and exhilarate the integrity of the vitall faculties. An opiate may be confected for the richer sort thus.

℞. *Of the conserves of the flowers of Bugloss and Borage, of each* ℥ *iii. Conserve of marigolds, Citron pill condited, of each* ℥ *i. confectio Alkermes, de Hyacintho, of each* ℥ *i spec. de gemmis, diamarg. frigid. Lætitia Gal. of each* ℈ *j. East Bezoar, and Monoceroes horne of each* ℈. ß. *and with* ℥ *ii. of the syrup of preserved mirabolans, or Lemons, fiat opiata*

The sequell receipt confers much to the roboration of the brain, and the recreation of the drowsy vitall faculties.

℞. *Conserves of Betony* ℥ *vi. of Roses* ℥ ß. *Confectio Alkermes,* ℈ *iiii. spec. dianthos* ℈ *ii. diamarg. frigid. dianisi, diamosch. dul. an.* ℈ *i. with syrup of Stœchados fiat Opiata.*

Let this be assumed by such whose ventricle languishes through frigidity, or humidity, and imbecility of the digestive faculty.

℞. *Old conserve of Roses* ℥ ß. *of Rosemary flowers* ℥ *ii. candid Nutmeg* ℥ *i. spec. aromat. Rosat* ℈ *ii. diacinamomi* ℈ *i. Diambræ* ℈. ß. *Syrup of mint or Julep of Roses, as much as will suffice to make it up into an opiate, of which take* ℥*i. at a dose.*

This

This is for the poorer sort.

℞. *Conserve of Roses* ℥ j. *Enulacampane condited* ℥. j. ʃ8. *the best Bole washed in Carduus water* ℥ ʃ8. *with the syrup of Wood-sorrell, make into an opiate.*

Chap. XV.

Of Condites.

For the commodity of those parts, which hold the principality in natures œconomy, a certain mixture is invented, more pleasant than opiates, which the later Medicks call a condite.

It consists of conserves, cordiall powders and sugar, mixed in an unequall quantity; for to the confection of a *Granulatum*, there is required more conserves, lesse powder, and far more sugar than to an opiate, and the conditure is often over-spread with leaf gold, that it may be more gratefull to the eyes, and more potent in its qualities. For it is confected of all kinds of cordialls, save those that are disgustfull. For since it should be frequently used by those, to whom it is accommodated, to wit by macilent languishing, and such persons as are beginning to recover their healths, it should partake of very little or no insuavity. The matter of Condites.

A condite to resartiate lost strength may be thus made.

℞. *Citron pill condited* ℥ ij. *Conserve of Bugloss and Roses, of each* ℥. ʃ8. *spec. de gemmis, diambræ, diamarg. frigidi an.* ϑ. j. *the bone in the heart of a Hart,* ϑ. ʃ8. *Unicornes horne, Bezoar stone, of each gr. vj. Leaves of gold nu. vj. sugar of Roses, the treble quantity of the whole, or as much as will suffice to make it a condited Granulate.* A cordiall Condite.

This following condite may with successe be exhibited of such, whose ventricle through imbecillity nauseares, and ejects all esculents and potulents presently after their assumption.

℞. *Old Conserve of Roses* ℥ vj. *of the greater Comfrey* ℥ ij. *pulveris diarhod. Abatis* ϑ ii. *burnt Ivory, red Corall, of each* ϑ *i. the sugar of Roses, three times the weight of the whole, or as much as will suffice to make it a Condite, of which take fasting in the morning and before every meale* ℥ *i.*

Chap. XVI.

Of the regall paste.

Differentia inter pastam regiam & opiatas.

THe regall paste and opiates have so much affinity each with other, consisting both almost of the same ingredients, that according to *Rondeletius*, the onely distinction is that the regall paste is more dry than an opiate, and more humid than an electuary, or rather more solid than both: for the consistency of an opiate, and an electuary differ so little, that they may be easily thought the same; but however it be to an opiate, it is not mazapane as *Gorræus* is of opinion, but a certain confection so called by the more recent, and by *Mesue* the regall electuary; for because of its princely, that is, eximious faculty it hath against expectoration and other pectorall affectious, it acquired that name.

Electuarium regium.

It consists of conserves, pulpes, syrups, and powders prepared and subacted with such industry, that out of the mixture results a tractible masse like paste, whereof boles or other small sweet breads are confected, from whence it derives its denomination, which dry so by little and a little, that when they come to be used they doe not commaculate the fingers of the assumer with their lentour, and these pastes are thus confected.

℞. *Blanched Almonds, Pistakes, Pine-kernells, of each ℥ ß. Pulp of Jujubees, Dates, Damaske prunes; of each ʒ iii. Gum Traganth ʒ i. Starch ℥ ß. and with as much sugar of Roses as will suffice to make it up into a paste.*

Rondeletius prescribes a paste thus described for to move spittle.

℞. *Conserve of Maidenhaire, and Bugloss, of each ℥ ß. Pul. Diatrag. frigid. Diatreos simp. of each ʒ ii. Penniddees, Sugar Candy, of each ℥ ii. and with a little Syrup of Liquorish, or as much as will suffice to make it up into a paste*: but know, that if you put a little too much syrup to it, you will make its consistence more liquid, and so instead of paste make an opiate.

Chap. XVII.

Of Mazapane.

MAzapane or Marchypane is a confection so named by the more recent, which is a most frequent junket, for it is most gratefull to the gust, and nourishes very much; wherefore it is prescribed to the macilent, and such persons, as are vexed with any preternaturall affection in the breast or Lungs.

Many

Many bechicall and sweet ingredients go to this confection, as sugar, pistack-nutts, pine-kernells, and other sweet fruits, which brayed, and accurately subacted with simple, or rose-water, become a masse, whereof wafers or morsells, (as *Rondelet* calls them) are concinnated, which are gently cocted in an Oven, till of red they become yellow, and acquire a competent hardnesse. *Marcipanis quibus conster.*

The vulgar manner of this confecture with the dulciaryes is most simple, as being made oncly of Almonds, rose-water and sugar.

But Apothecaries by a Physicians advice, adde something to these which hath respect to some one part, which tempers some noxious humour, and by its nutritive, as well as Medicinall faculty, preserves as well as resartiates sanity.

The most usuall and pleasant confection of Mazapane is this.

℞. *Sweet Almonds decorticated,* ℥*iij. Pistakes* ℥*j. bruise them very well in a morter, with a little Rose-water, add thereunto) the finest sugar* ℔ ʃ*ß. fiat pasta, which you may make into what forme you please.* *Marcipanis optimus.*

Marchepane after this manner is usuall also (and very accomodate) to expell flatuosity.

℞. *Pistakes* ℥*j. blanched Almonds* ℥*ij. Aniseseed* ʒ *i. Cinamon* ϑ *i. after they are finely beaten add of the finest loafe sugar, four ounces, and so make it up into a paste,* which if by too much water it be too liquid, let it fervefy in a bason, on a slow fire till it be more crasse, then make Marchpane, which dry a little in the Oven after bread hath been extracted.

Those little long masses of bread which are confected of flower and thrice or four times as much sugar, with a little Coriander, and a small portion of eggs subacted together, may by some affinity be referred hither, which they commonly call Biskakes: But I would not put my sickle into another mans harvest therefore I will leave these sweet breads to the confectioners. *Panis biscoctus.*

Chap. XVIII.

Of Piniolates or Pignolates.

ANother kind of paste is made almost after the same manner, which the Neotericks call Piniolate or Pignolate, becaus its made of Pine kernells, cleansed and immerged in melted sugar, and cocted to the consistency of condite sugar.

But that the Pine kernells may depose all their rancour, they should be macerated a whole day or half at least in water, and Rose-water should be dropt into the confection, for so it will be more grateful to the gust, as also to the smell, if a grain of Muske be mixed therewith; as we see in many junketts which are set at the

head of the table, the moſt uſuall forme of confecting pineolates, is this.

℞. *Of the fineſt ſugar diſſolved and coctedin Roſe water, till it be about the conſiſtency of an Electuary* ℔ *j*8. *mingle with* ℥ *ii. of Pine kernells infuſed in water for the ſpace of twelve houres, afterwards ſtir them together with a ſpatula, that the whole maſſe may be ſubigated, in the end add moſch* ∋ *i. and ſo make a paſte, whereof you may make Cylinders which repoſe and exſiccate on a paper, that they may grow harder.*

CHAP. XIX.

Of Pandalea.

THere is another kind of ſolid paſte called *Pandaleon*, which is by *Rondeletius* preſcribed to the affections of the breaſt and lungs, for it conſiſts of many things that attenuate, and coct viſcid humours, and move expectoration, and all Pandaleas ſeem to be bechicall, nothing differing from pectorall Ecclegmes and ſyrups, ſave in conſiſtency, nor from ſolid Electuaryes ſave in externall forme: for they are compounded, made and coſted after the ſame manner, only ſolid Electuaries are harder, and are rolled out into quadrate or long figures; and Pandaleas are kept whole in a woodden box, as conſerves in a glaſſe or earthen veſſell, and when uſe calls for them, they are cut with a ſpoon or knife, and a piece thereof given, to be retained in the mouth like ſo much Alphenix, or bechicall Tablets, that it may melt, and go down like a lohoch. It hath the ſame conſiſtency, and is kept in the like veſſells as thoſe ſame ſugared confections or comfitures, uſuall, and frequent in Spain, which they call Marmelades.

They are made commonly of ſome ſweet powder and ſugar perfectly concocted in ſome convenient water, that they may concrete.

Some conſerves are ſometimes added, and a little honey, if need require, and ſuch a Pandaleon, how ever diſpleaſing it may be to ſome mens palate, is very good, and is thus confected.

℞. *Pul. Diaireos Salomonis.* ℥ *i. diatrag. frigid.* ∋ *ii. powder of yellow Sanders* ∋ *i. ſugar diſſolved in Coltsfoot-water* ℥ *iiij. fiat Pandaleon, which keep in Marmalet Boxes.*

Some alſo make a Pandaleon of Pine kernells, or Almonds decorticated and brayed, with ſugar or honey; thus.

℞. *Pine kernells well cleanſed and bruiſed* ℥ *i. Penidees* ℥ *ß. clarified honey, as much as will ſuffice to make it up into a ſolid paſte, or Pandaleon.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

Of Hypoglottidian Medicaments commonly called ſublingues.

THe cough and ſtinch of breadth moleſt all that are neere us, ſeeing the cough affronts their ears, and the ſtinch their noſes; now certain bechicall and Aromaticall paſtilles will cure both affections, which from their round and long forme, which Apothecaries put them in, and that ſame quality which is predominant in them, whereby they expectorate the humour, cauſing coughing are called bechicall, from the manner of their uſe Hypoglottidian, and from the odour which they acquire by Moſche, Moſchardine Medicaments,

They are very pleaſant which are thus confected.

℞. *Of the fineſt ſugar* ℥ j. ſ8. *Penidees* ℥ ſ8. *orris* ℥ ſ8. *yellow Sanders, Cinamon, of each* ℈ *i. moſch* ℈ ſ8. *with muſilady of Gum Thragants made in Roſe water, make them up into a paſte, of which forme any figure, long, round, or what will lye moſt conveniently under the tongue.*

The deſcription is both eaſy and good.

℞. *Sugar of Roſes,* ℥ ii. *ſugar Candy* ℥ *i. ſtarch* ℥ *i. ſpec. diacinamon, diamiſi, and orris, of each* ℈ *i. mace* ℈ ſ8. *Zivet gr. vi. with the muſiladge of Gum Thraganth, made in Balme water, fiant Hypoglottides.*

CHAP. XXI.

Of Tables, or Tabuletts:

TAbells pertaine to ſolid Electuaries, yea, they are very Electuaryes, being confected of powders and ſugar perfectly cocted, that their conſiſtency may be harder, and they longer and more ſecurely preſerved without damage and impairement.

The like quantity of ſugar is required in confecting tables, as of honey in liquid electuaries, and in both the quantity is augmented or ſubſtracted, as the validity or imbecillity of the Electuaries faculty requires. *Sacchari quantitas in tabellis.*

In purgative tables one dragm of powder muſt be put to an ounce of ſugar, duely cocted in water or other convenient liquour, in roborative tables, that they may be more gratefull to the palate more ſugar is requiſite, as two ounces of ſugar to every dragm of powder. *Portio Sacchari in tabellis purgantibus.*

I ſhall onely hint here a little of tables in this book, ſince I have

(*Cap.* 11. *lib.* 3.) at large discoursed, not onely of liquid Electuaryes, but solid also, and tabells, in the description of such Medicaments as may be long preserved.

Yet that I may suggest the formes of all Medicaments to him that would confect them, I will adde some few receipts of roborative tabells; as;

Cordiall Tabulets.

℞. *Spec. Elect. diamarg. frigid. de Gemmis ana* ʒ ß. *powder of the bone in the heart of a Hart* ℈ ß. *Spodium* ℈ *i. with sugar dissolved in Rose water* ʒ *iii. make them into Tabulets, of* ʒ *i. or* ʒ *ii. weight, take one of them every morning fasting.*

Such as are rich, and begin to recover from some long disease, or are any way troubled with palpitations and swoundings, let them get these tabells confected.

℞. *Pul. Aureæ Alexandrinæ* ʒ ß. *diacinam. hyacinthor. smaragdor. pearle, finely powdered, of each* ℈ *i. Monoceros horn, and Bezoar stone, of each* ℈ ß. *with sugar dissolved in Rose water* ʒ *iiii. make them into little Tabuletts.*

Those tabells they call *Manus Christi* are reducible to this head, which are nothing else but *Sacharum rosatum*, either simple as the common, or more compound, which admitts of Pearls in its confection, and is called *Manus Christi perlata*; which is thus confected.

Manus Christi perlata.

℞. *Of the whitest sugar dissolved in Rose water, and cocted, till above the consistency of a syrup* ʒ *ii. pearl finely powdered* ʒ *i. fiant Tabellæ.*

Chap. XXII.

Of Powders.

Besides those powders kept in shops for future uses, whereof we have spoken elsewhere; there many others, which are made for present use, as the digestive powder which helps the frigidity of the ventricle, and the imbecility of the coctive faculty, being confected of such Medicaments as are stomachicall, roborative, help concoction, and dispell flatuosity, and it is thus made.

Pulvis digestivus.

Pulvis flatus discutiens.

℞. *The seeds of Dill, and Coriander prepared of each* ʒ *ii. Orange pill Condited* ʒ *i* ß. *Cinamon* ʒ *i. Mace, Cloves, of each* ʒ ß. *sugard Candy* ʒ *ii. or iii. make of these a powder.*

Another Powder also of eximious power and vertue, to roborate the ventricle and parts addicted to sanguification, and dissipate flatuosity, is thus confected.

℞. *The seeds of sweet Fennell, and Coriander Condited, of each* ʒ *i* ß. *Squinant, Calamus aromatic. an.* ʒ ß. *Dianisi, Diamargar. frigid.*

frigid. and Diacinamon, of each ℈i. A cruſt of Bread well toaſted. ʒii. ſugar ʒ ii. make them into a powder.

Cordiall and Alexiteriall powders, that roborate the principall parts and faculties in malignant feavers may be thus confected.

℞. *The roots of Angelico, Tormentill, of each ʒ ß. Ligni Aloes ℈i. Citron ſeeds and Cinamon, of each ℈ ß. the bone in the heart of a Hart, burnt Ivory, the beſt pearle, of each ℈i. Monoceros horne, Bezoar ſtone, of each ℈ ß. Dictamus ʒ ß. ſugar of Roſes ʒ i ß. make of them a powder which muſt be taken faſting, or long after meat with the water of Scordium or Carduus, or ſome diſtilled reſtorative, or other convenient liquor.* A Cordiall Powder.

There are alſo topicall powders, which are applyed to ſolidate wounds, and implete ulcers with fleſh, of which in their place.

THE

THE SECOND SECTION;

Of such as are either ingested or injected.

CHAP. I.

Of Errhins.

ALL Medicaments are either assumed, ingested, or applyed: Juleps, Apozemes, Syrups, and all such as enter only at the mouth, whereof we have before treated, are assumed: Errhins, Suppositories, and Clysters, are ingested: Unguents Salves, Fomentations, and many more, whereof we shall now treat in order, are applyed, we begin with such as ingrede the body, but not at the mouth, but the nose, privy parts, or fundament: and have their egresse where they made their ingresse.

Those which are immitted at the nose are thence called Errhins; and vulgarly *Nasalia*; those which are exhibited at the nose to purge the head are thence commonly called *caputpurgia* by the suffrage of Chyrurgicall Medicks.

They are constituted of Medicaments indued with a sharp and exterging faculty, whereby the expulsive faculty, being more validly excited, moves and expells the humour lodged in the brain; such as be the qualities of Bete, Sow-bread, wild Cucumber, and the juice of Marjoram, as also the powder of Euphorbium, Hellebore and Pepper; and of such like sharp Medicaments which snuffed up the nostrills, move sternutation, and purge the brain; some also consist of astrictive and agglutinative Medicaments, as those which are prescribed to stay a bloody flux.

They are given in divers formes, either liquid, which must be attracted by the nose, or solid, which must be ingested into the nostrills, or pulverall, which must be snuffed up.

A liquid Errhin is thus confected.

A liquid Errhine.

℞. *Of the juice of the root of Beet, and the leaves of majoran; of each ℥ i. of the juice of Brank ursine and Sow-bread, of each ℥ ß. fiat Errhinum: let a portion of it, as ℥ ß. be attracted in the morning up your nose again and again, still keeping water in your mouth, least the Errhin from the nose flow into your mouth.*

Some are given in forme of an unguent, which they daub on the interiour

interiour part of the nostrills, and they are good for such as are troubled with continuall headache, with bad eyes, Epilepsy, and dulnesse of smell, their bodyes bring first duely purged, and they are made thus.

℞. *Of wild Cucumber, Pellitory, of each ℈ j. white Pepper, Carpesium, or Cubebs, and stavesacre, of each ʒ ß. with a little oil of orris and wax make it up into a liniment.* An Errhine in the form of an Unguent.

A solid Errhine to stay the bleeding of ones nose is thus made.

℞. *Bole-Armenick, Draggons blood, of each ʒ j. Roses. Balaustians. of each ʒ ß. and with a little whites of eggs well beaten; make them up into the Consistency of a solid Errhin, or immerge therein a little Hares down, or cotten*; and make it like a tent, to be put up the nose in a pyramidall forme, to which annexe a thread that you may extract it at your pleasure.

Ptarmicall or neezing powder, when its used for Errhins is thus described.

℞. *Hellibor. both white and black, of each ʒ i. Euphorbium ℈ ß. dryed orris ʒ ß. make of these a very fine powder, let a small portion thereof be snuffed up the nose, after a convenient Cathartick.*

Chap. II.

Of Pessi or Pessaries.

BY the name *Pessus* or *Pessarium* we understand all those suppositoryes which are immitted into the privy parts which are by *Hyppocrates* called πεσσοὶ, as unguents, plaisters, roots, or bruised hearbs, and penicills, but here they are taken for a long Medicament, equalizing or exceeding the length and thicknesse of a finger, which is intermitted into womens naturalls; with a thread bound to it, that being so far intruded, it may be more commodiously extracted.

A Pessaryes forme should be pyramidall, smooth, round, and equall least it hurt the neck of the uterus; now there ought to be two or more of unequall magnitude in readinesse, that a more tenuious one may be first immitted, the more crasse afterwards: that it may go up more easily. *Pessorum forma.*

There are two sorts of Pessaryes, one made of some solid matter, as Lead, or Tin, like a pyramidall tent, which serves to open, reserate and dilate the narrow, obstructed and shut uterus: another of other Medicinall matter, which is convenient to attenuate, or incrassate, to move or stench blood: but they are made for the most part of aromaticall Medicaments; when they are prescribed to

Aromata recreant uterum. move monethly flowers, or abate the symptome of the Hysterical suffocation (*Aphor. 28. lib. 5. Lib. de morb. mul. Hipp.*) for Aromaticks do very much recreate the uterus, but by a benign and aeriall vapour, which deducing the orifice of the vessells, frees them from obstructions, and thereupon incites the flowr of the tearmes; but such ingredients may not be too sharp, least they exulcerate the mouth and neck of the uterus, seeing the Pessary must abide a pretty while in this case.

Before the intromission of the Pessary, the orifice of the uterus must be anointed with some odoriferous unguent, as oil with musk in it, liquidambar, or some such thing wherein Musk and Civet are compounded, of which and a little wax are confected unguents wherewith Virgins naturalls are anointed: for Virgin modesty admitts not of pessaryes, which cannot be intromitted, till the Virgin Zone be loosed.

And therefore the matter of pessaryes is reduced to the forme of an Unguent wherein smooth lint, or Cotten is immerged, and a pessary of a just longitude formed thereof, by involution in a thin linnen cloath, to which a thread is fastned, for the aboveſaid reason.

A pessary to move monthly flowers.

Roman gith. Rx. *Nigell. Roman, Bay-berryes, of each* ℥ ß. *Mirrh* ℥ *j. Savin, Dictamus, of each* ℈ *ij. spec. Hieræ Picræ.* ℥ *ij. Castor* ℈ *j. and with oil of Spicknard, and a little wax, make it up into a liniment, into which dip some lint, and rowl it up into a pessary: anointing the outside with oil of Almonds.*

A pessary to draw down the Tearmes.

All pessaryes are not obvolved, but some like suppositoryes formed of materialls redacted to a solid consistency, which are of the length of a mans yard, as this same to stay monthly flowers.

Rx. *Bole-armeniake, Dragons blood, of which* ℥ *ij. powder of mirtle berryes, Pomgranat flowers, Roses, Hypocistides, of each* ℥ *i. Unguentum Comitissæ* ℥ *j. Let these be mixed together upon a gentle fire; make thereof a pessary of a Pyramidall forme, of a just bigness.*

Chap. III.

Of Nudils or Penicils.

THe condition and nature of some parts are such, that they cannot indure every Medicament, as being either too heavy or too hard for them; hence it is that Emplaisters are sometimes relinquished, though otherwise they were most proper for the cure, meerely because they may not be tolerated: as we see in a fundament exasperated with swellings, caused by inflammation, or with clifts by cold, and the externall orifice of a womans privity ulcerated, to which we neither apply suppositoryes nor pessaryes, but soft penisclls, which

which are improperly called noduls, which name Apophlegmatisines may more properly arrogate to themselves.

For Penicills are not made into knotts, nor yet are they hard, but very soft, as consisting only of cotten or wooll, immerged in some convenient unguent; that so they may be easily admitted and indured by the parts affected, as we see in curing wounds, betwixt whose sides two or more penicills are reposed.

But they are for the most part adhibited to the wombe, and externall part of the privityes, the condition of which parts when ulcerated cannot tolerate other remedyes, and they are constituted of divers matters according to the different affections for which they are made, as to asswage the dolour of the fundament, which is ulcerated by some acid humour. This penicill,

Penicillus Anodynus.

℞. *Ung. refriger. Galeni* ℥ ß. *Ung. Nutrit.* ʒ *ij. with half the yolk of an Egge make it up into a liniment, in which Immerge a little wool, and apply it to the place affected.*

To deterge some sordid Ulcer this penicill is useful.

Alius detergens.

℞. *A syrup of wormewood, Honey of Roses, of each* ℥ *j. mirrh, aloes, of each* ʒ ß. *and with a little wool make it into little penicills.*

A bolster of wool or cotten imbued in *Unguento de Apio* will effect the same, if adhibited to the place.

This penicill will desiccate an ulcer.

℞. *Ung. Albi* ʒ ß. *desiccativi rubri, Diapompholigos, of each* ʒ *ij. mingle them; and with some linte make Penicills, which apply to the Ulcer.*

Chap. IV.

Of Suppositoryes.

THE torpour of the belly causes great confusion in the humours, and propagates an immense troupe of diseases, which that they may be avoided; the slow belly must be either lubricated with humectative aliments, or scowred with Clysters, or moved with suppositories; that it may every day depose the excrements of the precedent day; For by the cohibition of these dreggs, the exclusion not responding the assumption, vapours ascend to the head, the body ingravidates, concoction and all other functions are impaired.

Ventris segnities naturam malè lacessit.

Such then, as through shamefulness, will not denudate their fundament to the Apothecary, that he may move their bellyes with a Clyster, may exhibite this kind of Medicament,

called a suppository *à supponendo*, which they may themselves easily repose in their fundament.

Glans subditia. This subdititious Medicament did in times past bear the forme of an acorn, whence it was called *Glans*, but now it is made longer, equalizing in longitude a finger or pessary.

Suppositoryes are very usefull; for when the expulsive faculty is dull, and cannot exclude the excrements in their due time, or when the *rectum intestinum* is so stuffed with obdurate dreggs, that it can either not admit of, or else not egest a glister; then must the faculty be stimulated with a sharp suppository, as with a needle.

These subdititious Medicaments conduce much to the enecation of small wormes, as also to such affections as require laxativenesse, and yet may not be moved by glisters, as in the disease of bursting, and in the inversion of the *rectum intestinum* by too much humidity.

Suppositorii basis. Their basis is honey, of which alone cocted to that crassitude and consistency, as it will not inquinate ones fingers, they may be, and are often confected, for honey consisting of tenuious parts must needs have some acrimony in it, which may provoke the belly to excretion (*Galen. cap. 38. lib. 3. de aliment.*)

Common salt, or the powder of *sal Gemme* or *Hiera*, or other simple, or compound is sometimes added to honey.

This is the common suppository wherewith the excretive faculty is excited to its work.

An usuall suppository. Rx. *Honey, ij. common salt ℥ ij. or sal. Gem. ℈ iiij. boyle them on a gentle fire, in a little pipkin, to a perfect consistency, and make a suppository of the longitude of a finger.* For one cannot coct so little honey, as to make up one suppository with honey alone, least so little quantity, as would serve one glans, be burned, or cause the ignition of the vessell before it can acquire a tractable consistency.

This suppository is very good to kill the worms of the fundament, and educe that phlegme whereon they feed.

Another for the wormes. Rx. *Aloes ℥ i ß. Agaricke, Wormewood, of each ℥ j. sal. Gemm. ℥ ß. make of these a powder, to which add honey boyled to a consistency ℥ ij. and according to art rowl them up into suppositories.* Let them be immerged in the oil of bitter Almonds, or of Wormewood, or in the gall of an Oxe, till use calls for them.

For Infants they cut a piece of white sope, like an acorn, which they immit, or sometimes the stalke of a Bete, or Mercury dawbed with butter instead of a suppository; for all these gently exonerate the belly.

CHAP.

Chap. V.

Of Glysters, or Enemata.

Glyster, or *Clysmus*, is a word borrowed from the Greeks, signifying ablution, as *Enema* injection; and both are used for the same thing: for ablution cannot be in the belly, but by injection of some thing, which by the fundament is immitted to the intestines to excite the excretive faculty to mollify the hardness of the belly, to alter the intemperature, to ease the dolour, to discuss the flatuosity, to cohibit the fluour, and kill and expell the worms in the intestines.

Glysters are instituted for many more effects also; for no part in the body almost, but it receives solace from them, (*Com. ad Aph.* 17. *lib.* 18.) if dolour possess the head, if lippitude the eyes, if strangulation the jaws, if suffocation the breast, if inflation the belly, if inflammation the reins, if dissury or ischury the bladder, a Glyster will successfully cure all these evils. *The commodities that ensue Glysters*

Now the *Uterus* hath its proper Glysters, which must be infunded into its fundament by a *Metrenchyta*, the bladder its Glysters; neither want the bowels theirs, whose orifice is narrow and nervous, and their cavity profound.

And it is taken for a liquid Medicament infused into the intestines by the fundament, whereof there are various descriptions, according to the variety of the affections for which they are ordained; as to mollify the belly, after this manner.

℞. *Mallows, Violets, Marsh mallows, brank Ursin, Mercury, Pelitory, ana m.* j. *sweet Fennel seed* ℥. ß. *in the Summer time the four greater cool seeds* ℥ j. *boyl these in a sufficient quantity of water till a third part be consumed; of which, after it is strained, take* lb. j. ß. *for strong people; but for the younger sort* lb. j. *for infants* lb. ß.

This decoction may in Summer be kept uncorrupt two dayes in some cold place, in Winter four: but it is best when it is new made, and those Apothecaries do ill that keep it a whole week, and then use it. *Quamdiu decoctum pro Clyst. possit incorruptum servari.*

Folia Orientalia are oft decocted herein, and some Electuaries, and Honey dissolved, according to the various intentions of the Physician, as to excite the slowness of the belly, and to educe the humours lurking there.

And better to excite the drowsy faculty, something of common Salt, or pretious, may be added, whose virtue in moving the belly is thought to be known by the Bird called *Ibis*, not much unlike a Stork, which with its long bill draws up sea water, and immits it into its *Clysteris inventionem avis edidisse fertur.*

belly, whereby it is purged: hence according to *Galen*, (*præf. sui introduct.*) was the use of Glysters learned. But be sure no Salt be dissolved in the Glysters prescribed to the dissentery, for it will much imbitter the dolour of the intestines.

This Glyster will discuss flatuosity.

A Carminate Glyster.

℞. *Marsh-mallows, Pelitory, tops of Dill, Origanum, Calamint, Southernwood, the flowers of Melilot, and Chamomile, ana m. j. the seeds of Cummin, Anise, Coriander, ana ʒ. ß. boyl them, in the Colature dissolve Honey of Rosemary ʒ. ij. Bened. Laxativ. ʒ. vj. El. de Baccis Lauri ʒ. ß. Ol. Anethi ʒ. iij. fiat Enema.*

Some instead of Oils made by infusion, dissolve ʒ. j. of Oil of Aniseed educed by the chymical art, or a little more or less, as the condition of the body and disease require; which I have oft experienced with success, when I could not have any other to my minde.

Validius purgant clysteres qui pinguia non admittunt.

Here note, that that injection wherein Oil or Butter, or both have been mixed, doth attract the humours more slowly; for the faculty of the Catharticks is dulled with the addition of fats, but the dolour of the intestines is sooner quelled. Oils and Greases are mixed and added rather to mollify and leniate, than attract; As,

℞. *Of the decoction of the four emollient herbs* ℔. *j. dissolve therein Honey of Violets, red Sugar, Catplicon ʒ ʒ j. ß. Oil of Chamomile, fresh Butter, ana ʒ ij. conquass them together*, & fiat Clysmus.

Take notice also, that Injections or Glysters do not onely purge the inferiour intestines, but the middle also, and sometimes the superiour, as when the ventricle is ill affected, and attracts it from the inferiour intestines: so that *Galen* (*cap. 1. lib. 3. de sympt. caus.*) asserts, that some have vomited up part of a Glyster, though elswhere he seems to hold the contrary.

Which may happen also when a Glyster made of Milk, or the decoction of Flesh, is injected into some macilent fellow, with whose sweetness and gratefull warmth his empty ventricle being allured, sucks and attracts the liquor to it self, that it may be refreshed therewith, as we may reade in the Writings of *Avenzoar*, (*Theys. cap.* 18. *tract.* 10. *lib* 1.)

This Glyster is good against the Lethargy, Apoplexy, and other affections of the brain, whereby the senses droop, and the faculties become dull.

℞. *Betony, Marjoran, Calamint, Sage, Origanum, ana m. j. Mercury, Arach, ana m. ij. boyl them with ʒ. ij. of Senna, and ʒ. ij. of Aniseeds; in a pint of the Colature dissolve Honey of Rosemary ʒ. ij. Confectio Hamech, and Hier. Diacolocynthidos, ana ʒ. ß. Salt ʒ. ij.* fiat Clyster.

This Glyster cures the dissentery, or other great flux in the belly.

℞.

℞. *Plantain, Knot-grass, Mullet, ana m.* j. *boyl them in* ℔. j. *of Milk, and* ℔. ß. *of Bean-cod water till the third part be consumed; in the Colature dissolve Bole-armeniack, and Starch, ana* ʒ. ij. *the yolk of one Egge, and so make it into a Glyster.*

SECTION III.

Of such as are extrinsecally applyed; and first,

CHAP. I.

Of Baths.

WHEN we mention a Bath, we mean such an one as is made of sweet water, whether pluvial or fluvial: not such sordid Baths as they have in some places in *Spain*, where they wash, or rather inquinate themselves in urine long kept for that purpose: nor yet those medicinal Baths wherewith many places of the Earth abound; which because of several Minerals they pass through, acquire several sapours, and odours, and eximious faculties in curing many affections. For the Earth produces almost as many Springs of Medicinal Waters, as diseases (*Gal. cap.* 5. *lib.* 1. *de sanitate tuenda*) wherewith *Normandy*, and almost all *France*, and *Germany*, and *Italy* abound. But we here speak of a Bath, which being made of simple water, or the decoction of some herb, may be provided in any house.

Balneorum usus triplex.

Now Baths are instituted for three causes, to wit, for delight, for preservation of sanity, and depulsion of diseases. The antient Romanes were great admirers of Baths for pleasure, and therefore they made Baths for publick uses, both for amplitude and artifice inimitable, the structure being of Alexandrian and Numidian Marble; for the walls were adorned on one side with Thasian stones, on the other with Pictures much recreating the sight; their cocks were of silver, which distilled warm, or hotter water, as they would, into the vessel; for they were so much taken with Lavacres, that some of them, especially their Emperours and Senatours, who had Baths apart, would bathe themselves seven times a day. And seeing Baths are very voluptuous, as *Ulpianus* not without reason attests, the Jews

Balneorum superba structura.

Balnea Romani habebant in deliciis.

that

that lived at *Tripolis* and *Damascus* had Baths for pleasure, wherein men and women bathed promiscuously, before *Antoninus* the Philosophers time, which they therefore called Gymnasies.

Balneorum magna utilitas. To preserve sanity, such as have a hot liver, or squalid skin, are much helped by frequent bathings in warm water, as *Oribasius*, *cap.* 27. *lib.* 1. asserts.

To depell diseases Baths are very usefull; for *Galen* (*cap.* 10. *lib.* 10. *meth. med. c.* 20. *lib.* 12.) commends them in the Hectick Diarian, and sometimes in the putrid feaver, with due observation.

Hippocrates also before *Galens* time attested in many places, that Baths conduce to the cure of many diseases, (*part.* 41. *lib.* 3. *de vict. acutor.*) for they open the pores, discuss the humours, abate the heat of the bowels, take away lassitude, dilute the terrene and melancholical humour, or at least temper and moderate it.

Make a Bath of milk alone, or a very small quantity of water and milk, for such as are rich, and labour under a Hectick Feaver: for such as are not rich, let water suffice, and that fluvial or pluvial rather than fountain water; wherein for more success, coct some parts, or else integral plants, as Marsh-mallows, Mallows, Violets, Vine leaves, and Colesfoot, of each m. iiij. boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water for a Bath.

For the morphew or fedity of the skin, after the emendation of the prave humours, and diminution of blood by purge and phlebotomy, let the body be immerged in the aforesaid Bath, then let him be washed three, four, or more times, if need be, in this following Bath.

℞. *The leaves of Enulacampane, Sorrel, Scabious, ana m. vj. Tutsane and Fumatory, ana m. iij. boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water to fill the Bath.*

Some foolish Wretches believe, that the Leprosy may be cured by a Bath of Mans blood: but this horrible Prescript seems to be an invention of the Devil, and not at all to be admitted; for such a Disease whereby the whole Oeconomy of Nature is ruined, can neither by external application, nor internal assumption, nor by both together, be emended.

Chap. II.

Of a Semicupium, or Insess.

AS a Bath is a Lavacre of the whole body, except the head; which partakes also of the vapours; so an Insess of half the body; for it is a Bath onely of the belly, or a half Bath full of convenient liquor, wherein the diseased may sit up to his ventricle, his legs and feet be put out, called by the Greeks ἡμικύκλιον, by the Latines *Insessus* or *Insessio*, and sometimes *Semicupium*. It is constituted of the same Materials that make up a Bath and Fomentation; and it is less than one, greater than the other. It

It is very usefull, for it mollifies the *Uterus*, reserates its vessels, asswages colical passions, and other dolours caused in the reins by the stone, in the ureters by obstructions, or in other inferiour parts of the belly. *Semicupii usus.*

This *Semicupium* will by the emollition and deduction of the vessels asswage the dolour of the stone in the reins.

℞. *Beets, Marsh-mallows, Mallows, Violets, Pelitory, tops of Dill, ana m. iij. Linsed ℥ ij. boyl all these in rain water, or fountain, till their virtues be transmitted,* pro semicupio.

Some put the materials in some bag, and apply them to the place most pained in the very insession. The body that abounds with crude and viscid humours should be first purged by some convenient Medicament, if time permit; if not, then with a Glyster.

Some make Insessions of the decoction of Tripes to cure the exsiccation, hardness, and tension of the belly, and the colical dolours; some adde milk to them, others wine, others oil.

That colical dolour which arises from much flatuosity, distending and excruciating the belly, may be cured with this *Semicupium.*

℞. *Polium of the mount, Calamint, Origanum, tops of Dill, Melilot, Marjoran, ana m. iij. the seeds of Cummin, Anise, Fennel, Bayberries, ana ℥ j. put them all in two bags, and boyl them in water sufficient for a Semicupium; wherein the diseased must be demerged with his face upward from the knees to the navel.*

CHAP. III.

Of a Vaporary.

A Vaporary consists of the same things a *Semicupium* is made of, though in less quantity; for it is enough that a few herbs or such things be cocted in a Kettle, and the vapour thereof traduced through a hole in a chair whereon the diseased sits, to move the Uterus or Fundament; for it is onely made to reserate the Uterus, to evoke or stay Flowers, to open or constringe the Hemorrhoides, to asswage dolour, and to alter some intemperancy.

To provoke Flowers, lest the vapour should be disgregated and exhaled into the ambient air, the perforated chair whereon the diseased woman sits, should be accurately involved in many cloaths; for so the ascendent vapour will be easily carried to the privities; and permeating the orifice of the vessels, will attenuate the blood, and excite it to motion.

This Receipt is fit to move Flowers and Hemorrhoides.

℞. *Marsh-mallows, Mugwort, Calamint, Hyssop, Winter-savoury,*

Marjoran, ana m. j. Savin m. ij. the flowers of Melilot, Chamemile, and Jaſmine, ana m. ß. let the Decoction be made in water, and in a fourth part of white wine, and let the vapour be admitted as above.

This Preſcription is accommodate to ſtay both fluxes, to wit, of Flowers and Hemorrhoides.

℞. *Shepherds purſe, Knot-graſs, Mouſe-ear, Plantain, ana m. j. Roſes m. ij. Balauſtians m. j. boyl them in Bean cod water; let the vapour enter in at the genitals.*

This will aſſwage and allay the dolour of the Hemorrhoides.

℞. *Mullein m. ij. Marſh-mallows m. j. Linſeed ʒ. ß. boyl them in milk; and whil'ſt they are hot, put them in a ſtool-pan, and ſit upon it, that the vapour may ingrede the fundament.*

Chap. IV.

Of an Hypocauſt, or Sudatory.

Hypocauſtum quid.

AN Hypocauſt is a place made like a little Fornace, wherein ſweat is procured, by dry heat aſcending through, like Spiracles, from the fire ſet under it. It is called by another name, to wit, *Laconicum*, becauſe the Laconians chiefly uſed it, as the Romanes did baths. It conduces much in frigid and diuturnal diſeaſes; for ſeeing its fervid and ſharp heat doth not onely calefy the external habit of the body, but the very *præcordia* and internals alſo; it potently opens the paſſages, calefies, melts, and by ſweat educes the humours.

Unde dicatur Laconicum. Ejus uſus.

But ſeeing this external calour continually thus occurring and inſinuating it ſelf into the internals, doth ſpeedily project the humours, it can ſcarce be tolerated one quarter of an hour without diſſipation of the ſpirits, and loſs of ſtrength, whereupon ſwoundings often follow: but the more delicate, and ſuch alſo whoſe bodyes are loaden with impure excrements, are chiefly in danger of this delinquency. He therefore that conſults his ſanity, ſhould never enter theſe Sudatories till he have by purge and phlebotomy, if need be, exonerated his body; for ſo the reliques of thoſe humours that infeſt his body, may be eaſily projected by ſudour.

The Ruſticks cuſtome is irreproveable, who being deſtitute of an Hypocauſt extracted by due and artificial induſtry, take a Hogſhead of a juſt magnitude, and calefy it either by a fire, or by ſetting it over a pan full of burned coals, or a veſſel full of hot water, and ſet therein, ſweating profuſely, and with eaſe, without any danger of ſwounding.

Some will ſit in an oven where bread is but lately drawn out, put their heads onely out at the mouth thereof, and ſo ſweat abundantly.

Chirurgeons

Chirurgions have invented a certain Æſtuary of a vimineous texture, like a Bird-cage, wherein they excite ſuch to ſweat as are infeſted with the French diſeaſe; which they properly call a Cage, wherein the Birds do not nouriſh, but are nouriſhed.

Theſe miſerable Wretches are included herein with hot bricks, and almoſt ſuffocated, till they ſweat abundantly in every part of their bodyes, having before drunk of the Decoction of *Lignum ſanctum*, or *Sarſaparilla*, or ſome other Alexitery, which will both move ſweat, and deleate the French diſeaſe.

Chap. V.

Of Fomentations.

Foments are ſo commodious, that no part of the body is averſe to their ſanative operations. *Aetius* preſcribes this Medicament to ſore eyes. *Trallian*, (*initio lib. 6.*) to the ears, to the flux of the belly, yea, he thinks them convenient to aſſwage any dolour. *Celſus*, (*cap. 12. lib. 3.*) admits of Foments in Feavers, and thinks they ſhould not be omitted, but by all means applyed to pleuritical, hepatical, ſplenical, and arthritical perſons, as alſo to the calculative, or other parts affected, where the ulcer hath not diſſolved the continuity, nor divided the integrity. For *Oribaſius*, (*cap. 29. lib. 9.*) ſaith, they rarify the skin for tranſpiration, attenuate the blood, diſcuſs part thereof, and ſo operate, that the parts affected are not ſo dolorous.

Foments therefore are made for many purpoſes, as thus to roborate the ventricle.

A Foment roborating the ſtomack.

℞. *Wormwood, both the Mints, tops of Dill, Roſes, of each m. ij. Penniroyal, Marjorum, of each m. j. Balauſtians, Cyperus nuts bruiſed, of each ℥ j. boyl them in water, with a fourth part of wine added towards the end of the Coction, and foment the ventricle with ſponges dipped therein, as hot as can be ſuffered.*

Trallian preſcribes many Foments to the ſplenetick affections, which conſiſt of ſuch things as roborate it, or as incide and digeſt the humours, or as change and alter its intemperance. This Foment after purgation doth remove obſtructions, and roborate it.

A Fotus for the ſpleen.

℞. *Cetrarch, or Spleen-wort, Roman Wormwood, Stæchados, Tamaris, of each m. ij. Broom flowers, Faſmine, of each m. j. boyl them in water and wine for a good ſpace, and to every pint of the Decoction adde Oil of Capars ℥ iij. with which foment the part affected, either with ſponges, or bladders filled and applyed.*

This Foment is very good to cure the Pleuriſy.

For the Pleurisy. ℞. *Marsh-mallows, Mallows, Violets, of each, m. ij. the flowers of Melilot and Chamomile, tops of Dill, of each m.* j. *Linseed* ℥. j. *boyl these either in water or milk*, and foment the side either with cloaths or spunges dipped therein.

After the foment, liniate the part with some lenitive Oil, as Oil of Lillyes, Almonds, or Violets, or else with new Butter.

This foment, for the diseased of the Stone, must be applyed to the region of the reins.

Fotus pro calculosis. ℞. *Water-cresses, Pelitory, Beets, Violets, of each m. ij. Fænugreek* ℥. *ij. boyl them in Hydromel, and foment the reins therewith.*

Chap. VI.

Of Epithemaes.

Differentia inter fotum & epithema. Some make no difference betwixt a Foment and an Epithema; but *Fernelius* rightly asserts them to be different Medicaments, both from their forms, and their efficacy, seeing a Foment endued with many qualities, may be constituted many wayes, and applyed to many parts. But an Epithema is chiefly eximious for two qualities, to wit, alterative, whereby it emends some distemper; and roborative or alexiterial, whereby it strengthens the heart, and oppugns some kinde of poyson, and for the most part applyed onely to the regions of the heart and liver.

Epithematum materia. They consist of distilled, cordial, and alterative waters, or liquid decoctions, mixed with powders of singular virtues, wherein the proportion of powder is of one scruple, or half a dram to every ounce of water, which we mix with a little vinegar.

Some Alexipharmacal Confection is sometimes diluted in stead of powders, as in some pestilent season, or in some malignant distemper, which impairs the strength of the heart, and faculties of the diseased; for in such a case it is most secure to mix some Antidote or Mithridate with the Epithema.

This Epithema doth refrigerate and roborate the liver inflamed with a Feaver.

An Epithema cooling the liver. ℞. *of the waters of Succory, Endive, Water-lillyes, and Plantain, of each* ℥. *iij. Vinegar of Roses* ℥. j. *Pulvis Triasant.* ℥. j. ʃ8. *Diarrhadon Abbatis* ℥. j. *Troches of Camphor* ℥. ʃ8. *fiat Epithema*; and with a cloth dipped in it, bathe the region of the liver.

An Epitheme thus confected, will muniate and preserve the heart, and strength of the vital faculties.

An Epithema to comfort the heart. ℞. *of the waters of Bugloss, Scabious, Carduus, Sorrel, Roses, of each* ℥. *iij. spec. diamarg. frigid. Triasant. of each* ℥. j. ʃ8. *Powder of Tormentill, Gentian, Dictamus, and grains of Kermes, of each* ℥. ʃ8. with which besprinkle a linnen cloth, and apply it hot to the region of the heart.

The

The Antients much commended the use of Scarlet cloth; which is not approved of by the more recent, because in its tincture it is infected with much Arsenick: but I approve of it in poysonous diseases, seeing poysons in such a case are often salutiferous.

Chap. VII.

Of Lotion.

WE understand not by Lotion here a bath of cold water, as *Oribasius, (cap. 7. lib. 1.)* and *Paulus, (cap. 51. lib. 1.)* do, but the ablution of some particular member in some medicinal decoction, to take away its filth, correct its distemper, digest its humour, roborate its parts, mitigate its dolour, and to conciliate sleep. This Decoction will by ablution of the head kill Lice.

℞. *Staves-acre* ℥. *ij. Wormwood, Tansy, Betony, the lesser Centaury, of each m. ij. Coloquintida seeds* ℥. ß. boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water till a third part be consumed, and with a sponge wash his head. A Lotion to kill lice.

This Lotion will denigrate the hairs of hoary heads; which I prescribe to such old women as would not betray their age to their husbands by their whiteness.

℞. *The bark of Oke and Elm, of each* ℥. *ij. Galls* ℥. *ij. the bark of Wallnuts* ℔. ß. *the leaves of the Pomegranate tree, and Mirtle, of each m.* ß. *boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water, adde thereunto Alume* ℥. *ij. Vitriol* ℥. j. after the Colature, wash the hairs therewith, letting it dry in the Sun.

Yet *Galen (cap. 1. lib. 1. de comp. med. loc.)* professes, that he never exhibited any thing to such as adorned themselves for their own or others delight; for this were all one as to paint a Sepulcher.

In times past men washed their heads more frequently than now adayes; which caused of late this Proverb, *Wash your head never, feet seldome, hands often.*

This Lotion made of the decoction of such Simples, will mitigate calour, and soporate the senses, will by ablution of the feet therein conciliate sleep.

℞. *Lettice m. iij. Betony, Water-lillyes, of each m. ij. Poppy flowers, m.* j. boyl them in water, and wash the feet therewith. A Lotion to wash the feet, to cause rest.

Chap. VIII.

Of an Embroche, or Aſperſion.

BY Embrochation we mean the irrigation of ſome part affected, with ſome Oil, Decoction, or Liquor accommodated to the cure of that diſtemper, diſtilled thereon like rain; and hence Embroche, from the Greek word ἐμβρέχω, to rain. This Medicament, according to *Aetius*, (*cap.* 172. *ſer.* 3. *tetr.* 1.) is uſed when bathing is for ſome circumſtances prohibited. And as it is the decoction of Poppy and Chamemile, it conduces much to ſuch as are infeſted with night-watches, feavers, and delirations. *Archigenes* ſeeing his Maſter *Agathinus* to rave becauſe of his long wakes, freed him both from his deliry and wakings, by irrigating his head with much hot Oil.

Theſe irrigations ſeem to differ from foments onely in this, that they are diſtilled upon the part from on high, the foments being onely applyed thereunto by ſponges, cloaths, or in bags.

Irrigatio. Now according to *Oribaſius*, (*cap.* 23. *lib.* 9.) we uſe irrigation onely when ſome inflammation muſt be reſolved, or ulcer ſuppurated; but aſperſion in waſhing the face, and in hot feavers, and that in Summer with cold water, in Winter with warmer. Yet in more ſimple Feavers, as alſo in the ſubverſion of the ſtomack, we uſe water mixed with vinegar in aſperſion. We uſe aſperſions alſo to cure eyes infeſted with fluxes, by the decoction of Baſil, which is moſt efficacious, ſubjecting a dry ſponge under the chin, leſt the water run down to the breaſt.

Aſperſio.

An Embroche or Irrigation is compounded of Simples cocted in Wine, Water, Lees, or Oil, as this ſame for the Lethargy.

Embroche capitis. Rx. *Cyperus, Calamus Aromaticus, Orris, Bay tree, of each* ℥ ß. *Sage, Roſemary, Penniroyal, Calamint, Stœchados, of each m.* ß. *Squinant, Coriander ſeed, Cummin ſeed, of each* ℥ ij. *boyl theſe in three pints of water till the third part be conſumed; adde to the Colature Aquavitæ* ℥ iij. *beſprinkle this on the head.*

An Irrigation to conciliate ſleep conſiſts of Simples endued with quite contrary qualities, and is thus made:

Rx. *Lettice, m.* ij. *Water-lillyes, white Roſes, of each m.* j. *Poppy flowers, Betony, of each m.* ß. *boyl theſe, and let the Colature be ſprinkled on the head.*

To Irrigation we may refer the Stillicide or Laver of medicated waters; but it is not now our intention to treat thereof, but will proceed.

Chap.

CHAP. IX.

Of a Liniment.

A Liniment is of a middle consistency betwixt an Unguent and Oil, being more liquid than an Unguent, and more crass than Oil, for it admits of a very little Wax and Fat in its confection, and therefore is not fluid without incalescence at the Fire or Sun. Its basis is Oil, whereunto sometimes is added a little of resinous Fat with Wax; yet not so much, but it still retains its soft consistency; for a Liniment is nothing but a very soft Unguent; to the confection whereof any Oil may be assumed, so it be accommodated with faculties requisite to the intended scope. And therefore almost every Liniment being paregorical and lenitive, is confected either of simple Oil, or of Oil of Almonds, Violets, or such like, which will not excessively alter any temper, as this same to abate the dolour of the side in a Pleurisy. *Linimentum quid.*

℞. *Oil of sweet Almonds* ℥ *ij.* ʃ*ß. fresh Butter* ℥ *j. a little Wax to make it up into a Linctus; anoint the side therewith.* *Litus ad pleuritidem.*

Now to mitigate some dolour caused by a frigid humour, some Oil must be assumed; which is calid in the same degree, that it may correct the humours distemper. As on the contrary, this Liniment made of refrigerating Oils, will amend the distemper, and assuage the dolour caused by a calid humour.

℞. *Oil of Water-lillyes* ℥ *ij.* ʃ*ß. Oil of Roses* ℥ ʃ*ß. Wax* ʒ *iij. Let them be melted for a Liniment.*

℞. *Oil of Violets* ℥ *ii. the musilidge of Marsh-mallow roots, or Linseed* ℥ *i. a little Wax to make it a Liniment, and apply it to the part affected.*

This Liniment will mitigate a cold distemper.

℞. *Oil of Chamomile, and Dill, of each* ℥ *i.* ʃ*ß. Ducks fat* ℥ *i. Wax* ʒ *iii. let these be melted together, and make a Liniment.* A Litus for a cold distemper.

CHAP.

Chap. X.

Of Mucagines, or Muſliges.

BEcauſe there is often mention made of Mucagines, which are either applyed alone, or mixed with other Medicaments, our Inſtitution leads us now to ſpeak a little thereof.

Now this Mucilage is efficacious in mollifying, humectating, and leniating ſome dolour, as that ſame which is extracted from glutinous roots and ſeeds; ſometimes it digeſts and attracts, as that ſame which is educed out of many gums. The ſeeds of Line, Fœnugreek, Mallows, Quinces, Flea-wort, and Marſh-mallow roots, as alſo their roots macerated in warm water, are very mucaginous. Figs alſo, Gum Arabick, *Tragacanthum*, and Iſinglaſs, if they be a whole night infuſed in water, or other liquor, and the next day recalefied, and ſtrongly expreſſed through a new cloth or bag, will dimit much mucaginous matter. Thus the mucage of *Bdellium*, *Sagapenum*, *Ammoniacum*, and *Galbanum*, is extracted to make up the confection of the mucilaginous Emplaiſter.

To every ounce of water, or other liquor, they ordinarily impoſe an ounce of ſeeds, or roots: but if the Mucage ſhould be more craſs, then the quantity of roots or ſeeds muſt be augmented; if more liquid, diminiſhed, as one dram of ſeed to an ounce of water.

This Muſlidge applyed to an inflammation, helps much.

A Muſlidge againſt inflammation.

℞. *The roots of Marſh-mallows* ℥. ß. *Flea wort ſeed* ℥. ij. *infuſe them upon hot embers for a day and a half in Night-ſhade water; afterwards ſtrain it, and apply it to the part affected.*

This Mucage mitigates the dolour of the eyes cauſed by heat.

Another to the pain of the eyes from a hot cauſe.

℞. *Quince kernels* ℥ iij. *infuſe them a whole night in the water of Night-ſhade, Water-lillyes, and Eye-bright, ana* ℥ i. ß. *in the morning extract the Muſlidge, and apply it to the part grieved.*

Chap.

Chirurgeons

Chap. XI.

Of Collyryes.

IT is not enough that a Medicament be accommodated to an affection onely, but it must be fitted to the part affected also; for we do not prescribe one Medicament to the ears, mouth, nose, and belly, but exhibit a singular Medicament to each, as will best fit it. The eyes have their peculiar Medicaments, called Collyryes, which are endued with eximious qualities respecting their affections eximiously; such as *Galen* speaks of, (*libro de oculis, & libris* 4, *&* 5. *compositi. medicament. loc.*) as also *Paulus* and *Aetius* in many places.

There are two kinds of Collyryes; the one dry, called by the Arabians *Sief*; by the Grecians, ξηροκολλύρια; by the Latines, *Collyria ficca*; the other humid, ὑγροκολλύρια, which are by the more recent called Collyries absolutely, either because by their liquid form they are better accommodated to application, the eyes not tolerating a hard and crass remedy; or else because they are made of dry Collyries, levigated upon a Marble, and dissolved in water, or such convenient liquor. Some of the humid Collyries are of the consistency of Honey, or a soft Unguent, as *Tutia* redacted to the form of an Unguent, by much ustion and lotion, with the juice of Fennel, or other convenient liquor. Others are altogether liquid and fluxile, as all those which are made of the waters of Eye-bright, Roses, or Plantain, with a small quantity of white Trochisks. *Collyriorum differentia. Collyria ficca.* *Tuthiæ præparatio.*

These should be reposed in glass vessels, as the more solid in earthen pots.

And as a multitude of ocular affections are cured by Collyries, so a multiplicity of materials go to their confecture; as the whole Family of Medicaments, whether of Minerals, Animals, or Plants, from which either Powders can be efringed, or Waters distilled, or Juices extracted, or Excrements desumed.

When you would quicken the sight, make an oxydorcical Collyrie of such Medicaments as cure caligation, as the galls of Animals, the waters of Salendine and Eye-bright, or the water of Community; which confect thus.

℞. *Eye bright m. iij. Salendine, Fennel, Vervine, Fumatory, ana m. ij. Rue, Balm, ana m. j. Cloves, Mace, long Pepper, ana ʒ. ß. macerate them a whole night in equal parts of white Rose-water, and white Wine; then distill of the water, with which wash the eyes.* A water to quicken the sight.

This Collyrie will cure the pruriginous scabies of the eye-brows.

* White. For the scabies of the eye-lids

℞. *White wine,* * *Rose water, ana* ℥ j. ʃ8. *Hepatick Aloes finely pulverized,* ʒ j. *mix them, and make thereof a Collyrium.*

This Collyrie will roborate and refrigerate.

A cooling and strengthening water for the eyes.

℞. *The water of Plantain, and red Roses, ana* ℥ *ij. whites of Eggs* ʒ. ʃ8. *mix them, and beat them well together, and make thereof a Collyrie.*

This Collyrie applyed to the eyes, will asswage their dolour.

For the pain of the eyes.

℞. *The waters of Purslain and Plantain, ana* ℥ j. ʃ8. *the mucilidge of Quince seeds made in Night shade water* ℥ j. *mingle them,* & fiat Collyrium.

This Collyrie will most efficaciously desiccate, roborate, and refrigerate.

A water strengthening and drying.

℞. *The water of Mouse-ear, white Roses, and Plantain, ana* ℥ j. *Troch. alb. Rhasis* ʒ *i. Tutty prepared* ʒ. ʃ8. fiat Collyrium.

This Collyrie, commonly called *Eleiser*, roborates the eye, and hinders the lapse of the fourth membrane, or *uvea*; and it is thus confected.

Collyrium Eleiser.

* Knotgrass.

℞. *Antimony, Lapis Hematit. ana* ʒ *x. Acacia* ℥ ʃ8. *Aloes* ʒ j. *let them be finely powdered,* & cum aqua * Corrigiolæ fiant Trochisci; *and when occasion calls for them, dissolve one of them in white Rose water.*

This other Collyrie, which hath its denomination of Lead, is endued with a sarcotical and consolidative faculty; and is thus made.

A Collyrie of Lead.

℞. *Burnt Lead, Antimony, Tutty washed, burnt Brass, Gum Arraback, Traganth, ana* ℥ j. *Opium* ℥ ʃ8. *make of these a Powder, and with white Rose water form them into Trochisks, which dissolve in white Rose water.*

This Collyrie of *Lanfrancus*, so called, in whose Works I could never yet finde it, is excellent against the French disease, and is thus described by the antient Writers.

Collyrium Lanfranci.

℞. *White Wine* ℔ j. *of the water of Plantain and Roses, of each as much as will suffice. Auripigmentum* ʒ *ij. Verdigrease* ʒ j. *Aloes, Myrrhe, ana* ℈ *ij. let these be finely powdered, and make thereof a Collyrium.*

CHAP.

Chap. XII.

Of Virgins milk.

Virgins milk is one of those Medicaments which the sedulity of our age hath invented; the making of which works no small admiration in the Vulgar, whil'st of two unicolourous juices mixed together they educe a third, white, viscid and lent substance, like milk, to the spectators eyes. Thus many exhibiting a specimen of their ingeny, are believed to do miracles, while they onely unfold Natures secrets. Now it is called Virgins milk, partly from its colour, whereby it is like milk, partly from its consistency and virtues, wherein it is eximious, even to delete the freckles of the skin, which change and adulterate the virgin and genuine colour of the face. This topical Medicament is made after many wayes, whereof this is the most ordinary Receipt. *Lac virginale cur dicitur.*

℞. *Litharidge of Gold finely powdered* ʒ iij. *white wine vinegar, of the best and strongest,* ℔. ß. *mingle them together, stir them with a wooden spatula for three hours, afterwards filter the liquor through a brown paper, in the form of a funnel, into a glass drop by drop: to that which is filtrated, adde pluvial or fountain water, in which dissolve a little salt, upon the mixtion whereof a milk will appear.*

This is also an usual form.

℞. *White wine vinegar* ℔. ß. *Litharidge of Gold finely powdered* ʒ j. *boyl them together till the third part be consumed, and to the Colature adde a little Oil of Tartar, and it will become white.*

It may also be thus confected.

℞. *Ceruse* ʒ. ß. *Litharidge* ʒ j. *Trochisks of Camphor* ʒ. ß. *the strongest Vinegar* ℔. ß. *macerate them three or four hours, afterwards filtrate them, and to the filtration adde the water of Bean flowers, or Plantain, or Roses; in which dissolve a little Salt, and it will become white.*

It is very good against the redness of the face, and pimples, and roughness of the skin. *Ejus virtus.*

Chap. XIII.

Of Alume water.

THE affinity of the qualities minde me of another water of extmious virtues, which derives its denomination from Alume, which is its basis. Since many Juices ingrede its confection, which are better new than old, it can scarce be made before or after Summer, but about the end of *August*, or the beginning of *September*; for then the juice of Grapes is most copious, and most acid, being immature, and therefore more accommodate to confect this water.

Being extrinsecally applyed, it cohibits and deterges inflammations, pimples, and other infections of the skin; adhibited also above the tongue that grows black by the acuteness of a Feaver, it will not onely delete its roughness, but so moderate its calour, as to reduce it to its natural heat.

I shall here exhibit its more usual and approved description, whereunto a skilfull Medick may easily adjoyn another, if the particular nature or condition of any affection require it; and thus it is confected.

Aqua aluminosa magistralis. Rx. *Of the juices of Plantain, Purslain, Grapes, Roch-alume, ana* ℔. j. *whites of Eggs, nº. xij. mix them well together with a spatula, and afterwards distill them in an Alembick.*

Some, by mixing the juice of Nightshade and Limons with it, make it more prevalent against filth and lice, and other affections of the skin; and they call it the Magisterial Alume water.

Chap. XIV.

Of a Frontal.

A Frontal, which the Greeks call ἀνακόλλημα, is a Medicament, which imposed on the forehead, doth help the head-ach; and it is often exhibited to extinguish its ardour, and conciliate sleep, when in long Feavers too much waking hath dejected the strength, corrupted the blood, and exagitated the mind. For then a topical, refrigerative Hypnotick applyed to the frontispiece of the head, will be very salutiferous, by abating the dolour, mitigating the fervour, tempering the blood, and cohibiting the ascendent fumes. *Nicholaus Myrepsius* tells us, that a Frontal duely confected, and rightly

rightly adhibited to the eyes, cures lippitude, and abundant fluours. But we must take heed we do not adhibit humectative and refrigerative Frontals to a flegmatick brain, or old men in winter, especially seeing they are not meet for such in summer, nor yet for any of a cold nature. But they may be successfully applyed to young men, and such as are cholerick, or infested with some hot disease, which alwayes causes great dolour in the head at any time. *Quibus frontalia bene vel male conveniunt.*

But the use of Frontals is no way safe for young girls, whose *Cranium* yet gapes, and whose *Vertex* is yet moveable, especially such as admit Vinegar in their composition, which is an enemy to the brain; or are endued with a narcotical, or with a refrigeratory or calefactory quality, or any other eximious faculty in excess.

They indeed are very expetible which by the first degrees change the distemper of the four qualities, cohibit vapours, gently soporate the senses, and roborate the brain.

All Frontals are either somewhat humid, or altogether dry; the humid are of multifarious forms and consistencies, for they are either made in form of an Unguent, or of a Liniment, or of an Opiate, or of a *Cerato malagma*; as when some oleaginous Medicaments are super-added to brayed herbs, and a Frontal formed of the mixture.

Neither are dry Frontals uniform, but confected of leaves and flowers, either integral, or pulverated and sowed in a double Syndon, or pure cloth.

This Frontal is accommodate to women.

℞. *Of the leaves of Lettice, and Betony cut small, and of Rose leaves, ana m.* j. *madefy those in Oxyrrhodino, and make thereof a Frontal.*

This Frontal will assuage the fervour of the head, and conciliate sleep.

℞. *Conserves of Water-lillyes* ℥ *vj. of Roses* ℥. ß. *of the flower of Poppyes p.* ij. *beat them together in a mortar with a little Unguent Populeon,* & fiat Frontale. *Fervorem mitigans, somnumque concilians.*

Chap. XV.

Of Cataplasms and Pultises.

THis soft Medicament, which onely extrinsecally applyed, doth asswage dolour, repell, mollify, relax and calefy, as also move, vacuate and digest corrupt matter, is called both by Greeks and Latines *Cataplasma*. It hath the consistency of a Pultis, whence it often borrows a name; though in proper loquution, *Puls* is rather an Aliment, and *Cataplasma* a topical Medicament, which is not confected solely of Honey, wherein some Simples or Compounds accommodate to that purpose have been cocted, as the Antients used to make it; but of Roots, Herbs, Meal, Oil and Butter; and very often, and that successfully, by clinical women, of Milk, Bread crums, Oil, and the yolks of Eggs, to mitigate, leniate, and concoct. And he that calls a Cataplasm thus compounded a Pultis, and a Pultis made of Barley meal, the mucaginous matter of Linseed, and Eggs yolks, a Cataplasm, doth erre nothing, according to *Fernelius*; for both have the same consistency, to wit, a mean betwixt an Unguent and a Salve; and as it were the result of both their materials compounded together, both have the same method in confecture, and in use.

Fernelius thinks, that the Antients used *Cataplasma* and *Malagma* for the same thing: but *Galen*, *(initio lib. 7. de comp. med. gen.)* according to the meaning and opinion of the Antients, names those Medicaments alone Malagms, which mollify parts preternaturally obdurated: so that a malactical and mollitive Medicament, and a Malagm do not at all differ, nor constitute distinct species, as 'tis very probable.

Pultises then are constituted of Roots, Leaves, Stalks cocted to a putrilency, Meal, Fat, and Oil. If dry Plants be required, they must be pulverated; if green, cocted till they liquefy, then stamped in a mortar, trajected through a searce, and mucaginous fat, or oleaginous matters added to the pulped matter, and sometimes meal; and then must they be again cocted, till they acquire the crassitude of a Pultis.

This Cataplasm will asswage dolour, and mollify obdurateness.

Anodynum & malacticum. ℞. *The roots of Lillyes and Marsh mallows, ana ℥ ij. Mallows, Pelitory, Violets, ana m. ij. boyl them till they become soft, beat them small, and pulp them through a sieve, to which adde Linseed ℥ ij. Oil of Lillyes ℥ iij.*

One made of the powder of Linseed cocted in Hydreol to a just consistency, will exceedingly mollify and mitigate any dolour.

This

This Cataplasm will educe viscid humours, open the pores, and dissipate flatuosity.

℞. *Briony root* ℔. j. *Sowbread root* ℥ *iij. Mercury m. ij. boyl them till they become soft in water with a fourth part of white wine, bruise them, and traject them through a sieve; to the pulp adde powder of Bay-berryes* ℥ ß. *powder of Fennel seeds and Cummin, and Chamomile flowers, ana* ʒ *ij. Lupines and Fænugreek, ana* ℥ j. *Oil of Orris as much as suffices, to make a Cataplasm.* *Flatus dissipans.*

A Cataplasm made of common bread, which they call *Syncomistum*, is good for all things, if we believe *Oribasius*; For (saith he) it is convenient almost for all inflammations, when it is confected with water and oil of Roses. *Syncomistum.*

That also is good for many dolours which is confected of leavened bread and oil, for it ripens obdurateness, heals contusions, attracts lurking humours to the skin, digests and resolves them.

There are various forms of Pultises recorded in every Author, which here to rehearse would be as endless as useless, since these few examples may suffice.

Chap. XVI.

Of Catapasms, Empasms, and Diapasms.

ODoriferous Powders compounded of many Aromatacs, which for fragrancy and suavities sake are strewed upon cloaths, are properly called Catapasms. Those Powders also which after litation are applyed to some part of the body, as to the stomack for its roboration, and those odoriferous Powders which are made for Condiments, and other uses; as Sarcotical, for generation of flesh in ulcers; Catheretical, for absumption in superfluous flesh; Epulotical, for the induction of a skar, are called Catapasms, (*Paul. c.* 13. *l.* 7.) But because we have treated of these before, we shall not further prosecute that subject; neither would we have spoken a word thereupon, but for that same paranomasy there is betwixt a Catapasm and a Cataplasm. *Catapasma quid.*

The less affinity falling in the denominations of Empasm and Diapasm, leads us to shew their difference each from other, as also how they both differ from a Cataplasm.

Now according to *Oribasius*, (*cap.* 31. *lib.* 10.) those are Empasms which are adhibited to cohibit immoderate heat, or other exhalations, or to scarify the extremity of the skin, or to remove a Pleurisy. Those Diapasms, which are accommodated to conciliate suaveolence to the skin or body, either by way of Powder, Unguent, or Liniment. Those Cataplasms, which are confected after the former description, and for the uses we mentioned in the foregoing Chapter. *Empasma quid* *Diapasma quid*

Empasms

Empaſms are either uſed to ſtay the immoderate fluour of ſweat, which is not critical, but diſſolves Natures ſtrength, or to help the Hydroptical, Sciatical, or Orthopnoical Patients. Thoſe that ſtay and cohibit the profuſion of ſudours, conſiſt of Parget, dry and levigated Mirtle, Pomegranate pils, Syrian Sumack, Sorb apples dryed and brayed, Galls, Acacia, and ſuch like Aſtrictives. Thoſe that help ſuch as are diſeaſed with the Dropſy, ſuch as are infeſted with the Sciatica, and ſuch as cannot breathe unleſs they hold their neck ſtrait up, are confected of Sand, burned Wine lees, Nitre, Salt, Sulphur, Muſtard, Water creſſes, Pepper, Pelitory, and ſuch like ſharp Ingredients, whereof Sinapiſms alſo are made, which act and produce the ſame effect with Empaſms.

Chap. XVII.

Of Sinapiſms and Phænigms.

A Sinapiſm is a kinde of Cataplaſm, for their conſiſtency is alike, though their faculties be diſtinct: for Sinapiſms conſiſt of one quality, and are alwayes calefactory; Cataplaſms of many; and thence they calefy, refrigerate, mollify, relax, &c. A Sinapiſm is ſeldome or never adhibited in acute diſeaſes, neither by way of tabel nor colliquament, as *Oribaſius* notes, (*cap.* 13. *lib.* 10.) but in Lethargies, Apoplexies, or the Night-mare, and in ſtupid natures, that the dullneſs of the ſenſe may be excited, the faculty awakened, the heat acted, and the humour diſcuſſed.

The manner of making a Sinapiſm is thus deſcribed by *Oribaſius* and *Aetius*, (*cap.* 181. *tetr.* 1. *ſerm.* 3.) *Take dryed Figs, q. v. macerate them a whole day in warm water, afterwards make a ſtrong Expreſſion, and bruiſe the Figs; then take the ſharpeſt and ſtrongeſt Muſtard ſeed, bruiſe it by it ſelf, pouring on a little of the colature of the Figs, which will make it beat more eaſily: but take heed too much be not mixed, leſt it be too thin and liquid; then reduce them into ſmall maſſes, of the Figs and Muſtard, of each equal parts: but if you would have the Sinapiſm ſtronger, take two parts of the Muſtard, and one of the Figs; if weaker, two of the Figs, and one of the Muſtard.*

If the Sinapiſm be made with Vinegar, it is more inefficacious and weak, becauſe Vinegar diſcuſſes the ſtrength of the Muſtard.

The Sinapiſm ſhould be put upon a Linnen cloth, and ſo adhibited to the place, and ſhould be often looked at, to ſee if it have contracted rubour enough by its admotion, for ſome perceive its effect on them ſooner, ſome later, ſo that I cannot certainly define what

ſpace

ſpace of time it muſt abide on the place. But if the Sinapiſm after long admotion act not, nor alter the colour of the skin, it muſt be fomented with hot water with a ſponge, that the faculty of the Sinapiſm may be eaſier intromitted; for the Sinapiſm, by extracting the excrements to the skin, either ulcerates, or at leaſt rubrifies it; whence it is called a Phænigm, that is, a rubrifying Medicament. *Phenigmus.*

After the diſeaſed hath ſufficiently uſed the Sinapiſm, he muſt be bathed, and then have the part affected anointed with oil of Roſes.

Chap. XVIII.

Of Dropax and Pication.

A Dropax is a topical Medicament, ſometimes hard like a ſalve, ſometimes ſoft like a Malagm, as the caſe requires. Now a Dropax is either ſimple, which is made of Pitch, and a little Oil onely; or compound, which admits of many calefactories beſides Pitch and Oil, as Pepper, Bartram, Bitumen, Brimſtone, Salt, and the aſhes of Vine branches. *Dropax quid.* *Differentiæ.*

It is convenient for diuturnal diſeaſes, as *Aetius*, (*cap.* 180. *tetr.* 1. *ſerm.* 3.) ſhews, and muſt alwayes be adhibited both before and after a Sinapiſm; before, that it may prepare the body for a Sinapiſm; and after, that it may exſcind the remaining affections. A ſimple one is thus made. *Quibus morbis conveniat.*

℞. *Of the beſt Pitch, diſſolve it with a little Oil; and while it is hot, dip in a cloth, and clap it to the place affected, and before it is cold pluck it off again; calefy it before the fire, and apply it as before; and before it waxes cold, pull it off; and let this be repeated as often as need requires.*

It helps ſuch as are infeſted with frequent vomits, with collicks, and with crudities; it helps alſo ſuch parts as do not grow, nor partake of the nutriment. *Picatio quibus affectibus conveniat.*

The more compound Dropax is conſtituted of the above mentioned calefactories, when it is preſcribed for the reduction of any part periſhed by cold to its priſtine bonity; and when it is requiſite, that it exſiccate. Then *Oribaſius* (*cap.* 10. *lib.* 1.) adds Salt, Sulphur, Wine, and the aſhes of Vine branches to its confection; and when it ſhould open, *Euphorbium* and *Lymneſtis*, otherwiſe called *Adarce*; and all theſe muſt be brayed and ſtrewed into melted Pitch. *Dropax magis compoſitus.*

The Dropax muſt be applyed while it is hot, the hairs of the place firſt ſhaved off, and a ſpecial care had leſt the ſtrength of the Dropax over-power the diſeaſed.

If the Dropax be ſpeedily pulled off, it confirms the remiſs ſpirits, revokes them to the ſuperficies, and minds them of their work. (*Aetius loco dicto.*) *Dropacis effectus.*

It is ſometimes adhibited inſtead of a Pſylothrum, to evell the hairs of a ſcurfy head; for that malign, filthy, contagious ulcer of the head cannot be perfectly cured, unleſs the hair be firſt evelled or abraded.

Chap. XIX.

Of Pſylothers.

A Pſylother is referred to the coſmical Medicaments, which ſerve chiefly for the bodies culture and ornament, neither Unguent nor Salve, nor yet partaking of any ſpecial form; but a depilatory Medicament, which applyed in any form whatever, will by its quality erode the hairs or down, and ſo make a rough place ſmooth. Now every Pſylother, properly ſo called, having an eroding and burning faculty, doth not onely attenuate, but evell hairs, and for a time utterly denude the place, and therefore muſt not be applyed without great care and prudence; for if it abide too long on the place, eſpecially if it be aduſtive, it will ulcerate the skin, raiſe pimples, and burn like a Cauſtick, or erodes like an Eſcharotical Medicament. *Oribaſius*, (*cap.* 13. *lib.* 10.) reckons theſe for ſuch Depilatories as may be ſafely adhibited, to wit, ſtillatitious Lixive, Arſenick, Sandarach, and *Calx viva*. Yet may ſome of thoſe that exulcerate more vehemently be added to make the Pſylothers more valid, as *Paulus Ægineta* doth in this deſcription, (*cap.* 52. *lib.* 3.)

* *Millepedæ.* Hogs lice. *Pſylothris Pauli.*

℞. * *Aſſellorum domeſticorum* ℥ *ij. Sandarach* ʒ ß. *Lime ſtone* ʒ j. *old Vinegar, the Lixivium of a Fig tree, ana* ℔ ß. *boyl them to the conſiſtency of a Liniment.*

Aſelli domeſtici.

This *Domeſticus Aſellus* is an Animal which lodges under water veſſels, and contracts it ſelf into a lump. The Greeks call them ὄνους, the Latines, *Millepedæ*; the French, *Cloportes*; we, *Palmer worms.*

Rondeletii Pſylother.

Rondeletius preſcribes this Pſylother to abſume hairs, that they may never come again.

℞. *Auripigmentum, Ants egs, Gum Arabick, ana* ʒ ß. *Gum Hederæ* ʒ *ij. and with the blood of a Bat, or juice of Henbane, make it up into a Liniment according to art; a portion whereof muſt be applyed to the place you would have denuded, after you have ſhaved off the hair.*

Oribaſius and *Aetius* call white Vine or Briony a Pſylother, becauſe of its excellent faculty in eroding hairs.

This Pſylother is moſt efficacious, made after this manner.

Another.

℞. *Lime-ſtone* ʒ *ij. Auripigmentum* ʒ ß. *let theſe be boyled in as much Lixivium as will ſuffice, and make thereof a Liniment, with which anoint the place for four hours, afterwards waſh it with clean water.*

It

In the Turks Dominion there is a Mineral they call *Rusma*, which may justly be preferred before all Psylothers for its preheminency in acting; for though it be very temperate, and burn not the part to which it is adhibited, yet it doth speedily and without dolour erode the hairs, denude the place, leaving it very smooth, without any token of a hair. Which that it may be more commodiously applyed, it should be levigated into small powder, and diluted in water with half as much *Calx viva*. The Turkish women, before they go into a Bath, or Hypocaust, adhibit this mixture to their privy members, and arm-holes, which places they much desire alwayes to depilate and glabrify. This *Rusma* is like Iron dross, but lighter, blacker, and seemingly exust, as *Bellonius* observes, (*cap.* 33. *lib.* 3.)

Chap. XX.

Of Vesicatories.

Vesicatorium quomodo a sinapismo & pyrotico differt.

This little extrinsecal Medicament, from its effect in exciting the bladder, we call a Vesicatory. It is a little more vehement than a Phœnigm or Sinapism, which onely rubrifies the superficies of the skin, and more weak than a Pyrotick, which burns the skin; for being adhibited to the skin, it raises the extream surface, and causes blisters; which being broken, emit water in little quantity, if the body be dry, or the Medicament applyed to the superiour parts; in greater quantity, if the body be humid, or hydropical, and it applyed to the inferiour parts, as to the leg: for the skin being broken, the water fluctuating in the belly or legs, will sometimes delabe, and flow from the little ulcer, as from a fountain: but the ulcer is sometimes left dysepulotical.

A Vesicatory applyed behind the ear on that side the tooth affected stands, helps the tooth-ach; and sometimes by its adhibition to the feet, the Gonagry and Podagry are cured; and it is thought to be more conducible to the phlegmatick than the cholerick: yet I saw the Ring-worm perfectly cured by the application of a Vesicatory, which no other presidy could amend. (*Marcellus*, *cap.* 19. *lib. de remed.*) commends it to the cure of tetters, and other affections of the skin. If a Vesicatory be applyed to a wound inflicted by some wild beast, or to a malign sore near the groins, it will evoke the poyson, and very much facilitate the cure. The Rusticks make it of the roots of *Ranunculus* bruised, and apply it; but the Apothecaries make it of Cantharides pulverated and mixed with a little vinegar and leaven: that is the best which is confected of the powder of Cantharides, mixed with the Gumme of *Elemus*. And it is thus made.

Vesicatorium rusticorum.

℞. *Euphorbium, Pepper, Canthar ides, ana* ℈. ß. *and with leaven and vinegar make it into a Vesicatory.*

Chap. XXI.

Of Pyroticks, or Cauteries.

Hippocrates, (*Aph. ult. lib.* 7.) saith right; *What Medicaments cannot cure, the Sword may; what the Sword cannot, Fire may; but what Fire cannot, is altogether incurable.* For a Disease is oft so efferous, as it will yield to no Medicament, but must either be cured by section, or ustion, or both. Now ustion is oft performed with a hot Iron, which were able to terrifie the most magnanimous; in whose stead the sedulity of our Medicks have invented a Medicament, which from its operation and effect they name a Pyrotick; for in its efficacy it resembles fire, by its application it kills the quick flesh, absumes the dead flesh, and perforates the sound part, that it may receive the excretion of the unsound, opens the unsound that it eructate its own excrements. Thus a Pyrotick makes an abscess for the corruption to break through; thus it breaks the impostume, and pertunds the swellings, that each may disgorge its own poyson.

Pyroticks are applyed to divers parts of the body, as sometimes to the head, sometimes to the arms, sometimes to one or other leg, to resolve and divert rheumatick humours. A Pyrotick is sometimes applyed to that same ample production of the *peritoneum*, where the spermatick veins tend to the testicles, for the cure of the bursting disease, that new flesh may supply the place of the morbid, and intercept the passage of the descendant intestine, that so it may be incarcerated in its proper place.

Cauterium ad Herniam.

Many Circulators do so much adhibit this method of curation on the incautious diseased, that they burn both Seminaries and productionary vessels with their oft repeated Pyroticks.

Pyroticorum materia.

Their materials are all adust and caustical, exceeding the fourth degree of heat, as *Calx viva*, Arsenick, *Sublimatum*, Tartar, Orpine, Vitriol, Nitre, and it may be *Lixivium*, as also the result of the ashes of Vine branches.

Conficiendi modum.

Pyroticks have various confections, every one making them according to their own arbitration, and thinking that best they themselves invent. I knew a young Barber as ignorant as could be, who was wont to adhibit a little *Sublimatum* subacted with the Egyptian Unguent, which he earnestly commended for the best and most secure Pyrotick.

Marianus in his Chirurgy much esteems this Pyrotick, which he desumed from *Jo. Vigonius*; and it is thus described.

℞. *Lixivium* ℔. *vj. Soap, Roman Vitriol, ana* ʒ j. *boyl them together in a brass vessel till the liquidness of the water be consumed; and what remains in the bottom, let it be reserved, of which make Cauteries of what magnitude you please.*

Cardanus confected his Cauteries of Soap and Lime alone mixed, beaten and subacted to the form and consistency of an Unguent: but now they are made before the fire, and acquire a more solid and convenient form; as this:

℞. *Lime stone* ℔. j. *Salt petre* ʒ j. *infuse them a whole day in four pints of Lixivium; afterwards stir it well with a spatula, then strain it three or four times, till the water be all poured off, which dry before the fire; or thus, after infusion let the whole mixture be agitated with a rudicle; next day let it be percolated three or four times, till the water be clear; which put in a brass vessel, and coct it over a luculent fire till the water be consumed, but not till all its lentour be exsiccated: then make of that mass many Cauteries of several magnitudes, which preserve in a glass vessel diligently stopped for future use.*

It is also well confected after this manner.

℞. *Of the ashes of Vine branches* ℔ *iiij. Sal Gem.* ʒ *iij. Lime stone* ℔ j. ʃ8. *infuse them for four or five hours in* ℔ *xv. of rain water, which stir well together for a good space, afterwards boyl it a little; and when the whole mixture is perfectly cold, strain it six or seven times through a thick cloth; put the limpid Colature into a brass bason, and coct it till a stony matter be left in the bottome, which form into Pyroticks of different magnitudes.*

Amongst *Pareus* his descriptions I finde a Cautery, ridiculously called *Sericeum*, whose effect not answering his vain pollicitations, I will not here describe.

Chap. XXII.

De Scuto, *or, Of Plaisters made in the form of a Buckler, to be applyed to the stomack.*

MAny Medicaments, as well assumptive as applicative, are prescribed to the frigid distemper, and imbecillity of the ventricle. Gentle Purgatives, and Eustomachical Medicaments, as pils of Aloes, and Rhabarb, *Aromaticum rosatum*, and digestive Powders are assumed.

Cui parti accommodatum. Calefactives and Roboratives, as Liniments, Foments, whereof before, and this *Scutum* whereof we now treat, are applyed.

Scutum cur sic dictum. Now this Medicament peculiar to the ventricle; is so called from its form; it suscitates heat, augments strength, and helps concoction.

It is concinnated of some stomachical Emplaister extended upon a quilted piece of Leather, and applyed. Sometimes there is a piece of Tiffany put betwixt it and the part affected.

But it is more ordinarily confected of dry Medicaments, which roborate the ventricle, involved in bombast, and sewed in a double cloth like a Buckler.

Ventriculum peculiariter respicientia. The abundance of Calefactives and Roboratives suggest to us such plenty of matter, that we may select such as especially respect the ventricle, as Nutmeg, Mace, Cloves, sweet Cane, Squinant, Roses, Mint, Wormwood, and many more, which recreate the spirits by their suaveolence, and help concoction by their calour. A *Scutum* thus confected, is most efficacious for the said uses.

℞. *Cyperus, Lignum Aloes, Calamus Aromaticus, ana* ℥ j. *Squinant, Cinnamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, ana* ℥. ß. *Mace* ℈. j. *red Roses, Marjoran, Wormwood, Mint, ana* ℥ ij. *Sage* ℥ j. *make of these a fine powder, which quilt between two linnen cloaths, cut like the form of a Buckler, and applyed.*

This Description requires less cost.

℞. *Galangal, Orris, Pepper, of each* ℥ j. *Bay berries, Cummin seed, ana* ℥. ß. *both sorts of Wormwood, Mint, Sage, and Rosemary, ana m.* ß. *make of these a Powder, and quilt them between a double sarsnet in cotten wool, and apply it to the region of the ventricle.*

Chap.

Chap. XXIII.

Of Cucufa, and Semicucufa, or quilted Caps.

THE brain being according to *Hippocrates*, (*lib. de grandul.*) as it were a great glandule, and the head, the very ſeat and continent of Plegm, which like a Cucurbite it attracts, a great congeries of frigid humours is alwayes reſident in the head; which unleſs they be vacuated by ſome convenient Medicament, or elſe their continual generation hindred, they will diſtill upon the jaws, lungs, breaſt, and parts ſubjected. Yet many are ſo averſe to vacuate Medicaments, or their brains of ſo frigid a conſtitution, that though often purged, yet will they complain of gravity in their heads, eſpecially if they have been troubled with any noyſe, or ſtood bare-head in the air.

Therefore after univerſal purgation, a convenient Cucufa muſt be adapted to the head like a Cap; Cephalical Powders being inſperged in Cotten, and the Cotten ſewed within a double cloth, and put upon the head to roborate it, to cure its cold diſtemper, and to ſtay the diſtillation.

Now all the matter of theſe Powders wherewith the Coif or Cap is refarciated, is not deſumed from dry Plants, but ſome from Minerals and Animals, which are as delightfull as uſefull.

A Powder thus made, is both good and pleaſant for a roborative Coif.

A Powder for a quilted Cap.

℞. *Cloves, Cinnamon, Calamus Aromaticus, Squinant, Orris, ana* ʒ j. *Bay berries* ℈ ij. *Storax benioin, ana* ʒ ß. *Mace* ℈ j. *Marjoran, Roſemary, ana* ʒ ij. *Moſch* ℈. ß. *make of theſe a Powder, which quilt in a Cap.*

Thoſe that cannot procure a Cucufa thus made, may thus confect one with leſs coſt.

Another for the ſame.

℞. *Betony, Balm, Sage, Stæchados, Roſemary, ana m.* ß. *Bay berries* ʒ iij. *Cummin* ʒ j. *make of all theſe a groſs powder to quilt in a Cap or Coif.*

This Powder may for the ſame purpoſe be ſafely and ſucceſsfully ſtrewed on the hairs of ones head.

In ſum, a Cucufa or Coif, and a Scutum or Buckler, are confected after one and the ſame manner; onely the form of the Coif hath adapted it to the head; the Buckler to the ſtomack, to which parts their faculties are deſtined, as adjutorious; for the one conſiſts of Stomachicals for the ſtomack, the other by Cephalicals is accommodated to the head; whereunto we ſometimes adde aſtrictives, when we would ſtay the Catarrhs.

And as a Cucufa involves the whole Cranium, ſo Semicucufa onely

onely half; as when this Medicinal Powder interbastated in Cotten, is applyed onely to the part affected.

Chap. XXIV.

Of Bags.

When a Physician would use small, or pretty big Seeds that are dry, or integral, and are not of themselves applicable to the part of the body, they must before their adhibition be included in some great or small Bag proportionate to the part affected. A very small Bag is used to cure the noyse in the ears, a large one is adhibited to the Collick and Tympany, that it may cover the whole belly. The magnitude of the Bag applyed to the region of the heart, must be proportionate thereunto; as those, which being confected of cordial and alexiterial Powders, are carried on the region of the heart in time of pestilence, to the presidy of it self and its faculties.

Fomenta sicca. They are either dry, or humid: the dry ones were by the Antients called Foments, who did not distinguish between dry Foments and Bags. They are applyed to many parts of the body, as head, heart, ventricle, liver, spleen, and *Uterus*, in on quadrate form: but they should be long, like an Oxes tongue, that are adhibited to the spleen; and in the form of a Buckler, to the ventricle.

But that the dispensation of the matter may be equal in all the parts of the Bag, it must be transversly stitched all over. That which is applyed to the heart is most what made of Silk, to the other parts of Linnen or Canvas, of a rare contexture.

Calid Bags, which consist of Seeds rubbed and irrigated in Wine or Vinegar, best confer to refrigerated members, and do dissipate flatuosity, evoke and absorb humours; as this for the Collick or Tympany.

A *Sacculus* to collick passions. ℞. *Grumwell seed* ℔. ß. *Bay berries bruised* ℥ iij. *sweet Fennel seed, Dill and Cummin, ana* ℥ j. *common Salt* ℥ ij. *Basil and Marjoran, ana m.* ß. *torrefy them all together in a frying pan, and record them hot in a bag, which induce upon the part affected; and when it grows cold, calefy it, and apply it again; or rather make two, that they may be adhibited by course.*

This Bag is eximious in curing cordial affections.

A *Sacculus* to comfort the heart. ℞. *The roots of Angelica, Orris, Enulacampane, Cyperus, Gentian, Tormentill, ana* ℥ j. *Trochisks of Camphor, Benioin, Storax, ana* ℈ ij. *Alipta moschata, Lignum Aloes, yellow Sanders, ana* ℥. ß. *Mace, Cloves, Squinant, ana* ℈ j. *Kermes, Barberries, Citron pill, ana* ℥ ij. *make of these a gross Powder, and put them in a silken Sacculus for the region of the heart.*

I

I can ſcarce approve of dry Bags for the Pleuriſy, nor yet of ſuch as are made madid with a little vapour, but think humid Foments more conducible; of which before.

Coifs, Frontals, and a Buckler, are accommodated to the head and ſtomack: but Bags are more convenient for the cure of the Lethargy, Apoplexy, and excitation of the drowſy ſenſes; as this:

℞. *Cyperus, Galangal, Cloves, Angelica roots, Bay berries, Cummin, ana* ʒ *ij. Sage, Marjoran, Betony, Stachados, Lavender of both ſorts, ana m. j. make them all into pretty craſs Powder, and interbaſtate it in two Bags for the friction of the skull; for it is moſt convenient to have two Bags, eſpecially when we purpoſe to apply the hot, that while one is adhibited, the other may calefy, and ſo alternately ſucceed each other.*

Chap. XXV.

Of Dentifricies.

THE Teeth are obnoxious to very many vices; for Nigritude deturpates them, Rottenneſs abſumes them, Laxity ſhakes them, and Dolour moſt grievouſly infeſts them. Dentifricies are preſcribed to their nigritude, Aſtrictives to their laxity, Deterſives and Roboratives to their corruption, and a thouſand remedies to their dolour or aches; for every one profeſſes a ſecret Experiment for the Tooth ach. But that which once conduces to their cure, is afterwards often vain, if not diſcommodious.

Many Women would rather endure the Tooth-ach, than their blackneſs; which notwithſtanding the Commonalty regard not: yet ſuch a marcour came upon *Metrodorus* his ſons gums, that both his axle teeth, and alſo his gums, fell out. (*Hip. lib. 5, & 7. epid.*) *Hiſtoria.*

Medicks preſcribe Dentifricies to exterge and dealbate the teeth; in various forms, as of Powder, Opiate, Liniment: but the moſt uſual is of Powder, thus:

℞. *Cuttle bone* ʒ *ij. white Coral, Cryſtal, ana* ʒ *j. Harts horn, Lignum Lentiſci, ana* ℈ *ij. make of them a Powder, with which rub the teeth.* A Powder to make white the teeth.

This Dentifrice alſo will dealbate the teeth.

℞. *Ivory, Pumice ſtone, Harts horn, ana* ʒ *j. Coral* ℈ *ij. Pearl* ℈ *j. Cloves, Cinnamon, Roſes, Roſemary, ana* ℈ *j. make of theſe a Powder, with which rub the teeth.*

A Dentrifrice in form of an Opiate may be thus confected:

℞. *Sea-horſe teeth burnt, Alume, white Coral, ana* ʒ *j. Cuttle bone, Pumice ſtone, ana* ʒ *j. burnt Salt* ℈ *ij. Mace, Cloves, Lignum Lentiſci, ana* ʒ. ſß. *make of theſe a Powder, and with Honey of Roſes an Opiate.* *Dentrificies* in the form of an Opiate.

Some make others in the form of Trochisks, with which when dry and hard, they deterge, purge and dealbate their teeth.

Chap. XXVI.

Of Odoraments.

Hippocrates (initio lib. de medico) went not far from the mark, when he said, that besides other things, artificial culture in apparel, and suaveolence, was requisite to a Physician, wherewith the diseased may be as much delighted, as he is wont to be offended either with ungratefull, or too fragrant odours: for many men hate those odours that either fill the head, or molest the sense, and cause head-ach; and on the contrary, are delighted with the vapours that proceed from suaveolent simples, which recreate the *uterus*, ventricle, heart, and brain. Whereof *Galen*, (*cap. 6. lib. 1. de sympt. caus.*) giving a reason, and proportionating the constitution of odours with them of sapours, (*c. 21. l. 4. de simpl. med. facult.*) saith, *As sapours that are familiar are gratefull and pleasant, and those ungratefull and unpleasant which are not familiar; so those odours that are familiar to the animal spirits, are gratefull and suaveolent thereunto; and those that are not familiar, unpleasant and maleolent.* And as according to *Galen*, sweet meats are temperate, so according to *Scaliger*, suaveolent Medicaments are moderately hot.

Which things being thus, pleasant Odoraments must needs be gratefull to the brain, and principal parts. Yet some of them are hot in the third degree, as Cinnamon, Cloves, and sweet Cane, which we do not use save in small quantity, or intermixed with such things as temper their heat: for Odoraments objected to the nose in great quantity, are graveolent, and hurtfull to the brain; which recreate it in small quantity, because their graveolency is tempered with the ambient air, or with the mixtion of other things. But maleolent things, though tempered with the ambient air, are averse to the brain both in quality and substance; according to *Galen*, (*cap. 10. lib. de instrum. odorat.*) which *Aristotle* also confirms, whil'st (*cap. 24. lib. 8. de Hist. Anim.*) he sayes, that Women may become abortive at the smell of an extinguished Candle.

Maleolentia ingrata, & facultatibus noxia.

Seeing then that suaveolent Odours are consocial to the spirits, and their familiar *Pabulum*, the Physician will not onely acquire praise of the Vulgar by being perfumed, but he will be better able to prescribe Odoraments, both to roborate the spirits, and defend sanity.

Now they are either described in form of an Unguent, or of a Pomander, or of Trochisks, or of Powder. An Odorament in form of Powder is thus confected.

R.

℞. *Calamus Aromaticus* ℥ iij. *Orris Florentine* ℥ ij. *Storax, Benioin, ana* ℥ j. *Roſes* ℈ ij. *Cloves* ℥. ß. *Moſch, Amber, ana* ℥. ß. *make of theſe a Powder.*

Our later Phyſicians extoll an Odorament they call the * Cyprian Odour, or the Violet Odour; which being variouſly deſcribed, every one calls a ſuaveolent or fragrant Powder, or the Cyprian or Violet Powder. * Damask Powder.

An Odorament in form of an Unguent may be eaſily made, if you put the above deſcribed Powder in Oil, Amber, and Wax, that it may acquire a fit conſiſtency. Or thus:

℞. *Yellow Sanders, Calamus Aromaticus, Squinant, Cinnamon, ana* ℥ j. *Storax Benioin, Macè, ana* ℥. ß. *Wax* ℥ iij. *Ol. Moſchelini q. ſ. & fiat unguento.* Or thus:

℞. *Mace, Cinnamon, ana* ℥. ß. *Benioin* ℈ ij. *Civet, Moſch, Amber, ana* ℈. ß. *Camphor gr.* 5. *with Oil of Almonds make it up into an Unguent.*

An Odorate maſs alſo may be made of ſelect Aromataes, whereof Pomanders or Trochisks may be formed, whoſe ſuaveolence is of great eſteem; as,

℞. *Citron pill dry, Cinnamon, Labdanum, ana* ℥ j. *Storax* ℥ ij. *Mace, Cloves, Lignum Aloes, Orris, ana* ℥. ß. *Camphor* ℈ ſ. *Moſch, Civet, Amber, ana* ℈. ß. *with muſilidge of Gum Traganth make it into a maſs, of which make Pomanders or Trochisks.*

Chap. XXVII.

Of Perfumes, and Suffumigatories.

ALL ſweet Odours exhilarate the ſpirits, but many will not communicate their ſcent ſave by fire, and therefore ſuch are ſet over burning coals, or otherwiſe ſo calefied, that they emit their odours plentiouſly.

Thus did the firſt Adorers of a Deity make their Incenſe Sacrifice: thus do Phyſicians confect their Perfumes for ſanity: and thus do the Courtiers confect theirs for pleaſure. Yet the matter of Perfumes is not alwayes injected upon coals, but ſometimes put into a braſen or ſilver pot, which the Vulgar call a Caſſolet, together with water of Roſes, or Oranges, laying quick coals under it, that it may boyl, and with its vapour fill and perfume the whole houſe. *Corula caſſoleta.*

A Perfume is either humid or dry, and both either for pleaſure or ſanity; the humid may eaſily be made, and is very familiar to delicate women, who being ſick, or taking purgative Medicaments, perfume their Cubicles with the pills of Oranges, Lemmons, Cloves, Cinnamon, and Roſe-water mixed together, and put in a Caſſolet over the fire.

The dry ones are more frequently confected by Apothecaries at the Phyſicians precept, either for pleaſure or profit.

Thoſe, who through epicuriſm and voluptuouſneſs profuſely ſpend their Fathers means, moſt accuſtome delicious Perfumes.

Thoſe, whoſe ſpirits want refection, brains roboration, hearts exhilaration, and bodies vindication from ſome extrinſecal malignity, require ſanitiferous Perfumes.

Suffitus quibus affectionibus conveniat.

Now Perfumes help the lungs ſtuffed with abundance of flegm, and yet they are not convenient to all diſeaſes and affections about the breaſt: for *Aetius (cap. 144. tetr. ſer. 3.)* ſaith, that they do harm ſuch as ſpit blood, by opening the veſſels: neither yet are they convenient for thoſe, who have ſome dry diſeaſe about their breaſts; but they eximiouſly conduce to ſuch as are purſy, orthopnoical, and whoſe breaſts are infeſted with many crude humours; as alſo to ſuch as labour under the French diſeaſe, if they be duely confected of idoneous Medicaments, which will abject the poyſon of that diſtemper, by frequent ſalivation, and be exhibited after the body hath been vacuated by univerſal remedies. And they are moſt frequently uſed in form of a pretty craſs Powder; as thus, to roborate and ſiccate the brain.

Lues Indica ſuffitu nonnunquam curatur.

℞. *Storax, Benioin, ana* ℥ j. ſ8. *Gum of Juniper, Frankincenſe, ana* ℥ j. *Cloves, Cinnamon, ana* ℈ *ij. the leaves of Bayes, Sage, Roſemary, ana* ℥. ſ8. *make of all theſe a groſs Powder, and then put a part thereof upon burning coals, that the diſeaſed may expire the ſuffigated fume.*

This Perfume will ſtop the humour that delabes from the brain to the lungs.

℞. *Cypreſs nuts, Balauſtians, Ladanum, ana* ℥ j. *Roſes* ℥ *ij. Mirtle berries, and Maſtich, ana* ℥ j. ſ8. *make groſs Powder for Fumigation.*

This Fumigation made after this manner, doth wonderfully roborate the heart, and refartiate the ſpirits.

A Cordial Fume.

℞. *Calamus Aromaticus, Xyloaloes, Squinant, Cinnamon, ana* ℥ j. *Storax, Benioin, ana* ℥ j. ſ8. *Mace, Cloves, ana* ℥. ſ8. *Roſes, Marjoran, ana* ℈ *ij. Aliptæ Moſchatæ* ℥ *ij. pulverize them for a fume.*

A maſs may be confected of theſe Powders, with ſome duſt of ſmall coals, and a fit liquor, which may be formed into Paſtills, or Birds, or Cloves, which we commonly call Cyprian Birds, which take fire without flame, and exhale a ſuaveolent fume; and they are thus confected.

℞. *Benioin* ℥ *ſ. Storax* ℥ *ij. Ladanum* ℥. ſ8. *Aliptæ Moſchatæ* ℥ *iij. ſmall Coal* ℥ *ij. beat all theſe into a fine Powder, and with Gum Traganth diſſolved in Roſe water, make them up into a paſte, of which form little Birds, Cloves, or what you pleaſe.*

Hippocrates (lib. de nat. mulieb.) adviſes women whoſe flowers ſtay, twice every day to receive the fume of a Suffiment through a tunnel pipe into their privities, and it will move flowers. To which

end

end such must first be elected as calefy in the first, or at most in the second degree, afterwards more vehement may be used; yet with this caveat, that too sharp ones be not exhibited, lest the head be burthened, or the neck of the *uterus* ulcerated. (*Hip. lib. de superfœtatione.*)

Perfumes are destined to deduce the vessels, and to draw the *uterus* towards the orifice, that the blood may easily profluate. But seeing the cunctation of flowers proceeds from the durity and siccity of the *uterus*, the matter of Perfumes must be received in some idoneous liquor, whereby the *uterus* may be humectated, as in Wax, simple or odorate Oil, Turpentine, *Ladanum*, or Gum of *Tragacanthum*, that Pastills may be formed thereof, which, when use requires, may be injected upon burning coals, or rather ashes, as *Aristotle* in his Problems thinks more convenient; as thus:

℞. *The roots of Sow-bread, Asarum, Orris, Myrrhe, Bdellium, ana* ℥ *j. Storax* ℥ *iij.* * *Roman Gith ij. Cinnamon, Cloves, ana* ℥ *j. Savin, Marjoran, Calamint, Dictamus, ana* ℈ *ij. Galliæ moschatæ* ℥ *j. make of these a Powder, or with Turpentine form them into Pastills for future uses.*

* *Nigella Romana.*

A Fumigation to move a womans flowers, by sitting over the Fume, and receiving it into her Privities.

Perfumes are often successfully conducible in dysepulotical ulcers, and the French disease, whereto other remedies have been frustraneous: but especially if they be confected of *Cinnabaris*, wherein as also in Quick-silver, whereof it participates, is an admirable faculty, and Alexiteries, which work the exclusion of this venereous poyson by salivation. For the fume hereof ascending upon the whole body, doth transmit it self through the spiraments of the skin into the internal parts, and there by attenuating, impelling, and disjecting the humour, at length deduces it to the mouth, and excludes it by frequent sputation. And thus it doth not onely perfectly deleate the ulcers which infest the throat, and internal parts of the mouth, but takes away the dolour, and expells the matter which caused the tubercles and swellings. And this Perfume is thus confected:

℞. *Benioin, Frankincense, Olibanum, ana* ℥ *ij. Bay-berries, Calamus Aromaticus, ana* ℥ *j. Cinnabaris* ℥ *x. make of these a Powder, and take liquid Storax to make it up into a mass for fumigation.* Or thus:

℞. *Grains of Juniper, Olibanum, Mastich, Labdanum, ana* ℥ *j.* ʃ*ß. Cinnabaris* ʒ *j. pulverize them for future use.*

It may also be thus effected:

℞. *Storax Benioin, Storax Olibanum, Labdanum, ana* ℥ *j. Myrrhe* ℈ *ij. Galliæ moschatæ* ℥ *ij. Mastich* ℥ *j. Cinnabaris* ʒ *j.* ʃ*ß. powder them, and with Turpentine make them up into a mass for suffumigation.*

But these Perfumes may not be adhibited without great prudence, lest they should cause strangulation, resolution of the nerves, or palsey: for *Cinnabaris* and Quick-silver being of an indomitable nature, may not be exhibited, save by an expert and perite Physician.

I saw a waiting man of our Kings so suffited by a woman, that through the resolution of his recurrent nerves by the malign va-

Historia.

pour of the fume, lay dead, or ſpeechleſs, two months, and ſo dyed.

I have obſerved others, by Empiricks undue preparation of *Cinnabaris*, brought to a Palſey, that could not be repaired by Art.

I will not further proſecute the hiſtorie of ſuch as have been ſuffited by * Circulators, infeſted with dolours, and hence have contracted their death. For if any Wretch infected with the French diſeaſe, have recovered his ſanity by the decoction of *Guajacum*, by the litation of Quick-ſilver, or by the ſuffumigation of *Cinnabaris*, he will forthwith experience upon others the effect of that which helped him. Hence many Taylors, Black-ſmiths, and very Porters now at *Lutetia*, by theſe remedies undertake the cure of this diſeaſe, and unhappily effect the contrary.

* Mountebanks.

And now I think I have largely enough deſcribed in this, and the third Book, all the Forms or receipts of Remedies. If any more be deſigned by the Antients, they may either be reduced to theſe heads, or thought obſolete. But if any nauſeative Critick diſdain theſe our Lucubrations, and envy our Fame, the Lord grant him more prudence: however, ſince he is malevolent, and diſpleaſing to all, I think it not a piacle to diſpleaſe him. Now it is expedient that we extruct a Shop for the benevolent Student in the Pharmaceutical Art.

The end of the fifth Book.

THREE

THREE BOOKS OF MEDICINAL MATERIALS;

THE

First whereof treats of Plants, the second of Minerals, and the third of Animals.

EVERY ONE

Divided into Chapters, and again subdivided into Sections,

By the Author,

JOANNES RENODÆUS,

Physician in PARIS.

Translated by

RICHARD TOMLINSON,

Apothecary.

LONDON,

Printed by *J. Streater*, and *J. Cotterel*,

M. DC. LVII.

Sereniſsimo, Digniſsimo, & omni genere virtutum cumulatiſsimo,

IOHANNI NEWBURGH

Armigero, ſalutem & obſequia.

QUÆ rore cœleſti perfuſa eſt *tellus*, thuris & aromatum halitus amœnos, gratitudinis ergo ad *cœlos* mittit; imò omne è *Cereris* proveniens gremio, influxui ſydereo eam imprægnanti, *ſacrificium* ſpirat *euchariſticum*; nec ullus eſt hominum adeo ingratus, quin meſſis è Lybicis acceptæ arvis, *Diis* ſibi dantibus ſolvet ἀπαρχάς. Tibi, itaque *Mecœnas optime*, quum quò tuis ex æquo reſpondeam meritis, ex *unico Sabino* non ſuppetit mihi. Lucubrationum haſce mearum *primitias* dedico, & ſupplex offero; ut hinc ex animo palàm teſtarer, me tibi ſemper gratias habere, uſquè ſolvere, & debere tamen: *Tuum eſt*, quod uberibus ſiccis proles deſtinata, *Amalthææ cornu* ſugat *melliſiſsimum*; tuum, quòd ego *Minervæ* fruar Apiario; quodque *Pandoræ* inſpiciam *Myrotheciun*. Si in me collata omnia tua narrarem beneficia, meipſum ingratum dicerem, nam omne gratitudinis rependium ſuperârunt munera; ſit itaque hoc iſtius debiti *Chyrographum*, cujus inopia prohibet ſolutionem, per quod me obſtrictum tenes & tenebis; & quum non tam quale munuſculum, quam quali animo detur, obſerves; hoc quale quale opuſculum, tuo ſub patrocinio

cinio in lucem rediens, ne dedigneris (unice) sed pro humanitate quâ polles maximâ manu ducas obstetricanti; esto *fida nutrix*, ut lingua quam adhuc compescit infantia, vestrâ ope fiat *vocalis*, & sibi plusquam restituta, & sic *Rhænodeum* in *Rhænodeo* erit invenire, *teque in teipso* scilicet *Mecœnate*. Opus (fateor) si spectes apparatum, angustum nimis est, ut tui aspectus *honore* dignaretur; sin materiam, amplum satis est, ut teipsum vendicet *patronum*; non possum enim non mirari, quam lautam, augustam & expeditam Natura nobis struxit *Apothecam*; inspiciat nostræ *Maiæ* lenocinium, & marcescat invidus; ipsæ *tessellæ* habent colorum gratiam, & floseulis pictis adblandiuntur; herbarum tunicas variegatas indies *Prata* induunt magnifica, crispatis comis superbiunt *silvæ* & *labruscæ* racemis sparguntur Antra; quæ *regio* in *terris*, quæ non est nobis *officina*? quæcunque sustentat terra, & tegit cœlum, materiæ inserviunt medicinali; ampla equidem est *supellex*, nullum tamen agnoscit dominum nisi teipsum, qui adeò naturæ calles *Phænomena*, ejus adeò perspicis arcana, *ut Philosophorum nemini audis secundus*; qui tantus es in *Medicina*, in *Chymica* tantus, & *scientiis quibusvis* adeò instructus, ut facile te unum in omnibus, in singulis *primum* pronunciarem; & hic eloquium nostrum epistolare nullo *Rhetoris* aspersum flore, miram patitur *Aposiopesin*; tua enim eloqui sonat ἀυτάρκη, quum nemini tantum accessit eloquentiæ, quantum tibi meritorum, silere etiam, ponit *piaculum*; quum uno ore, qui tecum versantur, *omnes* collaudant, vituperant *nulli*; meum tamen erit, silentio admirari, quod ultimis haud valeo conatibus assequi; te debitò conceptu extollam tacito, quem si describerem, vel selectissimis verbis extenuarem, licèt quodque vocabulum sonaret *hyperbolen*, quæque litera præferret *emphasin*; Deum vero, ne sim prolixior, ut tibi tuisque semper præesset, cordicitùs rogo & obtestor: cui, ut posteriora primis, præsentibus æterna, cumulatissimè præponderent, vota nuncupat indefessæ

Dignitati vestræ, humillime devotissimus,

R. TOMLINSON.

The TRANSLATOR, by way of Preface to the READER.

WHEN *we cast our eyes over the whole frame of the* Earth, *and contemplate upon the immense bulk of* Medicinal Materials, *we cannot but wonder at Heavens providential care of* Man. *Was there ever any* malady *that invaded this* Microcosm, *but a suitable* remedy *was found for the same? How is the* Earth *bedubbed with variety of Colours? what Bravery and Allurement doth it carry in its* face? *how doth the* juicy Vine *flourish, and bedeck the* Valleys *with its blushing Clusters? the* pithy Elm *ambitious to out-strip the* laquacious Hazle? *how is the* hoary Chesnut *planted with the* Aromatick Juniper? *the* lofty Cedar *with the* spinous Shrub? *nay, the whole* Globe *coruscates, being brandish'd with* Autumn Fruit.

What could the Gods *have done more for the benefit of man, than to have ordained him to umpire in* Paradise Terrestrial, *creating for his use, the whole universal* mass *serving him for* Medicinal Materials, *(of which we are now about to treat) having infused into them distinct* Remedies, *with such an orient splendour, that by the very beholding of them, they do allure our minds to seek out remedy for every malady.*

How hath Nature *framed some* Vegetables, *that they are* affrighting *to behold,* rough *in handling, every way threatning damage by their* prickles, *that we may even seem to hear them in a manner speaking in their own* dialect, *why they were so created? Lest that* ravenous wilde beasts *should devour them! lest* audacious *and* insolent hands *should pluck them up! lest* careless feet *should trample upon them! lest the* fowls of the air *should break them in pieces! So that being as it were armed and fenced with these weapons, they do preserve themselves and their virtues safe and sound, from all contingent accidents, for the* Medicinal use of Man.

The matter *herein specified, need not fear the* nipping frigidity *of the*

Northern Zone, *being planted by the sacred hand of* Jove, *abundantly and spontaneously sprouting forth out of the untilled soyl, aspiring with their tops Heaven-wards.*

What care we for watered Gardens, *curiously trimmed* Box Groves, *neat-garden-quarters bespangled with the variety of Star-like colours, growing proud as it were with the splendour of their* variegated, far fetched flowers.

The spontaneous sproutings of the Earth *is that we treat of*; Pomona *doth cherish her voluntary off-spring with her own breasts*; *shall we judge Nurses breasts sweeter than the Mothers? the* Woods *of the* Medes, *the pleasant and silver streams of* Bactra, *and all* Panchaia *with its* Thus bearing-soyl, *give up their off-spring to the recovery of Man.*

Amber-greece, Camphor, Storax, Opium, Agarick, Scammony, *can no longer now be* adulterated. *To whom will not the true* Amomum *be known?* Opobalsamum, Carpobalsamum, *and* Cornu Unicornu, *that* Antidote *against Poyson so much boasted of.*

This Treatise *will quit you from the pains of turning over larger Tomes, and the wearisomeness that accompanies it*; *here you may finde the* Willow Groves *struggling with the winds, shrouding* lesser Plants *under their pleasant shades, extending forth as it were a* Canopy *to secure them from the scorching beams of the* Sun, *and the nipping frigidity of the* Northern winde.

The illustrious adumbration of Plats of Herbs *offering themselves as so many embroidered* Couches *for tired Mortals to rest upon*; *whil'st he ruminates which to pick and choose as most commodious for the recovery of his* Malady, *the whole Creation affording him delight.*

The Rivers *with their silver streams gliding musically from the rocks, trampling upon the sands of gold, lulling him to a complacency by their tacit bubblings, conveying the moysture of Life to the banks of Herbs*; *whil'st in the interim, the sweet-singing* Choristers of the Woods *thunder out whole Volleys of musical strains, by tuning afresh their* Organical Instruments; *and all to allacriate the spirit of* Man.

As for those flashy Rhodomantadoes *that go about to adulterate the best* Exoticks, *labouring under as it were an idle* Lethargy, *deserve to be punished with* stripes, *and hissed at as* Serpents. *Doth not the* Swallow *easily finde its* Chelidonium? *and the* Hawk *its* Ageratum? *Hath not the* Creator of Vegetables *impressed certain* Physiognomical notes *in Plants, and imprinted in them as it were so many Emblems and Characters, not onely as marks and signs of their occult virtues, but resemble with a sweet similitude the expres* figures *and* pourtraitures *of the parts unto which they are to be appropriated: and shall these, by these vile* Mimi, *be injuriously usurped and adulterated? its revenge enough that they make themselves to be jeered at, in attributing virtue to that, which hath no affinity nor propinquity to the place whereunto it is applyed.*

The Pandects *of* Vegetables *are no less defrauded of their natural*

ornament

ornament and bonity, by the unskilfull handling of ſome ſelf-conceited Idiots. *However, it is not our deſire to trim* Ladies *in* Confectioners Shops; *let them boaſt of their* Arras *embroydered with* Shadows, *whil'ſt we content our ſelves with the true deſcription of Natures* rough draught *of* Plants, Animals, *and* Minerals, *of which we ſhall diſtinctly ſpeak, or at leaſt of ſo many as are neceſſary to the compoſition of thoſe* Medicaments *preſcribed in the* Shop.

Be pleaſed (whoever thou art) but to caſt a favourable aſpect *upon this our* Tranſlation, *and it will ſeat you in the midſt of the* Elyſian Fields, *where you may recreate your ſelves with pleaſure and delight in the fair* Groves *of* Rerum Natura: *but if you deſpiſe, and look upon it with* ſcorn, *it turns all into fading and unprofitable* branches.

R. TOMLINSON.

THREE BOOKS OF IOANNES RENODÆUS, Physician in PARIS;

Of such Medicinal Materials as are requisite for Compositions made and kept in Apothecaries Shops.

Book I. *Of Plants.*

CHAP. I.

Of Water.

WATER, which in a different respect may be taken for an Element, and an Aliment, is not onely the solace of Mankinde, but the subsidy of all animate and vegetative Creatures, which no living thing can be without. (*Arist. c. 2. l. 4. de gen. animal.*) For many Animals live without the use of Fire, without the use of Water none, with which alone a Spanish Virgin did for a long time preserve her life, (*Cæl. Rhod. cap. 23. lib. 23.*) *Albertus* saw a melancholick fellow, who abstained from all food the space of seven weeks, refreshing himself onely every second day with a draught of Water. And Animals are not solely generated and nourished by Water, but Plants also, which neither bud nor flourish without its benign affluence, but become dry, tabid, and juiceless. As on the contrary, the Tree planted by the Water side, will yield its fruit in its season. Whence perhaps old *Hesiod* broached his opinion, that Water was the most antient of Elements. To which *Thales* accords, who constitutes Water the first and sole principle of bodyes. Of which opinion was also *Empedocles*, who thought all things to be produced by Water. And one *Hippon*, (*Arist. c. 2. l. 1. de anima*) who called Water the Soul of the World; and *Hippocrates* also, who constituted Water and Fire the principle of life. But *Hippon* meant by Water, sperm; *Hippocrates*, the radical moysture.

Psal. 1.

Aqua & ignis vitæ principia.

Now

Now the Water whereof we now treat, that is neceſſary to Mankinde, either to quench his thirſt, or to coct and confect Aliments and Medicaments, is elementary, often deſigned with the name of the frigid Element. And it is either fontane, fluvial, puteal, or pluvial and cyſternial. It is called fontane water, *à fundendo*, becauſe it is poured out of the earth, which is preferred as moſt wholſome. Yet ſome fountains are impaired; for paſſing through the bowels of the earth, they require aliene faculties, for they mutuate their odour or ſapour from the places through which they permeate. Thus ſome, which are trajected through ſulphureous paſſages, are ſo hot, that they may not be uſed; others, becauſe of thoſe veins of Alume, and involutions of Vitriol, are ſo acid and ingratefull, that a thirſty man would not taſte them. In *Germany*, beyond Rhene, there is a fountain of ſweet water, whereof if one drink, his teeth will fall out within two years.

In many parts of *France* there are Medicinal Waters of aliene, inſuave, and ſtrange ſapours, as the Pucenſian Wells, whereunto people flock in multitudes yearly, and return ſucceſsfully. But I purpoſe not here to treat of theſe, it ſhall ſuffice me to ſhew at preſent what qualities water that is potable, and requiſitely neceſſary to an Apothecary in confecting Medicaments, ſhould be endued withall.

Now ſuch water, according to *Ariſtotle*, (*lib. de ſenſu & ſenſib.*) ſhould in it ſelf be the mixture, matter, and ſeminary of all ſapours; or as *Galen* (*c.* 15. *l.* 1. *& c.* 2. *l.* 2. *de alim.*) writes, ſhould be inſipid, voyd of all qualities, and moſt light, but not in weight, as ſome would hence inferr, for then Snow-water would be beſt, becauſe lighteſt, which we know to be unwholſome: but it ſhould be of tenuious parts, quickly calefied, and quickly refrigerated; ſuch as fontane and fluvial water is, if it be pure; in defect whereof, rain water, by *Galen*'s advice, (*lib. de Ptiſ.*) may be aſſumed, eſpecially to the confection of Hydromel. Yet our Colledge at *Paris* judge Ciſternine waters unwholſome, as being dead, and having contracted ſome vice from the air from the ſpout through which, and from the trough into which they delabe; for the ſhower that proceeds from air of an inquinated, peſtilentious, and putrified quality, muſt needs participate thereof; the ſhower that waſhes the ſides of houſes, muſt needs be infected with corruption, or other filth, eſpecially if it want motion, which is the ſoul of water. The ſhower that is contained in a Ciſtern, though well grounded with ſand, muſt needs be corrupted, eſpecially when abundance of impure water delabes, for then the ſand will putrify and inquinate it. Hence the water afterwards running out of that Ciſtern, is endued with a very bad odour and ſapour, and is uſeleſs. The very condition of rain accelerates its corruption, which being partaker of the airs lenity, is quickly corrupted. Yea, many Authors of credit have writ, that many Fiſhes have received detriment by rain, as the Mullet, or Ceſtreus, whoſe eyes

are

are white, and they at that time very macilent. The best water therefore is fontane, fluvial, and puteal water, so it be not muddy nor fetid, but insipid, that is, endued with no manifest quality, nor mixed with any aliene sapour, as of Salt, Nitre, Sulphur, Bitumen, Alome, or others of that kinde. (*Gal. comment. ad part.* 10. *lib.* 4. *epid.*)

Chap. II.

Of Wine.

THE antient Romanes sacrificing to their Gods, continually offered Wine; whence the Poet, *Redduntur merito debita vina Jovi.* For (saith *Plato*) they dedicated Wine to the Gods, that they might expell all cares from Men, and fill their hearts with gladness; for *Bacchus* is the rest-bringing God to afflicted Mortals. Natures Storehouse contains nothing better than Wine, which is the best Balsame to cure wounds, the most excellent Cordial to refresh the spirits, and the most eximious Aliment to nourish the body; which its name seems to denote: for it is called οἶνος ἀπὸ τῆς ὀνίνασθαι, that is, from helping, according to that of *Homer*, If thou drinkest, thou wilt finde help; for it letificates mans heart, exhilarates his minde, makes his age florid, takes away sadness, cherishes native calour, calefies his bowels, helps concoction, roborates the stomack, takes away obstructions, prepares the passages for the exclusion of the excrements, moves urine, resarciates the spirits, discusses flatuosity, obtunds frigid poysons, attenuates, coćts and discusses crass humours. And that I may comprehend its immense dignity in a few words, Wine is the blood of the earth, old mens milk, life issuing from the Vine, that conserves life in others, yea, and suppeditates them *Aqua vitæ*; whence Alchymists call it the Elixar of life? All which, when the Greek Poet had experienced and acknowledged as most true, he did with such alacrity adore Wine, for *Laudibus arguitur vino vinosus Homerus*; that he thereby attained not onely the knowledge of abstruse Sciences, but also most eximious eloquence; for *Facundi calices quem non fecere disertum?* For as it is vulgarly received; Wine acuates the ingenuity, and rouses the spirits: for which cause the Poet *Ennius* would never betake himself to the description of Verses, unless he were first well madefied with Wine. *Æschylus* also never accinged himself to write Tragedies, unless he had first imbibed himself with Wine. It is also storied of *Lampris*, that being then most apt to speak and answer to the purpose, and discreetly,

Ennium & Æschylum non scripsisse carmina, nisi vino fuerint madidi.

when he had ingurgitated much wine. He was wont to say of himself, that he was like Frankincense, which never emits its suaveolence, till it be well calefied. In wine there is eloquence, in wine verity, in wine alacrity: for this, as the Proverb hath it, will make an old Wife dance. It was a Piacle among the Hebrews, to abstain from wine; and a custome among the Persians, never to treat and decree of any serious matters, till they had been well drunk, (*Alex. ab Alex.*) yet *Galen* saith of *Plato*, that he never permitted Souldiers, nor Servants, nor Princes, nor such as were to consult about any matter, to drink wine liberally, because it would tyrannize over the faculties of the soul; and taken in excess, enervate the strength, and destroy sanity. Whence *Hippocrates* saith, that in wine is sickness and sanity, moderation and ferity, peace and war; according to that of the Poet, *Vinum alit lites, lites dissolvit easdem.* Wine therefore is adiaphorous and indifferent, good or evil, as its use is good or evil. And as it is sanity and strength to the sane, so it is infirmity to the infirm, and especially to such as are distempered from a hot cause.

Vinum sanis robur.

Vini differentiæ There are many sorts of wine differenced by their colour, sapour, substance, odour, virtue, and place; from their colour, they are called white, red, black, flave, claret, and palid wines; from their sapour, sweet, austere, sharp, acerb, insipid; from their substance, crass, thin, feculent; from their odour, sweet, fragrant, inodorous; from their virtue, vinous, aquous, polyphorous, multifarious, and oligophorous; from their place, Falernian, Albane, Grecian: of which antient wines we should drink moderately, by *Galen*'s advice, (*c. 6. l. 5. de sanit. tuend.*) for they gravidate the head; but we want all these: yet ours are no less vinous, as our Aurelian, Burgundian, Andine, Ainian, Meudonian, Ruelliane, and Argentoliane, which are generous wines, and need *Amphiction*, who first mixed water with wine. And as in Banquets men get the best wine, so should we seek the most generous and noble in our Pharmacopolies for Medicaments, which are to be assumed at the mouth, as Theriacal and Mithridative Confections; as also for some that are to be extrinsecally applyed, as many Salves and Unguents. There is a water also distilled from these wines, easily contracting ardour and flame, and eximious for many uses, which they call *Aqua vitæ*; as indeed there is nothing in wine which is not eximious, as its odour, sapour, and spirits, whereby man is not onely refreshed, nourished, and cherished, but also many Medicaments and Adjuments made out of its very lees and dregs, which the Alchymists call Tartar.

Qui primus aquam vino miscuerit.

CHAP.

Chap. III.

Of Vinegar.

Vinegar, which the Greeks call ὄξος, is sharp, or rather dead wine, for it is produced out of vapid wine, destitute of its proper spirits, and innate calour: and as Omphacy is elegantly tearmed wine increasing, so is Vinegar wine decreasing, for wine is the mean betwixt both. And vinegar is more tenuious, acute, and liquid than both, and therefore it doth not concrete or congeal in frost, if it be made of wine, which is the most salubrious and eximious: for that which in some Countryes is made of stale beer, is insane, and should not at all be used by an Apothecary in his Confectures: for when we put vinegar absolutely, we mean wine-vinegar so confected by age or artifice, not by any malignant mixture, which for its eximious qualities is used in kitchins to Sauces and Condiments; in Pharmacopolies, to the preparation of Oxymel, Lythargy, and other Compounds.

Now all vinegar is attenuative, incisive, discussive, repressive, refrigerative, and somewhat calefactive, (*Gal. cap.* 10. *lib.* 2. *comp. med. loc.*) for old *Homer* acknowledges, that it retains in it some seeds of calour; whence *Galen* saith, (*cap.* 19. *l.* 1. *de simpl. med.*) it is of a mixt quality; for as milk is not all homogeneous, and similar, nor in all parts the same, so neither is vinegar, which many say is calid, and many frigid. But such as have truly perpended its faculty, finde it for the most part more frigid than calid, (*cap.* 20. *ejusdem libri*) And I much recede from their opinion, who think it to be calid like a Cautery, or Pyrotick; for by sense we finde, that when it is applyed, it is at first sharp and refrigerative; but after its ablation, some calour follows, which happens accidentally, and because of its acrimony, though not alwayes, nor to all bodyes, (*c.* 21. *ejusdem libri.*)

Hence we may collect, that vinegar is naturally frigid, but hath acquired an accidentary calidity; or as *Galen* speaks, (*cap.* 23. *ejusdem libri*) neither absolutely frigid, nor absolutely calid, participating of neither extream; for many things that consist of contrary and pugnant qualities, seem simple to the sense, and are judged as neuters; for it is unavoydable that vinegar, having lost its innate quality, should acquire another by putrefaction. Of which opinion is *Theophrastus* and *Aristotle*; for the vinous parts of the wine transeating into vinegar, must be refrigerated, and the aquous parts thereof by putretude obtain an adventitious calidity, as all

things else which putrefy, do, (*c. 2. l. 4. simpl.*) Vinegar then is a compound of parts of a contrary quality, to wit, partly calid, partly frigid, as the ashes of burned wood. Yet Vinegar is of admirable utility to Mortals; but it is more frequently used of others, than of Apothecaries.

Chap. IV.

Of Omphacy.

What Omphacy is.

Omphacy, which the Greeks call ὄμφαξ, the Shopmen *Agresta*, is the juice of sour grapes not yet come to maturity, not yet changed into Rob by the Suns calidity; such was *Dioscorides* his *Omphacium*. But that we now have, is expressed like wine in a winepress, out of grapes of perfect magnitude, but not maturity; then percolated, reposed in hogsheads, and mixed with a little salt, and these by progression would be wine, so wine by regression will be vinegar, which in its vertues is very correspondent to Omphacy, for both are refrigerative, the Omphacy more imbecilly, the vinegar more validly, because more tenuious; which also participates of more acrimony, which is calefactive by its adscititious calidity. Therefore *Aristotle* said well, that vinegar was frigid by the innate calour of the wine, and calid by the adventitious; which calour is not of sufficient vigour to over-power the frigidity proceeding from its acidity. But Omphacy hath not the least of calidity in it, neither is it so tenuious, nor yet so nimble, as with that expedition to permeate the pores and parts of the body as vinegar; which being not onely acid, but acerb, (*Gal. cap. 12. lib. 4. de simpl. med.*) is more conducible to the ardour of the Hypochondriacal parts than vinegar; for it is not so violent, nor is its frigidity mixed with any mordacious calour, for such as are infested with excess of this calour, should be mitigated without violence, or assumption of any Calefactive, or Medicament endued with mordacious acrimony. And hence is it, that Omphacy is profitable for great ardours, (*Gal. cap. 2. lib. 4. de simpl.*) whether it be imposed on the orifice of the belly, or other parts, that need refrigeration.

Acetum calidum & frigidum.

Omphacium quibus prosit.

But it is most frequently assumed at the mouth, either mixed with Aliments for pleasure, or with Medicaments for sanity; for broth altered therewith, is more gratefull to the jaws and palate; condiments acidulated therewith, revoke the appetite. It also extinguishes the heat of the liver, and tempers the estuosity of the blood; all which the syrup of Grapes will perform.

And

And though *Omphacium* may be made of any immature grapes, yet it is in *France* deduced onely out of those the white vines bring forth; whose branches being longer, and more crass than others, serve to make Arbours in Gardens, and whose clusters are as big as Olives; whereof, when mature, scarce any good wine can be confected, but very good *Omphacium* when they are immature, as at the latter end of Summer, or a little before Vintage time.

Oil educed out of immature Olives, is from its affinity in sapour to this *Omphacium*, called Omphatical Oil.

Chap. V.

Of Sugar.

Sugar was unknown to the Antients; which is now so copious, that to say a Pharmacopoly without Sugar, were more than an * Irony. Yet it doth not fall from Heaven like dew, nor is it gathered of Plants leaves, as some have thought, who look onely at the name: but it is got of an arundinaceous Plant, which grows not onely in *India*, but in many places of *Asia* and *Africa*, and now in some Gardens in *France*; but it scarcely escapes secure from the Winters tempests. * *Ironia.*

This sacchariferous Plant is about eight foot high, very crass, knotty, obduced on every side with long, strait, and twined leaves, hollow, sappy, and stuffed within with plenty of sweet juice, which will distill down the cut cane like Amber; whose pith or sap being severed from the cane by a knife, and cocted on the fire, will turn all into Sugar, save a little Salt at the bottome of the vessel. Its roots emulate the roots of our Cane, but they are not so ligneous, but more succulent and sweet, from which some sprigs erupt, which if pulled up, and transplanted in due time, will grow and flourish. It bears hairy flowers, like our reeds, which one thing is enough to shew that it is a reed. *Planta sacchariferа.*

The juice extracted from it, and but once cocted, is not sufficiently elaborate, but is red, and thence called brown Sugar; by some, Sugar-froth; which when it is cocted longer, and more defecated, will be white, and is called Sugar absolutely. There comes Sugar from *Madara* and *Canary*, which is extraordinary white, which as much excells the other in worth, as it doth in candour: yet some Negotiators bring some a little duller, which is as good as the other. But many adulterate Madarensian Sugar, by washing common Sugar with lixive, cocting it again, and absterging the nigritude from off it, by which means they make it exceeding white, but not so sweet, and gratefull.

Sacharum candum quomodo fiat.

Sugar-Candy is thus made of common Sugar. Let the Sugar be melted with a little water, and elixated like a crass syrup, which inject into an earthen pot, wherein wooden sticks are put lattice-wise, and cross one over another; set the pot on a board in a hot place, where leave it for the space of fifteen or twenty dayes, then pour out the syrup that is not concreted, and pour in a little warm water, to wash off the fatness of the syrup, which again pour out, and repose the vessel in a hot place; take it on the morrow, and break it, and you shall finde the sticks laden with Sugar-Candy, shining like Crystal.

Powder-sugar.

There is another kinde of Sugar not so white, nor yet so crass as the former, which is partly pulverated, partly redacted to more crass lumps, which the vulgar call Cassonade, or Castonade; which is not onely used in Kitchins, but also in Shops.

That which is brought us from far Countryes, is turbinated pyramidal-wise, and commonly called Sugar-loaf, which is less coacted, and less obdurate than Candy, and so less calid, and more accommodate to obdulcorate Condiments, Broths, and other Aliments; for Sugar abates acrity, retunds acidity, gratifies austerity, and makes all sapours more suave. Whence not onely Confectioners, but Bakers and Cooks frequently use Sugar, for no delicate Dish comes on the Table that doth not participate of Sugar; for if Water, Wine, Fruits, Flesh, Fish, or other Edibles or Potables be nauseated, the mixture of a little Sugar will make them current.

Vires.

All Sugar is moderately hot, conducible to the roughness of the tongue, asperity in the breast, and to the cough; it moves spittle, but hurts the teeth, for it effects nigritude, mobility, and rubiginy in them.

Chap. VI.

Of Honey.

Athenæus writes, that the Cyrians, Inhabitants of *Corsica*, are therefore long-lived, because they daily use Honey: And *Democritus* being asked, how a man might preserve his life long in sanity, answered, by anointing his interiour parts with Honey, his exteriour with Oil, (*Gal. c.* 11. *l. de atten. vict. rat.*) For Honey being most sweet, propagates most tenuious juice. And (*c.* 8. *l.* 2. *de facult. nat.*) begets in old men special good blood, in young and bilious men much choler; for according to *Actuarius*, (*c.* 8. *l. de spir. anim. mot.*) that which is sweet in Honey, must needs be choler in the body.

And this mutation is very facile, because Honey, according to *Paul*,

Paul, (*c.* 4. *l.* 1. *de ſynopſ.*) & *Oribaſ.* (*l.* 5. *collect.*) calefies and exſiccates in the ſecond degree, and hath a kinde of Acrimony conjoyned with its ſweetneſs; for that is the beſt Honey which participates of theſe two, to wit, of ſweetneſs and acrimony, (*Gal. c.* 17. *l. de antidot.*) new Wine expreſſed from ſweet Grapes, and cocted to the half or thirds, though it be not much inferiour to Honey in ſweetneſs, yet like water it is obtuſe, and no way vellicates the ſenſe.

Honey alone is a Compound of it ſelf, for it is collected of the juices of many herbs and flowers, and is profitable to all ages, but eſpecially to old men, and ſuch as are of a cold conſtitution, chiefly in winter time; for where it meets with much calour, there it turns into choler.

Galen (*c.* 5. *l.* 1. *de alim. fac.*) derides the concertation of two men, the one whereof affirmed Honey to be wholſome, the other unwholſome, both conjecturing from the effect it had wrought in themſelves: but neither of them underſtood, that man kept not one temperament from the beginning to the term of his life; nor yet if the temperament had been one, that the decurſe of years would work ſome change in it; for the one of them was old and flegmatick, the other young and cholerick. *Hiſtoria notanda.*

Now Honey, according to *Galen*, (*c.* 177. *l. de ſimpl. med.*) is the juice of Celeſtial Dew collected by Bees; for every Aliment is deſumed either from Animals or Plants, Honey is from neither; for it ariſes from the leaves or flowers of Plants, and yet it is not their juice, nor fruit, nor any part thereof, but the ſame with Dew, (*c.* 38. *l.* 3. *de alim. fac.*) and yet not ſo copious nor aſſiduous. *Mel quid.* *Vnde fiat.*

Yet ſomething from Plants tends to its benignity or malignity, (*Orib. c.* 62. *l.* 2. *collect.*) for that is poyſonous which is collected of poyſonous Plants, as Wolfs-bane, (*Paul. Egin. c.* 52. *l.* 5.) that bitter which is brought out of *Pontus*, where great ſtore of Wormwood abounds.

That Honey is beſt which in colour is pale, in conſiſtency neither craſs, nor concrete, nor yet dilute, but alike in all parts; which beſides its ſweetneſs, participates of the acrimonious ſapour of Thyme, but no perceptible part thereof in odour, according to *Oribaſius*, (*c.* 62. *l.* 2. *collect.*) *Mel optimum.*

And as Honey by long coction, ſo by long keeping it will grow bitter; for *Galen* ſaith, (*c.* 11. *l.* 1. *de antidot.*) that he kept Athenian Honey, which we account the beſt, ſo long, as in amaritude it reſembled that which the Bees collect in *Pontus*. It were ſupervacaneous to treat any more of Honey, ſince we have abundantly ſpoken thereof in the third Chapter of the third Book of our Inſtitutions.

CHAP.

Chap. VII.

Of Manna.

MAnna is the most excellent and divine gift of Nature; and not onely that which God preternaturally bestowed on the Israelites, but this also which like Honey or Sugar-dew, distills upon leaves, and daily offers it self for our use. For our vulgar Husbandmen do no less admire their small Manna, than the Israelites did their Sugar-hail, whil'st exulting, they sing, *Jupiter* rains Honey down; whence it is called *Areomel*, by the Arabians *Terenjabin*, and in the sacred Scriptures Manna; with which our Manna, or *Manna Thuris*, accords onely in name; which is produced by the elision of two bundles one against another; for therby certain small fragrancies are congested, which is collected for *Manna Thuris*. There is also another kinde, they call *Manna Larigna*, collected of the broken boughs of the Larix tree; but both these too licentiously usurp this title: for Manna properly so called, which is used by Physicians, (for I do not speak of the *Man-hu*, or Manna of the Hebrews) is celestial dew, sweet and gratefull, delabing about the day-spring upon the boughs and leaves of trees and herbs, which speedily concretes into the consistency of a gum.

That is best which is collected of leaves, and is called *Manna de folio*; and that worst, which is called *Manna de terra*. Now the Calabrian Manna, especially that which comes out of a certain part of *Oenotria*, is thought the best, where it descends every Summer; and is gather'd of all. (*Brassavel. in exam. simpl*)

Historia. *Brassavelus* tels us, how the Neopolitan Kings once occluded this place, that none might assume it without toll or tribute; but the Manna thereupon ceased to descend; the tribute being taken off, and the hindrances removed, the Manna again descended; the place being again occluded, it ceased; the inclosure or hedge being again taken away, it descended: so that the Kings were glad to leave it free, and permit any to collect it that would. The same is storied of the Tragasaan of Salt in *Epirus*, upon which when *Lysimachus* imposed a tribute, there was none to be found; when the tribute was contradecreed, the Salt redounded. (*c. 12. l. 9. Rhod. Cal.*)

But that I may not further rove; there is a kinde of Manna in *France*, commonly called *Manna Briansonnensis*, which Medicks sometimes use for want of *Calabriensis*: but it is not near so good.

There

There is another kinde round, called *Manna Maſtichina*, which beaten from the boughs and leaves of trees by the impetuouſneſs of the winde, which delabes like hail, but neither from Heaven, nor from the Air; which is improperly called Manna, being the tears of trees, or their juice concreted. *Manna maſtichina.*

Manna is moderately hot, it lenifies the throat, aſper-artery, and breaſt; it benignly moves the belly, and purges watry humours, eſpecially the ſmall Manna; as that which comes from *Calabria*, not *Terenjabin*, which the Arabians ſay is like Honey; which we uſe not, becauſe we want it.

Chap. VIII.

Of Cordial Flowers; and firſt, of Violets.

A Violet, which the Greeks call ἴον, grows in opake and rough places, at the foundations of walls, or margins of gardens, and ſometimes in meadows; it is green all the year long, and flouriſhes ſometimes in *February*, moſt frequently in *March*, whence it is called *Mars* his Flower; and ſometimes in Autumn, if it be cultivated; it leaves are like Ivy leaves, but leſs and thinner, of a ſhort ſtalk, in the end whereof grows a Flower of a ceruleous purple colour, and odour like Flower de luce. It brings forth a ſmall ſeed in little round leaves about the end of Summer.

Now Violets are multifarious, and different in colours; for ſome are white, ſome blew, and other in a mean betwixt both. There are ſome alſo which ſtand upon longer and harder ſtalks, whoſe flowers are like a purple colour; others which are tricolorous, and grow upon quadrate, ſlender, ſucculent and reptile ſtalks in dry places, whoſe leaves are more anguſt, long and laſcivious than others: from its three-fold colour ſome call it the herb Trinity, others the flammeous Violet, and the vulgar Frenchmen the *Minute penſea.*

Other ſmall ſtocks of Violets have got names, which becauſe Phyſicians ſeldome uſe, we omit. But the martial Violets are wholly uſed, for their flowers being endued with an exhilarating faculty, are mixed with Cordials, their ſeeds and leaves being malactical, ingrede the decoction of Glyſters, and confection of Cataplaſms. All men conclude, that their Flowers are refrigerative; yet that acrimony they leave in the mouth by maſtication, ſpeaks them to participate of ſome calour. But becauſe that calour is fugitive, being overcome by their exuberant frigidity, the Medicks judge them to be frigid. *Vires.*

Chap. IX.

Of the Flowers of Bugloſs.

Bugloſs, ſo tearmed from its ſimilitude to an Oxes tongue, becauſe it is eximious in inducing hilarity, is by *Dioſcorides* and *Pliny* called ἀνχουσα; it hath long, broad, rough leaves, like Cumfrey, but ſtraiter, ſhorter, and not of ſo obſcure a green. Its ſtalks are bicubital, brachiate, rough; its flowers repleniſhed with ſpots like ſtars, ceruleous, ſhining, in the bottome whereof is a long, obſcure, pithy ſeed. Its root is long, craſs, black without, white within, ſuccubent, ſweet; it grows in gardens, in ſandy, and alſo in plain places.

There is no variety neither in nature nor ſhape amongſt the Hortenſian Bugloſſes, onely the flowers of ſome are white, of others purpureous, and vulgarly ceruleous. But the wild ones differ much: for ſome are alwayes green, which will like in any region; others are very ſharp, whoſe leaves are rigid with prominent pricks, which by ſome are miſtaken for *Anchuſa*, ſo named from the blood wherewith its root infects the tangent.

Bugloſs is of a hot and moyſt, or rather a middle temperature; whence it is reckoned amongſt the exhilarative Plants, which *Galen* was not ignorant of, when (*c.* 80. *l.* 6. *de ſimpl. med.*) he wrote, that Bugloſs immerged in Wine would cauſe joy and hilarity.

Chap. X.

Of Borrage flowers.

Borrage is an herb notorious enough; its leaves and faculties bear an affinity with Bugloſs, for both their leaves are long, reſembling a Neats tongue: but Borrage leaves are ſhorter and broader, which the rigour of the winter ſoon corrupts and kills: but Bugloſs bears it out, and grows; but eſpecially its root, and thoſe leaves that are next ground flouriſh. It bears broad ceruleous flowers, and ſometimes white, larger than Bugloſs, in the midſt whereof, as in its center, is defixed a certain dusky crown, whoſe end is acuminated. It grows in any ground, but it is more florid in humid and fat ſoyl. It is freſh all Summer, and alſo all Autumn, if it be ſown later; its ſeed is black; in all other things it reſponds to Bugloſs.

Its flowers put into broth give a ſpecial taſte, and ſubduce the belly;

belly; and taken in Wine, they cause great joy and pleasure; according to that old saying, *Ego Borrago gaudia semper ago.* Its flowers in Condiments recreate the eyes and jaws, and in Medicaments augment their cordial faculties.

There is another Plant very like this, which they sometimes call Bugloss, sometimes Borrage, alwayes green; for it resembles both their form and nature, and is thought to prepoll in the same faculties. It grows in Plains, and is sown and kept in Gardens by such as delight in variety of Simples. *Borrago semper virens.*

Chap. XI.

Of the four common Emollitives; and first, of Mallows.

There are four common emollitive Herbs, Mallows, Marshmallows, black Violet, and Bears-breech, or brank Ursine; whereunto other four less famous are adjoyned, to wit, Mercury, Pelitory of the wall, *Sicla*, commonly called Bete, and Arach; whose use is celebrated in making the decoctions of mollitive Glysters, and Cataplasms.

Now Mallows is so denominated from its mollifying quality; and it is either Hortensian, which by culture and mangony will grow to a tree, and acquire great procerity; or Sylvestrian, which is well enough known to all; for it abounds every where with thick circinated and angulous leaves; it puts forth flowers all Summer long of a pale purple colour; its roots are small, long, and lignous; its seed small, smooth, and orbicular. *Malva unde dicta.*

There are many sorts of Mallows. The first of that name is that which importunely germinates in every way side, or court. *Malvarum differentiæ.*

The second is not so copious, which is smaller, with lesser boughs, growing about rude and incultivated places near Villages, with flowers of a pale purple colour.

The third is called the Mallow tree, which like a shrub sprouts up to the height of six or eight cubits. *Arborens.*

The fourth is called *Althea*, by the Latines *Bis-malva*, and *Ibiscus*, because of the multiplicity of its faculties; for it hath malvaceous, smooth, long, hoary, and somewhat clipped; whiter flowers, and seeds like other wilde Mallows.

Its roots are crass, long, round, divaricated into many circles, and pregnant with much juice; its sprigs that grow besides it put forth malvaceous, long, hoary, and tomentaceous leaves, white flowers, and small, plain, and round seeds, like other Mallows. It

calefies in the first degree; it hath a digestive and laxative faculty, and will coct mucaginous excrements.

Alcea. The fifth is called *Alcea*, which is like Mallows in its original and stalk, but deeper cut; out of its root proceeds abundance of shrubs half a cubite long, adorned with red flowers; which fallen off, we may see a round seed like other Mallows.

Transmarina. The sixth is called *Transmarina*, and *Rosacea*, from the elegancy of its flower, like a Rose. It is known in all parts, for it is sown and cultivated almost in every Garden; it puts forth its branches at the beginning of the Spring.

Some sorts of *Ibiscaes* are referred to the kinds of Mallows, to wit, the *Althea* that grows like a tree, the *Althea* that grows like a fen, and the *Althea* of *Theophrastus*, which bears yellow flowers. There are also as many sorts of *Alcea*, to wit, the common, forreign, and shrubby, which is Cinquefoil.

Vires. All Mallows is mollitive, and thence it is denominated; and its leaves decocted are good for the shingles; and it is good against poysonous stings, and the dolours excited by Bees or Wasps.

Chap. XII.

Of Acanthus, or brank Vrsine.

THE name *Acanthus* is not onely referred to such Plants as are spinous, as *Carduus*, but also to such as prick not, as to the Artichoke, and brank Ursine, which the Shopmen call *Acantha*, many *Marmoraria*, becausе its leaves are engraven in marble Chapiters.

Dioscorides saith, it grows in Gardens and moyst places, and puts forth long, broad, smooth, fat, blackish leaves, cut like a nettle; its stalk is of two cubits length, smooth about the thickness of a finger, and on every side from the middle upwards involved with little long leaves accuminated like nucaments, but not spinous, out of which a white flower proceeds; its seed is long and dusky, its top is like the top of a sprig.

Its roots are juicy, long, red, and glutinous, which are of little or no use in Physick; though made into a Liniment, they are good for burnings; and drunk, move urine, and conduce to the good of such as are tabid: for their leaves onely are desumed to the decoction of Glysters and Cataplasms, to which use solely the whole Plant is destinated, and got by Apothecaries.

Some say it is called brank Ursine, becausе its leaves resemble the fore-feet of Bears. We finde it also called *Paderota*, and *Melamphyllum*.

We have abundantly before treated of Violets, which are also reckoned

reckoned among the mollitive Plants in the first degree, and shall not need to superadde any more.

Chap. XIII.

Of other Mollitives; and first, of Mercury.

THis Herb derives its name from *Mercury* its Inventor; whence the Greeks call it ἑρμῆς κονυζίτης, but more frequently *Linozostis*. There are two kinds of it: the first is called the masculine, the second the feminine *Mercury*; the branches of both are round, light, rough, with some genicles, a cubite high, brachiate; there are many long leaves cut about like a Saw, like sweet Basil, all about the stem. In the leaves of the masculine there are two seeds joyned together, which cohere with little feet, like Goose-grass. Small ears come out of the feminine, with mossy flowers thereon; which if they wither, no seed follows.

It is green all Summer, dead in Winter, springs again in the Spring; its faculty is chiefly to exonerate the belly. And there is a Honey made of its juice, they call the Mercurial Honey, which will excite the drowsy expulsive faculty, and deterge the belly.

There is also a third kinde of Mercury, called Cynocrambe, or wilde masculine Mercury, which grows all over by high wayes, and humid places; which, because it hath much affinity with the masculine, it hath pleased learned Authors to denote it by that name.

Chap. XIV.

Of Pelitory of the Wall.

THE many names that Pelitory of the wall hath put upon it, hath caused learned men to doubt which is the true Herb, or it due name. It is most frequently by Apothecaries called *Helxine*, of which name *Dioscorides* describes two Plants. The first is sirnamed *Cissampelos*, and it is a kinde of *convolvulus*, which grows in hedges, and circumeats the vicine Plants: the other in walls and maceries; whence it is called *Parietaria*, or mural Herb, as also Helxine, because it adheres to ones cloaths; it emits small, pale, mossy

flowers, and very rough leaves, which being good to wipe and exterge glaſs cups with, are thence called Vitreols. I finde it alſo called by ſome, the Herb of the winde, but Anemone challenges that name by better right. But ſince Pelitory of the wall is ſo notorious, it needs no further deſcription.

It is refrigerative and deterſive, and cures inflammations. If it be fryed with Oil or Butter, and applyed to the region of the reins, it eaſes the dolour of the gravel there, and accelerates its excluſion by reſerating the paſſages; and therefore it is duely inſtituted by *Fernelius* an Ingredient in the confection of the ſyrup of *Althea*.

Chap. XV.

Of Bete and Arach.

Beta.
Atriplex.

Bete is either red, which they commonly call the black Bete, or white, or yellow, for ſo many ſorts are found by their colours. Now the red Bete is twofold; one is our common red Bete, which is not diſtinct from others in root, or leaves, but onely in colour; the other is the Romane Bete, which is ſomewhat blacker, having a very craſs root like Rape, whence it is called Bete-rape, and by many very properly *Erythroriſe*; by *Fuchius*, the red Rape, but very improperly.

The white is received moſt in meats, yet its juice may well be uſed in Erthins, for its nitrous faculty will deduce flegm out of the brain. And hence we may gather, that Bete is not ſo fatuous and inſipid as *Martial* thought, for it troubles and loads the ſtomack, and nouriſhes little; and therefore few but Ruſticks and poor people eat it, unleſs it be to move the belly; and eſpecially the white, which moves and exonerates the belly, as the red doth the bladder; and therefore it is moſt accommodate to the confection of *Diacaſſia*.

Atriplex, commonly called *Arrochy*, by the Greeks, ἀτράφαξυ, is not without reaſon reckoned amongſt the mollitive Herbs; for amongſt Pot-herbs, none ſubduces the belly more efficaciouſly and eaſily than it.

For it refrigerates in the firſt degree, humectates in the ſecond, and is voyd of all ſapour; it is of a watry and uliginous nature, and therefore quickly permeates the inferiour parts, and opens the belly.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the five Capillaries; and first, of the true Maidens-hair.

Capill. Vener.

THere are five Herbs which have much affinity one with another, to wit, the true *Capillus Veneris*, or true Maidens-hair; the common Maidens-hair, *Asplenium*, or Wall-fern; Citrarch, commonly called Polytrick, or Spleen-wort; and *Salvia Vitæ*, or Wall-rue. Some would have *Epithymus*, and Bind-weed, or Dodder, to be true Capillaries, because they resemble hairs and Capillaments; whereas these five Herbs are not called Capillaries so much from their external form, as that faculty wherewith they colour hairs, and resartiate their defect.

Herbæ capillares unde habeant nomen.

The true Maiden hair is most frequently found in the Narbonian Tract; sometimes, but seldome, in other colder parts of *France*: that which in one year flourished at *Lutetia* in the Garden of *Joannes Generius* the expert Apothecary, the rigour of the Winter killed ere another year circulated.

It is a small Herb, without stalk, flower, and seed, growing in mountainous, rocky, shady, moyst places, and in the brinks of fountains; in stead of a stalk it hath many hairs, whereon small, slender leaves, not unlike the leaves of Coriander, do adhere; whence *Mesue* calls it the Coriander of the fountain. But the name *Adiantum* was given it, as *Theophrastus* attests, because being long infused in water, as all the other sorts of Capillaries also, ἀβρεκτον, *i.e.* it will not be madefied. But this assertion fails in long maceration, for being long immerged in water, it will be madid, as other Herbs.

Vires.

Galen (lib. 6. de simplic. med.) saith, that *Adiantum*, as to calidity and frigidity, is symmetral; it desiccates, extenuates, digests, repairs the loss of fallen hairs, discusses swellings and impostumes; being drunk, it breaks stones, and admirably helps all the affections of the breast, liver, reins, and spleen. Its virtues are profusely described by *Mesue*, (c. 20. *de simpl.*)

CHAP.

Chap. XVII.

Of Common Maiden-hair.

De Adianto vulgari.

BEsides the true *Adiantum*, which is the proper Maidens-hair, *Theophraſtus* (*cap.* 13. *lib.* 7.) makes mention of two other ſmall Plants of the ſame name, to wit, white and black *Adiantum*, both whoſe branches are of a nitent black colour, their leaves alike, to wit, rugged, thick, and one ſide conſperged with little red ſpots, their faculties ſimilar: but the one putting forth little ſtalks or nerves blacker than the other, is called black *Adiantum*. Their miſtake is damnable to the ſick, who inſtead of each, deſume *Dryopteris*, or Oak-fern.

Some credulous perſons think it a miracle, that *Adiantum* infuſed in water, ſhould not be madefied, but ſhould ſo withſtand its humidity, as alwayes to appear dry, from which event it deſumed this denomination; but its longer demerſion in water ſhews the contrary. Some think it ſo called rather, becauſe it is not madefied with the deſcent of rain, like as we ſee in Fern; or becauſe it thrives in the margins of fountains and walls that encompaſs waters, and yet cannot endure to be touched by water; as we ſee Swallows, which delight to build their neſts in mens houſes, but will not ſuffer themſelves to be handled by men.

Adiantum emits out of its ſlender root compacted of ſmall filaments, certain exile ſprigs, ſtrait, half a hand high, and ſometimes longer, ſometimes of a whiter, ſometimes of a blacker green, circumveſted with little ſoft leaves, after the manner, poſiture and rite of a fern, but much more ſmall, more green on one ſide, leſs on another, and maculated with ſome ſpots. It grows beſt in opake places, it is alwayes green, never ſcatters its leaves, but is deſtitute of all flowers and ſeed.

Its faculties are commended for many purpoſes, for it prohibites the falling of hairs, and repairs their loſs; it helps ſuch as are purſy, and ſhort breath'd; it moves ſlowers, diſcuſſes ſwelling in the neck, and produces the ſame effect with true Maidens-hair, or *Capillus Veneris*.

Chap.

Chap. XVIII.

De Polytricho; *or, of Polytriche.*

As three Plants are comprehended under this one name *Adiantum*, so three names design one Plant. For perite Herbalists take *Trichomanes Polytrichum*, and *Callitrichum*, are all the same Herb; for *Trichomanes* is by the Romanes called a Capillary, because it compleats the place voyd of hairs. *Polytrichum* is so called, because it makes the hair come thicker; and *Callitrichum*, because it makes the hair more comly. (*Ruel. c.* 133. *l.* 3.) *Polytrichus.*

Some call this Herb *Pinula*, others *Filicula*, and some *Adiantum*.

It grows upon walls, and in opake and shady places, and about the margins of fountains, or in dens, as *Adiantum* doth. Its root is small and black, out of which there issues little nitid, rigid, dusky sprigs, like Capillaments. It hath leaves on both sides, very orderly disposed, and adversly pediculated, like to Lentils in magnitude and form, but more tenuious, and maculated underneath with ferrugineous spots.

It neither bears seed nor flowers, like *Adiantum*, wherewith also it agrees in reference to its faculties.

Chap. XIX.

Of Ceterach, or Spleen-wort.

All the society of Pharmacopolists stood long in this errour, that *Scolopendrium* and *Heminionis*, commonly called Harts-tongue, were one and the same Plant; till better informed, either by the bare words or writings of Physicians, they were convinced, that *Splenium*, commonly called Ceterach, was the true *Scolopendrium*. Its leaves are small, divided like Polypody, yellowish, rough, narrow, and corrugated underneath; adhering to a black shi pedicle scarce a palms length, disposed in an adverse order; yet not so, that they are directly opposite one against another; like the leaves of the Polytriche, but that they oppose each others *interstice*, as of some Polypody. Ceterach.

It is found in rocks, opake walls, and such stony and shady places, insisting upon no stalk, save a small pedicle, crowned with no flower, and gravidated with no seed.

Its faculty is to minuate the spleen, to break and expell the stone, to move urine, to abate singulture, and cure the Jaundies. *Vires.*

Chap. XX.

De Salvia vita, or *Rue-maidenhair.*

Salvia vita. THis Plant is next in affinity to a Capillary, which from the similitude of the leaves, and the congruity of place wherein Rue and it grow, is called mural Rue, and by the Shopmen, *Salvia vita.* It thrives best in opake rocks, wet stones, old edifices and caves, which as it were dividing the rocks, proceeds out of their incisures, with thin, short and slender stalks, whereon little but crass leaves adhere; divided, and of a whitely green colour, very like to Rue.

The whole Plant is scarce as long as a mans palm, devoyd of seed and flowers, alwayes green; and therefore it is often used in winter, when other Plants are either withered or eradicated.

Vires. It reserates the excrementitious passages, takes away obstructions, moves excrements, exsiccates watry humours, and thence conduces to the stoppings of the spleen and mesenteries; it moves flowers and urine, expells the stone, cures the dropsy, and helps diseases within the breast. They are mistaken that think this is Fellon-grass.

Chap. XXI.

Of some other Plants that are of the second sort of Capillaries; and first, of Moon-fern.

Hemionitis. THis Herb is from the efficacy of its faculties, wherewith it respects the spleen, called by Pharmacopolists, sometimes *Asplenium*, sometimes *Scolopendrium*, as also Ceterach, because in curing the affection of the spleen it hath the precellency: yet it is neither *Scolopendrium*, *Asplenium*, nor common Ceterach, but a distinct Plant destitute of stalk, seed, and flower, onely a company of leaves issuing out of the earth; whence it is often called *Phyllitis*, that is, a folious herb; for its root emits many fibrous and blackish leaves upon as many filaments, which leaves are crass, rigid, long like Harts-tongue, as it is sometimes denominated, smooth on the upper side, rough on the lower, with transverse ferruginous lines. *Gaza* calls it *Mula*.

Vires. It is of great use to the spleen, whose obstructions it doth not onely remove, but abates its durity and obtumescence, and successfully helps the affections of the liver.

Chap.

Chap. XXII.

Of Dodder and Epithymum.

Dodder epithymus.

DOdder grows upon fruitfull Herbs, like Epithyme, deſtitute of a root; but as *Matthiolus* ſaith, iſſues out of the ſtalk of a Plant like a wing, or long capillament. It grows moſt abundantly about Line, whence the Shopmen call it, Lines Podagry.

Fuchſius not without reaſon believes, that Dodder at firſt proceeds from ſome root, which withers and periſhes when its capillaments do involve a plant, from which it may ſuck nutriment; and thence it is that the temperament and quality of the Dodder changes according to the variety and nature of the Plants which it involves. And many think, that Dodder and Epithyme differ not, ſave that the one grows on Line, the other on Thyme.

Yet *Matthiolus* will not ſuffrage herewith, but contends, and that by teſtimony from *Galen*, that both the form and qualities are in them different; for Epithyme calefies in the third degree, and Cuſcuta onely in the ſecond; but here it onely follows, that Epithyme borrows its calefactive quality from Thyme, Cuſcuta from Line. They do very dangerouſly miſtake, who take the podagry of other Plants for true Cuſcuta and Epithyme.

Neither of them have any leaves, they are onely hairy, putting forth ſlender capillaments, like Cittern ſtrings, out of which iſſues forth ſmall flowers like gliſtering ſtars, gravidated with ſmall ſeeds, which ingrede the compoſition of the laxative ſyrup of Succory and Rhabarb.

It is abſterſive and roborative, it cures the obſtructions of the liver and ſpleen, moves urine, helps the jaundies, and is good for all affections proceeding from cholerick and melancholick humours.

Chap. XXIII.

Of the five Apertive Roots; and firſt, of Smallage-root.

THere are many apertive roots, five whereof precell the other in dignity, three whereof grow in Gardens, to wit, Petroſeline, Sperage, and Fennel; two in places uncultivated, Smallage, and Butchers-broom.

*Smallage.

* *Apium* in Latine, and ἄπιον in Greek differ much, as also Parsly and Petroseline.

For *Apios*, according to *Dioscorides*, (*cap.* 177. *lib.* 4.) hath leaves like Rue, short, and growing on three or four stalks lying along on the ground, and on a root that is extrinsecally black, intrinsecally white, formed like a Pear, which will move the body both by vomit and stool, though not vehemently. Yea *Apios* is sometimes taken for a root like a Pear in form, and sometimes for some juice that is insipid, or at least of an imperceptible sapour.

Whereas *Apium* properly so called, which *Dioscorides* names *seline*, or *eleoseline*, is very like Parsley, but greater, and effects the same with Parsley: but because of its ungratefull odour and sapour, is excluded the society of Pot-herbs.

It grows most commonly in uncultivated and moyst places, whence it is properly called *Paludapium*, or Rustick Smallage.

Its virtues.

It is hot in the second, and dry in the third degree, (*Gal. l.* 8. *simp.*) it moves flowers and urine, discusses flatuosity, and its seed is more efficacious than the Herb it self. *Pliny* saith, it cures Spiders poyson. Its root is frequently usurped to deduce the passages, to remove obstructions, and it is thought that its leaves eaten conduce much to the lungs.

Chap. XXIV.

Of Petroseline.

Petroseline.

That which the Antients called Garden-Apium, and Parsley, we call Petroseline; it is most common in Gardens, and most frequently used in making broth, and dressing meat; it grows no where save in Gardens, and there most redundantly, whether they be hot or cold; it refuses no soyl; if it be cultivated and fat, and suppeditate humour whereon it may live; its seed germinates the latest of all, to wit, about forty or fifty dayes after its sature.

It bears leaves like Coriander, crisped; roots it hath, long, and capillated, which are pleasant for Aliments, and usefull for Medicaments.

Vires.

It is given to such as are troubled with the stone, jaundies, and difficulty in ureting, and to such women as have not their flowers proceeding in due time.

Chap.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Sperage.

THE name *Asparagus* is given to this Herb, either becauſe it grows upon a rough, ſharp ſhrub, or its ſtalk being full of pricks, or elſe becauſe it grows ſpontaneouſly without ſature. For many grave Writers have atteſted, that it doth grow out of a horn of a Ram contunded and perforated: yet the recent buds, and ſlender germination of this and other ſuch Plants that may be cropped for Pot-herbs, were called in former times Sperages. *Asparagus.*

Now Sperage is either wilde, or ſative, and both notorious enough, putting forth many ſprigs, and many little, long and ſlender leaves, which like Fennel, end in Capillaments.

This Pot-herb delights in ſiccity, and periſhes by frequent rigation; yet if it be irrigated in Autumn, it will put forth tender and ſucculent buds.

It proceeds from round roots, in number many, which are apertive, deduce the paſſages, remove obſtructions from the liver and reins, cure the ſuffuſion of the gall, move flowers and urine. *Vires.*

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Fennel.

ALL the parts of Fennel are uſefull; for its tender branches mixed with ſour Condiments, make them more gratefull; its ſeed decocted with Senny, diſcuſſes all that that cauſes flatuoſity, and wringings in the guts; yea either mixed with others, or aſſumed alone, it effects innumerable benefits; its roots alone, without other mixture, remove obſtructions. Fennel.

It is a kinde of ferulaceous Plant, ſometimes exceeding a mans height; it ſtalk is geniculated, filled with a fungous ſap; its external cortex is ſmooth and green, its leaf like Maiden-weed, ſlender, long, ſoft, capillaceous, and ſuaveolent; its muſcary or top, round, patulous, broad, and circulated, whereon there depends a nude, long, and pale ſeed; its root is long, craſs, white, and odoriferous.

There are two kinds of Fennel; one the Greeks call *Marathrum*, which alſo is two-fold; the one ſweet, which is copious in *Italy*; the other common, whoſe ſeed is leſs, and ſharper.

The ſecond ſort they call *Erraticum*, or *Hippomarathrum*, from its

magnitude; for it exceeds the ſative Parſley in craſſitude and procerity, and grows in *Mauritania*, ſometimes twelve cubits in height, four palms in thickneſs; its ſeed is like Millet ſeed, its root white, and ſuaveolent.

Vires. Fennel calefies onely in the ſecond degree, or beginning of the third.

Being drunk in wine, it helps the poyſon of Serpents, moves flowers and urine, generates milk, and cures ſuffuſion.

Hippomarathrum is more efficacious in all things, for it potently expells flowers and urine, ejects ſtones, purges the Kings evil, yea nothing ſo good againſt the poyſon of Serpents.

Some will have wilde Parſnip to be a kinde of Fennel, its ſtalk and muſcary being feniculaceous: but their leaves, colour, odour, ſapour, virtue and form, are very diſſimilar. This Herb is called by ſome, Harts-eye; by others, *Gratia Dei.*

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Ruſcus, *or Butchers-broom.*

Ruſcus. *Ruſcus*, or *Bruſcus*, ſeem to be a ſpinous Mirtle, or wilde Butchers broom, for it hath the form and leaves of a Mirtle, but they are more rigid, hard, macronate, and inodorous. Certain red berries adhere to its virgults about the magnitude of Cherries, wherein two or three nuts are encloſed, of ſuch oſſeous durity, that they will ſcarce admit of pulveration by triture.

Another Plant, called Hypogloſs, and *Laurus Alexandrina*, hath ſome affinity herewith, but its leaves are ſofter and larger, out of the middle or ſuperiour part whereof little leaves, like little tongues, proceed.

Vires. It grows in rude and uncultivated places; the decoction of its root moves flowers, breaks and expells the ſtone, cures ſtrangury, and the jaundies.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the four greater frigid Seeds.

Quatuor frig. major. THeſe four are the Seeds of Gourd, Cucumber, Melons, and Citrulls, under which many oleraceous Fruits are contained, which by the Antients are denoted by this name *σικυς*; yea there is ſuch affinity amongſt theſe, that their nomenclatures ſeem to be indeterminate and indiſtinct; for many under the name Cucumber comprehend Melons and Pepons; under Cucurbites, Citrulls and Melo-pepons.

But

But culture and mangony hath effected many ſorts of each; for they have deſigned four ſorts of Cucurbites, the greater, the leſſer, or the lagenarious, or the anguine, the long and blew one, beſides *Coloquintida*, which is a wilde Cucurbite. *Cucurbitarum differentiæ.*

Cucumber is either ſylveſtrian, which is called the aſinine Cucumber, of whoſe juice an Elatery is confected; or ſative, of which there are many ſorts; for ſome are long, ſtrait, and yellow; others ſhorter, green, and crooked; ſome compreſſed, broad, and round; others clypeiformous, and are commonly called Pepons. *Cucumeres.*

Melons, by the French ſo called, are by the Italians named Pepons, by *Dioſcorides*, Melopepons; by the Antients, domeſtick Cucumbers. But to avoyd the confuſion of names, it is expedient we call thoſe Fruits, which ſpringing from the ſative *Sicya*, (for ſo is the Plant whereon Melons grow, named) are fragrant like Quinces, or ſuch redolent Apples, Melons; whereof, as well as of the reſt, there are many ſorts: for ſome from the ſuavity of their odours, and ſapour, are called Moſchatelline, others Saccharine Melons; others from the ſoyl and region wherein they grow, acquire other denominations. *Melones.*

Citrulls in magnitude exceed all the former which abound in the Countrey, whereof alſo there is much variety both in colour, figure, magnitude, and ſapour; for ſome are ſhort, others long; ſome plain, others round; ſome are unequal, others yellowiſh, which excell the reſt in ſuavity. *Citrulli.*

And as theſe four Plants have mutual affinity in their form, ſo alſo in their faculties. Their ſeeds collected are the four greater frigid ſeeds, which are preſerved for frequent uſe in Pharmacy.

Chap. XXIX.

Of the four leſſer frigid Seeds; and firſt, of Lettice, and its ſeed.

Lettice, or Lactuce, is ſo called from the exuberance of lacteous juice that may be expreſſed from it; which is the firſt of Oils: for as it is moſt gratefull in Edibles and Condiments, ſo is it moſt ſalubre in Medicaments; for beſides its faculty in generating laudable blood, it extinguiſhes the fervour of the blood and bowels, conciliates ſleep, and helps ſuch as labour of hectick Feavers, (*Gal. c. 40. l. 2. de alim. & c. 13. l. de marаſ.*) and it is a moſt familiar alimentous Medicament, much conducing to young and cholerick natures. *Quatuor frig. minor.*

It may be ſown at any time; and if the ſoyl be fat, well ſubacted, and expoſed to the Sun, it will flouriſh, and largely diffuſe it ſelf.

If

If it be plucked while it is tender, and be transplanted into another soyl well stercorated, it will abundantly emit circumvolved leaves, and be capitated.

As no Pot-herb is more excellent, so none more notorious than Lettice, whereof we finde three kinds in Gardens; the wrinkled and vulgar, which is not capitated; the sessile, or capitated; and the Roman with black seed, and broad leaves. Some adjoyn two more, to wit, the Cecilian, and Cyprian or Grecian. Besides which, there grows another Herb in uncultivated places, which derives the denomination of *Lactuce*, rather from its juice and seed, than from its form; which *Galen* calls *Thridax*. Some enumerate more sorts, from the variety of their colours, as white, red, black, and purpureous Lettices.

Vires. All the parts, as also the seeds of Lettices, refrigerate and conciliate sleep; which remedy *Galen* successfully exhibited, when through long and continual studyes, his sleep had departed from him.

Though this seed be here reckoned amongst the lesser refrigeratives, yet is it accommodate to more uses; for it stayes the immoderate flux of the sperm, it moderates the ardour of urine, humectates, refrigerates, leniates, quenches thirst, and conciliates sleep.

Chap. XXX.

Of Purslain, and its seed.

Purslain seed is one of the lesser refrigeratives. And Purslain is a Garden herb most frequently exhibited in Broth and Condiments, which often inchoates Rusticks dinners; and is conserved a whole winter with salt and vinegar.

Purslain is two-fold; either wilde, which grows spontaneously in every Vineyard, and abounds with many branches that creep along the ground, being of a redly green colour. Or Garden Purslain, which is by culture produced; whose leaves are more ample, more carnous, more succulent; whose branches are more erect, and not so hard. They are not much different in forms, but in faculties they are various; for the sative refrigerates, but the spontaneous calefies, as many attest.

Vires. The leaves of either of them contunded, and applyed to the corns of the feet, will cure them. They help Tetters, they asswage the head-ach, contracted by being in the Sun, if they be adhibited with Oil of Roses. Being manducated, they confirm loose teeth, and cure the ulcers of the mouth and jaws.

There is a Sea-Purslain, but it ingredes the composition of no Medicaments described in our Shop.

CHAP.

Chap. XXXI.

Of other Seeds less frigid; and by the way, of Succoraceous Plants.

TWO other less frigid Seeds are desumed from Succory, whereunto many Herbs are referred, to wit, † *Chondrilla*, * *Hieracium*, Sow-thistle, Garden-Endive, wild Lettices, and all intubaceous Plants. But when we put Succory absolutely, we mean of the wild Succory, which comes more frequently into use in Medicine; and it is the genus of all those differences of sative and wild Intubacies.

† Gum Succory.
* Hawk-weed.

The sative Succory, or Intube, is by the Greeks called *Seris*, because it is sown: whereof there are two sorts, the one broad leafed, which some call Garden-Endive; the other narrow leafed, which is called *Seris*, Garden Succory, or Endive; and by *Sylvius*, Intube. *Galen* calls them both *Intubolachanum*, that is, edible Endive, because Succory is reposed among pot-herbs for broth and sallets.

Intybum.
Seris.
Scariola.
Endivia.
Intybolachanum.

To the wild Succory are referred Sow-thistle, or yellow Succory, Lyons tooth, *Hedypnois*, so called, because it conciliates sleep; which *Rondeletius* calls *Dioscorides* his Chondril; by some, Monks-head; by others, Urinal.

Taraxacum.
Dens Leonis.

Cicerbita, or Sow-thistle, in French *Laicteron*, because its juice is lacteous, is of the family of Endives, and grows in any place, whether cultivated, or not; whereof *Dioscorides* makes three sorts, the sharp, the smooth, and the procerous. The first is called by some Sows-snout. *Clusius* tells us of five sorts, two vulgar, the smooth, and the smoother; two austrial, the smooth, and the smoother; one Pannonical.

To the wild Succory also are referred all the sorts of Chondrils; whereof some constitute onely two, others three, besides *Zacinth*, or Wart-wort, and Perdion, which some call Sea-Chondril; others, Bulbose. So that all the sorts of Chondrils are six, which respond more to the sorts of Succory in faculties, than in form.

And if we may from affinity of qualities inferr conformity in a genus, then may Hawk-weed be reposed among the sorts of Succories; or as others will, among the Sow-thistles. Now there are many sorts of Hawk-weed, to wit, the greater, broad leafed, narrow leafed with a short root, the long rooted, the Hawk-weed of the Valley, and of the Mountains; some with leaves like Succory, others both in leaf and form like Chondrils, about which consult the more recent Herbalists.

Hieracia.

The various names of Succory.

But that I may return from whence I deviated; the various names of Succory have much obscured the sorts thereof: for the genus is oft put for the species, the species for the genus, and one species for another, and yet all designed by one name. These names are often attributed to Succory, *Ambubeia*, *Picris*, *Intybum*, *Seris*, *Endivia*, *Scariola*, *Intubolachanum*, yea and all the species of Hawk-weed, *Cicerbita*, *Soncius*, *Chondrilla*, and wild Lettice are denoted by the name Succory.

Wild Lettice hath affinity with the kind of Succory, for it bears leaves like Garden-Endive, and in nature responds to the sorts of Poppy, though it eructates a soporiferous and poysonous odour, like Opium.

The seeds of wild Succory and Endive are they which are desumed for the seeds less frigid, whose qualities the appellation sufficiently indicates.

Chap. XXXII.

Of the four more calid Seeds; and first, of Anise.

Anisum.

THE four more calid Seeds are desumed from Anise, Fennel, Cumin, and Carraway. We have before shewed what Fennel is; and Anise the very women know, whose seeds they often use in incrustated Sugar, or else in confecting that bread they call Biscake, wherewith they mix Anise seed, because it conciliates a very gratefull odour and sapour. They adde it also to many Condiments, for the better grace; for it sweetens the breath, moves urine, helps the Hydroptical, and conduces more to the ventricle than any oleraceous seed; (*Dioſc. c. 65. l. 3.*) It is hot and dry in the third degree, (*Gal. l. 5. ſimpl.*) yet the gust cannot perceive its calour to be so excessive. The Greeks and Latines call it *Anisum*, which is the name both of plant and seed, which I finde sometimes called *Anicetum*.

This Plant is neither like Smallage nor Fennel, as *Fuchsius* and *Ruellius* assert, but a medium betwixt both: for its leaves are not so broad as Smallage, nor yet so small and capillaceous as Fennel. But bec use it is vulgarly notorious, I shall not stand further to describe it.

The Pharmacopolists say, that these seeds are hot and carminative, that is, discussive of flatuosity, as they interpret it: but it's etymologie is obscure and unknown, unless they deduce it from the verb καρδαμίζω, that is, to discerp or divide into minute parts; or from *carmino*, to kemb; whence the Arabians referr *Carmos* to Maidens-

Maidens-hair. Now *carminare* is to kemb hair or flax, and that not all at once, but by little and little; and so flatuosity must be orderly and successfully discussed. But the true original of *carminative* I cannot attain, though it be a word much and long received and approved.

Chap. XXXIII.

Of Cumin.

CUmin is the name of a Plant and a Seed like some Fennel; whereof there are two sorts, one sative and domestick, the other wild. *Hippocrates*, who commends the sative for many diseases in women, calls it the Regal Cumin; *Dioscorides*, the Ethiopian; and some, the Egyptian and Asian Cumin. *De Cumino.*

It insists commonly on one stalk, about a foot or less high, brachiated with many branches; its leaves are sected into slender parts, like Fennel, but they are shorter, and lesser; its top puts forth a round head, which first emits flowers, and is afterwards onerated with nude, strait, and chanelled seeds; its root is slender and odorate, which withers as the seeds grow to maturity. It is sown, and grows plentiously in *Spain*, *Italy*, and some hot parts of *France*; if its seed be injected on fat soyl, it fruticates most of all Pot-herbs; and some Idiots think, that it spreads most if it be sown by some wicked and malevolent person: but their opinion is rather derisible than probable.

The wild Cumin puts forth leaves like Chervil, exile stalks like Shepherds needle; it is capitulated with five or six round, hairy heads, wherein lodges four seeds.

There is another sort very like the sative, which from every flower emits sublime cornicles, wherein seeds are contained, like Gith seed. And this seems to be the Plant which the Shopmen call Larks-foot, and Regal Cumfrey.

It is hot and dry in the third degree; it attenuates, digests, and resolves; taken and adhibited, it discusses flatuosity, incides frigid humours, dissipates pituitous humours, expells poysons, and may be prosperously usurped against the Colical dolour, and Tympany. *Vires.*

Chap. XXXIV.

Of Carraway.

We call

ALL the Society of Confectioners call *Caroñ*, or *Careum*, Carraway; *Athenæus* calls it Carret, wherewith in form and faculty it agrees. It insists upon a stalk of a cubit height, quadrangular, intercepted with some genicles, hollow within, with leaves like Carret. Its root is carnous, and yet gracile, long, white, and sometimes yellowish, of a pastinaceous sapour. Its seed is on the tops of its branches like Fennel, blackish, and angulous; the Arabians call it *Cardument*, which *Sylvius* uses for *Cardamome*. But such as are skilfull in Arabick, think he is mistaken.

Vires. Carraway is hot and dry in the third degree; it moves urine, expells flowers, discusses flatuosity, roborates the stomack, helps concoction, is a good ingredient in the mixture of Antidotes, and may be used instead of Anise. Its root cocted, may be eaten like Carret. (*Dioſc. c. 66. l. 3.*)

Chap. XXXV.

Of the other four Seeds, which are calid in a less degree; and first, of Ameos.

Ameos is so like Cuthin, that that which grows in *Ethiopia* is taken for Cumin. Its seed is sufficiently known; it is small, and much less than Cumin seed, which its appellation seems to denote; for ἄμμι portends a very small seed like sand; which word designs the whole Plant.

Yet there are two sorts of *Ammi*; the one is the Ethiopian, which is greater than the common *Ammi*, and hath broader leaves.

The other is less, with smaller leaves, which is not so frequent. The former hath a green and round stalk, referted with many branches, long and strait leaves, divided with many incisures in their circumference; its muscary is like Anise, crowned with small flowers, onerated with small seeds smelling like *Origanum*, and acrimoniously bitter.

The stalk of the lesser *Ammi* is short, which puts forth many branches, long and capillaceous leaves, which are attenuated towards the top; small white flowers like the former, which are coacted into round

round heads; its seed is long, small, and sharp; it is used by some for *Sison*: for *Sison*, according to *Dioscorides*, being a small seed growing in *Syria*, black, hot and long, like Smallage, or the lesser *Ammi* seed, it may be taken for, or at least substituted instead of *Ammi*.

Ammi is in gust, sharp, and somewhat bitter; it incides, attenuates, calefies, exsiccates, and digests; it moves flowers and urine, discusses flatuosity, and gripings in the guts. *Vires.*

It is thought that women would conceive more easily, if after copulation they smell upon *Ammi*.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of Amomum; *or, our Ladies Rose.*

Amomum is not onely reckoned amongst exotical, but unknown Plants, for none of the Antients have accurately delivered its form or description: and *Clusius*, of the more recent Herbalists, who was very diligent in searching, and desirous to finde out the knowledge of this Art, hath left us three images or forms of this Herb: but we can scarce by probable conjecture finde which is its true effigies of these three; nay, we may as well think that none of them respond to it. First, he saith it is like a branch of a certain tree, which by its odour and suavity challenges affinity with the tree that bears Cloves, but its leaves and fruit are lesser and rounder than the Clove trees. Secondly (saith he) it well resembles the branches of paralious *Tithymal*. Thirdly, it is resembled by a short bough loaden with grains, like *Cardamomum*, hanging in clusters. But he ingeniously confesses, that it is very hard to determine which is the true *Amomum*.

Indeed that small, long, aromatical, and calefactive seed, which Apothecaries keep, and call Cretian *Amomum*, responds very well to the faculties of the true *Amomum* recorded by *Dioscorides*; but of what Plant it grows, is unknown to us. This, and many other rare Simples, have I seen and tasted, in the Pharmacopoly of *Pasch. Bazoin*, a man of approved piety and learning, which vulgar *Amomum*, if it be not the true one, may very well be its substitute; I mean not *Pliny's Amomum*, which being impatient of cold, grows at *Lutetia* in earthen pots, with strait and copious branches circumvested with a green bark, coronated with flowers like to them of Myrtle, but longer, white, and stellaceous; after which, round, crass, flave, and succulent fruits, like them of *Alkakengye*, erupt. *Galen* substitutes *Acorum* to *Amomum*, though its denomination hath more cognation with *Cardamome*.

It calefies, aſtringes, and exſiccates; its decoction conduces to the liver and reins, and helps ſuch as are bitten by Scorpions.

Chap. XXXVII.

Of Daucus, *or Carret.*

This name, *Daucus*, comprehends three ſorts of Plants under it. 1. The firſt of that name is called *Daucus* abſolutely, and is meant of the Cretian *Daucus*, which according to *Dioſcorides*, hath leaves like Fennel, a ſtalk of nine inches length, a head like Coriander, a white flower, long ſeed, like Cumin, which is hirſute, with white doun. It is ſuaveolent in eating, and is moſt frequently uſed in the ſyrup of Mugwort, and may be proſperouſly mixed with other Medicaments.

This *Daucus* grows not onely in *Crete*, but alſo in many other regions, as in *Germany*, *Italy*, and *Venetia*: but the Cretian carries the name, though that which is brought from the Alps and *Genoa* be every whit as good.

2. The ſecond ſort of *Daucus* is like Smallage, but its acrimony is greater, its ſcent ſtronger, and ſapour hotter.

3. The third hath leaves like Coriander, white flowers, ſeed like Aniſe, but longer and ſharper. There are other Plants like this, which are taken for it. Thus *Theophraſtus* calls Carret *Daucus*. Thus wild *Paſtinaca* and *Caucalis* borrow the denomination of *Daucus*.

Vires. Its ſeed, which is frequently uſed in Medicine, calefies, ſiccates, opens, incides, moves flowers and urine, and diſcuſſes flatuoſity.

We have before treated of Smallage, whoſe ſeed is reckoned amongſt the leſſer Calefactives.

Chap. XXXVIII.

Of ſome eximious Flowers, from which moſt efficacious Waters and Oils are extracted; and firſt, of Roſes.

Roſe is ſo common, ſpontaneouſly growing in every hedge, that it cannot but be known. There are two ſorts hereof; one wild, which is called *Cynorrhodon*, or Dog-roſe; the other, Garden-roſe, which we call Roſe abſolutely: whereof there are many ſorts, to wit, red, white, pale, incarnate, luteous,

teous, ceruleous, which grows in many places in *Italy*; and the moſellate Roſe, which flouriſhes in Autumn.

Other varieties may be educed out of theſe by art and mangony; but three onely are uſed in Medicine, to wit, white, red, and damask waters are diſtilled out of the white; Honey of Roſes, Conſerve, Oil, and Unguent, of the red; and Syrup laxative are made of the damask.

There are many parts in Roſes, to wit, the flower, the ſtalk, capillaments, granules, little flowers, the calix, the ſeed, the doun. Some call thoſe little flowers that adhere to the capillaments, *Anthera*; but *Anthera* properly is a compound Medicament uſed to the affections of the mouth, as it appears by *Actuarius*, (*c.* 7. *l.* 6. *meth. med.*) by *Celſus*, (*c.* 11. *l.* 6.) by *Oribaſius* and *Marcellus*.

All Roſes have not the ſame faculty; for the pale relax, the red aſtringe, both roborate; as alſo the common white and ſweet Roſes: for all ſweet odours recreate and refreſh the ſpirits, as alſo thoſe vital and animal parts that hold the principality.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of Nymphea, *or Water-Lilly.*

THis *Nymphea*, which the Poets feign to have ſprung from a dead Nymph that was jealous of *Hercules*, is the moſt uſed of all water-plants in Medicine; whereof Pharmacopoliſts make two ſorts; one greater, which bears white flowers; the other leſs, which bears luteous flowers. Both grow in ſtanding waters and fens.

The greater hath ample, round and green leaves, gracile, long, ſmooth, and round ſtalks, white flowers, in candour and magnitude reſembling Lillyes, and yellow in the middle; a black, nodous, and long root: ſome call it Water-Lilly; ſome, *Nenuphar*; and others, *Heraclea*.

The leſſer grows in a ſlimy, watry ſoyl, on ſlender ſtalks, about three cubits long, whereon a yellow ſhining flower grows, like a Roſe; its root is white, nodous, ſharp, and ſweet.

Nymphea refrigerates exceedingly, aſſwages ſalacity, retains the immoderate flux of the ſeed; and being drunk, and exhibited by way of liniment, it quite extinguiſhes the ſeed; it conciliates ſleep, and wholly takes away Venery, if its decoction, or conſerve, or ſyrup made of its flowers be long uſed. *Vires.*

CHAP.

Chap. XL.

Of Lilly.

Lilly is by some of the Greeks called κρίνος; by others, who believe that it was produced by *Juno* her milk, it is called *Juno*'s Rose; in Garlands it is placed next to the Rose; for its eximious candour, suaveolence, and elegant form illustrate its dignity.

This Plant is very fecund, for one root will produce and nourish fifty heads. It consists commonly of one stalk two cubits high, and sometimes higher, comous, with leaves like Ragwort, but something longer, twined, and green, with a flower in form of a basket, whose *labra* constitute a circle, out of which bottom issue shining tufts, like yellow yearn, and whose extremity is tuberous.

This broad and elegant flower adhering to a small, slender, and languid peduncle, and another to a crass and rigid branch, encompassed with leaves, which withers about the end of Summer, and buds again at the beginning of Autumn.

There are many sorts of Lillyes; for besides the white and common, which is so called absolutely, there is another, they call the white Byzantian Lilly, which hath got its distinction from the place where it grows; another there is of a cruent colour, another yellow, another light red. There is also a small Lilly, they call the Lilly of the Valley; and there is a great one, they call the Persian Lilly, or more commonly, the Imperial Crown, which the Barbarians call *Tusas*; whereunto we may adde the Day Lilly, Chalcedony, Byzantine, and such like, whereof now to treat, were beyond our institution.

The root of white Lilly is malactical and anodynous, and of much use in decocting glysters, and confecting emollitive and matter-moving Cataplasms. An Oil also may be extracted out of the flowers infused for the same purposes. Their water also distilled, will take wrinkles out of ones face, and make it of a very white colour.

Chap. XLI.

Of Crocus, *or Saffron.*

Saffron.

WE referr to the order of these eximious flowers, the golden coloured red flower, of a bulbous Plant, which the Physicians call *Crocus*; the French men following the idiome of the Mauritanians Saffron. But it is a bulbous Plant, lively and carnous, whose leaf is narrow and gramineous, whose flower is like meadow Hermodactyle, with filaments of a purple and golden colour, and whose odour is intense with some sharpness. It grows best about fountains and high-wayes, rejoycing to be torn and trod upon, which (as they say) comes better on by being killed.

But the best of all grows in *Corycus*, a Mountain of *Cilicia*, for its odour is more fragrant, and its colour more aureous. It is green in the Spring, it dilates it self all Summer, in Autumn are its flowers gathered, which are not usurped for medicinary and culinary uses solely, but many more, when any aureous colour is desired.

Now *Crocus* is either domestick, whereof *Dioscorides* enumerates many sorts; or sylvestrian, whereof *Dodonæus* describes more; all which, for brevities sake, I omit.

Vires.

It is hot in the second degree, dry in the first; if moderately used, it helps the brain, refocillates the senses, excites sleep and torpour; by recreating the heart, it begets joyfulness, draws the humours to concoction, and much profits him that knows how to use it with prudence. *Mesue* makes an Oil thereof, which ingredes the confection of the Emplaster made of Frogs. It goes also to other compositions, as to the Syrup of King *Sabor*, and to the Oxycrocean Emplaster; whereunto it gives not onely colour, but also eximious faculties.

SECTION II.

Of Purgative Simples.

The Preface.

OUR former Section being finished, wherein we have clearly unfolded and explained such common Simples as are as it were Preparatives, and occur every where to the composition of Medicaments; we will proceed therefore in the next place to describe such Cathartick as purge humours by subducing the belly; and they are such as are given sometimes by themselves alone, or mingled with such Compositions as are prescribed in our Shop.

And these are for the most part exotical and forreign, conveyed to us dry, from savage and barbarous Regions.

Yet some we have growing with us, especially in hot Regions; yet they do not retain the same virtues and qualities that the other have, but come far short; and therefore it is that they are rejected, and the forreign (which are brought from India *and* Arabia*) used.*

Notwithstanding, our Soyl is not altogether so ungratefull, but that it affords many excellent purging Simples, as we shall here demonstrate in this Section.

Chap. I.

Of Rhabarb.

MAny of the Antients put no difference betwixt *Rhaponticum* and *Rhabarbarum*, nor betwixt the greater Centaury and *Rhaponticum*, but made one of three several Plants. But that our vulgar Rhabarb is not *Rhaponticum*, the description of *Dioscorides* doth sufficiently evince; and that *Rhaponticum* is not the greater Centaury, the same Author demonstrates, in that he treats of them in divers Chapters, and describes them in different forms and faculties.

Our

Our vulgar Rhabarb is ſo called, becauſe it is the moſt eximious root among the Barbarians, or Indians, or Troglodites; or perhaps it may derive its denomination from *Rha*, a Rivers name in *Pontus*, as the nomenclature of *Rhaponticum* is from thence probably acknowledged. But ſince *Rha* in the peregrine idiome denotes a root, *Rhabarbarum*, that is, the Barbarians root, may by an Antonomaſy be put for the beſt root, which the Arabians call *Raved*, the Chinians *Ravam*, where it is moſt frequent, and where it is thus denoted, without further addition.

The Rhabarb that comes out of the Dominions of *Sina*, is the moſt approved, where it both grows plentifully, and almoſt ſponta-neouſly; and is thence conveyed into *Ormus*, *Perſia*, *Arabia*, and *Alexandria*; which afterwards coming to us, is called Indian, Arabick, and Turkiſh Rhabarb.

Rhabarb is very like our common round * Dock; its root is very craſs, round, externally ſomewhat black, internally flave, like the colour of a Nutmeg; which macerated or maſticated, infects with a Saffron colour. * *Hipolapathum.*

It is a cholagogous Medicament, benign, and roborative to the liver and ventricle: it conduces very much to dyſenterick, cholerick, and other affections proceeding from the imbecillity of the liver.

Chap. II.

Of Caſſia.

This name comprehends three Plants under it, to wit, * Sweet-Cane, which *Theophraſtus* calls *Cneoron*, and its probable *Virgilius* means by his *Lavendula*: *Caſſia* * *Lignea*, or ſmall Cane, and *Caſſia* * *Fiſtula*, or ſiliquous Cane, which is a tall tree, bearing leaves like our Wallnut tree, whereunto it is like. The materiality of its wood is compact and hard, its cortex thin and flave. * *Caſſia odorata.* * *Lignea.* * *Fiſtula.*

Its roots are husked, long, round, black, externally ligneous, internally pithy, black, and abundantly pregnant with many round and plain ſeeds, diſtinguiſhed by certain ligneous and tranſverſe membranes.

The Antients either were ignorant of, or elſe groſſely neglected this tree. The Arabians having firſt experienced its ſalutiferous uſe, firſt commended it.

The marrow or pith of Caſſia humectates, tempers immoderate heat, lubricates, lenifies and ſubduces the belly, educing the excrements without gripings. It may be ſucceſsfully given to young men, old men, and pregnant women. *Caſſia vires.*

Chap. III.

Of Tamarinds.

Tamarinds. THE Arabick word, *Tamar*, signifies a Date; not becauſe the fruit of the tree is like thereunto, but becauſe the Barbarians took no care to give it any more proper denomination than what the vulgarity impoſed upon it, by whom theſe Fruits are called Tamarinds, that is, Indian Dates.

The Greeks for their acidity call them [illegible], that is, acid Dates; but without reaſon, for they reſemble no Dactyle.

The tree whereon Tamarinds grow, is tall, hard, and compact, like our Wallnut tree, or Oak, encompaſſed with many boughs, and adorned with leaves minutely incided, about the magnitude of Palm leaves. Theſe Fruits, when immature, are green and acid; when mature, they are cineritious, their acidity not without ſuavity.

But *Meſue* ſpeaks inconſiderately, when according to *Garcia*'s judgement, he thinks that Tamarinds are the fruits of wild Date trees in *India*, whereas there is not a Date tree in all *India*, but what is conveyed from *Arabia*. They grow on a tree fair to look on, brachiated with many boughs, adumbrated with abundance of leaves, like ſome female Fern, called by the Spaniards *Helecho*, coronated with fair, odorate, and white flowers, after whoſe fall, the fruits emerge, which at firſt are green, and are nocturnally involved in leaves, to keep them from the cold, diurnally expoſed to the Sun. Theſe leaves will inflect themſelves, though there be no fruit in the night ſeaſon; and ſo the boughs of the tree are hedged in therewith.

In *Malavar*, Tamarinds are called *Puli*; in *Guzarat*, *Ambili*; in *Canary*, *Chincha*; and in other regions they aſſume other denominations. They gently ſubduce the belly, leniate, temperate, and promote aduſt humours; they are cold in the third degree, dry in the ſecond.

Vires.

Chap.

Chap. IV.

Of Myrobalambs.

IF names ſhould anſwer the natures of the named, theſe fruits ſhould rather be called Syriacks or Arabicks, than Myrobolambs; ſeeing they neither reſemble the idea of an Acorn, nor yield the fragrancy of an odoriferous Unguent, as the etymologie of the name portends.

And if *Galen* or *Dioſcorides* have given the name, Myrobalamb, to any Fruit beſides its nature, that ſame differs as much from a true Myrobalamb, as an inodorate thing from an odorate, and a Prune from an Acorn.

The nomenclature then is more received by uſe and cuſtome, than by reaſon and nature. And theſe we call Myrobolambs, are but certain ſorts of Plums, decerped from as many different trees, as they have different ſirnames: for the diverſity of their forms and faculties demonſtrate the errours of ſuch, who contend that they grow upon one and the ſame tree, but are ſeverally at divers ſeaſons collected.

There are five ſorts thereof, the flave, the Indian or black, the Bellirian, the Chebulian, and the Emblian; many whereof grow in the Kingdome of *Cambaia*, whoſe names *Garcias* hath got from the Inhabitants, and hath delineated the ſeveral trees and fruits in a few words. *Species.*

Arare (ſaith he) or the flave Myrobalamb, is round, and bears leaves like *Sobrus: Rezanuale*, or the Indian black Myrobalamb, is eight ſquared, and hath leaves like a Willow. *Gotim*, or the Bellirian, hath leaves like Bay, but more cineritious and pale. *Aretca*, or the Chebulian Myrobalambs, are great and round, yet not perfectly round, but ſomewhat long, when they attain their full growth, and bear leaves like the Peach tree. *Anuale*, or the Emblian, have their leaves minutely incided, and about a hand length.

The trees are generally of the magnitude of Plum trees, all wild, growing ſpontaneouſly, none domeſtick. *Avicenna* calls Myrobalambs, *Delegi*; but the Arabians give peculiar names to each ſort; calling the flave, *Azfar*; the Indian, *Aſuat*; the Bellirian, *Heleragi*; the Chebulian, *Quebulgi*; the Emblian, *Embelgi*.

The ſeveral ſorts of Myrobalambs have a ſeveral and peculiar faculty; for the flave, or orange-colour'd, are cholagogous; the Indian, or black, purge melancholy, and exhilarate; the Chebulian and Emblian are phlegmagogous; all purge clemently, aſtringing, and roborating the heart and liver.

Chap. V.

Of Aloes.

Aloes is the name both of the juice, and of an Herb very usefull in Pharmacy; for whether it be internally assumed, or externally applyed, it produces salutiferous effects. And it is a Plant either little, or not at all, like *Scilla*, as some conjecture; for its leaves are crasser, fatter, longer, and broader, sharp on both sides, jagged, bent backward, aculeated with blunt pricks, pregnant with viscid and tenacious juice, and foliated like the greater House-leek. Its stalk is a foot high, its flowers white, and seed like Daffadil; its root is single and crass, like a stake struck into the earth.

It grows plentifully in *India*, from whence its juice is brought, as also in *Arabia*, and other hot Countryes.

This Plant will, through its tenacious juice, live two years, and emit new leaves, if it be set upon a board: but if it be cast on the ground, it withers. It is by some for its lively nature (for it is alwayes green) called the Seas Sempervive; yet it will soon tabefy, if it be not preserved from cold, whereof it is very impatient.

The whole Plant is graveolent, and its sapour bitter, but especially its juice, which out of what part soever it be extracted, is very usefull in Medicinal Confections.

Its liquor concreted, and brought to us, is of two sorts; the one sandy, and contaminated with filth, which we call Aloe Caballine, and use in curing horses, and the like; the other is coacted like a liver, and is thence called Hepatical Aloes, or *Aloe succotrine*, or *Succo-citrine*, its powder being of Citrine, or Orange colour. It is also called by some, *Socotorine*, because it comes out of an Island so called. The yellow, fat, clear, and friable, made up like a liver, is the best; the black, hard, sandy, and impure, is not good.

It is hot in the first degree, dry in the third; applyed, it condensates, astringes, exsiccates, and glutinates the wounds; assumed, it opens, reserates the passages, moves and stimulates the Hemorrhoides, roborates the ventricle, subduces the belly, purges cholerick and phlegmatick humours, kills and expells belly-worms, takes away obstructions, exarceates putretude, and preserves bodyes long from corruption.

Chap. VI.

Of Seeny, or Senna.

Senna.

As all the precepts of Pharmacy were not at first put in practice, so neither were all Medicaments at first marshall'd under precepts, or indeed brought to light; for the Antients had no knowledge of that we call Seeny; the Persians, *Abalzemer*; than which, no purgative now more frequent, more usual, more usefull. It is a siliquous Plant, brought to us from the Eastern Countryes, much like our *Collutea*, but its leaves better resemble the greater Myrtle. Flowers of a dusky colour issue out of the hollow betwixt its stalk and stem, appended on tenuious pedicles; to which succeed little, long, plain incurvated leaves, gravidated with small, brown, compressed seeds, like Gygars.

Its roots, which are long and slender, are useless in Pharmacy, especially if its stalk be not long-lived; which being impatient of cold, lives not above four months in the Western Countryes, nor in *Italy* after Autumn.

There are two sorts hereof; one wild, whose leaves are lesser, rounder, and more useless; the other domestical, whose leaves are larger, more acute, and usefull.

Vires.

Seeny calefies not so much as some think; for it is but hot about the end of the first degree, or beginning of the second, and dry about the end of the second. It purges clemently both cholerick and crass phlegmatick humours; it deterges, digests, and expurges all viscid humours, and adust choler from the brain, lungs, spleen, liver, ventricle, and mesentery; and cures all diseases in those parts, arising from these humours.

Lenitivum.

It is exhibited either in form of powder, as when it ingredes the Electuary of * *Diabalzemer*, or *Catholicon*, or infused and decocted, as when purgative *Syrupus de pomis*, or laxative Apozemes are made thereof. But seeing in concoction it excites gripings and flatuosity, it must be mixed either with Anise, or Coriander, or Fennel seeds, to discuss its flatuosity.

Chap.

Chap. VII.

Of Mechoacan root.

A Certain crass root cut into short stakes, and dryed, hath been of late brought us from the Province of *Mechoacan*, and bears the Provinces name. This peregrine root is purgative, of a pale colour, and crass, which puts forth many long, and imbecil boughs, which without fulciments would lay along the ground; but being annexed to perches, they grow up, and with many involutions amplect them like Briony, to which its effigies is very similar, but its faculties dissident: for Briony is sharp and hot, Mechoacan almost insipid, and voyd of all acrimony. The leaves of Briony are broad, and quinquangular, and divided like Vine leaves, but more sharp, hirsute, and white; its flowers small, white, racemous, and congregated like Grapes. And Mechoacous leaves are ample, but withall tenuious, sad-green, and mucronated onely on one side, not angular like Briony. Its fruits are many, cohering in bunches about the magnitude of Corianders, which come to maturity in Autumn. The whitish and freshest root is best.

Differentia inter Brioniam & Mechoacam.

Some call this root white Rhabarb; others, American Scammony; the Pharmacopolists, Mechoacan root. That which is very white, or black, or worm-eaten, is naught.

It is hot in the first degree, and dry in the second; it purges, and that facilely, pituitous and watry humours, not debilitating like other purgatives, but roborating the parts. It should be dissolved rather in wine than in other liquors; it may be safely adhibited to old men and boyes; it conduces very much to such as are infested with an inveterate cough, with colick dolour, and with the French disease.

Chap. VIII.

Of Agarick.

MUshromes are either terrestrial, which grow out of the earth, or arboreous, which adhere to the stocks of trees; for there's scarce an inveterate tree, but some kinde of campinion adheres thereunto; either blackish and rugous, as on Oaks, and Wallnut trees; or crass, dure, and whitish, as on the Beech tree; or white, full, soft, and friable, as Agarick that is excerped from the Larix tree. Which tree is nobilitated with three sorts of excrements, as Larix Rosine, which is more humid than others,

others, and voyd of all acrimony, which is by ſome ſold for Turpentine. Laxative Manna, which is collected from its effracted boughs and branches; and Agarick, which grows upon its bole, when inveterate.

The coniferous Larix tree is of eximious procerity, aſſurging with a ſtrait ſtalk, incorticated with a craſs bark, dehiſcing with frequent chinks, circumveſted with many leaves, ſhort, ſoft, and tenuious, like Pine leaves, not aculeated, but retuſe, which numerouſly cohere together in each tubercle. Its apples are ſmall, almoſt like them of the Cypreſs tree.

That Agarick that ſeems to be the impoſtume of the Larix tree, is beſt, which is white, rare, friable, at the firſt ſweet to the guſt, afterwards bitter and ſtyptical. *Democritus* calls it, *Medicamentum familiæ.*

It grows in *Galicia* and *Cilicia*; but the beſt comes from *Agaria*, a region of *Samatia*, whence it derives its denomination. Now we have very good from *Delphinatus*, a Province of *France*, and many parts of *Italy*, where procerous Larix trees grow copiouſly, on whoſe trunks Agarick grows; which is no root, as *Dioſcorides* and *Galen* conjectured.

It is hot in the firſt degree, dry in the ſecond; it purges flegm, liberates obſtructions, attenuates, deterges, diſſipates flatuoſity, and eaſes us of all diſeaſes proceeding from viſcid, craſs, and frigid humours.

Chap. IX.

Of Polypody.

Polypody is ſo tearmed, becauſe many knots and tubercles, like the Fiſhes called *Polypi*, grow on its roots. It is alſo called *Dentropteris*, or tree fern, becauſe it grows on trees, and ſometimes on umbrous ſtones, moſſy walls, and ſuch humid places.

It is an herb without ſtalk, flower, and ſeed, conſiſting onely of a root and leaves like maſculine fern, but leſſer, and maculated on the under ſide with yellow ſpots. Its root is hirſute and long, about the craſſitude of a little finger, extending it ſelf obliquely, and exaſperated with many lumps; within it is porraceous and virid, like a Paſtick nut; its ſapour is very ſweet, ſubamare, auſtere, and ſomewhat aromatical; but it doth not much affect the tongue.

It doth not calefy in the third degree, as *Meſue* thought; but it's probable that it exſiccates in the ſecond; it deterges, digeſts, and ſiccates craſs and viſcid humours, educes melancholick and viſcid flegm, and that even from the articles, if it be copiouſly aſſumed. It ſuſtains much coction, and is ſeldome given alone, but mixed with

other purgatives, which may adauge its imbecil purgative faculty. The broth of an old Cock, the decoction of Bete or Mallows, much augment its purgative faculty. It helps also some affections, when it is externally applyed, (*Dioſc.* c. 188. *l.* 4.)

Chap. X.

Of Carthamus. Baſtard or Spaniſh Saffron.

As the nomenclature of *Cartham* denotes this herb to be purgative, ſo doth *Enicus* ſhew it ſpinous. For *Cartham* is a Plant, which as to its faculty is ſubductive, and to its cognation of the ſorts of *Carduus*. It aſſurges on a ſtalk two cubits high, and more, which is ſtrait, hard, ligneous, and towards the top ramous. Its leaves are long, broad from the middle to the ſtalk, acuminated towards the top, and aculeated in their ambient.

The extremities of the branches produce ſome round heads, about the magnitude of Olives, obduced with many ſpinous skins, which emit Saffron-colour'd flowers, ſo like them of *Crocus*, that moſt perſpicacious eyes may be deceived in them: hence the Vulgar call it the wild *Crocus*.

To theſe ſucceed long, ſmooth, white, angulous, and ſplendent ſeeds, effigiated like them of Heliotrope, whoſe cortex is hard, and medulla, or pith, white, fat, and ſweet. *Cartham* is by the Seplaſiaries called wild *Crocus*; by the Medicks, *Cnicum*: whereof there are two ſorts, the one ſative, or vulgar; the other wild, whereof *Theophraſtus* makes two ſorts alſo; the one with a ſtrait caul, which women uſe for diſtaffs, which according to *Ruellius*, (*c.* 155. *l.* 3.) is a kinde of thiſtle, and wild *Cartham*; the other lower, groſſer, and more hirſute, which they call *Carduus Benedictus*, of which elſewhere.

Vives. *Carthamus* ſeed is purgative; for its very pith ſolely aſſumed, is flegmagogous; and mixed with other Medicaments, expurges lent and frigid humours: but that it calefies not in the third degree, ſenſe demonſtrates, contrary to *Galen*'s opinion.

Chap.

Chap. XI.

Of Wallwort, or Dwarf-Elder.

WAllwort and Elder are so similar, that they seem to differ solely in magnitude; whence *Dioscorides* calls them both Elders, the one the Arboreous Elder, the other the Dwarf-Elder. *Ebulus.*

Elder grows into a tall tree sometimes, whose boughs and bole are hollow, medullous, and round, like reeds; first green, then cineritious ligneous, and hard; its leaves are like them of a Wallnut tree, but graveolent, and in their ambient frequently incided. Its flowers are many, small, white, and elegantly composed into heads; whose consequents are turgent berries, of a sanguineous colour. The Elder germinates first of wild trees, and is last denudated of its leaves. *Sambucus.*

But Wall-wort, or Dwarf-Elder, is more herbaceous, and low; whose stalk is neither ligneous nor perpetual, but annually tabefying and dying. It grows best in moyst and fat soyls, especially if they be incultivated. Its leaves are ample, and incided about. Its flowers composed into heads, are numerous, white, odorate, not fetid. Its fruits like Elders, are small, round, black, and pregnant with juice and seed. Its roots are crass, long, and carnous; out of its fruits in Autumn they get small seeds, which they keep in their Pharmacopolies. Both its roots and seeds are hydragogous, and very apertive, and therefore usefull in hydroptical and watry diseases.

Chap. XII.

Of Esula, or Devils milk.

THere are seven sorts of Tithymals enumerated amongst the lacteous Plants, whereunto *Esulæ* are congenerate, for they are all lacteous, and purge flegm with griping and molestation. Yet Esula is by the Rusticks taken for Rhabarb, and so frequently used to the valitude of many, and the death of more. *Esula.*

It is called *Esula*, or *Caula*; by the Arabians, *Alsebran*; by *Dioscorides*, *Peplus*; by the Shopmen, *Esula rotunda*, because its small leaves are orbiculated. It grows in vineyards, hedge sides, and many incultivated places.

Another Plant, which *Dioscorides* calls *Peplion*, and *Peplis*, and

some water Plantain, hath much cognation, and the same virtues with this Esula. The round and lesser Esula is better than the greater, which hath leaves like Tithymal.

Vires. Esula is hot, sharp, and ulcerative, violently educing flegm; its substance being tenuious, is igneous, sharp, incisive, tenuative, fusive, apertive, and siccative. Besides flegm, it draws also choler from the junctures.

Its ferity is castigated by infusion in vinegar, as we have shewed (*in Officina, c. 8. l. 2.*) or by admistion of some cordials or roboratives.

Chap. XIII.

Of Hermodactyls.

Hermodactylus * Quick-fading flower.

HErmodactyls, and Colchian *Ephemera*, are bulbous Plants, similar in form, in faculties dissimilar; for * *Ephemerum* is strangulative, in one day suffocating the assumer, and no way subducing the belly in purging; whereas Hermodactyls are no way perilous, and yet expurge orderly flegm from the junctures.

The difference between Hermodactyls and *Ephemerum.*

There is also indigenous *Ephemerum*, which some call wild Leeks, or meadow *Crocus*, whose leaves are but three or four, long, broad, smooth, and fat ones; whose flowers are in colour and form like them of *Crocus*, issuing out at the same time, to wit, in Autumn. Its root is like an Onion; it grows in meadows, and moyst places; it is by some erroneously usurped for Hermodactyle; for this being exsiccated, is flaccid, feeble, and not at all purgative, nor yet pernicious, as the Colchian *Ephemerum*, which is strangulative; whereas Hermodactyle is exotical, and not flaccid as this, but hard, compact, and easily pulverable, which educes humours from the remote parts and junctures of the assumer. Now one sort of *Ephemerum* is lethal and strangulative, to wit, the Colchian; another not strangulative, to wit, our indigenous one; a third purgative and safe, to wit, the Syrian, which in Pharmacopolies is called Hermodactyle.

Vires. Hermodactyle calefies and siccates in the beginning of the second degree; yet with such excrementitious, flatulent, and nauseative humidity, that it makes the ventricle aversant to it; especially then, when the commoved humours with one conflux come upon it. It draws flegm, and other viscid humours, even from the articles, and therefore conduces much to the Chiragry, Podagry, and other dolours in the junctures proceeding from pituitous humours.

Chap.

Chap. XIV.

Of Turbith.

THE enarration of no Plant is so much controverted as that of Turbith: *Mesue* calls it a Lactary, and a ferulaceous Herb: *Serapio* thinks it is the root of *Tripoly*: *Actuarius* one while sayes it is the root of *Pityussa*; another while, *Dioscorides* his *Alypum*; and the more, because it is whitish. Some think it's the root of *Tapsia*, others of Scammony; but *Garcias* will have it a Plant different from all these; *For* (saith he) *it is a plant whose root is neither great, nor long; whose caul, of about a fingers crassitude, and two palms longitude, is extended along the earth like Ivy. Its leaves are like them of* Althea, *as also its flowers, which are whitish, or red, not changing their colour thrice in a day, like Tripoly, as some have foolishly credited.*

Now all Turbith is not gummous, but onely that part of the caul that is next the root; which part is also most usefull, the rest being too gracile and comous to be used.

It purges onely flegm, not choler, as *Alypum* doth, which some call *Herba terribilis*; for its flowers, leaves and seeds move terrible purgations. Perhaps this Herb is called Turbith from the like faculty, as Turbith because turbative, which the Arabians call *Terbeth*; which name they also give to their more valid flegmagogous Simples.

Turbith then, according to *Garcias*, is neither the root of *Alypum*, nor of *Tripoly*, nor of Scammony, nor of *Tapsia*, nor yet any lacteous or ferulaceous Plant; neither is the gummous or domestick the best, according to *Mesue*; however, there is no Shop wherein good Turbith may not be found noted with those ensigns which *Mesue* gives it. Whereunto also that same that *Garcias* depinges in other lineaments, which the Arabians call *Caritamion*, responds in faculties.

But which is the true Turbith, is yet ancipitous. That is most approved of, which is somewhat white and cineritious, easily frangible and fresh; for the inveterate is imbecil, and conturbates the bowels.

It is hot in the third degree, purges by moderate traction; and if it be corrected, educes crass, viscid and putrid flegm from the ventricle, breast, remote parts, and junctures. *Vires.*

Chap. XV.

Of Scammony.

By Scammony we understand not onely the concrete juice of a certain Plant, but also the Plant it self. And it is a lacteous, volvulous, scansory, and smooth Plant; in leaf, flower, and form, very like Similax; in root somewhat different, which in Similax is slender, in Scammony crass, long, candid within, graveolent, and pregnant with juice; out of which, slender and viticulous branches issue, which climbe up the adjoyning bushes, amplexing and implicating them. Its leaves are broad, and acuminated like *Arisaron*, but lesser; its flowers are albid and cave, like a scale; it grows plenteously in fat soyl, chiefly in *Antioch* and *Syria*.

The liquor commonly called Scammony, is collected out of its roots after several manners; as first, the head of the root is resected, then excavated with a knife, that the juice may run in the concamerated passage, till it be brought to fit receptacles or vessels supposited. Secondly, the earth about the root is effoded, and the root left in a concamerated hole, whereunto the juice is profunded upon Wallnut tree leaves therein subjected, which after concretion is extracted. Thirdly, the root evelled, is incided, and the juice issuing from it, is exsicced, formed into lumps, and preserved. Fourthly, juice is extracted from its leaves and caul by triture, which exsiccated, coacted, and kept. But Scammony so educed, is either black, or of a sad green, which is the worst; that is best, which exudes out of the root by incision, especially that which comes from *Antioch*; that which comes out of *Armenia* is next; out of *Europe*, bad enough.

The best is nitid, splendid, clear like gum, somewhat white, rare, fungous, spongious, easily liquescible, tender, friable, not ponderous, nor very graveolent, nor yet suaveolent, but like taurine glew. And by how much any recedes more from these notes, by so much it is worse.

Vires. All Scammony purges validly, moving the belly with labour and molestation; it expurges flegm, and watry, thin and sharp humours; and if it be too largely assumed, it abrades the intestines, hurts the bowels, opens and erodes the orifices of the veins, draws blood downwards, excites the dysentery, conturbates the heart, liver, and other intrals, and subverts the ventricle; it is hot and dry in the third degree.

The correction of Scammony. Its efferous faculty may be castigated by the admistion of Aloes, but better if it be decocted in a Quince excavated, and roasted upon coals, or in an oven, with some seeds of Smallage, Fennel, and *Daucus*: but the most usual correction is by the admistion of the juice of Quince, or Roses.

Scammony

Scammony thus caſtigated, is by the Pharmacopoliſts called *Diacrydium*, which they corruptly term *Diagredium*. When it is too new, it is efferous; when antiquated, imbecil and torminous; for it moves, but emoves not good diet. *cur Diacrydium dictum.*

CHAP. XVI.

Of Hellebor, or Bears-foot.

ELlebore, or Hellebore, is either white, or black. There be two ſorts of white, the greater, and the leſſer; the greater bears leaves like Plantain, or rather Gentian, but larger, more veinous, skrewed and complicated. Its caul is ſtrait and long, emitting many branches, out of which white flowers emerge. Its root is cepous, craſs, and white, whereunto many fibres adhere. It calefies and ficcates in the third degree; it educes many, but chiefly pituitous humours, but not without moleſtation; it excites vomit in the Aſſumer, and its powder adhibited at the noſtrils, moves ſternutation. Elleborine is very like that ſame the Pharmacopoliſts keep.

Black Hellebore is quadruple; the firſt ſort is the true Hellebore; the ſecond, Garden Pſeudo-ellebore; the third, *Dioſcorides* his Hellebore, or Bears-foot; the fourth is wild Pſeudo-ellebore. Some adde black ferulaceous Hellebore, and the great Elleboraſter. *Species nigri.*

The true black Hellebore emits broad, full, ſmooth, hard leaves, like Laurel, whoſe ambient is incided: its flowers are broad, patulous, firſt albid, then purpureous; in whoſe middle, when they are ready to decide, grow ſhort huſks, pregnant with ſmall ſeeds. Its root is manifold, diſterminated into many black fibres and radicles. It flouriſhes in the winter ſolſtice, and deep ſnows. *Elleborus niger verus.*

This ſort of Hellebore is moſt uſual among Medicks, and ſhould be uſurped, when Hellebore is put abſolutely and ſimply; which the Latines call *Veratrum*; the Arabians, *Cherabachen*.

It purges Melancholy, and profits ſuch as are mad, frantick, hypochondriacal, ſplenical, epileptical, elephantical, and infeſted with a quartane feaver, conducing much to all diſeaſes proceeding from choler and melancholy: but it is perilous to the ſane, imbecil, and young. *Vires.*

CHAP.

Chap. XVII.

Of Coloquintida.

THis Plant is a certain ſylveſtrian Cucurbite, by the Greek and Latines called *Colocynthis*; by the Arabians, *Landhel* and the Death of Plants; by the Perſians, *Fel terræ*, as that which ſuperates all other Plants in amaritude; and, according to *Meſue*, infects its neighbours poyſonouſly. It creeps out of the earth like ſative Cucurbite; its leaves are alſo like thereunto, ample and lanuginous; its branches long, and ſerpentine; its flowers of a dusky pale colour, like them of Cucumbers, whereof ſome dye preſently, producing no fruit; others ſuppeditate round apples in the form of an indifferent ball, very bitter, fungous, pithy, and gravidated with ſeeds like them of Cucumbers; which at firſt are green, but when they have attained to Autumn, and their perfect magnitude, they are pale. They are alwayes very bitter, and kill not onely the vicine Plants, but with aduſtion affect the earth about them, as *Meſue* relates at large, who writes much of *Colocynthis*; which I, thinking to be of ſmall moment, will not reſcribe.

Vives. It calefies and ſiccates in the third degree, attracting pituitous and other craſs humours from all parts, as the brain, nerves, muſcles, and articles, though very remote. It purges Choler alſo, and often proſperouſly cures the colical dolour, Apoplexy, Vertigo, Epilepſy, difficulty of breathing, and many other affections, which more clement Medicaments cannot help. Let him that would know more, read *Meſue*, (*c.* 4. *l.* 2. *de ſimpl. med. purg.*)

Cucumer aſtinus. There is a kinde of ſylveſtrian and erratical Cucumber, which the Shopmen call ſometimes aſinine, ſometimes anguine Cucumber, whoſe leaves, branches, and flowers, differ not much from the former. But in Fruits they are alien, for this produces not round, ſpongious, and white apples, as the former, but long acorns ſomewhat green, which having acquired their perfect magnitude, will preſently leap away at the light contrectation of ones finger.

The juice drawn out of this, and coacted, makes the Elatery we ſpoke of before.

Chap.

Chap. XVIII.

Of Mezereon, and Chamelæa; or Widow-wail, and Spurge-olive.

Widow-wail. Spurge-olive. Dwarf-bay.

MAny, through too much oſcirancy, confound *Mezereon*, *Thymelæa*, *Chamelæa*, and *Chameleo niger*. *Thymelæa* indeed, and *Chamelæa*, are affine both in form and nature. But black *Chameleon* differs from them both, for they are ſhrubby Plants, emitting tenuious, rigid, and ligneous branches, with ſmall leaves like Pomegranate leaves; but black *Chameleon* is of the family of Thiſtles, bearing leaves like Artichoke, but leſſer, more tenuious, and ſpinous; whoſe root, according to *Galen*, is of a poyſonous nature.

This Plant is called *Mezereon* by the Arabians, becauſe it is venenate; for *Mezereon* is as much as viduifical, or widow-making Plant, otherwiſe called the Lion of the earth, whoſe ſtalk is elevated about two cubits above the earth; its leaves are like them of an Olive, but greater; its grain is like Myrrhe.

The Commentators upon *Meſue* are altogether ignorant which is this Plant; but it ſeems to be ſome kinde of *Chamelæa*, eſpecially that which bearing three grains coherent, is called *Tricoccos*.

And as in many kinds of Plants, ſome are familiar to us, and natural, others pernicious; ſo in the ſociety of *Chamelæas*, one is efferous, participating of ſome malign quality, which we call *Mezereon*, or *Almezerion*; another better, and leſs formidable, which may be ſafely exhibited in Medicine.

And it is called *Chamelæa*, or Spurge-Olive, for it is much like an Olive; a ſhrubby ſurculous Herb, with ſlender boughs about a cubit long, with leaves like an Olive tree, but leſſer, bitter, ſharp, and mordacious, affecting and ulcerating the tongue. Its fruit is ſmall, round, in the beginning green, afterwards red. The whole Plant is acrimonious, and of an aduſtive faculty; it leaves (ſaith *Dioſcorides*) detract flegm and bile, eſpecially when aſſumed in Pills, for ſo are they moſt ſucceſsfully uſurped. *Vires.*

Chap. XIX.

Of Thymelæa, *or Spurge-flax.*

THymelæa, which ſome without reaſon call *Cneorum*, or *Cneſtrum*, is a ſhrub whereon *Coccum Gnidium* grows, emitting ſpecious ſlender boughs of two cubits length, with leaves like *Chamelæa*, but more narrow, and very glutinous and fat, with white, and ſometimes red, ſmall, frequent flowers on the ſummities of its rods, whoſe conſequents are certain ſmall grains, they call Pepper of the Mount; which at firſt are green, then Orange colour, round like berries, whoſe husks are black without, white within.

Vires. The whole Plant, eſpecially its leaves and fruits, are acrimonious, calefactive, and aduſtive, wherefore they ſhould be prepared with vinegar; its leaves ſhould be gathered in the dog-dayes, dryed in a ſhade, and preſerved; its leaves and fruits purge flegm, watry and ſerous humours.

Chap. XX.

Of Laurel.

THere grows in many woods a wild Plant ſpontaneouſly, that hath more cognation with the three former in faculty than in form, which is alſo nouriſhed in many Gardens, and hath from the pulchritude of its leaves got the name *Eupetalon*, from their ſimilitude with Bay, Laurel, and *Chamedaphne*.

It grows in groves, incultivated, mountainous and rough places, as alſo in many opake and umbrous places in *France*.

Its root emits many craſs, obſequious branches, circumveſted with a craſs bark, with long, broad, carnous, ſmooth, ſplendent, ſad green leaves, like Bay-leaves, but leſſer and ſofter, and many long, cave, and candid flowers about the tops of the branches; its fruits, or black berries, pregnant with ſtones, grows immediately to the root of the leaves.

Vires. Laurel depurges flegm, and ſerous humours, conduces to the head-ach, dropſy, and ſuch affections as proceed from theſe humours. But it muſt not be raſhly exhibited, but as it is duely prepared and preſcribed by a perite Phyſician, for it hath an efferous quality, whereby it offends the bowels and intrals.

Chap.

Chap. XXI.

Of Ricinus, *or* Palma Christi.

Ricinus is so called, from the similitude of its seed to a little filthy Animal most offensive to Cattle It is also called *Cici*, *Croton*, *Lupa*, *Myrasola*, *Kerua*, *Palma Christi*, and in Arabick, *Albemesuch*. *Palma Christi.*

This Herb in form and figure represents a tree; for its leaves emulate Fig leaves, its caul and boughs are concave like reeds, its flowers mossy and pallid, its fruits are triangular, coherent in clusters, and maculous, whose exteriour core is sharp, and spinous, but within they are full of a candid fat pith, or sap, out of which the torcular will express Oil not onely for Lucerns, but other uses; for *Dioscorides* asserts, that it will purge the belly, and kill worms. It is also good to cure the scab, ulcers in the head, and suffocation in the uterus.

It is certain that *Ricinus* is calefactive and siccative in the second degree, and that it will purge the belly; twenty grains hereof, or a little more or less, according to the strength and age of the Assumer, cleansed, brayed, and drunk, will deject bile and water by stool.

Chap. XXII.

Of Sea-Colewort, *or* Soldanella.

Soldanella comprehends two different Plants under it; the one is very like the vulgar in form, but its leaves are perdifolious; it germinates every year, and produces new leaves; it is called *Brassica multiflora*, *& Monospermos*. Sea Bind-weed

The other is very dissimilar, and thought to be of the family of Wood-binds, from its effigies; its seed is mucagineous, black, hard, and angulous; its faculty is hydragogous, and it much conduces to the hydroptical assument. And though it be an enemy to the stomack, yet duely administred, and mixed with other Medicaments, it roborates the intrals, educes watry humours without violence, and is a good ingredient for that eximious Hydragogal Medicament we have heretofore described.

Our Land is nobilitated with many more purgative Simples, as the Aller tree, *Rhamnus*, which we call Buck-thorn, which I will not here congest, because they are either seldome used, or that they do not ingrede our compositions.

SECTION III.

Of Exotical Calefactives.

The Preface.

THE all-seeing providence of God hath thought good to bless the remotest part of the East (India) *with better Medicaments than Physicians; Plants of such rare worth, and admirable virtue, that Medicks of a more polish life and conversation, of greater learning and experience than those rude Barbarians, have, to their perpetual renown, demonstrated their virtues and operations, and by long use and observation, have found them fortunately successfull in many desperate distempers.*

What shall we say? do we not daily receive multifarious and innumerable Plants from divers parts of the East and West? Sweet-smelling-Aromaticks, heart-reviving-Cardiacks, and body-warming-Calefactives, to which our Microcosm is perpetually obliged; of which we are about now to treat. And we intend to fix our discourse, first, upon those that are calefactive in the highest dezree; afterwards, handle such as are less; and lastly, speak to those that have a middle quality, or moderation between both.

CHAP. I.

Of Ginger.

Ginger.

GINGER is a Plant so called, which we borrow of the Barbarians, like our water Flower-de-luce; but its leaves are blacker; its root extends it self with internodian genicles, which emits arundinaceous leaves, twice or thrice repeated each year. It grows in many parts of *India*, whether sown or planted. That we count best that comes from *Malavar*, where it is most frequent and diligently cultivated; else it is not good.

From whence the best Ginger comes.

When

When it is effoded, they leave an *internodium* thereof in the hole for the perennity of the Plant; for the piece occluded will germinate the next year, producing new roots and leaves. This root, while tender, cut into ſmall pieces, will eat pleaſantly with vinegar, oil, and ſalt: but it comes not to us till it be dry, or condited, for it is too efferous for our ſoyl. We ſhall hereafter declare what difference there is among Ginger, Zerumbet, and Zedoaria.

Ginger calefies in the third degree, it helps concoction, and roborates the weak ventricle: but its uſe is now more rare than it hath been formerly; for it is ſcarce admixed to any Condiments, only uſed in the caſtigation of ſome Medicaments.

Chap. II.

Of Zerumbet.

Zerumbet, or Zumbert, Zedoaria and Ginger are peregrine Plants of near cognation, but not all known to all men. For the Arabian *Serapio* (*c.* 172. *l. de ſimpl.*) from the aſſertion of *Iſaac*, ſaith, that Zerumbet and Zedoaria are one? Afterwards he aſſerts, that Zerumbet are round roots, like Ariſtolochy, of the colour and ſapour of Ginger. And in another place (*c.* 271. *ejuſd. libri*) he writes, that it is a great tree in the Mountains of the Eaſt-Indies.

Avicenna (*l.* 2. *tract.* 2. *c.* 247.) ſaith, that Zerumbet is a wood like Cypreſs. Some think it is Arnabo, whereof *Paulus Æginus* makes mention (*c.* 3. *l.* 6.) but they miſtake; for it is the opinion of many, that Arnabo is a tall tree, that is ſuaveolent; or as others think, that Arnabo is the name of a Plant that is now known by ſome other name. *Arnabo, quid.*

But Zerumbet is a graminaceous Plant; either ſative, that grows in the Province of *Malavar*; or ſpontaneous, which grows in ſome woody places of that Countrey, and is there called wild Ginger: *Garcias*. Becauſe its form and root hath much affinity with Ginger. But all in Zerumbet are larger, for its leaves are longer and broader, its roots more craſs, which after their effoſſion are cut and dryed, and ſo conveyed to *Arabia*, afterwards into *Europe*. How it differs from Ginger.

Round Zedoaria may juſtly be ſubſtituted in ſtead of Zerumbet; for it is probable that both Plants are of the ſame name, nature, and genus, and differ no more than long and round Cyperus.

Zerumbet is much commended againſt Poyſons; it exhilarates the heart, roborates and conſerves the intrals. *Vires.*

Chap. III.

Of Zedoaria, or Set-wall.

Set-wall. BY the names *Zador*, *Zeduar*, *Geiduar*, and *Zadura*, we are to understand the vulgar *Zedoaria*, which *Mesue* saith is a round root, resembling Ginger, but more odorate, and withall bitter, and not so sharp and hot as Ginger.

It is brought from the Countrey of *Sina*, and the extreams of *India*; it is related to *Zerumbet*, but more vulgar and notorious; but neither Plant have been seen whole by any almost in *Europe*.

Avicenna saith, *Zedoaria* is like Cyperus, others say it is like Costus, of which hereafter: but all Aromatical Simples are more similar in virtue and power, than in form and effigies.

Vires. *Zedoaria* is hot and dry in the second degree; it discusses flatuosity, cures the bitings of poysonous Animals, helps the colical dolour, kills maw-worms, and is a good ingredient in Antidotes.

Chap. IV.

Of Galangal.

THere are two sorts of Galangal, the greater and the lesser, both growing in the same soyl: but the lesser, which is more odoriferous, fruticates more plenteously in the Re-
Major. gion of *Sina*, the greater in *Java* and *Malabar*; and it is two cubits high, and higher, if sown in fat ground.

Its leaves are almost two cubits long, more green above than below; its caul is circumvested with the convolution of the leaves; its flower is white and inodorate, its seed small, its root about the head crass, bulbous, and nodous, like that of reeds; in other parts it is very like Ginger, and it is propagated in like manner, to wit, by root, and not by seed, though it thrives very well that is
* *Orris.* sown; it seems to be very like * Flower-de-luce in root, leaves, and form.

Minor. The lesser Galangal is about two hands high, with leaves like Myrtle, its root nodous, for the most part spontaneous. Some simply confound it with sweet Cane and *Acorus*. The Chyneans and Malabareans use it oftner in Condiments than Medicaments.

It is hot and dry in the third degree; it roborates the ventricle, cures

cures the colical dolour, discusses flatuosity, and helps all frigid distempers. The lesser must be taken for the better.

Chap. V.

Of Acorus, or Water-flag.

ACorus is an odorate Plant, geniculated like our Orris, but its leaves are longer and narrower, its caul more tenuious and longer, and its roots also more slender, which obliquely prostrate themselves along the superficies of the earth; which are whitish within and without, and of an acroamare sapour.

They erre shamefully who say, that Acorus, both the sorts of Galangal and Ginger, differ not at all. And they are not excusable, who usurp * sweet Cane and Acorus indistinctly; for they differ very much, as appears by their several descriptions. Moreover, *Europe* brings forth Acorus onely, seldome or never any sweet Cane; *India* produces sweet Cane, never Acorus. The errour of many. * *Calamus Aromaticus.*

Acorus, according to *Galen*, is hot and dry in the third degree.

Chap. VI.

Of Calamus Aromaticus, or, the Aromatical Reed.

CAlamus Aromaticus is an Indian arundinaceous Plant, whose caul is hollow like a quil, easily frangible into splinters.

It differs much from Acorus, and is not enumerated amongst the Roots, but ligneous Plants, which are concave, and geniculated. It is white within, like a reed, slave without; its odour is most fragrant, its sapour acrimoniously bitter; and it is glutinous in chewing.

It is brought from *India* onely; instead of whose root, another aromatical one is sold in many Shops, which *Hippocrates* calls *Myrepsicum*, that is, unguentary, from its suavity. Some call it Babylonian Cyperus, which by the more perite Herbalists is named Shop-Cane; which *Johannes Robinus*, the Kings Herbalist, hath by his industry and labour transplanted in the Physicians Garden at *Paris*. But this is not the Antients *Calamus Aromaticus*, for this is hotter and more acrimonious, having more strict and junceous leaves; which are triangular; the vulgar *Calamus* hath broader leaves. But *Myrepsicum.*

since

since they are similar both in form and faculty, our vulgar *Calamus* may be rightly substituted for the rare and exotical.

Vires. It is hot and dry in the second degree; it astringes gently, hath a little acrimony; by the tenuity of its parts, opens the passages, moves flowers, recreates the spirits, and helps the native colour.

Chap. VII.

Of Costus.

Costus is a peregrine Plant celebrated by the Antients, but not accurately noted and described; so that its true dignotion is not apparent to the recent. All indeed say it is a root, but none yet indubitably asserted of what plant, or whether of one or more.

Species. Yet if we believe the Antients, (as of necessity we must in such things whereof they have had perfect knowledge, and which they have often used and approved) there are three sorts of Costus, the Arabian, Indian, and Syrian.

Amarus & dulcis. The Arabian is white, light, and suaveolent above the rest; while it is fresh and new, it is abundantly full and dense, not carious.

The Indian is indeed light, but black and amare; the Syrian is flave, tuberous, to the gust acrimonious, to the olfact fragrant. The Arabians constitute onely two sorts thereof, the amare, and the sweet. And *Clusius* thinks there is but one kinde of Costus, and that it is onely called sweet, in reference to the more amare and acrimonious. Such a difference as this in sapour, we daily experience in Plants, which while fresh and new, are more sweet and suave; when inveterate, eroded with worms, and corrupted, more amare, acrimonious, and insuave.

Costus vulgaris The Costus now in use amongst Physicians, is a root almost like Ginger, within white, smooth, light, without palely flave, somewhat amare, very fragrant, and often so suaveolent while new, that it importunately affects the head. It grows in many places in *India*, as in *Guzarat*, and about *Amadabar*, the most famous City of that Countrey. The Greeks and Latins retain the Arabian nomenclature, all calling it Cost, or Costus.

The errour of some Apothecaries. In Pharmacopolies some usurp a root of a certain vulgar aromatical Plant instead of Costus, which seems to be desumed from the sorts of *Seseleon*; it hath some affinity with that which *Matthiolus* calls *Ethiopicum*, in root, leaves, caul, magnitude, form, and faculties, which by some is called Pseudo-costus; by others, Belgian Costus; and by others, Shop-Costus. If any one fear to substitute this for the true Costus, let him take Angelica root in its stead.

Succidaneum.

Costus being subamare, is somewhat astrictive; being acrimonious,

ous, is exceedingly calefactive; and being suaveolent, is refective and exhilarative.

Chap. VIII.

Of both Beens.

Ben, or Been, (*Rhaſ. par.* 135. *de nomin. Arab.*) is an Arabick word, denoting a certain tree growing in *Ethiopia*, like our Tamarisk, whoſe fruit is called *Abelban*, out of which emanates an Oil they call Muſcelline; which name they alſo give to the Plant it ſelf, as *Rhaſis* hath it; but neither he nor *Avicenna* do further dilucidate the Plant; onely *Avicenna* ſaith, it is a ligneous lump or root, which by exſiccation hath contracted wrinkles and lineations; whereof there are two ſorts, the one white, the other red, both hot and dry in the ſecond degree. Elſewhere he ſaith, that both the Beens are dry in the firſt degree, and the red hotter than the white: but we ſee the contrary in thoſe two roots we celebrate in the Shops for Been, for the white is ſenſibly calid, the red more languid and ignave. The opinion of *Avicen.*

Serapio is no whit clearer in deſcribing both the Plants. There be (ſaith he) two ſorts of Ben, both about the magnitude of the root of the leſſer *Paſtinaca*, and tortuous, they are brought from *Armenia*, their odour is good, and both are viſcid, calid, and humid. *Serapio's* opinion.

Since then the Antients agree onely about the name of this their indigenous Plant, no wonder if our Writers be ſilent, or elſe enunciate few and moſt probable of its properties. There is no Pharmacopoliſt but he knows the white and red roots that are celebrated for Beens: but that dignotion is onely ſuperficial, and none yet have learned their true effigies.

The Arabians ſay, that Ben corroborates, impinguates the body, augments ſeed, conduces to the palſey, and performs many more commodities, which we finde not in our white root; and therefore *Sylvius* ſubſtitutes in its ſtead the root of *Eringium*. I preferr ours, or the Spaniſh *Angelica* before it, as more cordial. *Vires.* *Succidaneum.*

Some think that Polemony is white Ben, and Biſtort red; but that conjecture is not worth the improbation.

Chap. IX.

Of Scecachul.

Cecachul I finde diverſly called by the Arabians, as *Lochachium*, *Lichimum*, and *Alithimum*, whoſe ſeed, or rather grain, they call *Culcul*; its leaf is like *Albena*, or *Fulben*; which words *Serapio* confounds, and uſes them both for *Scecachul*; which is a Plant, by their deſcription, ſhort ſtalked, of a veinous and nodous root; out of each of whoſe genicles emerge leaves like them of Balſam.

It emits violaceous flowers, at the beginning of the Spring, out of its ſummity, to which black grains of the magnitude of Pepper follow, full of ſweet humidity, which the Barbarians call *Culcul*; but *Rhaſis* ſaith, *Kilkil* is more conſonant to their idiom, who (*l.* 23.) recenſeates their qualities, and ſaith, they are hot and moyſt in the ſecond degree; *Serapio* ſaith, onely in the firſt degree. Both contend, that they very much excite venery, for it increaſes ſperm, erects the uterus, and incites to copulation. *Scecachul* grows in umbrous places, and about tree roots.

But neither the roots nor grains of *Scecachul* ever came at us; which ſeeing it is an exotical Plant wholly unknown to late Searchers, it ought to be expunged out of Receipts; for it is abſurd to borrow a name from the Barbarians, ſince both we and they perhaps want the Herb; for why elſe have they not deſcribed it more accurately, or ſent it to us, or at leaſt ſold it in their Empories, or ſhewn it amongſt other of their rare Simples.

Succidanium. Since it ſerves for to excite venery, as oft as the ſaid Plant is required, either *Satyrium* may be preſcribed, or the Preſcript augmented, or *Piſtacia*, or Pine-apples, or *Ornithogloſſum*, or ſome ſuch Plant of the venereous rank, may be ſubſtituted.

Chap. X.

Of Cinnamon.

WHat Cinnamon is, we can ſcarce learn from the Antients, who have conjectured much about it; nor yet from the more recent, ſave ſuch as have peragrated its native ſoyl, as *Garcias*, who

who himself saw it in many parts of the East-Indies, as in *Zeilan*, from whence the best is brought.

The multiplicity of its denominations have much obscured its dignotion; for in *Malago* it is called *Cais manis*, that is, Sweet-wood; in *Ormus*, *Drachint*, by which word the Persians and Arabians also denominate it. We call it sometimes Cassia, and Casia, sometimes small Cane, and sometimes Cinnamon, that is, *China's Amomi.*

But if we credit *Garcias*, who was an oculate faithfull Narrator, Cassia, Cinnamon, and small Cane, is one and the same Medicament. Neither are there more sorts of Cinnamon than two, one growing in *Zeilan*, the other in *Malabar* and *Jaca*. There are indeed five degrees of bonity in these two kinds. *Species.*

The more crass small Cane is *Xylocassia*, or ligneous Cassia, which the Arabians, Persians and Indians call *Salthaca*. That which is more odorate, fragrant, and tenuious, is the true Cinnamon, which the odorate tree portends; and it is desumed from the same shrub that small Cane comes of. But Cinnamon is decerped from the trunk whose bark is most crass, the small Cane from its boughs. Which *Theophrastus* seems to aim at, when he discerps it into many parts, asserting that the Cinnamon next the root is worst, and least odorate; the supream best, and most odorate; that in the middle, of a middle bonity. *Cassia Lignea.* *Cinnam. ver.*

Matthiolus cannot resent this opinion of *Theophrastus*, and others, who assert, that Cassia and Cinnamon do not differ; he confesses, that Cassia and small Cane differ not, but that Cinnamon differs from both, and cannot be found; and if it could be found, that its wood as well as its bark would be of use to Medicks.

But notwithstanding his authority, we have very good Cinnamon; and it differs not from small Cane, or sweet Cassia, save in some degrees of bonity; and thus must the varieties enumerated by *Dioscorides* be accepted. And they speak very probably and rationally, who assert that *Xylocassia*, or small Cane, is the most crass and extrinsecal cortex, Cinnamon the more interiour, tenuious, odorate, better, and more commodious for use.

In *Galen's* time Cinnamon was so rare, that onely Emperours possessed it, who kept it among their Treasures; but its excellency hath now caused it to be brought plenteously to us from peregrine Regions.

Cinnamon-tree is wild and spontaneous, about the magnitude of an Olive-tree, with many and strait boughs, leaves of Orange-colour, in the form of Bay-leaves, white flowers, black and round fruit, about the bigness of little Olives.

Its eximious virtue is in its bark, which calefies, concocts, accelerates flowers and birth, and exceedingly recreates the heart. *Vires.*

There is another sort of Cinnamon tree, very much like this in form, whose odour, sapour and virtue consists not in the bark, as in the East-Indian tree, but in the fruit onely, as *Clusius* relates out of *Nicolaus Monardus* (*c.* 25. *l. simpl.*)

Chap. XI.

Of Nutmeg, Mace, and Macir.

India affords us a certain aromatical Nut, which from its suaveolence is called *Moschocaryon*, *Moschocarydion*, *Caryon aromaticum*, *Nux myristica*, and *Nutmeg*. It is excerped from a peregrine tree, about the magnitude of a Pear tree, with leaves like *Persica*, but shorter, red flower, and peramene odour.

This tree was unknown to the Antients, especially to the Greeks. It grows in the Island *Banda*, where it is called *Palla*, *Mase*, and *Bunapalla*.

The fruit of this tree is for its suaveolence called *Nux moschata*; yet it smells not of Mosch; and it is circumvested with two shells; the one, to wit, the exteriour, is most crass, which gapes when it is mature, as we see Wallnuts covers; the other is next the Nut, which is more tenuious, which being of a red colour, shews most excellently through the chinks of the exteriour bark.

And that same tenuious involument is Mace, which dehisces also when the Nut is exsiccated, and acquires a golden colour instead of its red. Mace then is a thin membrane of a flave colour, which covers and compleats the Nutmeg.

Now Mace and Macir differ; for Mace is the hull of a Nut, and Macir the crass flave, or as *Pliny* saith, red bark of a certain wood brought from *Barbary*, bitter to the gust, and astrictive; of which tree we can learn no certain knowledge neither from the antient nor late Writers; and hence we gather, that Macir is not well known.

A fresh, heavy, and fat Nutmeg, which at the prick of a needle emits an oleous juice, is best, and most approved.

Virt. Both its and Maces faculty are commended for roborating the ventricle, and helping concoction.

Chap.

CHAP. XII.

Of Peppers.

MAny dissimilar Plants are denominated Peppers, as white, black, and long Pepper, Calecutian also, or Pepper of *India*, and watry Pepper, or Persian; yea some have called *Vitex*, or *Agnus casta*, and *Ribes*, wild black Pepper. But when Pepper is put absolutely, *Garcias* admonishes Apothecaries to select the white as best; for want of which, ours desume black. *Species.*

The Plant that bears white Pepper differs so little from that which bears black, that they are the very same to sense; both are scansive, and so imbecil and caduce, that unless they be underpropped, their lent and flexile branches will delabe to the earth, like Hop-trees, or Wood-bind. And they are either upholden by some fulciment, or sown at the root of some tree, to whose top they ascend by convolution. Their leaves are rare, their roots small, their fruits small, round, and racemously coherent.

All Pepper is calefactive, but the white is more potent and odorate than the black; but as the Plant is rare, so is its fruit. There is Pepper with a caul, of which in its place. *Vires.*

The Plant that bears long Pepper is no congruent to the former in effigies than in faculties, according to *Clusius*, though *Garcias* makes them very dissident Plants, for their leaves are equal in magnitude, both hederaceous, but withall nervous, annexed to a short pedicle. The fruit of this Plant very much resembles those grains that grow on Hazle-trees; they issue out of every space betwixt knots opposite against the pedicles of the leaves, as in other Pepper-trees. These fruits consist of many grains, elegantly composed according to the longitude of their pedicle. They are green, because they are collected before their maturity, and sometimes longer, sometimes shorter, as it happens in other fruits not yet come to their perfect growth. Long Pepper.

Macro-Pepper, according to *Dioscorides*, (*c.* 189. *l.* 2.) is very mordaceous; and because it is decerped before its maturity, it is somewhat amare; it is a good ingredient for Antidotes, and theriacal Medicaments. *Macro-piperis vires.*

Chap. XIII.

Of Cloves.

Cloves are the grains or fruits of a certain exotical tree of that name, which grows in the Islands of *Molucca*, in form and magnitude like a Bay-tree, with leaves like a Peach-tree, or rather Willow, but more angust, with many branches and flowers, which at first are white, then green, afterwards red; and when they are hardned with the heat of the Sun, black; which represent a rudiment, or imperfect fruit exsiccated, and exasperated with four points.

This fruit, while green, superates all others in suavity; it erupts out of the extremity of the branches like a nail, whence the vulgarity call it a Gyrofleous nail; for it better resembles a nail than a nut, as its name denotes, for *Caryophillum* is a Nut-leaf.

Virtues. It is hot and dry above the second degree, and is very usefull both in Condiments and Medicaments.

It benefits the heart and brain, helps the liver and stomack, emends the fetour of the mouth, and gratifies the breath; it helps concoction, rids the eyes of dimness, and quickens sight, incites to venery, and takes away obstructions.

Chap. XIV.

Of Cardamomes.

Cardame, *Cordumeni*, and *Cardamome*, are Plants that differ but little in name, but much in nature; for Cardame is a kinde of Cresses, with seed and leaf most calid, and almost adustive, like Mustard. *Cordumeni* is not *Cardamome*, as *Sylvius* thought, but Roman Carraway.

Cardamonum. Cordumeni.

Cardamomes. *Cardamome* is a peregrine Plant, if not in form, yet in faculty challenging cognation with *Amome*, as its name denotes. It grows in *India*, whereof there are two sorts, to wit, the greater, which the Arabians call *Cacolaa quebir*, and *Calcula quebir*; and the lesser, which they call *Hayl*, or *Kakelahil*. Both grow on a caul of a cubits height, and not on tall trees, as some conjecture.

Species.

Cacolaa Hayl. It is a leguminous Plant, which when it is grown to its height, puts

puts forth cods; and every husk brings forth grains, which the Barbarians call *Cacolaa*; some *Grana Paradisi*. Other grains, falsly called by this name, are circumvected by Circulators, as Malegets, so called from *Melegueta*, the Province where they grow.

Cardamome, though peregrine, is now most notorious and vulgar, and also most frequently used in Medicine; but the lesser, as it is more odorate, so is it better, and the greater worse.

Each *Cardamome* calefies, recreates the principal parts, roborates the native heat, discusses flatuosity, and helps concoction. *Vires.*

Chap. XV.

Of Cubebs.

THE Antients seem to attribute so much to the Arabians, that whatever they pronounced, they observed as a Law. Yet Barbarism in speech doth not so much move me, as their diffidy in the very thing; which is such, that they cannot consent about the Plants growing in their own Gardens. Whence it is no wonder if they dissent about such as grow spontaneously in the Countrey, as in the description of Cubebs, which *Avicenna* calls *Carpesium*; *Serapio*, wild Myrtle. And the Indians say it's neither, but another far different Plant which produces Cubebs, which some of them call *Cubab Sini*; others, *Cumuc*; others, *Quabeb* and *Cubebe*. The uncertainty of the Antiquity. The various opinion of the Physicians about Cubebs.

The Plant however is wild and spontaneous, whose imbecil branches adhere like *Smilax*, or Pepper-tree; its leaves are like Mirtle leaves, its fruits racemously congested, every grain cohering by a longer pedicle.

This fruit is so much estimated in *Java*, and other Regions where it grows, that the Inhabitants alwayes boyl it before they sell it to Merchants; for they fear lest it should be sown, radicate, and grow in another soyl.

They erre shamefully that constitute Cubebs to be Vine-seeds, or the fruits of Butchers-broom, seeing there is no cognation among these Plants. *Actuarius* is more tolerable, who consenting with *Avicenna*, saith, that Cubebs are one with *Carpesium*, for both are aromatical and calefactive; but their effigies differs, for the stalks of *Carpesium*, according to *Galen*, are very slender, its branches like them of Cinnamon, to which in faculty and odour it responds; onely *Carpesium* is more valid and aromatical, insomuch that the gust perceives it; and being tenuious, it liberates the bowels of obstructions, moves urine, expells the stone; yet is it not so tenuious as Cinnamon. *Carpesium.*

Cubebs

Vires. Cubebs are very rare; they calefy and roborate the ventricle free the liver from obstructions, discuss flatuosity, emend the frigi distemperature of the uterus, and excite the drowsy faculties c venery.

Chap. XVI.

De Carpobalsamo; *And of the fruit, and other part of Balm-tree.*

BAlm is a peregrine shrub, growing formerly in *Judæa, Egypt*, and the valley of *Syria*, and most in *Jericho*; not very fair to look on, of a cineritious colour; it hath slender boughs, leaves like sweet Marjoran, which annually decide in *December*, and repullulate in the middle of the Spring. Its flowers are like the small luteous Jasmine, to which a small, aromatical, succulent, flave, mordaceous and acrimonious seed follows, which smells like *Balm-gum, and is called Carpobalsame.

*Opobalsamum.

This Plant is full of branches even to the root, whose surcles are very slender, fulve, odorate, asperated with many knots, and smells like Balm-oil.

When they are well grown, they abscind these branches, and sell them to Merchants, who carry them into forreign Countryes for lucre sake, for they are very expetible and vendible in any place; because of their eximious faculties, Medicks call them *Xylobalsamum*.

Opobalsamum. Sometimes they abscind its very caul, whereunto they append a little bottle oblited with wax, whereinto an oleous liquor of a most fragrant odour doth distill. But they more frequently vulnerate its crasser boughs and cauls with a vitreous, or an Ivory knife, at the beginning of Autumn; out of which scarification emanes a crass juice like Oil, which they call *Balsamelæon*, and *Opobalsamum*.

Amongst all Oils and Balsams, this is most approved and commended, whose faculties are inferiour to no Medicament in abigating diseases, whether it be intrinsecally assumed, or extrinsecally adhibited, or mixed with other Medicaments.

The Syrian, tenuious and perspicuous, is best, which will delabe and settle in a vessel full of water, which indeed is common to all legitimate Balms, but chiefly to that that is desumed out of the famous Garden of the Turkish Emperour, where a small tree is cultivated and kept with great sedulity, three parts whereof are excerped for the expugnation of many diseases, to wit, its wood, liquor, and seed, called in the proper idiome of the Medicks, Xylobalsame, Opobalsame, and Carpobalsame; which being very rare, and not growing

growing in every region, are poſſeſſed onely by Kings and Noblemen, for the vulgar Carpobalſame is not legitimate; its faculties being ignave, almoſt inodorate, faint, rancid, exolet, and not ſuaveolent. And the ſame may be pronounced of the wood they call Xylobalſame, for it is the caul of Lentisks often ſo corrupted; or inveterate, that it is inſipid, inodorous, and inefficacious.

Medicks have invented three ſuccidaneous Vicegerents for the want of theſe three; for Carpobalſame, Cubebs; for Xylobalſame, new and freſh Lentisk; and for Opobalſame, the Oil of Cloves and Nutmeg, as alſo the limpid water of Turpentine-tree, thin as Oil; for Turpentine is the very Mother of artificial Balms, the parts of whoſe Plants reſpond well to the parts of natural Balm.

There are now two other ſorts of Balm circumvected; the one called Peruvian Balm, which is educed out of a certain fruit growing in *Peru*, whereof *Cluſius* makes mention. Another they call Balm of *Tolu*, from a certain region of *India*, which diſtills out of a ſauciated tree, like little Pines; both of them are endued with eximious faculties, and may be very well ſubſtituted inſtead of Syriack. *Bal. de Perù.* *De Tolu.*

Chap. XVII.

Of Kermes.

MAny Plants will onely grow in the Meridional, others in the Septentrional, and ſome in both regions; as that ſame grain which the Mauritanians call *Kermes*; which very denomination, according to *Dioſcorides*, demonſtrates the Plant to be exotical, and to grow in *Aſia*, *Armenia*, or *Arabia*; for in two uſurpations it reſerves its Arabian nomenclature, to wit, in the confection of *Alkermes*, and in dying cloaths of a Bermeſian colour.

Now *Kermes*, or *Karmas*, is the name of a ſuffruticeous Plant, and its grain, which is vulgarly called Scarlet dye, or infectory grain. *Kermes ſeu Karmas, quid.*

It grows both in the aforeſaid places, and in *Orleans* in *France*, and many places in *Italy* which are hot, and tend towards the Mediterranean Sea; and it is repoſed amongſt the aculeous Ilices; for their variety is manifold; whereof ſome are glandiferous, which grow into tall trees; others coccigerous, which are lower; ſome bacciferous; which are of a middle conſiſtency, as * Aquifoyl, which is frequent and vivacious in the Septentrional ſoyl. Yet ſome exclude this Plant from the number of Ilices, although the two former have not ſo much affinity each with other, as the later with this. * Holly.

The Plant then whereon *Kermes* grows, is a certain small Illex, putting forth many cauls, which are harder towards the root, obtenebrated with leaves continually green, long, jagged about, denſe, ſinuous, angulous, ſpinous, aculeated, and horrid, which at the beginning of the Spring conceives as it were a little egge towards its root, which it obvallates with pricks ſupernally devolved, which in its growth changes its colour from white to cineritious, then to purple, and at laſt acquires a moſt elegant colour: for the whole grain is full of ſanguineous liquor, which after perfect maturity, and too long coaction in its membrane, produces worms, whereof ſome are winged, and fly away: yet before the procreating of them, the liquor may be ſtudiouſly extracted, to the confection of *Alkermes*, and ſcarlet tincture.

Succus Kermes

The generation of theſe little Animals, or may be hindred, or their death procured, by the aſperſion of a little vinegar, whereby their exanimated carcaſſes are collected, and coacted into a maſs, like Vermilion, which they call * *Scoletium*, and *Pliny*, *Cuſculium*, for the tincture of purple, or skarlet colour.

* *Sceachul.*

This grain is not the fruit, but excrement of this Illex, or a red and lucid gum contained in a husk, which grows about the root of the leaves. This Illex is not onely coccigerous, but glandiferous alſo; for the more inveterate ſurcles bring forth Acorns ſomewhat longer and blacker than thoſe of the Oaks, but then it ceaſes to produce grains, or * *Coccum*. And therefore theſe ſurcles are preſcinded, that a new ſpring of ſurcles may follow, and be coccigerous.

Coccum Baph.

Vires. *Kermes* exceedingly roborates the heart, and all its faculties; it alſo aſtringes precided nerves and wounds by its glutinous faculty, when extrinſecally adhibited.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Schœnanthum, or Squinant.

Schœnanthum is an odorate bullruſh growing in *India*, from whence it is brought to us in bundles, being incicurable by all Art.

It is a junceous and gramineous Plant, whoſe ſmall, dry, hard and nodous root emits hard, ſtraggling, round, full, not concave, and clear reeds, gracile towards the top; whoſe rigid, mucronated, and pale leaves of half a palms length, amplect its gramineous ſurcles.*

Two ſorts of flowers, palely red, and pappous, adorn its ſummity; ſome call it, the reed of *Mecha*; others, Camels food, becauſe Aphricane Camels feed on its ſummities. Its flowers are ſeldome brought

brought to us with it, though it be denominated from them.

Schœnanthum is moderately calefactive and astrictive; and because its parts are tenuious, it moderately digests and repells; the root is more astrictive than the other parts of the Plant; the flower is hotter, which potently moves urine and flowers. *Vires.*

CHAP. XIX.

Of Folium, or Malabather; the Indian leaf so called.

A Certain eximious Leaf is brought to us from *India*, which the Arabians call (*Cadegi Indi*) that is, Indian Leaf, which the Inhabitants call *Tamalapatra*, and the Apothecaries, with reference to its native soyl, *Malabathre*. It is a leaf like the leaf of the Medicks Apple-tree, of a palid green colour, with three strokes percurring its longitude; it is odorate, smelling like Cloves.

It doth not swim upon water, nor grow in the Indian fens, nor yet without root, as *Dioscorides* thought; but it is desumed from a tall tree, far from waters, fruticating in dry places.

Malabathrum is hot in the second degree, odorate, moves urine, emends ones breath, keeps cloaths from moths, and in other qualities concords with Spicknard; which may be well substituted, when it cannot be had. *Vires.* *Succidanium.*

CHAP. XX.

Of Spicknard.

Dioscorides (c. 6. l. 1.) makes mention of two sorts of Spicknard, one Indian, the other Syrian, both growing in one Mountain, but the one on that side that looks towards *India*, the other on that that looks towards *Syria*. He afterwards adjoyns the Celtian, that grows on the mountains of *Liguria*, which is called *Saliunca*, from its native Countrey name; and the mountainous, which grows in *Cilicia*, and *Syria*, sometimes called *Thylacitis*, and *Niris*. *Species.*

Lobelius makes two sorts of Celtian Spicknard, or Celtick-Nard; the one with leaves like skrewed Gentian, and a root like the greater Valerian; the other called *hirculus*, whereof *Clusius* records, that he gathered Fascicles among the Celtian Spicknard. *Species Nardi Celtiæ.*

Lavendula major. Pseudonardus. Aspica.

Besides the peregrine Spicknard, and its related species, we have some Plants celebrated with this denomination, as the greater *Lavendula*, which in the French idiome is called *Aspic*, and by some, Pseudo-Spicknard; out of which a kinde of Oil is extracted by Chymistry, commonly called Oil of *Aspic*; as also another great *Lavendula*, to wit, the Cerulean or Italian; and also another lesser *Lavendula*, of the same colour, odour, and effigies. *Stœchas* that is spicated, may also be referred to this rank.

But when Spicknard is written without further addition, it is alwayes meant of the Indian, out of whose exile root grows certain spicated hairs, and thick glomorations, discriminated by wreaths and tufts, out of whose middle issue junceous leaves.

Vires.

Spicknard calefies in the first degree, and desiccates in the second; it helps the liver and the ventricle, moves urine, cures the pains of the stomack, and exsiccates the humidity of the mesentery. Indian or black Spicknard is most sanative to bodily affections.

Chap. XXI.

Of Agalloche, or Aloes wood.

Lignum Aloe.

A Loes tree is by the Greeks called *Xylaloe*, and *Agallochum*; it is like an Olive tree, sometimes greater, and not circumvested with a skin, as *Dioscorides* writes, but with a crass bark. Its wood is odorate and blackish, maculated with some cineritious strokes and spots; it is ponderous, crass, compact, and succulent; which adhibited to the fire, or accended, (it will not flame) exudes much liquor.

Its odour is not perceptibly dispersed through the universal matter of the wood, but it is more fragrant in the very middle, and the dry is more suaveolent than the green.

The variety of it.

The tree is very rare, growing onely in *India*, and in such Regions and Promontories where Tigers and wild ravenous Beasts make their abode; whence it is, that neither a great tree can be cut down, nor young shrub evelled, without great danger and peril. Hence the Antients foolishly credited, that it grew in Paradise.

Serapio mentions more sorts thereof than he either saw or knew; perhaps more odorate woods may be referred to *Agalloche*. So the odorate tree growing in the Promontory of *Comorin*, is by some called Aloes tree, when by *Garcias* it is a different Plant.

Vires.

Agalloche, or Aloes wood, called by *Avicenna*, *Agalugen*, is hot and dry in the second degree, and is very good against the affections of the heart.

Chap.

Chap. XXII.

Of Santals, or Sanders.

THE wood of a certain tall peregrine tree, like a Wallnut tree, is brought to us, which in the Island *Tymor*, where it grows, they call *Chandama*; in *Arabia*, *Sandal*; in *Europe*, *Santal*: whereof there are three sorts, the white, pale, which are frequent in *Tymor*; and red, which grows in the Island *Tanasarim*, as *Garcias ab horto*, tells us, who saith there is so much affinity betwixt the Santal trees, that the pale can scarce be discerned from the white, save by the Inhabitants that cut down the trees, and sell them to the Merchants; for the effigies of both is one, the leaves the same; both very green, like Lentisks leaves; their flowers are of a ceruleous black colour; their fruits about the magnitude of Cherries, first green, then black, which are insipid and diciduous.

The pale or citrine Santal-tree fruticates best in aprike places; it is more odorate and better than the white, and yet the white much excells the red; the red is inodorate, very like Brasil, but not so sweet nor infective, nor yet so hard and ponderous. Which is best.

The Antients attributed great virtue to Santals, for they exhilarate and roborate the heart, and vital parts, according to *Avicenna*; they are averse to hot and feaverish diseases; they liberate obstructions, and much recreate the liver. *Vires.*

Chap. XXIII.

Of Sassafras.

A Very grand tree grows in *Florida*, which the Indians call *Pascame*, the Spaniards, *Sassafras*, with a tall caul; circumvested with a cineritious and thin bark, boughs expanded at the top, leaves like Fig leaves, dirempted into three angles, roots sometimes crass, sometimes slender, according to the age of the tree, expanded along the interiour caverns of the earth, which are somewhat aromatical, smelling like Fennel.

The tree fruticates best in maritimous and temperate places; its root is best, and especially the bark thereof, which is hot and dry in the beginning of the third degree.

Its other parts participate of both qualities onely in the second degree. Besides its elementary qualities, it is endued with peculiar

ones, for which it is very expetible and usefull: but because of its rarity, Circulators pulverate Box wood, and Fennel seed, and sell it for *Sassafras*; for they think they can well enough deceive the Vulgar, if for the true *Sassafras*, which is of a fulve colour, and Fennel odour, they can exhibite this flave Powder, smelling like Fennel.

The decoction of *Sassafras*, according to *Clusius*, is good against all kinds of diseases, especially obstructions, womens diseases, and French pox; it roborates the internal parts.

Chap. XXIV.

Of Guajacum.

SIX simple Medicaments are much commended for the cure of *Morbus Gallicus*, to wit, *Sassafras*, *Guajacum*, *Sarsaparilla*, *Chyna*, *Mercury*, and *Cynabaris*. Of *Sassafras* we have already treated, of the rest in order. *Guajacum* is so called by the Indians, from the German word *Guajacam*; by the Latins, *Lignum sanctum*; it is brought from the Western Islands *Boriquen*, *Cuenga*, *Nagrande*, and *Nicaragua*.

It is a tall tree, in magnitude and effigies like an Illex, or Oak, ramous, blackish in the middle, hard, with a crass and fat bark, small and hard leaves, luteous and purgative flowers, which the Indians condite and assume, to purge their bodies.

Their fruits that follow the flowers, are of the magnitude of Chesnuts, and like two Lupines conjoyned.

Palus sanctus, Palma sancta. There is another sort of *Guajacum* which is lesser, but better, which they call *Palus Christi*, and sometimes *Lignum sanctum*; it is a shrub in colour, faculties, magnitude and form, much unlike the great *Guajacum*: for the matter of its wood is white, concolorate, and very fibrous; its sapour is sharper, odour more fragrant, and qualities more efficacious. But because it is very rare, in want thereof we usurpe *Guajacum*, which is endued with the same faculties, but more infirm.

Vires. Both of them are prevalent in curing the French disease; for they calefy, incide, attenuate, open, move sudour, exarceate putretude, and by special properties extinguish venereous poyson.

Chap.

Chap. XXV.

Of Sarsaparilla.

THere comes a certain long and uniform root from the Western Islands, especially from *Peru*, and the Province *Honduras*, which is sometimes called *Sarsaparilla*, sometimes *Salsaparilla*, and *Sarzaparaglia*; which *Matthiolus* and *Dodonæus* think to be the same with our Smilax: but they differ much, for Smilax root is nodous, and geniculated like grass root, and much shorter and softer. *Sarsaparilla*'s root is without knots, asperated with no genicles, hard, fibrous, rugous, pithy, and sometimes twenty foot long, which may be easily cleft like a twig. Its other parts are like Smilax, and climbs vicine Plants, as Smilax doth.

Sarsaparilla calefies moderately, opens, projects sudour, and extinguishes the venereous poyson. *Vires.*

The Indians use its juice to cure the venereous disease, which to them is natural and endemial.

Chap. XXVI.

Of Chyna root.

I May not omit this other Antidote against the Indian disease, to wit, that excellent Root, which, as also the whole Plant, hath its name from *Chyna*, but in its native soyl retains its Countryes name, to wit, *Lampatan*. It grows in the vast region of *Chyna*, which terminates upon the *East-Indies*, and *Scythia*, not in mountainous and dry ground, as some have conjectured, but in fens and moyst places like a reed, as about the sea-shore, or head of some fountain.

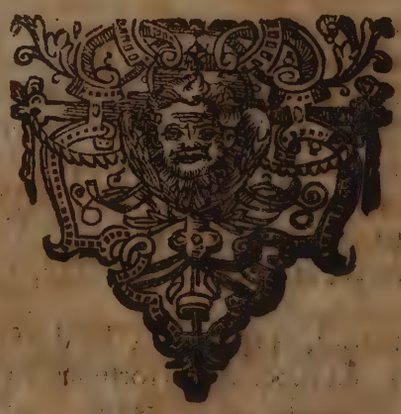
Its root is crass and nodous, as reed roots; hard also, and tuberous, like the Brambles root; and rubeous and tortuous, like Bistorts root. Slender and imbecil cauls erupt out of its root, which are circumcinged with very rare leaves; which though low, require fulciments, that they may be strait.

This root is now vulgar; which the Antients either knew not, or oscitantly pretermitted; but now it is so notorious, that no Barber, or young Apprentice, but he will talk thereof. The Indians use this Medicament as panpharmacal to all diseases, and especially to such as cannot be cured by other remedies.

It

Vires. It is very prevalent in curing the Indian Pox; it helps the Vertigo, cures the pain of the ſtomack, helps the hydroptical, cures the colical dolour, and affections of the uterus, removes obſtructions, opens the paſſages, moves urine, cauſes ſudour, helps in convulſions and palſey, and eaſes the dolour of the articles: for *Charles*, the fifth Emperour of that name, found no eaſe from other Medicaments, but much from *Chyna*, againſt the Gout, which handled him very ill. Some ſay that it is good for ſuch as are tabid, but I think too hot to cure the conſumption, to emend a dry diſtemper, and reſarciate it.

Garcias uſed it againſt the heat of the liver ſo long, that his body was almoſt wholly inflamed. Its uſe is now more rare than formerly it hath been.



SECT.

SECTION IV.

Of Indigenous Calefactives.

The Preface.

WE have many hot Plants which will not grow in forreign Countryes, of which we intend to speak distinctly in this fourth Section. And they are such as either grow spontaneously in the Fields, or by culture in Gardens. Wherein we shall observe this method, first, touch upon those that are hottest, then such as are hotter; and lastly, those that are moderately hot; all which we shall run over with brevity; yet not so, but that their qualities may be distinctly known. And therefore we shall begin with such as have a fiery kinde of quality;

M

CHAP. I.

Of Bartram, or Pellitory.

BArtram, or *Pyrethrum*, is so called from that igneous quality which its chewed root leaves in the gustative organ; the Vulgar call it *Alexander's* foot; the Latines, from the abundance of spittle it causes in the mouth, call it *Herba salinaris*.

It is an herb of a cubits height, or more; in its caul and leaves emulating the wild *Daucus*, or vulgar Carret, are multifariously divided, and sected into small capillaments, like Fennel; its flower that erupts out of the summities of its surcles, is fair, broad, and patulous, like a Marigold, but larger, subluteous in its orb, and circumdated with little angust, long leaves, supernally whitish, and on the contrary side of a purple colour, in the middle of its orb, and between the leaves issues a small, long, and odorate seed.

Its root is crass, long, and of a blackish red colour.

It grows in many places of *Italy* and *Spain*, and fruticates, flouriſhes and perfects its ſeed when it is ſown in Gardens in *Holland*: but it grows more copiouſly and floridly in hot and Eaſtern Regions; and we enumerate it amongſt our indigenous Plants, becauſe we have it in *Europe* and the Weſtern Countryes pretty plentifull.

There is another Plant, which by its acrimonious odour moves ſternutation, which Apothecaries call wild *Pyrethrum*, becauſe by its vellicative ſapour it moves the guſt like Bartram, and promotes ſpittle; which grows in mountainous and incultivated places, alſo in meadows and hedges.

Pyrethrum's root is hot in the fourth degree; detained in the mouth, it projects flegm copiouſly, and therefore it helps the tooth-ache proceeding from a frigid cauſe; it helps alſo the diuturnal head-ache, the Apoplexy, Epilepſy, Palſey, and all affections ariſing from flegm congeſted in the head.

Chap. II.

Of Muſtard.

Muſtard is no Aliment, ſometimes a Medicament, often a Condiment; for it is moſt conveniently admixed to viſcid and glutinous diſhes, eſpecially in winter, that their viſcidity may be corrected, and the ventricle thereby roborated; for it admirably helps ſuch as have dull palats, and nauſeate their meat. But becauſe by its acrimony it importunely affects the guſt, it is not onely grinded with vinegar, to mitigate its fervour, but mixed with ſweet wine, to obdulcorate its acrimony; and ſo is made a gratefull Condiment, which many for its vulgarity diſeſtimate.

1. Muſtard is either ſative or ſpontaneous; the ſative is of two ſorts; the one hath leaves like Rape, but leſſer, and more ſharp, with a round, hiſpid, ſharp ſtalk, of two cubits height, or more, brachiated with many boughs, about which erupt luteous flowers orderly diſpoſed, to which long, thin and ſharp husks ſucceed, wherein a little round ſeed is included, of a yellow colour, and mordaceous guſt.

2. The other ſative Muſtard is ſo like the former, that they ſeem onely to diſſent in colour of their ſeeds; which in the former is luteous, in this a blackiſh red; the leaves of this are ſomewhat more like Rocket than the other, in all other things they are the ſame.

The wild grows ſpontaneouſly in any dry place, and ſometimes in humid places, brinks, and hedges; it is leſs than the former, bearing

leſſer

leſſer leaves, jagged, almoſt like Shepherds-purſe, but more acute; it emits luteous quadrifolious flowers; it afterwards puts forth its ſeed in husks, which it varies, ſometimes bearing white, ſometimes red ſeed.

This Plant denominates a noble Medicament they call *Synapiſmum*, which is celebrated to many uſes, as to inveterate Head-achs, Epilepſy, Vertigo, difficulty of breathing, diſtillations, and the Gout.

Muſtard is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it incides, attenuates, extracts; detained in the mouth, it moves flegm; brayed and ſnuffed up the noſe, it cauſes ſternutation; it excites women ſuffocated with the hiſterical paſſion: but ſuch as have imbecil and caliginous eyes, ſhould altogether eſchew it. *Vires.*

Chap. III.

Of Thlaſpi, or Treacle-Muſtard.

Muſtard and *Thlaſpi* are rightly deſcribed in the ſame ſeries; for both agree, if not in effigies, yet much in qualities; ſo that *Thlaſpi* is commonly called Countrey, or Treacle-Muſtard. There are many kinds of *Thlaſpis*, whereof three are moſt noted, one greater, another leſſer, and another mean, whereunto all the reſt of that name are referred. *Species.*

The firſt grows plentifully both in cultivated and incultivated Fields, with large, long, criſped leaves, acute towards the end; its caul is about half a foot long, emitting boughs, circumcinged with flowers, at firſt white, which are frequent at the beginning of Summer, not unlike Shepherds-purſe, which convolving themſelves into two valvuls, produce a blackiſh, hot, and ſharp ſeed, in ſapour like Muſtard, or *Naſturtium*.

The ſecond hath a ramous caul of a foot high; its leaves are leſſer, anguſt, acuminated, and ſubverted; its flowers white, ſeed ſmall, ſharp and hot, like *Naſturtium*.

The third and leſs *Thlaſpi* is an Herb with anguſt leaves, of a fingers length, converting themſelves downwards, and a little incided in their extremities; its flowers are whitiſh, caul ſlender and ramous, of a foot high, whereon many ſmall, plain husks, like little Lentils on ſmall pedicles, do depend in an excellent ſeries; wherein a ſmall ſeed, affecting the mouth and tongue with a ſharp ſapour like Muſtard, is encloſed.

It grows in incultivated, ſtony, mountainous, hot and dry places, as on many walls and houſes; whence ſome Herbaliſts call it *Tectorium Naſturtium*, and ſometimes Countrey-Muſtard. Its ſeed is uſed in Antidotes; yet he ſhall not much erre, that in defect thereof uſurps other ſeeds.

Many referr many more Plants, bearing sharp and fervent seed, to the *Thlaspi*; but seeing they dissent much in effigies, others referr them rather to Plants more affine in form: for the *Thlaspi* of *Crateva*, which seems to be a latifolious Violet, called *Bolbonac*, as also *Draba*, by some called *Thlaspi*, have little or no affinity with the rest of that name.

Vires. Its seed is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it breaks impostumes, moves flowers, kills the young in the uterus, helps the sciatical; infunded at the fundament, it evacuates blood, and pollicitates many more commodities, if rightly and opportunely usurped. It is mixed with some Antidotes.

Chap. IV.

Of Rockett.

ROcket; which the Greeks call *Euxomon*, is sown in Gardens for Condiments sake; for it is both good and usefull in Sallets and Pottage for such whose internal calour languishes, and whose lust to venery is dull; for Rocket revokes venery, and accelerates the husband slow to congress; whence Poets call it, the Salacious Herb.

Herba salax.

It rises a cubit high, with angust, long leaves, lacinated on both sides with deep, but rare incisures, with palid, and sometimes luteous and quadrifolious flowers; seed like Turnep seed, and a white and dure root; it grows sometimes spontaneously among branches, and other rough and incultivated places.

There is also erratical and wild Rocket, which grows in squalid places near high wayes, and town walls, with leaves like Sowthistles, but more slender and small; with flowers of a luteous colour, like them of *Brassica*, which erupt in the middle of Summer.

Bank-cresses, which some call *Irio*, others *Tortela*, do so much resemble Rocket both in gust and form, that they call it Rocket: yet seeing *Galen* reposes *Erysimum* amongst alimental Plants, I will scarce enumerate it among wild Rockets.

Eruca is also the name of a certain Insect, as well as an Herb, whereof there are many differences desumed from their dissidency in colour and magnitude, whereof we neither will, nor ought now to treat, it being our purpose to speak onely of such Simples as are Ingredients necessary to Compositions in Pharmacopolies.

Vires. Rocket calefies and siccates in the third degree, extenuates the spleen, cures the bitings of Mice and Spiders, excites venery, moves urine, deleates black skars, if illited with Oxe-gall, and emaculates freckles.

CHAP. V.

Of Nettle.

THere are two general differences of Nettles, one whose leaves are improbously mordacious, and furcle-hurting the contrectants hands with its pungent down; the other innoxious, which may be handled without moleſtation. *Species.*

The former is by the Greeks called ſometimes *Acalyphe*, becauſe it is injucund to the tact; ſometimes *Cnide*, becauſe it punges mordacioufly, commonly called Quick-Nettle; the other is called *Lamium*, and *Anonium*, as alſo white, or dead Nettle.

There be alſo three ſorts of quick Nettles, the two greater, and one leſſer, all wild and ſpontaneous. Some call theſe wild ones, maſculine and feminine Nettles, as ſuperating one another in procerity.

The Romanes call that Maſculine in the firſt place, which emits round furcles of half a cubits height, and ſometimes longer, cave, and hollow, with broad, mucronated, fimbrious, criſped leaves, rough and mordaceous on both ſides, which by their contact excite lumps and uſtion, and rubefy the skin. The ſeed is included in ſmall pills, round and hiſpid, which proceed out of the root of the leaves.

That Feminine in the ſecond, which produces ſeed not globularly, but racemouſly, like Grape cluſters, after the manner of the feminine Mercury; its caul is higher, and more ramous; its leaves broader, and all its parts mordacious.

The third ſort is the leaſt, and yet moſt ramous, mordacious, and graveolent, producing its ſeed racemouſly, but not after the manner of the former; for many grains erupt out of the furcle at the foot of the leaves together, but each one hath a pedicle like the maſculine Nettle. This third ſort is called Dog-Nettle, and is moſt of all mordacious.

They all grow in incultivated places, about hedges, dams, and old walls, and ſometimes in Gardens, and in fat ſoyls.

All Nettles ſiccate exceedingly, but calefie not ſo much; for though *Urtica* be *ab urendo*, Nettle from burning, yet they are not uſtive from their heat, but by cauſing ſuch a pain from their pungent down: for (*Macer. c. 2. l. 2.*) Nettles decocted are very ignavely hot, they help the orthopnoical, moves urine and flowers; their ſeed ſtimulates to venery, and is a preſent Antidote againſt the poyſon of Hemlock. It helps alſo againſt the malignant quality of Henbane, Muſhromes, and Quick-ſilver, as alſo the bitings of Serpents, and poyſonous Beaſts. The ſeed of the maſculine Nettle is thought beſt.

To help those that are stung with Nettles.

Here we may not omit, that Oil conduces much to the ease of those pustuls and dolours excitated by Nettles; as also Elder leaves bruised and adhibited, which by a special propriety respect this affection.

Many other Plants are reposed amongst Nettles, which are sometimes called *Lamia*, sometimes dead Nettles; whereunto another Plant is referred, which the Romanes call *Labio*, which some think is *Agripalma*, or Cardiack; others, *Galeopsis*, and *Galeobdolon*.

The first sort of these dead Nettles are those that assurge to a cubital procerity with Nettle leaves, soft, and crisped, sometimes of a whitish, sometimes reddish colour.

The second very like the former, but not so ramous, with flowers like Spurge, but purpureous, issuing out of the genicles of its surcles.

The third is lesser, more imbecil and fetid, with rounder leaves, which is seldome, if at all used in Medicinal Confections. Some now of late make a syrup of the flowers of other Nettles for the affections of the lungs and breast, which they call *Syrupus de Lamio*: but its effect doth not celebrate it.

Chap. VI.

Of Flower de luce, or Orris.

A Certain Lilly, whose flower in its variegated colour emulates the Rain-bow, painted in an opake cloud opposite to the Sun, is thence called *Iris*; whereof I have often noted twenty two sorts and varieties, which to recenseate, were superfluous.

But two especially are most frequently used in Medicine; the one our indigenous flower, which is of a ceruleous colour, and sweet odour, whose root potently educes waters; and the Tuscan or Florentine *Iris*, whose root is white, but flower much whiter, and both very fragrant; which pre-excells the other, save in educing serous humours out of the belly.

All Flower-de-luce hath long leaves like swords, and nodous roots; except a few, whose roots are bulbous, and flowers patulous, like Lillyes, but with small leaves more reflected, three of which lesser sort are interposed amongst the three greater; after which, two or three husks that are triangular come forth, whereon angular seeds are contained.

The ceruleous Flower-de-luce, which some call, the Celestial Lilly, is most expetible in Pharmacopolies; for its root is hydragogous, and usefull to the hydroptical; and an Oil may be made of its flowers, good for many things. The Florentinian is best, for it is cephalical, aromatical, cordial, incisive, and apertive. All Flowers-de-

de-luce calefy, extenuate, cure gripings, and expell flowers, being, according to *Dioscorides*, (*c.* 1. *l.* 1. universally usefull.

Chap. VII.

Of Helecampane.

ENulacampane puts forth leaves from its very root, which are long, late, mucronated, hispid, and numerous; its caul is hard, of three cubits length, or more; its flowers are aureous, and stellated like Oxe-eye, or Flea-bane, which turn into knaps, the seed, which is like Thistle-seed, remaining.

Its root is great, crass, flave, odorate, and suaveolent; it grows in fat and humid places; the best is brought from *Helena*, where the Poets feign that it sprung up from *Helena*'s tears, whence it had its name. Some say, *Helena* sowed it there to kill Serpents; for it is very efficacious against poysons, not onely such as infect men, but also and chiefly such as harm beasts; for given to Sheep in wine and vinegar, it keeps them from, and cures them in the pestilence, whereunto they are obnoxious, which the Vulgar call *Clavelate*.

Some think that the root of Hellecampane should be desumed instead of the unknown root of Behen; to whom I easily assent: for if Helecampane be not Behen, it's a good substitute. *Succidaneum.*

Helecampane's root is manifestly hot; it moves urine and flowers; mandicated, it confirmates teeth; and condited, cures the cough, (*Dioscor. c.* 27. *l.* 1.) the decoction of the root epoted, cures convulsions, orthopnoity, pestilence, and bitings of Serpents. *Vires.*

Chap. VIII.

Of Cyperus.

CYperus is a triangular rush, growing in moyst and marish places, of a cubits or higher procerity, whose lower part is white, and top black; it produces long, gracile, arundinaceous, hard, cultellated leaves, with panicles depending on its summity, amongst which the seed lurk. Its roots are round, nodous, long, implicated one amongst another, and reptant like grass roots, blackish without, and subluteously white within, which are odorate, pleasant, and amare. The roots are onely usefull, the other parts good for little.

The

Vires. The root excalefies without mordacity, potently exficcating ulcers, and perducing them to a skar, which for its aſtrictive faculty is very conducible to the ulcers of the mouth; it moves flowers and urine, and being drunk, helps the ſtone and dropſy.

There is another kinde of Cyperus very like this in effigy, but its root is more nodous and rotund, whence it is called round Cyperus.

Dioſcorides makes mention of a Cyperus in *India* like Ginger, which maſticated in the mouth, makes the juice of Saffron colour; which is amare and acrimonious to the guſt; and craſive, if illited on a place.

Chap. IX.

Of Angelica.

IT'S a wonder that the Antients either knew not, or ſpoke not of this noble Plant, for whoſe rare faculties the more recent denominated it *Angelica*; than which, *Europe* produces not a more fragrant and pleaſant Plant. It is more than two cubits high, with a geniculated, skrewed, palid, cave and ferulaceous caul; its leaves are ample, ſoft, green, and criſped like *Alexanders* leaves; its root is very craſs and long, ſometimes diſterminated into many roots, moſt odorate and aromatical; out of which an oleous liquor exudes, of the ſame odour with the leaves and branches; its ſeeds are yellowiſh, plain, broad, and membranous.

Species. There are three ſorts of *Angelica*, two domeſtick, and one wild; one of the domeſtick, which is above deſcribed, ſeems to be a kinde of *Laſerpitium*; the other, which is leſſer, is like it in odour, form, and faculties, differing onely in magnitude.

The wild one is like theſe in root, caul, leafs, heads, odour, flower, and guſt, onely its odour and ſapour is not ſo ſweet; it delights in cold, moyſt, and meadowiſh places; it ſeems to be that Herb which *Dodonæus* and *Cluſius* call *Archangelica*; yet if that name be meet for any Herb, it is more proper to the true *Angelica*.

Vires. It is hot and dry in the ſecond degree; it opens, attenuates, and digeſts; it incides and diſcuſſes craſs humours; it is averſe to poyſons, conduces in peſtilentious diſeaſes, moves flowers, and recreates the heart and its faculties.

Chap.

CHAP. X.

Of Libisticum, or Ligusticum, or Lovage.

THe affinity in form among Simples, causes much ambiguity in discerning their distinct Species; for what *Laserpitium* is, how it is differenced from *Libisticum*; how both from *Angelica Imperatoria & Smyrnium*, can scarce be collected from the writings of the learned: but as much as I can attain by conjecture and reason, *Ligusticum*, which in the shops they call *Levisticum*, is a plant in altitude equalising some arboreous shrubs, with a geniculated caule, hollow within, leafes like *paludapium*, but bigger, lacinious, and as it were disterminated and incided into many parts, of a pale green shining colour, capitulated with Umbells, coronated with small and subluteous flowers shining on every side, to which a long, round, strewed seed succeeds like fennel seed, acrimonious to the gust, and suaveolent. (*Dioſc. C.* 51. *L.* 3.)

Its root is white and odorate like the *Hungarian Alheal*: whence some call it *Panacea*.

They erre, who think it is *Smyrnium*, or *Hipoſelinum*; and they more, who contend, that it is not onely *Silvium* or *Laserpitium*, but a succe educed out of that plant, and is called *Belzoni*: for this Gumme comes out of a tall tree, the Syreniack juice out of *Laserpitium*, which is a ferulaceous plant; and out of *Libisticum* or *Lumbrady*, either no juice is educed, or none of it preserved after eduction; whether the Syreniack juice be sweet *Asa*, or *Belzoin*, shall be declared in its place.

Species. *Ligusticum* growes plenteously in *Liguria*, and in the Mountain *Apennenus*, where it is called *Panacea*, becaule it resembles the *Heraclea panax* in its root, caul, and faculties. *Panacea* is fourfold, the *Syrian*, the *Heraclean*, the *Chironian*, and the *Centaurean*, which some call the *Pharnacean*; but I leave these to the exact discussers of Simples, who write the History of all Herbs, and return to my purpose.

Vires. The Roots and Seeds of *Ligusticum* are calefactive, and therefore help concoction, roborate the ventricle, dissipate Flatuosity, move Urine and flours, take away the suffocation of the *uterus*, and cure the bitings of Serpents.

CHAP. XI.

Of Seseli, or Hartwort.

MAny Plants dissident in effigies are donated with this name, as *Massiliense*, *Æthiopicum* the herb, *Æthiopicum* the shrub, *Creticum* or *Thordylium*, *Peloponnense pratense & herbaceum*, or that which is like hemblock: the *Massilian Seseli*, which is most

useful in medicine, hath a ferulaceous caul, of two Cubits
Seseli Massilienſe. heigth, geniculated, and hard; its leafes like Fennel, but more ample, large and craſſe, with white flowers in Umbells; long ſeeds like Fennel, which are very acrimonious, and yet grateful, whereof Medicks make much uſe.

Æthiopicum frutex. The *Æthiopian* fruticious *Seseli* hath lignous, rigid, ſubrubeous and cubital furcls, long leafes, which are indifferent broad, ſmooth, and a whitiſh green: yellow flowers upon umbells, and long ſeeds like Libiſticum.

Æthiop. Herba. The *Æthiopian* herbaceous Seſeli, hath ferulaceous bicubital cauls, broad leafs like paludapium, umbells referted with white flowers, membranous, broad, plain, paleaceous, odorate, and grateful ſeed.

Peloponenſe. The *Peloponneſian Seseli*, hath a geniculated and ferulaceous caul, broad leafes variouſly diſſected, patulous Umbells, ſubluteous flowers, broad, long, plain ſeed; and a craſs root ſomewhat blackiſh without, white within, acrimonious and amare, and grievous to the ſtomach.

The *Cretian Seseli* hath a lowe and more obſequious Caul, leafs incided and criſped in their margine, ſmall white flowers in umbells, ſmall, broad, plain, odorate, and acrimonious ſeeds, which are ſeldom uſed in medicine.

Vires. All Seseli ſeed is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, expels urine, drawes flowers and the young; and educes urine from the reins and bladder, the ſeed of the Maſſilian is beſt.

CHAP. XII.

Of Gentian.

Gentian is not undeſervedly extolled, nor yet indignly denominated after *Gentius* King of *Illyrium*; for it is a moſt ſolemn fugatour of peſtilence, deſtroyer of putretude, and antidote againſt Poyſon; its Leafes are like Plantain, or rather white Hellebore, veinous, a foot long, very amare, and of a redly green colour; its Caul is cubitall or higher, out of whoſe ſeverall genicls iſſue flowers, conſiſting of ſix ſmall anguſt and radiant leafes vertiginouſly diſpoſed, to which broad tenuious ſeeds ſucceed, which are included in the long Cauls whereon the flowers ſtood.

It growes in any place, but delights more in montanous ſo they be opaque; the beſt come from *Illyrium*, where it arrogated the princely name of its inventor: its root is of chiefeſt uſe.

Vires. *Gentian* eſpecially in its root, compriſes ſo much of vertue, that it keeps not onely men, but beaſts alſo from the harm of poyſon, drunk in water it corroborates the ſtomach, kills the worms, arceates putretude; tames peſtilentious poyſon, and ſecurely cures the ſtinging of poyſonous animalls.

Other

Other plants from some similitude acquire the name of *Gentian*, as the lesser *Cruciata* and *Gentianella*; but their faculties being little or not at all like the true Gentians, they seldom ingrede the composition of Antidotes.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Tormentill.

THis plant is called *Tormentilla*, because it leniates the torment and pain of Odontalgy or tooth-ache; and Septafoile, by the Greeks *Heptaphyllon*, because it consists of seven leafes; it growes in shady, wooddy, and opaque places; it puts forth many slender imbecil and lower branches, betwixt every knot it emits seven leafes of inequal magnitude, luteous flowers; a crasse, tuberous, short root, black without, red within, whose use is eximious in curing pestilentious diseases. *The denomination.*

Its root calefies moderately, dryes exceedingly, to wit, in the third degree; it astringes moderately, wonderfully opposes putretude, moves sudor, and efficaciously sucurres in pestilentious diseases. *Vires.*

CHAP. XIV.

Of Pœony.

PŒony is an herb eximious in name, flower and faculties; it hath many branches of feets length, with fair rubeous flowers on their summities, ample like Roses, whence some call them Saint *Maries* Roses.

There are three sorts of Pœony; The first is the Masculine, which hath leafs like Walnut-trees, but lesser in circuit, and more crasse. *Species.*

The second bears leafs divided like Lovage, lesser then the former, of a dark green colour, with shorter surcl's, and all things lesse, which is the fœminine.

The third seems to be neuter or promiscuous, bearing an Idea of both, which is neither absolutely red, nor white, but pale.

Some grow now in Gardens altogether white, and very fair; the most elegant whereof is multiflorous, whose flower is not simple like the rest, but manifold.

All have tuberous and multifidous roots, but some of them are more glandulous then the rest; they have long cauls, divided leafs, patulous flowers, in the summity of their cauls there are husks like Almond husks, which dehiscing shew their small red splendent grains like Orenge grains, and in the middle some black lucid, medullous ones, of a medicated sapour, acrimonious, sub-

astringent, with some amaritude. I describe these briefly, lest my Work should swell into a greater Volume: Many things are superstitiously spoken of *Pœony*, which I willingly omit, not judging them worthy recital.

Vires. Its roots are commended to the roboration of the Nerves and Brain, to exarceate the Epilepsie, and cure it, as also to roborate the whole Head.

CHAP. XV.

Of Rubia, or Madder.

THis Plant from its rubetude is by the Latines called *Rubia*; by the Greeks *Erythrodanum*; it puts forth quadrangular, sharp, and geniculated boughes from the very ground; with angust, long, sharp leafes, orbicularly digested about the genicls; its flowers in the summities of its branches are small and luteous, to which a small round seed succeeds, which at first is green, after red, at last black.

Its roots are very long, numerous, flexibly dispersed along the ground, red within and without, wherewith wooll and skins are infected or dyed; the Shopmen calls it Dyers Ruby, the vulgar *Garensa*; it growes spontaneously in shady and opaque places, so that all regions abound therewith; its root is amare to the gust, accommodated to infect and dye woollen, and therefore most used by Dyers.

Vires. *Ruby* root moves urine and flours, cures the jaundice, its seed drunk in vinegar absumes the Spleen; its root applyed drawes flours, seconds, and the birth; and illited with vinegar, it cures the tetter or ringworm.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Oinon, or Rest-Harrow.

Resta Bovis. THis plant is called *Onon*, or *Oinos*, from its flower which in colour represents wine; the *Barbarians* call it the *Oxens arrest*, or *rest*; the *Romans* the *Ploughes remora*, because its long and fibrous roots remorate the Oxen in ploughing; it is also called *Acutella*, because with hard and acute pricks it punges its attingents; it is a most notorious plant, growing in the middle or margins of fields, especially in fat and glutinous soyles; and most vivacious of plants; For happening upon an accommodate soyl, it propagates much, emitting every year new surcles which spread themselves over the vicine land, so it be cultivated and fat: its surcles are short, rigid and spinous, coronated with leafes like Rue leafes dispersed Garland-wise; its heads are circinnated, its leafs hirsute and shaveolent; its flower like Pease blooms, but lesser unicolorate and purpureous. Its

Remora Aratri.

Acutella.

Its root calefies and extenuates, moving Urine, breaking, and expelling the ſtone, removing obſtructions, expelling flours and blood, and curing the Jaundice.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Eryngium, or Sea Holly.

Species.

Eryngium is either marine, which germinating plenteouſly in maritimous places, puts forth broad and angulous leafs circumſepted with hard pricks; or campeſtrian and vulgar, whereof there are many varieties, ſome being called the Spaniſh, Pannonian and Alpine Eryngium, beſides many ſpurious names.

The leafs of the vulgar is ſected into many acuminated, ſpinous particles; its caul is cubital and ramous, in whoſe ſummity certain globular heads circumcincted with pricks, radiate like Stars; out of the middles of which heads ſo horrid with ſpines, iſſue cæruleous and ſometimes flave flowers: its root is craſſe and long, black extrinſecally, white intrinſecally, ſucculent, ſweet and odorate.

From the indefinite number of its heads many call it *centum-caput*, the ruſticks, hare, thiſtle and flying thiſtle; for the whole plant withering, is evelled by the force of the winds, which rolling up and down the fields, eminouſly repreſents a running hare; they miſtake, that think this is *Secacul*, for *Serapio* treats of theſe two in ſeveral Chapters, and gives them diſtinct deſcriptions: The *Arabians* call *Eryngium*, *Aſtaraticon*, not *Scacul*, or *Scekâkul*; yet their faculties being alike, as the learned Writers do aſſert, vulgar Eryngium may well be ſubſtituted for *ignote ſecacul*.

Vires.

Eryngiums root is calefactive, it deduces the paſſages, moves Urine and flours, expels ſand out of the reins and bladder, and excites venery.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Common graſſe.

Species graminis quot.

SEeing graſſe comprehends all plants which bear leafes, or a vegetive Idea, it is no wonder if perite Herbaliſts enumerate fourty ſix differences thereof. Yet of all theſe the dogge-graſſe is onely medicative, the reſt rather affording aliments for beaſts, then medicaments for man.

And as dogge-graſſe is unknown to none, ſo is it infenſive to all Agricoliſts, who with their hands and rakes purge their corn of it, which being very feracious, would otherwiſe ſurrept all aliment from their wheat or vicine plants; for it creeps along with numerous, geniculated and vivacious radicls, which attract to themſelves all the fatneſſe of the earth.

Its

Its leafes are hard, as broad as them of a ſmall reed, tenuious and acuminated; whence women call it needle-graſſe, and dogs-tooth.

Vires. This graſſe liberates the reins and other intrals from obſtructions, and kills the inteſtines worms; the root is more excellent then any other part of the plant.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Liquorice.

THe whole plant is denominated from the ſweetneſſe of the root; for *Glycyrrhiza*, which Pharmacopoliſts call Liquorice, denotes a ſweet root; ſome call it *Nitas*, becauſe retained in the mouth, it quenches thirſt.

Its root is long, numerous, ſpread along the ground, which emits a caul of three Cubits high, with leaves like Lentisks denſe, fatt, gluminous and gummeous to the touch; with purpureous and ſomtimes white flowers.

In the Moneth of *July* or ſooner, it beares Cods about the bigneſſe of Vetches or Cicers.

Theophraſtus, (*C.* 3. *L.* 9.) calls it *Scythica*, becauſe the *Scythians* uſeing a little Liquorice would tolerate thirſt eleaven or twelve dayes. Children delight herein, for which end they demerge ſmall peices of Liquorice in water in a glaſſe bottle, which when it is flave with Liquorice-juice they drink off, and put more water thereunto; which they agitate for more potions.

Spaniſh-Juice. The *Cappadocians* and *Spaniards* bring us every yeare Liquorice-Juice, condenſed into Paſtills.

Vires. They ſay it is temperate as to all qualities, but accedes nearer to calour, it leniates the aſperities of the Artery, and Ulcers of the Bladder; it helpes the Cough, moves expectoration, and is very good againſt all diſeaſes in the Lungs and Breaſt.

CHAP. XX.

Of Cyclamen, or Sowe-Bread.

VArious and many are the nomenclatures of this *Sowe-bread*; for the *Barbarians* call it *Arthanita*; the Shopmen Hogs-Bread; ſome the Earth-Corke; others the Earth-Aple; and ſome *Ciſſophyllon*.

It growes in ſhady places, under Trees, in bryars and thick Woods, it flouriſhes in Autumne, it bears Leafes like Ivy which are angular, criſped about, of a greenly purpureous colour, maculated with white ſpots on both ſides.

There is another ſort of *Cyclamen*, which hath broad Leaves, but ſcarcely any whit angular, but rather round, and obſcurely maculated.

And

And a third sort also, which hath lesser roots, more purpureous flowers, and more suaveolent, which some think is that, which *Pliny* calls *Chamæcissos.*

Cyclamen is indued with many eximious qualities, for it incides potently, opens, moves floures, expells conception though dead, cures the Jaundice, expells stones, it is efficacious against impostumes, emends all spots, is averse to Poisons, either by potion or application, drawes menstruous blood and young ones; They say, if a woman with Child go over the root of *Cyclamen*, she will become abortive: but light conjectures oft beguile the credulous. *Vires.*

The later writers mention two more, different from the former in form and magnitude of leaves, as also in colour and inversion of their flowers: and besides, some flourish in the Spring, others in Autumn, others in the midle time.

CHAP. XXI.

Of Scilla, or Sea Onyon.

THat *Scilla* is cæpacious, and delights in hot, sandy, and maritimous places, and growes spontaneously, is unknown to few, for it is of late called the Sea Onjon. And he that hath anatomized an Onyon and a Scilla, hath found no difference in their internals nor yet in their cores; yet in leafe flowers and seed they are much dissident.

When the leaves of Scilla are marcid, its Caule assurges to the height of a Cubit, with white flowers issuing out of its midle like strawberry-flowers, which from thence pullulate to its very summity; short, triangular and compressed huskes follow these, gravidated with black and full seed.

The stalk is very long and florid, because of the threefold emersion of flowers; the first wherof, which are like them of *Bulbus*, expand themselves for a long season; then the second Garland of flowers performes its course; and then the last. And it is most remarkeable, that the Caule and the Leaves never flourish at once for not till the Caule withers will the leaves erupt; nor, till the leaves become marcid, will the Caule assurge, contrary to the nature of other Plants, which first emit leaves, then prolong their Caules: in Scilla the Caule first erupts, then the Leafes.

Scilla calefies in the second degree, and is very incisive, *Galen* saith, it is best to take it boiled or rosted, for so its vehement quality will be castigated; duely præpared, it helpes against the frigid affections of the braine and Nerves. *Galen* repurged one, cut it small, demerged it in a melitery, insolated it forty dayes, and gave it to a boy infested with the Epilepsy.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

Of Bulbus, or the Sea Bulb.

Bulbus is either Coronative, medicative, or esculent; among the Coronative are enumerated the innumerable varieties of Daffadills, Lilionarcisses, Tulips, and Hyacinths; among the medicative, *Scilla*, Hermodactylls, Pancratium, and the vomitory Bulbus; and among the esculent which are also desumed to many eximious medicinall uses, Leeke, the Onyons of *Ascalon*, and such as by a certain antinomasy are called regall Onions, as præcelling the rest, which excite venery, and which come in frequent use among the ancients for meat; instead whereof we use common Onions, which are the true bulbus, and pollicitate the same effects; being also alike described with the ancients, Bulbi, so that when Bulbus seed is præscribed, Onion or Scallyons seed may be usurped.

Bulbus is a certain root, corticous, short, round, and tunicated with many membranes, the most external whereof is greatest; it often growes out of the earth, producing some slender radicles like capillaments, which keeping in the earth attract convenient succe for the nutriment of the whole *Bulbus*.

Its fronts are like them of Onyons, round, angust, inane and mucronated; its caulicles of nine inches heighth, in whose summity, little purpureous flowers emicate, to which succeeds seed black without, white within.

Vires. All sorts of *Bulbus* are acrimonious; they excalefie, excite venery, suppeditate Aliment, cause inflation, and stiffnesse of the yard; but two large plenty of them should not be used in meats, because they trouble the nerves. Of all the Bulbuses I think *Satyrium* most excites venery, the rest are more ignave, causing it by their flatuosity.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Satyrion, or the True Dogs-stones.

SOme plants from the effigies of their roots are called Testicls, from their effect *Satyria*, because they make men Satyrs-like prone to venery; amongst Bulbous roots, such as have but one bulb, are properly called Satyria; that which hath two, Cynosorchis; that which hath three, Triorchis. Of every of which there are many differences, some desumed from the form of their bulbes: others from the number of their leafs; others from the colour of their flowers and their posiure; yet are all alike in faculties, and friends to *Venus*: but that is most approved, whose root is singular, round, about the magnitude of an Apple, yellow without,

How to know the Best.

without, white within, turgid with carnosity, sweet to the gust, and grateful to the mouth. Three leafs emerge out of this root, which are depressed towards the ground, in figure and colour like Lillies leafs, but lesser; from which three it is called Trifoile; its caul is of a foot heighth, its flowers small and white, the roots of this præcels the rest for conditure; and this I think is the true Satyrium.

Condited Satyria are analeptical, and restaurative; they are good for such as are tabid, and such as frequently exercise venery: for the root of *Satyrium* is thought so potent in exciting venery, that by retension in ones hand, it will stimulate them to congresse; whence the Greeks design all plants by the nomenclature of *Satyrion*, which excite venery.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of Leeks.

Leeks are sowen in gardens for culinary uses; for the plant is rather esculent then medicinal, as Cooks well know; yet its succe is sometimes usurped in medicinal remedies, as in coacting the powders of fœtid pills; and sometimes in extinguishing or rather educing of *Empyreums:* for though it be calid, yet it hath an excellent faculty, in attracting and expelling the impressed vestigium of colour.

Leek is either sative or spontaneous, and both are twofold; the first sort of the sative is called the headed Leek; the second the sective Leek; the first, because it consists of a round root like an Onyon; the later, because its root is longer and oftner sected; one sort of the spontaneous is called *Schoen oprasum*, which bears tenuious leafs like a bulrush: the other is called *Ampeloprasum*, which growes spontaneously in vineyards and other places. *Species.*

Dioscorides makes mention of one, to wit, the headed Leek, whose head or rather root that it might greatly increase and dilate it self, the ancients covered it with a tile or slate, and so they obtained their end; many other wayes are invented, whereby Leeks may acquire a prodigious magnitude; but these we leave to Gardners.

All Leeks calefie extreamly, exsiccate, extenuate, open, incide, resolve and help against the bitings of Serpents and Ustions. *Vires.*

Its seed brayed and drunk in passum or white Wine, helps against the difficulty of urine, and diduces its passages: some write, that Leek eaten excites venery, and discusses ebriety; but its frequent use causes tumultuous sleeps, hurts the sight, and begets æruginous bile.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Radish root, and Rape or wild Navew.

THere is much affinity betwixt radish root, rape root, and wild Turnep. Radish root is so notorious, that it needs not much explication; for the vulgar are so delighted therewith, that they sustain themselves with this root, bread, and salt; nay all Nations make meat thereof; There are three sorts hereof, one is the greater, which is an enemy to Vines; another lesser; the third is black radish, which some call wild radish, the Gardeners *Reforum*.

Rephani Species.

Rapium unde dicitur Bunias.

Rape root, is from its tumescent figure called *Bunias*, from its round figure *Gonzylon*, or rather *Strongylon*; vulgarly Nape: its root is very crasse, carnous, tuberous, white and not capillated; its leafes, long, sharp, green, deeply incided on both sides, its Caule bicubitall and ramous; its flowers luteous to which Cods succeed, prægnant with seeds like Colewort seeds but greater, which ingrede the confection of Mithridate, whose faculty is eximious in expugning venenate diseases.

Some suspect, that *Bunias* differs from Nape, and that the seed of Bunias, and not of Nape, ingredes the composition of Mithridate, but each may be substituted in defect of the other.

There are three differences of Napes or Rapes desumed from their Roots, the first is orbiculated, turbinated, and short; the second crasse and long; the third lesse, and vulgar, which the vulgarity call Nape.

Napes or Turneps as they acquire their magnitude, so also their bonity from the condition of the Heavens and of the soyl; those that grow in the fields about * *Caen*, are so sweet and grateful, that they are justly preferred before the rest.

** A Town in France.*

Rapistrum is a certain wild rape root not at all bulbous; which germinates in every field, with broad, green leafs, and luteous flowers, whose seed the women call Navet.

Rapistrum.

There is another sort thereof, with leafs like Bank-cresses, which is called *Lapsana*; as also a third kind with leafes like rocket, and white flowers; all of them bear small, black, round seeds included in Cods.

Radish roots are eaten raw, turneps not without coction; all calefie, open, and move urine.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Anemone, or Wind-flower.

WE have above treated onely of such Calefactives, whose Roots were most celebrated, save that at the beginning of this Section we described a few, because of their exceeding calidity; whose roots were useless. Now we come to dissert of such whose other parts are also useful, beginning with *Anemone*. Which is sometimes called the Winds-herb, because it never opens and dilates it self, save when the wind blowes; the Poets fable, that it grew from *Adonis* blood, whence they call it *Adonis* his flower. There are two general differences hereof, one is the wild, the other the garden Anemone; both which, (especially the later) are manifold, whose sorts and varieties are distinguished onely by the colour and multiplicity of their flowers: for some bear white flowers; others red; others cæruleous; some phœniceous; others somewhat red; others violaceous; and others a greenish red: all which are coronary for the excellency and pulchritude of their flowers: but the wild Anemones varieties are fewer, and yet more requisite in medicine; as in the confection of unguent *Marliatum: def. Myrepsus*; wherein wild Anemone, especially that that is called wind-herb is usurped: but seeing all their descriptions and variety are excellently and elegantly depinged, by the famous Authors *D. D. Dod. & Clus.* I will not further prosecute their descriptions. *Species*

All the sorts of Anemone are acrimonious, apertive, incisive, detersive, and exsiccative.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Keiri or Wallflowers.

Keiri is a *Mauritanian* word, denoting a luteous Violet, which is alwayes green, patient of Cold, contrary to the nature of other Violets which wither at the first aspect of Winters rigidity; and grow not again till they be new sowen: I except the Garden Violets, that repullulate every year; in following the distinction of the Herbalists, who nothing sollicitous about the nature of words, distinguish *Leucoïon* from white violets; when yet *Leucoïon* enunciates nothing more then a white violet: *Leuco* signifies white; *ïon*, a Violet.

And as there are many varieties of Violets, so are there also of *Leucoïa*, amongst which, that which bears a luteous flower, to wit, *Keiri*, is most commendable to medicinal uses: it growes in all places, as on stone walls, old edifices, and rubbages, and other saxous and dry places; it is sowen also, and pullulates in gardens

near walls; its Cauls are ramous, many, rigid and slender; its leafs long, angust, of a blewish green, lesser and more rigid then other violets: its flowers luteous, odorate and sweet, its codds long and small, wherein a small plain seed is coarctated.

They make an oyl of the flowers by infusion, fit to resolve humours, mitigate cold dolours, and roborate the nerves; ℥. *ij.* of its seed given in wine, or subacted with honey educes flowers, young, and secondines. A bath made of the decoction of its flowers will perform & effect the same.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Thyme.

THyme unknown to none, is a little surculous plant, with small angust leafs, vested with many heads, referred with white flowers in its summities: whereof there are two sorts; the first called *Cephaloton*, which is like Stœchas; the others differs from this, because it is harder, and hath few leafs and flowers, and them not on heads, but about the leaf roots. There is another exotical *Thyme*, they call *Peruvian* Thyme, which is not so surculous and folious, lesse acrimonious and more suaveolent, in other things it responds to the rest. *Species.*

Thyme calefies and siccates in the third degree, it incides, attenuates, moves flours, protrudes the young, purges the Bowels and Lungs: it is thought very conducible to the clarity of the eyes.

But it is more frequently used in condiments then otherwise. *Vires.*

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Serpylle, or Mother of Thyme.

THere are two sorts of Serpyll, one garden, which is greater and more succulent, delighting in culture and fat soyl; the other wild, which growes in petrous, squalid, dry sterile places, and in the margines of fields and on hills; both of them are like Thyme, in effigies odour and sapour, they derive their names from creeping; for their branches creep along by the ground, and radicate where ever they touch it: the vulgar and wild serpyl is exile and small like a little Vine, hard and lignous, assurging a palm in altitude, with small leafs like Thyme; others lay along, demitting capillated fibres or radicles into the earth.

They have round heads on their summities; out of which issue flowers of a whitish red and purpureous colour, which with the whole Plant are suaveolent.

Another kind of serpyll is found in many places which is not Serpentine as the rest, but large and wild which the shopmen call Montanous, Penny-royall.

The

The Garden Serpill becauſe of its gratefull and ſweet odour is enumerated among the coronaries, its circles are longer and craſſer then the other, its leafes alſo broader, and duller, and its heads coronated with greater flowers.

Serpill is acrimonious and hot; moves floures and Urine, abates the gripeings of the belly, conduces in the Lethargy, cures the biteing of poiſonous beaſts, and by its ſume when it is burned repells Serpents.

CHAP. XXX.

Of Sampſuchum and Marjoram.

Sampſuchum according to Dioſcorides is not *Marjoram*, but another ramous hearb, which is reptant; with round and hirſute leaves like calamint, whereas *Marjoram* is not reptant but erect with many ſurcles, and with mucronated not round leafes, yet it may well be uſed for want of *Sampſuchum*, for it is a plant both in faculty and forme very like it, whoſe gratefull odour and ſavour cauſes it to be nouriſhed in gardens and pots with diligence and care, and *Marjoram* perhaps deſumed its name from Marum as *Dodonæous* writes, who makes *Marjoram*, Marum and Hyſobrium one Plant, as he collected from Dioſcorides his deſcription; and *Sampſuchum* and Amaracus another, as he gathered from *Dioſcorides* and *Theophraſtus*; yet *Amaracus* by *Galens* authority which he alſo gathered out of *Dodonæus* is *Feverfew* ſo named, not by his own but by anothers lapſe; ſeeing *Amaracus* is indeed *Sampſuchum*.

We cannot admit of their reaſons who make Pulick Mountain a kind of Marum; which the vulgar French call Maſtick ſinck they are very diſſident, for *Marum* according to *Dioſcorides* is a ſurculous herbe, with a flower like Origanum, leafes much whiter, and by him called Origanum. *Pliny* ſaith it is an exoticall Plant and not to be numerated amongſt the domeſtick family, whereas *Clinopodium*, which ſome call *Cleonicon*, other *Zopyron*, is an herb of vulgar dignotion, and like Serpill.

Now *Marjoram* is either impatient of cold, or moſt patient thereof, the latter is Winter *Marjoram* which flouriſhes in the midle of Winter; the former ſummer *Marjoram* which periſhes with the firſt occurſe of froſt.

Marjoram is manifeſtly calefactive cephalicall, and hyſtericall, which drunk or aſſumed at the mouth or fundament accelerates flowers.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of Penny-Royall.

Species. PEnny-royal is two-fold, the one maſculine and ſative, which is the true Pulegium and latifolious; the other wild and anguſtifolious: the true Pennyroyal doth abundantly emit many and round cauls, which are often procumbent; But oftner extoll themſelves on high, two leafs ſomewhat rotund emerge out of each genicle; its flowers are ſubcæruleous, circumcingeing the culms about the exortion of the leafs. Pennyroyal is ſuaveolent, eſpecially when it is coronated with flowers; its water diſtilled duly in a glaſſe veſſel will keep its odour: and as the true Pulegium or Pennyroyal differs little from the ſecond ſort of Calamint, ſo neither doth the wild differ from Serpil: it growes beſt in dry ſaxous and mountanous places, whence it is called mountain Pulegium, which many ſay is Clynopodium; freſh Pulegium incended will kill gnats. Many odorate Herbs are referred to Pulegium, in the deſignation whereof Authors agree not.

It calefies in the third degree, it exſiccates, attenuates, moves flowers and ſecondines, digeſts pectorall phlegm, helps concoction, eaſes convulſions; in wine it cures Serpents ſtings, cures the ſpleenatick by admotion, and is good againſt the affections of the Podagry and Epilepſie.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of Polium.

THe little tomentaceous and whitiſh head of *Polium* coacted into the Species of an hirſute berry, repreſents the hoary head of an old man; whence its denomination is deſumed: it hath from one root numerous, ſlender, hard, lignous, round ſurcles of half a hands height; its leafs are long, criſped and rigid like Germander, but more anguſt and better harneſſed; the tops of its branches are coronated with ſmall flowers, circumveſted with white down, many whereof are coacted together into one head; its ſeed is ſmall, black, and long.

The whole Plant is hollow, growing moſt abundantly in ſqualid montanous places; whence Pharmacopoliſts call it Mountain-Polium, which *Dioſcorides* calls *Teuthrio*; it is graveolent, and yet not injucund, but uſeful in Medicine.

There is another ſort of Polium not ſo potent in odour, nor firm in power: whoſe ſurcles are alſo rigid and round, leafs ſhorter and more anguſt, flowers many congeſted together, and hoary with white down.

Remb. Dodonæus recenſeates yet two ſorts more; *Pena*, four.

Which

Which I leave to their investigation, who undertake to describe the universal History of plants.

Polium calefies in the second degree, siccates in the third; it cures the Dropsie, Jaundice, and affections of the Spleen: it moves urine and flours, it drives away Serpents either by substraction or fumigation; it drawes wounds to skars.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of Basill.

Basill or *Ozymum*, being a most odorate plant, doth justly challenge this name; lest posterity should confound it with *Ocymum*, which *Varro* saith, is a kind of Pabulum, made up of green segetives for Oxen: For the same fragrancy it is called Basill, as though it were worthy a basilical or regal house. Many think it is called *Ocymum* from the celerity of its growth; for it erupts the third day after its sature, and often sooner; and some superstitiously or rather ridiculously believe, that it will make a more abundant provent, if it be sowen with maledictions: but its signification challenges *z* instead of *c* from ὄζω to smell; because the whole plant smells sweetly; it is admirable, that Amber should expell the dry furcles of Basil, and yet attract the small stalks of all other segetives.

Holerius a Physician of *Paris*, tells us a story worth our notice, of a certain *Italian*, who frequently smelling to basil, had a Scorpion generated in his brains, which caused long and vehement dolours, and, at last, his death: yet the *Libyans* aver, that who ever eats Basil, he shall not that day fear to be hurt by a Scorpion. *A Story.*

There are four sorts of Basil, three sative, and one wild, which is called *Acinos*; two of the satives are latifolious, one angustifolious, which we call the lesser Basil.

The vulgar and latifolious, is furculous with round branches, leafs like Mercury of a cubital altitude, with white flowers, and sometimes purpureous; black and small seed, which *D. Fern* usurps to the Syrup of *Arthemisia*.

It is manifestly hot, dissolves flatuosity, moves urine, helps against sadnesse invected by melancholy, exhilarates, and animates; yet *Chrysippus* disallowes of its use, as inducing madnesse, and hurting the sanity of the eyes. *Vires.*

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of Origanum.

There are four sorts of Origanum; the first is called *Origanum Heracleoticum*, or *Cunila*; the second, *Onitis*; the third, *Syvestrian*; the fourth, *Tragorian*; which also is of two sorts, which I will not describe at large.

The

The true Origanum is like the great Marjoram in leafs and branches; it bears umbels on its ſummities not circinated, but armed with ſmall prickles variouſly congeſted: it begins to grow in the middle of Summer; and as it is like Marjoram in form, ſo alſo in odour: but it is more patient of Cold, for it lives in the middle of Winter, it is averſe to Colworts, and to all kinds of Serpents; wherefore when Snailes are about to dimicate with Serpents, they arm themſelves with Origanum, which is very prevalent againſt cold poyſons.

Vires. It calefies, ſiccates, incides, attenuates, moves urine and flours, and is good for ſuch as are troubled with Coughs or difficulty of breathing, if it be taken in honey eclegmatically.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of Mint.

THough Mint be well known to every one, for being moſt vivacious, it germinates in every place; yet its Species are not all exactly deſcribed, but Mint, *Menthaſtrum, Siſymbrium, & Calamintha*, all confuſedly deſigned, which are thus diſtinguiſhed.

Prima menthæ ſpecies. Mint is either garden, domeſtick and true; or wild, which is called *Menthaſtrum*; now there are four Species of Mint: The firſt hath quadrangular cauls, obſcurely red, ſomewhat pilous, with round leafs, and ſubrubrous flowers growing orbicularly about the Cauls: its root is Serpentine, which puts forth ever and anon new *Turiones*.

The ſecond in root, leaf, odour and magnitude æmulates the firſt, but its colour is more obſcurely red, and the flowers in the ſummities of its branches are ſpicated.

The third hath longer leafs, and flowers in its ear.

The fourth hath long and ſharp leafs, with ſubpurpureous flowers, geniculately circumveſting the internodia of the cauls like the firſt.

Beſides theſe which the perite Herbaliſts enumerate, *Matthiolus* adjoyns another, which the *Goritians* call Greek-Mint; *Val. Cordus, Sarracenica*; ſome, St. *Maries* herb; ſome, *Roman* Sage; ſome, *Laſſulata*; and moſt, *herbe du coq*; after the *French*.

It growes in moſt Gardens, its leafs are like the greater Sage, or Betony; of a greenly white colour and criſped, its Cauls are cubital or longer; whoſe ſummities emit coryambaceous flowers, of a yellowiſh colour like Tanſey flowers; its ſapour is amare; it and all mints are gravedlent, yet not ingrateful.

There be alſo two ſorts of *Menthaſtrum* or wild-Mint; the firſt growes about any old wall or ditch, with more large and rufous leafs, eaſily incided, whoſe flower is ſpicated: the other Meadow-Mint, which growes in water brinks, whoſe leafs are hiſpid, hoary,

hoary, and subrotund, and flowers spicated as the former, both are graveolent, yet grateful.

Mint is useful to cibaries, which being young is a very grateful sallet herb, but more adult it is more ingrateful and hard: it is of a hot nature, and very stomachical; for its quality is to augment the heat of the ventricle, it confirms roboration, helps coction, discusses flatuosity, and cures gripings. *Vires.*

Sisymbrium hath such cognation with the family of Mints, that by culture or neglect it may be transmuted into Mint, or Mint into *Sisymbrium*; the Shopmen call it Balsamint; the vulgarity, Rugged Mint: it differs much from *Sion*, or *Perula*, as also from *Cardamen*, or *Crescion*, which they call water-mint: for the true *Sisymbrium*, which many call wild Serpil, is very like Garden mint, but more odorate and latifolious, which hath excellent medicinal faculties, (*Dioscor. C.* 155. *L.* 2.)

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of Calaminth.

THere are three sorts of *Calaminth*; the first is familiar with mountains; the second challenges affinity with Pennyroyal; the third with *Menthastrum*. *Species*

The first delights in squalid tuberous and montanous places, and is called Mountain-*Calaminth*, which for its elegant effigies and grateful odour, is now cicurated in Gardens; as also all kind of Mints, to which it responds after a manner both in faculties and nomenclature; for *Calaminth* portends fair Minth, and this complex name denotes its nobility.

The second sort of Calaminth hath leafs like Pennyroyal, but sometimes greater, whether variegated with spots, with whitely purpureous flowers amicting its cubital branches, it delights in aprike places, and is found in many fields when the segetives are demessed; it is also called *Nepeta* in *Dioscorides*, who yet neither approves nor disapproves of the name.

The third is like *Menthastrum*, with leafs somewhat longer Caul and Branches greater then the former, and yet not so efficacious. *Dodonæus* exhibited the herb *Cattaria* instead of this. *Fuchsius* exhibits another much dissident; and *Dioscorides* describes not a Line of *Cattaria*; yet it may justly be referred to the family of Calaminths, as having cognation therewith; though the herb and faculty hath been unknown by the Ancients. It puts forth many quadrate hard caulicles, at every knot two hoary leafs like horehound, spicated flowers like Mint or *Menthastrum*; it is called *Cattaria*, because *Catts* delight in eating and playing with its leafs; Apothecaries call it *Nepeta*.

It calefies and attenuates exceedingly; it hath a peculiar faculty in auxiliating the conception, and fœcundating the womb. *Vires.*

Vires. Yet all Calaminth is of a tenuious substance, hot and dry in the third degree, it abates gripings, kills worms, cures the Jaundice, educes flowers, takes out blew skars, cures difficulty of breathing, and strenuously digests humours; the montanous Calaminth is most efficacious.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of Wormwood.

THough *Absynth* be an herb of vulgar dignotion, yet scarce two agree in recenseating and describing its Species: however letting passe the varieties of opinions, we assert, that there are three sorts of Wormwood; the common Wormwood, the *Santonian* Wormwood, and the *Seriphian* Wormwood: They erre, *Species.* who say, that the common Wormwood differs from the *Roman* and *Pontian*, and that the *Santonian* is the *Roman* Wormwood; for the common is the *Roman* Wormwood, so called, because it was holy to the vulgarity, and because it grew plenteously in the *Roman* fields, and in every old hedge. The *Pontian* is so denominated from *Pontus*, and from its stypticity or astriction.

That which is called *Santonian*, or rather *Xantonian* Wormwood, is so denominated from a tract where it growes, bearing the same name: hence some call its seed *Sanctum*, when they should call it *Sanctonian* seed; the whole plant is like common Wormwood, but lesser, and not so white; its seeds are not so many, and its flowers are small.

The third sort which is called *Seriphian* or Marine Wormwood, growes copiously on the Mountain *Taurus* near *Cappadocia*, the herb is slender, like small Suthernwood, referted with small seeds, subamare and graveolent with some calefaction; the whole is so like fœminine Southernwood, that they can scarce be discerned each from other.

Vires. *Galen* saith, that all Wormwood participates of an aromatical acrimonious and amare quality, but some Gardens afford us vulgar Wormwood no whit amare but sweet, distinguished from the *Pontian* onely in sapour; All roborate the stomach, help coction, and kill Worms, whether they be assumed or adhibited. See *Dioscorides* about the differences and qualities of Wormwoods; as also *Gasparus Bauhinus*, who published a whole Book of Wormwood.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of Mugwort.

THe Species of *Mugwort* are more then two, contrary to the opinion of many; for besides the common differences of latifolious and tenuifolious, there is one marine Mugwort, which from one lignous root, fruticates in many sarments, with lowe and serpentine leafs; and if we believe *Ruellius* and *Fuchsius*, Feverfew and Tansey are Species of Mugwort.

All Mugworts are Sylvestrian, the first whereof is latifolious, lacinious, and marginally dissected; with streight, round, striated, bicubital cauls, and small flowers like Wormwood: it growes by way-sides, and oftentimes in the middle of Gardens.

The second is more tenuious, with a small white and graveolent flower.

The third is also tenuifolious, which growes about hedges and water-tracts, whose flowers and leafs contrited refer the odour of *Marjoram*; the vulgar is used to the confection of the *Artemisian* Syrope.

It was called *Artemisia* by King *Mausolus* his Wife, whereas before it was called *Parthenis*. Many superstitious people call it *St. John's* herb, wherewith he circumcinged his Loyns on holydayes.

It calefies in the second degree, opens, attenuates, expells flowers, secondines and young, and auxiliates many affections of the *Uterus*. *Vires.*

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of Melissa, or Balm.

WIth the same complacency that a Cat is carried to *Cattaria*, is a Bee carried to *Apiastrum* or *Melissophyllon*, which is a melleous leaf. There are many differences hereof; for besides that *Sylvestrian* which is improperly called *Melissa* by *Fuchsius*, which smells like *Cymice*; the vulgar is most celebrous; then the *Spanish*, and then the more peregrine as the *Moluccian*, which comes from the Islands of *Molucca*.

Our *Melissa* is well known, it assurges with quadrangular surcles, broad, rugous and subasperous leafs, smelling like Quince-Apple; with two prominents betwixt each knot, which emit small cups, with candicant flowers, after which a small blackish seed succeeds.

The *Spanish Melissa* is in effigies, odour, and faculties, very like the former, but its leafs are lesser, not so rigid and green.

The *Moluccian Melissa* is twofold, the one smooth, the other spinous, both emitting culms and leafs like ours.

Vires. It calefies in the second degree, siccates in the first; in insessions it educes flowers, and in drink or illition it confers against the bitings of Scorpions, spiders, and dogs; it roborates the head, increases the memory, and recreates the animal faculties.

CHAP. XL.

Of Horehound.

Species. THere are two kinds of Horehound, the one white, the other black, which is called Ballote; both are ramous without roots, of half a foots altitude, growing about walls and fields margins: the white which is of more use hath quadrangular culs hirsute with small hoarinesse; two subrotund, rugous, incided, and lanuginous leafs: its flowers which are small emerge out of small cups, which verticillately circumdate the genicls of the furcles: all Horehound delights in ruderous places, and about ruined ædifices; some prefer black Horehound before the white; but I choose the white with the more perite and Learned.

Vires. It is hot in the second degree, dry in the third; it removes obstructions, purges the Lungs, educes flowers, conduces to broken and convelled nerves, and is given against the stings of Serpents and poysonous potions.

CHAP. XLI.

Of Betony.

Betony is altogether wild, delighting in opaque and watry places, yet for its excellent endowments it is cultivated in Gardens, it emits long, broad, green, subasperous leafs, incided about like a Saw; its caulicles are slender, quadrangular, somewhat hirsute, and cubital; its flowers are spicated, red and white in some places: the Greeks call it *κέστρον* & *ψυχότροφον*, the Latines, *Betonica*, which name may be detorted to another plant, which some call *Vetonica altilis*; some, *flos Armerius*; and the *Germans*, *flos superbus*.

Besides the vulgar Betony, there is another latifolious one, found in many places, which delights more in culture, and flourishes most in Gardens.

Vires. *Betony* is hot and dry in the second degree, it is indued with a cephalical and alexiterial faculty, wherefore it is good against the Epilepsie and poysonous diseases; especially against the bitings of mad dogs and Serpents; and if any præassume this, lethall poyson drunk shall not hurt him.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLII.

Of Veronica, or Speedwell.

Veronica is twofold, one masculine, the other fœminine, which many call *Elatine*; the former, *Paulus Ægineta* calls Betony; it creeps along the earth, with many hirsute and pedall surcles with long leafs, lesser then Betony; somewhat like * *Teucrion*, but lanuginous, with flowers orderly digested, of a purpureous colour, with a small rotund black seed contained in cups like boxes, and with a slender root variously divaricated.

* *Spanish Spurge.*

The fœminine *Veronica*, which many call *Elatine*; some, *Reptilis Veronica*, hath many, pedal, slender, flexile, lanuginous, and folious surcles; with hoary, pilous leafs, like † *Nummulary*: with small white flowers like * *Anthirrhinon*, with small, round black seed like † Pimpernel, much of it growes among segetives in fallow ground and sandy places.

† *Money-wort.*

* *Snap-draggon.*

Some make mention of a kind of *Veronica*, with an erect Caul, which puts forth more rigid surcles, which are tenuious, ramous and folious like the former.

† *Anagallis.*

Dodonæus adds another *Veronica*, growing in Meadowes and moist places, in effigies and magnitude very like the fœminine; but its leafs are lesser, not lanuginous, but smooth and green: its branches are reptile, flowers cæruleous, its seed contained in little boxes small and black; this and the former are seldom or never used in medicine.

Sense indicates, that *Veronica* is hot and dry; and experience demonstrates it to be astrictive, and a good vulnerary: it cures the Scab, Wounds, Ulcers, and all vices in the skin; it hath a peculiar faculty in curing, or at least asswaging, cancerous Ulcers. *Fuchsius* writes falsly, that the King of *France*, correpted with the Leprosie, was cured with the adjument of this herb: for no King of *France* was ever correpted with such a fœde disease, nor yet with Pestilence.

Vires.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of Ditanny.

Dittany's caulicles are cubital or shorter, which divide themselves into certain wings, on whose summities depend flowers proceeding from the same interstices, in the form of scales: its leafs are rotund, but acuminated on the one side, very lanuginous, and like pennyroyal, but higher: that is best that growes in *Crete*; and that most laudable that growes on *Picte*, a Mountain in that Region, whence it is denominated; some of the Greeks call it *Beloacon*, that is, *Weapon-salve*; and *Belotocon*, because it excludes

excludes infixed darts: for Harts confixed with Arrowes run to Dictanny; by the contact whereof they exclude the Arrowes. Hence some call it *Dorcidium* or *Cervary*, because Harts first invented its use. Goats also feeding near it, and vulnerated demonstrated its efficacy; its leafs are tomentous, and its flowers of a violaceous black colour.

Another kind of *Dictanny* is found in some maritimous places, as in the *Baroſluctuan* shores in *Normandy*, very like this in leafs which is called *Pſeudo-Dictamny*; but its flowers do verticulately circumcinge its surcles, and its faculties are not so efficacious as the legitimate.

Dictamny which some call *Diphthamny*, is hot and dry in the third degree, it will by the Ancients testimony extract weapons, extinguish introsumed poyson; it helps in pestilence, excludes flowers, young, and seconds, abates the spleen, and cures Strangury.

CHAP. XLIV.

Of Stœchas, Cassidony, or French Lavender.

Stœchas is unjustly sirnamed *Arabian*, seeing it equally germinates in other parts and regions, as in *Crete*, *Belgium* and *Normandy*, where it lives well among Snowes, and in the Islands *Stœchades*, from which, or from their spicated summities they are denominated.

Dodonæus knew three sorts thereof; the first, the common and true *Stœchas*; the second, the *Belgian*, like the former in effigies; the third with sawed leafs: besides which there is another with golden coloured leafs, like *Eliochrysum*, and is called *Chrysocome* or Orenge-coloured *Stœchas*; this hath short and slender caulicles, angust, hoary and hispid leafs, and luteous splendent flowers like small bubles: it growes in rough and Sandy places; *Pena* makes three sorts hereof. See him.

The true *Stœchas* emits many cubitall slender, and lignous cauls, with hair on its summities angular like ears of Corn, long leafs, broad like Lavander spike and hoary; small, cæruleous odorate flowers in a Foliaceous spike, which are suaveolent.

Stœchas is manifestly hot, amare, moderately astrictive and very cephalical, for it recreates the head, and all animal faculties, discusses frigid humours, exhilarates the mind, and conduces to all affections of the head flowing from a cold distemper, it roborates all the intrals, and the whole body.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLV.

Of Sage.

SAge is either domeſtick or Sylveſtrian; domeſtick is twofold, the greater and the leſſer: both called *Eleliſphacos*, though ſome denote the greater onely with this name, calling the leſſer *Sphacelos*, which ſome call wild Sage, others boſke Sage.

There is another kind of Sage in *Crete* that bears berries, which in figure, odour, and ſapour is very like ours.

Sage is a ramous plant, (*Dioſc. C.* 41. *L.* 3.) having quadrangular and hoary branches, with leafs like Quince leafs, but more anguſt, ſharp, craſſe and whiter: its flowers which depend on the tops of its branches are fulcated like them of *Horminum*, and cæruleous.

Salvia is Cephalical, nerval, calefactive, ſiccative, apertive, moving flours and urine; the leſſer muſt be ſelected as better to the confection of Stœchas, but the greater may well ſupply its defect. *Vires.*

CHAP. XLVI.

Of Horminum, or Clary.

CLary is either ſative, which delights in cultivated and fat ſoyl; or wild, which growes in meadowes and macilent places: both are well known, they emit from one root, many cubital, angular, and ſubhirſute Cauls, but eſpecially the ſative: their leafs are broad, mucronated and ſharp like Horehound: their flowers beſides their leafs do verticulately circumcinge their ſurcles; their flowers are of a purpureous cæruleous colour; ſometimes whitiſh, ſometimes altogether white, erupting out of boxes, which dehiſceing for maturity look downwards: a ſmall, long, and black ſeed is included in theſe; the ſeed of the wild ones is round and brown. *Speciet.*

Horminum and *Orvalla* have ſo much affinity with each other, that very grave men, and perite Herbaliſts conſtitute no difference betwixt them; but they are without diſtinction; as *Matthiolus* hath noted. *Horminum* comes from the verb ὁρμᾶν, becauſe it drawes its uſurpers to venery. Some call it Sage of *Rome*; but *Orvall* is commonly called, *All good*: ſometimes, *Gallitriche*; by ſome, *Cockles center*: by others, *Sclarea*; and by ſome, *Scarlea*; whoſe four varieties *Dodon.* delivers, which here particularly to recenſeate, would be beyond mine inſtitution.

Clary is manifeſtly hot, its ſeed drunk in Wine excites venery, takes away the white ſpot in ones eyes: it being demerged in ſome convenient liquor, eructates a certain mucage, which wonderfully *Vires.*

ly

ly helps the affections of the eyes: the Sylveſtrian is more efficacious.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of Scordium.

Scordium is ſo called from the odour of Allium, which it refers, it is a ſurculous plant procumbent on the ground, with two leafs iſſuing out of each genicle, which Leafs are long like Germander, but greater, incided in their circuits; ſoft, hirſute, and white, red flowers erupt out of the wings of the ſurcles, very like the flowers of dead nettle or archangel, but leſſer: that which growes in *Crete* is not onely laudable, but alſo that which growes in other Regions.

It is almoſt miraculous, that grave men, (eſpecially *Galen*, *C.* 24. *L. de Antiq.*) write of *Scordium*, to wit, that thoſe bodies of dead men lying upon the ground without Sepulture, which fell upon *Scrodium*, putrified much ſlower then others; and thoſe parts of the carkaſſes that touched the herb were totally vindicated from putretude: wherefore *Galen* was perſwaded that *Scordium* is averſe to the poyſon of all reptiles, and all noxious medicaments which cauſe putrefaction: it growes copiouſly in many Fennes, beſide ditches and other concave and humid places; it is found alſo in many uliginous and fatter Mountains.

Vires. It calefies and ſiccates, preſerves from putretude, and reſiſts poyſons; it cures the peſtilence, and many contagious diſeaſes.

It is moſt uſefully profitable in a potion againſt lethall poyſons and bitings, it purges the intralls, and moves flowers and urine.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of Rue.

Rue is enumerated amongſt the graveolent herbs, whether it be domeſtical, whereof there is but one ſort well known to all; or *Sylveſtrian*, whereof there are more varieties. *Rue* is a ſuffrutitious, bicubital, ramous, ſurculous, folious, and continually green plant, which bears luteous flowers, upon whoſe occaſe, a quadrangular head emerges, divided with ſo many cloſets and continents, as it hath angles: wherein is contained that ſeed which ingredes the compoſition of the ſyrrup of Stœchas.

Rue in Greek is *Péganon*, becauſe its extraordinary dry ſpirit and calour exſiccate the genital ſperme: yet it is indued with many other eximious faculties, which greatly commend its uſe:

Mithri-

Mithridates also set a good estimate upon it; who used it in that peculiar Antidote wherewith he defended himself from many poysons.

Which he constituted of two hundred *Rue* Leafs, two figs, two dry Wallnuts, all contrited with a grain of salt. *Antidotus Mithrid. quibus Constiterit.*

The Sylvestrian Rue affords two differences especially, the one whereof, in leafs, odour, and effigies is very like the Garden Rue, and is called Mountain Rue, because it fruticates on mountains; the other being most rare and variously denominated, hath exercised many wits in its designation: *Dioscorides* (*C.* 53. *L.* 3.) seems to call it *Moly*, yet in the next Chapter describing *Moly*, he makes its leafs graminous, and roots bulbous, which can in no wise accord with Rue. The *Cappadocians* have also designed it with this name; the *Syrians* call it *Besasan*; the *Arabians*, *Harmel* & *Harmala*; which name many Shopmen give to common Rue; which may rightly be substituted in defect of the true *Harmala*, which is the second sort of Sylvestrian Rue.

This *Harmala* emits many caulicles of Nine Inches heighth, without any root; its leafs are angust, small, and long: its flowers white and quinquefolious, its seed is contained in heads like them of the domestick Rue, but they are onely triangular; it is graveolent; it grows in *Cappadocia*, and in many incultivated places in *Spain*.

It is hot and dry in the third degree, it attenuates, incides, digests crasse humours, and extinguishes Sperm. *Vires.*

We shall not now treat of Goat-rue, improperly so called, though we may speak of it in a more proper place.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of Litho Sperm, or Gromell.

THis herb is called *Lithosperm*, from the durity of its seed; its leafs are like Olive-leafs, but longer, hispid, sharper, and of a sad green; its surcles are streight, slender, ligneous, sharp and hirsute: its flowers white, issuing out of the wings of its leafs, and depending upon short pedicls.

A small, rotund, hard and splendent seed, which glisters in the Sun, followes upon the occase of its flowers: whence it is probable, the Shopmen call it *Sun-millet*.

There are two sorts thereof, which in form and faculties aae alike, in magnitude onely diffident; besides which two others are found, which are either useless, or not experienced. *Vires.*

Lithosperm is hot and dry in the second degree, it moves urine, breaks and expels stones, liberates from obstructions, opens the passages, and helps against Strangury.

CHAP. L.

Of Saxifrage.

MAny and different plants, from their faculty in breaking the ſtone, are called *Saxifrages*; thus Betony by *Galen*, and another ferulaceous herb like Epithyme by *Dioſcorides*. Pimpinell alſo, and other Lithontriptical plants are thus nuncupated: as alſo other plants which deſume this name not from comminution or contrition of ſtones in the reins or bladder, but from their exortion in rocks; as *Empetrum* or *Criſtina marinv*, which as it were dividing the rocks, iſſues out of their rimes and fruticates there long and vivaciouſly.

The vulgar *Saxifrage*, eſpecially the greater, is very like Pimpinel, its leafs are variouſly deſcided, and ſerrated in their circuit: its caul is cubital, angulous and ſtriated: its umbels whitiſh, its ſeed like Garden ſmalledge, acrimonious and fervent to the guſt.

The leſſer differs from the former in little ſave magnitude. Many ſay, that Pimpinel differs from Saxifrage onely in hirſuteneſſe; for Pimpinel is pilous, the other ſmooth and glabre.

Other two plants, are referred to the family of Saxifrages; the one whereof is called white Saxifrage, becauſe it bears a white flower; the other aureous, becauſe it bears a golden flower; the ſeed of the greater Saxifrage ſhould be ſelected to the confection of *Benedicta Laxativa*.

Vires. It is evidently hot and dry, it attenuates, incides, digeſts, expurges, takes away obſtructions, moves flowers, educes glutinous humours out of the breaſt, moves urine, and breaks and expells ſtones.

CHAP. LI.

Of Ariſtolochy, or Birthwort.

A*Riſtolochy* is ſo called, becauſe it helps childbearing, and edures their *Lochia*. Many call it the Earths apple, becauſe its fruit is like an apple; but this nomenclature is peculiar to the round ones, for the fruits of ſome are turbinated.

There are five ſorts of *Ariſtolochies*, the long, round ſarmentitious, ſaracenical, and *Piſtolochia* or *Polyrhizon*; all which are ſo like in cauls, leafs and flowers, that none but ſuch as are very perſpicacious can difference and diſtinguiſh them.

They grow in many places in *France* about the margines of vineyards of fields, in fat and reſtible ſoyl: the long growes copiouſly on the Banks of *Sequana*.

Dioſcorides acknowledges onely three ſorts of Ariſtolochy, the

roun,

round, the long and the ſarmentarious, the long he calls the maſculine; the round the fœminine; which ſome call *Dactylis*, he attributes eximious faculties to both; not onely againſt venenate animals, but alſo for their potency in extracting the ſplinters and fractures of bones and darts.

The round which nigreds the Confection of *Hiera Pacchii*, ca- *Vires.*
lefies and dryes potently, it is good againſt poyſons, difficulty of breathing, ſighings, and Spleen; it attracts ſuch things as are left after childbearing; whence it is called *Ariſtolochia*; for removing the *remora's* it validly educes the Seconds, and moves Flowrs.

CHAP. LII.

Of Aſarum, or Aſarabacca.

Aſarum is by ſome called *Vulgago*; by others, *Perpenſa* and *Baccharis*: but the Shopmen call it after the Greeks and Latines *Aſarum*; its leafs are in colour and magnitude hederaceous, yet not acuminated, but ſomewhat round, conſtituting an imperfect circle; or as the Alchymiſts ſay, referring the ſignature of an ear, of which herb, when the Empirick *Rivierius* boaſted, he was demanded by a learned Phyſician of *Paris*; whether or no the Leafs of *Aſarum* were the beſt and moſt determinate cure for the diſeaſes of the Auricles; whoſe ridiculous reſponſe demonſtrated, that he neither knew the herb, nor the proper affections of the place; its flowers are ſmall, lying under its leafs, like the flowers of Orenge coloured Henbane, but leſſer, wherein a ſmall, angulous and ſharp ſeed is contained; its roots are many, ſlender and gracile, obliquely diffuſed, and alternately implicated.

Its roots are hot and dry, as alſo its Leafs; but theſe more im- *Vires.*
becilly: they move urine and flowers, excite vomit, and expurge pituitous and craſſe humours; they are very good againſt the obſtructions and tumours of the Liver and Spleen; whence macerated in wine, it is good againſt the Jaundice and Dropſie.

CHAP. LIII.

Of Pimpinell, or Burnet.

Pimpinel or Pampinell, which ſome enumerate amongſt the *Species.*
Saxifrages, is twofold; the one Hortenſian, which delights in ſature and culture; the other Sylveſtrian, which growes in Meadowes and other incultivated places; both agree with Saxifrage, not onely in form, but faculties alſo; ſome call this plant Peponell; others, *Bipennula*; others, *Sanguiſorbe* and *Sanguinary*; ſome give it the moſt compoſited name of *Dionyſio-nymphas*; becauſe conjected into Wine, it conciliates a certain grateful ſuavity in drinking.

The *Hortensian* is mutated; both of them have long leafs, many congested together upon one pedicle, each whereof is subrotund, serrated, and somewhat hirsute; their cauls are cubitall, quadrangular, somewhat striated and ramous; out of whose summities erupt round capitls, compacted of little olaraceous leafs and flowers, which seem to dye sometimes before the rising of the flowers, and after the occase of the fruits; wherein many angulous and dusky seeds are included.

Its root is long, hard, and useless.

Vires. It calefies and siccates in the beginning of the second recesse, it is very grateful to the principal parts, as the Heart, Liver, and such Intrals; it purifies the blood, purges the reins, ejects stones and sand, helps against the bitings of mad-dogs, and conduces in maligne and pestilent Feavers.

CHAP. LIV.

Of Germander.

Hamædrys growes in petrous and rough places, it is a suffruticious plant of nine inches heighth, whose leafs are like oak Leafs; whence it is called *Chamædrys*, or small oak.

It is called *Trissago*, and sometimes *Teucrium*, but it hath small affinity with *Teucrium*. *Dioscorides* substitutes no Species to this plant; though the later Writers have found many which have much cognation therewith: for *Fuchsius* sayes there are two masculine plants and as many fœminine of this name. *Dodonæus* saith, there are two reptile ones, and as many assurgent; the last whereof he onely calls the wild *Chamædrys*, when indeed they are all wild.

It calefies and siccates in the second degree, liberates the intralls from obstructions, educes flowers, and much profits its assumers, as you may see in *Dioscorides*, C. 12. L. 3.

CHAP. LV.

Of Ground Pine.

Ioscorides makes three varieties of true Ground Pines; *Dodonæus* addes three more of spurious ones; the first is called *Ajuga* or *Abuga*, from its odour.

It hath leafs like *semper Vivum*, but much smaller, fatter, hirsute and densely set about the boughes; with a tenuious flower of a whitish luteous colour; it is also called Arthriticall Ivy, because it conduces to the cure of the Gout: the second hath cubitall, slender, crooked boughs, with candid flowers, and small black seed: the third is called masculine Ground Pine, which is small, with exile, whitish and hispid leafs, sharp caulicle, luteous

teous flowers and seed: all smell like the Pine, none of Musk, as some have thought.

Ground-Pine is hot in the second, and dry in the third degree; it is apertive, helps against the Kings Evil and Strangury, moves flowers, helps against the bitings of Scorpions, roborates the nerves, and conduces to the cure of the Sciatica and other Gowts. *Vires.*

CHAP. LVI.

Of Feaverfew.

WE said before that Feaverfew was not Mugwort, now we confesse, that it is a kind of Motherwort, but not stinking Camomil, as I heard a skilful man once affirm. Feverfew, as *Dioscorides* asserts, hath leafs like Coriander, but smaller, variously incided, and jagged: the ambient of its flower is white, the middle luteous, like Camomile, its odour is venenate, its sapour amare, its root is scinded with many slender and hard fibres, and the whole plant is of a dilute colour, and known to all.

It is called the shops motherwort, because it cures such women as are obnoxious to the suffocation of the matrix, and other affections from that cause.

There are two sorts thereof, the one with a simple flower, which is the vulgar; the other with a full and manifold flower, which for its elegancy is sowen and cultivated in gardens; and unless it obtain fat soyl, degenerates into the simple one: there is another brought from the Alpes, where it growes abundantly and spontaneously, which is called the Alpian Feverfew, which responds to the former in odour and form, but is lesse, alwayes bearing simple flowers congested on umbells. *Species.*

It is hot in the third degree, dry in the second; it opens, incides, expurges, and potently educes flowers, seconds and young ones, though dead. *Vires.*

CHAP. LVII.

Of Hypericum, or St. Johns wort.

Hypericum commonly called Millefore, is a surculous Plant of a cubits altitude, with myrtle Leafs, but that they are thinner, softer, more have, and perforated with innumerable pores: its flowers are luteous, consisting of five leafs shining with a golden nitour, after which small long Cods erupt, gravidated with small seeds, which rubbed smell of Rosin.

Its root is hard, sulcated with many fibres and capillaments; its flowers and leafs bruised, emit a certain sanguine humour; its flowers macerated in oyl, give it a sanguineous tincture.

It

It moves urine and flowers, cures wounds and Sciatica, conduces against the affections of the nerves; calefies, siccates, roborates the nerves, and is a good ingredient to vulneraries.

Many say that *Ascyrum*, *Androsæmum* and *Hypericum* are one, but they are different plants, and of divers forms.

CHAP. LVIII.

Of Androsæmum, or Peters-wort.

Androsæme is so called, because its succe resembles mans blood; it is a fructiferous and ramous plant, its surcles are many, slender and red, its leafs broad, and mucronated like Ivy, but more tenuious and florid; which bruised, emit red succe like red wine; it hath many wings expanded on both sides of its summity: about which there are small luteous flowers; its seed is contained in small cups like Poppy seed, its hair contrited emits a resinous odour.

It growes spontaneously in many Woods of *Northmany*, and other incultivated places, whose leafs women collect and successfully adhibite to pustuls, and almost all cutaneous affections: for they have experienced, that if it benefit not, it will not hurt any part whereunto it is admoved.

Vires. It calefies, siccates, agglutinates, stayes blood, cures burnings, helps against the Sciatica, cohibits wounds, adimpleats Ulcers with flesh, and cures them; two dragms of its seed brayed and taken, deduces the chollerick excrements of the belly by stools.

CHAP. LIX.

Of Gith, or Nigella.

THere is no small difference betwixt *Melanteria*, and *Melanthium*; for *Melanteria* is a mineral like *Mysius*; but *Melanthium* or *Gith* is a Plant which they call *Nigella*, which assurges like a shrub, with slender boughs, leafs minutely incided like Coriander leafs, and candid flowers on the tops of its branches, many hairy tufts and stalks being interposed like green hair, whereunto quadrangular heads succeed, armed with prominent and reflected cornicles, distinguished with membranous covers, and gravidated with black angulous, acrimonious, and odorate seed.

There is another sort of sative *Gith*, which from the colour of its seed is called Orenge-coloured Gith; it is in all things like the former, but in its seed.

There are as many sorts of wild Gith, which grow amongst segetives, very like the satives; and another which is called *Pseudo-Melanthium*, and is enumerated amongst the cæreals.

The

The first sort of Gith the Shopmen call *Nigella Romana*, though it be scarce at *Rome*, but plentiful in *Germany*.

It calefies and siccates potently, kills Worms, moves flowers, helps the orthopnoical, dissipates flatuosity, and benefits such as are affected with diseases in their *Uterus*.

CHAP. LX.

Of Hyssope.

HYssop well known to all, is a fruticous plant, of a foots length, with leafs like Thyme, but longer, and broader; cæruleous flowers, whose branches are vested like Spike, with a long and lignous root.

And it is of two sorts; one montanous, which fruticates spontaneously in dry places; the other sative, which is for culinary uses nourished in Gardens; for it is grateful, and affects broth with a delectable sapour and sweet odour.

Both sorts are hot and dry in the third degree; but the domestick, especially that which bears white flowers, is lesse hot and dry. Their faculties according to *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, and *Mesue*, are perstrictive, yet all confesse that they much help in diuturnal Coughs and distillations, and benefit the suspirious and orthopnoical.

CHAP. LXI.

Of Cranes-Bill.

Species

Dioscorides makes but two sorts of *Cranes-bill*; *Matthiolus* three, borrowing the third from *Pliny*: *Fuchsius*, six; *Dodonæus*, eight, besides other two described by *Fuchsius*, which he doth but just mention.

The first emits very lanuginous furcles red from the root; leafs like Anemone, cut with many and long incisures, red flowers, after whose occase little heads emerge out of the summities of its branches, of the longitude of a needle, well representing the bill of a Stork, or Crane; whence later Writers one while call it Cranes bill, another while Storks bill, and another while Shephards Needle.

The second hath small and pilous furcles, of half a foots longitude, with leafs like Mallowes, but whiter; purpureous flowers on its summities, and with heads like Cranes bills: they mistake, that call it Anemone.

The third hath pedal, geniculated, hoary, hispid and graveolent furcles, with leafs like Chervil, red flowers and capitls rostrated like Storks.

The

The whole plant is red, whence it was of old called Rubel, now Rubertian, sometimes Robertian, or herb-*Robert*.

The fourth hath lacinated red leafs, purpureous flowers, and heads rostrated as the former.

The fifth is called *Ranunculus*, because it bears leafs like frogs; its flowers are patulous and subcæruleous; its heads like the former: it is twofold; the one greater, whose flowers are cæruleous; the other lesser, whose flowers are red.

The sixth expands slender lanuginous branches, small and laciniated leafs, purpureous flowers, to which the Stork bills succeed.

There is also a tuberous Storks bill; so called from its crasse, nodose and tuberous root; it luxuriates with many round surcles: leafs like Anemone, much laciniated, red, patulous, fair flowers on the tops of its caulicles, like little Roses.

Besides these, others are by some enumerated as the montanous Storks bill, the Ladies Comb, the Doves foot, and another, which for its suaveolence is called sweet Storks bill, which growes copiously in many places in *Normandy*, especially in maritimous tracts; some call it the herb *Camphorata*, but they erre; for *Camphorata* is of the family of Ground-pines: but I find Southernwood called *Camphorata*, by many, for it smells like Camphire.

For defect of *Camphorata*, suaveolent Storks bill may be substituted in the confection of the unguent *Martiatum*; if both be wanting, the first sort of Storks bill may be desumed.

Vires. All of them are indued with the same faculty, the *Moscative* is calefactive, nerval, and discussive: the *Rupertian*, detersive, and accommodate to Ulcers.

CHAP. LXII.

Of Doronicum, or Leopards Bane.

THat which *Mesue* calls *Doronici*, *Actuarius Carnabadium*; and it is likely that which *Paulus* calls *Memirem*, and *Matthiolus* falsly *Aconitum Padalianche*, we call vulgar *Roman Doronicum*, whereof that *Matthiolus* might give his opinion, he experienced his upon a dogg, which by that means dyed. I, besides the authority of grave men, can oppose him by experience; for I gave a great quantity thereof to a dogg, which he eat up without harm: yea, it is daily usurped successful in decoctions and cordiall Electuaries: besides, the famous Doctor, *Conradus Gesnerus* asserts, that he hath often assumed *Doronicums* root condited, and drunk two dragms of its powder in water; yea, that he had frequently and successfully prescribed it either solitary or mixed with other medicameuts to his patients.

And though we grant to *Matthiolus*, that *Doronicum* kills dogs, it does not thence follow, that it is lethall to men; for both are

not

not of the same nature, nor yet live of the same aliment: thus Aloes kills Foxes, not men: *Nux vomica* kills Cats and many Birds, which is to us a solutiferous medicament.

Doronicum then must not be disapproved of as poyson, since many commend it, if not for an aromatical, yet for an alexiterial simple. And therefore *Mesueus* uses it in the Electuary *de Gemmis*, because there is some theriacality in it, (*Avicen.* Tract. 2. *de med. cord.*)

Doronicum is a small plant, with slender cauls; soft and long leafs like Plantain, somewhat flave and hirsute like Mouse-ears; whose ambitient is rotund, somewhat laciniated, and a little acuminated: its roots are small, rotund, and orbicular, growing more angust towards their extreams like the body and tail of a Snake; their colour is white, sapour, dulcoamare, and somewhat astrictive: its flowers are luteous and radiate like Oxe eye.

Some make but three varieties of *Doronicum*, which seem solely to discrepate in magnitude. *Clusius* enumerates seven; amongst which, *Damasonion*, which most call *Alisma*, is comprehended: and Classicall Authors affirm, that the root of *Damasonion* may well be substituted for the root of common *Doronicum*, in the confection of the Electuary *de gemmis*, and other cordiall compounds; for it is commended against poysons, whether ingested or inflicted by *Dioscorides*, (*C.* 69. *L.* 3.) whereby it seems more convenient for these concoctions then *Doronicum*, of whose faculties some doubt; others speak little.

Now *Damasonium* is very *Doronicum* in effigies, bearing leafs like Plantain, but more angust, lacinious, and conveyed downwards, with a slender, simple caul of more then a cubits heighth, a pale flower, slender, acrimonious, and odorate roots, which are good against poysons.

Doronicum is hot and dry almost in the third degree, it discusses flatuosity, is good against palpitation, and conduces to such as are venenately and pestilentiously diseased, or bitten by Serpents. *Vires.*

CHAP. LXIII.

Of Cardus Benedictus.

A *Tractylis*, which is a kind of bastard Saffron, is twofold, the one whereof hath a streight Caul, and is thence called *recticaul*; the other emits procumbent surcles, and is thence called *Straticaul*, and by a more usuall name *Carduus Benedictus*; it is a plant well known to all, its Cauls are round, obsequious, brachiated and decumbent; its leafs laciniated on both sides and spinose; the summities of its surcles emit little heads stipated with spinose and pungent leafs, whence it is called *Acanacia*; which

heads are lanuginous and turgid, with long dusky and bearded seed; the flower is pallid, its root which is small in respect of the numerosity of its branches and leafs, is white, and divided into fibres.

Vires. *Carduus Benedictus* being exceedingly amare, calefies, roborates the heart and vital parts, moves sudour, resists poysons, conduces against pestilentious diseases, mitigates the dolours of the Reins and sides, kills Worms, and prevails against the bitings of Serpents.

CHAP. LXIV.

Of Cardiobotanum, or Cardiaca, or Motherwort.

Mrepsus in the confecture of his unguent *Martiatum*, puts *Cardiobotanum*; *Nic. Præpositus*, *Carducellum*; but what either of them are, we cannot easily define. Many use white *Chamæleon* for *Carducellum*; and *Carduus Benedictus* for *Cardiobotanum*: others use *Cardiaca*, or *Agripalma*; which we call Motherwort.

It is called *Cardiaca*, from its effect; for it is thought, that it conduces in heart affections: but it is strange, that so intuave an odour should lætificate the heart, which delights so much in suaveolents; *Cardiaca*, or *Agripalma* (for so it is often named) is a cubital plant, seldom lower, often taller, bearing quadrangular, hard, and crasse cauls, of a blackish red colour; its leafs are broad, obscurely green, like nettle leafs, laciniated and divided with deep incisures; its flowers small, purpureously white, verticulately circumcinging its surcles, and emerging out of its caulicles. It growes in incultivated, strong and rough places: some call it *Melissa*; others *Syderitis Herculana*.

Vires. It is hot and dry in the second degree, it absterges, expurges, kills belly-Worms, liberates from obstructions, helps in Convulsions, and cures the affections of the heart; yet its fœtour portends it to be no whit cordiah.

CHAP. LXV.

Of Black Chamæleon Thistle.

THere are almost innumerable varieties of *Thistles*, to whose family both the white and black Chamæleon are referred; the white hath no caul, but from the midst of its broad, long procumbent leafs, emits a head covered with prickles; some take it for *Carducellum*: but the black, which the *Romans* call *Vermilago*, and *Carduus Niger*, assurges with crasser and higher Cauls; long and broad leafs, divided on each side with profund sections; out of its summities erupt certain round heads coacted into umbells, splendent with many little flowers; its root is crasse, black without, fiave within, and very acrimonious to the gust.

The

The Root of black Chamæleon, participates of some malignant quality; insomuch that it is never intrinsecally assumed; but frequently and safely extrinsecally adhibited, especially when mixed with other medicaments: for, its ferity is retunded by the concourse of other simples, and it afterwards pollicitates a salutary effect upon some affections, as the Sciatica, and other infections of the skin. *Vires.*

CHAP. LXVI.

Of Artichock, or Scolymus.

Artichock, which the Greeks call *Scolymus*, is of trivial dignotion: whereof there are two special differences, the one simply so called, the other Spinose, and Spanish, which is a kind of Thistle; yea both indeed are depromed from that tribe, and by culture and Art have acquired a more specious form and graeious sapour.

The leafs of Artichoak are long, broad, laciniated on both sides with profund incisures, and of a cineritious colour, whence it may be, it was called *Cinara*; its furcles are bicubital, whose summities produce a kind of fruit with three triangular, crasse, hard, medullous leafs compacted like scales: this fruit cocted till it be soft, is most grateful meat, but it is not so inservient to venery, as many think; for it adds very little genital matter or flatulent spirits, but much melancholical succe to the body: (*Gal. l. 6. de alim. facul.*) its flowers conglomerated on slender and innumerable stalks are cæruleously purpureous: which withering turn into down; small long seeds like them of *Carduus* remaining therein: Wild *Scolymus* is very like the spinous Artichock; the slender Cauls of *Cinara* or Artichock condited with Sugar are grateful to eat, and much celebrated in opsonies.

The juice of Artichock according to *Galen* is very prave, hot in the second degree, bilious and melancholical, moving urine; its root cocted and drunk in wine, takes away the graveolence of the whole body, depelling it through the bladder with urine. *Vires.*

CHAP. LXVII.

Of Phu, or Valerian.

Phu, which some call wild Spikenard, and *Pliny*, Cretian Spikenard, is *Valerian*, by some called *Marinella*, whereof there are five sorts; the first is the male, the second the female, the third the small, the fourth the red, and the fifth the Græcian *Valerian*.

The first, whereof *Dioscorides* alone makes mention by knowledg, hath a cubital caul geniculated, concave, and articulated with rare intervals; its leafs are long, late, smooth, green, sinuated, very like wild Parsnip leafs, two whereof emerge out of each genicle

of its furcles: its flowers are fair, ſmall, umbellically collected on the tops of its branches, purpureous and odorate; its root is of a digital ſpiſſitude, tranſverſly ſected with many fibres, and adherent to the ſurface of the Earth.

Vires. It is calefactive and alexiterial, whence ſome call it *Theriacaria & herba Benedicta*; it is mixed with Antidotes, and moves urine and flours.

The reſt of the *Valerians* which are ſeldom or never uſed, are at large deſcribed in Herballs.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of Fumitory.

Fumitory is ſo called, becauſe its ſucce immitted into the eyes cauſe tears like fume; It is an herb well known, growing either in Gardens or Fields, it is very like Coriander, it emits many red, and ſometimes white flowers, acuminated on one ſide like the criſt of a little bird they call the combed Lark; there are two ſorts thereof, the firſt is vulgar, fruticating among ſegetives, and in aprique places; the other, which growes moſt in Gardens, is bulbous, ſubcineritious, variegated ſometimes with white, ſometimes with luteous or otherwiſe coloured flowers.

Vires. All Fumitory is acrimonious and amare, it moves bilious urine, and cures the obſtructions and imbecillity of the Liver.

Its juice ſtilled into ones eyes, wonderfully helps againſt caliginoſity, and acuates the ſight.

The vulgar Fumitory is in frequent uſe, from which two Syrups are denominated; the one is the greater Syrup of Fumitory, the other the leſſer.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of Eyebright.

THis plant which is by ſome called *Ophthalmica*, and Ocular herb, is low, ſcarce exceeding a foot in heighth; it emits gracile and black Caulicles, from its ſlender and fibrous root, its leafs are ſmall, and ſerrated like dwarfe elder, flowers white, maculated with minute points: it growes in macilent, dry, and incultivated places near high-wayes, and margins of fields, that are not umbrous: it flouriſhes about the beginning of Autumn, and ſhould then be gathered and kept: or elſe its water diſtilled while it is freſh for their eyes, to which it very much conduces, and is thence by the *Germans* called *Solamen oculorum*: ſome call it *Euphroſyne*, becauſe it exhilarates the mind; for which effect Buggloſſe is ſometimes ſo denominated.

Vires. It calefies gently, ſiccates potently, and helps the eyes admirably; for when it is adhibited it takes away caliginoſity, and cures all pituitous diſeaſes therein, the wine wherein much Eye-

bright

bright is macerated at Vintage time, doth with much efficacy adjuvate the Eyes, and expugne their affections.

CHAP. LXX.

Of the leſſer Centory.

THere are two differences of *Centories*, the one greater, the other leſſe, which are very diſſident each from other in form and faculties; for the greater hath bicubital Cauls, long leafs, cohæring together, and crenated in the margin, with heads turbinated on the tops of its branches, obduced with herbaceous ſcales like *Lacea*, out of which ſtamineous, cæruleous, and elegant flowers erupt, which greater is not of any great moment in medicine; though the ancients for its dignity have called it *Ceutaurium*, or *Panax*.

But the leſſer Centory is frequently uſed, which from its potency in captivating and expugning Fevers, is often called *Febrifugium*, and ſometimes from its amaritude *Fel terræ*, and ſometimes *Limniſion*.

It is a ſmall plant aſſurging with a pedal, angulous Caul, veſted with ſmall leafs like *Hypericum*, two at each interval, coronated with ſmall purpureous flowers, which in the day-time are explicated, in the night recluded; ſhort Cods ſucceed theſe, wherein ſmall grains are coarctated: it growes ſpontaneouſly in incultivated, herbous, macilent and aprique places; it is found in ſome places with a luteous, in others with a white flower. I have ſeen one with purpureous leafs in the middle, in other parts with white ones.

The leſſer Centory calefies potently, expurges and cures inveterate Ulcers, its decoction takes away the obſtructions of the Liver, and helps againſt the induration of the milt; its ſucce in ſod wine educes flours, and accelerates delivery; and emplaſticated with honey, it takes away dimneſſe and caliginoſity from the Eyes. *Vires.*

CHAP. LXXI.

Of Rhaponticum.

RHaponticum is not Rubarb, nor the greater Centory, as many deceived with their affinity have credited: for †*Rhaponticum*, is a peregrine root, coming from the Regions beyond *Boſphorus* in *Thracia*, and *Pontus* in *Euxinum*; of the craſſitude of the greater Radiſh, ſomewhat black and ruddy like the greater Centory, fragile, of a dark red colour within, and of a ferrugineous, ſubamare, aſtrictive, and inodorate ſapour, void of all acrimony. † But now we have it plentifully growing in *England*.

There growes in many Gardens in *France*, eſpecially in ſuch as appertain to them that delight in rare ſimples, *Rhaponticum* that

ſo

so well agrees with the antique, that it seems to be the very same, That root is best which admits no Worms, and which in manducation becomes pliant and clammy, without much astriction, and colours the spittle palely red, and Croceous.

Vires. It cures the imbecillity of the stomack, is good against the lienous, hepatical, coxendical and convulsive dolours, cures burstnesse, circuits of Feavers, and bitings of venenate animals; it is an useful ingredient, in Antidotes.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of Meum, or Spignell.

Species. MEu or *Meum*, is twofold; the one most laudable, which is found in *Macedonia*, and copiously in *Athamanthe*, whence they call it *Athamanticum*: the other more vulgar, which grows in many places in *France* and *Italy*, which Herbalists call sometimes the wild Dill; sometimes tortuous Fennel; both of them have small, angust, and capillaceous leafs, gracile and cubital furcles, out of whose summities umbells with candid flowers emerge, to which angulous, long, odorate and acrimoniously amare seeds succeed, greater then Cumin seed; its roots are very slender and odorate.

Vires. It calefies in the third, and siccates in the second degree, it incides, attenuates, expurges, removes obstructions, moves urine and flours, discusses, the flatuosity of the stomack, takes away the stopings of the Liver, and emends the vices of the reins.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of Anethum, or Dill.

BOth Medicks and women, make use of *Anethum*; the women in *June*, at which time it is coronated with flowers, and most fragrant, excerpe or cut it, dry it, keep it and record it with their Linnen to conciliate a pleasant odour to them; but the Medicks use its seed also to many things, as we shall hereafter declare.

Now *Anethum* is of a bicubital procerity, with rotund and geniculated furcles, leafs dissected small like capillaries, luteous flowers on its muscary; plain, small, foliated and pallid seed, and a hard fibrous root; it is sowen in Gardens, and annually revives from the deciduous seed; its odour is grave, and yet jucund and sweet.

Vires. It calefies and siccates in the second degree, being introsumed it moves urine, allayes gripings and flatuosity, abates singulture, evokes milk and augments it, it incides, attenuates and coets humours.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXIIII.

Of Macedonian Petroſeline.

Petroſeline is either vulgar, frequent in our Gardens, which Phyſitians call Garden Smallage; and the vulgarity, Parſley: which as a gratefull Pot-herb is inſervient to culinary uſes; Or Macedonian, which is diverſely depinged, by herbaliſts. For Lobelius contends that in caul, leafes, umbells, and ſeed it is very like the vulgar or Garden Parſley, onely, it growes in Prærupt and ſaxous places, whence it is called Petrapium and *Petroſeline*: ſo that ours and the Garden is one; the wild and the *Macedonian* Parſley, the ſame alſo: yet Fuchſius ſaith it hath leafes like Pimpinella, and ſeeds like *Ammi*, Odorate, Acrmionious and Aromaolent. And this ſame deſcription he received not onely by tradition from Dioſcorides, but ſaw and experienced; for when he had committed the ſeed of Macedonian *Petroſeline* to the Earth, he found the Plant, thence produced to beare leafes reſpondent to Pimpinella, and ſeed conditionated as Dioſcorides had deſcribed.

It growes copiouſly in *Macedonia*, eſpecially in rough and ſaxous places.

It caleſies and ſiccates notably, moves urine, educes flowers, eaſes the colicall dolour, mitigates gripings, cures the dolours of the ſides, Reins, and Liver, diſcuſſes flatuoſity, attenuates, incides and ſucceſſefully ingredes the confecture of Antidotes. *Vires.*

CHAP. LXXV.

Of Coriander.

THough *Corianer* be a tetrous and graveolent herb, yet is it ſowen and cultivated in Gardens; for its grains by frication depoſe their ingratefull odour, and become ſuaveolent; its ſurcle is very ſlender, round, cubitall, and ramous; its leafes are at firſt like them of Adiantum, laciniated and variouſly incided, for the part next the caul, is leſſe ſected, the remoter, more; its flowers are white on large umbells; its ſeed made round, firme, ſomwhat ſtriated, and inane, which at firſt is green, then luteouſly white, its root ſhort, hard and fibrous; the odour of its leafes is putrid and tetrous.

It ſeed is commonly prepared with Vinegar, for the caſtigation of ſome inique quality, but deſiccation effects as much, ſo that it may thenceforth be deſumed without further preparation.

Coriander is refrigerative according to Dioſcorides and cures biles, pimples and inflammations, if taken in bread or pancakes. But Galen diſſents from this tenent proveing it to be calid, and *Vires.*

nor

not to help biles or the like, but onely ſmall watry powks, for it calefies moderately, reſiccates manifeſtly, and is ſomwhat aſtrictive.

CHAP. LXXVI.

Of Capers.

THe *Caper* ſhrub growes ſpontaneouſly in many places, makeing much prouent in dry and deſart fields without the help of the Ploughman; it is a ſenticous ſhrub, low, and hamated with many a dark Prickles, whoſe aculeated branches are orbicularly ſpread on the ground, its leafes are circinated like them of Quince-Trees, out of whoſe wings erupt long pedicles, capitulated with round umbells, which dehiſteing expand white flwers, whereunto long fruits full of Acinous ſeeds ſucceed.

Theſe rudments of flowers, or ſmall heads, while they are yet nodoſe and not explicate, are by Pharmacopoliſts evelled, condited and brine, and kept for *Capers*, the leſſer are better then the larger; this conditure makes them more ſuaue and whol-ſome both for medicinall uſes and eſure, the root of this ſhrub is alſo præſcinded, its bark ſeparated ſiccated and text; *Capers* afford but ſmall Aliment to their aſſumers becauſe of the tenuity of their parts, and are therefore rather ſubſerivent to mediniall uſes, yet they mutuate a certain ſavour pergratefull to the ſtomack from this brine; that invites the ranſeative to banquets and revotes the languiſhing appetite.

Vires. *Caper* both fruit and root is calefactive exterſive and purgative, it incides and digeſts, roborates helpes and minuates the ſpleen, removes obſtructions; and cures all diſeaſes ariſeing from the inſariture imbecillity of the ſpleen.

CHAP. LXXVII.

Of upright holy ſuckles or Woodbind.

THis Plant the *Romans* call *volucrum majus*, ſomtimes *Caprifolium ſcribonius largus* calls it Matriſglua, and ſome the Lilly among Thornes, it is a Surculous Lignous and Scanſory ſhrub circumuoluring it ſelf about the Vicine-Trees, and with its obſequious ſurcles, aſcending their ſummities. Tis leafes which are poſited at diſtance, and two together at each Genicle are long, ſmooth, ſofi, of a whitiſh green colour, more white one the lower ſide, its flowers white and ſomtimes flave, long, fiſtulous, gapeing in their extremities, many congeſted togetner Garland wiſe, and ſuaveolent, out of whoſe middle come ſome luſts, its fruit ſomwhat red, round racemouſly cohæren, wherein a hard ſeed is contained its root is craſſe and lignous, and of no uſe in Pharmany.

In

It growes in Woods and Hedges, so straightly amplexing trees sometimes, that it leaves thereon the impression of its circumvolutions.

Some of these Woodbinds in amplexing the vicine trees, take their rounds from the Orient to the Occident; others from the occident to the orient; and that at all times and in all places.

It calefies and siccates evidently, diminishes the Spleen, conduces to the orthopnoical, moves urine, adimates singultion, accelerates delivery in birth, deleates the pimples of the face, and by long use causes sterility both in man and woman. *Vires.*

Xylosteron is very like this honey-suckle or woodbind, but that it needs no fulciments for its supporture; as this requires.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

Of Broom.

THe very Maids know Broom, which they collect and colligate for Beesoms; ours growes in incultivated and dry places, and is wild; the Spanish Broom, which is our Garden Broom, is like the wild, but its branches, leafs, and flowers are larger.

The flowers of the Spanish Broom, are more graveolent then its branches; the branches of the wild Broom more tetrous then its flowers.

There is a low kind of Broom which we call *Genistella*, whose caulicles are each way extended into membranous wings instead of leafs, which is neglected as useless in medicine: Broom flourishes at the beginning of the spring, whose flowers not then perfectly explicated, are collected and condited with Vinegar and Salt, and kept for Winter-Acetaries like Capers.

It calefies and siccates to the second degree; its flowers are chiefly commended to the expediating of the infarctures of the Spleen and Liver; one dragme, or a dragme and a half of its seed brayed and drunk in three ounces of sweet water, moves and subduces the belly, opens the bladder, and cures Strangury. *Vires.*

CHAP. LXXIX.

Of Savine.

THere are two sorts of *Savine*; the one bacciferous, the other devoid of all fruit; both lowe, like Juniper, and alwayes green; that which is not gravidated with Berries is more graveolent, rigid and rough with short pricles, its Come is alwayes green, its odour molestfull, and its sapour fervid and acrimonious: this is alwayes low, diffusing it self laterally, and *Species.*

ſometimes aſſurging on high, if its boughes which circumdate its Caul be præſcinded.

The other is not ſo horrid, not aculeated with any prickles, very like Tamarisk, not ſo graveolent as the former; it bears ſubpuniceous and reſinous Berries: this delights not in frigid ſoyls, but grows copiouſly and ſpontaneouſly in hot places.

Beſides the two former, *Belonius* ſaith, that in *Crete* and *Myſia* he ſaw another ſort which was arboreous, in magnitude and manner of an Almond-tree, whom I had rather believe, then go ſo far to ſee the truth.

Vires. It is hot and dry in the third degree, it educes blood with urine, moves flowers, and taken in wine or adhibited, it excuſſes the young whether alive or dead.

CHAP. LXXX.

Of Roſemary.

Species. *Dioſcorides* gives the name *Libanotis* to two very different Plants; the firſt he calls *fœcund & frugiferous Libanotis*, or Roſemary, whoſe leafs are like Fennel, ſpread along the ground, and ſuaveolent, whoſe Caul is cubital, or higher, concave and capitulated with umbells, wherein is contained long and acrimonious ſeed called *Canchrys*: Of this there are three varieties, one whereof is this deſcribed; the ſecond is very like the former, onely its ſeed is more broad, not ſo mordacious, nor acrimonious; the third bears neither flower nor ſeed.

The other ſort is Coronary, much diſſimilar to the former, for it is a lignous ſhrub, having many ſlender, long cauls, circumveſted with anguſt and hard leafs, whitiſh below, and green above, coronated on each ſide, with cæruleouſly candeſcent flowers; though its odour be grave, yet it is not ingrateful, but roborates the brain and nerves; it is planted in every garden, growing ſpontaneouſly in the hotter Regions of *France*; it flouriſhes twice a year in Spring and Autumne.

Vires. It is calefactive, cures the Jaundice, if its decoction be drunk before exerciſe, and after exerciſe the diſeaſed ingrede a bath and drink wine: it helps againſt the reſolution of the Nerves, and ſtupour, and all diſeaſes ariſing from the frigid humours in the brain.

CHAP. LXXXI.

Of Agnus Caſtus, or white willow.

THere growes a certain odorate ſhrub in hot Countreys about the brinks of Rivers, torrent Channels, and rough places, which they call *Agnus Caſtus*, or white Willow, with leafs like Hemp,

Hemp, yet not ſerrated in their ambient, long, acuminated, and cohæring on one pedicle a piece; its boughs are long, lent, not fragile, its flowers are ſubpurpureous, verticulately circundating the ſummities of its ſurcles; its ſeed is rotund like Cardamome: it is called *Agnus Caſtus*, becauſe its leafs and flowers ſtrewed under one, conduces to their Chaſtity.

It calefies and ſiccates notably, validly diſcuſſing all flatuoſity; it auxiliates in venenate bitings, and affections of the Spleen; it moves flowers, cohibits the motion of ſperm, and allayes venereous fancies in the night as well as Rue ſeed, for which cauſe the *Athenian* Matrons in their Feaſts to *Ceres*, the better to cuſtodite their Chaſtity, ſtrewed their beds with its leafs. *Vires.*

CHAP. LXXXII.

Of the Aſh and Aſhton Keyes.

THe *Aſh* is a tall Tree, which the Greeks call *Media* and *Milea*, not onely uſed in the fabrication of ligneous veſſels, but alſo accommodated to medicinary uſes; whoſe bark, wood, and fruit, afford many commodious medicaments: it aſſurges with a very craſſe and high Caul, involved in a ſlender and ſmooth bark, with long leafs conſiſting of many together, and adhering to one pedicle like Liquorice or Wallnut leafs.

Many Cods colligated together upon one pedicle, iſſue out of its ſlender boughes, without any prægeſſion of conſpicuous flowers which Cods reſembling birds tongues, and their *Medulla* a lingel, are called Birds tongues; by the Greeks, *Ornithogloſſa*.

The Ancients have noted ſuch an Antipathy betwixt Serpents, and this Tree, that they had rather run into the fire, then creep upon its leafs and boughes, if they were circundated with both.

Its leafs and bark calefie moderately, and ſiccate efficaciouſly; and its ſeed which we call *Ornithogloſſum*, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree. Now if this Tree be ſo averſe from Serpents, that its very ſhade abigates them, its leafs, ſucce, or other parts duly aſſumed or adhibited, muſt needs produce potent effects upon poyſons; they are therefore uſeful for the curation of ſuch affections as participate of any maligne quality, and good ingredients to Antidotes: its ſeed is much celebrated for exciting of venery, it cures the dolours of the Liver and Spleen, proceeding from a cold cauſe, if it be taken in wine. *Vires.*

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Of Viscus Quercinus, or of Misselto of the Oak.

THere are three sorts of *Misselto*; one whereof is (as they say) Collachrymated out of black Camelæon Thistle, about the rising of the Dogge Starre, which according to *Pliny*, *Scribonius*, and *Hesichius* is venenate, and by them named *Ixia*; the second is Malacticall extracted from the berryes, to take and hold Birds, which is made of Holly-bark elixated, sepulted in mud, putrifyed, brayed and washed in water, till the bark be separated, and the glew alone remain.

The third sort is, as it were, one Plant growing upon another, no part of the same; the earth brings it not forth, nor yet is it produced by sature, but fruticates and growes upon an aliene Plant, whose leafe fades not, nor vigour failes: it growes not onely on one Tree, but many very dissimilar, as Oakes, Apple-Trees whether domestick or wild, Willowes, Poplar and many more.

These very seldome exceed a cubit in heighth, but they extend themselves laterally, with many short, geniculated, ligneous and dilutely green boughs, with long, broad, striated and somewhat flave leafes; round, white and splended berries grow on their genicles; whereon Thrushes, Stock-Doves and the like, feed in Winter. They have no roots unlesse the fibres and boughs of the Viscigerous Trees be their roots. It is fabulous that this viscum will not grow, unlesse the seed, whereof they say it is produced, be intermitted through the belly of some Bird.

And it is as ridiculous that *Athenæus* writes, If, saith he, a Stock-Dove eat the seed of this viscum, it will grow upon what ever tree she exonerates her belly, for it springs neither from seed nor dung, but from the sudour of that Tree whereon it growes, but that is best that growes on Oakes.

It calefies with some acritude and amarity; yet it is of that rank of simples which requires some time before it exerts its calefactive quality. After application it discusses, mollifyes, and attracts; mixed with Waxe and Rosine it drawes lumps, impost-humes, and other swellings to maturity, and is very good against the Epilepsy. *Vires.*

CHAP. LXXXIIII.

Of Poplar.

THe *Poplar* Tree is threefold; one is white, the second black, the third Lybian or tremulous, this last sort growes equally in dry and humid places; the other two are onely delighted with wet

wet ſoyles: the firſt ſort hath a craſſe, tall Caul, veſted with a ſmooth white bark, its leafs are broad, incided, angulous, tremulous, like tuſſilage, ſmooth and green above, lanuginous and white beneath, adhering to a long pedicle.

The black Poplar doth ſooner erect it ſelf on high, with a craſſe, ſmooth and white Caul; a round, long, hederaceous leaf appended on a long ſmall pedicle; it emits long down, and a kind of a Cluſter, whereon ſome grains like round Pepper adhære, which drawing to maturity, fall off before they deliſce.

The firſt buds this tree emits, which are the rudiments of future leafs, are long and acute, full of ſome fat, oleous, and reſinous matter, which is ſubflave, and adheres to the fingers of the Tangents. Apothecaries call them *oculus populi*, which excerpe in the beginning of the Spring, bruiſe, and recond in a figuline veſſel with ſwines greaſe till *June*, for the confecture of the poplar Unguent: Bees collect a kind of *Lachryma* of its leafs, wherewith they make their propoly.

The Lybian tremulous or mountain Poplar, varies little from the black in ſuperficies, but its leafs are harder, leſſer, more profoundly ſerrated and adherent to a longer pedicle; and therefore more obvious to motion by the wind, which by their colliſion make a noiſe; ſome think this is *Ceris*, but that ſeems by *Theophraſtus* his deſcription to be the ſame that we call *Judas*-tree.

Black Poplar Gemmes or eyes, are onely uſurped for *Pharmacy*, and they are calefactive and ſiccative, by the tenuity of their parts inciding and mollifying: their Leafs participate of the ſame faculties, but in a more imbecill degree, brayed and illited with vinegar, they cure the podagrical dolour. *Vires.*

Whether Poplars lachrymate into the river *Padus*, there making Amber by their coition, as *Dioſcorides* and many of his followers believe, we ſhall hereafter determine it.

SECT.

SECT. V.

Of Refrigerative Simples.

THe best Medicaments do not grow in every Region, but some in Hot, and others in cold: here Corn, and there Grapes; those Regions which look towards the Meridian, and the Æstuous Aspect of the Heaven do bear Hot Simples: But these that are towards the North, Cold. And whilest those Physitians that inhabit Forraign Climates, viz. Asia *and* Africa, *do Investigate or find out the Vertues of their Simples for their healths and safety; Let us view our Field of Plants which they want, which indeed are endowed with most admirable vertues. How many Simples have we, which will not grow in* Egypt, *or* China, *or in any other place under the Pole-antartick;* Europe, *besides those Calefactives, wherewith it is Luxuriant, produces many Refrigeratives. Amongst which, we shall onely handle such as are mentioned in the Compositions in our Shop.*

CHAP. I.

Of Mandrake.

I Hitherto thought that all that I heard of *Mandrakes* were no more then old Wifes fables, yet I now find that these figments have been depromed from the writings of some of the ancients, who being too credulous have committed to presse what the imperite somniated: for some of the Greeks named this root *Circea* because they Judged it some *Philthrum* conducing to love-matters. *Pythagoras* called it *Anthropomorphon* because it in some wise represented mans Trunk and Members, and because its roots were frequently geminell, resembling two Leggs, and two Buttocks; in allusion to which name the septentrionall idiome calls it *Mandragora*, *Man* denoting a man, and *Draghen* in that Language mans form: but all these are fabulous and fictitious, whereby running circulatours deceive the incautious, circumducing a bifidous root, whereon they have insculpted a humane shape and discriminated members. Of which root they tell admirable and incredible storyes, that they may extort money from idlots.

Some call it the dogs Apple-Tree, others the earths Apple-Tree, because it bears round luteous Apples like the yolks of hard eggs which are odorate, but venenate withall.

There are two sorrs thereof, the one masculine or white, which the Greeks call μάρσον, some *Arsen*, and others *Hypoplomon*; with great leafes like Bete, large and smooth. The

The other fæminine or black, which emitts more anguſt leafes like Lettice but leſſer, ſomwhat hirſute and procumbent; it beares Apples like the maſculine, but leſſer and lutrouſly palleſcent: it hath often two or three roots, mutually convolved and intorted; which are black without, white within, carnoſe, long and craſſe.

Mandrake is very impatient of ſolar heat, it fruticates beſt in umbrous and aprique places; whence many learned authours think its derive its nomenclature, becauſe it delights in *Mandris*, that is, in Caves and Dens.

In *Dioſcorides* his time the ſucce of *Mandrake* was collected; which concreted by inſolation was of much uſe, now we onely uſe its Roots and Leafes, and them very ſeldome, and onely in ſuch affections as contemne more gentle ſtupefactives.

An oyle may be extracted out of its Apples by infuſion, as we have ſhewed in our officine; which prudently adhibited will take away any dolour and conciliate ſleepe.

Mandrake is ſeldome aſſumed at the mouth; but ſome other ſoporiferous medicament, duely caſtigated, which would without danger conſopite the ſenſes, ſhould be given in its ſtead to ſuch as would be burned or cutt in any part without ſenſe of dolour: for *Mandrake* is not onely impenſely cold, but alſo narcoticall, and therefore cannot be ſafely uſed without great care and prudence, for *Aetius* enumerates it amongſt poyſons, (*C.* 45. *Lib.* 4 *Serm.* 1). *Mala inſana melongena.*

There is a Plant that hath ſome cognation with *Mandrake* which beares Apples of a cæruleous purple colour, about the magnitude of an egge, which ſome call inſane Apples, others Melongena, and ſome love-Apples, they grow on a pedall furcle, amicted on both ſides with leafes like *Night-ſhade*, from whoſe middle upwards, white flowers emerge, whereunto theſe Apples ſucceed which are carnoſe, ſucculent, and prægnant with ſmall graines; ſome uſe them in acetaryes, not without danger to their ſanity.

CHAP. II.

Of Nightſhade.

THere are many varieties of *Nightſhade*; the firſt according to *Dioſcorides* is ſative and domeſtick, which *Theophraſtus* reposes amongſt Pot-herbs; but now it is neither eaten nor ſowen, but growes and germinates ſpontaneouſly, againſt the Gardners will; it beares black-berryes, whence the french call it Morella, the ſhopmen Solatrum, and the Greeks *Strychion*. *Species.* *Morella*

It is a pedall and racemous Plant, with leafes like oxymum, but greater; black berryes, racemouſly coherent, which at firſt are green, after maturity, black; purpureous and elegant flowers præcede theſe, out of whoſe middle erupts a luteous and ſpecious tuft

It

It is exceedingly refrigerative, and therefore cures the Wild-fire and Head-aches from a hot cause; it helpes a hot Stomack its berries are accessary to the unguent of Diapompholigos; its stillatious liquor cures the inflammation of the eyes and ardour of other parts, and being stupefactive conciliates sleep.

There is another dormitory *Nightshade* which is exceedingly soporiferous, it is a ramous Plant, with hard fruit, many large leafes, somwhat hirsute, and effigiated like them of Quince-Trees its root is red without, and whitish when it is dry; its flower is large somwhat red, and of an ingratefull aspect, out of whose cavity, a round fruit, about the magnitude of a Cherry emerges, which presently kills its introsumers; it is more soporiferous then opium it self; it fruticates in many wild and incultivated places, especially in banks not farre distant from the sea, whence botanicks call it marine *Nightshade*; shopmen, Solatrum.

The third sort is the furious and lethall *Nightshade*, which some call *Thryoron*, others *Perisson*; it beares leafes like Rocket, but greater, acceding near them of Beares-foot; its caules are many, tall, and specious; its flowers, blackish: whereunto racemous, black, round fruits prægnant with ten or twelve stones succeed: it is thought to be the same that many call *Daryon* or *Dorcynion*. Some think there is no difference betwixt *Nightshade* that is onely somniferous, and that, that is lethall; but perite Herbalists find much of discrimination.

The fourth sort is arboreous and ligneous, called by some Dulcamare, which Vine-like climbs up shrubs and hedges, with leafes and surcles like Smilax, but harder and blacker; with purpureous, violaceous and inverted flowers; out of whose middle a luteous tuft emerges, to which small succulent and venenate berryes succeed.

Another Plant which some call *Uva Lupina*, others *Aconitum*, *Pardalianches*, and others the herb *Paris*, which *Gesnerus* calls *Monococcorn*, and *Pena* stinking *Nightshade*, is by the common suffrage of many writers justly referred to the number of *Nightshade*, none whereof are at any time used by medicks save the Garden *Nightshade*, and that but seldome; for that is an ill medicine which threatens more of danger then cure.

There is yet another Plant which by its effigy and virtue challenges affinity with the *Nightshades*, some call it Stramonium or better *Strychmonium*, some *Lycopersium*, others *Metel*, and others *Hyoscyamus*, *Peruvianus*, and *Baryococcalon*; whereof there are two sorts; the one greater, which in procerity exceeds a mans heighth; the other lesser, which is bicubitall, both of them alike in effigies, both bearing great, white flowers like Smilax, crasse spinous and echinated apples; the lesser beares rotund ones, the great acuminated, whose leafes and all other parts are greater then the other.

There

There is yet another Plant which hath cognation with the *Nightshades*; which some call pomiferous *Nightshade*, some *Lycopersicum*, for it beares Apples of an aureous croceous colour, which Herbalists call the wonderfull and the golden Apples; some would reduce *Pliny's Ammonum* to *Nightshade*; but the disparity of their effigies and natures, evidences the contrary. *Pomiferum*

CHAP. III.

Of Alkekengi, or Winter-Cherryes.

THe second sort of *Nightshade*, is *Dioscorides* his *Halicacabus*, which Apothecaryes, following the *Mauritanian* word, call *Alkekangi*; whereof we treat distinctly, because of its excellent uses. It is from the figure of its graines, which invested in a certain membraneous involucre resemble a bladder, called the vesicary *Nightshade*: it growes, and fruticates plenteously in squalid places as amongst Vines, emitting cubitall, slender, round subrubrous and geniculated caulicles; its leafes are like *Nightshade*, but something greater; its flowers are somwhat white, to which husks like bladders succeed, which at first are green, afterwards Phæniceous; in whose continent, round grains of the magnitude effigies and colour of Cherryes are included: which grains are carnous and turgid with plain, round and whitish seeds. *Solanum vesicarium:*

These fruits are well known to very boyes who call them Winter-Cherryes, who eat frequently, and innoxiously a great quantity thereof: they wonderfully conduce to the motion and protrusion of urine and sand out of the reines and bladder. *Vires:*

CHAP. IIII.

Of Henbane.

HEnbane is by some called *Herba suilla*, because Swine eating thereof are in a manner convelled; others call it *Altercum* and *Apollo* his hearb, because such as are madded with *Henbane*, torment themselves with brawling and altercations, as if they were excited by *Phœbus* his fury. *Matthiolus* saw some boyes, who by eating *Henbane* seed were so desipient, that many thought they were deluded by the Devil.

There are three sorts of *Henbane*, the black, the white and the luteous, the black hath long hirsute and broad leafes like long-wort, laciniated like beares-foot; cubitall, crasse, brachiated and ramous caules, out of whose middle pallescent flowers doe erupt; to which certain ventricose, long, round, and supernally aculeated cups do succeed, like small boxes or scales, dissepted with little fences, wherein small dusky and obscure seed is contained, its root is white, crasse, easily eradicable, vivacious for a

yeares ſpace, very uſefull and anodynous, not ſo foetid as its leafes.

The two other ſorts of *Henbane* are rare, no where to be found ſave in Gardens; which are alſo as rarely uſed in medicine, whereas the uſurpation of the black is quotidian: all of them refrigerate in the third degree, and all of them are narcoticall, but the white neither refrigerates nor ſtupefies ſo much as the other.

CHAP. V.

Of Poppy.

THere are two generall kinds of *Poppy*, the one *Hortenſian*, the other *Sylveſtrian*, there are many varietyes of the *Hortenſian* deſumed from the various colour, denſity and figure of their flowers, thus one is ſimple, another multiflorous, then both either white, or purpureous, or red: the ſylveſtrian alſo is variouſly diſcriminated, as the red the black, the ſpumous and the corniculated wild *Poppy* which is fourfold; one common and luteous, another violaceous, and other two Phæniceous.

Luteum. The ſative *Poppy* erects it ſelfe upon bicubitall ſurcles, with long and pallid leafes circually ſerrated, and adhærent to no pedicle, with either white or red flowers according to the variety of the Plant, with rotund and long heads: in whoſe cells black ſeed is contained, if the Plant be black; white, if it be white.

Erraticum. The erraticall or red *Poppy* is called μηκὼν ῥοιὰς or fluid, becauſe its flower is ſo deciduous; its leafes are incided and ſharpe like Rocket leafes, its flower red, and ſeed yellow, it growes in fields amongſt ſegetives.

Spumeum. The ſpumeous was unknown to *Matthiolus*; the later writers take it for hedge Hyſſop, aud ſome for Sopewort.

Corniculatum. The corniculated *Poppy* hath ſubalbid leafs, ſerrated about like the red *Poppy*, luteous flowers, a ſmall fruit, or cod, inflected like a horn, like the cornicle of fennigreek.

The multiflorous, fimbriated, patulous, and roſeous *Poppyes* of various colours are ſtudiouſly ſown in cultivated and fat Gardens for the elegancy of their flowers.

All of them are indued with a refrigerative faculty, the red moſt, ſo that none can uſe that alone, as they may do the ſative, all of them alſo participate of an hypnoticall quality, but the black moſt, which is infeſted alſo with ſome malignant quality, ſo that he that uſes it immoderately will become lethargicall.

Poppy vulnerated will emit a certain gummeous liquor, which the Ancients named κατ' ἐξοχὴν ὄπιον & ὄπιον, which opium ſtupifies the ſenſes, conciliates ſleep, and appeaſes the immanity of any dolour, or at leaſt deludes it, whereof ſuch as followed the Turkiſh tents made uſe; that they might be more chearfull to battel, and like drunken men præcipitate themſelves upon perills.

It is not yet determined amongst medicks in what degree, *Opium* participates of the first qualities; for whereas excellent writers assent that it is cold above the third degree, its very amaritude and acrimony, wherewith it disturbs and vellicates the senses gustative, demonstrates the contrary, which detorted from others the confession of its calidity. *Opii qualitates.*

CHAP. VI.

Of Sempervives or House-leeks.

THe vulgarity call it *Sedum Lombarda*, the Greeks *Aizoon*, the Romans *Sempervivum*, because it is alwayes green, with eternall leafes, most patient of cold, which withers not with the greatest Rigidity that Winter tempests bring upon the Earth. *House-leek.*

It growes in dry places exposed to the Sun, as on Walls, and the tops of your Cottages, with crasse carnose and mucronated leafes like Artichock, succulent and green, denser near the root with a pedall caul, vested to the top with leafes disposed like scales, when it is divided into wings, and coronated with green and subrubeous flowers.

There are many varieties of *Sempervives*, all which I reduce to three generall heads, the greater, the lesser, and the middle sort; if we have any respect to the name and effigies of the greater, we may referre the hearb *Aloes* thereunto, whose condition challenges cognation with this family; to the middle sort we may referr *Crassula* or the Greeks *Telephion*, which Apothecaryes call the inverted Bean, and the vulgarity *Orpine*; as also the militar *Aizoides* and the water-leeke: for both of them are pervivacious, perpetually green, and relate very much to *Houseleek*; and this is the middle betwixt the greater sempervive, and all the other which we shall now describe; and this *Sedum*, *Aizoon* is rather the medium then any other hortensian teretifolious esculent, which is mixed in Acetaryes, some call it little-leeke, others middle-leeke, the vulgarity *Triquemadame*: from a small root it emitts many gracile branches, onusted with small, long, round, carnose, and mucronated leafes, and lureous and stellated flowers.

There are very many lesser *Sempervives*, the least whereof the Greeks call ἀνδραχνὴ ἀγρία, the vulgarity Birds-bread, which many constitute the third sort of Small-leeke: it is a small and pleasant Plant, reptant with many branches, aureous and stellated flowers, it delights in walls, and saxous places; it is very hot to the gust, and exulcerative, whence the Germans call it Wall-Pepper.

The second sort of the lesser *Aizoon*, is by some called the lesser Crassula, by the Italians *Granellosa*; by Apothecaryes stone Crop and sometimes Wall-tayle; it is a small Plant, with round, long carnose leafes, mucronated like little Wormes; all depending on

exile and short branches, with pallid and sometimes white flowers which ingrede the composition of the martiate unguent, these two lesser *Sempervives* calefy and exulcerate notably.

The third sort is a greater sort of *Houseleeke* called summer Leeke, which assurges with greater surcles, round and carnose leafes like Stone-Crop, but greater; it flourishes no where perpetually but withers at the beginning of Winter.

Many other Plants which are perpetually folious and virid, do in effigies and faculties challenge cognation with *Sempervives*, and may justly be referred to their family as *Aizoon Hematoides*, *Aizoon Scorpioides*, a kind of Petrous, Montanous, and small *House-leeke*, another great and arboreous one, and another assurging like a shrub with small and rigid surcles.

The greater *Sempervive* refrigerates in the third degree, and is thence adapted to the cure of St. *Anthonyes* fire pimples and inflammations, some of the lesser refrigerate in a lesser degree, others efficaciously calefye and exulcerate, as Stone-Cropp, and so all Pepper.

CHAP. VII.

Of Cynogloſſe, or Doggs-tongue.

Cynogloſſe hath molliceous, lent, & long leafes, it is somewhat lanuginous, but not sharpe to the tact, cæruleously green, in effigies and softnesse æmulateing a *Doggs-tongue*.

Its surcles are round, hoary, divided into wings, and cubitall, coronated with puniceous and purpureous flowers; four small, cohærent seeds which cleave to mens cloaths like burres succeed each flower; its root is crasse, in magnitude and colour like Wallwort, in odour almost soporiferous, whose use is celebrated in sharpe and thin fluxes, for it incrassates much, and refrigerates manifestly; whence women adhibite it to burnings; it is cold and dry in the second degree, indued with a cohibiting and incrassating faculty; and therefore it is the basis of those pills which bear its denomination, and are effectually præscribed to all diseases which arise from the fluidity of humours.

Vires.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Plantain.

Plantain is either aquaticall whereof there are three sorts, seldome or never used in *Pharmacy*; or terrestriall, whose usurpation in defending sanity, and profligating diseases is frequent, whereof *Dioscorides* constitutes two differences, the greater and the lesser; the greater comprehends three varieties, the vulgar, the hoary, and the roseous *Plantain*.

Species.

The

The vulgar hath craſſe, broad, and very green leafes like Bete; its caul is angulous, ſometimes cubitall; ſomtimes ſhorter, ſpicated at the top and prægnant with ſmall and copious ſeed, it growes in moiſt and lacunous places, and about high-wayſides.

The *Roſeous Plantain* is ſo called, becauſe it beares an herbid and patulous umbell compacted of many leafes, cohærent like a roſe, it is in other things very like the former.

The leſſer *Plantain* hath more anguſt, ſmaller, ſofter and more tenuious leafes, its caulicle is angulous, declined downwards; its flowers pallid, ſeeds ſmall, which grow upon the ſummityes of its ſurcles, the Apothecaryes call it Lanceolate, and lanceole becauſe its leafes are acuminated lance-wiſe, from its five diſtinct fibres or nerves, which it hath in its ſulcated leafes, it is ſometimes called Quinquenerve; and Septinerve, when beſides its five greater, two leſſer nerves emike in its leafes; ſome have depraved it of quinq nerve, and made it centinerve; others call it *Arnogloſſe* becauſe its leafes reſemble a Lambs tongue, but ſuch as beare rounder and lanuginous leafes are more ſpecially deſigned with that name.

Plantain is cold and dry in the ſecond degree, it aſtringes, condenſates, cohibites, abſterges, and thence conduces to the cure of pimples, St. *Anthonyes* fire, inflammations and all ſanguine eruptions; it ſtayes fluxes, cures the dyſentery and all belly fluxes, exarceats putretude, and roborates all parts. *Vires.*

CHAP. IX.

Of Knot-graſſe or Polygonum.

CEntinode or *Knot-graſſe* is ſo called from the frequency of its knotts, Seminall or *Polygonum*; from the multitude of its ſeed, it is ſomtimes called *Corrigiola*, ſometimes ſanguinary from ſtaying blood, and ſomtimes *Proſerpinaca*, or rather Serpinaca from its reptility; it is a low reptant hearb, with exile, copious, nodoſe and geniculated branches; leafes like Rue, but longer and ſofter under which much ſmall ſeed lyes with prævious and rubeouſly pallid flowers, it growes ſpontaneouſly in incultivated ſoyles and pathes, it dyes not by calcitration.

The maſculine *Polygonum* is refrigerative, aſtrictive, and ſpiſſative, and thence it is prævalent againſt pimples, St. *Authonyes* fire, and all inflammations. *Vires.*

Its ſucce imbibed by the mouth, allayes all red or bloody flouors and excrements; and ſtayes the impenſe flux of the belly.

It is alſo good againſt the ardour of the ſtomack, and the bitings of venenate animalls.

The other ſort of *Polygonum* or *fæminine centinode* aſſurges on one caule like a ſlender reed, or rather the herb horſe-tayle, with

denſe

denſe genicles, which are orbicularly circumveſted with ſlender leafes like them of itch-Tree; it growes in watry places.

There is alſo a marine *Knot-graſſe*, neither known nor uſed by medicks; ſome, deceived with the affinity of the words, take *Polygonum* for *Poligonatum*, and on the contrary; but they are very diſſimilar in form; for *Poligonatum*, or *Solomons* Seale, is a cubitall Plant with a rigid and crooked caule; a craſſe nodoſe root.

CHAP. X.

Of Comfrey.

Species. THere are three greater *Comfryes*, the firſt is *Alam* or the vulgar, which they call great *Comfrey*; the ſecond, the *Tuberous*; the third the *Maculous*: there be alſo three middle ones, the *Petræan*, the *Bugulous*, and *Prunella*, but many ſmall ones, as all the Bellides which the vulgarity calls *Margarits*, whereof there are many varietyes, which are rather coronary then *Medicinall*.

The greater *Comfrey*, which from the ſimilitude of its leafes is called Aſſes eare, hath a cubitall caule, ample, long, broad craſſe and hiſpid leafes like Bugloſſe, but broader, more obſcure and mucronated; out of the wings of its ſurcles erupt productions of Leafes, wherein white pallid or ſubrubeous flowers grow, which are diſpoſed in an elegant order, whereunto black ſeeds like them of petty Mullein do ſucceed; its root is glutinous, black without, white within, whereof there is frequent uſe in *Pharmacy*.

Vires. *Comfrey* refrigerates, contracts, aſtringes, and condenſes, cohibits St. *Anthonyes* fire, cures broken bones; ſtayes the flux of blood, eaſes the dyſentery; and is ſo efficacious in conſolidating wounds, that if it be cocted with fleſh, it conglutinates its parts together.

The maculated *Comfrey* which moſt call *Pulmonary* or Lung-wort hath branches, leafes, and flowers like the præcedent, onely its leafes are ſhorter, and maculated with white ſpots, it growes in wooddy, opaque, and umbrous places, and it is thought good againſt the vices of the Lungs.

The *Petræan Comfrey* which is ſo called becauſe it growes in *Petrous* and ſtony places, erects it ſelfe with ſmall and ſlender branches like Origanum; with ſmall Leafes, heads like Thyme; and a ruddy, long, and craſſe root, ſome think that this Sympythum is Bugle, but being lignous and odorated and capitulated like thyme, it differs much from Bugle.

Bugle is a certain middle kind of Sympythum; of which the paſt age knew, and prædicated many and admirable things: the vulgarity yet perſwading themſelves, that they need neither Medick, nor Chirurgeon that have bugle, which they thence call Sanikle; its leafes are craſſe, long, ſmall, mucronated, incided about, and ſubrubrous, its caules quadrangular, and ſomewhat hirſute

hirsute; its flowers cæruleous, and many even from the middle of the furcles upwards: some call it *Morandola*; some, *Laurentina*; and others, the middle Comfrey: it is a vulnerary, and is much commended to disrupted, broken, bruised and convelled members.

Prunella or *Brunella*, which some adde to the Tribe of Comfreys, is a low plant, with slender, quadrangular, hirsute and decumbent furcles; broad, mucronated, but short, somewhat hispid, obscurely virid, viscid and fat leaves; cæruleously purpureous flowers, erupting out of the summities of its furcles, in ears like Betony flowers, it is good for the same, that *Bugle* pollicitates; it deleates the blackness of the tongue contracted by Feavers, if the mouth be washed with its decoction.

CHAP. XI.

Of Sorrell.

Dioscorides enumerates Sorrell amongst the sorts of *Lapathum*, not because their sapour seems to be similar, which is in *Lapathum* somewhat sweet or rather insipid, and in Sorrel acid, whence it is called *Oxalis*; but because its leafs are mucronated like them of *Lapathum*.

Sorrel is sufficiently known to all; and it is of two sorts, the one wild, which is least, and most acid; growing copiously in sabulous, macilent, and segetary places; which the *Hollanders* call *Acetosa vervecina*; other, *Vineta*. *Species.*

The other is greater, which delights in humid places, as in Meadowes, and many Gardens, whereof there are two varieties, one alwayes hortensian and reptant, very dissimilar to the rest in effigies; for its leafs are round, and its colour subcineritiously virid; its sapour indeed is acid like the rest, but more grateful to the palate: the other is well known, which is understood alwayes when Sorrel is put absolutely; this is from its great and sacred effects called sometimes sacred or holy grasse.

Oxalis brings to my mind the herb *Oxytriphilum*, or sower trifoile, which the vulgarity calls Cuckow-bread; the Apothecaries, *Alleluga*; *& Fracastorius*, *Lugula*: it is a low plant growing in the beginning of the Spring in sylvous places, with slender and short Caulicles, on whose summities three, tenuious, virid, acid, and grateful leafs do inside; its flowers consisting of white leafs coherent, do depend on short pedicles; this little herb recreates the heart, exarceates putretude, and refrigerates; its water distilled helps in continual and pestilent Feavers.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Of Oxylapathum, or Sowerdock.

LEst confusion should bring obscurity upon the dignotion of these Simples, I shall constitute the difference betwixt *Lapathum*, and *Hippolapathum*, *Hydrolapathum*, *Oxylapathum*, and sanguineous *Lapathum*. *Lapathum* simply so called, is a pot-herb, expetible for culinary matters, which the Cooks call *Patience*; the Herbalists, *Parella*.

Hippolapathum is either latifolious, or rotundifolious; both cultivated, and called Monks Rhabarb, and sometimes *Pseudo-Rhabarbe*.

Hydrolapathum is twofold, great and small, both like the precedent, which grow onely in fenny and watry places.

Oxylapathum growes copiously in incultivated places, with a long and crasse root, flave within, and croceous without; a bicubitall and brachiated furcle; green and broad seed, depending on very minute pedicles and involved in thin membranes of a yellow colour.

Some call *Sanguineum* or maculated *Lapathum* very inconsiderately Dragons blood, as we shall shew in its place.

Sorrel is a kind of *Lapathum*, as also that hearb, which some, upon what grounds I know not, call slow *Henry*, which I think is a spinaceous wild Pot-hearb.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Hepatica, Hepatorium, and Eupatorium, or Agrimony.

PErite Herbalists doe thus distinguish of *Hepatica*, *Hepatorium*, and *Eupatorium*. *Hepatica*, is liver-wort; *Hepatorium*, is the vulgar *Eupatorium*; and the true *Eupatorium*, is Agrimony: these three, being accommodated to the roboration and cure of the Liver, are frequently and rightly called *Eupatoryes*.

Liver-wort

Hepatica is often called *Lichen* either because it is the best remedy against Ring-Wormes, or else because it lickes stones, its leafe is succulent and crasse adhæring to a moist and umbrous Rock, under which little caulicles in forme of pedicles emitt stellated heads, it is absterstive, refrigerative.

Hempe-like Agrimony.

Hepatorium doth from its root which is of a moderate magnitude exert bicubitall and ramous furcles, circumvested with long Canhabine leafes, serrated about; with small, muscous and ruddy flowers, which having coronated its fair umbell, wither and turne into pappe or down.

Eupatorium or Agrimony, is a fruticous plant very like Wild-tansey, but that its leaves are more virid, divided into more parts,

and

and more ſerrated and hirſute; its caule is ſlender, ſtreight, cubitall and pilous; out of ſeverall parts whereof ſmall luteous flowers emerge, whereunto ſmall ſeeds ſharpe on one ſide, whereby they adheære to wollen cloaths, do ſucceed. Agrimony, was called *Eupatorium* from *Eupator* its inventer, it attenuates, expurges, and peculiarly helpes the Liver and other bowells.

Meſue (which I would not omitt) uſurpes another hearb which is cubitall and very amare, with leafes like the leſſer Centory, ſharpe and ſerrated about, for *Eupatorium*; we call that Hearb the Hearb *Julia*, the Greeks call it *Ageratum*.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Primeroſe.

THe various denominations of this vulgar hearb have obſcured its dignotion; for I find it called, *Primiveria*, *Primeroſe*, St. *Peters* hearb, the Paraliticall and Arthriticall hearb, *Phlomis*, Brachula Caculi, *Tuſculane* violet, white Betony, and petty Mullein, but let the inane inveſtigation of the nomenclature be omitted ſeeing the thing it ſelf is perſpicuous. It is called *primula veris*, or *Primeroſe*, becauſe it flouriſhs and germinates as ſoon as the very ſpring approaches: there are three generall differences thereof, the hortenſian, pratenſian, and nemorall; the hortenſian or garden *Primeroſe* is either ſimple, or multiflorous, both their flowers are either green or luteouſly pallid; they that grow in Meadowes and Woods are alike as to leafes, diſſimilar in flowers, for the pratenſian flowers are croceous, ſmall, and almoſt inodorate, the nemoralls pallid more patulous and odorate.

Primeroſe is multifolious, whoſe leafes are rugoſe like Betony, but longer broader and more pallid, out of whoſe centre ariſe long and ſlender pillars, in whoſe ſummities three foure or five ſubluteous and penſile flowers whoſe extremities are denticulated, do dehiſce, ſomtimes one only flower growes upon an exile pedicle.

I have noted ſix varietyes differenced by the colour of their flowers, for ſome are herbaceous green and elegant, others white and vetuſt; ſome red; others aureous, and others ſubflave; beſides ſome are onely coronated with a ſimple flower, others are ſo prolifically multiflorous, that one flower ſeems to grow out of another, that which produces a ſimple and luteous flower, growes copiouſly and ſpontaneouſly, in many places in the lower *Neuſtria*, eſpecially in the Vallonian field, where many rare Plants make their provent. *Paralyſ.*

It helpes much in paralyticall and arthriticall dolours.

The decoction of its root will expediate from the infarctures of the Reines, protrude Sand, and expell the ſtones of the bladder. *Vires.*

CHAP. XV.

Of Cabbage or Garden Colewort.

Cabbage which the Greeks call Crambe; is so vulgar that it were supervacaneous with much labour to prosecute its designation; seeing it is sowen, planted, and cultivated in every Nation and place for esure: yet all its kinds do not flourish in every Region, but some require this, others that soyle, whence some are called *Sabaudæ*, because they delight most in that Tract, which are patulous, not occluse, green without, and white within; others marine, because they grow spontaneously in maritimous soyles; others *Cauliflowers*, and Italian *Cabbages*, which grow onely in *Italy*, or spring from Italian seed; others vulgar which fruticate plenteously in all places; others Caulorape, which are turbinated from the middle of the caule upwards, and Bulbous.

Furthermore many varieties may be desumed from the conglomeration, incisure, plainenesse, lævity, asperity, whitenesse, viridity, rubeding, and obscurity of their leafes; as also from their crisped, racemous, laciniated or sessile heads, which are rather for looks then Apothecaryes, except the Sea *Cabbage* which is altogether medicamentall.

Vires. *Cabbage* generates crasse and melancholicall succe, and is thought to inebriate the head, whence the *Germanes* do so much desire it; the red one is pectorall, and præferred before the rest in confecting ecclegmes.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Flebane.

Psyllium is a pulicary hearb so called from the effigies of its seed, it growes in fallow ground and ditches, with long angust and hirsute leafes like Crowfoot, its Corne begins at the middle of its caule, with spicated heads cohæreing like scales, at the foot of the leafes, out of which small, pallid, and lanuginous flowers, erupt; whereunto small black and splendent seeds succeed, which clemently mollify and subduce the belly.

Vires. It is refrigerative in the second degree, and symmetricall as to humectation and siccation according to *Galen*. *Dioscorides* and *Pliny* also affirme that it is thus refrigerative; so that I cannot but admire that *Mesue* should say that it is indued with a sharpe ulcerative and poysonous quality, but I beleive, he præcipitantly wrote this from the relation of some other man, or else excerped it out of some lying book, or rather that some changed what he wrote most truely: its quality and use is more safe then *Mesue* his writeings do patifie.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Tussilage or Colts-foot.

THe Romans call this Plant *Tussilago*, the Greeks *Bechion*, from that speedy help and utility it affords the Coughers and anhelant: Apothecaryes call it Colts-foot, because its leafes do a little resemble a horses hoofe; the inferiour part whereof is tomentous and white, the superiour green.

Its caule is so short, scarce æqualling a palme in length, that some thought it grew without a caule; its flower is luteous, rudiated, and aureous like Sow thistles flowers which erupts in *February* or *March* before the egression of its leafes, which standing a few dayes dehisces into dawn, its root is slender, white, and geniculated, delighting in moist places and River brinkes.

Its faculty hath respect unto cough and anhelations; it is also credited that its fume in a Tobacco-Pipe will break an impost-hume in the breast. *Vires.*

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Hops.

THere is a scansory Plant, which creepes up to the summityes of Trees, which we call Hop-Tree.

It growes spontaneously in Hedges and Meadow sides with sharpe leafes like Cucumber, or triangular like Briony; wherewith it encompasses shrubs; its flowers are subalbid, herbaceous, compacted of many folicles, scale-wise disposed, and racemously pendent, wherein a small seed is contained; the Belgians much estimate this fruit, for with this and their fruits they make up their drink, as we do our Beer: its tender branches, in the beginning of the spring cocted may be eaten with butter or oyle and vinegar like Sperage or sallets.

It refrigerates moderately, moves Choller, diduces the passages, removes obstructions, moves urine, cures the Jaundice, exacts Phlegme and hydropicall humours; and allayes the heat of the Stomack. *Vires.*

CHAP. XIX.

Of Bistort.

B*Istort* is so denominated from its intorted and convolved radicles; some take it for Dragon-wort, others for wild Bete; some say; but without ground or reason, that it is the Arabian

Bean; others more tolerably call it *Britannica*; of whose family we constitute it; for it differs from it onely in the colour of its root; for they are both very like in forme and faculties. *Britannica* doth with a peculiar faculty respect, stomacate and sceletyrbe, which maladyes much molest the *Germanes*, and Septentrionall incolists; the like whereof hapned upon *Cæsars* Souldiers when they came beyond *Rhene*, who there finding a River, drunk of the water, which within two dayes caused their teeth to fall out, and resolved the joynts of their knees; but the herb *Britannica* will help such as are thus infested.

Bistort doth from its nodose, intorted & rubescent root, emit long, broad, acuminated and venous leafes, green above, and somwhat white beneath; round cubitall or shorter caules, circumvested with little leafes from the middle upwards, and adorned with purpureous flowers, its seed is small and triangular like that of Sorrell.

Vires. Its root is most used in *Pharmacy*; which is inodorate, refrigerative, and astrictive; it roborates the internalls, exarceates putretude, resists poyson, and cures pestilent diseases.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Strawberry-Bush.

Fragaria is perpetually green, never devoid of leafes, it depends upon no Caule, onely its radicles emit slender and lanuginous pedicles, some whereof bear onely leafes, others flowers and fine leafes, others like fibres creep along the ground, and germinate; for where ever they touch ground, there they radicate, and ministrate a new Plant; there are three, oblong, broad, serrated leafes like them of *Cinquefoile*, on each pedicle, an herbaceous lump erupts after the occasion of the flowers, which augments by little and little, and becomes white, when it attaines maturity it is red, like a Mulberry; it is candid, soft, medullous, vinose, humid, gratefull and sweet to the gust, referted with minute grains, which we call *Strawberries*.

Its root is fibrous, capillated and blackish; neither it nor the leafes of this Plant are much celebrated for *Medicinall* uses; though it accede the confection of the *Martian unguent*; for the commendable quality of this whole Plant, is in its fruit, as of Rose-trees in their flowers, *Mulabathrum* in its leafe, and Ginger in its root: it growes spontaneously in Woods and umbrous places but flourishes more in Gardens, and beares greater and sweeter berryes.

Vires. *Strawberryes* refrigerate, quench thirst, and nourish the body for a while, their water destilled, deleates the spots of the face, expurges it, and makes it fairer.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

Of Cinquefoile.

THis herb is so denominated from the number of its leafes; it emitts from one root many, pedall, festucaceous furcles, with luteous and fugaceous flowers on their summityes, like them of wild Tansey; each pedicle beares five oblong flowers crenated about like a Saw, the whole Plant is somwhat hirsute and whitish, its root long, blackish without and ruddy within; it growes spontaneously about the margins of fields.

There is another sort of *Cinquefoile*, with great crenated leafes, green above, and white and lanuginous below; there is a third also which is reptile, whose branches are slender and imbecill; leafes smooth and green; flowers luteous; and roots fibrous and exile: another sort growes in stagnant places, in leafes and magnitude very like the first with double darkly red flowers, which grow upon an head referted with many seeds.

Cinquefoile (whose root is most in use) allayes the inflammation of the jawes and asper artery, it stayes the belly flux and dysentery; in drink it cures the dolours of the hips and junctures, cures biles and scabs, discusses cowles on the neck, cohibites pimples, represses watry swellings; the succe of its root while young and tender, is good against the affections of the Liver and Lungs. *Vires.*

CHAP. XXII.

Of Gooſe-graſſe or Cleavers.

GOoſegraſſe hath either soft furcles and leafes, and is called *Mellugo*; or sharpe ones, and is called Asperugo, or Spargula and Asperula; for the whole Plant adhæres to the Cloaths of such as passe by, through its tenacious asperity; whence the Greeks call it *Philanthropon* and *Philadelphon*, *Pliny Lappago*.

Gooſegraſſe is a Plant growing besides hedges, ditches, and amongst thornes, adhæreing to vicine shrubs; with imbecill, obsequious, quadrangular furcles of many cubits length; with anguſt leafes decussated like Starres, and orbicularly cohæreing to the genicles of its furcles, as in Ruby to which it is very like: its flower is small and white; its seed hard, white, round, concave, in forme of a navil; whence some call it *Omphalocarpon*.

Gooſegraſſe is moderately extersive and desiccative, the succe of the whole Plant drunk in Wine, auxiliates against the biteings of Spiders and Vipers; the Plant infused therein cures the eares aches, its leafes brayed and collected in Wine-Lees discusse swellings in the neck. *Vires.*

Gallion is very like *Spargula*, or *Mollugo*, which is often put into milke to co-agulate it.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Scabiose.

SInce this Plant is neither that which *Dioscorides* calls *Scrobe*, nor that which *Aëtius* calls *Psora*, we cannot learn from the ancients what it is; however it is a Plant which is now for its frequency and excellent effects very well known: it beares long, broad, hirsute, and laciniated leafes, incided like Rocket; its root is simple and long; its Caule halfe a foot high, in whose summity growes a flower, made up of many leafes: whereof the circumambient are larger, the middle lesser, all of them with their pedicles are whitish,

There is another *Scabiose* called the lesser *Scabiose* scarce a hand high, which in flower, leafes, and colour responds to the former; a third also of a middle magnitude called *Ovilla*, whose leafes are more broad, long, hirsute and crenated about; and a fourth not very unlike the first, whose Caules are cubitall and folious, with cæruleously white flowers on their summityes.

Scabiose, it is believed, will cure the Scab, it purges the Lungs, cures the Cough and other pectorall affections, as also pestilent diseases: some think it is cold, others temperate, and exuberant in no quality.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of the Cotton-Tree or Plant.

GOssipium or *Xylon*, vulgarly called *Bombay*, is a cubitall, ramous and brachiated Plant, with leafes like the Vine-Tree, but lesser; luteous flowers, which leave little Nutts behind them or rather small Apples of the magnitude of round Aristolochy; which drawing to maturity spontaneously dehisce, and give free passage, to a certain soft, white dawen conceived and kept within them, together with copious seed like that of Cubebs, turgid with white pitch within, and black without: this dawen is of much use to men; the seed is onely Medicinall. *Gossipium*, which the Barbarians and Arabians call *Gotum*, growes in *Sicily*, and many moist places in *Italy*, and *Germany*, exposed to the Sun.

Vires. The Cotton-seed helpes the tussient, anhelant, and rabid; cureing many vices of the Lungs, Liver and Reins; its oyle extracted by expression, deleates the pimples and pustuls of ones face.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Hiſpidula or Æluropus, commonly called Catts-foot.

MAny Plants mutuate their denominations from ſome parts of animalls which they reſemble, thus we have, Hares-foot, Crow-foot, Lyons-foot, Calfes-foot, or *Aron*, Colts-foot, and Cats-foot, which from its tomentitious dawen, is ſomtimes called *Piloſella*, ſomtimes *Gnaphalium*, and often *Hiſpidula*.

It is a very ſmall Plant, with ſlender branches, growing in Hills and dry places expoſed to the Sun; it emitts pedall caulicles, with ſmall leafes, pretty red, and ſomtimes white flowers; all are lanuginous: yea the whole Plant ſeems to the tact and ſight nothing but dawen; eſpecially its flower which by its tomentitious haire wherewith it is veſted, reſembles a Catts foot, whence it got its denomination.

It is repoſed amongſt thoſe that refrigerate moderately, and aſtringe and agglutinate efficaciouſly, and therefore it is a good vulnerary: white is moſt uſed in ruptures and openings of veſſells, and affections of Lungs, which are cauſed by imbecillity or too much laxity, and impotency to contain blood, *Vires.*

The more recent have made a ſyrupe thereof, which they call ſyrope of Catts-foot, which they find and experience ſalubrious to pectorall vices, we have given its deſcription in our Antidotary.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Melilote.

THere are many kinds of trifoiles, whereunto the whole family of *Melilotes* are referred; for all of them have leafes, disjoined by three diviſures, all of them grow in one place, and participate of the ſame effigies; there are three ſorts of *Melilote*, the firſt is the vulgar, which in *France* growes amongſt ſegetives; the ſecond more rare, which beares white flowers, with leafes and ſurcles like the former; the third moſt rare becauſe peregrine, whoſe flowers are purpureous, ſomtimes cæruleous and elegant; it growes copiouſly in *Syria*.

The vulgar, which it is probable the Romans mean by their *Sertula*, diſperges many, pedall, and ſlender caulicles; leafes diſterminated with three inciſures like Trifoyle, or rather Fænugreeke ſomwhat fimbriated in their ambient, with luteous flowers like Peaſe-bloomes, coacted acervately in the forme of a ſpike; after whoſe occaſe ſhort, broad, and blackiſh cods do erupt, turgid with ſmall and pallid ſeed; ſome call it odorate trifoyle, others *Corona regia*, ſome Serta and Sertula Campana.

Melilote

Vires. *Melilote* seems to be indifferent, as to either refrigeration or calefaction, but it is manifestly astrictive; it allayes all inflammations, especially those of the Womb and Fundament if it be decocted and sod-wine, and applyed by way of liniment; it is peculiarly efficacious against a scald head, its succe instilled into the eare with sod wine cures its dolours, and allayes head-ach, if it be applyed with Rose-water.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Line.

Line denotes both the Plant and its Seed; the Plant and its bark compose the texture of Linnen-Cloath, the seed and its medulla compose medicaments; It is a Plant with exile and cubitall caulicles; long and acute leafes; cæruleous, and specious flowers; after whose occase which is speedy, small heads, gravidated with yellow, long, smooth and splendent seed, do erupt; it is not enumerated amongst esculents in *France*, and those regions where it growes plenteously; though the rusticks in *Asia*, brayed it, put honey to it, and fryed it frequently for their repast: however it be præpared, it is neither pleasant nor salubre, for it is averse to the stomack; and therefore we sow it for vestiments and medicaments, and not for Aliments.

Line and Fænugreeke have the same Faculties; it discusses and allayes inflammations whether within or without, its decoction cures the erosion of the matrix, and moves the belly; the oyle expressed out of its seed mitigates, mollifyes, deleates pimples, and emends the vices of the skin.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Fænugreeke.

Fænugreeke is a siliquous Plant emerging at first with one only Caule, which is afterward brachiated into many boughs and wings, its Leafes are like them of the *Meadow* trifoile, but rounder, lesser, more green above and subcineritious underneath, its flowers are small and whitish, after which arise long Cods crooked like Cornicles, wherein flave and angulous seeds like small Pease are contained, Hippocrates calls this Plant Epicetus, *Theophrastus, Buceras*; and *Dioscorides, Tellis*.

Vires. *Fænugreek* is emollitive and discussive, subacted with Vinegar and nitre it minuates the Spleen, mitigates heat with its lentour, made into a pultise with oxymel, it cures the podagry. *Galen* saith that it irritates fervent inflammations, but cures such as are lesse hott and more hard; its sapour and odour denunciate it calefactive though

though we referre it to that ranke that is refrigerative or rather temperate.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Red Cicers.

MAny kinds of Pulſe three are; ſome whereof are alimental, as Peaſe and Beanes; others medicamentall as vetches, whereof there are many ſorts, for ſome are ſative, others wild; the ſative ſeems to be the ſame with *Arietinus*, which *Dioſcorides* deſcribes onely nominally; whereof there is great plenty in *Italy*, which they there uſe not onely in medicine, but in meats alſo, it beares leafes like Peaſe leafes, but leſſer, with purpureous flowers, round cods, prægnant with many grains: ſome places produce onely white vetches which are much eaten; others onely black, or darkely purpureous, which are the beſt and moſt celebrated in Pharmacy.

There is another ſort of vetches which are wild, which in ſeeds differ little from the ſative, but in leafes much: both ſorts open the paſſages of the Reins, expell flowers and birth; augment milke, exterge, cauſe flatuoſity, and excite ſtiffeneſſe in the yard. *Vires.*

CHAP. XXX.

Of Orobus or the bitter-Vetch,

THat which the Apothecaryes call *Orobus*, the Greekes call *Eruum*: it is a kind of pulſe-like *Vetches*, growing in macilent places wherein it delights more then in fat ſoyle, for there it is more ſpeedily corrupted; there are two varietyes thereof, the one is white, ſweet and leſſe vulgar; the other yellow, which may be had in any Pharmacopoly; both according to *Dioſcorides* are well known to all, though many take wild *Vetches*, or Eruile which infeſt Corne, for the true *Orobus*.

But the domeſtick *Orobus* is ſowen and cultivated, it aſſurges with a cubitall or longer culme, geniculated, incurvated, concave, and a little ſtriated, with leafes and flowers like *Vetches*, round Cods grow upon its ſurcles, protuberant with three or four graines disjoyned with no membrane.

It deſiccates manifeſtly, but calefies ſo gently, that it ſeems to be temperate, it incides, exterges, removes and reſolves obſtructions; it is ſeldome or nevet introſumed, frequently adhibited; for its ſeed ingredes ſalves very frequently. *Vires.*

CHAP. XXXI.

Of Lupines.

Lupine seems to be a kind of Bean; for its Caule is streight, erect, Cave, somwhat tomentitious like a Beanes culme, onely it is round. Its singular and fibrous root emitts a Caule with branches alternately posited, with leafes qinquefariously dissected like them of *Staves-acre*, with white flowers thrice erupting betwixt the beginning of Summer and Autumne; after which, Cods lesser and plainer then Bean Cods emerge, each of them containing five or six round, compressed, and amare grains, white without and subluteous within.

Lupines are macerated for many dayes space in water till they demitt their amaritude, and then cocted before they be eaten, if they be illited or eaten with honey, or drunk in *Posca* they kill Wormes; their decoction cures *Morpheus*, scurfes, scabs, manginesse, and malignant ulcers, partly by digesting, partly by exterging and drying them without mordacity; cocted in Vinegar they discusse biles in the Neck, and imposthumes distilling from the head to the eyes, and makes the colour of skarres candid and white: though their amarity demonstrates that they are calid, nevertheless, they are justly reposed in this Section.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of Barley.

AS *Barley* is of cereals most usefull, so most notorious, whereof if we look at the time of its sature we have two sorts, one autumnall whose straw, spike, and graines are greater, the other vernall, which in all parts is lesse; the spike of each is circumvalled with beards and small leafes wherein is contained an oblong æquilaterall, and medullous grain.

Both the sorts of Spelt are referred to the family of *Barleys*, some call these segetives by the name soucrion vulgarly scourgeon which denotes its utility in succouring Nations; as also another kind of segetive which some call *Zeopyrum*, others bare *Barley*, which growes in *Cappadocia*: yea many reduce yet more cereals to this segetive, as *Olyra*, *Typha*, *Brisa*, *Eteocrithon*, and *Oryza* which they call distich *Barley*. *India* long agoe produced a kind of *Barley*, gratefull and salubre to man, but deletery to horses; for the same given to *Alexanders* Horses to eat, killed them at first; but mixing chaffe with it, it became innoxious. Another sort growes in *Thracia*, about *Gedropolis* which beasts would not touch; the cause whereof *Theophrastus* attributes to its ill odour, though a man cannot perceive it, when it is denudated of its shel; they call it Exasticum and Cantherinum.

Common

Common *Barley* refrigerates and exsiccates, being a little detersive, and hence *Barley-bread* stayes not long in the belly, nor yet gives much of nutriment; its flatuosity is deposed by elixation, and therefore Hippocrates would have it done in a *Ptisane*, that it may be longer cocted. *Vires.*

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of Rhus or Sumack.

Rhus it both the Latine and Greeke name of a shrub, and also of a fruit, whereunto Cooks adde *obsoniorum*, because it was frequently used in Kitchins and obsonies for Salt of old; but now it is only dedicated to Pharmacy, the *Mauritanians* call it *Sumach.*

It is an arbuscle growing & fruticating most copiously in petrous places, its Caule assurges three, four and somtimes five Cubits high, it is discriminated with many small boughes; its leafes, whose middle nerve or cost is red, cohære in clusters like ash-leafes, each whereof is oblong, late, serrated about, whitish; it emitts candicant flowers in *July*, which are racemously congested like them of *Lillax*; its small fruit with the seed which is small and red like that of *Lentills*, is mature in autumne, it is called *Rhus* coriaria, because it hath an excellent faculty in condensing hides; as also another Plant, thence called *Corinus coriaria*, which may be enumerated amongst the species of *Rhus.*

Sumach being very austere is astrictive and deficcative, it cohibites dysenteryes and fluxions, stayes womens flowers, and allayes the hemorrhoids, its leafes and fruit are exceedingly astrictive, they are dry in the third, and cold in the second degree. *Vires.*

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Myrtle.

Myrtle is either *silvestrian*, which growes and fruticates spontaneously in many hot regions, and incultivated places, or domestick which requires culture, whereof there are two sorts, the one lesser like Box-Tree, only its leafes are more acute like broome leafes, its berryes are black like Ivy; and it is gravidated with vineous succe, whence it is oft called black *Myrtle*, it is much celebrated for its gracious odour and perpetually florid colour, and diligently nourished in Gardens, and transplanted in figuline pots into houses windowes, and there custodited for delight and ornament.

There is a lesser sort called white *Myrtle*, which beares broader and longer leafes, then the former, whose colour is not so obscure,

but whitish, whence it is cognominated; by culture it somtimes assurges to the altitude of a moderate Tree, as we may see in some maritimous Gardens, both *Myrtles* emitt white and suaveolent flowers, out of which by due arta very fragrant stillatitious water may be extracted.

There growes about the Caule of *Myrtle* an unæquall, concolorate lump, which like a hand amplects its boughs. *Dioscorides* calls it *Myrtidanum*, but it is of no use, and therefore neither bought nor sold.

There is also another small wild *Myrtle*, which delights in sylvous, dry, macilent, and aprique places, bearing black, edible, and sweet berryes which many call *Vaccinia*, others give it fictitious names at will: in *Normandy* the vulgarity of *Æthiopians* that are called Mores, do from their blackness call them Morets.

Myrtle consists of contrary substances, the frigid prævailing over the calid, but participating much of tenuious calour; therefore according to *Galen* it deficcates so efficaciously.

Vires. Both its fruit and leafes may be successefully either assumed or adhibited; and it being astrictive, stayes excretions of blood, and bridles other profluent humours; their decoction helps laxated members, and broken bones that cannot endure ferrumination; many more commodityes doth *Myrtle* pollicitate, whereof see Dioscorides (*C.* 156. L. 1.)

CHAP. XXXV.

Of Millfoile or Yarrow.

MAny Plants do from the multiplicity of their Leafes and their multifarious incisures assume the name of *Millefoiles*, as *Achillea*, *Osyris*, and water *Strathiotes* which is like Houseleek growing only in Ægypt according to Pliny: as also *Strathiotes*, *Chyliophyllum*, and *Myriophyllum*, of which *Dioscorides* treats in two severall Chapters.

White leafed *Milfoile* hath a short caulicle, with leafes like the wings of young birds, in brevity and ruggednesse like wild Cumin, small white flowers upon a dense umbell like Dill, it growes by high-wayes in places not ploughed.

Vires. It is very usefull according to *Dioscorides* for inveterate and fresh ulcers, for issues of blood and fistulaes: whence the rusticks call it Carpentary or Carpenters hearb, some call it Souldiers hearb.

The sweet leafed *Milfoile* emits one slender Caule, out of one root, with innumerable, small, capillaceous leafes like fennell, its surcle is variously delineated as if it had been so wrought by art; it growes in meadowish, moist and fenny places.

It is astrictive, exficcatory and vulnerary; for it very much accelerates the cure and closure of wounds, drying, glutinating and

and vindicating them from inflammations; it is good also in cureing ulcers; it frenches blood specially.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of Tamarisk.

THey put an indignity upon *Tamarisk* that call it a shrub, seeing it assurges to a notable procerity, and acquires so much of crassitude, that cups and other vessells for the use of the spleenatick may be made of its trunk and boughs: yea, if we beleive *Columella*, Troughs have been excavated out of its trunks and filled with water that Hoggs might epote it, and so liberate themselves from the augmentation of the spleen, wherewith they frequently labour.

Tamarisk emits very many boughs, which are vested with frequent, exile, tenuious, round leafes exasperated as it were in their superficies with transverse and oblique lines, without incisures, its flowers are many mossy, tomentitious, white or somwhat purpureous occupying the summityes of its surcles, and at length evolating in dawen, its root is lignous and crasse, as the *Tamarisk* is in age.

Tamarisks are of two sorts, the one wild and sterile, which growes in many Woods, the other domestick, very like the former in effigies and faculties, which beares some seeds.

It is absterstive and incisive without any manifest desiccation; it is also somwhat astrictive, yet it admirably and by a speciall property helps an inducated, obstructed, and imbecill spleen, cures all affections proceeding from crasse and Melancholicall humours. *Vires.*

SECT.

SECT. VI.

Of Fruits.

WE have sufficiently in a former Section treated of Stalks, Roots, Branches, Boughes, Woods, Barks, Leaves, and Flowers, or at least of so many as concur to be composition of Medicaments. It remaines now that we treat of Fruits, both Alimentall, and Medicamentall, which an Apothecaryes shop cannot be without, and in their enumeration, we shall first touch upon those that excell others in dignity, suavity, utility and magnitude; so that we shall take our exordium from Apples, by the Greekes called Mela.

CHAP. I.

Of Apples.

THere are so many varietyes of *Apples* that they can scarce be named much lesse here enumerated: for besides those which the Earth produces, many are variously immuted by incision, miscellany, and mangony; for art cicurates the wild, allayes the acerb, dulcescates the acid, incrassates the small, flavescates the red, and changes many more colours.

And though *Apple-Trees* be pomigerous every where, yet in *Normandy*, they are more fœcund, beareing better, more gratefull, and salubrious *Apples* for the confection of Cider then elsewhere; whereof, as of Wine, there are many sorts, the best whereof is that that is made of Skarlet Grapes, which in sapour, suavity, and goodnesse æqualizes generous Wine.

Apples are well known to all Nations, whose culinary uses are frequent, and officinary no lesse celebrous: for their succe ingredes the confecture of *Alkernesse*, and conditure of King *Sapors* syrup, as also their substance, the unguent *Pomatum*.

Now we comprehend under this generall name, all odorate fruits of an herbaceous green colour which have no lignous pills, as all curtipendulous *Apples*, rambures, and the like; on the contrary we call all them nuts, whose externall shell is Lignous and hard as Pistacks, Nuts and Almonds. Quinces, Apricocks, and Peaches also come under the name of *Apples*; as also many other Fruits.

Those are the best, sweetest and most fragrant which the vulgar *Normans* call *Gulorogeria*, *Passipoma*, *Calvillea*, *Paradisiana*, *Rubelliana*, *Reneta*, *Curtipendula*, and many more which for their salubrity, suaveolence and sweet sapour, are much used of such as live deliciously.

The

The Septentrionall incolists have yet incredible varietyes of *Apples*; which being either amare, or acid, or austere, or dulco-acid or dulco-amare, are after they have attained their perfect magnitude congested in Store-houses that they may maturescate, and then they are contunded in a Trough, committed to a Presse, and their copious succe expressed, and reconded in a hogs-head, where it keeps long without corruption, and serves them for familiar drink, which from its Citrian colour they call Citre, corruptly Cyder.

Sweet *Apples* are temperate; acid ones colder, as also austere ones, amare ones hotter. All of them almost mollifie the belly, especially the sweet ones, they contemperate bilious and melancholicall humours. *Vires.*

CHAP. II.

Of Pears.

THe Pyre or *Peare-Tree* so called from its Pyramidall turbinated effigies, is well known to all; for all Gardens and Orchards luxuriate therewith, yet their fruit is very expetible; for *Peares* are so gratefull to eat, that many præferre them before all other edibles.

Whereof there are so many varietyes in colour, sapour, magnitude and forme, that none are able to enumerate them: the Ancients cognominated some small and swift, which it is probable we now call suaveolent and Summer *Peares*, from their gracious sapour representing Musk, or Honey rather, which being the least of all, grow five, six, or more on a cluster, depending upon prolix pedicles, which come first to maturity.

The Lutetians commend the *rosea* so called from their colour, the bicipita, sufficiently conspicuous by their magnitude, *Callotia Sertelia, Dagobertina, Fusca, Bergamotia*, and *Donchristiana* which are the sweetest of all, and are frequent in the *Turonian* and *Metensian* fields, as also in all *France*.

Some are also commended and celebrated for their magnitude, as those they call *Liberalia*, and some other crasse ones, which being first brought from *Rhodes*, are nominated *Rhodensia*; there are many more of firmer substance, which are eaten more frequently when cocted, then when crude, which are not ripe till the beginning of Winter.

In the Countrey they exsiccate *Peares* in an Oven, and keep them till Lent, or coct them in new Wine, or stuffe them with Cloves, and condite them in Sugar, and keep them for junkets and obsonyes.

Peares are more or lesse astrictive, as their sapour is lesse or more sweet: as they are more gratefull, so more salubrious after decoction, for being crude they load the Stomack. *Vires.*

CHAP. III.

CHAP. III.

Of Limmons, Citrons.

Citrons are not so much called medicall Apples from *Medus*, as from their medicall qualityes, for their odour, pill, flesh, pulpe, succe, grains, and all are eximiously medicinall: hereof, there are three differences, the first is called a *Limmon* which is turbinated with an oblong effigies, is colorated herbaceously, and turgid with a more acid acerb and frigid succe, corticated with a thinner pill, and not so amare as an Orenge: the second is the more vulgar *Citron*, very like the former, but its colour is more luteous, its pill more crasse, rugous and caperated, and it selfe more crasse, odorate, medicative and convenient for antidotes: the third is greatest called *Pom-Citron*, orbiculated like a melon, with a thick carnous pill, somtimes æqualling a mans nayle in crassitude, with a concolorated superficies, which we call *Ponce-rium*, *Citroniatum*, *Assyrian Apple*, and *Adams Apple*, all which names seem to be deflected from the Tree, and as they are alike in Idea, so also in facultyes.

As them of the third sort which we call *Ponceria* superate the rest in magnitude, so doth the first which we call *Lina* in parvity: for it scarce æqualises an egge in magnitude, yea most of that sort when they have attained their perfect growth, are no whit crasser then Apricocks, some whereof are oblong, others short and rotund, all suaveolent, vestited with a thin cortex, salurated with much succe, of a dulco-acid and gratefull sapour; they are very copious and eximious in *Italy*, especially in the fields near *Luca*.

The Trees from which they are collected, are perpetually virid, *Laurifolious*, and alwayes pomiferous, for some are just erupting, others more adult, others almost mature, and other deciduous, at all times on the same Tree.

All *Limmons* and *Citrons* refrigerate, arceate putretude, recreate the heart, and resist Poysons, which *Athenæus* proves, by an admirable History of two sentenced offenders, who by the command of the Ægyptian King, according to their Lawes were to be exposed a prey to Asps; each of them in their journey received a Citron of an huckster, which condoled their condition; they ate it, who thereupon felt no pain, when they were bitt by those cruell Serpents: which the judge admired, and seeking the cause, found that each of them had eaten a *Citron*; the next day he commanded a *Citron* to be given to one of them, and not to the other, they were againe lead to their punnishment; he that had eaten the Citron felt no molestation; the other being all over livid with biteings dyed.

CHAP. IIII.

Of Orenges.

Aurenges or aureous Apples so called from their colour, grow upon a Tree very like the *Limmon-Tree* in effigies, for their colours, odours, flowers and leafes are the same, only they differ a little in that part next the peduncle, which in the *Orenge* is as it were pinnated and double, they are dilutely green, odorate and concolorate with the *Limmon-Trees* fruits: the Tree whereon they grow is tall, ramous, perpetually virid, and daily pomiferous, some growing, other falling, and others ripening, it beares flowers al the year, which are white, elegant, suaveolent and more fragrant in Summer, then other times; some whereof adhære to a nodose pedicle and are fæcund, others are enodous and sterile. *Aqua Naphæ* so much celebrated for its suavity and fragrance is distilled from these, which Matrons and delicate Courtiers wash their faces, hair, and hands with.

Great plenty of *Orenges* are carried from *Spain*, *Italy*, and *France* into other regions, some whereof are sweet, and ingratefull or at least not pleasant to the gust; others acid, jucund, cordiall and gratefull to the palate; all round, nitent of a Golden colour or very flave whence they are often called Golden Apples.

The sweet ones are temperate, the acid ones refrigerate, arceate putretude, resist Poysons, and corroborate; their pills are acrimonious, amare and hot, which for their gracious odour are used in sawces condited in Sugar, it emends the breath of ones mouth. *Vires.*

CHAP. V.

Of Pomegranates.

THis Tree commonly called *Granate*, and its fruit *Pomegranate* derives its denomination either from the multitude of graines wherewith it is referted, or else from the region of *Granata* where it fruticates copiously; it delights in hot aire and dry ground, its leafes are like myrtle leafes, which fall off annually, its flower is red, oblong, jucund of aspect, and resembles a cup in effigies, the vulgar call it *Balaustium*, though that name, in *Dioscorides* his opinion, may rather be deduced to the wild ones.

There are two sorts of *Pomegranate-Trees*, the one wild, which is florigerous, but withall infrugiferous, the other domesticall, whereof there are three differences, one beares acid *Pomegranates*, another sweet ones; and the third dulco-acid ones, all of them are angulous and crasse, referted with many graines, demerged in much juice.

Its cortex is called Malicore, and by some Sedion, it is viridly flave, like vitriol, whereof according to *Alcumists* it participates; its flower is oblong, purpureous and fait, which *Pliny* calls *Balaustians*.

The whole *Pomegranate* is astrictive and refrigerative, but its succe is indued with the best facultyes, which recreates the heart, allayes the heat of the stomack, and cures the Cholerick passion; sweet *Pomegranates* molest the stomack.

CHAP. VI.

Of Quinces.

Quinces grow upon a Tree, which they call *Cotonea*, or *Catonea* from M. *Cato*. but the Græcians long agoe called it *Cydonea* from *Cydon* a Town in *Crete*, where it was first found: but I should rather believe that its name *Cotonea* was given to it because of its tomentitious cortex resembling Cotten, for these Apples are vested with a certain dawen like Cotten dawen.

The Tree from which they are excerped is commonly low, assurgeing like a shrub, vested with a sharp and gapeing Barke, produceing things like scales; its boughs are many, short, tortuous and cineritious, its leafes subrotund, mucronated, green above white beneath, soft and lanuginous; its flowers albid, somwhat purpureous and quinquefolious; its fruits crasse, very flave, tomentitious and odorate, emitting an odour jucund to some, ingratefull to others; its sapour is alike to all; flesh luteous, succe austere; its seed as in other Apples is included in membranes and reconded as it were in Caskets.

The *Quince-Tree* is fruitfull in every place, but most in hot regions, cultivated places and Garden sides, for then its fruits will be more, and aureous; some whereof are rounder, shorter, lesser and nearer the figure of vulgar Apples, which are called *Quinces* absolutely; others greater, crasser, longer, turbinated and more like Peares vulgarly called Coignacea, which are not so good as the former.

Some also are more candid, others strutheous, all more luteous and almost aureous whence they are called *Chrysomels* or Golden Apples, such as are more lanuginous, and by their fragrancy affect the heads of some men, make very many eustomachicall medicaments as conserves, waters, and syrups of *Quinces* whereof there is much use both in health and sickneſſe.

Vires. *Quinces* can scarce be eaten crude, when cocted they are more gratefull to the palate; they roborate the ventricle, allay vomiting represse the flowers of the belly, conduce to the dysenteriack and collicall, as also to such as either spit blood, or are infested with an immoderate flux of flowers or hæmorrhoids.

CHAP

CHAP. VII.

Of Medlers.

A *Medler* is a certain round Apple, at first green, and somwhat hispid; afterwards it is yellow, and soft: some call it *Tigranum*, and *Galen* calls it *Tricoccum*, because it containes three lapideous, or osseous graines instead of seeds, yet somtimes four and somtimes five are found in it, according to the number of its unguicles issuing out of its patulous bosse or head: this fruit is so acerb before maturity, that one cannot tast of it, but when mature, it is gratefull and wholesome for the last course.

The Tree from which it is decerped is of two sorts; one wild and spinous growing spontaneously in Woods and Hedges, which beares small oblong Apples, very acerb before maturity, and not very gratefull after; the other domesticall, so made by culture and insition, whose Apples are more crasse and full, though a little compressed, round, and gapeing on one side: both are tortuous and rigid, but this is lesse spinous. *Dioscorides* calls it *Setania*, *Theophrastus Satanea*.

It assurges to the magnitude of a vulgar Apple-Tree, with boughs that are hairy and circumgyred, promisse, and not broad leafes; white and quinquefolious flowers; whereunto Apples succeed called *Medlers*, which are of a moderate magnitude, with late heads, discreted with five unguicles or leafes, its substance is white, and sapour austere till maturity, and then it is yellow and sweet.

Immature *Medlers* are acerb and astrictive, yet their Powder according to *Ant. Musa* breakes and excludes stones in the Reins, to which effect, their officles or seeds brayed and assumed, are thought most conducible, they are commended for cohibiting belly flux, and roborating its parts. *Vires.*

CHAP. VIII.

Of Sorbe Apples.

Sorbes are small *Apples*, in quality like *Medlers*, in formes and magnitude very dissimilar; for both at first are green, hard, acerb, unfit to eat; by maturity yellow, soft, grateful to the palate, and turgid with a vinose succe.

Pliny makes four sorts of *Sorbe Apples*, some common and turbinated like Peares which the rusticks call *Cormæ*; others rounder like *Apples*, some oblong like Olives, and others torminose; *Dioscorides* mentions only the pyroformious or vulgar *Sorbe Apples* which are decerped in Autumne.

All *Sorbe Apples* are acerb and astrictive; and thence they conduce *Vires.*

Vires. duce to the ſtaying of the dyſentery and other fluxes, the vulgar are moſt in uſe, which repreſſe vomitings, ſtay the eruptions of blood, and roborate the parts t:here is a kind of drink expreſſed out of theſe in a preſſe, that is very like Perry, which the vulgarity much celebrate.

CHAP. IX.

Of the fruit of the Cornell Tree.

Corna are oblong fruits of the magnitude of Roman beanes, yet not plain but round, red, prægnant with a white hard and oſſeous Kernell, of an auſtere ſapour with ſome acidity.

They grow on a Tree not very tall, veſted with rigid bark; ſmooth, broad, mucronated, venenate leafes, like them of the Spine-Tree, it flouriſhes firſt of all, bearing green fruits in Summer, and red in Autumne, it delights in Mountaines and Valleys, and growes frequently without culture; but it is tranſplanted into many Gardens that its fruit may be in more readineſſe for medicine.

Cornus fæmin: There is another *Thelycronius Cornell-Tree* which *Theophraſtus* calls the fæmale dogg-Tree, which erects it ſelfe with a fungous Caule bearing ripe berryes in autumne, which are very acerb, inſuave, and diſguſtfull to all animalls.

All *Cornell-Trees* have two roots by internalls, and alternately reſpondent, as in Vines; its barke is pallidly flave, the Wood of the male is ſo ſolid, that in hardneſſe it æqualiſes hornes; its berryes are prægnantly turgid with red, auſtere, and acid ſucce.

Vires. Theſe fruits refrigerate, deſiccate and aſtringe; and therefore they are præſcribed to the immoderate flux of the belly, flowers, or hæmorrhoides.

CHAP. X.

Of Prunes.

I Have neither will nor power to proſecute all the varietyes of *Prunes*, let herbaliſts and Garden-writers be fought, for their differences which are almoſt inexplicable and innumerable ſo made by art and mangony: for if we look at their colour, ſome are herbaceous, others white, others eburneous, ſome luteous, others flave, others purpureous, others black or violaceous, others variegated, and others rubeous.

They are alſo differenced by their magnitude, figure, ſapour, and place; for ſome are ſmall, or great, or indifferent; others of a round, of an ovall, or an oblong figure; others acid, ſweet, auſtere, dulco-acid, or otherwiſe mixed: ſome are commended from

their

their place, as *Damascens*, *Brignalens*, *Rhemens*, and *Turonians*: we have now in our markets the best, and sweetest of all, which they commonly call *Pardigons*, as also imperial plums, and red, black and violaceous Damascens which they call *Datta*, which nobilitate the most delicate tables; and enrich shops.

They are collected of Plum-Trees, which are sufficiently knowen to all, especially the wild ones which grow spontaneously every where, which though they be very low, and beare fruit not very svave, yet they be so changed by culture and insertion; that they will assurge to an high-Tree, and yeild sweet Plums annually: but it is vain to dilucidate what is already most notorious.

Plums which the Greeks call *Coccymela*, the *Siculians*, *Barbyla*, humectate, refrigerate, mollify and lubricate the belly: a certain Pulpe is elected out of black Damascens to the confection of *Diaprunum*; they are dryed in an Oven and eaten with fish, or made into medicine, they are condited in sugar for a junket. *Vires.*

CHAP. XI.

Of Apricocks.

Apricocks by their gratefull odour and sweet sapour do much arride, and nobilitate rich mens Tables, whether crude or condited; for their gratious halit and jucund suavity allure the fullest stomacks to tast of their delicacy: some would referre them to Plums, others to Peaches, but they seem to be a mean betwixt both; sedulity of late hath so acted that we have a kind of Plums in sapour, forme and magnitude partly resembling Plums, partly *Apricocks* which they call *Apricock*. Plums, the Ancients called them *Armeniaca*, *Galen* afterwards Præcoccia, and the more recent now by the addition and mutation of some letters *Abricoccia*.

They are gathered of a Tree, of a moderate magnitude, lesse then a Peare-Tree, greater then a Peach-Tree, harder and more durable, it emitts a crasse caule, many boughs not so long as them of the Peach-Tree, but more crasse, broad and mucronated leafes like them of Peare-Tree, white flowers, which erupt at the beginning of the Spring, before the leafes; round, carnose, succulent and gratefull fruit like Peaches, luteous both within and without.

Apricocks are judged humid in the second degree, frigid in the first or rather temperate, as all sweet fruits; they lubricate the belly, and are soon corrupted in an infirme body, especially if they be immoderately ingested; they are celebrated for no use in medicine. *Vires.*

CHAP. XII.

CHAP. XII.

Of Peaches.

THe *Peach-Tree* is notorious and frequent in moſt places of *France*, for they beſet their Vineyards therewith; it aſſurges to a moderate procerity, emitting long and fragile boughs, veſted with rare leafes like Willowes, ſerrated about, amare to the guſt and aromatically redolent; its flowers are like them of Almonds, but more dilutely purpureous.

Dioſcorides ſaith that in *Perſia* they found this Tree to be exitious, which by tranſlation into Ægypt changed its nature, and became innocuous, which alſo *Galen* affirmes; but *Matthiolus* contradicts them upon ſuch light conjectures, as he will never be able to infirmate or diſprove the authority of ſuch grave men withall.

It beares abundance of Apples, which are obduced with white dawn, ſubluteous, ſucculent, carnous, and variegated within and without, with certain red ſtrokes; they are ſomtimes all luteous, the colour of the externall Cortex, ſhewes the colour of the internall Pulpe, as red without, red within.

Theſe Apples are rotund, but they have a ſmall depreſſure on one ſide like a rime: their ſucce according to *Galen*, is ſmall as alſo their fleſh, becauſe they are ſoon corrupted: therefore the ſyrup made of their ſucce, which ſome celebrate much, is rather to be neglected then commended.

Peaches are cold and moiſt in the ſecond degree, their ſucce is very corruptible, and they no good laſt diſh; they are better before other meats then after. *Vires.*

Their Kernells are dry, they open, incide, exterge, and cure the infarctures of the Liver or Milt.

Their amare Leafes, calefy, incide, liberate the intralls from obſtructions, ſubduce the belly, and move choler.

There is a good Hydragogall ſyrope, which alſo kills Wormes, made of their flowers.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Cherryes.

THere are many varietyes of them; for ſome are wild, and thoſe ſmall, and lougipendulous, which at firſt are green, afterwards red and laſt black, the *French* call them *Meriſia* that is amare, others domeſticall which are much leſſer; ſome whereof are red, others black, others white, and others albo-rubeous, wild *Cherryes* are the moſt untimely, ungratefull and leaſt; ſome whereof are plainly red, others black, next to theſe are other great

great, fugacious and tender ones, which are so soft after maturity, that they cannot tolerate carriage, some call them *Guignea*; some whereof are black, crasse, and turbinated, which the ancients called *Actia* and *Juliana*; others obscurely, and others dilutely red.

Those that some call *Duracina*, and the *French Bigarella* are sweetest, hardest and most gratefull to the palate, they resemble a heart in forme; those they call *Aproniana* superate the rest in salubrity, they are very red of colour, acid, and gratefull to the gust.

Some yet are very sweet and wholsome to eat, which being perfectly mature, are very crasse, round and darkly red, they are called Agriota; some are acid, which are cognominated amarena, others austere, Merona: all are very succulen, except heart Cherryes, black and darkely red ones are very tender, and infect the hands of the contrectants.

Cherryes suppeditate laudable succe to the body; they allay the heat of the Stomack, subduce the belly, help such as are feaverish; contemperate bilious humours, liberate the Liver from infarctures, but some work these effects more eximiously, others more slowly. *Vires.*

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Mulberry-Trees.

THere are two sorts of *Mulberry-Trees*, the one black, which beares black-berryes, the other white, which beares white ones, both tall, with slave roots, crasse trunks, rough barks, and long, broad, serrated leafes like them of Elder, whereon Silke-Wormes feed: but they spin the finest silk, when they are fed with white *Mulberry* leafes, which are more gratefull to them, and suppeditate more large and apt matter, for their Silken threads.

The fruits of black *Mulberry*, which the Apothecaryes commonly call *Mora Celsi*, are sweet, and frequently nobilitate mens table out of whose succe both syrupe and Rob is confected, but their use is not now very frequent.

But the fruits of the white *Mulberry-Trees* are flatuous, ingratefull and unapt for nutriment; so that the excellency of this Tree consists not so much in its fruits as leafes, whereon the aforesaid Wormes feed and suppeditate excellent Silken Cotten.

Mulberry-Trees germinate the latest of domesticks, beginning onely in *May*, when the rigidity of Winter is absolutely over; they fructify in *July* and *August*, whose berryes are oblong, compacted of graines, like them of the wild *Mulberry-Tree*, but longer crasser and greater, green at first, purpureous afterwards, and last of all black, and prægnant with red succe.

Immature

Immature *Mulberryes* are cold and dry towards the third degree, they astringe potently, and allay the inflammations of the mouth and jawes; mature ones humectate and refrigerate but a little; they quench thirst, provoke appetite, and are not adverse to the ventricle, they nourish the body sparingly.

CHAP. XV.

Of Wild Mulberryes, and Rasberryes.

Rasberry-bush is either wild, and spinous, which the Greeks call βάτος, or domestick and cicurated, which growing more copiously in the Mount *Ida* is called the *Idæan* bush, of which, as of the sylvestrian there are two sorts, the one beares red, the other white fruit; both the wild ones beare fruits which at first is green, then red, and at last black.

This bramble growes copiously in hedges, margins of fields and incultivated places; its surcles are prolix, lent, obsequious, green somwhat quadrangular, especially when inveterate, medullous within, and aculeated without, with leafes, incided about, green above, white beneath, sharpe and spinous so farre as its fibres goe, with white flowers digested on the summityes of its surcles, whereunto fruits succeed, called black-berryes,

The *Idæan* bramble stands alone, and assurges streight up to a mans procerity, with medullous surcles, exasperated with small not horrid spines; its leafes and flowers are like the wild ones, and its fruits also, only they are either rubeous or pallid and very gratefull to the gust and olfact; we call them *Framboesia*, I suppose from the fragrant odour they represent to the eaters mouth; that Wine is thought best that smells of *Framboesia*.

Wild *Ras-berryes* are astrictive, and very like the domestick *Mulberryes* in qualities; for they represse the inflammations of the mouth and jawes, and cohibite the flux of the belly: the *Idæan* also or white bryar-possesse the same faculteyes, but more infirmely, and they are more accommodated to esure then medicinall uses.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Sebestens or Myxarias.

Sebestens or *Myxarias* are fruits growing in *Syria* and *Ægypt* upon a tall Tree of the same name, like a Plum-Tree; the bark of its trunk is white, of its boughs green; they are vested with subrotund, firme and ample leafes, white flowers cohæreing racemously or rather on laxe umbels, which falling off, fruits erupt very like Plums, which attaining maturity, are of a sad green colour, and contain an hard, osseous, and triangular Nut or Kernell.

Myxaries

Myxaries or *Sebestens* are gathered when mature, insolated, contracted into wrinkles like Raisons or Prunes and kept, they were once very rare and peregrine in *Italy*, but now they grow there copiously.

They mollify the belly like Plums, they allay Feavers, Coughs, and asperity of the tongue, they cure strangury and ardour, they quench thirst if duly assumed, and kill and expell Wormes. *Vires.*

CHAP. XVII.

Of Jujubs.

Jujubs which the Greeks, call *Zizipha* and *Zinzipha*, grow in *Syria*, and now in many places in *Italy* and *Narbone*, upon a small tree, like a Whin, with hard spinose and spolious surcles; mossy flowers, its caule is contorted, rough and ramous; its boughs slender, long, obsequious, but hard and protended like the branches of Broome: its leates hard, oblong, like them of Periwinkle, alternately disposed at long intervalls; about which, small, mossy and pallid flowers do erupt, after whose occase, oblong, carnose, tender berryes of the magnitude of Cherryes, vested with a membranous and hard cortex do accede, *Galen* calls them *Serica*.

These luteous or luteously purpureous, sweet, carnose, vinous fruits, of the figure and magnitude of moderate Olives, turgid with a stone, yellow without, when they have attained maturity are gathered, dryed, contracted into wrinkles and kept.

We cannot learn from the Greeks and Arabians any thing of their qualities and salubrity; for *Galen* saith, they are ill for the stomack, they nourish little, and are hard of concoction; the Arabians accommodate and commend them to many uses, and though Fuchsius acerbly insult and speak against these, yet *Actuarius, Græcus, Nic. Alexandrinus*, and many more, much celebrate their use, having sufficiently experienced their salubrious effects.

They cure the Cough, difficulty of breathing, and the asperity of the Artery, they concoct and expell humours, cure many vices in the Lungs and Breast, help the reines and allay the ardour of Urine, and dolour of the Bladder. *Vires.*

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Figgs.

THe *Figge-Tree* germinates every where, but in cold Countreys it is either sterile, or beares only grosse and useless, or small and insuave fruits; which never attain maturity; in hot;

regions, it fruticates copiously, fructifying twice annually in the Spring and Autumne; it is a Tree of a moderate magnitude, not assurging with a direct caule, nor yet a smooth bark, but somwhat rough, especially when inveterate; its wood is white, soft and medullous: its leafes ample, quinquefariously determinated, quinqueangular, rough, hard and obscurely green: its fruits which are at first small and green, afterwards greater, and either white or red, with a turbinated figure, erupt about the extortion of its leafes without any previous flowers: and as some *Figgs* are more forward and sweeter then others, so are some whiter, some redder, some blacker then others; all are soft, medullous and gravidated with small graines, while they are immature if they be vulnerated with the stalks or ends of leafes, they will emitt a lacteous acrimonious and amare humour.

There is another low *Fig-Tree* very like the former excepting procerity, which growes in a prique places, and somtimes in Septentrionall regions.

Another wild and infæcund one, responds to these in effigies, which is celebrated for no medicinall use.

There is also an *Indian Fig-Tree* which some think is that same that *Pliny* calls *Opuntia*, which is a Plant without boughs, without Caules consisting onely of leafes, which hath not yet been experienced in medicinall uses.

Vires. The best *Figges* come from *Massilia*, which may be substituted in defect of Dactyls, they calefy moderately, nourish, lubricate the belly, but do not generate very laudable blood; they attenuate, leviate, maturefy, concoct and profit the asper artery, the reins, Lungs and Bladder; a dry *Figge* is called *Carica*; by the Greeks, ἰσχας, by which word *Matthiolus* designes *Apias*. *Figg-Tree* leafes move hæmorrhoids if the Fundament be rubbed therewith: the so much celebrated Antidote, Mythridate, is made of *Figgs*, Rue and Nutts, whose composition we have described in the History of Rue. *Figgs* are of much more utility, which for brevity sake I will not recenseate; See *Dioscorides* (C. 183. and 184. Lib. 1.)

CHAP. XIX.

Of Dactyls or Dates.

Dactyls are the fruits of Palmes growing in *Ægypt*, *Crete*, and *Judæa*, which attaining maturity are by *Galen* called *Phœnicobalani*; the best come from *Judæa*, they are great, flave, somwhat rugous, soft, but carnous, subdure within, white towards the Kernell, red towards the cortex, of a vinous sapour, they sound little or nothing when concussed; the flaccid hard and macilent are worse.

Now

Now there is no small difference in Palmes, *Galen* himself being Judge, for some are dry and astrictive, as the Ægyptian ones; others soft, humid and sweet, as those we call *Chariotæ*; but the best grow in *Syria*, *Palestine*, and many Eastern regions, where they suppeditate both meat and drink to the incolists.

The Trunk of a Palme is crasse, round, and high, rough with dense and gradate notches, by the adjument of whose inæquality, the orientall incolists can easily ascend their summityes; its leafes are Arundinaceous, long and acuminated, many proceeding out of one exortion, according to the longitude of the boughs; it beares much fruit on its summity, as it were racemously cohæreing, but their pedicles are more prolix, whereof there are many sorts, but the sweet and succulent ones such as grow in *Judæa*, *Syria*, and *Palestine* are best: they are of a yellow or luteous colour, neither great nor yet small; the green, insuave, and juicelesse are naught.

Galen's judgement of the qualityes of the Palme, and its fruits is this: All the parts of the Palme-Tree, saith he, participate of an astrictive faculty; for the austere succe of its boughs, consists of an aqueous, tepid, terrene, and frigid substance. But its sweet fruits have much of calidity: they profit the stomack and breast, *Vires.* suggest laudable nutriment, and are meat for many Nations.

CHAP. XX.

Of Olives.

THat *Olives*, and their fat juice called oyle, appertain to esculents, each one knowes: for *Olives* nobilitate rich mens Tables to excite appetite, and their oyle is usurped not only in confecting acetaryes, frying fishes, and præpareing other meats, but also in confecting unguents and salves.

Now *Olives* are the fruit of a Tree of a moderate magnitude; which the *French* call *Olivetum*; the Latines *Olea*; which, especially the sative, assurges with a long Cayle; for the wild one is lower, with many oblong boughs laterally diffused, hard and pallidly yirid like willow boughs, with white racemous flowers, whereunto oblong, carnous, succulent berryes called *Olives*, at first green, after black, with hard stones within, succeed: the fruit derives its name from the Tree, and the succe from the fruit.

This Tree delights in dry places and hot regions, as in *Spain*, *Italy*, and *France*; for it willingly amplects a hot squalid air; it either growes not at all or else is sterile and tabid in the Septentrionall regions.

The Greeks call *Olives* drawing to maturity and blackness, δρύπεται, the *French Drupæ*; when they are condited with salt the Greeks call them ἅλμαδες and κολυμβάδες: oyle simply so called is extracted from them when they are mature; *Omphacinum*, when immature,

immature, but let herbalists be sought for larger treatises hereabout.

Immature *Olives* are astrictive, mature are temperate; when condited they recreate the palate, excite appetite, resiccate and roborate the too humid ventricle, nourish little, and yet not very laudable blood: we have elsewhere treated largely of oyle, and its faculty es.

CHAP. XXI.

Of Acerb Grapes and Raisons.

Vine is a name put upon many Plants, which agrees only properly to the viniferous ones, for they call Viburn, the blessed Virgins Sigill, and other tall Plants by this name; whereas the viniferous domestick is properly so denominated, whereof there are many differences desumed from their sapour, magnitude colour, and state of the Heavens.

In a generall acception all Vines are either white or black; but many are now variegated of a mixed colour; which are neither white nor black, but rather subrubrous, or flave, whose Wines are neither absolutely white, nor red, nor black, but mixed; flave, yellow and obscure according to the various colours of the *Grapes* from which they are expressed.

And as all mature *Grapes* are sweet, so all immature ones are acerb and insuave, whence *Omphacium* may be had out of any immature *Grapes*, though it be most usually expressed out of such as are acid and more insuave when mature; whose branches are crasser and longer; which are deduced commonly to arbour, which beare crasse and acerb *Grapes*, whose succe goes to the confection of *Omphacium* and syrup of Agresta.

Raisons are the mature fruits of the viniferous Vine, so called because they have indured exsiccatory calour, they may also derive that name from their sweetnesse as well as calour. As *passum vinum* or γλυκὺ, (i.e.) sweet, so all sorts of *Raisons* are sweet, except these of our Countrey, which dryed in an Oven are dulcoacid.

All of them are temperately hot in the first degree, and very astrictive if they be eaten with their stones; and so they help the dysenterian: acerb *Grapes* refrigerate and astringe.

CHAP. XXII.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Curran-Bush, and Gooseberry-Tree.

THe *Curran-Tree* is a fronticose Plant, scarce aculeated with any spines, emitting many tortuous not erect boughs, and leafes like Vine leafes, but much lesse; and fruits congested like *Grapes* small, round, red and acid.

The *Mauritarians* call these red *Currans Ribes*, whence our Apothecaryes borrowed their *Ribes*.

Botanicks constitute two sorts of this shrub, the one bearing red fruit which is better; the other black, which is not celebrated for medicinall effects: there is also a third that beares white and gratefull fruit, some of the later writers call the former *Ribesium*, and the other a species of the *Gooseberry-Tree*, so making the berryes of the former red, of the later white; but they differ much in effigies, colour, sapour, and magnitude.

For the *Gooseberry-Tree* is a spinous shrub, luxuriating with many slender white and aculeated boughs, broad crenated serrated leafes, whitish flowers, and fruits not racemously cohærent, but depending on long pedicles like berryes, they are at first green, afterwards white, and when mature flave.

Ribes refrigerate, siccate, astringe moderately and roborate; they extinguish the heat of Feavers, represse choller, contemperate fervid blood, quench thirst, arceate putretude, help in malign Feavers, in the subvertion of the ventricle, and dysenteriall affections arising from heat: a syrupe is made of their succe most efficacious and usefull for all these ends.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Berberryes.

Berberryes grow upon spinous shrubs, assurging with hard branches of five or six cubits heighth, their bark is smooth and whitish, their root flave, the matter of their wood luteous; their leafes numerous, rigid, acute, oblong, hard, dilutely green, crenated and somwhat rough, their flowers depending on long pedicles are luteous mossy and splendent, their fruits small, oblong, red and racemously cohærent, this Plant and fruit are called Spina acida, or Oxyacantha, by the shopmen *Berberryes*, deduced from *Avicenna* his *Amyrberis*, as *Dodonæus* judges, who calls this fruit *Oxyacantha* not *Oxacanthum*, which *Amybreris* is the fruit of the acute or white spine, it is red, sweet and rotund, they vulgarly call it Senella, and *Berberryes* Spinivineta.

Berberryes

Berberryes refrigerate and ſiccate moderately, aſtringe potently,
Vires. cohibite the fluour of blood and other humours, allay the heat of the bowells, ſtay vomiting and recreate the intralls.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of Filberds.

NOthing is better knowen then theſe Nutts, the Greeks, call them λεπτοκάρυα, or ſmall Nutts, Apothecaryes *Filberds*, or Abellines from the Town *Abellinum* in *Campania*: there they grow copiouſly, ſome call them *Ponticæ*, becauſe they come from *Pontus*, others *Prænestinæ*, becauſe the *Prænestians* uſeing theſe, tolerate hunger long.

They are either domeſticall or wild, the domeſticall are either long and reconded in long and herbaceous husks fimbriated about; or rounder with a ſhorter and more patulous husk. Thoſe of the long ones are beſt that are contained in a red membrane; the wild are ſmaller and leſſe gratefull, growing in Hedges and Woods.

All of them are gathered of a low Tree called a Haſle, whoſe boughs, if young, are ſtreight enodoſe and obſequious, leafes broad acuminated and ſerrated about; bark, thin; root, craſſe; both fruit and Tree are well known.

Filberds ingrede the confecture of *Lohoc de pineis*, they are ſometimes incruſtated with Sugar, that they may ſerve inſtead of junkets, and eat more pleaſantly, they are hard of concoction, they are ſomwhat Bechicall, and becauſe of their pleaſant ſapour, may be admixed to pectorall medicaments.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Fiſticle-Nuts.

Fiſticle-Nutts grow on a Tree like *Terebinth*, whoſe exteriour tegument is very thin, and green; the ſecond lignous, fragile and whitiſh like a Nucament; the Kernell is greeniſh, dulcoamare and jucund, *Pliny* ſaith that *Vitellius* firſt brought them out of *Syria* into *Italy*; and *Flaccus Pompeius* into *Spain*.

Their Tree was heretofore exoticall, but the ſedulity of latter ages hath cicurated it, ſo that it now fruticates in many Septentrionall coaſts, but its fruit ſeldome or never attains maturity: the Shopmen call them Feſtici; Poſidonius *Biſtacle Nuts*; moſt *Piſtacle Nutts*

Vires. They are hot humid or temperate and ſalubre, they incraſſate the tabid flegme, coct and expurge the matter contained in the Lungs, liberate the bowells from infarctures, augment the ſperme

sperme excite to venery, and auxiliate such as have pain in their reines.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Almonds.

AN *Almond* is not so like a Quince-Tree; as many write; for it is more frondose, taller, and more lasting; vested with a crasser barke, more angust, longer and crenated leafes; it seldome fruticates in the Northern regions, and seldomer fructifyes, though its flowers are very patient of cold: for explicating themselves before Winter be ended, they tolerate frost innoxiously; and produce *Almonds* copiously in Autumn, which some cognominate *Græcia* and *Thasian Nutts*.

Some of these are amare, hotter, and lesse esculent; others sweet, culinary and more delectable: both grow on a similar Tree. Oyle is extracted out of both, out of the amare bitter oyle which they say is good for paine in the eares; out of the sweet, sweet oyle; which is temperate and most gratefull to nature, for it may be given successefully to all ages and sexes as to very infants, it is a most familiar and secure medicament for such as cough, it cocts and expectorates humours delabeing upon the Stomack.

Two memorable effects are prædicated of bitter *Almonds* to witt that they kill Wolves and arceate ebriety, whereof *Plutarch* tells a story; There was (saith he) a Physician with *Drusus* the Son of *Tiberius Cæsar*, who being accustomed to eat bitter *Almonds* would superate all in drinking, and never be overtaken with temulency.

The sweet ones being very pleasant afford many junkets; for they are decorticated and set upon the Table, or resiccated; or incrustated and condited with Sugar, or brayed and made into a sweet bread with Sugar and Rosewater called *Macharones*, or else made into a lacteous potion for puerperous women. *Vires.*

Bitter *Almonds* are hot and detersive; sweet ones are pretty temperate, gratefull to the Palate and Alimonious.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Walnuts.

THe *walnut* is called *Nux juglans*, as if one should say *Jovis Glans*, or rather *Juvans*; for Carpenters seeke to the Trunk of its Tree; Dyers to its barke; Boyes to its fruit; Apothecaryes quæritate its Medicinall use, which Mithridates knew; who confected his Antidote of Nutts, and a few other additaments; as also *Galen* who made his Diacaryon, or Dianuum, of their succe, with as much honey as might dulcorate it; with which medicament

medicament he cured a gardener almoſt ſuffocated with ſwellings, inflammations, and Kernells.

This Nutt-Tree is very grand, with nervous leafes, in face and cohærence like Aſh leafes, but greater; it growes in fields by high wayes in fat and reſtible ground, as alſo in Gardens, but becauſe it affects and kills the vicine ſegetives and Plants with its odour, it is planted about Hedges and Margins of fields, according to that of the Poet.

Me, ſatane lædam, nam ſatis lædere dicor,
Jmus in extremo margine fundus habet.

About Summers ſolſtice its green and tender Nutts are excorticated and infuſed in water till they demit their amaritude; then they are cocted, afterwards ſtuck with & *Cinnamom* Cloves, and then cocted in Sugar and kept, and ſo they will roborate the weak ventricle, and help concoction.

Theſe Nutts dry do calefie and ſiccate, their Oyle which is extracted by contuſion and expreſſion, is calefactive; it digeſts, reſolves, roborates the nerves, and diſcuſſes flatuoſity, and therefore it is rightly mixed in Clyſters againſt Colicall dolours, ariſeing from flatuous and frigid humours.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Pine-Nuts.

THe *Pine-Tree*, firre-Tree, Pitch-Tree, Cedar, and Laring-Tree are all very tall, coniferous, reſinifluous, and almoſt all alike; but ſome of them are exoticall, not eaſily cicurable in our ſoyle, as the Cedar of *Paleſtina* and *Lebanon*; others are indeed Venaculous, but altogether, wild and *Sylveſtrian*, never planted in Gardens, ſave for ſpectacles, as the Firre-Tree, Pitch-Tree, and wild-*Pine*: but the true *Pine* is more urbane and manſuet, which, when they have got a craſſe Caule, emitt many boughs out of every ſide, veſted with ſlender and long leafes aculeated about.

Its fruits are called *Pine-Apples*, which are compacted of many membranes like ſcales, craſſe, hard and lignous, in whoſe middles oblong, rotund, and ſweet Kernells are involved in thin membranes which are ſomtimes called *Pine-Nuts*, ſomtimes *Coccali* and ſomtimes *Pinei*.

This Nut is temperate, but rather acceding to calour, whence they inſerve to venery; for they augment ſperme and milke, nouriſh much, conduce in inveterate coughs, and help ſuch as are rabid.

Beſides the true *Pine* there are many wild ones, as the three ſorts of pitch Trees that delight in maritimous places, and ſome others that grow ſpontaneouſly in Rocky and montanous places, all of them

them as also the Firre-Tree and Larinx-Tree are *Lachrimous*, and effuse either spontaneously or by vulneration, either more liquid or more spisse, whiter or blacker succes, whereof we shall treat in the sequell section.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Cypresse Nutts.

Cypresse is perpetually frondous, its caule is tall, round, crasse, and erect; fastigiated with an orbicular summity; with leafes like them of *Pine*, but more carnous, shorter, obtuse and amare with many folious, angust, graveolent and rough but not pungent boughs.

Its fruits are Cones or Nutts representing them in shape, which chinking or dehiscing with age and calour easily let fall their small seeds included in them; the matter of the wood is solid slave and odorate, very fitt for ligneous vessells.

There are two sorts of this Tree, the one masculine which is fœcund, thrice annually bearing *Nutts*, in *Jannuary*, *May*, and *September*; its effigies is very morose, it is graveolent, and not delighted in shades.

The other is fœminine, which is sterile, neither beareing *Nutts* nor seed, its boughs are more extended; in other things it is like the masculine, for both are perpetually frondous, the same colour, odour sapour virtue and effigies in both: the Cypresse Tree is very patient of cold, never startling at Winters Frosts, yet the rigidity of the year 1608, killed all about *Paris*.

Theophrastus tells us that Cypresses grow in Creet spontaneously, without seed, as also in Mount *Ida* and other Mountaines; where he affirmes that he found Cypresses amongst snow (which their summityes never want) though they will not grow else where, unlesse they find repour; there exudes a certain Rosine out of Cypresses of the consistency with that of *Larinx*, and a very sharpe sapour which is of rare use.

The whole Cypresse is calefactive, exsiccative and astrictive; *Vires.* but its leafes, buds, Nutts, and seeds are of most use, they roborate laxe parts, cohibite dysenteriall and cholicall affections, and stay humours.

CHAP. XXX.

Of Bay-berryes, and its fruit.

THe *Bay-Tree*, called by the Greeks δάφνη, which was consecrated to *Apollo*, who coronated himselfe with a branch thereof for a signe of divination, is a shrub perpetually frondous and green, erecting its head to the just procerity of a Tree, with many and crasse boughs invested in green barke, with oblong, broad, mucronated, hard, green, and suaveolent leafs, white flowers erupting out of the boughs, whereunto fruits or berryes succeed of an ovall figure black and gravidated with a solid stone, suaveolent, and amare with some acrimony.

This Tree germinates copiously all over *France*, I saw some in *Normandy* near the Sea of the magnitude of an indifferent Oake, but they grow more plenteously & largely in *Italie* & hot regions, for they do not tolerate such rigid Winters as the sepentrionall incolists feel, without harm; for the frost often kills their branches and leates; however, these abscinded, new surcles arise in their stead. Many write that this Tree is not only free from percussion with thunder, but also any house wherein a bough thereof is reposed: therefore *Tiberius Cæsar* affrighted with the coruscations and fragour of Thunder, was crowned with bayes.

Vires. *Bay-berryes* calefye much, siccate, attenuate, and discusse flatuosity: they are mixed with medicaments that reficiate the lassitude of the nerves; and with unguents, which calefye and resolve; their oyle expressed or elicited by decoction, deleats and cures scabs, blew places, wheales, and many sæditys of the skin, and discusses effused humours.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of Juniper-Berryes.

Juniper is a lignous, ramous shrub, æqualizing an indifferent Tree in magnitude, vested with a membranous and frequently disrumpent barke; bearing berryes at first green, and by maturity black, of the magnitude of Pease: its wood is flave like the *Citrian Santulum*, its leafes are anguſt and acuminated, rather resembling spines then leafes, it growes spontaneously, and thrives best in dry and incultivated places, delighting more in *montanous* and squalid soyles then in plaine ones. This Tree alone prolongs its fruit for two yeares, which growing old will rather wither upon the Tree then decide. *Juniper* is very like Cedar, and by some called *Oxycedrus*, but ill: for though both have tortuous Caules, acute leafes, alwayes green, and small round berryes, yet they differ much; for *Oxycedrus* is an *Exoticall* Plant, with flave odorate and pleasant berryes, its wood is red, it growes spontaneously in *Asia*, as *Juniper* in *France*.

Bellonius knew a greater kind of *Juniper* assurging to the altitude of a moderate Tree, which beares berryes of the magnitude of filberds, or somtimes æqualiseing *Galls*, but ours is no whit lesse efficacious, but it is probable much better, and solely used in medicine.

Juniper effuses a certain resinous *Gum*, which *Serapio* calls *Sandarax*, the Latins *Vernix*; in whose stead some have substituted *Sandaracha* being deceived with the affinity of the words; now *Sandaracha* is a kind of *auripigmentum*, and exitial poyson, for there being three sorts of *Arsenick*, the croceous, by some called *Risagalum*, the red or *Sandaracha*, and the white or vulgar, and all of them deletery, *Sandaracha* must needs be exitious and not safely usurped for *Juniper-Gum*. *Pliny* also uses *Sandaracha* in a farre more different sense, to witt for that meat that Bees eate, while they make their Combes which he somtimes calls Erithate and Cerinthus.

Juniper Berryes calefy, help the Stomack, move Urine, expurge crasse and viscid humours, are good against inflammations, gripings, biteings of Serpents, Cough, and pectorall vices, they are convenient antidotall ingredients. *Vires.*

CHAP. XXXII.

Of Galls.

Galls are certain rough ſpurious fruits, which grow upon glandiferous Trees beſides their legitimate ones; they erupt commonly in the night, when the Sun is going out of *Gemini*; at which time, if the weather be fervid, they tabefy, & never attain their perfect magnitude; they grow plenteouſly in *Bohemia* and *Spain*, upon many Oakes, on whoſe trunks, and boughs they adhære often without pedicles.

There are many ſorts of Galls, two whereof are eſpecially accommodated to make up medicaments and condenſe hides, the one is called *Omphacitis*, which is ſmall, rugous, nodoſe, ſolid and perviated with no holes; the other plain, light, flave, more laxe within, larger, and perforated; out of whoſe holes comes a certain inſect, or fly, or vermicle, or ſome ſuch little animall for the moſt part.

The beſt *Galls* emerge out of thoſe Oakes we call *Hemeris* and *Robur*. *Hemeris* is that that ſome call *Midion*, its caule is orbicularly contorted, bearing many Acornes on the wings of its branches, and many *Galls*.

Robur is a Oake by *Theophraſtus* called Δρῦς, bearing *Galls* in great plenty, beſides many Acorns and other ſmall pills adhæreing to the middle of its leafes without any pedicle, as we ſee in our Oakes. Oakes do not only beare Acornes and naturall brancnes, but miſſelto *Galls*, Apples, Whamps, and many more pſeudo-fruits.

Galls are cold in the ſecond, dry in the third degree, they aſtringe potently, contract laxe parts, roborate imbecill ones, cohibite fluxes, and are efficaciouſly uſurped to aſtringe and ſiccate. *Vires.*

SECT.

SECT. VII.

Of Gums.

NOthing is more common then Gums, Rosines *and* Lacrhima's; *yet nothing of greater controversy about their true knowledge and distinction amongst themselves: for scarce any Author that ever writ hereof, but have promiscuously and confusedly mingled them together, reckoning* Amber, Ambergreese, Amoniacum, Sagapenum, Galbanum and Scammony *amongst liquors.* Weeker *jumbles together, both Gums, Rosines, concreted Juices, and Liquors: others have described them with this and that Plant. We shall observe a better method, and distinguish Gums from Rosines, and both from Liquors.*

CHAP. I.

Of the succes and humours of Plants.

AS Hornes from Harts, and feathers and haire from many animals do annually decide; so do leafs, dawen, flowers & fruits from Plants, who also have their flesh, their nerves bones, veines, and also blood and humour destinated for each parts nutriment, and not only these, but their flowers also, as women have, which in certain circulations of seasons, flowe from them; as Teares from Vines, *Gums* from Cherry Almond and other Trees, Rosine from Lentisks, Pitch from *Larch*, and other liquors from other Trees, when they are molested with its quantity: for as blood swells and troubles animalls, if it be too copious; so doth humours Plants, whereunto they give passage either spontaneously, or by art, that by their profluence they may find ease and incolumity.

Now a Plants blood is its proper juice, which according to *Aristotle* is in Fig-Trees like milke, in Vines like an humour, in some like liquid Pitch, in other like oyle, in some like *Gums*, and the same Philosopher saith that some have succe like Rosine Myrrhe, Frankincense and Storax; some also have veines, belly and parts analogous to them of an animall, contrary to Anaxagoras. *Sanguis plantarum varius.*

This humour of Plants, which fayling, the Plants begin to fayle, and which being exsiccated, they tabesy, wants a common name

name according to *Theophraſtus*, and ſo are denoted by the vulgar word ſucce; which ſome call teares, others liquor, others humours which according to their various coctions acquire various ſpiſſitudes and colours.

If we look at the conſiſtency of theſe humours, ſome are thin and aqueous, others craſſe and viſcid, others harder, others ſuch as may be condenſed, and others ſuch as cannot; and if we look at their ſapour and quality, ſome are vineus as the ſucce of Vines, Apple-Trees, Mulberry-Trees, and Myrtle; others fat, as thoſe of *Olives*, Nut-Trees, and Almond-Trees; others viſcid and reſinous, as thoſe of the Firre-Tree, *Pine*, and *Larch*; others ſweet as thoſe of the Figg-Tree, Palme, and *Jujubs*; others acrimonious as thoſe of *Origanum*, Pepper, and Muſtard Plant; and others amare, as thoſe of Worm-wood, earth Gall, and Coloquintida.

CHAP. II.

What Gum is and how it differs from Roſins and other concrete Liquors.

THough the ſucces of Plants being multifarious cannot according to *Oribaſius* be eaſily comprehended; yet who ſo reduces them to certain heads and kinds, ſhall and may get certain knowledge of them.

Quid ſuccus Now this χυλος, or ſucce is that humour wherewith a Tree is nouriſhed, and which cannot be ſpontaneouſly elicited, but by præcedent triture, expreſſion, or other præparation; and it is alwayes thin unleſſe it be exſiccated by calour, as we ſee in Rob, and other inſpiſſated ſucces.

But Liquor is craſſer, and ſuch as will ſomtimes ſpontaneonſly, ſomtimes by vulneration delabe lachrimouſly, whence it is often called Tears: if this Liquor be oleaginous and liquid, we call it *Liquor.* περιν, or *Roſine*; if more terrene, aqueous and concrete in the Trunks of Trees, we call it *Gum*; if it be partly terrene and aqueous, partly oleaginous and fatt, participating both of the nature of *Gum* and *Roſine*, then we call it *Gummy Roſine.* *Reſina.* *Gummi.*

Now *Gum* that I may uſe the exoticall *Idiome Commi*, is a coagulated *Lachryma* or tear, concreted in the Trunks of thoſe Trees that produce it, (*Gal. C.* 40. *L. de ſimp.*) whoſe ſubſtance is more aqueous, as that of *Roſine* is more oleaginous. *Gums*, therefore ſhould be admixed moſt to aqueous, ſeldome to oleaginous medicaments *Roſine* in the contrary, eaſily takes flame; but *Gumme* cracks in the fire; for though it come hott from ſtillation, yet is it preſently coagulated in the air and becomes aqueous and hence *Aroſtotle* makes it to crack upon burning coles. *Gummi quid.*

But ſince it is of many kinds according to the different nature of the Trees that produce it, for ſome *Gums* are coagulated hard like

like a ſtone; others ſofter; ſome more pellucid or flave; others more obſcure or pallid; ſome flowing from peregrine, others from indigenous Trees. I ſhall firſt treat of that which comes out of the ſpine Acacia, and is nominated *Gumme* ſimply.

CHAP. III.

Of Gum-Arabick.

Gumme is an *Arabick* word, and when it is put abſolutely; it muſt be underſtood of *Gum-Arabick*, which *Galen* calls *Thebane*, ſome *Babylonian*, and others *Acanthine Gumme*. It flowes from a certain arbuſcle, which *Dioſcorides* calls *Acacia*, whereof he conſtitutes two ſorts, the firſt aſſurging with a direct and lignous caule; armed on every ſide with hard ſpines; veſted with long leafes, which look as if they were conſtituted of many ſmall leafes, cohæreing together; white flowers; ſhort codds, like Lupines; a glabre and ſplendent ſeed; which *Matthiolus* depinges ill. *Nomina.* *Acacia* *Gummi.* *flua.* *Species.*

The other *Acacia* growes in *Cappadocia* and *Pontus*, which is leſſer, ſlenderer, and lower then the other, whoſe leafes are like Rue, and virgults aculeated, out of which a ſucce is educed which retaines the name of its *Arbuſcle*, *Acacia*; becauſe of whoſe rarity we ſubſtitute the ſucce of the wild Plum-Tree; out of which; laudable *Gum* flowes forth, at firſt pellucid as glaſſe, ſincere and contracted into the ſpecies of a vermicle, afterwards white, ſordid, reſinous, and uſeleſſe.

It is efficacious in ſpiſſating and refrigerating; it is commodiouſly mixed with ocular and arteriall medicaments, it obſtructs the pores of the skin, is repreſſes prociduous eyes; that it may be more eaſily pulverated; it muſt be verberated in a hot mortar with a hot Peſtell. *Vires.*

CHAP.

CHAP. IIII.

Of Gumme Tragacanth.

Gum-Tragacanth is pellucid, white, ſweet, light and ſincere; which flowes from the vulnerated root of a certain Plant of the ſame name, this root adhæres to the ſurface of the Earth, and emitts low and rigid ſurcles; whereon are many and ſlender leafes which cover white, ſtraight, and firm ſpines: this arbuſcle which the Greeks call *Tragacantha*, and the Latines *Spina hirci*, growes in *Crete* and many places in *Aſia*, which emitts its ſucce ſpontaneouſly, and without inciſure; as *Theophraſtus* aſſerts contrary to *Dioſcorides*, who ſaith that this Plant hath no need of vulneration, which though it be exoticall and ſeldome ſeen by our herbaliſts, yet I ſaw it cicurated and florid in the Garden of *Jo. Gonnerius* that perite Phyſitian; yet its coagulated ſucce, which the Gentiles call *Tragacanthum*, and the Apothecaryes *Dragaganthum* is ſufficiently known to all: it cannot be eaſily lævigated unleſſe the Morter and peſtle be hot.

Its uſe is commended to ocular medicaments, in a liniment with Honey or Sugar; it emends the roughneſſe of the artery, coughs, retuſeneſſe of voice, and other defluxions. *Vires.*

CHAP. V.

Of Gum Ammoniacum.

THis *Gum* is called *Ammoniack* becauſe it diſtills upon the Sands neare *Jupiter Ammons* Oracle; but from what Plant is uncertain. *Pliny* ſaith it flowes from a Tree they call *Metopion*, *Dioſcorides* ſayes it emanates both from a ſhrub they call *Agaſyllis*, and from a ferulaceous Plant; but the ferulaceous Plants can ſcarce be called fruticall.

Galen aſſerts that it is the Tears of *Ferula*, from which is collected both a ſincere denſe *Gumme*, conſpurcated with no ſordidity, and coacted into ſmall glebes; as alſo an impure and inquinated one which *Dioſcorides* call *Phyrama*, who calls the other *Thrauſma*.

That is good which is inquinated with no ſandy, terrene, nor extraneous matter, effigiated like maſculine frankincenſe, graveolent, and amare; the Apothecaryes call it corruptly *Gum Armoniack*, it may be diſſolved in Water, Vinegar, or White-Wine.

It is ſo efficacious a mollitive, that it diſſolves the ſtoney diſeaſe of the Junctures, and diſcuſſes other tubercles; it cures indurated Milts, aud in drink liberates from obſtructions, it moves urine and flowers, and extrudes ſtones. *Vires.*

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of Lacca and Cancamum.

WHat *Lacca*, and what *Cancamum* are, whether they be both one or distinct, and what each of them is, doeth not appeare by the writings of Authours. *Serapio*, *Paulus*, and *Matthiolus* believe that *Lacca* is that which *Dioscorides* calls *Cancamum*. *Brasavolus*, *Garcias ab horto*, and *Clusius* think it is a distinct thing, who being desirous to find out the truth have lustrated various tracts of the world, and think that *Lacca* is not only distinct from *Cancamum*, but also unknown: for seeing it is only used for perfumes, and we have many more fragrant and suaveolent *Thymiamata*, it hath not been so diligently sought after; moreover being exoticall, the Tree from which it delabes, growing, as it is thought, in *Arabia*, our Merchants have not deigned it worth the search and portage: however it is a kind of *Gum*, of a virous sapour, sweet odour, and rare use. Now *Lacca* is destitute of both these qualityes frequently invented, neither the *Arabian* Chermes, nor the succe of Sorbe-Tree, nor Medlar-Tree; nor yet like Myrrhe, as *Avicenna* writes, who it may be knew it not; but if *Garcias de horto* may be credited it is a kind of Favago, and concreted liquor, on the boughs of a vast Tree, coacted by the sucking and help of winged Ants.

And this Tree growes not in *Arabia*, but in *India*, especially in the province of *Pegu*, where *Lacca* is called *Trec*, as also in *Bengala* and *Malavar*, where it is called *Loc* and *Lac*. *Garcias* indeavours to establish and confirme this opinion by reason and much History, striving also to prove out of *Amatus Lusitanus*, that *Cancamum* is an *Aroma*, otherwise called *Anyme*, whereof he constitutes two varietyes, the one white, which also according to *Brissotus* a Physician of *Paris*, is *Dioscorides* his *Cancamum*; and the other somwhat black, which myrrhe or rather *Mynea* or *Amynea*.

Thus the obscurity of the thing, drives us to the affinity of names, there to investigate the truth: but if I may speak freely, I think that *Anyme*, or *Amynea* as some will have it, *Myrrhe* and *Cancamum* are three distinct things: and that, that which the shopmen call *Lacca* is that same which the ancients called *Cancamum*, who being ignorant of some words depromed from the *Barbarians*, believed such things as they heard though never so slackly, and so by calling *Cancamum Lacca*, left this liberty of discussing to the ensuing posterity. *Vires.*

Some maintaine this opinion, saying that there are three sorts of *Lacca*, one is *Dioscorides* his *Cancamum*, which scarce any ever saw, the second common *Lacca*, the third factitious, which Dyers use, whereof there are more differences, which for brevitys sake I omit.

The vulgar Lacca is hard, pellucid, and yellow like Myrrhe, circularly involving the furcles of an exoticall Tree, which is not I think, elicited, elaborated, and cohibited to the boughs of that Tree by the sucking and labour of *Indian* Ants, as *Garcias* affirmes; but exudes and concretes spontaneously, like other *Gummes* and Teares, for these animalls, labouring for victualls in Summer against Winter, do not expose their panifice, to the injuryes of the aire and Heavens, on boughs; but recond it in Caves and Holes, and few I hope will believe that *Indian* Ants will labour in vain for Lacca, and not congest and coact it for meat, but desert it. That which is brought to us, circumvests the sticks of the Tree, is hard and pellucid, easily dissolvable in water; and this ingredes the trochiskes of *Carabe* and *Dialacca*, and not the factitious *Lacca* as some perperously imagine.

Vires. It is not so much celebrated for medicinall as other mechanicall uses, as to the makeing of sealing Wax, and infecting such tinctures as are put upon ligneous vessells, and adorning other colours, for it makes them shine elegantly.

CHAP. VII.

Of Dragons-Blood,

THe pervestigation of *Dragons-Blood* hath exercised many wits: for some following the erroneous opinion of *Pliny*, think that it is the *Blood* of a *Dragon* animate, smitten by an Elephant, which errour *Solinus* doth not only embrace, but holds that *Cinnabaris* is that same which Apothecaryes call *Dragons-Blood*. *Serapio* writes, that it is the succe of a certaine Plant, which he calls *Sydrichis* and *Egilos*, which our Herbalists think is the fourth species of Wall-sage, some ignorant Apothecaryes are imposed upon by circulators, and buy a kind of businesse tincted with red Earth, and the juice of Madder, and such things, convolved into lumps, for *Dragons-Blood*.

Brassavolus foolishly constitutes three sorts of *Dragons-Blood*: the first factitious of pseudobole; the second the lacrymæ of a certaine Tree; the third *Gumme*. But as the adulterate is no species of *Dragons-Blood*; so neither can there be two sorts, the one a *Lacryma*, the other a *Gummé* of the same Tree, for all *Gumms* lacrymously distilling from any Tree, are called generally lacrymæ.

Aloysius Cadamustus a noble Venetian, expresses its Originall better; There is (saith he) in an Island called *Pontus Sanctus*, which is one of the *Canaryes*, *Dragons-Blood*, which is the Lachryma of a certaine Tree; which at a certaine season the incolists sauciate, out of which incisions the next yeare *Gumme* will emanate, which they coct in kettles, and defæcate making thereof *Dra-*

gons-

gons-Blood. That Tree beares fruits like Cherryes in *March*, which are of an eximious ſapour, and Venetian colour.

Nic. Monardus ſeems to aſſent to this opinion, and aſſerts that *Dragons-Blood* is the lachryma of ſome Tree, and not the Goare of any animall; for (ſaith he) a few dayes agoe, a *Carthaginian* Biſhop brought hither, from the continent of the new World, ſome of the fruit of that Tree, which emitts that *Lacryma* we call *Dragons-Blood*.

The fruit is very admirable; for the skin wherewith it is covered being taken away, a little *Dragon* appeares of ſuch artificiall yet naturall fabricature, that the moſt perite artiſt cannot better ingrave it in Marble; it is conſpicuous with an oblong neck, a gaping mouth, an aculeated back-bone, a long tayle and feet.

From this fruit both the Tree and its *Lacryma* derived their names: that is beſt which is brought from *Carthage*,

The Tree is tall, with a thin barke, and eaſily vulnerable, whoſe name being unknown to the ancients, they wrote no certainty of the nature and originall of its *Lacryma*. *Cluſius* ſaw the Tree and deſcribed it accurately.

Dragons-Blood then, is the name both of an exoticall Tree, and the hard purpureous *Gumme* concreted on its boughs.

It is collective and agglutinatory, and therefore fitt to conjoyn wounds, and aſtringe and roborate laxe parts: it may eaſily be diſſolved in water. *Vires.*

CHAP. VIII.

Of Aſa fœtida.

MAny following the opinion of the ancients, conſtitute two ſorts of *Aſa*; one ſweet and odorate, and the other *Fœtid* and ſtinking: the later they ſay is the *Arabian Altit*, the former the Apothecaryes *Belzoni*, and both come out of *Laſer* or *Laſerpitium*, but what ſweet-*Aſa* is, cannot yet be determined: Nay I think it is more ignote to this latter age, then *Aſa fœtida* was to the ancients, of which, they never make mention that I know of; but now it is ſo frequent in *Pharmacopolyes*, that it offends every youngſters noſe, it growes on a ferulaceous Plant, as *Belzoin* doth of a tall one, which I never find called *Aſa*. But as the ſapour, odour and originall of each of them is different, ſo is their nomenclature.

Now *Aſa fœtida* is the excrement, or *Gumme* of *Laſer* or *Laſerpitium*, which *Dioſcorides* calls *Stilphion*; *Avicenna Altit*, or *Antit*, the *Indians Anjuden*; and the Apothecaryes *Aſſa*, but more properly *Aſa*, as if they ſhould ſay *Laſer*: for *Laſer* is a *Lacryma*; *Laſerpitium*, a Plant out of which this *Laſer* or *Aſa* is elicited, not *Aſſa*; which according to *Rhaſis* is an hearb that ſome call *Hyſſope*, others *Thyme*: Now *Laſerpitium* is a ferulaceous Plant with an annuall *Aſa quid.*

Caule, which they call *Maſpetum*; leafes like *Apium*, but flave broad and foliaceous ſeed; and a black, craſſe, long and cubitall root. *Garcias* indeed doth boldly pronounce *Aſa* a *Lacryma* of *Laſerpitium*, but exhibites a jejune deſcription thereof, ſpeaking only a little of its leafes which he ſaith are like Haſle leafes. This Plant doth peculiarly avoid all cultivated places; and therefore by culture abſolutely deviates and degenerates, as naturally deſpiſeing culture (according to *Theophraſtus*) to whom ferocity is vernaculer.

I find each part of this Plant deſigned by a ſpeciall nomenclature; for ſome call its root *Magudaris*; its Caule *Silphion*; its leafes *Maſpetum*; its ſeed *Folium*: for (ſaith *Theophraſtus*) that folium is ſeed, but *Magydaris* differs from *Laſerpitium*; now whether it be a part of the ſame Plant, or another Plant allyed hereunto, it matters not; for *Aſa* is the *Lacryma* or *Gumme* of *Laſerpitium*, which is either taken from its root or from its caule *Theophraſtus* calls that of the root, *Radicarium*; and the other, *Scaparium*.

It growes in *Armenia*, *Media*, *Lybia*, and *Syria*; whence it is ſomtimes called the *Lybian*, ſomtimes the *Median*, and *Syrian* ſucce. They called it of old, the *Cyrenian* ſucce, becauſe it grew copiouſly and well in the *Cyrenian* feilds, but that name is now almoſt abrogated: for the *Barbarians* out of ſome hatred conceived againſt the *Cyrenians*, eradicated and extirpated all their *Laſerpitium*, as *Strabo* denotes. The *Syrian Laſer* is beſt after the *Cyrenian*, and the Median after the *Syrian*.

There are two ſorts of *Aſa*, the one pure, ſincere, and tranſparent; the other turbid and impure, wherewith bran or Sagapene is mixed, whoſe halite and ſtinking odour it well reſembles.

Hence the *Germans* call it the Devills dung: both of them are very odorate, but graveolent, ſo that I cannot eaſily aſſent to their opinion who think that one ſort of *Aſa* is ſweet; for neither the odour of the one nor of the other can be tolerated without loathſomneſſe, whence I admire that *Garcias* ſhould ſay that no ſimple medicament in all *India* ſhould be more in uſe then *Aſa fœtida*, both in medicines, and alſo in meats. The *Indians* are wont to mix it with their Pot-hearbs in their pottage; having firſt rubbed their kettles therewith, uſeing no other condiment to any meat, but take it to recall their appetite when they cauſeate any thing. If this be a not fable, *Aſa* muſt either not ſtink in *India*, or the *Indians* muſt have braſen throats as the Proverb goes: this *Aſa* is ſo ingratefull to us both in odour and ſapour, that we can eaſily pardon *Matthæus Sylvaticus* who repoſed it amongſt Poyſons, yet *Dioſcorides* commends it for meat.

Vires. Who enumerated ſo many and ſo great faculties, wherewith it is indued that he was able to move loathſomneſſe. The more recent hold it very efficacious, but only to a few affections; who never uſe it ſave againſt the aſcent, and aberration of the uterus, and ſome other diſeaſes appertaining to women.

CHAP

CHAP. IX.

Of Sagapene or Serapine.

Sagapene by Apothecaryes, *Serapinum*, is a concrete liquour flowing out of the ſauciated root of a ferulaceous Plant in *Media*, whoſe deſcription *Dioſcorides* omitted becauſe perhaps he had not ſo much knowledge of the Plant, as of the ſucce, which Plant I neither yet ſaw, nor read deſigned by any authour; for being exoticall it is either not cicurable, or if cicurated ſterile, without ſucce, and marcid. Its concrete ſucce, therefore, is only brought us, the beſt whereof is tranſlucid, yellow, white within, acrimonious, graveolent, and craſſe in ſubſtance.

Sagapene calefyes in the third degree, ſiccates in the ſecond, purges craſſe Phlegme, and other viſcid humours, as *Meſue* atteſts: yet its purgative faculty is in ſome very ignave, in others potent, for either drunk, or uſed by way of ſuppoſitory it evokes flowers, kills the young; cures the dolour and præfocation of the uterus, reſolves, attenuates, diſſipates, moves, and ſolves.

CHAP. X.

Of Galbanum.

Galbanum is alſo the concrete ſucce of a *Syrian Ferula* copiouſly growing in the Mountain *Amanus*, which ſucce ſome call *Metopium*. *Dioſcorides* knowing this *Gummeous* ſucce better then the Plant, left nothing in writing of its dignotion; but as the ferulæ are well known, ſo alſo are their liquors and ſucces; and that not only by their conſiſtency, but colour, odour, ſapour and facultyes: for *Galbanum* in aſpect repræſents *Aſa*; in odour *Opopanax*. The beſt is cartilaginous, ſyncere, like *Gumme Ammoniack*, not lignous, in which there is ſome ferula ſeed; graveolent, not very humid, nor ſqualid; this as all other *Gummes* may be eaſily diſſolved in water, Vinegar, or Wine.

It is excalefactive extractive, & diſcuſſive: it accelerates flowers, deliverance in Child-bearing, either by admotion, or ſuffumigatiõ; diſſolved with Vinegar and mixed with a little nitre it deleats pimples, it diſcuſſes boyles and lumps on the junctures; it is adverſe to Poyſons, and drives away Serpents. *Vires.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Of Opopanax.

THat *Opopanax* is the ſucce of *Panax*, both its name demonſtrates, and *Dioſcorides* affirmes; but ſeeing there are many ſorts of *Panax*, it is not apparent, out of which of them it emerges. *Meſue* ſaies it flowes from the ferulaceous *Panax*; *Dioſcorides*, from tht *Heraclean*; and ſome ſay, from the *Chironian Panax*.

Dodoneus tells us that it diſtills from a peregrine *Panax*; to wit the *Syrian Panax*; which hath ample, ſharpe, hirſute, long and broad leafes, a geniculated and ferulaceous Caule, of three or four cubits heighth, ſupernally diſterminated into many boughs; with luteous flowers erupting out of ample umbells; after which, broad, plain and ſubflave ſeeds do emerge, its root is whitiſh, long ſucculent and odorate; a *Gummeous* ſucce flowes out of its Caule vulnerated eſpecially towards the root in ſummer; which *Pliny* and many more call *Opopanax*; which is laudable for many uſes, as the nomenclature of the Plant from which it flowes demonſtrates: for *Panax* or *Panaces* denotes the abigation of all dolours, and the remedy of all diſeaſes; hence many *Pſeudomedicks* call ſome medicaments which are more perilous then the diſeaſes, *Panaceous* remedyes: thus did a lying drunken, vain, ſalacious *Pleudomedick* deceive many Country and credulous perſons while he lived.

Vires. *Opopanax* is a kind of *Gumme* eaſily diſſolvable by water, it excalefyes in the third degree, ſiccates in the ſecond; mollifyes, digeſts, attenuates, diſſipates flatuoſity, leniates and expurges: that which is very amare, white within, or ſomwhat yellow, fatt, tender, friable, eaſily liqueſtible and graveolent is good; the black and ſoft is not good.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Of Sarcocolla.

Sarcocolla is both the name of a peregrine Plant, and a *Gumme* flowing out of it; it growes in *Persia*, it is fruticous and spinose, with nodose boughs appressed to the Tree; which sauciated, and somtimes spontaneously, lacrymates a kind of Frankincense like Powder of a yellowish colour and amare sapour.

It calefyes in the second degree, siccates not so much, it cocts deterges, carnifyes, and glutinates; whence it is called *Sarcocolla*, for it heales wounds wonderfully, for it doth by a proper faculty, expurge them from filth, repleate them with flesh, and obduce them to a skarre. *Vires.*

The *Arabians* say, that *Sarcocolla* doth not only subduce the belly, but educe crasse and viscid humours from places much distited, as from the cavityes of the Articles; but reason, and their effects seem to refragate this: it doth indeed with much efficacy conglutinate wounds, inhibite the fluxions of the eyes, and digest but not so much as *Galbanum*; if it be five dayes macerated in Asses milke, in a glasse-vessell, and the milk daily changed, it will exceedingly help such as have pearls, or dimme and clowdy eyes.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Gumme of Ivy.

THe trunk of the greater *Ivy* vulnerated, and somtimes spontaneously, elacrymates a certain *Gummeous* succe of an aureous colour, graveolent and sharpe to the gust, which they call *Ivy-Gumme*. Now *Ivy* is a Scansory Tree, which circumvests walls, and vicine Plants; which it kills with its multifarious convolutions and virour.

Wherof there are two prime kinds: the one greater, which erects it selfe on high; the other lesser, which creeps along the ground with slender and obsequious branches, neither beareing flower nor fruit.

There are three varietyes of the greater *Ivy*; one is called white *Ivy*, because it beares white berryes; another black that beares black ones; and the third barren that beares none, which some take for the lesser *Ivy*.

The white beares white berryes, and somtimes white leafes, emitting certaine branches or capreols out of the midst of its leafs, wherewith it so strictly complects the Trees, that it kills them by sucking their humour from them; or so pertinaceously adhære to

walls

walls that they can ſcarce be ſejoyned, for it emitts as many beginnings and rudiments of roots, as it doth branches, and remaines ſo vivacious, that though interciſed in many places, yet it tabeſyes not.

The black and more vulgar which they call *Dionyſia*, creeps upon Walls and old ædifices, and amplects Trees with its radicall fingers, its leafes are angulous; for at firſt they are triangular, afterwards more rotund, hard and nitent with perpetuall viridity, its flowers are ſmall berryes, at firſt herbaceous, then black, adhæreing racemouſly upon oblong pedicles: other hæderaceous matters are ſo notorious, as not to need further explication.

All *Ivies* are hot and ſeldome uſed in medicine; except the leafes, which are adhibited by way of Sparadrappes, to the fonticles left by Cauſticks, that they may alliciate watry and ſerous humours to thoſe parts; its *Gum* kills Nitts, which by its exceeding calour impreſſes a ſenſe of aduſtion and denudates the head of haires; for it is a good Pſyloter.

Vires.

SECT.

SECT. VIII.

Of Rosines.

Chap. I.

What Rosine *is, and of its Varities.*

Rosine, by the Greeks ῥητίνη, is a lachryma or liquor, fat, and oleaginous, distilling from a tree, often spontaneously, and sometimes by vulneration: That which emergeth spontaneously, is called αὐτόῤῥητος, and by some πρωτόῤῥητος. *Quid.*

All Rosine consisting of an oleous substance, and tenuious parts, is more promptly dissoluble in oleous and affine liquors, and therein dissident from Gumme; which consisting of a more aqueous substance, is more expeditely and accurately soluble in aqueous liquors.

If we look to the consistency of Rosines, we shall finde them of two sorts; the one liquid, by the Greeks ὑγρὰ, that is, humid or fluxile, as Turpentine; the other harder and dryer, by the Greeks, φρυκτὴ, that is, broiled, or rosted; such as Colophonia, so denominated from *Colophon*, whence it was of old brought: which is most dry, and most flave; yet its powder is white.

This is before the rest called φρυκτὴ, or συγκομιστὴ, that is, confused, because it's indurated into a mass, from many congested together: for, it often happens, that the primisluous Rosine by negligent collection, contracts and retains sand, stones, pieces of wood, or straws, or such sordidities; from which, that it may be purged, it must be melted, the extraneous rejected, and so it becomes purer, harder, and dryer.

There is another kinde of Rosine, concreting without the help of fire, which the Greeks call ξηρὰ, that is, dry; which participating of no pinguetude, is presently dry, and called by *Galen*, φύσημα πιτύινον, that is, a piceous germination.

That which is sold in shops being hard, flave, and fryable, is indeed a certain confused Rosine; for it consists of the lacryma of Firre-tree, Pitch-tree, and Pine-tree: which in accension makes a fume like Frankincense. *Vires.*

Galen makes much mention of the Strobilian Rosine, which some say flows from the Pine-tree, others from the Pitch-tree, others from Pine-nuts, which they call *Strobili*. This is the hottest of Rosines; Turpentine is most moderate in both qualities: for, all Rosines calisie and siccate; the Strobilian most, Turpentine least.

That is the dryest of all, which some call φρυκτὴ, others Colophonian Rosine; all them also are dry, that are purged by fire, and made fryable.

Firre-tree Rosine is moderate in both qualities, which some do ill call Colophonian Rosine, for it remains long liquid: it siccates little, and flows but in small quantity, and therefore more precious.

Turpentine is preferred before all other Rosines, Mastick is next, then Firre-tree Rosine, then Pine-Rosine, and then Pitch.

Rosines are of much use, not onely in Pharmacy, but many other things; they mollifie, califie, digest, and are good ingredients in salves and unguents, for the curation of wounds and ulcers.

We have in the Section of Fruits, treated of the Pine, and other coniferous Trees.

Chap. 2.

Of Pitch.

These words, *Pix*, *Teda*, *Pissa*, *Palimpissa*, *Zopissa*, *Pissaphaltos*, and *Pix navalis*, often occurre in the narration and dilucidation of Rosines; but what they denote, every one knows not at first sight: *Pix* then or Pitch, is the flux of combust Rosine; or rather, a fat and rosinous liquor, colliquated and educed out of the middle of a Pine-tree accended.

Teda is not a tree, as *Pliny* falsly asserts, but a disease hapning to the Pine-tree by age; wherein it is as it were strangulated by its too much pinguetude: for the abundance of that rosinous matter, wherewith the whole Tree is referted, is its ruine; which going into a Teda, may by artificial sedulity be accended, and it will effuse Pitch; which the Greeks call *Pissa*.

Palimpissa, is iterated or twice-boiled Pitch; that is, when by a second liquid coction and elaboration, it is made more crass, pure, harder, and dryer: ξηρὰ πισσα, is dry Pitch.

Zopissa, is Pitch deraded from off maritimous ships; which, because of its contracted saltness in the Sea, is more efficaciously exsiccative and discussive: Some call it *Apochyma*.

Pix navalis, so called from pitching-ships, is that which is deraded from ships lately pitched, as *Zopissa*, of a longer continuance: when *Pix navalis* is put absolutely, *Zopissa* should be taken; and when *Zopissa*, this.

Pissaphaltum, is Pitch mixed with Bitumen, which the Ancients used in conditing dead bodies. Yet *Dioscorides* thinks it is no artificial, but a natural commixture: for (saith he) *that which we call* Pissaphaltum, *grows in the Apollinatarian field, near* Epidaurus. But we will treat more largely hereof, in the Chapter of *Mummy*.

Pitch differs from Rosine in this, that Pitch is educed by fire, and Rosine erupts spontaneously: They are both the product of the

the same Trees, but Pitch is as it were cocted Rosine.

The eduction of Pitch, is effected after the manner that we make Charcoal; for the middles of the Pine-trees are cut into spears, and congested upon an artificial Pavement; then the boughs of Firre and pitch-tree superimposed; then all so covered with earth, clay, or such incombustible matter, that no chink be left anywhere, save on the top, or other more convenient place, whereat they may immit the fire, and at first emit the flame: but when the *Tedæ* are accended, they occlude all very strictly and closely, lest the flame should erupt, and they be frustrated. If any chink dehisce, and admit any flame, or fume, they presently obstruct it: The Clusters of of the Pine thus æstuating by the heat of the fire, emits Pitch copiously into certain chanels artificially structed, which carry it to troughs, and they to other vessels, set on purpose to receive the torrent. Now it acquires its Nigretude by the fume and heat, whence it is called Black Pitch: for, that which is flave, is rather Rosine then Pitch.

That which extills first, is more fluid and humid, which the shopmen call Liquid Pitch: *Pliny* calls it *Cedria*; *Dioscorides*, *Pisselæon*; which is rightly so had, by separating the aqueous humour, which swims upon the Pitch, as Cream upon Milk. Now it is best separated, while the Pitch is cocting, by suspending a clean fleece of wooll in the fume of the Pitch, which will become madid therewith; and that we call *Pisselæon* may be expressed out of it: which is not properly a simple medicament, but rather a compound of Pitch and Oyl.

That which comes out second, is more crass and dry, and the last most crass, and hardest, and most efficaciously exsiccative.

There is another kinde of suaveolent liquid Pitch, which Seplasiaries call *Oleum Cadinum*, sometimes Tarre; which is most used upon Sheep and Cattel.

Seeing all Pitch is either liquid, or more sicce; the sincere, light, and splendent in both kindes, is most laudable; the liquid mollifies, digests, abates dolour, cocts, moves snot, extricates the nails from scabrosity, emends Ring-worms, discusses the hardness of the Matrix and Fundament: the dryer performs the same effects, but more imbecilly; but it siccates more potently, and is more accommodated to agglutinate wounds and ulcers. *Vires.*

Chap. 3.

Of Turpentine.

The true Turpentine, is had from the Turpentine-tree, which the Greeks call *Termintho*; for it is a fat liquor, flowing from its boughs and trunk: The best is clear, pellucid, white, sharp, and odorate. That also which hath these qualities, and is somewhat flave, is good. That which comes from the Island *Chios*, and is

thence called *Chia*, is most celebrated, for its antecellency in odour and gust: The next is the *Lybian* Turpentine, as *Andromachus* himself attests; the next is the *Pontian* Turpentine: The less celebrous are the *Cyprian*, *Syrian*, *Indian*, and *Arabick* Turpentines.

The Turpentine-tree is concocted, fructicous, and of a mean magnitude, with a crass caul, many and oblong boughs, long leaves, like them of an Ash; many cohering to one pedicle, but crasser and fatter, each of them seeming like a Laurel leaf: its flowers are very small, mossy, and purpureous; its fruits small, racemously cohering, round, oblong, hard, fat, and rosinous, infecting the contrectants hand.

It bears also certain oblong Cods, incurvated like Cornicles; wherein certain little Vernicles, like Gnats, are included; and sometimes a certain humour, as in the vescicles of Elms: The matter of its wood is viscid, and not hard; its roots are valid, and deep.

One sort of the Turpentine-tree is masculine, which is sterile; another fœminine, which is fœcund: and this, for the various colour of its fruit, is twofold; the one bears red fruit, of the magnitude of Lentils; the other greater, pallid, and more fragrant.

It grows copiously in hot Regions, and germinates most floridly there, where its liquor mutuates cognominations, as in *Chios*, *Cyprus*, *Syria*, about *Ida*, and *Macedonia*. Some there are that avouch, That hard, dry Turpentine, so concreted by the help of fire, is brought over and sold with us for Rosine. But I think, that none will coct Turpentine to lose by it, unless he be out of his senses: for Turpentine, be it how it will, is alwayes in more esteem, and at a higher rate then Rosine, be it concreted with all the industry and helps that can be.

There flows a certain humid Rosine out of Larch-tree, which being like Turpentine, is often sold to our Merchants in stead thereof: But Larigna is sharp in odour, gust, and faculties; and also of more tenuious parts, and more discussive then Turpentine.

Turpentine is the Prince of Rosines, Mastick is the next, and then the Rosine of Firre and Pitch-tree; after which, we enumerate Pine-Rosine: yet *Galen* prefers Mastick before Turpentine.

Vires. Turpentine is the mildest of Rosines, the most familiar Balsame for wounds; it califies moderately, mollifies, expurges, discusses, purges the reins, moves urine, and is an excellent præsidy for many uses. They know what eximious faculties it hath, who labour under a virulent flux of Sperm.

T

Chap.

Chap. 4.

Of Frankincense.

Frankincense is the rosinous lachryma of a certain arbuscle in *Arabia*, which the Incolists call sometimes *Conder*, sometimes *Lovan*: whereof there are two sorts; the one is Masculine Frankincense, which is somewhat flave, limpid, pellucid, fat and dry; in purity emulating the Cedar-Rosine; in Nitre, it's succe: it may be it is called *Olibanum Thus*, because it comes from the Mount of *Lebanon*, with the Greek article *ὁ* before it.

The other is the Fœminine Frankincense, which is more rosinous, soft, and liquestible, which yields in bonity to the former: They both flow out of a Plant, scarce known, save by some notes, because it is peregrine, growing in *Arabia*, with leaves like the Mastick-tree: whereof there are two sorts; the one montanous, which fruticating onely on rocky and rough Mountains, bears the best Frankincense; the other growing more copiously in plain places, emits Frankincense in much more abundance, but not so good: both of them are easily dissoluble in Oyl.

The bark of the Frankincense-tree, is crass, fat, odorate, light, smooth, and without membranes: it is indued with the same faculties, but more hot, astrictive, and of crasser parts then Frankincense.

Manna thuris, is that same dust or powder which is elicited from Frankincense by Collision in carriage, or the like, as we have noted before. Frankincense is both introsumed, and applied extrinsecally with much success; for it is indued with innumerable eximious faculties, which to recenseate, would require too much of time and labour. It califies in the second degree, siccates in the third, and moves Phlegm, but not very efficaciously. *Vires.*

Manna thuris is astrictive, because of that portion of Frankincense that is mixed with it; from which it differs, in that it is not so potently astrictive, nor coctive.

Chap. 5.

Of Belzoin.

Belzoin is neither a species of the succe of Laserpitium, nor of Cyraniacum, nor yet of Myrrhe, as some contend; nor yet the rosinous succe of Angelica, as *Ruellius* seems to intimate. For *Laser*, or *Asa*, comes from *Syria*, *Cyrenene*, and *India*, into other Regions; *Belzoe* from *Samara*, *Sian*, and other Regions, into *India*; which grows not on a ferulaceous plant, but a tall tree, whose caul is crass, hard, brachiated with many boughs, very orderly disposed, and laterally extended; its leaves oblong and mucronated, like Lemmon-

tree

tree leaves, but not so green; for their averse part is whitish; its wood is hard and odorate.

It grows spontaneously in many woods, both in *Malaca* and other Regions: whereunto, the frequency of Tygers hinders address.

Where these fierce animals are more rare, the trees are vulnerated by the Incolists, which effuse copiously this odorate Rosine, which the Chineans call *Cominhan*, the Arabians *Lovaniacy*; the Incolists of *Guzarata* and *Decan*, *Udo*.

Species. There are three sorts of Belzoin: the one called Almond-Belzoin, because it is maculated like condited Almonds, which is most expetible: the other two sorts are very black; the one whereof is not very fragrant, and more vile; the other very fragrant, which exudes from new trees, and is by the Incolists of *Samatra* called, *Benini de Boninas*: the best, is that which is pellucid, referted with white spots, like Frankincense, and most fragrant.

Vires. Belzoin roborates the heart, spirits, and all its faculties: it is a good ingredient in sweet Antidotes, and Medicaments composed for ornament. It is dissoluble, as other Rosines, in oleaginous liquors.

Chap. 6.

Of Euphorbium.

Euphorbium, derived its Name from *Euphorbus* King *Juba's* Doctor; which it retains till this day. *Dioscorides* saith, its tree is a kinde of ferula pregnant with most sharp succe; whose extream fervour the Incolists fearing, they circumligate the tree with sheep-skins, and vulnerate its boughs with long spears; out of which wounds flows copious succe into the skins, which there concretes.

But *Dodoneus* thinks it is not a tree, but rather an herb, with oblong, crass, and green leaves, rotundly angulous, armed with two sets of white pricks; which leaves sauciated, effund a most sharp and mordacious liquor, which is easily concreted: for, as *Galen* writes, it is caustical and vulnerative, and so califies and extenuates, that therein it exuperates all concrete liquors.

It being thus acrimonious, and very tenuious, it cannot be pulverated without great molestation: wherefore Pharmacopolists commit it to rusticks, and men of low degree, to bray; charging them to avert their heads from its halite: Yet they escape not its fervity; for their brain and noses are moved by its dust and vapour, to sternutation, heat, heat and dolour. Its plant at first seems an herb, but by years grows to a tree.

Vires. Besides its eximious heat and acrimony, it is somewhat purgative, educing not onely phlegm, but water; yet it is never introsumed at the mouth alone, nor mixed with others, save in very small quantities.

Chap.

Chap. 7.

Of the Rosine of the Æthiopian Olive, improperly called Gumme Elemni.

THat fat liquor which shop-men call Gumme Elemni, is no Gumme, but a Rosine, which will easily take flame, and dissolve in oleaginous liquors. *Dioscorides* saith, it is like Scammony, but more flave; turgent with small stillicides, no whit vellicating the tongue, nor mordacious to the gust: whence, it is probable, he means of another lacryma, and not of this vulgar one, which the vulgar Pharmacopolists call Gumme-Elemi; it stills out of the Æthiopian Olive, and when it is concreted into lumps, is brought to us.

It califies, mollifies, digests, resolves, coëts, draws to suppuration, allayes dolour, and is very good for permission, with many unguents and salves.

Our Olives, and wilde-Olives, eructate such a kinde of lacryma, but neither so copious, nor commendable, yet is a good liniment for hebetude and whiteness in the eyes: and if it be assumed, it moves fluors, and extracts the young; but I would not have it introsumed, if it be poyson, as *Dioscorides* makes it.

There is a kinde of Rosine brought out of *New-Spain*, which the Indians vernacularly call *Tacamahaca*, like Gumme-Elemi, so vulgarly nominated. The Indians use it very much, to coct, digest, resolve, and allay frigid humours. *Nic. Monard.* recenseates many of its faculties, (*L. de Simpl.*) *Tacamahaca.*

There is another sort of fat, oleaginous, and tenacious Rosine, related to *Tacamahaca*, which the Indians call *Laranna*, who use it in humours, and all kinde of dolours. But seeing we determine not to treat of all Rosines, but onely of such as are usurped in our Antidotary, we will put an end to this Section. *Laranna.*

SECT.

SECT. IX.

Of gummeous Rosines.

ALL concrete liquors, erupting from ferulacious Plants, Fruits or Trees, that are to be washed with water, are denominated (and not without reason) Gummes; *because they have their original from a certain substance, that will easily admit of dissolution; and therefore they are enumerated in the regiment of Rosines; as, Mastick, Camphyr, and Storax, and many others: which sometimes are called Gummes, and sometimes Rosines: Concerning which, we intend to speak in this following Section with much brevity.*

Chap. I.

Of Mastick.

MAstick is the best of gummeous Rosines; it exudes from the Lentisk: that which comes from *Chios*, and is odorate, candid, splendent, fryable, adulte, and scorched, is best; the green, and black, like Bitumen, are worse. *Theophrastus* saith, That the spine *Ixina* exuctates Mastick; but that of the Lentisk is best for medicinal uses (if there be any other.)

The Lentisk is a very tall tree, by the Greeks called σχῖνος, from whose root branches erupt like Hasle sprigs, brachiated with tough and flexible boughs: its leaves cohere by eight together upon one pedicle, which are like them of Liquoris, but harder: its flowers are mossy, and many, adhering to long pedicles, whereunto berries of the magnitude of Vetches, succeed; which at first are green, by maturity black, of a fat substance, and turgent, with a black and hard Nut.

There grow upon Lentisks, besides their flowers, leaves, and fruits, certain Utricles intorted like Cornicles, wherein a certain liquor is contained, which produces some insects like Gnats, as in Elms, vesicles.

Its wood will make special tooth-picks, which will not onely purge, but roborate the teeth, constringe the gums, and conciliate sweetness of breath: its eximious faculties make it a good substitute for Xylobalsame.

Lentisks will scarce fruticate in *Lutetia*; yet I saw two in *Jo: Gonerius* his Garden, but they could scarce tolerate the Winters rigidity.

Mastick is celebrated for many things, but especially for allaying the dolours and affections of the stomack and ventricle; which does either by assumption or admotion: it takes away all loathsomness towards

towards meat, roborates the retentive faculty, and helps coction: it cures such as spit blood, or are infested with an inveterate Cough: it emends the breath, if commanducated, and gently tracts phlegm from the brain: it should be sprinkled with a little Rose-water, that it may be pulverated; it will easily dissolve in aqueous and oleaginous liquors.

Chap. 2.

Of Camphyre.

Camphyre is neither Bitumen, nor Medulla, nor compound Medicament, as some believe; but a certain pellucid gummeous Rosine, unknown to *Dioscorides* and the ancient Greeks, flowing from a peregrine tree, which *Garcias ab Horto* saith, is like a Walnut-tree, but its leaves are more candicant: The matter of its wood is cinericious, or somewhat blacker; not light or fungous, but pretty dense and solid.

This tree is tall, with boughs on every side, and of a fair aspect, which eructates lacrymæ; no whit more copiously when it thunders and corruscates, then when the heaven is serene, as many think.

This lacryma flows through the chinks of the tree, like other Gummes: it needs no coction to conciliate candor; for if dust, filth, or the fragments of any stones or wood be mixed with it, that happens through the oscitancy and errour of the collectors: the sincere splendent and odorate is best.

Hereof there are two sorts; the one, *Camphyre de burneo*, which is best, and is seldome or never brought to us; the other, Camphyre of *China*: whence Pharmacopolists have it frequently: it is of much use in those Regions where it grows, so that they sometimes use it amongst their meats. *Species.*

Some assert, That it califies in the third degree; others affirm, That it is frigid: Many reasons might be brought for both, which for brevity sake I omit; and attest, That it is good both in hot and cold diseases: for it is of a mist quality, and seems by its odour and tenuity of its spirit to be calid, though its other qualities demonstrate its frigidity.

Many think, that Camphyre arceates the stimulations to venery, and hinders conception: Whereupon, *Scaliger* being not too credulous, made tryal thereof, and found all to be false. Camphyre may be easily pulverated, with the addition of a little water: it is easily dissolved in aqueous, oleaginous, and fat liquors.

Chap. 3.

Of Storax.

STorax is the gummeous and rosinous concrete and dry succe of a certain *Syrian* tree, none whereof is liquid, humid, and fluxile, as some have judged, who constituted two sorts of Storax, to wit, the humid, and the sicce, both flowing from one tree: But the storacifluous tree distils onely a coagulable lacryma, which presently concretes to a dense, fat, and rosinous lump: no portion turning into fluxile liquor, as the old and false opinion of the *Arabians* avers, whose defendants were deceived by the affinity of the word Storax and Stacte, which in consistency, odour, sapour, quality, original and nature, are farre dissident: For Stacte is the pinguetude of new Myrrhe, tunded and expressed with a little water, and reducted to the liquid form of an unguent; or rather, the fat creamy Gumme of Myrrhe, or the fat Oyl of Myrrhe tunded and expressed; or its succe educed by some tortive instrument.

Stacte, Quid?

The Stacte which is oleous, is best; it participates not onely of the calefactive quality, but many other faculties of Myrrhe.

As soon as Storax erupts out of the tree, it concretes into a hard, dense, solid, and rosinous lump, with some white spots in it, and very fragrant. That which comes from *Pamphilia* in reeds, and is fat, viscid, white with spots, and of a persevering odour, is best; the furfurous, hoary, and inodorate, is naught. There comes also very good to us from *Cyprus*, *Sidon*, and *Pisidia*.

It eructates out of a tree, like a Quince-tree, but its leaves are lesser, less rigid, and hoary on the averse part: its flower is white, of the magnitude of an Orange-tree's flower, but not so in odour: small berries included in three ungles, and adhering to long pedicles, grow on its furcles. The concreted liquor of this tree, is much celebrated, which besides the aforesaid qualities, permanes very long suaveolent.

Vires.

Storax califies, mollifies, concocts, cures the Cough, heaviness, hoarsness; and whether introsumed or applied, opens the Matrix, and moves flowers: it is a good ingredient for cordial and lætificative Antidotes; it is adverse to such poisons, as hurt or kill by refrigeration. By way of liniment, it discusses swellings in the neck, and knots of sinews.

An Appendix.

Of gummeous Rosines improperly so called.

There are certain concrete liquors, which fall within the verge of our Institutions, which do possess a medium between the nature of Gumme and Rosines; neither are they so easily nor speedily dissolved with water, as some are; nor with oyl, as others: but either they subside, or burn to the bottom, or else grow harder; and so thereby are more averse from commixion: Of which sort are Bdellium and Myrrhe.

Chap.

Chap. 4.

Of Myrrhe.

Myrrhe, which the Greeks call *Smyrna*, is the concreted gummeous succe of a certain tree, growing in many Regions in *Arabia*, as *Sabe*, *Adramyta*, *Citibæna*, and *Mamali*. This myrrhifluous tree is of a moderate magnitude, with a hard caul contorted towards the earth; smooth back like Purslain, and aculeated leaves like an Elm. *Dioscorides* makes it like the Ægyptian Spine; others like the Turpentine-tree: *Diodorus* assimilates it to the Lentisk; yet so, as it is more spinous and lower, for it is seldome above five Cubits high.

It grows most frequently in saboulous, dry, and incultivated places, but most floridly in cultivated soyls: They incide it from the root to its boughs, out of which wounds it emits Myrrhe; but it spontaneously distils a kinde of stillatitious dew before its back be opened, which they call *Stacte*, and many imperite Pharmacopolists, Liquid Storax; falsly asserting, That it distils from the same Tree. But we have before declared, that they flow from different trees, and that there is no liquid Storax, unless that we call Stacte, which is no Storax.

But I return to Myrrhe, and the arbuscle from which it flows, which is exotical and peregrine, rough, spinous, with sharp and aculeated leaves, and in sapour like Juniper: It delights and fruticates copiously, in the same soyl and region with Frankincense-trees: its wound elacrymates a coagulated Gumme, of the same name with the tree. That which is fragile, smooth, concolorate in small lumps, amare, acrimonious, odorate, and hath veins candid, and smooth like nails, is best.

That which is collected of the sative tree, is better then that of the sylvestrian: but that is preferred before all, which bears the name of the place where it is had, and is called Troglodytical Myrrhe, which is somewhat green of colour, splendent, and mordacious.

There is one sort they call *Pediasimos*, another *Gaby*; both which are good, and emit plenty of Stacte. There are two bad sorts, one they call *Caucalis*, which is black and torcl.ed; the other *Ergasima*, which is the worst, it is macilent and hoary: there is also another called *Mynæa*, as ill as can be.

There is so much affinity betwixt Myrrhe and Bdellium, that many think they do not differ: but the contrary shall be proved by and by; both of them may be dissolved in watery and oleous liquors, but neither accurately nor easily.

Myrrhe califies and siccates in the second degree, opens the occluded Matrix, moves flowers, and accelerates the deliverance of young: Commanducated, it emends the gravcolence of the mouth. *Vires.*

Stracte, which is much celebrated for its suavity and efficacy, may be substituted for *Opobalsamum*, but Stracte is more rare: it roborates the stomack and principal parts, arceates putretude, recreates the spirit, and cures many diseases from the Uterus and brain.

Chap. 5.

Of Bdellium.

There is a tree in *Bactria*, which is black, of the magnitude of an Olive, with leaves like an Oak, and fruit like a Fig-tree, not insuave, whose lacryma some call *Brochon*, some *Malathram*, others *Maldacon*, and the Pharmacopolists *Bdellium*.

That which is amare to the gust, translucid when broken, fat when rubbed and incended, odorate, liquestible, like Wax, or Bulls-glue, soft, and void of sordidity, is approved. *Galen* commends the Scythian, *Pliny* the Bactrian, *Dioscorides* the Saracenian Bdellium.

The Indian, sordid, black Bdellium, convolved into gobbets, is the worst: some call it *Adrobolon*; that which grows in *Media*, called by Physicians, Parthian Bdellium.

Furthermore, out of what tree Bdellium exudes, is not concluded of amongst grave and learned men; some say it flows from one like that which emits Myrrhe; other affirm the contrary: Neither can I at present determine this doubtful cause. Perhaps they both come from plants much alike, one from a sative tree, the other from a wilde one; as we see many Apples, Pears, and Plums, much different in odour, colour and sapour, which grow on trees very much agreeing. However, Bdellium is no whit rare, and we have it as good as ever the Ancients designed it.

Vires. It califies, mollifies, resolves, it discusses hardness, and guttural tumours, and humid burstings; it relaxates the spiracles of the Matrix, either by admotion or suffumigation; it extracts fluors, young, and all humours. Being drank, it breaks the stone, and expels urine; it is excellent for mixture with a Pulteſs, against the hardness and knots of sinews.

SECT. X.

Of other humours and juyces ariſing from Plants.

The humour of Plants (*ſaith* Theophraſtus) *by an uſual Nomenclature, called Juyce, is the proper blood of the Plant; which if the Plant wants, it withers and periſhes, but if it abounds, it waxes young and flouriſheth: but this ſucce or humour, is various, according to the variety of the Plant. For in ſome it is craſs, liquid, viſcid, glutinous, fryable, gummeous: In others, fat, oleous, odorate, roſinous: In ſome, melleous, lacteous, ſalſuginous, as we have declared before. Of gummeous, roſinous, and oleaginous Juyces, we have ſpoken ſufficiently before. It remains now, that we treat of other Juyces more groſs and terreſtrial.*

Chap. I.

Of Opium.

POppy is either ſative or wilde, of both which there are many ſpecies: the ſucce expreſſed and concreted from the ſatives, is called *Meconium*; onely the lacryma or ſucce of the black Poppy, whether ſpontaneouſly, or by vulneration, eructing from its heads, is for its dignity by the Greeks called ὀπὸς, by the Latines *Opium*. *Meconium.*

Whereof there are many varieties, reſpondent to the varieties of the Regions where it is collected. The Theban Opium, and that which is brought from *Cairus*, are whitiſh, and the beſt; thoſe that come out of *Syria*, *Alexandria*, and other Regions, are black, and not ſo good: the latter Writers alſo aſſert, That the beſt Opium flows from white Poppy. That which comes from *Cambaia*, flows from the great Poppy, there called *Carcax*; each of whoſe heads equalizes in magnitude an Eſtriches Egge: ſo that it is no wonder, that ſuch plenty of ſucce ſhould erupt from them when vulnerated.

All agree not about the qualities of Opium: for *Dioſcorides*, and many more, ſay, it is cold in the fourth degree; *Matthiolus* oppoſes them, from its odour and acrimony. I think, it is of a miſt quality, participating of a light and fugacious calidity, but a more valid and contumacious frigidity. Its qualities.

Beſides its elementary qualities, it hath others alſo, which much commend it, if exhibited opportunely, and in a juſt doſis, and much diſcommend it, if unduly uſed; for it doth not onely induce tremour and palſey, but leads to a perpetual ſleep.

Rightly prepared, and rightly adminiſtred, it helps much; for it

it cures perpetual watchings, by conciliating sleep; it allayes and deceives the fiercenes of any dolour, by making the sense more stupid.

It is much used in *Mauritania* and *Asia*, where they call it *Amsium* and *Osium*; as though Opium were the most admirable exhilarator of the minde, and erecter of the body: whereunto they have so accustomed themselves, that if they should totally abstain from it, they would periclitate their lives.

The Turkish Souldiers used to eat it, that they might be more chearful for battel, and like drunken or mad-men, precipitate themselves carelesly into danger.

Some think it stimulates to venery; but reason and experience refragate its use, rather arceating its heat, by making the motion of the flesh more ignave.

Chap. 2.

Of Elaterium.

Elaterium is numerated among mochlical Medicaments, which agitate the body by a turbulent motion; which though it be violent, yet *Hippocrates* used it (*Sect.2. Lib. de loc. in hom.*) Now it is seldome usurped, except in a few Regions in *Italy*, where some take it, for the curation of such diseases as milder remedies will not profit.

Elaterium, according to *Theophrastus*, is the inspissated succe of a wilde Cucumer, which by a special propriety will keep two hundred years; it is (saith he) the most diuturnal of all Medicaments; and that is best which is oldest: which to experience, a certain Medick having received some for a gift, very old, kept it till its two hundred years were expired. The cause why it endures so long, I think is its copious humour, whereby it extinguishes a Candle, if it be set near it, till fifty years be perfected. The manner of its extraction and inspissation is notorious; which he that knows not; may learn of *Dioscorides*.

Wilde Cucumer, which we call anguine or asses Cucumer, is very like the sative, onely its leaves are not so angulous, and more hoary: its fruits are lesser, palely green, and full of seeds and succe, which leap out at the first touch, like siliquous Arsmart, which they thence call *Noli me tangere*.

Vires. The wilde Cucumer, and succe of its fruit, which they call Elaterium (saith *Galen*) are accommodated to Medicine: The succe is very amare, hot in the second degree; it moves flowers, kills young, and by moving the belly educes waters.

Chap.

Chap. 3.

Of Ladanum.

Ladanum is a kinde of liquor exuding out of the leaves of Cistus, growing in *Cyprus*, where it is called *Ledon*; which, if *Dioscorides* say true, is collected by the she-goats: for the Kids and Goats feeding upon the leaves of Cistus, whose innate pinguetude in the spring-time they deterge and receive with their beards, and carry it on their hairy legs, whereunto it adheres; which afterwards the Incolists kemb off, and percolate, making it into lumps, and so keep it, calling it Ladanum.

Some reject this manner of accepting Ladanum, as fabulous, and yet substitute not an easier way. It is indeed so tenacious and viscid, that it will easily follow contact, and may be excerped otherwise.

The Cyprian, odorate, greenish, soft Ladanum, that hath not gathered sand and filth, is the best: The Arabian is more vile, and worse.

It is calefactive, and mollifies, opens the orifices of the veins, *Vires.* mixed with black Wine, Myrrhe, and Oyl of Myrtle: it keeps on deciduous hair.

It flows not from Cissus, that is, Ivy, as *Pliny* thought, but Cistus, a small, surculous, lignous shrub, emitting long and blackish leaves, glutinous to the tact, which in the Spring exude a certain fat, odorate, and rosinous matter, which collected by any Art, is called Ladanum: It bears small whitish flowers, like little Roses.

Chap. 4.

Of Hypocistis.

Besides Ledon, or the Ladanigerous Cistus, there are two other varieties; the one Masculine, out of whose roots springs Hy- *Cistus masc.* pocistis, whose spurious branch is like to a Quince-tree: some call it Ludonorum, others Robethron, Fuschius fungus; its succe is extracted, as that of Acacia concreted and kept.

The other Cistus is Fœminine; which bears long, and not *Cistus fœm.* angust leaves, white and small flowers, and small seed in a triangular hull: it is very like the Ladanigerous Cistus.

The Masculine Cistus is a small shrub, greater then Thyme, with leaves like Basil, but rounder, rosaceous flowers, like them of the Fœminine, but lesser, with a lignous and hard root, out of whose middle, Hypocistis pullulates, as viscum out of an Oak, and other trees.

Hypocistis is very rare, in whose stead we use Acacia, whose sa- *Vires.* culties are analogous, though more imbecil: it is chiefly astrictive;

it

it helps the Dyſenterian, collical, and all fluxes of blood. It ſiccates alſo, and roborates, and is a very efficacious remedy in all fluxions.

Chap. 5.

Of Tartar.

As the ſubſtance of Milk, part whereof is butyrous and lighter, part caſeous and craſſer, and part ſerous and moderate, is not homogeneous; ſo neither is the ſubſtance of Wine, part whereof is tenuious, and is called the flower of Wine; part ſomewhat heavier, occupying the middle of the Hogſhead; and part more craſs, which ſettles to the bottom, which ſome call Lees, and the more recent, Tartar; perhaps becauſe this is the Empyricks Idol, as *Tartac* was the Hevæans. But I rather think it ſo nominated, becauſe it poſſeſſes the loweſt place.

And though Tartarum be but Lees of Wine, yet is it indued with many faculties: for as ſome excrements in an humane body are benigne and uſeful, as Sperm, Milk, and other humours included in other parts for certain uſes; ſo are theſe dregs uſeful: for as the Proverb goes, *No Wine without Lees*; for this excrement conſerves it longer from corruption, as aſhes do fire from extinction.

Tartarum included in a Cloth-bag, and ſuſpended in a Wine-cellar, or other moiſt place, will exude an oleous humour, which they call Oyl of Tartar: which delabes from the Canvas bag into the veſſel ſubjected, as we have ſhewed in our Officinary. It may be educed alſo by aſcent; but the work will be more, and to leſs purpoſe.

The aſhes of burned Tartar is frequent at *Paris*, and very expetible to dealbate ſayls, which the vulgar call *Gravellata*. It is celebrated for many other uſes: for Tartar, according to *Cardanus*, hath no equal in deterſion, which purges ſordid and hard lumps, and excreſcencies of fleſh, and ſhews the ſound and living fleſh. *Vives.*

Chap. 6.

Of Liquorice Juyce.

The ſucce of Liquorice is expetible for many uſes; for it is eximiouſly bechical, being ſucceſsfully aſſumed ſolarly for the affections of the lungs and breaſts, and frequently with no leſs benefit mixed with other Medicaments. *Galen* extols that which comes from *Crete*.

The Greeks call it *Glycyrrhiza*, the ſhop-men Liquorice, *Celſus* Sweet-root, the Batavians Sweet-wood; for its ſucce exhibits a ſweet and grateful ſapour, which is thus educed.

The roots of Liquorice collected in *July*, while new and humid, are

are purged and brayed, then cocted in water, percolated and expressed; the succe expressed is siccated by evaporation by the fire, or Sun, and kept: That is best, which is sweetest, soft, new, pure, tenacious, blackest, and which is totally liquescible upon the tongue. The way to juyce of Liquorice.

That which comes from *Spain*, is much commended; where it is made both copiously and well.

Liquorice is without of the colour of Box, within croceous: its wood is viscid, and not easily frangible; its sapour sweet, quenching thirst; whence it is called, *adipsas*. That which is white or black within, exucce, old, fragile, and which makes dust by its fracture, is not good. We have spoken hereof in the fourth Section of our first Book.

Chap. 7.

Of Wax.

Bees are wonderful sagacious, industrious, and sedulous, in collecting and confecting Wax; which without their help, no part of the world can perform: for these little animals can solely act that which man cannot; these Insects solely do suppeditate both Aliments and Medicaments to man by their own opifice.

And yet the commodities of Wax are so many, and so great, that they cannot be easily recensеated. The flave, odorate, moderately fat, pure, coacted Wax, which is void of all aliene matter, and neareſt representing Honey, is best. In the second place, we take that which is candid, whether it be so naturally; as the *Pontian* Wax, or artificially by lotion, as the *Tyrrhenian*. Other colours are acquisititious; as green by Verdegrease, red by Vermillion, black by Ink, or burned paper: From which mixture it changes its qualities. New subflave Virgin-wax is best.

It is in a mean betwixt heat and cold, humidity and siccity; yet it is somewhat crass and emplastical: Wherefore it is the matter both of calefactive and refrigerative Medicaments. All Wax mollifies, califies, according to *Dioscorides*, and moderately expletes the body. It is good in broth for such as have the bloody flux. That it may be dealbated, it must be melted at the fire, then demerged in pure Fountain-water, where it must be stirred and expurged. *Dioscorides* describes another way to make it most candid; which see in his second Book, *Chap.* 105. *Ceræ lotio & dealbatio*

Chap. 8.

Of certain other ſucces more aptly deſcribed in another place.

Succes are kept either in a liquid conſiſtency, as Vinegar, Wine, and Omphacium; or in a ſolid one, as Aloes and Scammony; or elſe in a middle conſiſtency, as Rob and Sapa: of each whereof we have treated in order, partly in our Shop, partly in our firſt Book of Medicinal Matter.

And ſince I am ſo farre from approving of things ten times repeated, that the ſecond time offends me, I will not now return to the examination of what I have before delivered; for I could willingly wiſh this ſhort Work had been contracted into a leſſer bulk.

As for Aloes and Scammony, they being Purgatives, we have treated ſufficiently of them in the ſecond Section of this Book: wherein we have accurately deſcribed the nature and faculties of all purgative Simples.

As for the ſucces of fruits, inſpiſſated to the conſiſtency of Rob and Honey, we have handled them in the fifth Section: and the firſt Section of the firſt Book, ſpeaks copiouſly of liquid ſucces.

Opopanax hath its name from *Panax*, whoſe ſucce, or rather gummeous liquor it is, which when concrete and dry, is ſubflave without, candid within, graveolent, ſmooth, fat, fryable, and eaſily liqueſcible in water.

Galen makes mention of other ſucces, as Glacium and Licium: but becauſe they grow obſolete, they are ſeldome or never kept in Pharmacopolies.

Finis Libri Primi.

THE

THE SECOND BOOK OF Medicinal Matter.

SECT. I.

Of Minerals.

THE PREFACE.

THe matter of Medicaments is multifarious, not onely because it ariſes from Plants, Minerals, and Animals, (of which we have treated before) but alſo deſumed from the Univerſal Tribe of Plants. It remains now, that we treat of Minerals, which indeed do daily ſupply us with plentiful matter for Medicine; and that ſometimes melioris defectu, *of eximious qualities, whereby we oppugn and reſiſt contumacious diſeaſes of their malignity; but eſpecially, I ſay, for outward uſes, nothing more excellent; and very conducible to the health and ſanity of inward parts: For there are certain Minerals, which by a roborative faculty do retreate the ſpirits; as, the* Lemnian Earth, Oriental Bole, *and* Precious Stones: *Of all which we intend briefly, but clearly, to treat in this our ſecond Book.*

And although they are called Minerals or Foſſiles, which are digged out of the bowels and hidden Caverns of the earth; as, all kindes and ſorts of Earths, Stones, and Metals: yet they carry a more ample ſignification, and do comprehend under them, all that is found in the Boſome and Belly of the Sea, in Gulfs, and on the Sea-ſhore; as all ſorts of Salt and Bitumen. Therefore all Minerals are not onely of the Earth, as Ariſtotle *hath delivered, but ſome of the Sea; as Salt, Bitumen, and ſeveral kindes of Stones: of which we intend diſtinctly to Treat. But the method of our Inſtitutions doth require us, that we handle them briefly; therefore we ſhall haſten to the examination of them, and Rank them into a Treble File, by dividing this our Book into three Sections: In the firſt, we ſhall diſpute the Nature and Qualities of Earths; in the ſecond, of Stones; and in the third, of Metals.*

Chap. 1.

Of Terra-Lemnia.

THe best of medicinal Earths, is that, which coming from the Isle *Lemnos*, the shop-men call Lemnian Earth, and sometimes Sigillated Earth, from that seal that is impressed upon it. There are many varieties hereof; the best of which used to be formed into Cakes, and signed by *Diana's* Priest with her Sigil, which represented a She-goat.

But the true sigillated Earth, according to *Dioscorides* and *Galen*, is flave or yellow, as the hill is whence it is digged; on which hill, neither Tree, nor Herb, nor Plant fruticates, nor a stone to be seen, onely this kinde of Earth in abundance.

Yet such Cakes are brought to *Constantinople*, of a cineritious colour, noted with the Sigil of the Turkish Emperour, which is effigiated with no Animal, onely some various Characters; and these are bought and kept for true Lemnian Earth.

Neither the Incolists that make these Pastils, nor the Institors that buy them, mix Goats blood therewith, as many grave men existimate.

This Earth is so fat, that one that holds it in his mouth, and grindes it with his teeth, would think it consisted of grease.

Vives. It is Antidotive against the Pestilence, Contagions, and Diseases that participate of malignant qualities: yet I believe, That the vain Ceremonies and Superstitions of the barbarous Turkish Nation, have more nobilitated this Earth, then any excellency in its faculties: and I do avouch, That if any one that would might effode it, it would lose much of its celebrity.

The variety of the Characters wherewith it is noted, arises from the variety of those Noble-men, who according to their custome, are present on the sixth of *August*, at its effosion and sigillation. Now all the Characters are contained in these two Arabick words, *Tin Imachton*, which denote Sigillated Earth.

Chap. 2.

Of Bolarmoniack.

THere is another kinde of Earth of eximious faculties, which comes out of *Armenia*, near *Cappadocia*, which the Medicks call Bole-arminack, or Oriental-Bole. It was, in *Galens* time, much used against that Pestilence he speaks of (*Lib. 9. Simp. cap. 7.*) It is in our pleasure (saith he) whether we will call it a Stone, as he did that first gave it me, or an Earth, as I do, because it may be rigated by humid things.

It

It comes not ſolely from *Armenia*, but many other Regions: that is the beſt, which will be moſt promptly lævigated, either by a Peſtel, or the affuſion of ſome water or liquor, containing in it no ſandy mixture, and which in manducation melts like butter, and is manifeſtly aſtrictive to the guſt.

It ſiccates, aſtringes, and roborates, ſtayes blood, cohibits Catarrhs, profits the bloody flux, and Ulcers in the mouth. *Vires.*

It is very prevalent againſt the Peſtilence: Whoever (ſaith *Galen*) aſſumed this Medicament, were preſently cured; but thoſe that this did not cure, dyed all; for no other remedy was more prevalent. Whence we may gather, That it cured all that were not incurable: and that I may ſpeak freely, Bole-Arminack is as efficacious as Lemnian Earth: And as we can eaſily be without the Turkiſh Tapeſtry and Hangings; ſo ſhall we not much ſtand in need of their Lemnian Earth.

Chap. 3.

Of ſome other Earths leſs uſual.

There are many other Earths commended by the Ancients, for refrigerating and occluding paſſages, and much uſed by them in Medicine, which the later Age doth ſo deſpiſe, that they are totally excluded from Pharmacopolies, except ſome few, which for their candour, rubour, or other eximious colour, as flave, or the like, which are commended and bought by infectors, as Ocre, Rubrick, Synope, Ceruſs, and ſuch like.

Yet ſome of them are indued with eximious medicinal faculties, as the Melitean Earth; ſo called from the Iſle *Melita*, whence it comes; which is prevalent againſt the Peſtilence and Poyſons: Whence many uſurp it for Lemnian Earth. *Melitea.*

The Samian Earth is a kinde of foſſile coming from *Samos*, which *Dioſcorides* ſaith, is of two ſorts; the one he calls *Collyrium*, which, I think, may be mixed in Collyries for eyes; the other *Samius aſter*, becauſe there are certain ſpots in it, which ſhine like ſtars; it is cruſtaceous and denſe like a Whetſtone, being withall ſomewhat viſcous: This is burned and waſhed like white Earth, of whoſe faculties it participates, and thence cohibits the rejection of blood: the other, which he calls Collyrium, is ſoft, white, fryable, and adheres to the tongue: both of them refrigerate, and arceate fluxes. *Samia.*

The Chian Earth, ſo called from the Iſle *Chios*, hath affinity with the Samian in face and faculties; for it is white, ſoft, refrigerative, and aſtrictive: it cures burnings, erugates the face, makes it ſplendid, and deleates ſcars. *Chia.*

There is another kinde of Earth called *Selinuſia*, which commends againſt ſwellings beginning in the Paps, Teſticles, and ſmall Guts; which in colour, faculties, and conſiſtency, is finitimous *Galen Selinuſia.*

mous to the Chian: both are ſpecial Remedies againſt burnings.

Cimolia. *Dioſcorides* makes mention of Fullers-earth, whereof he conſtitutes two ſorts; the one white, the other purpureous: that is beſt, which ſeems fat and cold to the tact; both of them diſſolved in vinegar, diſcuſſe pimples and tubercles, repreſſe inflammations, and cure burnings.

Eretria. The Eretrian Earth is, according to *Galen*, a red Glebe; the beſt whereof, is without ſand and ſtones. *Dioſcorides* makes two ſorts thereof; one white, and another cineritious; none red: that which is cineritious, is ſoft, and is the beſt. *Eretria* is a City in *Eubœa*, near *Calcis*, in whoſe Territories this Earth is effoded, and thence nominated: it is aſtrictive, refrigerative, mollitive; it expletes cavities, and conglutinates wounds.

Rubrica. Rubrick, or Vermillion, ſo called, becauſe it is red, is called Synopica, from *Synops* a City of *Cappadocia*, whence it comes; and *Fabrilis*, becauſe workmen often uſe it in drawing Lines, their cords being died therewith. Some Rubrick is maculated, other unicolorate; ſome ſoft, other hard and ſpiſſe; ſome fat, other moderate. All of them are adapted to pictures; which, becauſe they ſiccate and aſtringe, ſerve ſometimes to medicinal uſes, and may be mixed in vulnerary and ſiccative Emplaſters.

Ochra. Ocre is a kinde of flave Earth, much commended in *Attica*, not lapideous, but fryable, luteous, and ſmooth: it aſtringes, erodes, diſcuſſes collections, and repreſſes excreſcencies. *Ætius* ſaith, That bruiſes, and blue places, may be cured by a Medicament made thereof.

The Cretian Earth, or Chalk, is ſo called, from the Iſle *Crete*, whence it comes, though it is copiouſly found in other Regions; whereof there are many varieties; one ſort whereof is white, which exceeds all other Earths therein, which Artificers uſe in protracting Lines; another green, celebrated for the ſame uſe, which we ordinarily call *Theodoſia*; another is black, which workmen-Painters and Taylors uſe: All of them are abſterſive; whence they are much uſed in cleanſing Tin and Silver veſſels. The green is more acrimonious then the white and black, and more abſterſive then both.

Other Earths, as *Pnigitis*, *Melia*, and *Ampelitis*, are recorded in *Dioſcorides*, and mentioned by *Galen*: But their vertue is ſo ignave, and effects ſo ſmall, that the later Phyſicians do not celebrate them; who leaving Acorns, chuſe rather to eat Wheat. Theſe therefore being uſeleſs, I will not deſcribe.

There is a certain ſubrulous Earth carried about *Lutetia*, which they call *Alana* and *Tripolis*, ſerving onely to deterge brazen veſſels: which here we will omit.

Of

Of certain Fossiles extracted either out of Sea or Land, which are referred either to Metals, Stones or Earths: And first,

Chap. 4.

Of Chrysocolle or Boras.

The Shop-men following the barbarous Mauritanian Idiome, call Chrysocolle, Boras: it is found in the golden, silver, and sometimes brazen Mynes in *Armenia*, *Macedonia*, and *Cyprus*. The Armenian Boras, whose colour is green, and sapour nitrous, with some amaritude, is most laudable. *Pliny* thinks, That that which is effoded out of brazen Mynes, whose substance is mud, concreted to the hardness of a Pumick-stone, is best; that which is collected out of Silver Mynes, next; and that which is had in Golden Mynes, worst of the three. There is another sort, which is worst of all, found in Leaden Mynes. *Avicenna* calls Boras, *Auri capistrum*; *Dioscorides* and *Galen*, *Chrysocolle*, or Gold-glue; others, Green Earth, because it equalizes segetives in colour. That which is now in Pharmacopolies, is not green, but white.

There are two sorts hereof: one Native, which in Metalline Mynes concretes to the hardness of a Pumick-stone, acquiring various colours, according to the variety of the Metals, out of whose Mynes it is effoded: the green is most medicinal, and the flave best for ferruminating gold.

The other Factitious, made of Boyes Urine, agitated so long with a Brazen Pestel, in a Brasse Morter in the hot Sun, till it acquire the consistency of honey, or an unguent; which either solely, or mixed with other Medicaments, cures sordid, cadaverous, and dangerous Ulcers. *Dioscorides* brayed and washed the native and fossile, till it looked pure and sincere; then he reconded, and kept it for use, after he had siccated it: it will be much more tenuious by ustion. *Factitia.*

Chrysocolle califies, cohibits excrescent flesh, and is somewhat mordacious: it perduces many Ulcers to sanity, but its assumption at the mouth is perillous. *Vires.*

Chap. 5.

Of Vitriol, or Calchantum.

The Greeks call that Calchantum, which the Latines from its blackness call Sutory Ink, and from its splendent vitreous Nitre, Vitriol.

Dioscorides reckons three sorts thereof; two native, and one Fa-

Species. Factitious: one sort of the Natives is found concreted in the bowels of the earth, another is collected in form of water, out of some Myne, which put into a vessel, soon coagulates into Vitriol.

The Factitious is made of a certain glebe of earth, maculated with rubiginous and æruginous spots, madefied, transfunded, and fermented with water, cocted with the heat of the Sun; out of which a certain vitriolous humour is elicited, which is reduced either by the heat of the Sun, or of a fire, into Vitriol. *Pliny* (*Chap.* 13. *Book* 34.) teaches many more wayes to confect it; as also many perite Metallists, which for brevities sake I omit.

Amongst the Factitious Vitriols, the Roman is the best; the Cyprian was most celebrated of old; the Germanian is worse: and it is commonly called Copparose, or Dyers Ink, which Infectors use in dying clothes.

The Native, which is effoded out of the Cyprian Mountains, is called Stalacticum, that is, stillatitious; and pectum, that is, concrete: so that the natural, which is either coagulated before effosion, or coagulates quickly after extraction from that Mountain; and the factitious, which is elicited out of the earth of that Mountain, may be both called Cyprian Vitriol.

The Native or Fossile Vitriol, participates of Calcitis, Misy, and Sory; especially the Cyprian, which is concreted from green water, which continually delabes from that Mountain into a Cave, washing Calcitis, Misy, and Sory, and spontaneously coagulating into Vitriol. Whence one of these doth easily transeate into another; for all of them do in time convene: yea, *Galen* asserts, That he saw Vitriol, which in tract of time became Calcitis. (*Lib.* 9. *Simp.*)

The Native and white, is preferred in Medicinal uses, which the Metallicolous Alchymists say, is produced by their Sulphur and Mercury, as of Sperm, which they indiscriminately exhibit to all affections: out of which they elicite a certain acid liquor; a few drops whereof, mixed with syrupe of Violers, acquire a most elegant red colour and sapour. Oyl of Sulphur will do the same; and a few drops of both, or one of them, infused in the syrupe of Roses, will make the whole liquor red, which they call Tincture of Roses.

Tinctura Rosarum.

There is a certain salve made, which Pharmacopolists call Diacalciteos, from Calcitis, and Diapalma; or Palmeous salve, from Palme; and it is alike related to both: for it neither admits of Calcitis, nor Palme, in its confection; but so it is called for its rarity: for Calcitis, Misy, Sory, Melanteria, Diphryges, and many more, so much celebrated by the Ancients, are now unseen and unknown. Whence *Galen* substitutes Vitriol in stead of Calcitis, into whose nature age perduces it. And it may well be substituted in stead of Misy, Sory, and Melanteria, for all these are of near affinity, being similar in qualities, but dissimilar in colour and consistency.

Nature

Nature hath enriched Vitriol with eximious faculties, which perite Physicians have both experienced, and left described; as *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, *Ælius*, *Paulus*, *Ægineta*, and *Oribasius*, who have nobilitated it with much celebration: it califies, astringes, dries, kills broad worms in the belly, helps against toad-poyson, preserves moist flesh, and contracts humours by absumption, exarceates putretude, roborates the intimous parts; externally applied, it astringes, purges Ulcers, causes wrinkles like Alome, with whom it hath relation. The Wells of *Spada* being indued with a Vitrioline quality, do miraculously cure grievous and deplorable affections. Which excellent faculty, they borrow from Vitriol, by whose energy they pervade all the tracts and corners of all parts, everting what is hurtful, not hurting what is good; binding what is more lax, relaxing what is bound; and inciding, melting, attenuating, and expelling what is more crass. But besides these excellent commodities, Vitriol hath its incommodities also: for, it is ill for the stomack, acrimonious, erosive, and vomitory; and therefore many Monks and women give it sometimes in Wine, and sometimes in Rose-water, in uncertain weight, against quotidian and quartane Agues: and indeed the Feaver is often, by the excitation of vehement vomiting, resolved. But this Medicament being imperitely exhibited, proves often more formidable then the disease.

Chap. 6.

Of Alome.

ALome (saith *Pliny*) is as it were the brine of the earth, whereof *Dioscorides* makes three sorts; the round, the liquid, and the jagged or sciffile: the last is often called plumeous Alome; for they are so like in form, that they can scarce be distinguished; yet they differ both in nature and qualities: for the sciffile is manifestly astrictive, and may be burned; but the plumeous is acrimonious, and suffers not by fire. It seems to be the stone Amiantus, which, wood-like, consists of many incursant Lines, and is not burned by fire, which many take for that Amentus that ingredes the Citrian unguent. *Scissile plumeum.*

There is another sort, very vulgar and usual, lucid, spisse, and hard, like glasse, which Physicians call Rock-Alome, which should alwayes be usurped, when Alome is designed absolutely. The manner of confecting this, is long and laborious, which *Matthiolus* describes accurately. There is black Alome in *Cyprus*, that *Pliny* makes mention of. *Alumen rupeum.*

Some say, that round Alome is the same with that they call Zucharinum, which is confected of crude Rock-Alome, white of Eggs, and Rose-water. *Matthiolus* saw, handled, and tasted liquid Alome: of which he attests, that he never found any thing more astrictive.

Besides these, there are some factitious Alomes, as Catinum, which is made of the ashes of Kali, and vulgar Soda; as squamous Alome, which is made of a specular stone, pellucid like glasse; as Lees-Alome, which is made of Wine-Lees burned and albified. I think it superfluous to describe the manner of confecting these Alomes, since they are now of no use.

Vires. All Alome is of crasse parts, bindes much: whence it is called Stypterion, because it is styptical or astrictive: it califies moderately, cleanses, emends putrid Ulcers, dries humid ones, absumes excrescent flesh, takes away itching, cures the scab, and accedes usefully to many Medicaments made for Ulcers.

Chap. 7.

Of Salt.

As nothing is more common, nothing more frequent; so nothing more known then Salt: without which, Beasts can, but we cannot subsist. Whereof there are many sorts; as Sea-salt, Fossile-salt, Lake-salt, and River-salt.

Sea-salt is most common, and best, which is solely used in *France*. Fossile-salt, which shop-men call Gemme-salt, is broken and effoded out of Mynes like stones; it is splendent like Chrystal: This cast into the fire, doth not crack like the rest, but ignifies like Iron.

There is also Indian-salt, which *Mesue* uses in the confection of Pills of Azure-stone: but this being wanting, we substitute gemmeous Salt. They mistake, that think, that *Mesue* means by Indian-salt, that Sugar which he calls Tabarzet; we, White: for the Indians have their Salt, which they effode from the Mount *Oromenus*, in great lumps; in whose stead, our gemmeous Salt will serve well, as in acuating the flower faculty of Agarick and Polypody.

Ammoniack, or Armeniack-salt, being very ingrateful both in sapour and colour, and gifted with no eximious faculties, is judged incommodious: it concretes into broad plates under the Cyranium sands, with black veins extrinsecally; in colour it comes near Alome we call Schiston, as also the Salt we call Alkali and Catinum.

Dioscorides commends Lake-salt, and Phrygian-salt; but we preferre our own.

The flower of Salt, which flows upon *Nilus*, is neither seen of nor desired by us: it is as it were the Spawn of a certain River; as also the broth of Salt, and the flower of the spamous Sea in *Dioscorides*.

There is another kinde of Salt, they call Nitre, denoted with a double difference; the first is the light Nitre, of *Dioscorides* and the Ancients: its colour is roscous or white; it gapes with some holes like

like a ſpunge, it ceaſes now to be brought to us: the other is more vulgar, called Salnitre, or Saltpeter, which ingredes the confection of that powder, which is made of many nitrous waters in *France* for warlike Inſtruments.

While it is laboured with much coction, it eructates Aphronitrum, or ſpume of Nitre, different from that which the Ancients mention, which is thought to be native, not artificial; as alſo a certain friable lanuginous matter, white and ſaltiſh, which adheres to many walls, which is thought to be the flower of Nitre. I ſhall not now ſpeak of the confection of Nitre, becauſe it appertains not to Apothecaries.

The faculties of Salt are great, many, and very uſeful to man, but not ſo neceſſary in Pharmacy, as many think, who prædicate many wonderful and vain things, of Salt educed by Chymical Art; for they mordaciouſly aſſert, that there is a purgative faculty in Medicaments becauſe of Salt: and when they have got ſome extract from any Medicament, they averre they have got its Salt. However, Salt is very conſervative; it aſtringes, abſterges, purges, diſcuſſes, repreſſes, extenuates, and vindicates from putretude; yet ſome Salt is better then other.

Seeing Brine is its liquor, it exhibits the ſame effects: it is mixed with Glyſters, to excite the expulſive faculty, which is ſlow in ſuch as are infeſted with the Lethargy and Apoplexy. *Vires.*

Chap. 8.

Of Bitumen.

Bitumen, which the Greeks call *Aſphaltos*, is as it were the fatneſs of the earth ſwimming above the water; which caſt upon the ſhore, condenſates, concretes, and becomes hard, tenacious, and inflammable. As long as Bitumen ſwims on the water, it is ſoft; but when it is off, it becomes ſpiſſe and harder then, and reſembles dry Pitch, yet eaſily liqueſcible at the fire.

Many Lakes are bituminous, but eſpecially one in *Judæa*, thence called *Aſphalites*, and The dead Sea, becauſe of its vaſtity, and becauſe its water remains almoſt immovable, not ſtormy, but heavy, ſalt, craſs, and fœtid; wherein neither Plants nor Animals breed; neither doth it nouriſh ſuch as are injected, or admit them into its bowels. *Sodomeus Lacus.*

Some enumerate a kinde of Foſſile terrene matter, which ſome call, but falſly, The Earth Ampelitis; others better, Stone-coal, which ſeems to be a kinde of Jet, of which they make Beads and Images, which ſtrangers wear in their Hats, amongſt ſolid Bitumens. *Carbo petræ*

All Bitumen is not ſolid and hard, but ſome there is, perpetually liquid and fluid, called *Naphta*, which is the colature of Babylonian Bitumen, white of colour, and moſt capacious of fire: for

there is so much cognation betwixt this and fire, that it will presently leap into it, when near it. There is also black Bitumen.

As the true and native Bitumen of *Judæa* and *Sodome* come not to us, in whose stead we use Pissaphaltus, or factitious Bitumen, made of Petreol, Pitch, and other things: so neither the true Naphta, in whose stead we assume a certain liquor, that falls from the fields near *Modena*, which they call Petreol, as if it were Oyl educed out of a Rock; for both have the same consistency, colour, and vertue: But Pissaphaltus is the commixion of Pitch and Bitumen, as its name designs, which some use for Mumy: of which hereafter.

All Bitumen discusses, mollifies, glutinates, defends from inflammation, by obfaction, suffumigation, or imposition; emends the Proptosis and strangulation of the Uterus: but our Bitumen is seldome right.

Naphta extenuates, incides, digests, penetrates, absumes frigid and crasse humours in all parts of the body, and cures the resolution of the Nerves, Palsey, and diseases in the arteries from a cold cause.

Sperma Cæti, quid.

Some yet recenseate more bitumens, as that furfurous pinguetude which some call Whales-sperm, others White-Amber, and many, The flower of the Sea; for it is collected on the Sea, whose fat spume, or innatant flower it is. Many think it is *Dioscorides* his ἄλως ἄνθος.

Chap. 9.

Of Sulphur.

Sulphur is either native and fossile, called Brimstone and Quick-sulphur; or factitious: the native is naturally generated of a certain fat portion of earth; much whereof is in *Lipara*, *Melos*, and such places, where the factitious is made: the splendent, pellucid, and not saxous, is best; whose colour without is subcineritious, within subluteous.

Many Mountains are very sulphureous, as *Ætna*, which eructates perpetual flames.

The factitious is made of some fat Glebes, which are effoded out of sulphureous Mynes. The manner of its confection, I leave to such Rusticks as are exercised therein: the green and fat is best.

Sulphur hath much cognation with fire; for if it be cast upon coals, it will burn, and not be extinguished, till all its oleous and fat substance be absumed.

All Sulphur is not alike in colour; for some is green, some more luteous, some cineritious, and some pallid or lucid. Whence we may gather, That it is of more sorts then two. *Pliny* also enumerates four, some whereof are harder, others fatter, and others more inflammal.

That

That Sulphur whereof Alchymists tell many vain and ridiculous stories, is not common Sulphur, yet it is mixed, though they assert, that it is a principle of mixture. But no more of that in this place.

There is a certain fat liquor, very efficacious, educed out of Sulphur, yet such, as may not be used imperitely, lest it do more harm then good. There is a powder also made of Sulphur, against the vices of the Lungs, whose event demonstrates its excellency. *Oleum Sulphuris.*

That Medicament which *Mesue* calls Diasulphur, is hence denominated.

Sulphur califies, coćts, resolves, cures Coughs, and difficulty of breathing, taken in an Egge, or burned; and its smoke catched, moves spittle; mixed with butter or swines-grease, it mitigates and kills the itch, erupting on the whole body; and mixed with Turpentine, it cures Tetters, rough nails, and scabs. *Vires.*

Chap. 10.

Of Amber-grise.

Amber-grise, which was unknown to the Ancients, is neither the seed of Balena, nor excrement of any other Whale, nor yet the dung of any Birds educated in the Isle *Maldina*, with odoriferous herbs (which dung is by the sea wash'd of those Rocks, as some somniate;) nor yet any kinde of maritimous Mushrome, eradicated by the Sea, as many have asserted: nor yet any thing made of Ladanum, Aloes wood, Storax, and Civet, as *Fuschius* credited; but a certain kinde of Bitumen, by storms driven from the Fountains and Chanels of the Sea to the shore; where exposed to the air, it speedily condenses; as many things do, which while they are in the water, are soft and tender; but eructed, become dry, and hard, as Amber.

Perhaps, as it is storied, a great quantity of Amber-grise hath been found in a Whales belly; but whilest she was alive, she had got it, and ingested it in the Sea: for it is absurd to think, that Amber should be the Whales excrement, when the best Amber devoured by a Whale, loses its bonity and suavity.

Which *Simeon Sethi* smelled well enough, who asserting that Amber is a kinde of Bitumen, flowing out of some Fountains, saith, That that which is devoured by fishes is the worst that can be.

Garcias ab Horto seems to assert, That it is a kinde of odorate earth; seeing there was not onely a fragment of three thousand pounds weight of Amber found in the earth, but whole Islands of pure Amber: and he proves the probability hereof, from the infinite varieties of earth in colour and qualities: and seeing in this general acception, Bitumen may be called a kinde of Earth, I do not impugn the verisimilitude of his assertion, especially finding it called Precious Earth.

Thus

Thus have I briefly related the whole hiſtory of Amber: for I will neither undertake, neither will my ſhort annotations bear the diſcuſſion of ſuch opinions as have been publiſhed about Amber.

That Amber which is moſt odorate, devoid of filth, perforated with a needle, emits much fat ſucce; that which is cineritious, and not black, is good; that which is black, or very candid, is not good.

Vires. It calefies, reſolves, recreates the heart, brain and principal parts, refreſhes the ſpirits, cureth ſwoundings, erects the ſtrength, exhilarates the mind, and cures palpitation.

Chap. II.

Of yellow Amber, or Electrum.

ORange-coloured Amber is variouſly denominated: the Greeks call it Electrum; the Perſians and Mauritanians, Charabe, that is, catch-ſtraw; the Germans, Gleſum, that is Glaſſe, becauſe it is ſplendent; the Romans, Succinum, becauſe it is the product of ſucce, or Sea-bitumen concreted; but not the ſucce of Pine or black Poplar, as many have aſſerted: for it is found in the deeps, and upon Sea-ſhores, concreted of the fat juyce of the Sea and Earth.

This matter, whileſt lent, viſcid, and fat, before it be obdurated and dryed, catches and detains many Flies, Gnats, Ants, and ſuch like Inſects; which dye, dry and odorate, together with the Amber.

This Amber is either white or flave: the white, which is more odorate and lighter, is good: ſo alſo is the flave, if pellucid, and ſuch as may be made by attrition, to ſmell like Roſemary, and attract chaff or ſtraw.

Its Powder given in convenient liquor, cohibits the flux of blood, roborates the bowels, and is good againſt the white fluor of the womb: one dragm thereof taken in a ſoft Egge, will ſtay the flux of Sperm, and will help ſuch as are tabid, infeſted with hardneſs of inteſtines, difficulty of breathing, and long Coughs.

Chap. 12.

Of Coral.

COral is from its effigies, hardneſs, and native ſoyl, frequently, and not improperly called *Lithodendron*, as if it were a Stone-tree, and ſometimes a Sea-ſhrub: for *Macer* ſaith, it ſeems to be the bough of ſome arbuſcle, for it grows in the Tyrrhenian and Sicilian Seas, aſſurging and emitting branches like a little Tree. Hence ſome repoſe it amongſt ſhrubs, others amongſt ſtones, and others amongſt Bitumens: but it is really none of all theſe, but ſomething of each.

It

It is threefold; one sort is red, another white, and another black: the first, as it is of a more jucund aspect, so more medicinal, and more apt for Bracelets, and other Ornaments. The white, as it is more spongious, so more light and refrigerative: the black is most rarely seen, lesse medicinal and expetible; red is the best, which is alwayes understood, when Coral is prescribed absolutely. There is another sort of Coral of a mixed colour, which is not so good: the red that is best, should be of a florid colour, odorate, like Alga, ramous, like a shrub, very frangible, not rough, not hollow, or chanelled.

All Coral refrigerates, dryes, and bindes: it cohibits the immoderate flux of fluors and blood, it cures the Dysentery, represses the flux of mans sperm, and the white fluors of a womans Uterus. It helps such as are anhelant, infested with the Epilepsie, Spleenatick, and heart-dolours: for, it roborates the brain, diminishes the spleen, and exhilarates the heart. Alchymists extract a red oyl out of Coral, which is very useful in staying blood, and roborating the members: of which elswhere. *Vires.*

Chap. 13.

Of Auripigmentum.

Auripigment, Arrhenick, or Arsenick, Sandaracha, and Risagalum, differ not, save in name onely: All are effoded out of the same pit; all are septical and acrimonious, with extreme calour, dissolving, destroying, and preying upon the principles of life. Some of the later Writers call three things Arsenick; for they denominate Auripigment, Yellow Arsenick; Sandarax, Red Arsenick; and Risagalum, VVhite Arsenick.

Auripigment and Sandarax, are of the same Metals; and seem onely to differ in more or less coction; and therefore they are both often mixed in the same glebe. There are two sorts of Auripigment; one of a golden colour, ὠρόζων, which *Galen* calls Crustosum; which may be clefted into scales, mixed with no matter: The other pale, effigiated like an acorn, which is affine to Sandaracha.

Sandaracha hath not onely affinity with Arsenick from its native soyl, but nature also; for it is onely Arsenick well cocted, for that by ustion will become Sandaracha, as Ceruse will Sandyx, which they call Painters-red. *Pliny* makes mention of another sort of Sandaracha, which he refers to ceraginous honey.

They erre shamefully, that deceived through the affinity of the words, take the *Arabians* Sandarax, which is Junipers Gumme, for Sandaracha which is a Mineral: for Sandarax and Sandaracha differ much, in nature, faculties, and original; for the one is pale, light, and grateful to nature; the other red, heavy, and deletery.

Few

Few things are spoken, and that but by few, concerning Risagalum; insomuch, that we can scarce from their dignments know what it is. *Bern: Dessennius* calls it factitious, white, and crystalline Arsenick. But perhaps the ancients did more wisely in its disquisition, not to detect such mortal lethal poyson. *Sylvius* saith, it is found in the same pits with Arsenick, which some call Auripigment.

Vires. All Arsenick is erosive, malign, an enemy to all internal parts, and to the radical moisture, and innate heat; and therefore it is ill advice of *Nic. Alexand.* to describe it for an ingredient in the great *Athanasia:* for by permixion with other Medicaments, it doth not depose its ferity. It is indeed sometimes mixed with extraneous Medicaments, but in very small quantity; and onely then, when some superfluous flesh is to be eroded.

For the spirit of Arsenick, which consists in salt, as the Alchymists speak, is very bad, and cannot either by its fixation, or extraction, be so deleated, as to be securely introsumed into the body.

Chap. 14.

Of Cinnabaris, or Vermillion.

Dioscorides his *Cinnabaris*, which is the succe of a certain tree growing in *Africa*, which is usurped for Dragons-blood, differs much from the Cinnabaris, so called by later writers, which is a Mineral, whereof there are two sorts, the one native, the other artificial: The native is also twofold, the one whereof is effoded out of certain silver Mynes, as those in *Hydria*, which seems to be a purpureous glebe, referted with Quicksilver, out of which it frequently issues spontaneously; the other is found in the Veins of silver Mynes; and is the *Minium secundum:* of which hereafter.

There is also an artificial Cinnabaris, made of Sulphur and Quicksilver coacted by the fire; which *Brasavolus* calls Cynaprium, to distinguish it from the native Cinnabaris, which, with *Dioscorides*, he holds to be the lacryma of an Aphrican-tree.

But indeed Cinnabaris, Cynaprium, and Vermillion, or Red-Lead, are all one, especially with the later writers, who adducing them all to the test of reason, found them not to differ; and those that pertinaciously contend for their difference, exhibiting an accurate description of each, do at last conclude them one: for the variety of names do often so obscure the thing, that he may be excused who thinks Cinnabaris, Cynaprium, Milton, and Vermillion, to discrepate.

Cinnabaris then is of four sorts; the first is *Dioscorides* his Cinnabaris, which is the succe of an Aphrican-tree, called Dragon; the second is a Mineral, shining with much rubour, and not very ponderous,

derous, which is found in silver Mynes; the third is factitious, of sulphur and quicksilver, ponderous, and intermixed with red and argenteous lines; the fourth is found in silver Mynes, and kept in shops in form of a powder very nitently red, which some call Cinnabaris, some Milton, some Minium; the shop-men Vermillion, and some Sandix.

Now Sandix is burnt Ceruss, which for its eximious redness, *Serapio* calls Vermillion: from which opinion the later writers dissent not.

But that purpureous powder which Apothecaries keep for Vermillion, is by *Pliny* called the second Minium, which is found in silver Mynes, acquiring that fair rubetude by artificial and reiterated washing; so that according to *Pliny*, one Minium is differenced from another, onely by washing and art: yet the first Minium or Mineral Cinnabaris, which emits much quicksilver by the fire, needs no such washing; the second or vulgar, which is called Red-lead, is red in the fire, but eructates little or no quicksilver, and is seldom used in Medicine.

Cinnabaris being referted with much Mercury, participates of the same faculties: which being notorious to the very Barbers, and pore-blinde, is often by Circulators usurped to the cure of the French disease, who make such foolish attempts thereof, as they bring many into the Palsey, more to death.

Chap. 15.

Of Quicksilver.

Mercury or Quicksilver, is the prime idol of the Alchymists, which they pronounce the principle of things, and sperm of Metals; and indeed so true each, that nothing is more false: for if Metals have any sperm, it is within themselves, not elsewhere to be fought; nor will ever mixed bodies naturally resolve themselves into Salt, Sulphur and Mercury; though these Chymical Vulcans do Hammer them out, as *Dom. Riolanus* hath learnedly proved against them. This Mercury or quicksilver, is as it were the Monster of Nature, which will not be subdued under Natures Laws: it is whiter then any silver, more fluxile then water; more permeable then Vinegar; yet it never madefies, often refrigerates, often califies; sometimes curing onely frigid affections, sometimes onely calid ones: when it seems frigid, then it induces calid effects; when calid, frigid ones: it sometimes hurts in small quantity, alwayes in great: it easily loses its proper form, and easily resumes it; and in this it is Miraculous, that it often profits being introsumed by the mouth; and often causes Palsey, trembling, and other prave effects, when extrinsecally applied. (*Falop. Cap.* 27, & 78. *Lib. de lue Vener.*)

Trajan saw some, who being anointed with a liniment made of

Quicksilver before their deaths, in the junctures of whose armes he found much Quicksilver, when he dissected their dead bodies.

He saw another, who being onely thrice anointed with Quicksilver, vomited many humours, wherewith much Quicksilver was confounded.

It is also storyed of one *Antonius Gallus*, that he being oft besmeared with Medicaments of quicksilver, and not voiding any by spittle, that much was mixed with his urine, wherewith gold might be so dealbated, that they would take it for silver.

Yet *Brasavolus* would have it assumed at the mouth, to kill Mawwormes; and *Fracastorius* avers, that certain women assumed each of them a pound of quicksilver to kill their young, which yet received no harm, they being frustrated in their design, and the young excluded duely and alive.

Yet the same Author having afterwards approved, and disapproved of its use, confesses ingenuously, that he is ignorant of its qualities; but boldly asserts, that it will cure the French disease.

One *Jacobus Carpensis* was the first that prescribed quicksilver to the cure of this disease, whose use was so successful, that he presently became very rich thereby: the Neotericks following him, mix it both with internal and external remedies; for its use is deprehended both wayes, as being indued with an alexiterial faculty, whereby it extinguishes the venereous poyson in the French disease: for it is its antidote; though it be no way safe, unless it be well handled, duely castigated, and opportunely given: for we have known many, who taking quicksilver from the unskilful, have either perished, or fallen into a worse case then before: for this is a beast which can scarce be tamed by any art; and therefore *Galen* is excusable, who feared to use it, and durst not make trial of its faculty, having learned from *Dioscorides*, that it was deletory. Such as work Lead or other Metals wherein there is any portion of quicksilver, are apt to contract trembling, Palsey, and corrugation of Nerves. Those also that effode quicksilver out of Mynes, though rustical and robust Men, yet do they scarce tolerate that labour for four years, but die miserably; for it is an untamed Medicament, whose active vertue and effect are both ancipitous; and though it be liquid, yet very ponderous Metals will swim upon it, as wood upon water; except Gold, which sinks therein.

Now quicksilver is either natural or artificial: the natural distils drop by drop out of the glebes of many Mynes, as of those in the Mount *Hydria*; or, fountain-like, flows copiously out of some vein in a Myne, smitten with a spade, or other Iron Instrument.

The artifical is made, or rather extracted, out of Cinnabaris; of which we have spoken in the former Chapter: I cannot assent to *Brassavolus*, who, after *Vitruvius*, asserts, that Mercury may be made of Marble; unless that I could say with the Alchymists, that this Sulphur and Salt may be elicited out of all mixed bodies.

Its qualities are as yet under debate; for some from its effects say,

say, it is hot, others cold: *Avicenna*, whom *Palmarius* and many others follow, says it is cold and moist; *Fracastorus*, *Tomitanus*, and others, who attribute an erosive faculty to it, contend for its calidity: I, with *Trajanus*, think it of a mixed quality, participating of many other facultties, but consisting chiefly of subtile, and calefactive, crasser, and refrigerative parts: for it incides, attenuates, penetrates, melts, resolves, subduces the ventricle; and, what is most to be admired, partly by an attractive faculty, attracts humours from the superficies to the centre, that is, to the ventricle, and excludes them by stool; and partly by an impulsive faculty, propels them from the centre to the habit, and ejects them by salivation. *Vires.*

It is used for both ends in the French disease: and it often works the fluor of the belly, when it is given for salivation; often salivation, when it is intended for the fluor of the belly.

It is sometimes redacted to white and ponderous powder, of which we have treated elsewhere; which, without molestation, subduces the belly, but harmes the bowels, wherein it leaves the malign impress both of it self and *aqua fortis*, in which it is immerged, as I have observed in many, who committed themselves to some Circulators.

SECT. II.

Of Medicinal and Precious Stones.

THere is no corner of the earth, which doth not afford man either Food or Raiment; no angle in which there is not something found idoneous for mans use. Arabia *is not onely happy in this, but every remote and barbarous Region, doth afford us many precious things, with which we do not onely cloath our selves gallantly, but use wholesomely. What plenty of rich and precious Gemmes is daily brought us from both the* Indies, *and other remote Regions, with abundance of eximious Plants! We call them Gemmes and Precious Stones, for their rarity, pulchritude, elegancy, and famous vertues. There is no doubt (saith the Poet) but there is a Divine Vertue placed in Gemmes. Hence, Kings and Princes do adorn their Crowns, enrich and illustrate their Fingers, beautifie their Houses, expel Enchantments, cure Diseases, preserve Health, recreate the Eyes, exhilarate the Minde, and drive away sadness therewith.*

Chap. I.

Of the Smaragde or Emerald.

After the Adamant, which is onely famous for its hardnesse, being of no use in Pharmacy, the Emerald takes place, whose elegant viridity, eximious dignity, and efficacious vertue, prefer it before all Precious-stones; then which, nothing can be objected more pleasant, nothing more grateful to the Eyes: for the lenity of its colour refreshes fatigated Eyes, which the fulgour of others offend. The *Arabians* call it *Zamarrut.*

Emeralds are found in many places, but the best amongst the Giants, called Cyclops, or Arismaspi, because they have onely one round eye in the middle of their foreheads: for *Arisma* with them denotes one, and *Spu*, an Eye.

This people hath continual warre with Gryffons, that they may more freely effode Gold and Precious-stones, wherewith their Mountains abound, which many Gryffons, fierce and cruel Birds, inhabit, which dilacerate men; and like vigilant keepers, punishing the temerity of great avarice, set upon each one they see, with their adunc Beaks and Claws.

Pliny makes twelve sorts of Emeralds: whereof the Scythian, which are lucidly green, are the best; then the Bactrian, which are sometimes found in the junctures of Rocks; next, the Ægyptian, which are got out of Hills and Rocks near a Theban Town called *Copton*;

Gopton; the rest are found in Brasse Mynes: of which see *Pliny*, (*Cap.6. Lib.37.*)

Our Merchants sell onely three sorts, distinguished by reason of the minority or majority of their value; for they set a small estimate upon brasse Emeralds, obscure variegated, not transluced, and all such as have either Jasper or Beryl, or other stones mixed with them.

The best Emerald is of one colour, splendid, pellucid, liquidly green, and pleasant to the eye.

The Emerald-stone is of such eximious faculties, that it is believed preservative from the falling-sickness, included in a Ring: it also roborates the Memory, loves Chastity, and is so averse to the fopperies of Venery, that when the King of *Hungary* went in to his wife, the Emerald in the Ring wherewith her finger was adorned, broke into three parts. And seeing its faculties are so eximious, *Mesue's* Interpreter did well, though besides his Authors meaning, to put an Emerald in the Electuary *de Gemmis*, in stead of *Feruzegi*, or rather *Peruzegi*, that is, *Turchesa*, or *Eranu*, which is of no vertue nor use in Medicine, but Emerald of much; whose commendable colour and excellent faculties, *Marbodæus* thus loftily warbles forth:

Omne virens superat forma viridante Smaragdus;
Collo suspensus dirum fugat hemitritæum.
Et sanare potest ipsa ratione Caducos.
Fertur lascivos etiam compescere motus.

Chap. 2.

Of the Saphyre.

SAphyre is a Gemme of no very precious value, especially the watery, so named from its colour: but the splendent, which is of an azure-colour, is of high esteem; of which the Poet thus comments:

Saphyri species digitis aptissima regum.

The watery, or as the Lapidaries term it, the white Saphyre, doth so much emulate the Adamant, that it hath deceived many: Both sorts are found in *Calecut*, but the better are brought from *Zeilan* and *Pegu*.

The vertues of Saphyres are neither so many nor so great, as the superstition of many men have made them, and as the vulgar Lapidaries have described; for those things that *Macer* (*Cap.5 lib.5.*) writes of it, are vain, and meerly false: who saith thus; *Vires.*

Quem natura potens tanto ditavit honore,
Ut sacer & merito gemmarum gemma vocetur.
Nam corpus vegetum conservat, & integra membra,

Et

Et qui portat eum, nequit ulla fraude noceri:
Invidiam superat, nullo terrore movetur.
Hic lapis, ut perhibent, educit carcere vinctos.
Obstructasq; fores & vincula tecta resolvit.

I will not further prosecute its Poetical description: For, Poets assuming authority for Lyes, may not be credited. Yet I can easily assent to such as say, that Saphyre recreates the heart, allayes venereous lusts, and makes him that carries it merry and pleasant: it resists poyson in drink, purges Ulcers in the Intestines, and the corruption of the eyes, when adhibited thereunto.

Chap. 3.

Of Rubies.

THis Rubine, is from its flammeous colour called ἄνθραξ, that is, a Carbuncle; but it shines not in the night, or burns like a candle, as many Ideots think: but its nitre, in respect of other stones, is as it were flammeous. Whence the Poet speaks thus:

Ardentes gemmas superat carbunculus omnes.
Nam velut ignitus radios jacet undique carbo.
Nominis unde sui causam traxisse videtur.

It hath the name of Carbuncle then from fire; whence the Grecians call them not onely *Anthraces*, but *Pyropi*; or, as some will have it, *Apyroti*, because they are not altered by the fire, nor yet become warm.

They are of so many different sorts, that they can scarcely be designed by peculiar names, or distinguished: those that come from *Carthage* are most excellent, elegant, fulgent, and precious: the Æthiopian are next; the Alabandian next; those that come from the Syrtes and India, next; those that are like other stones, are the worst and least elegant, for they are impure, and almost like Marble, obscure, flave, or whitish. Some think, that the Carchedonian Rubines borrow their dignity from *Carthage*, not from their pulchritude.

Merchants sell onely five sorts of Carbuncles: one sort whereof is very red and splendent, called Carbuncle absolutely, which is very rare, and fit for Princes; the other not so fulgent, which they call true Rubine, which is frequent enough.

The third degree of dignity, they attribute to that which they corruptly call Bulæsium; the next to Rubith, which they call Spinel; the last to Granates: of which in the sequel Chapter.

Many hold, that Carbuncles are of both sexes, to wit, Male, and those they say are such as shine more splendently; and Female, which shine more grosly and fatly.

All

All Rubines are Cordial, and resist Poysons. *Vires.*

Chap. 4.

Of Granates.

A Granate is so called; because it is like the stone of a Pomegranate; and it is a kinde of red Rubine, less elaborate by nature, and imperfected: it is indeed red, but obscure, as if it were a Rubine covered with a small cloud: whence some call it the blackish Rubine.

It is of two sorts; the one of more lively colour, emulating a corruscant flame, with some intermixed obscurity; the other more obscure, which is of a lesser estimate: both come from *Calecut*, and some places in *Spain*.

A Granate suspended, or drunk up, doth much resist sadness, and recreate the heart: but being of an igneons nature, it hurts the brain, exagitates the blood, and excites anger. *Vires.*

Chap. 5.

Of the Sardis-stone, or Carneol.

THe Onyx, Sardonix, and Sarda, have much affinity with one another: yet *Pliny* rightly distinguishes them; for Onyx is a nitent and polite Gemme, resembling a mans nail. *Polycrates* had a very fair one. (*Plin. cap.* 1. *lib.* 37.)

Sarda is not pellucid, but ruddy in colour, resembling flesh: whence it is called Carneol, not Corneal, as some say; for it is not white like a horn.

The Sardonix participates of both their colours; for it is like a mans nail imposed upon the flesh, and withall transflucid.

It is called Sarda, because the Sardians first found it: the best whereof is very red and perspicuous; the obscure and dilutely red, is not so good.

This stone carried about one, recreates the minde, cohibits sad dreams, expels fear, preserves the carrier from Witches and harms, stayes the bloody flux, and usefully ingredes the confection of the Electuary *de Gemmis*. *Vires.*

Chap. 6.

Of the Hyacinth.

THe Hyacinth is a Gemme of no very great value, for it is copiously brought from many places of *India*, and *Lusitania* also, to us: in colour it resembles Amber, but it is more splendent, emitting an aureous fulgour.

Some

Some write, That some Hyacinths are rubeous, others cæruleous: but many think, that such are rather Granates, Topazes, or such stones, then true Hyacinths. Some indeed are variegated, but the unicolourous are better, especially the Bactrian: the Arabian worst.

Pliny frequently inculcates, that some Hyacinths are of an Orange-colour, some variegated with certain white veins; and such the Greeks call *Leucochrysos*. There is a kinde of Amber, most flave, sincere, and fulgid, which the Greeks calls *Chryselectrum*, which some Ideots take for the true Hyacinth.

Hyacinths participate of some faculties, for they are of a cold nature: they condense bodies, conciliate sleep, roborate, defend from the contagion of Pestilence, excite alacrity, and defend from Thunder and Lightnings.

Chap. 7.

Of the Topaz-stone.

Ignit & hunc Arabum gemmis diti ssima tellus; as *Marbodæus* saith hereof: It was at first found in a cloudy Island of the same name in the Red-sea, by some Pyrats, who by tempests and storms were cast upon that coast; where making a longer abode without victuals, they were forced to fly to the herbs and roots for succour: with which they effoded Topaz, so called from the native soyl.

Many Topazes are also found in another Island called *Chitis*, which are very splendent and expetible.

There are two sorts hereof: the one is called *Prazoides*, or Chrysoprasius, which some say is the same with Chrysolite; the other Chrysopteron, so named from the nitent fulgour of its golden wings.

The Chrysolite much resembles the greenness of Leek-juyce in colour, yet more aureously fulgent; whence it is so named.

The Topaz-stone easily admits of a file; whereas other Gemmes are polished with a touch-stone.

Vives. It is a matter of admiration, that a Topaz-stone injected into boyling water, doth not onely hinder its longer ebullition, but so temper its fervour, that one may forthwith put his naked hand into it without harm.

It stayes the flux of blood in all parts; it allayes anger, either removes or abates sadness, hinders the phrensie, and delights the minde.

Chap.

Chap. 8.

Of the Azure-stone.

That which *Mesue* and the Arabians call *Azul*, the Greeks call κύανος, the Latines *Cyanum*; sometimes, the radiant and cæruleous stone: The French by a certain Prerogative call it absolutely, The Stone, without any adjunct: *Avincenna* and *Serapio* call it *Armenus*, and *Armeniacus*.

Yet Armenus and the Azure-stone differ; for the latter is nitent with aureous stars, and cærulcously flave beams; the former maculated with many green, cæruleous, and blackish spots, whence they call it Verdazure. However, their faculties are so conjoyned in affinity, that the one may well be substituted in the others stead; yea, both are eructed out of one Myne, being found for the most part either in silver or gold veins. The Azure-stone is most commonly in the gold Mynes, from which it borrows its golden stars.

Now as this is most fair, and good for bracelets and other ornaments; so most expetible for Medicaments.

An Azure-stone carried about one, helps the sight, exhilarates the minde; prepared and assumed, it pollicitates many commodities: for brayed, and duly washed, it potently and innoxiously expurges Melancholick humours; burned and washed, it recreates the internals: yet some have writ too superstitiously of it; asserting, That he that carried it about him, should be gentle, rich, and happy. *Vires.*

Chap. 9.

Of the Magnet, or Heraclean-stone.

Nature hath created nothing in the Universe more admirable, then the Loadstone or Magnet, which S. *Augustine* calls, The wonderful raptor of Iron; which (saith he) when I first saw, I much wondred at, seeing an Iron-ring attracted by a stone; and then another attracted by the former, to which the Magnet had communicated its faculty; and so a third by the second; and afterwards a fourth, and so on, till a chain of Rings, not implicitely connected, but extrinsecally adherent, hung thereat: to which *Pliny* attests (*Lib.* 43. *suæ Hist. cap.* 14.)

Whose attractive faculty was at first found out by a certain Herdsman, who following his Cattel on the Mountain *Ida*, at length came to a place where there lay plenty of Load-stones; whose shoes being stuck with Iron nails, and the one end of his staff plated with the same Metal, were so fast retained by this hamous stone, that he must either leave his Iron, or tire himself with pulling.

Now this Pasture was called *Magnes*, whose name this stone retains to this day: it is also called the Heraclean-stone; not from *Heraclius* its inventor, as *Taisnierius* will have it, but from *Heraclia* a City in *Lydia*, where much good Magnetical stone is got. Some call it Syderites, because it draws and allures Iron: it is also sometimes called Ship-stone, because it serves to much use in Ships.

There are five sorts hereof: the first is called the Æthiopian Magnet, which comes from *Æthiopia*; the second the Magnesian, that comes from *Magnesia*; the third is found in *Alexandria*; the fourth in *Echion* of *Bœetia*; the fifth, which is worst, in *Capo Verlichi-Natoliæ*. This is light and spongious, like a Pumick-stone. The Æthiopian Magnets are judged best: all, of what sort soever, are so much better, by how much more cæruleous; such also as are more ponderous, and attract Iron more firmly, are very laudable.

An Adamant hinders the attractive vertue, as also Garlick rubbed on the Magnet; for its attractive faculty is not so valid, but it may be easily deluded, obscured, and superated: and therefore *Taisnierius* his assertion is very ridiculous, to wit, That certain ships compacted with Iron Nails, sailing along the Æthiopian Sea, and driven by a tempest to the Promontories, should be by Magnets drawn to the bottom, or shivered to pieces, their Nails being by their potency extracted; for these are old-wives Fables, not worthy the Pen of an Author.

The Magnet draws Iron as its similar, for its own conservation and alimony; for which purpose, they put its dust in boxes; and it respects the North as its Matrix: whence Mariners say, it tends to the Antarctick Pole.

There is another stone called Theamedes, of an opposite quality, got in a certain Mountain in *Æthiopia*, which repels and respuates Iron.

Some sell burnt Magnet for Hematites; but they are much different, as appears by their description. *Dioscor.*

Vires. The Magnet besides its enumerated faculties, hath also some medicinal qualities, for whose cause it ingredes the divine salve, and others Medicaments: some thinke that a small quantity of a Magnet assumed at the mouth, will preserve youth; and therefore King *Zeilan* commanded that all the dishes and vessels wherein his Meat was to be cocted, to be made of Magnets.

Chap.

Chap. 10.

Of some other Gemmes more seldome used in Medicine.

There are yet almost infinite Gemmes, both fair and elegant to see to, and indued with special faculties; whose use being very rare, I purpose not to treat of every of them in several Chapters: for, it satisfies mine Institution, if I accurately describe those that ingrede the confections we have delivered in our Shop; yet lest some Apothecaries should think there were no more Gems, in this one Chapter I shall comprehend and Epitomize a great many.

The first that occurs is Eranus, which the French call Turchesa, *Turchesa.* the Arabians Peruzaa; *Pliny*, Callais, and Augites; whose colour seems to be confusedly, but elegantly mixed of an azure and green: it is had in *India*, especially about the Mountain *Cokas*.

The Jasper stone is either totally or in a great part green and ele- *Jaspis.* gant; whose species to enumerate, would tyre a man; for *Macer* saith, they are seventeen: it is very efficacious in staying blood.

The Blood-stone took its Greek name *Hæmatites*, from blood also; *Hæmatites.* for whether it be carried or assumed, it cohibits the issue of blood: it is thought to be a kinde of Jasper; for it is green, variegated, and as it were bespotted with drops of blood.

Achates, is so called from the River *Achate*, where it is found; *Achates.* there are many varieties thereof, but the most vulgar are obscurely white, disterminated with veins either red or black. It is storied of King *Pyrrhus*, that he had a special one, wherein Nature had ingraven the Nine Muses. Some Achates are red like Coral.

The Amethyst is a stone brought from *India*, of a purpureous *Amethystus.* mixed with a violaceous colour, emitting some small flames; whereof there are five sorts, the more vulgar is violaceous, resembling the colour of red Wine, much diluted with water: it is said to hinder ebriety, but to excite dreams.

As the whitely corruscant Adamant, the green Emerald, the flammeous and red Carbuncle, the cæruleous Saphyre, and the golden Chrysolite, are the best of those kindes: so is the variegated Opalus, in whose mixture is the micant fire of the Car- *Opalus.* buncle, the purpureous fulgour of the Amethyst, the cæruleous viridity of the Emerald, and all nitent colours most elegantly concentred; then which, no aspect is more beautiful. *Pliny* calls this stone Pæderos: it is got in the Island *Zeilan*, and in many parts of *India*, where it is called Argenon: it is also found in *Ægypt*, where it is called Senites.

There is another kinde of Opalus, less elegant and nitent, which they call Pseudopalus, and Cats-eye; which, as it is not so fair, so

not so expetible as the true Opalus. This is in probability the stone that *Isidore* calls Ophthalmius.

Panthera. There is another stone appertaining to the kinde of Opalus; which from its variegated colour, resembling the Panther, is called Panther; and it is thought to be indued with as many vertues as colours.

Selenites. The Selenite, so called from the Moon, which it represents, is a stone of a shining, candid, and yellow colour, which increases and decreases as the Moon doth: some of this kinde are greener, others paler.

Girasola. The Girasol, which some call the Sun's stone, others Leucopetalos, is reposed among those Gemmes which are candidly nitent, and emit an aureous fulgor.

Dionysia. There is a noble Gemme called Dionysia; which brayed and assumed, though it resemble the sapour of Wine, yet it resists ebriety. The Poet thus describes it:

Nigra micat rubris Dionysia consita guttis.

Beryllus. Beryl is a Gemme comprehending many under it of the same name; some whereof are cæruleous, others paler, others flave, and aureously fulgent, which are often called Chrysoprasi; others in colour resemble oyl, and others other things, so as its species are nine: Beryl shines obscurely, unless it be brought to a Sexangular form.

Nephriticus lapis. There hath been of late a stone mixed with a green and lacteous colour, brought from *New-Spain*, which they call the Reins-stone; which bound to ones arm, doth by a special propriety break and propel the stone.

Ætites. Ætites is as it were a pregnant stone, sounding when shaken, which derives its name from Eagles, by whom, as it is storied, it is got, and posited in their Nests, to allay the heat of their Eggs, lest they califie too much during incubation; others think otherwise, and speak much falsly concerning it. However, it is a stone that will accelerate birth, if applied to the thighs; but retard it, if bound above the stomack, or carried betwixt the Paps: there are four sortsof it, which may be learned from *Pliny*.

Lapis Judaicus. The Jewish stone, which is named from its native soyl, is white, of an elegant form, of the magnitude of an Acorn, disterminated with lines so equally distant, as if they had been artificially fabricated: Brayed, levigated, and assumed, it breaks the stones in the Reins and Bladder.

Chrysolapis. The Chrysolampe is pale on the day, but on the night splendent as fire; it is had in *Æthiopia*, but seldom brought to us.

Pliny, and such as write of stones, recenseate innumerably more: but they write of such as they never either knew or saw; and they usurp many stones, conjoyned by some affinity, for one and the same; and often constitute the same stone denoted by many names,

as

as multifarious: for *Pliny* avers, That the names of stones are almost innumerable.

There rest yet many stones of eximious vertue and high estimate; but because they are desumed from Animals, as Unions, or Margarites, the Bezaar-stone, and the like, we shall treat of them in our Book of Medicaments, desumed from Animals or their parts.

Chap. II.

Of certain Medicinal, but not Precious-stones: and first of Marble.

Marble is a most notorious & hard kind of stone; of which there are as many differences, as places whence they are elicited: the noblest are these; the Pheugitical, Parian, Zeblical, Porphyritical, and Ophytical Marble; all are approved or disapproved from their colour, nitre, perspicuity, and durity. That which is green or variegated, and hard withal, is faireſt and best; that also which is very candid and solid, is commendable; and such must be selected to the confection of the Citrian unguent.

The Pheugitical Marble shines most; and represents Images; *Nero* built a Temple of this stone, to *Fortune*; which shined so within, that though the doors and windows were shut, yet was it clearly perceptible.

The Parian is not all alike, for some is very white, which is very very frequent in *Italy*, others cineritious; some green, others ferreous: which last sort is so hard, that some make Anvils of it.

The Zeblical is found in *Misena:* This is the softest, and is thought good against Poyson; which, if so, is the best of Marbles.

The Porphyritical Marble is most-what variegated with red spots; it is brought out of *Ægypt:* that which is beset with white spots, is called Leucasticon, whereof they make good and excellent Pestels and Modules.

The Ophytical or Serpentine-Marble, is partly green, partly variegated with many other colours, like a Serpents skin; whence it hath its name: the most spots in the vulgar are pale, with others very dissimilar.

Some Marbles are also nobilitated from some Men, and some Regions; as *Luculus* his Black Marble; *Augustus Tiberius* his Marble; also Ægyptian, Theban, Ephesian, and Lacedemonian Marble.

Alabaster is a kinde of Marble, so called from *Alabastrum*, an Ægyptian City: it is ordinarily white and perspicuous; whereof Images are carved, and vessels made to receive and keep unguents.

Chap. 12.

Of Chrystal.

Chrystal, quid.

Chrystal is not congealed water, as many think, but a Mineral stone, white, pellucid, and nitent, like clear water, consisting of an aqueous and pure humour; not concreted by cold, but as many say, by the vertue of some divine calour: neither is it made of ice, though it be thence denominated, and often found in deep Snows, but of an humour of its own: for, ice warmed by the fire, melts easily; but Christal hardly, though encompassed round with fire, and alwayes agitated with flames and wind.

Chrystal is also found under the earth, amongst stones, in very hot Regions, where this Chrystalline humour, both from the universal cause, and a certain terrestrial potency, lapidifies; no other then Amber and Coral, which at first are humours also, and afterwards concrete into a lapideous solidity; not by cold, but from the aptitude of the matter.

usus.

The most pure, pellucid, and nitent Chrystal is best: it is not onely fit for the making of Cups, Vessels, Bracelets, and other elegant matters; but its powder ingredes the Citrian unguent, and is commended in dentifrices, and other Medicaments inservient to Ornament.

Chap. 13.

Of Gypsum, a kinde of Talkum or Lime.

Gypsum is known to all, especially to the Lutetians, whose Walls, Houses, and Palaces, are generally cemented therewith; whose suburbane Mynes are wholly of this Lime-stone, whose cunicles contain not any flint or other stone.

Now this Gypsum is a white and nitent stone, easily divisible into plates, and fit for Structures, Edifices, and Walls. Crude Gypsum is not usurped to the fabrick of houses, but it is first burned, till it become tabid, white, and easily pulverable; then diluted with water, which afterwards concretes to a stony hardness: before it be hardened, it is agitated with a Spade, subacted, and wrought so as it may be soft and sequacious, more fit to agglutinate stones, or compact other works. It is best when newly cocted; for if it be long kept, it will be more humid, and will not concrete so solidly.

There are two sorts hereof: the one more common, which is obscurely nitent; the other more rare, which is cloven into plates, and splendent, like specular stone: whence many call it Talkum, but improperly; for Talkum is more slender, squamous, white, and lucid: Some call it Selenite; some juglers by their deceptive art,

make

make an oyl of Talkum, to wash, erugate, and dealbate old Wives faces withall; and so daily deceive silly women, that will not indure deformity, with their vain promises, whilest warily, yet not illicitely, they put their hands into the womens Purses (for it is no injury or deceit to beguile those that consent and are willing.)

It hath an astringent faculty, and is good against Ruptures. *Vires.*

Chap. 14.

Of Chalk.

CHalk, Lime, and Gypsum, are agglutinative stones, used in compacting rich mens houses; for poor mens cottages are cemented onely with a little clay subacted. Now Lime, after it hath once drunk water, bears it not again; but Chalk is nourished by water, and longer and better preserved therewith. When I name Chalk, I mean, that which is very white, pulverable, friable, and by infusion in water inflammeable.

For crude Chalk is a hard ponderous stone, that will neither dissolve, nor wax white in water, and is more properly called Chalk-stone.

In what parts Chalk is found, there is no Lime; and where Lime is found, there is no Chalk: that Chalk is best, which touched with water, makes a noise, ignifies, and is cineritious; for age makes it whiter, but more infirm; for the air is got into it, and its fire is abated.

Dioscorides sayes, That Chalk may be made of the shells of Cockles, Mussles, or Oysters, so long burnt, till they be perfectly white.

An eximious Psylother may be made of quick Chalk and Auripigment, which will easily depilate rough places: This also, with some other things, will make good Pyrotick, which will burn the part they are applied to.

Chalk often washed with pluvial or fountain-water, may usefully be mixed to such unguents as cure cadaverous Ulcers. Chalk extinguished with water, and twice or thrice washed, if it be again cast into water, makes that water very convenient for the Ulcers in the Privities, and other running cadaverous and dangerous sores in other parts: for, by much washing, it deposes its mordacity, and ceases to be sharp; but yet it califies and siccates manifestly, and is therefore good to exsiccate Ulcers, and induce scars.

Chap. 15.

Of stones found in Spunges.

SPunges by nature accede nearer to Plants then Animals; for they have accrescion and augmentation, but no sensation, as many have

have credited. *Dioscorides* makes some of them male, which are full of smaller holes, the hardness whereof they call He-goats; and others female, which have larger holes. *Aristotle* makes four sorts of Spunges: some spisse, which are softest; others tenuious, which are hardest; others most spisse; and others most valid, which they call Achilleous Spunges. Those that grow on stones are harder; those that grow on the tranquil marine tracts, are softer.

But we know onely three sorts of Spunges: the first with rare and patent holes, which is softest and most vulgar, in magnitude and form resembling a mans Liver; the second perviated with lesser holes, which is denser, lesser, and harder; the third like Sea-spume, which is most dense, valid, and cineritious: they commonly call them all Sea-Mushromes.

Vires. *Pliny* saith, That stones either grow in Spunges, or coming from other places, fall in, and are stabled there: both sorts are well known, for they are found in every Spunge; but those that grow in the Spunge, must be selected, as being more apt to break the stone: yet *Galen* is of opinion, that this stone is not so valid, as to break the stone in the bladder.

Chap. 6.

Of Bricks.

Medicks do not onely from Gemmes and Stones, but from broken and inveterate Bricks, worn Shoe-soles, and Clay, seek remedies for the sick: for nothing is void of all qualities; and nothing, but, used opportunely by a perite and approved Medick, will profit.

There are many things which are efficacious while new, but by age lose their qualities and vertue, as common Medicaments: others, which are scarce Medicinal till they be old, as Bricks, which at first serve onely for structures, but when old, are very Medicinal, and expetible, as will appear from the Oyl extracted out of them for the cure of many diseases, as we have shewed in our Shop.

SECT. III.

Of Metals.

That is properly called a Metal, which is of a Fossile body, hard, ductile with a hammer, and liqueable with fire; but as soon as it is melted, it doth return into its pristine form. The word is derived from μεταλλάω, *that is to say, to search, because the Metallists are wont to search the Veins of the Earth; for every Vein doth afford some Metal.*

But concerning the matter of them, there are divers Opinions: Aristotle *in his third Book of Meteors,* cap. ult. *doth constitute a double matter of all Metals which are found in the Earth;* viz. Halitus & Vapor: *Of which all Fossiles are made in the bowels of the Earth. Those things that are digged out of the Earth, are either such that may be melted, or not melted: those that are incorporated with some humid matter, are easily melted, as Lead and Tin; others are melted indeed, but with more difficulty, as Iron,* &c. Matthiolus *writes that to be an Elementary substance, which is the efficient cause of Metal.* Scaliger, *Exercit.* 20. *saith, That the substance of Metal is a watery Earth: The Chymists appropriate it to* Mercury, *and therefore call it the Sperm of the Earth; or, as some say, the Sulphur; which they alledge out of* Albertus, *who saith, That the first matter of Metals, is a humid, unctious, and subtile Body, which is incorporated with a subtile and terrestrial mixture. Now there are as many Metals as Planets, to wit, Seven, whose Names and Characters they appropriate to the Metals: for they call Gold* Sol, *Silver* Luna, *Lead* Saturn, *Tin* Jupiter, *Iron* Mars, *Copper* Venus, *and Quicksilver* Mercury; *which is not properly a Metal; for it cannot be wrought, nor is it malleable; but after another manner, that is, in vertue, it may be called a Metal.*

But Scaliger, *Exercit.* 106. *reprehends this nomination of Metals, and their affinity with the Planets, and calls it fooliſh and ridiculous: Neither is the Number of Metals to be comprehended in the number of Planets; for not onely the Metals, but many other Fossiles, do strive to respond in Title and Character, and that more properly, to the Planets and Signs of the Zodiack; as Aspalatum to* Taurus, *Auripigmentum to* Gemini, *Sal Ammoniacum to* Cancer, *Red Arsenick to* Virgo, *Roman Vitriol to* Libra, *Sulphur to* Scorpio, *Roch-Alome to* Sagittary, *Scissile-Alome to* Capricorn, *Sal Nitre to* Aquary: *So that these three* Arcana's, *as they call them, are covered with many Ænigmatical Riddles, not unlike so many madmen, spewing out a thousand boastings, which are more fit to be derided then confuted. But we will hasten to our intended purpose, and enter upon a definition of* Sol, *which we call Gold.*

Chap. 1.

Of Gold.

Gold, the King of Metals, is of that kinde moſt perfect and compact; which bearing the tincture of the Sun in its countenance, exerciſes ſolar Dominion over all Mortals: for all obey Gold,

Aurum lex ſequitur & auro venalia rura. Diphil.

For nothing is more potent then pure Gold; to him men give adoration, for him men undergo great labour: and whoſo wants it, may either like a Leper ſejoyn himſelf from conſort; or like a dead carcaſe walk amongſt men.

But ſeeing it is adiaphorous, and either good or bad, according to the intent of the uſer; if it be ill uſed, it is the worſt of evils, for it is the ring-leading Captain of Contention, the plague of life, and the ruine of the Commonweal: Hence Raptures, hence Manſlaughters, and hence Battels enſue: but if it be well uſed, it is thought to be not onely the Subſidy of life, but the guarder of family, if introſumed. But I do not mean Chymical potable, or rather eſculent Gold, which refects the recipient onely with a lye, and vain expectations: for, grant we that the Alchymiſts can by their deluſive Art extract a flave liquor, emulous of melted Gold; yet this is ſo far from curing Leproſie, inveterate Dropſies, and other deplorable diſeaſes; or from retarding old age, and conſerving youth florid and vegetive, as they boaſt, that it is plainly of no noted uſe in Medicine; ſeeing the nature of Gold is ſo diſſident from our nature, that it cannot be to us reſtorative, as *Scaliger* well obſerves (*Exercit.* 272.) and there being many things more agreeable to our nature, they muſt needs be more conſervative of it: and what is more abſurd, then to ſay, that Gold nouriſhes, repairs our ſubſtance, and yet changes not into our nature? for thus he that eats Gold, will be a golden Fool like *Midas*.

Medicks therefore do not labour to diſſolve Gold, for that is all one, as if they ſhould deſtroy its native bonity, and induce an alien quality, either uſeleſs or noxious; but they do better, by working it into thin leaf, duſt, or atomes, that it may more eaſily inſinuate into the parts of the body.

Gold thus prepared, doth uſefully ingrede *Electuarium de Gemmis*, *Galens* lætificative powder, and roborative Medicaments. I was wont ſucceſsfully to preſcribe to rich Wenches of ill colours, the filings of Gold, in ſtead of prepared Steel, with other fit Medicaments, ſometimes in form of Pills, ſometimes of Tabels.

Vires. The Medicinal faculties of Gold are indeed many; yet neither ſo great nor ſo many, as Alchymiſts predicate: it is chiefly commend-

ed

ed for exhilarating such as are melancholical, or preternaturally sad.

Chap. 2.

Of Silver.

Silver also is as very Soul and Blood to Mortals; for after Gold, it is the most noble of Metals, which age neither corrupts nor hurts, but alwayes remains nitid, splendid, and sincere, easily ducible and liquescible: it is made in the bowels of the earth, of clean and candid Quicksilver, and pure, clear, firm, and white Sulphur, equally contempered, and so it evades candid and fulgent. Furthermore, the heat of well-claensed Sulphur, dealbates and makes it more subtile, and so exsiccates it, that it becomes tinalous, hard, and sonore.

This alone of Metals seems to emit a transiucid splendor; for its light in the Myne, doth in a manner represent the rudiments of stars in a dark place: But when it is more pure, and purged seven times in the fire, as the Psalmist sings, *Psal.* 11. then it is farre more splendent. The Alchymists compare it to the Moon, whose name they give it, but its qualities are not answerable.

It is judged colder then Gold, whose vertues and dignity it in some degree participates of, being next to it in perfection and purity. By its natural complexion, it is temperately cold and moist: whence they say, it auxiliates the spiritual members, it stayes the palpitation of the heart, for it roborates it, and helps sanguification, making the blood more laudable. The Alchymists extract an oyl out of it, which they commend to many diseases in the Brain: but dogmatical and true Medicks, onely use its powder or leaves in Medicaments, and they that do otherwise, work deceitfully. *Vires.*

Chap. 3.

Of Tinne.

Tinne is another kinde of Metal, found in the Myne with Silver, which *Pliny* calls White-Lead, to distinguish it from Black-Lead, which is as it were the purgation of Silver and Tinne left in the Furnace. Such as devote Tinne holy to *Jupiter*, say, it is generated of pure and clear Quicksilver, and crass and immund Sulphur.

There are many things common betwixt Lead and Tinne; for neither of them contract rust, but rather some squalour or filth, whereunto Lead is more addicted then Tinne; neither of them are sonore, nor very hard, onely Tinne is a little more sonore and hard then Lead.

Tinne is either simple, pure, and defæcated; or impure, and com-

pounded of other Metals, so made either by Nature or Art: whereof there are many differences, according to the nature of the ingredients, and proportion of the same; whose faculties respond to the mixion of those things whereof it consists.

Usus. Tinne is of much use to man, which though it be seldome used in Medicine, yet it affords vessels for their repose and preservation. The Alchymists make an Oyl out of Tinne, for the cure of Wounds and Ulcers; but I think such Medicaments as are easilier made, cheaper, and more efficacious, are better.

Chap. 4.

Of Lead.

Molybdos, or Lead, is, according to Alchymists, both dedicated to *Saturn*, and called *Saturn*; and in their opinion it is generated of impure and crass Quicksilver, and a little impure Sulphur: and it is thought, that not onely under the earth, but in the open air also, it augments; and therefore *Cardanus* thinks it labefactates houses by its weight, who make four differences thereof, the vulgar, white, which many call Tinne, Bisemutum, yet unknown, and that which is made of Stibium.

Pliny acknowledges onely two sorts; the vulgar or black, and the white: who gives a twofold original to the black; for (saith he) it is either generated in its own vein, which produces nought else, or it is conflated in many veins mixt with Silver. The first liquor which flows in furnaces, is called White-Lead, or Tinne, the second Silver, and that which remains, the Latines call *Plumbago*, out of which Lead is elicited.

It is extracted also out of a certain Plumbary, effoded out of Mynes, which stone they call Molybdoides; and the Lead thus secerned and melted, is poured into water, while hot, till it leave its dross.

Morters and Pestels for Medicinal uses, are made of Lead; as also round Pipes or Canes, for deep and internal Ulcers, which are as good as golden Pipes.

There is also a Powder made of Lead, for the exsiccation of Ulcers: whereof we have elswhere made mention.

Vires. *Galen* saith, that Lead is refrigerative, and is either solarly, or mixed with other Medicament, conducible to malignant, cankerous, and putrid Ulcers; but its faculties are bettered by lotion or ustion. *Dioscorides* teaches the manner, qualities and effects of its ablution and ustion. Ceruse is made of plates of Lead: of which hereafter.

Chap. 5.

Of Brass.

Brass is dedicated to *Venus*, from her Island *Cyprus*, where it is copiously effoded; and it is either of a golden colour, and thence called Aurichalcum; or redder, and then it is called Brass absolutely. This was of more use amongst the Ancients, then either Gold, Silver, or Iron: for the first money was of Brass. And hence we have these occurrents, *Ærarium Publicum*, *as alienum*, & *quæstor ærarius*. Their bellatory arms also were not of steel, but brass, as also their Statues and Temple-doors.

In Pharmacopolies we often meet with these terms, *Æs ustum*, *flos æris*, *squama æris*, & *ærugo*: but what every of these denotes, all our Pharmaceutical lections will scarcely teach us. *Æs ustum*, or burnt Brass (saith *Dioscorides*) is made of the nails of broken ships, imposed upon a crude earthen vessel, a little Sulphur, and as much Salt strewed under them: all of them being besprinkled herewith, and the vessels spirament daubed with a singular cement, it is set on a furnace till they be cocted.

This *æs ustum* astringes, exsiccates, represses, extenuates, attracts, purges Ulcers, and brings them to a scar, and emends the vices of the eyes.

Flos æris, or the flower of Brass, is made, when the Brass melted in the furnace delabes into certain receptacles, through the necks of such fistuls as appertain thereunto; and when cold water is infunded upon the burning Brass, before it concrete into a hard mass: for then this *flos æris*, in this sudden concretion and densation, will erupt in a vapour; which concreting also will fall down in small red grains like Miller, which we take for *flos æris*.

Squama æris, or the scales of Brass, are made, when Brass is smitten with hammers; and those are the best which are excussed out of the same Brass that nails are made of; those the worst, which are made of vile and promiscuous, or white Brass. This *squama æris* astringes, extenuates, represses, erodes, stays arrels, and brings Ulcers to scars.

Chap. 6.

Of Verdegrease.

Verdegrease is not onely of use to Painters, but to Physicians also, who mix it with many Medicaments for the cure of Ulcers; as that Medicament which *Galen* calls *Lite*, and more he describes.

This Verdegrease is not the flower of Brass, as some think, but a certain green rasure, which exudes out of its plates wet with vinegar;

Dioſco-

Dioscorides make two sorts hereof: one the vulgar or simple Verdegrease; the other, worm-rust: and that twofold; the one fossile, and the other factitious: both whereof are rare; for the one is either not sought, or not found; and the other not now made.

But the vulgar is copious, and every-where venale, which may be made many wayes, but most usually thus:

Some sharp Vinegar must be infused into a Hogshead, or other ample vessel; whereon a brazen vessel must be inversly superimposed; if it may be, a concamerated one; or if it be plain, it must be so obstructed, that there may not be any spiracle left: after ten dayes, let the cover be removed, and the Verdegrease thereon eraded.

This way is also most usual: one or more plates of brass are so suspended in a Hogshead, containing Vinegar, that they may not touch the Vinegar, and the due dayes being expired, the Verdegrease is eraded. Moreover, the same plates macerated in Vinegar, will afford Verdegrease.

Vires. It is sharp, digestive, and attractive: it discusses not onely tender, but hard flesh; and it is not onely mordacious to the gust, but to the very Ulcers. If you adde a little of it to a large Searcloth, the mixture will exterge without mordacity. Many erre in ascribing a Sarcotical or Epulotical faculty to many Medicaments, when they of themselves are not, but become such by composition. *Galen.*

Chap. 7.

Of Iron.

NOthing is more common, nothing more useful, and nothing more nocent, then Iron: for, neither houses, stables nor ships, nor yet such things as respect mans vesture and aliment, can be had or made without Iron; seeing no labour is suscepted, no work absolved, without the adjument hereof: for all Artificers need some Iron Instrument to their work. All which I will not in special prosecute, seeing it is notorious to every Rustick.

For, not onely Plough-shares, Saws, Hatches, Sickles, Tongs, and Needles; but also Swords, Spears, Darts, Arrows, and Canon-bullets, which beat down whole Cities and Fortresses, killing men, and perpetrating a thousand slaughters, are made of Iron: which *Pliny* not induring, cries out; we do not only use Iron at hand, but send it to do our mischief at distance; one while ejecting it out of Slings, another-while of Cross-bowes, and sometimes making it fly with feathers; as though death were not swift enough, but we must accelerate his feet with wings, and arm him with Iron.

What if *Pliny* had seen our Canons and bellical torments, wherewith we do not onely overthrow Cities and Walls, but Rocks and Mounts!

But

But Iron is not the cause of these mischiefs, but the wicked guiles of mans ingeny, which puts that to ill use, which in it self is good: for it makes also wayes and passages, whereby putrid blood is educed out of the veins; corruption ejected out of the breast; fragments of bones, and other things that would molest the brain, drawn out of the scull; corrupt teeth evelled from the gums; the cadaverous flesh of Ulcers removed; a putrid member abscinded, lest it should draw the rest into its consort. What needs more? We cannot live without Iron; for else we might effode Dens with our Nails, in stead of Houses, and eat our Meat like Beasts.

There are two sorts of Iron: one retains its name, the other being more defæcated, is called Steel. There are two differences of the former; the one may be melted and drawn, of which they make many rustical instruments; the other may be melted, but not drawn, being very fragil, whereof they make molten Pots, and other culinary instruments: After which use, *Scaliger* thinks it is not useless, but may be molten again; as also, that same which he elswhere says onely mollifies: for we see, that both sorts may be melted by ardent heat; yea, some at *Lutetia* seek and buy the fragments of Iron Pots, which they carry to the furnaces, and melt over again.

Some say, that Steel is nothing but Iron accurately defæcated; and many boast, That they can work Iron into Steel: It hath its Latine name from *Chalybo*, a Town in *Assyria*; yet that of *Damascus* is most laudable, for a Sword of that Steel will cut Iron.

There is a Powder made of Steel-dust, which Alchymists call *Mars* his Saffron: but Iron-dust duly prepared, is every whit as good. We have treated of both in our Shop.

And as Brass hath its ærugo or Verdegrease, so hath Iron its ferrugo or rust; whereby it is eroded and absumed, in lieu of its fault, as it were, of effusion of blood: for Iron tincted with blood, presently contracts rust.

There is a certain kinde of excrement which eructates out of Iron, which they sometimes call its dross, sometimes its scales, sometimes its recrement, and sometimes its dung: but those are properly called Iron-scales, which break from it, while its beaten with hammers; and that its recrement or dung, which is elicited by ignition.

Many assert, That Iron-rust will cure Ulcers; and that *Telephus Virer*, King of *Mysia*, wounded by *Achilles*, was thereby persanated: for this, as also its dross, astringe and siccate; whence they are mixed with Medicaments of a siccative faculty.

All Iron is roborative; and thence some waters become Medicinal, which the Normans call Forgenses, borrowing eximious vertues from Iron.

Chap.

Chap. 8.

Of the seventh Metal.

Some say, This seventh Metal is Mercury, others Amber; but neither of these are more then in a potency to be Metals: but it seems rather to be Stibium, which is more truly called a Metal, which is another great Alchymistical Idol, and the sole Empyrical Cathartick, whereby they jactitate to cure all diseases; but they too anxiously perturb some mens Ventricles, by moving them both upward and downwards; others they miserably torment, by too vigorous purging; some they kill, and restore very few to sanity.

One *Corn: Gemma*, a Physician of *Lovanium*, saith, That a Paracelsian Englisth Medick, being himself and his wife detained by a Fever, took himself, and gave to his wife, that they call prepared Antimony; whereupon she fell quickly distracted, and changed her life, yet valid, with death: He, complaining of dreams, and continual watchings, seven dayes after his dejection, began to dote and roave; from that he became Epileptical; from his Epilepsie he fell into a Lethargie, being therewithall somewhat Apoplectical; when he had been detained three dayes in that sopour, he fell again to his roaving, and was so agitated with fury, that not long after, he expired, and passed from his conjugal bed, to his conjugal tomb.

Vives. Yet this Antimony is by some so artificially prepared, that being opportunely given, it produces admirable effects: for an eximious sudatory, inferiour to none, may be made of it. Neither is that Powder contemptible, which they call Flower of Stibium; for if it be prepared by perite, and exhibited by learned Artists, it profits much. Yet very good Medicks forbear to prepare or exhibit it, because they have much better Medicaments, whereby they may more securely cure any disease.

Chap. 9.

Of Ceruse.

Ceruſa, quid. As Iron hath its rust, and Brass its verdegrease; so hath Lead its Ceruse, which some call the flower of Lead, and others, after *Galen*, Psymmithion.

And although Ceruse erupt like Verdegrease, by the benefit of Vinegar, yet is not green, but very white: whence Painters, to whom it is of much use, call it White-lead; and it is made after this or the like manner:

Sharp Vinegar is in the Summer-time infunded into a pot with a broad orifice, a plate of Red-Lead is superimposed, and the vessel so

so occluded, as nothing can expire. When the plate of Lead is taken off, which is most commonly on the tenth day, that crasser matter that falls to the bottom of the vessel, is collected and siccated: afterwards it is grinded with a Hand-mill, and sifted; then coacted into a Masse or Pastils with a little Vinegar, and preserved.

It may also be made of Lead-dust, immerged and resolved by the space of ten dayes in very sharp Vinegar. It is sometimes also made of the same Plates infused and deraded, and again macerated and deraded; the same again and again reiterated, till they be resolved; then their rasure must be collected, brayed, sifted, and coacted with Vinegar.

Painters do not onely seek after white Ceruse, but women also, to fucate their faces; yet by its undue use, the teeth become black and worm-eaten, and the breath fœtid. The best is that they call Rhodiaca, or that we now call Puteolis.

Ceruse baked in a new earthen pot upon burning coals, will acquire by ustion a red colour, and so become Sandix, which is an artificial Vermilion, and not Sandaracha, as some think.

Before Ceruse ingrede the composition of Salves, Unguents, and Collyries, it should be prepared, that is, washed, that it may desiccate and astringe moderately, without any mordacity; and that in some fit liquor, as in simple water, or Rose-water, thus:

Let a convenient quantity of Ceruse be taken, and brayed in a stone-Morter with a wooden Pestel; then let water be poured upon it; then let it stand till the Ceruse be quiet in the bottom of the Morter; then abject the water: let more again be poured in; agitate it; then suffer it to reside, and eject the water as before: then again pour new water in; and so let the work be iterated, till the water poured in and agitated, appear clear and pure, without filth.

These duly performed, let the Ceruse be lævigated on a red Marble stone; then dryed, and again brayed, and then formed into Pastils with Rosewater, and reposed for future uses. Some bray it with Vinegar, and subact it into a masse; others with another liquor accommodated to their intentions.

Ceruse refrigerates, siccates, astringes, extenuates, expletes, represses excrescencies, and perduces to a scar: it cannot be assumed at the mouth without peril. *Vires.*

Chap. 10.

Of Cadmia, both factitious and fossile.

Cadmia, which the Arabians call Climia, is either fossile and native, which is the stone out of which Brass is drawn, and is

called Braſs-Ore, which Artificers uſe in making yellow Braſs; which the ſhop-men call Aurichalcum, or Orichalcum; or elſe it is factitious.

The native is often found in Metal-Mynes: it is a yellow ſtone, very hard; appearing of two colours when it is not accended, but all over lutcous when accended: and it is probable, this is the ſtone which *Albertus* calls Didachos, or the Devils-ſtone. The rivulets and torrents of *Cyprus* ſometimes afford ſuch a ſtone, which, being of many colours, ſome call it, The Rainbow-gemme; of which we have before ſpoken; but indeed it is neither the Rainbow nor Didachos.

Factitious Cadmia is a denſe body, concreted of the ſmoke of Braſs melted in a furnace, driven by the wind, and cleaving to the ſides and roof of the furnace. *Galen* ſaith, it is no matter whether we call it an earth or a ſtone; out of which, ſome Braſs, ſome Cadmia, and ſome Diphryges, is drawn: for the ſtone Pyrites burnt in a furnace, affords Cadmia.

Vires. There are five ſorts of factitious Cadmia: the firſt is called Capnitis, which is found in the very orifice of the furnace; which is ſo exuſt and tenuious, that it reſembles Embers: the ſecond is called Oſtracicis, which for the moſt part is black, and looks like a pot-ſheard, being more grave, and therefore it delabes to the bottom of the furnace; and it is the moſt ſordid of all: *Galen* calls it *Spodos* or *Spodium*: the third and fourth are found in the middle of the furnace, and they are called *Placitis* and *Botrytis*: Placitis is cruſty, and encompaſſed with ſegments, as with Zones; which is leſs ponderous, and adheres to the ſides of the furnace; under which Onichitis is found. Botrytis is moderately heavy, in face and colour like Spodium; which when broken, is cineritious and æruginous. The firſt is as it were the thinner ſmoke of the Braſs, which adheres to the top of the furnace: of which hereafter.

All Cadmia is well and frequently had in the furnaces of *Cyprus*, which they make of that ſtone, which in dignity they call Cadmia: They make whiter Cadmia of Silver, but it is not comparable to that of braſs.

Vires. Cadmia deſiccates gently, abſterges, and helps humid and putrid Ulcers, and draws them to ſcars.

Chap. II.

Of Spodium.

NOthing is more frequently inculcated or heard in Pharmacopolies, and nothing leſs underſtood, then Spodium; which all the Apothecaries that I know, make of two ſorts: one coming from *Greece*, and another from *Arabia*; being in name one, but in nature very different: but that I may ſpeak plainly, there is no Arabian

Spo-

Spodium, but fictitious, as we said before, and shall declare hereafter.

The Græcian Spodium, which is indeed the sole Spodium, is found in brass furnaces, with Pompholix, with which it hath much affinity: and it is then made, when micant sparks ascend from the Metal while it is cocting: and because of their gravity delabe down again upon the pavement; which as they refrigerate, mix themselves with filth: and hence this concreted heap of sparkes is inquinated, which they call Græcian Spodium, which is of use onely in external affections.

The Spodium of *Avicenna*, and the rest of the Arabians, if any, is made of very dissimilar matter, to wit, of the burnt roots of Canes; whereunto *Avicenna* attributes so many downies, that I cannot but admire the mans credulity, or else simplicity, in writing; seeing it is contrary to reason, that that root by ustion, which they call Spodium, should recreate the heart, help against swounding, quench thirst, allay the heat of the stomack, and cure the Palsey, Melancholy, and other diseases he enumerates.

And grant we, that the Arabian Spodium can effect all these, yet we ought not to prescribe it, because it comes not at us. Apothecaries in its stead substitute burnt Ivory, calling it Spodium; whereas it is indeed rather Antispodium: as also that same they make of fig and Myrtle-leaves burnt together, whereof *Dioscorides* speaks more at large.

But as crude Ivory differs much both in nature and faculties from crude Canes, so burnt also: for crude Ivory is better then burnt Ivory.

Seeing then the Arabian Spodium cannot be had; or if it could be had, would not answer to those faculties *Avicenna* puts upon it, and we have no analogous substitute; it should be expurged from Medicinal receipts: for there is onely one, and that the Græcian Spodium, which may not be assumed at the mouth.

The interpreters of the Barbarians language erre in translating the Arabian *Tabaxir*, or the Indians *Tvaesir*, Spodium; for *Tabaxir*, according to *Garcias*, is a Persian word, denoting a facteous liquor, or sweet succe, which the Barbarians call *Sacar Mambu*; it is got in reeds, or rather trees, which are so great, that they can make many Boats out of one; each whereof being excavated betwixt two knots, will hold two men, wherein the Indians sail swiftly, and defend themselves from Crocodiles.

The succe of these trees is very black and cineritious, which they do not onely denominate Spodium, though falsly, but call it burnt ashes by the same name; whereas Antispodium, according to *Dioscorides*, is made of ashes: for that the ashes of Canes may be called Antispodium, and be rightly substituted for defect of the Græcian Spodium, but not assumed at the mouth. Seeing now there is no *Tabaxir* of which they can make Spodium, but ridiculously burn Ivory for that purpose; we may admit of no Spodium but one, and

and that the Græcian, which is a kinde of factitious Cadmia; as also Pompholix, whose disquisition we shall now looke into.

Chap. 12.

Of Pompholix.

Pompholix is a small and volatile spark, which while Brass is trying in the furnace, flies on high, and adheres to its supernal part. At first when it is made, it goes into bubbles and lumps, which by touching, are disperged: for it is like white ashes, and so light, that it easily flies up, and like dust, adheres to the top of the furnace; and while this by its levity is elevated upward, another sort of sparks by their gravity delabe to the Pavement; which we call Spodium: so that both are made in one furnace, both have mutual cognation, and one may supply the defect of another.

Pompholix is by some Seplasiaries called *Nil*, or *Nihil*; by other, The Cadmian Bubble; by the *Mauritanians*, Tuthia: whereof there are two varieties; one fat, which is of a brazen colour; the other very white and light, which is less laudable: for *Dioscorides* saith, That the Cyprian is best, which dipt in Vinegar, smells like Brass, of the colour of Pitch, and tasting as dung.

But before it be used, it must be washed thus: The Pompholix must be bound in a pretty thin linen-cloth, and moved up and down in a vessel full of limpid, pluvial, or fountain-water, that its more useful and tenuious part may flow into the water, and the impurer and excrementitious remain in the cloth; then it must settle, and the water be effunded, and clean water affunded, and the cloth again agitated, till nothing that is useful be left therein. There are more wayes of its ablution described by *Dioscorides*.

Vires. Pompholix is almost the best of all those Medicaments which deficcate without mordacity, and therefore very efficacious in cankerous, and other malignant Ulcers, and for the running of the eyes. (*Galen 9. Simpl.*)

Chap.

Chap. 13.

Of Litharge.

Litharge is as it were the ſpume of Metals, purged by fire; or the tenuious recrement of Silver, purged from its Ceruſe, excuſſed and expelled by the help of bellows. And though its matter is multifarious, which ſome make Lead, others Silver, others Gold, and others Ceruſe; yet it draws its origine chiefly from Lead, which mixt with the recrements of Silver, and melted and cocted in the fire, is afterwards ſeparated; for all the recrements of Silver are eaſily ſeparated by fire: which, if they be plumbeous or æreous, as they are ordinarily, they may by coction be turned into Litharge; which, when cold, is ſometimes aureous, ſometimes argenteous, according to the brevity or diuturnity of its coction.

That which in colour reſembles Gold, is ſometimes called Chryſitis, ſometimes Celauritis; that which repreſents Silver, Argyritis: not becauſe this contains Silver in it, or the other Gold, but becauſe they have been each more or leſs cocted then other, or have received more or leſs of the æreous or argenteous vapour.

For Litharge is moſt-what made in thoſe furnaces, wherein ſilver is purged from Lead, mixed with its recrements: whence it hath its name, rather from ſilver, then any other Metal; for Litharge portends as much as ſilver-ſtone.

All Litharge then is the product of ſilver; and that which is flave like gold, is not made of gold, as ſome think, though it be thence cognominated Gold-Litharge: for degrees and intentions of heat, do not onely change the colour, but intend or remit the heat, and vary the name. Thus Diphryges is named, as though it were twice cocted, which is the ſibſident droſs of perfect Braſs, cohering to the bottom of the furnace, like the aſhes of burnt wood: when the Braſs is taken away, after the the affuſion of water; and it is as ſharp as burnt Braſs, ſiccates vehemently, cures rebellious Ulcers; and it may be made two other wayes, according to *Dioſcorides* and *Pliny*.

Now beſides theſe two ſorts of Litharge, which *Dioſcorides* makes one, he enumerates other two, to wit, Molybditis, which *Vires.* is made of ſand in furnaces; and another of Leaden plates, which is the moſt uſeful and frequent.

Yet Chriſtis is preferred before all; which ſhould be purged from its Lead and droſs, before it ingrede the Compoſition of any Medicament: to which end *Dioſcorides* ſayes, it muſt be burnt, and waſhed like Cadmia; but now they onely levigate it in a morter, putting clear water upon it, and agitating it, then they caſt it into another

their vessel, and pouring more water upon it, agitate it again; and when it is again troubled, cast it into the precedent vessel, and iterate its lotion, till the Lead and dross subside in the morter, and all its tenuious substance be educed, which they make to acquiesce, till all the sincere and pure Litharge rest at the bottom; which when the water is effunded, they collect and levigate upon a Marble, that the tongue may not perceive any asperity therein.

Vires. Litharge refrigerates, astringes, represses, occludes, expletes cavities, exterges, draws to scars, and cures gallings by riding.

Finis Libri Secundi.

THE

THE THIRD BOOK OF Medicinal Matter.

TREATING

Of Medicaments taken from Animals, either whole or in part.

THE PREFACE.

Our Mother Nature hath produced nothing either imperfect, or in vain, but hath brought forth variety of Plants for the sake of Animals, and several species of Animals for Plants: Many of them are ordained for Food and Nutriment; some, for Medicament; and other for Vesture. One Animal is an enemy to another, but all are subservient to Man: For there is no Insect, how vile and base soever, which doth not afford some profit to Man. For the most imperfect Creatures, usually afford the most perfect Remedies; as, from Claws, Horns, Excrements, Blood, Flesh, Marrow, Testicles, and Bones: Besides, those very wounds which are made by certain Animals, are cured by the Application of some part of the same Animal: Nay indeed, the whole Earth doth abound with innumerable Remedies, for the variety of Maladies. What excellent Vertues do those Medicines afford, which are derived from humane Bodies! of which first here we intend to speak; viz. *Of Mumy, and Man's Blood: whose faculties to emblazon, would require a larger Discourse, then this our intended brevity will permit.*

Chap. I.

Of Man's Blood.

ALchymists educe a certain Oyl, and stillatitious water out of Man's Blood; the dogmatical onely use it to burstness, in whose stead Hogs blood may rightly be substituted, as *Galen* advises, who saith (*Lib.*3. *de Alin.*) that Swines blood doth so nearly accede to Mans blood, that he that findes any thing in Mans blood useful for Medicine, shall finde the same in Swines blood.

Blood is Natures Treasury, generated by heat in the greater Veins of the Liver, which is the prime organ of sanguification, from the purer portion of Chyle; through which Veins it is carried as it were along tubes to the several parts of the body for their nutrition: and as long as it is herein contained, it is liquid and red; but when effunded, it presently concretes: onely the blood of Harts and Does wanting fibres, concretes not, but remains fluid like Milk: for *Hippocrates* averres, That blood concretes not, when the fibres are taken away.

Now blood being the matter of the whole body, according to the Philosopher; the blood of man, who is the rule of other Animals, is sincere and thin, hot and moist, and the best of succes: yet it is not a simple humour, but participates of Phlegm, and both the Biles: And therefore *Hippocrates* saith, That the four Humours are the matter of mans generation, as *Galen* attests (*Lib.* 2. *de Temp.*)

Blood then is an humour generated in the Liver, of a temperate part of Chyle, moderate in substance and qualities, in colour red, in sapour sweet, and naturally contained in Veins and Arteries, whereby it is directed to all parts (*Lib.*3. *de Part. Animal.*) for as water is from one fountain and original, deduced into many rivulets, others arising from these, till the humour pervade all Regions: so Nature hath directed blood through the whole body, it being the matter of the whole.

The blood of a diseased or intemperate man, must not be collected and kept in shops, for the confection of any Emplaister; but from some temperate and sound man, if it may be had; as the blood of such as are beheaded: for their Veins and Arteries being cut together, their veinous and arterious blood is promiscuously collected.

Yet neither the blood of this, or any other Animal, is of much value or vertue in the confecture of astrictive salves, because by siccation and asservation, it neither retains any of its native bonity, nor yet assumes any excellent acquisititious quality.

Chap.

Chap. 2.

Of Mumy.

Rhasis and *Avicenna* contend, That *Mumy* is an Arabick word, denoting *Pissaphaltam*; *Isaac* saith, It is a Persian word, signifying a certain liquor, found in Sepultures, where aromatized carcases had been long reconded: one fellow calls it Cerops; upon what ground I know not, unless because it hath the consistency of Wax; for *Num* with the Persians denotes Wax.

It is found onely in the Tombs of Ægyptian Kings and Nobles, who hearing of a Resurrection, made their bodies be condited with Myrrhe, Cinnamome, Aloes, and other Spices, that they might conserve them.

But many years after, when the Souldiers in time of Wars devastated all places, everting Sepulchres, they found in some coffins a certain odorate and pleasant liquor, of the spissitude of honey; which, when the Ægyptian Medicks and Philosophers judged upon good grounds to be indued with eximious faculties, they believed it might work the cure of some affections, and therefore they made tryal of it, and found the event answerable to their opinions; they restoring many to sanity thereby.

They then being imboldened by this experience, fought this conditure in other Noble-mens Sepulchers, which they inverted, and exhausted: yea, they so much envied the happiness of the dead mens bones, that they robbed poor mens coffins of their corruption: which cadaverous liquor they called Mumy; and gave it to the sick.

Nay, it was of so much fame presently, that they would insperge a little Salt and Alome on the carcases of such as dyed of the French disease, Leprosie, or Scab, and after a few moneths collect their putrid matter, and sell it for Mumy: and, what is more horrible, they would take the dead carcases of such as had been suffocated and dryed in the sands of *Arabia*, and call them Mumy, and give them to the diseased, to be assumed at the mouth.

Yea, many are in that errour still, that Mumy is onely the cadaverous and dry flesh of bodies corrupted and putrid. Yea, I remember I heard a man of much learning, but no great skill in Medicine, amongst a company of famous men, speaking of Mumy, and all contending, that now we had no true Mumy, but a little tabid, fœtid, corrupt flesh, in respect of that which was found in the Ægyptian Kings Sepulchres, which was both fragrant and vertuous, say, That Mumy was the flesh of dryed bodies; and that he had seen it lately dryed, while it was adherent to the ribs.

Thus this impious opinion adheres to the mindes of the credulous, who collecting some filthy matter from mans flesh, a wicked custome indeed, introduced by wretched men, exhibit it to the sick.

Mumia antiquorum non amplius haberi.

We are so farre from possessing the Mumy of the ancient Ægyptians, which was but small, and soon spent, that we cannot have *Avicenna* his Mumy, which was made of mans corruption, mixed with Pissaphaltum, but are content with the succe expressed out of putrid carcases, and inspissated, which is now kept in Pharmacopolies, to mens greatest peril; which perite and prudent men never use in Medicine: for it is absurd to think, that this Mumy should help such as are hurt by falling; nay, will it not rather harm them, and all that use it? for if we fear that any ones blood should clot by falling, have we not Posca and Oxymel, and other inciding Medicaments more conducible?

But seeing no Compound in our Shop requires mans Fat, no more of that.

Chap. 3.

Of Goats Blood.

GOats are either peregrine and cornuted, as the Æthiopian and Cretian Goats; or vernacular: some whereof have horns, others not: The blood of either, duly prepared, as we have taught in our Shop, is very effectual in breaking the stone; and is the basis of that eximious Medicament we call *Lithos Tripticos*, to whose comment we have adjoyned this Preparation.

Now there are many varieties of peregrine Goats; amongst which, the Persian Goat, which they call *Pazan*, is most commended, out of whose belly the Bezar-stone is taken, which is commended against the virulent bitings of Animals, Poysons, and many malignant Diseases, as we shall declare more at large by and by.

The Cretian Goat, is so called from the Isle *Crete*, which nourishes no Wolves, no more then *England*: the French call it *Boucestain*: it is vested with short and flave hair, bearing two horns crooked backwards; it is so agile an Animal, that it will leap from one rock to another, though six paces distant. *Bellonius.*

Amongst wilde-Goats, we enumerate Mountain-Goats, Rock-Goats, African-Goats, Bucks, and Roe-bucks; and yet these Animals differ much from one another, and all from our indigenous Goat, which alone of Animals patiently and willingly admits a companion in venery: whence by a Sarcasm we call him a Cornuto, Goat-like, that patiently tolerates it.

Strepsiceros is by some called a Goat; but I rather think it a Ram: it hath two horns striated, but like the Unicorns horns erect, never used in Medicine.

Strepsiceros, brings me to think of Monoceros, which many doubt is a meer Chimæra: for, if it have a being, it is so rare, that it never was seen; and because it is rare, because its nature is unknown; and because that such as write of it, dissent

sent amongst themselves, men doubt of its being.

Yet that there is such a Beast, the holy Scriptures averre, and its horn, which is daily seen, and prescribed by Medicks against poysons and poysonous affections: Yet I set no less estimate upon Harts or Rhinoceros his horn, then Monoceros his horn, of which many write more then truth. What kinde of Animal it is, of what nature, where it lives, and what vertues its horn is indued with, shall be hereafter more largely explicated.

Chap. 4.

Of Hares Blood.

Both wise men assert, and experience proves, That Hares blood rosted breaks the stone. This Animal is most notorious, most fearful, and swiftest; which alone, according to *Aristotle*, hath hair in its mouth, and under its feet. Some say they have seen white Hares; but it is certain, that they are not so, onely they appear such in winter, while they are covered with snow, as with a white garment.

One *D. de Vitri*, an eximious Noble-man, catch'd a cornuted Hare, whose horns he gave King *James* of *England*. It is fabulous, that Hares participate of both Sexes hermaphroditically, and that they can both beget, conceive, and bear.

And the blood is not onely so efficacious, but the whole Hare usted in an earthen pot well covered, and taken with some White-wine, water, or fit decoction, breaks and expels stones, and therefore rightly accedes to Lithontripticons confection.

There is also the Sea-hare, so called, because generated in the Sea: it resembles our Land-hares; which is very much an enemy to the Lungs, and Women with Childe: of which see *Rondeletius*.

Chap. 5.

Of Fats; and first of Harts Marrow.

Marrow is in every Animal the aliment of its bones; it califies, allayes dolour, resolves, mollifies hard tumours in any part; but especially Harts Marrow; next to that is Calves Marrow: the Marrow of other Animals is sharper, and more intemperate.

A Hart is a well-known Animal, which superates all other cornigerous beasts, both in pulchritude of form, amplitude of horns, and variety of branches: But nature denied horns to Deer; and those that first erupt out of the Male, are erect without branches: whence the Bucks are called *Subulones*: afterwards their horns are bifidous, afterwards trifidous: they are at first vested with a skin,

and ſoft Down; but after they are expoſed a while to the Sun, they become rough, hard, and glabre.

All cornigerous Animals, except the Hart, bear hollow horns; but his are all over ſolid, which fall off yearly; and then being diſarmed, he hides himſelf daily, till new ones erupt; and theſe cornicles are as roborative, and as much reſiſt venenate affections, as Monoceros his horn. Experience hath alſo proved, That a Harts genitals are very efficacious in curing the Pleuriſie, Collick, and Dyſentery. There is a certain concreted liquor, Gumme-like, which we call Harts-tears, in the greater angle of an old Harts eye, which by an admirable propriety moves ſudour copiouſly, and oppugnes the venenate quality of the Peſtilence, and other malign affections.

Eutyceros and Platyceros are a kinde of Harts: But I leave the nature of them to be deſcribed by ſuch as undertake the abſolute Hiſtory of Animals.

Chap. 6.

Of Goats Suet.

Marrow, Suet, Fat, and Greaſe, have much cognation each with other, which are onely found in Animals indued with blood, but not all in all; for ſome are onely proper to ſome beaſts, as Suet to cornigerous Animals, Fat to ſome cloven-footed Animals, all Birds, and many four-footed Beaſts; which is that ſame which the French, when ſalted, call *Vicil oing*; when freſh, *Saing doulx*.

Now Suet differs from Fat or Greaſe, in that it is fragile, and concretes by cold; whereas Greaſe is liquid, and may not be hardned: they differ alſo in place; for Fat is found betwixt the skin and fleſh, Suet alwayes in the panicle about the Reins; and in the end is fleſh.

Thoſe Animals whoſe blood is more corpulent, have more of Suet; for Suet, according to the Philoſopher, is terrene; and hence it is coagulated like fibrous blood: wherefore, ſuch cornigerous Animals as are not toothed on both ſides, being by nature dry and terrene, are pregnant with Suet; but ſuch as are not cornigerous, and yet toothed on both ſides, have Fat in its ſtead, which being not terrene, is not coagulated.

Therefore Suet being made more terrene then Fat, is therefore taken for the Confection of *Unguenti Citrinum*; if it be not the Fat of a Goat, or a Ram, or a Kid; for thoſe are proper: Concerning which, to ſpeak more words is in vain.

Chap. 7.

Of Swines Greaſe.

Axungia, or Greaſe, is ſo denominated *ab axibus unguendis*, from greaſing Axle-trees, that the wheels may run more eaſily and ſmoothly: yet it is of much uſe in Medicine, eſpecially Swines greaſe, to the confection of certain unguents and ſalves; which is moſt liquid, flowing like Oyl; yea, it mollifies, concocts, and reſolves more then Oyl; it is indued with a lenitive and anodynous quality: and thence it may be uſefully adhibited, to mitigate the acrimony of humours, allay dolours, temper inflammations, and reſolve humours; or aptly mixed with Cataplaſms, inſtituted to the ſame effects. The greaſe of hotter Animals, as of Lyons, is more efficacious in reſolving: for a Swine is not intemperate in the firſt qualities, and therefore it waxes ſo ſoon fat, and is ſo multiparous, being ſtimulated to venery, and exerciſing congreſs before the yeat end. Its Snout is repanded, its neck ſhort and craſs, hiſpid with rigid briſtles: the Males teſticles, which are not long, hang behinde, as in other four-footed Animals: its teeth are long and bended; but the Female want ſuch fangs, or at leaſt they are not ſo perſpicuous: both of them have intorted tails; as alſo a Boar, which is a wilde Swine.

Chap. 8.

Of Bears Greaſe.

Bears Greaſe, is hotter and dryer then Swines, but colder and moiſter then Lyons Greaſe: it is not onely commended ſolely to Moulds in the heels, and falling of hair, but mixed with other reſolvent unguents, to make them more efficacious.

A Bear is an Animal of a horrid aſpect and vociferation; for its voice is iracund, minacious, and full of terror: its mouth is very patulous, its teeth ſerrated, its noſtrils wide, its ears decurtated, its whole body rough, with prolix hairs, and its tail ſo ſhort, as it can ſcarce be perceived.

The She-Bear is very venereous, often ſollicitating the Male to congreſs, lying on her back, and amplecting him: her young is not without form till ſhe lick them, as it is commonly credited: which error *Scaliger* diſproves, (*Exer.* 15. *contra Cardan.*)

Chap. 9.

Of Gooſe Greaſe.

ALl Greaſes are ſomewhat ingrateful, ſubverting the ventricle, except Gooſe greaſe, which participating of ſome ſuavity, is more expetible in culinary matters; and it is much celebrated in Pharmacopolies: alſo being adhibited alone to the ear, againſt that noiſe that precedes hardneſs of hearing; and is alſo mixed with many other reſolvent Medicaments.

A Gooſe is both carnivorous, and frugivorous, converſant both in watery and plain places, both domeſtick and wilde, changing its ſeat and ſoyl at certain times; they fly by companies like Cranes.

Some ſuperſtitiouſly believe, That Geeſe are as good keepers as Dogs, becauſe one by chance ſaved the Capitol, awaking the Souldiers with its profound clamour; who ſeeing a few French-men aſcending the walls with Ladders, fell upon them with violence, and routed them. For which benefit, the Romans held Geeſe ſacred a long time: But after a while, depoſing this Superſtition, they uſed Geeſe in their Banquets; they yielding very laudable alimony and odour when they are roſted, and grateful ſapour when eaten: Some refer Swans, and the like, to this kinde: but Cooks have more to do therewith then Apothecaries.

Chap. 10.

Of Ducks Greaſe.

DUcks Greaſe is alſo of uſe in Medicine, which we adhibit by it ſelf to the dolour of the joynts, and mixed with other Medicaments and Salves, to the cold diſtemper of the nerves; for it is mollitive, calefactive, reſolvent, and anodynous.

A Duck is of the kinde of whole-footed Birds; which whether domeſtick or wilde, equally delights in dry and in moiſt places. Some of the domeſtick Ducks are all white, others all black, others like Piets, partly white, partly black; and others ſubcineritious, as all wilde ones are.

Drakes, whether domeſtick or wilde, are greater, and more variegated in colour, then Ducks; eſpecially about their wings and necks, where their Plumes are mixed with a cæruleouſly green.

The fleſh of fat wilde-Ducks, though hard, is ſweet, and gets good blood; but that of the domeſtick is more excrementitious and inſuave, for they feed upon unwholeſome edibles; as guts, and often Toads, which they ſometimes ſwallow whole.

Many think, that the Pontian Ducks feed upon poyſons: whence

Mi-

Mithridates mixed their blood with Antidotes againſt poyſon: they live for the moſt part in Rivers, Lakes, and Fenny places. Many other Birds, as Teals, and the like, are referred to this kinde.

Chap. II.

Of Capons Greaſe.

CApons greaſe is of a middle nature, betwixt Swines and Gooſe greaſe: when freſh, it is good againſt the affections of the Womb; it conduces alſo to the cleſts in the lips, dolours of the ears, and ſwellings of the paps: when it is old, it califies and reſolves more potently. *Vires.*

A Hen is of Birds moſt uſeful to man, and moſt fœcund: for beſides her fleſh, which ſhe gives to him for meat, ſhe alwayes exhibits moſt commodious fœture; for they daily either lay or ſit on Egges, or exclude Chickens; which, while very young, are deſired by ſome; when more adult, pleaſant to all palates; and when ſaginated and caſtorated, fit for Courtiers.

For this kinde of fleſh, is of all moſt eaſie of concoction, of the beſt ſucce, and moſt idoneous for all natures and temperaments. I do not approve of their ſentence, who rather preſcribe the broth of an old Cock, which is alwayes maculent, then of a young one fat and good, to their Patients. I prefer the broth of a Capon or fat Hen, before this; and if there be neceſſity of ſome nitrous quality, I would ſeek it elſwhere; for all Cocks are fleſhleſs and ſucceleſs; but eſpecially old ones, becauſe they have ſpent all their laudable ſucce in venery.

We have three ſorts of Hens; one whereof ſuperates the reſt in magnitude, whoſe bills and feet are luteous, which lay greater Egges, and are leſs fœcund; as the *Londunian* Hens, which *Varro* calls Medical, becauſe they were brought from *Media*.

Others are ſmaller, with criſped feathers, which fall off more thence once in a year; ſo that they are ſometimes implumeous in winter: others are the vulgar, which are continually veſted with feathers; ſome whereof are black, which are thought the beſt; others white, the worſt; and others variegated, which are thought to be in a mean.

Some preſcribe the interiour tunicle of a Hens ſecond ventricle, to ſuch as have weak ſtomacks, to help the coctive faculty; but without anſwerable ſucceſs: for its temper is vitiated by the Hens death and deſiccation, and its coctive quality periſhed; for it is certain, that there are many things in an Animal, when living, that periſh by death.

Beſides, there are many more Countrey Hens, as the Water-Hen, and the Mountain-Hen, called Modcock, or Woodcock.

There are alſo peregrine-Hens, as Turkey-Hens, and Phaſians, and Meleagrian, or African-Hens, whoſe variegated colour gave

a name to a certain Herb, bearing a variously maculated flower.

And as the colour of many birds is various, so of their egges also; as the egges of Partridges, Pey-hens, Turkey-hens; but ours are alwayes white, as also the egges of our Geese, Ducks, and Stock-doves.

We often use egges in Medicine; for we solve yolks in Glysters, and we can scarce wash Turpentine with their adjument: we extract Oyl out of them, when hardned; and we have an eximious Electuary denominated from egges, which is much commended against the Plague.

But we use them most in Cibaries: for *Hippocrates* saith, They have something of strength in them, because they are the matter of Animals; they nourish, because they are the Milk of Chickens; and they increase, because they diffuse themselves much.

Soft egges are most nutritive; hard and fryed egges, bad: Hens, Phasians, and Partridges egges, the best of the kinde.

Galen saith, An egge admits onely of one pravity, and that comes by age, which you may eschew, if you take them while new.

Chap. 12.

Of Butter.

Out of the more terrene part of the Milk, we have Cheese; and out of the fatter, which we call Cream, by much agitation in a Churn, comes Butter, which is had in delight by many Nations, because it affects the palate with its suavity; as Normanish Butter, which the Incolists condite with Salt in earthen Pots, and send into all parts of *France*, where it supplies the place of Oyl; for it emends the sapour of many dishes, and makes them more expetible.

It is usefully mixed to the Eclegm *de Pineis*, and many extrinsecal Medicaments instituted to lenifie, humectate, mollifie, and allay dolours: for, being hot and oleous, it helps the disease in the groyns, and Imposthumes in the head: It cocts humours lodging in the breast, by way of liniment, and solves the ventricle; but especially the Butter of Cows Milk, which is more copious, better, sweeter, and wholesomer: for some make Butter of Sheep and Goats-milk, but that we do not approve of.

Now this vaccineous kinde is distinguished by four degrees in age: the first is of Calves, the second of Heifers, the third of young Kine, and the fourth of old ones. The Herdsmen call a barren Cow *Taura*, and a pregnant one *Horda*, or *Forda*.

Cattel change the habit of their bodies, colour of their hairs, and nature, according to the state and condition of the soyl and heavens in several Regions. Hence Asiatical Cattel have one

form,

form, Epyrean another, and French another.

Cattel, whether Male or Female, are cornigerous; yet in *Mysia*, and about *Mæotis*, they have no horns; and in *India* they have sometimes but one horn apiece, and others three horns. The *Aonian* Cow hath but one horn in the middle of its forehead, Unicorn-like.

There are more varieties of Oxen and Kine; which to discuss exactly, appertains not to us: for, it is enough if we say, That Milk and Butter, whereof we have some use in Pharmacy, comes of Kine; for Milk doth not onely nourish, as it is white blood, but cure many affections of the Dysentery, Consumption, and vices of the Lungs; for which, Asses Milk is best, next to Womans.

Cattel suppeditate so many and so great commodities to man, that they can scarce be enumerated: for, the Ox is not onely his companion in his Labour and Agriculture while he lives, but when killed, his Tables ornament, and his own firm and laudable aliment.

To this family we may refer Buffs, Bugles, wilde Oxen, and Æthiopian Bulls: The description of whose nature, I leave to them that write the perfect History of Animals.

Chap. 13.

Of Foxes Lungs.

Mesue commends Foxes Lungs to the vices of the Lungs, and from them denominates a certain Eclegme, which, he saith conduces to such as are in a Consumption; but, that I may speak freely, their ingrateful sapour, and stinking odour, cause very learned men to judge them less efficacious then they are thought.

A Fox is a crafty Animal, with a bushy tail, and an osseous genital, apt to break and expel the stone: he layes wait for Hens, and other young birds, and Hares also; he makes himself a deep cave, with many turnings and holes, much distant from each other, that he may better delude the hunters.

His flesh is dry and digestive; the oyle wherein he is elixated, *Vires.* is called Foxes Oyl: it evokes humours to the external superficies of the body, and discusses them; whence it is convenient to the Gout.

His fat melted, and poured into the ear diseased, allayes its dolour.

Chap. 14.

Of the Beaver's ſtones, called Caſtor-Cods.

CAſtor Caſtorium, is apt and expetible for many Medicinal uſes. Now a Caſtor is an amphibious Animal, whitely cinericious, and black on the back, living partly on the water, and partly on the earth, ſucking meat from both places, like an Otter; to which it is very like, except in its tail, which is glabre, broad, and ſquamous, Fiſh-like; but the Otters is long, round, hiſpid, and yellow, as its whole body is alſo.

There are many Caſtors about the rivers in *Pontus*, and alſo in the fens in *Spain*; but their ſtones have not the ſame faculty with them of *Galatia*.

The Caſtor will bite horridly; for if it catch hold of a man, it will not let the part go, till it feel and hear the broken bones crack, and rub one againſt another: its teſticles are chiefly Medicinal; which it doth not bite off with its own teeth, when purſued by hunters, as it is fabulouſly ſtoryed of it.

The convex teſticles muſt be chuſed for Medicaments, which depend upon one ſtring, pregnant with a watery humour, graveolent, and bitter to the guſt. This Medicament is both famous and uſeful, according to *Galen*, inſomuch as *Archigenes* wrote a whole book of the uſe of Beavers-ſtones.

Vires. They califie manifeſtly, cure Serpents poyſon, move fluors and delivery, help Lethargy, and ſluggiſhneſs, and the affections of the Nerves.

Chap. 15.

Of Animals Extrements; and firſt of Muſk.

SOme Animals are hunted and taken for meat, as Harts, Hares, and Boars; others for Medicine, as Vipers; others for pleaſure and odorament, as the Muſk and Civet-Cat; the Beaver alſo and Badger, for Medicaments and veſture.

Muſk is the name of an excrement, and of the Animal whoſe excrement it is: the Animal is exotical, being in *India* in the Kingdom of *Pegu*, not much unlike a ſhe-goat, with a prægrand body: they call it the Muſk-Buck, the Muſk-Roe, and the Muſk-Goat; out of whoſe inferiour jaw, there erupts as many teeth, and as great as them of Hogs.

When this beaſt is moved with venery, her umbilical region ſwells through the vehemency of her fury; and there much craſs blood being congeſted, makes up an impoſthume, and then the fierce Animal refuſes all meat and drinks, convolving it ſelf along the ground, and rubbing the part ſwelled againſt trees and ſtones with plea-

pleasure, till it breaks and opens its bladder; out of which, corrupt matter runs, which is true Musk; of all things, the most odorate and suaveolent, in bonity much superating all the varieties of Musk we see.

This corruption left upon stones, and trunks of trees, is by the heat of the Sun, and influence of the heavens, cocted and elaborated; and its fœtid odour, if it had any, dissipated; and so it becomes most excellent Musk, which none but Kings and Noble-Men obtain. But that which is ordinarily sold, is far inferiour, being drawn from Animals catched by hunting. For when the hunters catch this beast, they abscind its hide, with some flesh; express, collect, exsiccate its blood, with its utricles and skin; whose dryed blood, mixed with a small portion of its recrements, they sell for pure Musk.

There is a kinde of greater Weasel, which being Martial and pugnaceous, they call *Martes* (for it kills great Hens sometimes) whose excrements, as I have oft observed, smell like Musk.

There are also some plants and fruits, which affect the nostrils and palate with this Musky suavity; as sweet-Storks bill, Musk-rose, and Pears, that savour of Musk.

The faculties of Musk are eximious; for it roborates and exhilarates a cold and fearful heart, and conduces to all its affections; it also recreates the brain, and refreshes the spirits: it is hot in the second, and dry in the third degree.

Chap. 16.

Of Civet.

THree Animals are suaveolent: the Panther; (which many say smells gratefully onely to beasts, and not to men) the Musk-goat; and the Civet-Cat, which the Greeks call *Zapetion*; about whose nature the Ancients do not well agree. It is a wilde Animal, with horrid teeth, not so like a Cat as many write; for it is greater, exceeding in magnitude sometimes a Wolf: its head, neck, feet, and other parts, are very unlike a Cat's; its mouth is long, like a Badgers mouth; its body long; its inferior jaw white, as also its beard; its feet black; the lateral parts of its belly white; its back obscurely cineritious, and somewhat maculated; its excrement is called Civet: which for its fragrancy rich men desire, and for its efficacy Medicks celebrate.

Civet then is an odorament different from Musk, most sweet, fat, crasse, and blackish, desumed from an Animal, thence called Civet-Cat: for, it is the sudour of this beast, concreting about its testicles and privities; which men erade with a Spoon.

It is an Indian Animal, now cicurated, and frequent in *Europe*, daily seen, and kept in many mens houses in *Lutetia*. Now that it may suggest more abundance of this recrement, it must be irritated,

wearied, and provoked to anger; for then its genitals will emit much ſudour, which they afterwards erade. At firſt when deraded, it is graveolent to ſome men; but when it is concreted, and expoſed to the air, it depoſes its virulency, and acquires a moſt grateful ſuavity.

Vires. As its odour challenges affinity with Musk; ſo alſo doth its quality: but it moſt conduces to the ſtrangulation of the Uterus, if a few of its grains be impoſed into the cavity of the Navel.

Both Patients and Phyſicians eſchew the dung of Animals, becauſe of its fœtour and ingrateful ſapour: and ingenuous men had rather ſeek, handle, and exhibit Medicaments, then putrid excrements. Yet Mouſe-dung, with white-wine, is good to break and exclude the ſtone; Dogs-dung cures the Quinſie; Mans dung is much commended in ſwellings: Nothing is ſo good a cure for the Epilepſie, which comes from the conſent of the inferior parts, and aſcent of the more tenuious matter to the head, as Peacocks-dung. But ſeeing ſuch excrements ingrede not the compoſition of our Medicaments, we will not trouble our ſelves with them.

Chap. 17.

Of Iſinglaſs.

THere are many kindes of glewiſh ſubſtances in Apothecaries ſhops; one whereof is a Mineral, which is apt to conjoyn Gold, and thence called *Chryſocolla*; another which glutinates wounds and fleſh, and ſtayes the fluxes of the eyes; which is a Gumme of a certain Tree in *Perſia*; this they call *Sarcocolla*: of theſe before: a third ſort is made of Cattels hides, which they call Horn-glew, and from its uſe in conjoyning wood, VVood-glew: there is alſo a glew made of the belly of a certain fiſh, called *Ichthyocolla*, whoſe faculty being to fill up, ſiccate, and to mollifie a little, it is rightly mixed with glutinative ſalves, and others, that take away ſpots, and erugate the face; the Arabians call it *Alcanna*.

And as *Taurocolla* is not onely made of Bulls hides, but of the ears and feet of all four-footed beaſts: ſo * Fiſh-glew is not onely made of the belly of one fiſh, but all viſcid and glutinous ones; but eſpecially of that fiſh which *Rondeletius* calls Boneleſs, others Molua.

* *Ichthyocolla.*

The Boneleſs fiſh is cetaceous, and cartilagineous; without ſcales, fins, and bones, except a very few. Its head is very craſſe and broad; its mouth large, out of whoſe upper-jaw proceed ſoft, long, and pendulous bones; its fleſh is glutinous, and ingrateful, unleſs it be long condited in Salt before it be eaten.

How it is made. This Fiſh-glew is not onely made of the skin, but alſo the inteſtines, ventricle, fins, and tail of this fiſh; after this manner: The ſaid parts are cut ſmall, put in a new earthen pot, with a ſufficient quantity of hot water, and ſo macerated a day or two; then coct-

ed

ed on a slow fire, till they acquire the consistency of Cream, or a Pulteſs; then they are taken from the fire, and, while warm, cut into small pieces, lest they should be made into a great masse.

Chap. 18.

Of Woolls Greaſe.

Isopus is the humid pinguetude of greasie VVooll, extracted by art and concreted, whereof *Phyliagrus* makes a salve called Oesyatum; which is commended to the dolours of the Spleen, the hardneſs of the Stomack and Liver, and Nodosities of other parts: for this greaſe expletes and mollifies, especially the Ulcers of the Fundament and Matrix, with honey and butter: it califies without exceſs, and allayes dolour. *Isopus, quid*

Vires.

And thus they confect this *Isopus*, the succulent wooll of the necks: The fœminals and thighs of Sheep, they take and macerate eight hours in hot water, agitating it with a rudicle or stick; then they fervefie it, till it leave all its pinguetude in the water. The manner of making it.

Then the wooll being compreſſed and removed, that fat and sordid water is poured from on high, that it may cauſe much spume; which spume they agitate so long in the water, till none be left.

This done, they collect the pinguetude, and wash it, agitating it with their hands in pure water, till it will neither astringe, nor bite the tongue much, and till it appear white; then they repoſe it in an earthen veſſel: and all this should be done in the hot Sun. Some adde Sea-water to the lotion; but this way is best.

Sheep are known to all Nations, suppeditating infinite commodities to men; with whoſe wooll they are veſted, with whoſe fleſh they are nouriſhed, and with whoſe dung their fields become fat and fœcund.

Young sheep are called Lambs; the greater Rams, or *Arietes*, from *Ara*, or the Altar whereon they were frequently sacrificed; the gelded ones VVeathers, which differ from Rams, as Geldings from Horſes, Capons from Cocks: They call the leader Bell-weather.

The Ram, which the French call *Bellerium*, from warring, as it is probable, is commendable when tall, with a promiſſe belly, a long tail, a white and denſe fleece, broad forehead, intorted and patulous horns, brown eyes, ample ears, ample breaſt, shoulders, and buttocks also.

Arabia produces two admirable kindes of Rams; the one with so long a tail, that it is no shorter then three cubits; another with a tail of a cubits breadth: other sheep are well known.

Chap. 19.

Of Medicinal Bones; and first of a Hart's heart-bone.

IF Animals excrements, which are fœtid, be indued with a commendititious faculty to the cure of ſome affections; as Dogs dung, which ſome Merry Blades call *Album Græcum*, to the Quinſie; then much more their integrant parts; as the Elks claws to the Epilepſie, Goats claws to ſuch as piſſe their beds, and the bones of many fiſhes, birds and beaſts, to other diſeaſes.

Mans bone is alſo Mans Medicine; for a mans Scull unburied, duly prepared, and exhibited, cures the Falling-ſickneſs. Experience alſo ſhews, That a Harts heart-bone, a Rhinocerots horn, Elephants, Boars, and Pikes teeth, conduce to many diſeaſes.

A Hart much augments Medicinary Materials; for thereunto it ſuggeſts its Horns, Suet, Fat, Marrow, Lachryma, Yard, and that Oſſicle which is found in the baſis of its heart.

A Hart is a moſt noble Animal, ſuperating almoſt all others in pulchritude, celerity, dignity, and utility; and hence Kings onely, or their Servants, were wont to hunt them. Their fleſh alſo adorns large banquets; and that which is inconvenient for Tables, locupletates Apothecaries Shops.

Vires. But that Oſſicle which adheres to the baſis of an old Harts heart, is moſt celebrated; which from its figure much reſembling a croſs, hunters call the Harts croſs; which they by experience, and Apothecaries by reaſon, have found very conducible to the affections of the heart.

Young Harts have onely a cartilage, no bone.

In inveterate Harts, there concretes a certain lachryma in the larger angle of their eyes, which admirably produces ſudour, and conduces to venenate diſeaſes, as we ſhewed before; This hearts bone ingredes the confection of Diamoſchum, that it may make it more cordial and efficacious.

Chap. 20.

Of Ivory.

THe Elephant is of four-footed beaſts the greateſt, and moſt obſequious to man; for it doth not onely obey him, but his voice, taking and doing his commands: yea, ſome would anſwer their Maſters commanding them, with *hoo, hoo*, that is, in the barbarous Idiome, *I will, I will.*

Ælianus ſaw one writing Latine Letters, ſtraight, and in order, upon a table; but his teachers hand was underneath, directing the Animal to the figure and lineament: and when the Elephant

wrote,

wrote, its eyes were fixed, and dejected, Grammarian-like, on his Master.

Oppianus saith, That it is an old Proverb, That Elephants talk with one another, but cannot be understood by any man, save their Tamers.

Elephants come so near mans ingeny, that they are judged more prudent then men in some places.

They are obsequious, desirous of glory, mindful of benefits and injuries received, and desirous of retribution or revenge.

That of *Ælianus* is known, how an Elephant seeing his Master take some of his due from him, and put it in his pot; when he was commanded by his Master, to take care that his corn should be reaped and prepared, stole a good part of his barley, putting little stones in in its stead, and so gave his Master his due measure and wonted heap, and kept enough for himself: thus craftily vindicating himself for his former injury.

He hath small eyes in reference to his great body; he hath a long Snout, in stead of a Nose, which he uses in stead of a hand, especially in assuming and ingesting meat and drink; he hath a very small tongue; four short and crass teeth on each jaw, wherewith he breaks and mollifies his aliment; and two very long and very crass ones, which are liker horns: these fall out at set times, and grow again.

And the matter of these is Ivory, which is accommodated to infinite uses, especially Medicinal.

And this is that which many Apothecaries burn, and erroneously conceit to be the Arabian factitious Spodium.

And yet it cannot be rightly substituted for Spodium, neither when burnt, nor crude; for by ustion its vertue perishes: and when it is crude, it is no wayes analogal to Spodium: for in proper locution, there is onely one kinde of Spodium, *viz.* the Græcian Spodium, which they call Pompholix.

But the Arabian's falsly supposed Spodium, is *Tabaxir*, which agrees as much with burnt Ivory, as Sugar with Rhabarbe: of which we have more largely disserted elsewhere.

Crude Ivory hath many eximious faculties: for, it roborates all bowels, refrigerates and astringes moderately, aligates the dolours of the stomack, cohibits vomiting, kills worms, liberates from diuturnal obstructions; and drunk, makes women more apt to conceive. *Vires.*

Chap.

Chap. 21.

Of the Unicorns-horn.

If any Animals naturally void of horns, be by chance seen cornuted, we think them monstrous, as the rustick *Cænomanus*, on whose front grew a crass horn of two palmes length, incurvated towards the hinder part of his head; which we saw for a miracle in *Paris*, in the year 1600. I never heard of the like, save of one man, that *Philippus Ingrassias* makes mention of, who had a horn on his back.

Yet there are many cornigerous Animals, especially of the Male-kinde, bicornuted, as the Ox, and Goat; others tricornuted, as some Indian Oxen; and some quadricornuted, as I have seen some Rams.

Some also bear but one horn, as the Indian Asse; some Kine in *Zeila of Æthiopia*; the amphibious Animal Camphur, frequent in the Isles of *Molucca*; also some Æthiopian Birds, and some Fishes; as the Uletif, frequent in the Indian Sea.

But that Animal celebrated not onely in humane but divine Scriptures, which the Hebrews call *Rem* and *Reem*; *Avicenna*, *Acherchedeen*; the Arabian, *Barkaran*; the Greeks, *Monoceros*; the Latins, *Unicornis*; the Indians, *Cartazontes*; the French, *Licornia*; and we *Unicorne*, excels all these in dignity.

Divers Authors have written variously of this Animal; some making it tall, others low; some wild and sylvestrian, others not onely cicurated by art, but tamed by the sight of a Girle; sometimes lying to sleep beside her, as being delighted with her love and odour: some make its horn black, others yellow, and others white.

Yet they who have lustrated the New-found world, say, that an Unicorn is lower and slenderer then an Elephant, equalizing in magnitude an ordinary Horse; of a musteline or yellowish colour; and some say, subcineritous, with a Harts head, no long neck, a short Mane, rare, and hanging on one side; a rough beard, but short; bifideous hoofes, not thick legs, and a tail like a Boar. (*Solin. Plin. Ælian.*)

It bears its horn, which is straight, crass, intorted, four or five foot long, according to its age; solid, hard, squamous, yet not clefted; yellowish without, eburneous within, but not undulated with any lines, and obvallated with a kinde of crass skin, dirempted in circular line from other parts, which Merchants ineptly call its Lard.

Seeing then that an Unicorn is an Animal both rare and wilde, not cicurable, unless it be caught while very young, and its horns do not fall off annually, as Harts-horns do; it is no wonder if its horn be so rare and precious: yet there is one exceeding a mans procerity,

kept

kept as a rich treasure in St. *Dionysius* his Temple beside *Paris*, and many little pieces in every *Parisian* Pharmacopoly, that such may be helped as require its exhibition.

It is much commended against poyson, and to exhilarate and roborate the Noble parts; and therefore it is given to the pestilent, and such as are infected with contagious and venenate diseases: yet all patients being not equally rich, it is onely exhibited to the richer; to others I prescribe Rhinoceros, and Harts-horn, with no less success. *Vives.*

Chap. 22.

Of the Bezaar-stone.

The Bezaar-stone is either so called from an oriential Animal out of which it is had, which the Persians call *Pasan*, and sometimes *Bazar*, and the Indians *Bezar*; or else from is Bezardical, that is, alexiterial faculty, wherein it is eximious against poyson: and upon that account, a certain Meralline alexiterian stone, is by some Arabians called Bezardical, because they say the Bezaar-stone will expugne all poysons.

But this Bezaar-stone now in frequent use, is not effoded out of Mynes, but taken out of the belly and internals of a certain Animal, most frequent in *Persia*, *Coraso*, and the promontory of *Comorim*, near *Chyma*, which such as have have seen it call a Goat; the incolists call it a Mountain-Goat; for in form and magnitude it resembles an European Goat, but its hair is shorter; it is taller, equalizing a Hart in procerity: and it seems to be rightly denominated Hart-Goat, because it partly bears the nature of a Hart, partly of a Goat.

It is a most agile, swift, and fierce Animal, easily leaping from rock to rock, and sometime turning upon the Indian hunters, and killing them; it hath bifidous ungles, like a Goat, slender legs, a prominent and short tail, a rough body Goat-like, but shorter hair, cinericusly yellow, like a Hart; a Goats head armed with two horns crooked backwards, and ending in an obtuse point, very black and hollow, in their crasser part, obsited with many tubercles: I saw two at *Cowbertum* in the Castle of *Dom. de Virty*.

The aforesaid stone is generated in this Animals belly; whose magnitude, form and colour, are various, according to the nature and age of the Beast; for there are greater stones in the greater and elder beast, lesser in the lesser and younger; all are of an oval figure, but some rounder then others, and others more quadrate.

Their colour is obscure and blackish, or yellow, and more pallid, according to the Animals temperature; whereof such as generate greater and crasser stones, are less agile, and less apt to run or leap, which live more sadly, and are at the first sight known by hunters. Perhaps these stones are offensive, and preternatural to these Animals, as the stone is to man.

They are generated corticately, from a ſmall rudiment of coagmentated ſand, which is by the appoſition of ſome new humour agglutinated, aſſimilated, and wrought into certain craſs plates like onyons, according to the magnitude of the duſt, and appoſition of the appellent humour.

This ſand or duſt in the centre of the ſtone, is of more efficacy then any other part of the ſtone; all whereof, whether internal or external, are ſmooth, polite, and ſplendent: which are not ſo in adulterate ſtones, wherein there is no duſt or ſand.

The Perſians are the beſt of Bezaar-ſtones, next the oriental; but eſpecially thoſe that are taken out of Animals living in the Perſian Mountains; for thoſe that live in plains and valleys, feed not upon ſo ſalutary plants, as thoſe that inhabit excelſe plants: and therefore their ſtones are not ſo efficacious.

Vires. All of them are much commended againſt the bitings of venenate beaſts: for their powder aſſumed or adhibited, cures wounds inflicted by Scorpions, Vipers, or other Serpents; and inſperged on the ſame Animals, makes them torpid and innocuous. It is ſtoryed, that the King of *Corduba* was freed from a very pernicious poyſon, by the uſe of this ſtone; and therefore ſome think, Bezaar is rightly deduced from *Bel* in Hebrew, which ſignifies Lord; and *Zaar*, poyſon, calling it the Lord of poyſons.

It conduces upon the ſame account to all venenate and contagious diſeaſes; as the Peſtilences, Morbils, ſmall-Pox, and the like: it cures alſo ſwoundings, long ſorrows, hyſterical paſſions, and many other malign affections; of which ſee *N. Monard. Chriſtoph. a Coſta*, and *Cluſius*.

Chap. 23.

Of Margarites and Unions.

MArgarites are taken out of certain Shell-fiſhes, living in the Indian ſea, very like Oyſters; which if they be ſmall, they keep the name Margarites; if greater, they are called Unions: for, they are found ſeverally, in ſeveral Shell-fiſhes: whence the Poet:

Unde dictus ob hoc, quod ab uno naſcitur unus,
Nec duo vel pluris unquam ſimul inveniantur.

Yet *Ælianus* contradicts this opinion; teaching from experience, that many Unions are generated and found in one Shell-fiſh, according to the abundance of the fiſhes excrementitious matter, which is pure and lucid: they are not therefore called Unions, becauſe one onely is found in one Shell-fiſh, but becauſe two are never found conjoyned in the ſame. Thoſe that are white, round, ponderous, and

and ſmooth, ſuch as Queens weare about their necks, are beſt.

Many Shell-fiſhes generate Margarites; but the beſt are exotical, which are found in the Perſian Sea in the Eaſt: whence they are called Oriental Pearls; and in the tracts of *China*, and many parts of *India*, where the Incoliſts call theſe Margaritiferous Shell-fiſhes, *Berberi*; and ſome Barbarians, *Cheripe*; others *Chanquo*; which is the Mother of Pearl.

This great Shell-fiſh is ſpiſs, moderately hollow like a comb, but not toothed on both ſides, but onely on one; not ſtriated without, but plain, and ſomething flave, ſmooth, ſplendent, and argenteous within: it is generated in its fleſh, as lumps in hogs fleſh, ſtones in the bladder, or other places: for I ſaw a man who avoided many ſtones by ſtool, each one whereof in magnitude equalized a Cheſnut or Acorn.

Fernelius found three ſtones in the Liver of the diſſected carcaſe of a Noble-man, who in his life-time ſpitted up ſome like Margarites.

But to my purpoſe: theſe Shell-fiſhes expoſed to the air, or aſſayed with a knife, open, and the Margarites are found together with their fleſh; which indeed are neither bones, nor part of the piſcicle, but ſomething excrementitious, ſplendent, and concrete, like the ſhells wherewith they are tected, which are outwardly ſcabre and impolite, but within ſmooth and fair: ſo that the true Mother of Pearls, is never naturally, but alwayes artificially poliſhed.

Thoſe Margarites are greater, which are taken from the greater Conchæ, and in the deeper ſea.

They are ſo much ſought after by women, that no one, though of mean fortune, thinks ſhe is ſufficiently adorned, till ſhe carry Pearls about her neck.

But their uſe is chiefly Medicinal; for all, both Ancients and latter writers, aver, That Margarites are very cordial, and exhilarate the heart: Alchymiſts diſſolve them, and get thence liquor of Pearls, whereof they predicate many, but ridiculous things.

I knew a very crafty Empyrical Chirurgeon in *Paris*, who required ſix Peices for the adhibition of two Swallows to his Patient; and when all admired he ſhould ask ſo unreaſonably, *I ſhould* (ſaith he) *have demanded much more, becauſe I fed theſe Animals a whole Month with the liquor of Pearls.* *Vives.*

You may read at large of Margarites, and the Fiſhes wherein they are generated, their nature, dignity, duration, and vertues, in *Rondeletius, Lib.* 1. *de teſtaceis. Cap.* 51.

Chap. 24.

De Umbilicis Marinis: Of the Sea-Navel.

THe Sea-Navel is either a whole piſcicle, whereof *Rondeletius* makes mention, or a part, bone or tegument of ſome greater fiſh: the former is a turbinated and ſmall Shell-fiſh, ſo like a Navel, that none that ſee it can chuſe but ſo name it.

The other Umbilike is all oſſeous, which is either a ſhell, or the bone of another fiſh; for many fiſhes have certain bones given them by Nature, either for the inſertion of their fins, whereby they defend their lives, or for the confirmation and motion of their bodies. Thus Sepia is founded upon its bone; thus the Slaits back is armed with many pricks, which by light cocture may be eaſily ſejoyned from its body: whoſe oſſicles if you take away, their prickles do well repreſent the Sea-Navel.

We therefore ſuſpect, with *Bern. Deſſennius*, that Sea-Umbilikes are deſumed from Sea-Animals, and caſt on the ſhore with other ſtones; and yet they are not of the ſame kinde with ſtones. Some call them Sea-Gems; but their faculties are not ſo eximious, as that they ſhould be repoſed among Gems. Their form is well known, their colour is in ſome white, in ſome red: they are frequently ſold in *France*.

Chap. 25.

Of the Dental.

THe Dental is a certain ſmall Shell-fiſh, oblong, white, ſharp without, very ſmooth within, hollow like a little tube, and acuminated on one ſide, like a Dogs tooth: whence it is called a Dental; for it is a ſhell like a tooth, wherein a vernicle is procreated; which is oblong, and ſlender, anſwerable to the cavity of the ſhell, which goes out of its domicil, ſometimes to draw water, and ſeek victuals. Both it and its tube, grow as a teſtaceous Cane upon a Rock, or an old ſhell: It is indued with the ſame vertue with the Seas Umbilike, and other teſtaceous piſcicles, and may as well ingrede the compoſition of the Citrian Unguent, as the former.

Chap. 26.

Of the Antal.

There is another Sea Shell-fish, called an Antal, whose use in Medicine is very frequent, if we make the Citrian unguent.

It is a testaceous tube bred in the Sea, of a little fingers length, striated without, smooth and hollow within; out of whose cavity a small piscicle is educed.

This seems to be the fish which *Athenæus* calls *Solen*; for that is of the kinde of long Shell-fishes, with a double shell, smooth, slender, and hollow like a reed, and open at both ends. *Pliny* calls it a Dactyl, or a Digit, because it equalizes a finger in longitude; or as some say, resembles a mans nail. However, the Antal we use is very well known and vulgar; neither should we lose any precious Medicament, if it were absent; for we can substitute in its stead any shell that is white and striated, which strangers bring from the Sea, near that famous Mount which is sacred to St. *Michael*: for all of them are of an equal vertue, as to the confecture of the said unguent; whereunto also another accedes, not easily known by name; some call it *Amentum*; others *Amiantus*; for it is yet doubted, whether *Amentum* be that stone *Amiantus*, which is of a whitish green, and by many called Sciffile-Alome; from which it differs much.

For Sciffile-Alome is manifestly astrictive; and being injected upon coals, burns; but plumeous Alome is acrimonious; safe from flame, and well termed *Amiantus*, or *Amentum*, or *Amiantum*, which the Citrian Unguent admits of: but I dare not assert this for certain, seeing Amentum is a barbarous word well understood by none, as it appears by the opinions of such Authors as have written of it: for *Theophrastus* will have it the name of a tree; *Matthæus Sylvaticus*, burnt glass; *Manlius* burnt lime; some Suet, or the fat of glass; others, Talkum, or the specular glass, which is indeed very convenient for this Unguent; as also plumbeous Alome, which Apothecaries by good reason use for Amentum, or Amiantus.

There is also much mention in shops, of Bizantian Blatta, which is a cover very like that wherewith the Purple-fish is tected; yet this similitude is onely as to their substance and faculties, and not as to their forms: for the tegument of the Purple-worm is round, according to *Rondeletius*; and this Blatta long and strict, found in nardiferous lakes, and thence suavcolent; for these worms eat Spikenard, and this Blatta is called the odorate Nayl, for it smells somewhat like a Beaver. But I will not longer insist upon its description, because it ingredes no Medicament in our Shop.

Chap.

Chap. 27.
Of Tortoises.

TOrtoises are either aquatical, living in the Sea, or sweet-water; or amphibious, living partly on the land, and partly on the water: whence *Pliny* comprehending them all in a quaternal number, calls them either Marine, or Fluvial, Terrestrial, or Palustrian.

A Tortoise is a candated Animal, with four feet, squamous, ingrateful to the sight, whose shell is of an oval form, long, broad, hollow within, and without extuberant like a Buckler, under which it sometimes hides its head, tail, feet, and all; and sometimes it puts them out even at pleasure.

This alone of squamous Animals, according to *Aristotle*, hath Reins, and a Bladder: it layes Egges with hard shells of two colours, which it reconds in a Ditch, excavated like a hogshead, and covers them with the earth; which it makes even, and so sits upon it, till its young ones be excluded.

Solinus saith, That in the Indian Sea there are Tortoises of so great a magnitude, that their shells, open at the bottom, and joyned at the top, make so large houses for the vulgar Indians, that a numerous family may dwell therein. Yea, some use them in stead of Boats, wherein they sayl from one Isle to another in the Red-Sea.

With the Troglodites they are cornigerous, but less then the Indian.

Vires. Tortoises are of much use, both in Cibaries and Medicine; for their decoction helps such as are consumed and attenuated: and therefore they usefully ingrede the confecture of the resumptive Syrupe. Many delight in their flesh, but it is such a deformed Animal, in head, tail, feet, form, colour, and spots, resembling the Serpentine kinde, that nature seems to note it as offensive and unwholesome: which they also confess who love it; but that its dressing and condiments make it less noxious, for else it were horrid.

Chap. 28.
Of Frogs.

MYropolists use whole Frogs, in the composition of *Vigonius* his salve, which the Author described for the cure of a disease proper to his own Nation. *Sylvius* also saith, Their decoction will ease the Tooth-ache, if the mouth be washed therewith: their ashes, with Pitch, according to *Dioscorides*, or rather with Honey, according to *Pliny*, will bring again fallen hairs. The Emplaisters wherewith they are mixed, are thence siccative, and discussive,

espe-

especially in the dolours of the junctures: They are Antidotal against Serpentine poysons, according to *Dioscorides*, if they be decocted, eaten with Salt and Oyl, and their broth supped.

But all Frogs are not edible; whereof there are many varieties: for some delight solely in water, and live there ordinarily; others on the dry soyl: others also are amphibious, living equally on the water and earth.

Some of the watery Frogs live in Fenny and muddy places, and are pernicious, acceding near the nature of Toads; others live in limpid and fountain water, and are wholesome, and reposed among Cibaries.

Some of those that feed on dry soyls, live amongst reeds, others amongst bryars and thorns: the former, which are least of all, are called *Calamitæ*, and the latter *Rubetæ*, by the Latines; by the Greeks, *Phrynoi*; which are as pernicious as the Palustrian Frogs: those they call Dryophites, which climb up Oaks, and live in or about them; and the Diopetes, which fall with storms and warm showers out of the air, are no better then the rest.

All of them are mute in winter, except the watery Frogs; which at the end of Winter, and beginning of the Spring, begin to croak, to wit, when Tadpoles are procreated in putrid waters, which some falsly call Frogs-sperm, or Frogs-egges. *Arist.*

Hence many have derided the Medicament of a certain Alchymist, who prescribes the water of Frogs-sperm, to the Pimples and swellings of the face, eyes, and the whole body; whereas he might hunt, exenterate, dissect, exhaust, and search the seminals of all the Frogs in *France*, and never get so much sperm as would wet the bottome of his Metal-pan.

Experience also shews, and learned *Rondeletius* hath averred, That Tadpoles come of Mud, and turn not into Frogs. All Frogs, besides the watery ones, are pernicious and malign; as also, those of them also that are maculated with black spots, like Toads, of whose nature they participate: and those that use them for meat, are infected with a plumbeous colour. Wherefore they should not be taken save for Physick, for they putrifie the body.

Yet some put Palustrian Frogs, others *Rubetæ*, to the confection of *Jo. de Vigo* his salve: but I think amphibious Frogs are better.

For the *Rubetæ*, which live among bryars, thorns, and dry soyls, being venenate and acrimonious, impart a certain quality to the Medicament, whereby it vellicates the skin, and raises lumps; and the watery are not so efficacious: therefore those that live partly in water, and partly on the land, must be elected as best.

Chap. 29.

Of Crab-fishes.

THere are innumerable varieties of shelled fishes; some whereof have long bodies, as Locusts and Lobsters; others round, as all the troop of Sea-Crabs, and fresh-water Crabs: whereof there are fewer varieties.

As some of Sea-Crabs are greater, as those we call *Maeæ*, and *Paguri*; and others lesser, which we call *Pinnophylaces*: so some of the fresh-water Crab-fishes are great, broad-footed, like the Sea-Crabs, but greater; others little ones, which we use in Meats and Medicaments, as by *Avicenna's* counsel, to refresh such as labour in the Hectick Feaver, and such as are bitten by mad Dogs; as also to ingrede some mundificative Unguents.

Rondeletius hath largely described the whole kinde of Crabs (*Lib.* 18. *de Piscibus, & Lib. particulari de fluviatilibus*) as also *Matthiolus* upon *Dioscorides*.

For it is enough for us to mention these, and to treat more copiously of such things as do but sometimes accede to Medicine.

Chap. 30.

Of Vipers.

Vires. VIpers flesh siccates, and digests potently, and califies moderately: its faculty hastens it to the skin, propelling the excrements and poyson of the body, if any, thither: whence we make it into Theriacal Trochisks, as we have shewed in our Antidotary; and of them we make that famous Theriacal confection, so much commended against venenated affections. Now those are call'd Theriacal Medicaments, which cure the poysonous bitings of venenate Animals, or heal such as have received harm by the biting, breathing, licking, or touching of venenate Animals.

They are also called Alexipharmacal Medicaments, which arceate peril by poyson: but others will have them onely so called which by introsumption at the mouth cure poysons.

Now Theriacal comes ἀπὸ τῶν θηρίων, that is, from wilde and venenate Animals, rather then from some certain sort of Serpents; though a Viper, whose Male is called ἔχις, and Female ἔχιδνα, be sometimes by the Greeks called θηρίον: for it being the most notorious of Serpents and wilde Beasts, it vendicates this name, κατ' ἐξοχήν: and the Medicament which admits of its flesh, is nevertheless denominated Theriacal, from its efficacy in curing the bites and poysons of wilde beasts, and not because of that ingredient.

A Viper is ordinarily of a cubits length, and often longer; of a subflave colour, maculated with many round spots: the male is by the

the Greeks called *Echis*; its head is anguſt and acute; its neck craſſer, and body ſlenderer then the Female; its tail, like that of other Serpents, grows more gracile by degrees, and not on a ſudden, as that of the Female: it hath ſharper ſcales at the end of its tail; which when moved, it erects, juſt as an angry Cock doth his Plumes in fighting.

He hath two Canine teeth; the Female more, according to that of the Poet:

Huic gemini apparent dentes in carne, venenum
Fundentes, verubus ſed Fœmina pluribus atrox.

He alſo hath a paſſage in his tail, neerer his belly then that of the Females: he goes alſo more ſtoutly.

The Female Vipers are of a yellowiſh colour, with an elated neck, reddiſh eyes, and lucent; of an inverecund and fierce aſpect; their heads are broad, their tails ſhort, macilent, ſquamous, and all alike gracile, not gradually ſo; their paſſages neerer their tails; their bellies more prominent, and their pace ſlower.

The Latines call it *Vipera*, becauſe *Vi parit*, that is, it is forced to bring forth; or elſe becauſe *Vivum parit*, that is, it brings forth living young, contrary to the mode of other Serpents, which firſt lay eggs: and the Viper indeed procreates eggs, like them of fiſhes; but every egge hath a young living Viper involved onely in a membrane.

Yet it ſometimes happens, that the laſt ſeeking egreſs before the firſt, and impatient of longer delay, erodes his Parents belly and ſides, and ſo it is produced a Matricide: but that as ſeldom happens, as, when the Male thruſts his head into the Females mouth in copulation, the Female, ſatiated with the ſweetneſs of the pleaſure, obtruncates the Male: which I think is never.

When other Serpents in winter run into caverns, Vipers onely abſcond themſelves under ſtones, and depoſe their old age, like other Reptiles.

Vipers are preferred before all other Serpents, in the confection of this Theriack, becauſe when compounded of others, its vertue is more tabifical. (*Gal: Cap.* 10. *Lib. de Theriaca.*)

The Heads and tails, which contain the moſt virulent poyſon, muſt be abſcinded: for the Viper hath the moſt pernicious head of all venenate beaſts. *Dioſcorides* holds it ridiculous, that any ſet certain meaſure of the Head and tail ſhould be preſcinded.

The internals, *Spina Dorſi*, and the belly, muſt likewiſe be abjected.

There are both in *Italy* and *France*, very idoneous Vipers for this ſolemn confection, as in the Pictavian fields, whence many are brought to *Paris*; of whoſe fleſh we make Paſtils, and uſe their fat in *Vigo* his emplaſter; whoſe extraction and preparation is eaſie: The fat muſt firſt be taken, with its skins, and waſhed in clear cold water, till it be ſincere; then may the membranes be ſeparated;

then must the fat be melted in a double vessel, and continually agitated with a wooden stick; when it is melted, it must be percolated into cold water, which may be abjected, and the fat kept, and reposed in a convenient vessel: some wash it again, that it may depose all its poyson.

I can scarce assent to their opinion, who believe, that such live long as eat Vipers flesh; for it procreates very ill fucce, and digests and siccates vehemently: so that they who eat it are grievously cruciated with thirst, and thence cognominated Dipsades. *Galen* saith, that some are of opinion, that such as are bitten by Vipers, cannot be cured by drinking, but will burst ere they can quench their thirst.

Galen proves by many Histories, that Vipers conduce to the Leprous: There was (saith he) a Leper in *Asia*, who was fœtid to look on, and graveolent; who at first was conversant, and did eat with his companions, till some of his company began to be inquinated, and he of such a horrid, and detestable a form, as none could indure to look on him; then they bound him in a Cottage neer the river, and gave him daily aliment. The next Summer, about the rising of the Dog-star, when a servant brought fragrant wine to the reapers, and set the pot by the river-side, when they came to drink, the boy poured out the wine into a cup, and with the wine a dead Viper; the reapers being therewithal affrighted, quenched their thirst with water, and sent the wine to the Leper, pitying his condition, and judging it better for him to die therewith, then to live in that misery: but he, drinking thereof, was unexpectedly cured, his skin falling off like a shell from a locust.

And another event, not much unlike this, happened in *Mysia*, not far from our City: There was a rich man, but Leprous, who was in love with his maid that was beautiful; but she hating so deformed a man, clandestinely kept other lovers company: the diseased, in hopes of recovery, betook himself to some Fountains of hot water, wherewith the vicine parts abounded, which were squalid and full of Vipers; one whereof crept into his wine pot: the wench perceiving that a Viper was there suffocated, was glad she had such an opportunity put into her hands; she then gives a cup of it to her Master, who drinking of it, was perfectly cured, as the precedent.

Galen recenseates more stories, whereby he proves, that Vipers cure the Leprosie. We have shewed in our Antidotary, how it must be prepared, before it ingrede the confection of the Theriack.

Chap. 31.

Of Scinks.

The flesh of the Reins of this Beast, is a special Antidote against poyson, very efficacious to excite lust in men; for it causes stiffness of the Yard: whence it justly ingredes the confection of Diasatyrium.

It is a small four-footed Animal, tected with small, frequent, and subluteous scales, with a long head, little thicker then its neck, a high belly, a round tayl like a Lizard, but shorter, and crooked towards the end, with a grey line from its head, to the end of its tayl.

Dioscorides saith, It is the product either of *Ægypt*, or *India*, or of the Red-sea, though it is seen in *Lydia* of *Mauritania*: Some do erroneously take it for the Salamander. *Pliny* calls it the Land-Crocodile, for it very much resembles the Crocodile of *Nilus*.

But there is no proportion in their dimensions; for this is alwayes small, scarce exceeding a cubit in length: whereas the Crocodile of *Nilus* attains two and twenty cubits, and yet no term of his concretion, though his original is from an Egge no bigger then a Gooses Egge: He lives both upon the land and water; his eyes are like Swines eyes: his sight in the water is dull; but out, very quick.

This Animal alone, except the Parret, moves his upper jaw; he hath a small tongue adhering to his under-jaw; his legs come out of his side; his feet are small, in reference to his body; his claws strong; his skin squamous, crustaceous, and impenetrable, save under his belly, which is soft. This Animal lives sixty years, layes sixty Egges in sixty dayes, sits upon its Egges sixty dayes, before young ones be excluded; it hath sixty joynts in its backbone; and as many teeth in its head, as it will lye dayes in winter in some Cavern without meat. The more curious Scrutator may have a fuller description of the Crocodile, in *Aristotle*, *Pliny*, and later Writers, who have lustrated *Ægypt*, and the Oriental Coasts.

Chap. 32.

Of Scorpions.

They make an Oyl of dead Scorpions, infused in Oyl, which they cognominate from the same, for many uses in Medicine: for, by way of liniment, it breaks and expels the stones in the Reins and Bladder, and moves Urine: it cures the bitings of Vipers, Serpents, and other venenate Beasts: if it be adhibited to the armholes and groins in time of Pestilence, it will either preserve the user from it, or cure him of it: it will also cure a wound inflicted

by a Scorpion; and ſo will its own body, bruiſed and applied.

A Scorpion is a terreſtrial Animal, with a long and nodous tayl, whoſe end is armed with a long and oblique ſting, perviated with a ſmall hole, through which it effunds its poyſon into the part pricked: it hath arms and fore-cleyes biſulcated; its tayl is alwayes ready for a ſtroke; it never lets ſlip an opportunity: it ſtrikes obliquely.

The Maſculine Scorpion is maculated on the belly, and fore-cleys; and its poyſon is more pernicious, the Females more milde; though ſome write contrary.

There are eight kindes of Scorpions: the firſt is white, which they ſay is not lethiferous; the ſecond yellowiſh, whoſe ſtroke is ſeconded with vehement ardour, and an inextinguiſhable thirſt; the third is blackiſh, whoſe ſtroke depraves the members of motion, and makes men mad, cauſing fooliſh laughter; the fourth is ſomewhat green, it hath ſeven knots in his tayl; perpetual and great cold, though in the heat of Summer, follows upon its ſtroke; the fifth is pale and livid, and infects the percuſſed with tumours in his groins; the ſixth is like a little Sea Crab-fiſh; the ſeventh hath greater Cleys, and is very like the Crab we call *Pagurus*; the eighth is of a Honey-colour, it hath wings like a Locuſt, and the laſt knot of its tayl is black.

Winged Scorpions are very rare with us, but frequent and great in *India* and *Aphrica*, with ſeven knots in their tayls.

If we reckon the variety of Scorpions, by the variety of their colours, ſome are called flave Scorpions, ſome yellow, ſome cineritious, ſome green, ſome ferrugineous, ſome vinous, ſome white, and others fuliginous.

The ſmitings of Scorpions are farre more perillous to women, then men; and eſpecially to Virgins: for they are alwayes lethal to ſuch, unleſs they be preſently helped: and ſuch Scorpions as have ſeven knots in their tayls, are judged moſt cruel.

Vires. They procreate and ſit upon Vernicles like Egges, and they produce a progeny, which coming to perfection, drives them away; and thus Scorpions are ſaid to be killed by their young ones. But theſe things reſpect not Pharmacy, and therefore not for my purpoſe.

Chap. 33.

Of Worms.

MAny ſmall Animals are generated of Worms, and Worms of many great Animals: yea, this progeny ſprings from all altered and putrid matter, ſtones, bones, wood, fruit, cheeſe, fleſh; and all things ſeem at firſt to turn into worms: for mans own fleſh is abſumed by worms, and his clothes by moths: And though cold things much reſiſt putretude, yet worms are generated in the coldeſt ſnow;

snow; and some are procreated of salt: they are also generated in Animals daily, their body abounding with putrid humours; for there worms are generated, where putretude resides: for, Corruption is their Mother. I saw a worm of a palms length, come out with the blood of the vein of ones arm opened: They are still generated in the intestines, and other parts of mans body, and also in Harts heads.

Every Insect generates a worm, except the Butterfly, which is procreated of another dissimilar Insect: as the Poet;

Et fio volucris, qui modo vermis eram.

The family of Worms being thus ample, I shall onely speak of Earth-worms, which are used in Medicine: for these washed in white-wine, prepared, macerated in Oyl, and duly elixated in a double vessel, afford us an Oyl, very conducible in nervous affections.

They are also assumed at the mouth, after due preparation, to wit, when they are washed, dryed, levigated, and mixed with other Powders, to cure Virgins pale colours.

Many call them the Earths Intestines; others, Earth-worms; others, Earth-lumbricks: they have a long round body, with neither bone, eye, nor ear: They go so, that the precedent part draws the consequent in their locomotion.

They are procreated of the mud of the earth, and animated by the same cause that other Insects are. They are destitute of eyes, ears, feet, members, and are like oblong fibres, whose parts are not discriminated, save by some knots and denervations a little beyond their middles.

Spring or Winter-showers, if not glacial, elicite them: they are neither liberally, nor copiously generated in the earth, much trodden upon, but frequently in fat and waste ground: These bruised and applied, conglutinate prescinded Nerves, and fresh wounds. *Vires.*

Chap. 34.

Of Spanish-Flies, or Beetles.

These Flyes have onely a nominal affinity with Beetles, for they are often used in Medicine, Beetles never. *Galen* hath experienced them good against scabs and Leprosies; and Physicians finde them to provoke Urine.

Aristotle calls them Putrid Animals, because they are produced of putrid matter: They are procreated, nourished, and found in many shrubs, as the Bramble; and in many tall trees, as the Ash: Those that are found in Corn, are versicolorate, and have transverse lines in their wings, with an oblong body, and are very good.

But

But they will be more fit for use, if they be injected into an earthen vessel, whose orifice is covered with a rare linen cloth, and turned downwards, that by the halite of sharp vinegar, they may be exanimated, then dryed, reposed in wooden boxes, glass or earthen vessels, and kept for the space of two years.

They are mixed but in small quantity, to Medicaments that provoke Urine, by *Galens* advise, who would have them injected whole; but the later Writers would have their legs and wings abscinded and abjected. When a Noble Matron of *Paris* was holden with a continual Feaver, accompanied with the heat of the Reins, and other grievous symptomes, and had committed the care of her cure to Mr. *Martin*, a learned and perite *Parisian* Medick; by the perswasion of some, she call'd one *Riverius*, a courtly Medick, who feeling her pulse, said, If she had called him a little sooner, he would have applyed a dragm of French flies to the region most affected, and have presently restored her to sanity: so he left the Matron grieved, and her ordinary Medick astonished at his humour, manners, words, and actions; who was so far from adhibiting such a company of these flies, that he applyed not one, and yet restored her to health: for this flie being most dry and light, it is credible, one weighing not above a grain; what were it less then carnifice to adhibite sixty of them, which weigh but a dragm, to the æsture of the Reins? But take this obiter, not because I am incensed against the man, but that I might shew, that these flies are very noxious to the Bladder, Reins, and other parts, by inducing inflammations; yet very good mixed with other Medicaments in a small quantity.

Chap. 35.

Of Ants.

PHarmacopolies are not destitute of Ants, which afford an oyle commended to many received uses: for it califies the generative parts, being too frigid, and reduces them to a better state.

Ants are the most laborious and officious of insects, which exercise their labours not onely on the day, but on the night also, in full Moon; alwayes treading the same pathes, bringing cibaries to their Cells, and reconding them for the insuing year. They hunt not after smaller animalls, like Cobs, but degust them when dead; congest grains, and bear their burthens in their mouthes.

Ants are either winged, whose infusion yeilds the said oyle; or wingless, which are frequently found in dry and incultivated places; sick Bears seek sanity from them,

There is, in some regions in *India* where Gold is effoded, a kinde of Ants, equalizing Foxes in magnitude: I finde also some equitant ones, and others that fly the light; but the Apothecary never uses such.

Chap.

Chap. 38.

Of the Silk-worm.

THat glory is now given to Silk, which was given to fine linen, wherewith the Ancient Kings were invested: and as we read in *Luke* 10. *A certain rich man arrayed.* This flax was a kinde of tenuious line, next in dignity to *Asbestinum*, whereof most subtile vestments were made, with which women were most delighted; which, according to *Pliny*, grew neer *Elis* in *Achaia*; according to *Pollux*, in *India*, and *Ægypt*; and *Pausanias*, in *Greece*, on a tree not unlike our Poplar, with willowish leaves: but whether its plant be a tree or an herb, it is altogether unknown to us. It bears not onely leaves, but line also, which the People of *Seres*, *Scytia*, and *Asiatica*, perite in spining, draw out into small threads, and make it into vestments for rich men; and that which the Serians work, is called Silk. *Asbestus* is either a certain stone of a ferreous colour, in the Mountains of *Arcadia*, which being once accended, can never be extinguished; or else flax, whereof Napkins are made, that will take flame, and not burn away; like plumbeous Lead.

But we have no such byssigerous plant, nor vestments made of their Down; but onely *Bombycina*, which, as *Byssina* of old, is now called Silk; which is as good for dignity in the same uses, and besides accommodated to Medicinal exhibitions: for Apothecaries, following the Arabians dictate, have an opinion of Silk, that it will purge blood, roborate the vital faculties, recreate the heart, illustrate the spirits, refresh all faculties, and help all the spirits. These are the eximious *Encomia*, wherewith the Barbarians nobilitate the excrement of their virulent Insect. But seeing any one may Philosophize, and propose his opinion in the matter in hand, I profess, I think Silk is of small use in Medicine: for it is the dry, inodorate, exuicous recrement of an imperfect Animal, affine to Cob-webs, but inept and ineffectual in mans cure. *Vires.*

It may be, that that *Byssinum*, which the latter writers call fine flax, is indued with eximious faculties; but no such being now fonnd, nor brought to us, our Pharmacopolists cannot speak of it, unless they speak in their dreams. And I wonder, upon what reason they give crude Silk to the sick: when it is tincted with Scarlet, it is indeed vertuous, but it borrows that faculty from its infection; and therefore I had rather prescribe the dying grains alone, then frustraneously spend their succe in dying Silk. But let perite Medicks, who have onely reason for their Law, be Judges in the case.

These Silk-worms are little Animals, excluded from small, round, and blackish seeds, called by some egges, cherished with a moderate calour; animated, and at first formed into Minute-worms, which educated on the leaves and boughs of the Mulberry-tree, after

a while ſpin their ſlender webs, or Silken threads, whereof precious cloth is abundantly woven.

When they are more adult, they make of themſelves hoods and domicils for themſelves; and there in a ſhort time, they tranſmute themſelves into white Butterflies, which produce ſeeds, or ſmall eggs, whereof other worms of the ſame kinde are generated. But theſe being known to Women and Children, need no further deſcription.

Some Medicks uſe the Galls of many Animals; the Liver and inteſtines of Wolves, the brains of Sparrows, the teſticles of Cocks, and Aſells which are found under water-veſſels: but theſe not ingreding the compoſitions in our Shop, belong not to us. Thus I have in three Books, by Gods auxiliation, briefly and clearly compoſed all Medicinal matter: to whom be Honour, Glory and Praiſe now and Ever.

Finis Libri Tertii.

THE

THE
Pharmaceutrical Shop,

Divided into
TWO PARTS.

The first whereof Treats
Of INTERNAL, and the second of EXTERNAL
MEDICAMENTS.

By the AUTHOR
JOANNES RENODÆUS,
Physician in PARIS.

ENGLISHED
By RICHARD TOMLINSON,
APOTHECARY.

LONDON:
Printed by *J. Streater*, and *J. Cottrel.* 1657.

THE

Mathematical Shop,

IN

TWO PARTS.

I. Of the Sound of Instruments.

II. [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

Printed by [illegible] 1677.

To his Honoured, Learned, and Vertuous
FRIEND,

WILLIAM WITHERINGS *Esq.*

Worthy Sir,

THe manifold *Testimonies* of your reall favours, calls for a perpetual *Commemoration*; and what requital can be returned, but a bare *demonstration*, where *ability* cannot correspond, or aspire to the dignity of that *Desert*, couched within the verge of that *manifestation* of affection so amply discovered? And to lie *dormant* under so much *Courtesie*, were to invelop my self within the *Rounds* of *Ingratitude*, and in stead of Coronating your *deserved Worth* (already bedubbed with the true Sparklings of never-fading *Glory*) I should *Adumbrate* the Lustre thereof, (which otherwise would necessarily dispel the thickest clouds) by the Satyrical Screen of *Fame-defacing-Oblivion*.

To *enumerate* the many discoveries and dawnings of your *Vertues*, were to comprehend a Catalogue of the Universal *Genus* of *Atomes*, within the narrow bounds of a *Nutshel*: Neither can the weak blandishments of a Quill, emblazon the least shadow of those Trophies, whose Glory is founded in the true Abyss of your merited Renown.

Pardon this boldness, SIR, in presuming to lodge this Book within your *Gates*; and in making use of your *Name* without your consent. Let not a *sinister construction*, obstruct a *gentle remission*; nor a *rigid apprehension*, hinder the thought of a *venial transgression*. Doubtless, SIR, the Subject will not dishonour your *Person*, in *Patronizing* it from suffering *shipwrack* in the

tumultuous gulfs of *Contradiction* and *Detraction*; but rather conclude, That the rayes of your Learning being dispanded upon the Imperfections necessarily accruing in the Alteration of the *Garb*, will put a period to what may be *objected* by those, whose *Medulla Scientiæ*, is nothing else, but the true pourtraicture of that *Livid Viper Envy*; whose virulency is *Malevolent Censure*. Let such endeavor its Overture, whilest your finger supports it by the *Chin*, till it arrives with the fresh gales of your Countenance, to its desired *Haven*, with its *Top-gallant* streaming out the true Characters of your *Honour*, maugre the carpings of *Zoilus*. What need it to fear the trivial Objections of certain *Augurs*, when its *Patron* is both strongly fenced with the Principles of *Theory*, and garnished with the Robes of *Integrity*?

Altius surgentes, Innocentes licet, comitatur suspicio. Tacit.

Sir, you are not one whom infant *Effeminacy*, youthful *Delicacy*, or voluptuous *Liberty*, could ever yet allure your intellect and knowledge from diving into *Divine* and *Moral Arcana's*. What greater Symbole of true Gentility, then Goodness! It is not the gawdy lustre of the Purple, but the inward vertue of the Person, that proclaims Greatness; having alwayes observed you to entrain *Humility* and *Integrity* for your *Retainers*.

Yet if any dare to calumniate *Renodæus*, notwithstanding his Accomplishment at all assays, and his converse with the most acute Judgements, he will proclaim them *viva voce*, to be *Vox & præterea nihil*.

This onely remains, That if I have drawn him in his proper *Colours*, he will merit your Patronage; but if mangled, it is in your power, Sir, rather to impute the fault to the Pen, then the intention of the person, whose Ambition was ever to be accounted,

SIR,

Your most humble Servant,

Septemb. 8. 1656. *Rich. Tomlinson.*

THE

THE PREFACE TO THE READER.

ALL things in general, which the whole Masse of the Earth doth expose to sight and view, or include within her bowels, the greatest portion thereof doth either serve man for Medicament or Aliment; which indeed ought not at all times to be gathered, whilest the necessity of man calls for them; or the bowels of the Earth robbed thereof in vain, till the Physician appoint them for the Relief of Mans body, which is the subject for the which they were created: Except it be such Exoticks, which upon all occasions in Pharmacopolies ought to be kept, both for present and future use. Concerning which, Pliny, cap. 1. lib. 28. Hippoc. Epist. ad Abdent. Herophil. hath treated of at large.

For whereas Medicine is the gift of God, and Medicament the hand of God, it must needs follow then, that an Apothecary, of all Professions, must needs be the most excellent, though not always (it may be) in the greatness of estate, yet in the Bayes of Honour. What is his Shop, but a Magazine of the Globes Treasure, a Store-house of Natures Arcana's? whatsoever is comprehended under the Cope of Heaven, there in the Mass is contained. What can the main Sea produce, or the depth of the great Abyss? What can the four Elements discover, that is not of use in our Shops? Alas, is not the Body of Man the receptacle of innumerable Diseases? else, whither tend these Myriads of Remedies? What Disease can be found in rerum natura, that hath not either an Antidote to defend, or a Corrosive to destroy? What can now be objected, or produced as an Ænigma to the Physician? Are not those great Giants, which were veiled in obscurity to the Ancients, now laid level? Who is there that professes himself the Son of Æsculapius, that knows not now how to encounter a Solutio Continui, Phlegmon, Pterygium, Polypus, Hepatitis, Lienteria, Enterocle, Ædema, Schyrrhus, Podagra, with many others, which formerly puzled so many Grandees in knowledge? What place now, wherein there is not a Sanctuary for Remedy to fly unto, where a salubrious Medicine for every Malady is publickly to be had? What a gallant spectacle is it, to behold an Apothecaries

thecaries Shop well stored of all things necessary, Instruments for the preparing of Medicines, and Vessels to repose the same in, &c.

But alas! how is this Art now abused! what a company of illiterate Ignoramus's have intruded themselves therein, whose knowledge is exercised in nothing else, but in setting mens lives at sale; who out of secular ends, to inhance the Traffick into their hands, by selling cheap, have, and do to this day, (and I am sorry that I have no other Tense to speak in) huddle up a Medicine after any manner, taking one thing for another; insomuch that the Medicament neither can effect what might be expected otherwise from it, nor doth it the Patient any good, but rather operate contrary to the Physicians expectations? These are the Vipers that poyson and infect a Commonwealth, the disgrace of the Profession, and the ruine of Mankinde. I dare avouch, and shall maintain, that more are killed by the ill-compounded, succidaneous Medicaments of many Apothecaries here in this City, then by the malignity of any distemper whatsoever. And hence it is, that the Physician comes to be undervalued, our Profession despised, and the whole Commonwealth abused; and if a speedy Remedy be not taken for these abominable Practises, what will follow? Are these men fit for the society of Christians? or are they to be allowed, to act in a business of such concernment, where a mans Life runs the hazard of Ruine? It is the shame of London, that amongst so many learned and able Artists, those Piperly-Dizzards should not be found out and detected.

But we shall detain the Reader no longer in the Porch, but open the Shop-doors, for every one to enter in; where Knowledge shall be sold at a cheap rate: Onely take notice, That there is intended for the Press, a Treatise discovering the true and infallible Marks of every Medicine, whereby it may be quickly discerned, whether it be rightly compounded or no: Together with the lowest Price thereof. With many other things, which, God willing, shall be made publick, for the information of the Ignorant.

Farewel.

CHAP. I.

Of the House and Shop of an Apothecary.

AT the beginning and non-age of the world, Men used fruits for bread; and water for wine; and it is probable, both Horses and Beasts had the same aliment, (*Hip. lib. de vet. Med.*) but when the fruits which grew spontaneously, would not suffice for their nutrition and sanity, our fore-fathers made a bread, or rather a pulteſs, of Wheat macerated, shelled, and bruised; whereupon the Romans lived a long time, after *Ausonius*. But their stomacks nauseating to be alwayes served with the same meat, and they not content with bread alone, begun at length to taste of Birds, and then to hunt after beasts and fishes. Their desires thus breaking out by little and little, invented culture, and a Thousand gulous provocations: whereas *Ausonius* saith, that before that time, the Acorn was mans and beasts common meat, and a trees shade their common house.

For in that first age, caves were their houses, the tectures of wood their cottages, rocks and saxous places their Cities: and a long time after, the Dardanians made them sordid houses in mud, the Balearians in hollowed rocks; as many Indians at this day in Oysters and Tortoises shells; and others weave themselves houses of reeds and fenny herbs, (*Alex. ab Alex. C. 24. Li. 5.*)

But as mens manners are now more polite, their dishes more dainty; so are their houses more artificially structed: some building themselves edifices in the middle of some river; others on the top of a hill; others at the Sea side; as each mans fancy leads him.

But an Apothecaries house, should be built in none of these places; but rather in a City, then in a Town; in an apprique and lucid place, rather then in an opaque and umbrous; and in a nited street, rather then in one inquinated with filth and putretude.

It must be ample, and high, that such simples as should be kept drie, may be reposed in its higheſt room; and such as should be moist, in its cellar.

There should be many, at leaſt one cubicle betwixt these two, to which the Apothecary may betake himself; under which he must have an ample, quadrate, and lucid Shop: yet neither so much exposed to the Sun, as it may califie, melt, or too much drie his Medicaments; nor so much to the wind, as to moleſt them.

In it there should be two doors; the one an outward door towards the street, the other postical or inward, into his kitchin, or inner chamber; wherein he may not only eat his victuals, but prudently observe through some lattice-window, what is done in the Shop, what given, and what received; and so mind his Apprentices, whether they

they ſpend their time idlely, faithfully and accurately execute their office, or do all for his good, and effect his work.

In the other angle of the kitchin, near the Chimney, muſt be an Æſtuary or Hypocauſte, wherein he may repoſe his Sugar-junkets and ſolid confections more ſafely: and if the place be large enough, there may in the next place be made a Tabern, wherein he may recond many ſeeds, fruits, and other ſimples, which he buyes in great quantity; as Prunes, Almonds, Honey, Seeds, Roots, and much of Woods.

In his Shop he muſt repoſe onely compounds, and ſuch ſimples as are either rare and precious, or are of diuturnal and frequent uſe; as Tamarinds, Raiſins, Liquorice, Polypody, Senny, *&c.*

And that his Medicaments may be duely diſpoſed in his Pharmacopoly, many ſhelves muſt be claſſically collocated therein, from the bottome upwards, upon wooden and iron nails faſtened in the walls, and the partition betwixt the kitchin and the Shop, ſo that ſome of their rowes may include leſſer, ſome greater boxes; ſome, Earthen-pots; ſome, Glaſſes; ſome, Tinne-veſſels; and ſome, Wood-veſſels: ſo diligently and diſcreetly collocated, that thoſe that are of more frequent uſe, may not be in the ſame row with thoſe that are more rarely exhibited; but that the one ſort may be neerer at hand, and the other remote.

The names alſo of the Medicaments, muſt be inſcribed upon every veſſel, and bag, wherein they are included; that the Medicament to be exhibited, may ſoon be ſeen, and not miſtaken for another.

Chap. 2.

Of Inſtruments neceſſary for the Shop.

The Shops ſupellectuals, all which are either uſeful, or neceſſary, are almoſt innumerable: Thoſe are uſeful, but more profitable, which are more expetible for their ornament, and greater ſplendour, then their inſervience; as many Silver veſſels, which take much with the vulgar; and the Apothecaries may by this external ſhew, acquire that glory, which by their learning and skill they cannot reach; and they are blamed by *Hippocrates*, who think this curious ſtuffe either odious or illiberal.

That ſame ſupellex is neceſſary, which ſerves either to repoſe Medicaments in, as many Earthen, Glaſſy, Argenteous, Stanneous, Plumbeous, Cupreous, and Braſen-veſſels; for Syrupes, Sapes, Eclegms, Electuaries, Powders, Oyles, Salves, and Unguents: of which hereafter: or to prepare them; as, Marbles, Morters, Peſtels, of Wood, Stone, and Metals; Rudicles, Pots, Kettles, Baſons, Diſhes, Pottengers, Frying-pans, Frixories, Poliſhers, Files, Sieves, Stainers, Preſſes, Gauntlets, Weights, Tongs, Knives, Marble-tables, manifold Alembicks, Refrigerative Chanels, called Serpentine-

tine-Lakes, in Fundibles, and many more, which it may be the Apothecary will not use once in a year.

Chymists have yet besides these, some peculiar supellectils, which a witty fellow calls, The Instruments of Fallacy, and not of Pharmacy: but this I would speak of their abuse, and not of their use.

The appellation and form of many Pharmaceutrical instruments, are sooner known then their special uses; for every one knows Saws, Files, Hammers and Knives; but the Apothecaries use for these, is to scrape Boars-teeth, Ivory, Guaiacum; to attenuate them into dust, and levigate all such things, as cannot by attrition be pulverated: but other artificers use them in the works of their Arts; as the Goldsmith, in making Rings, Bracelets, and vessels of Gold or Silver; the Blacksmith in making Nails; and all use Hammers, Anvils, and Tongs, to their peculiar works.

The Knives necessary for Pharmacopolies, must not be of one sort onely, but some greater then others, some oblong, others short, and others otherwise formed. The long and mucronated Knives, are much in use to scrape and purge roots; to divide and cleave the minute-boughs of wood, and caulicles of herbs: the shorter, which are not acuminated, but obtuse, whose backs are very crass, serve to cut Sugar into lumps; some whereof are very short, but broad, of a Lunar shape, like those wherewith Shoemakers cut their hides; wherewith some oleaginous seeds, and condited barks, which cannot be pulverated by a Pestel, may be cut small.

They serve also to divide Liquorice into small pieces, that it may ingrede the confection of common junkets.

There is also another Knife longer then the rest, whose point is reflected like a hook, which fastened upon another hook set in the table, will with much ease divide Wood and Roots, while its haft is pressed.

Yet all these varieties of Knives are not absolutely necessary in each Shop; for the same Knife which in the Kitchin cuts bread, may in the Shop divide Wax, and scrape Roots.

CHAP. 3.

Of Morters and Pestels.

NO one Instrument is either so necessary, or so frequently used in a Pharmacopoly, as a Morter: for nothing almost can either be made up, or brought to that pass, without the help of the Morter. For seeing all Medicinal materials are ordinarily rude, and indigested, and nothing almost exhibited, as it comes out of the bosome of our Grandmother Nature; most things must by triture be divided, agitated, levigated, and subacted into composition, in a Morter.

And seeing that matter is multifarious, and requires various preparations, not onely from the industry of the Apothecary, but the

adjument of the Instruments; wherein it acquires not onely a convenient form, and a due magnitude, but a fit matter, from which the Medicament may mutuate something: and therefore Piles or Morters are made of various Materials; as of Marble, Achates, Alabaster, or other stone; and of Tinne, Lead, Iron, Brass, Copper; as also of Glass, and Ivory; and of Silver and Gold, more for ostentation, then pure necessity.

One of Lead, or Glass, or Stone, is enough; but many of Brass, one whereof must be very ample, for such things as are hard or large; another small, for Musk, Amber, Civet, Bezaar-stone, and such Aromaticks.

Betwixt both, many of several magnitudes; some whereof may serve for Potions, others for Glysters or Electuaries.

They must have as many Pestels as Morters, made also of the like matter; for a plumbeous Pestel best fits a plumbeous Morter; a brasen one, a brasen Morter; but an Iron Pestel fits all Metals, and a wooden Pestel all stony Morters, and all such as new herbs are brayed in. When dry things must be pulverated, the Morter must be covered with Paper or Leather, lest the small Powder fly out and perish, or trouble the brayers nose and eyes.

Marble tables and Purple stones are also requisite for the smaller levigation of some things; as Margarites and Precious stones, which may be levigated very small, with a little Rose-water, or other liquor, for the Medicks scope.

Chap. 4.

Of Spatulaes and Spoons.

Spatulaes and Spoons, are as it were the Apothecaries second hands, wherewith he agitates Medicaments, while they are tunded in Morters, or cocted in Dishes, that the pulveration and coction of each part may be equal; and with these he reconds the Medicaments in idoneous vessels, and with these takes them out for uses. Now Spatulaes are broad at one end, like the blade of a bone, which the Barbarians call *Spatulæ*.

The figure of these Spatulaes is all one, to wit, triangular and oblong, but their matter diverse; for some are made of Silver, as those little ones which Chirurgeons use; others of Wood, as that rudicle, wherewith they agitate the palmeous Emplaister while it is cocting, which is made of a Palm-bough; others of Iron, as almost all the rest, whether great or small, wherewith Apothecaries work their soft Medicaments, as Honey, Winter-oyl, liquid Electuaries, and the like confections.

The Shop-spoons are made of Iron and Copper; the Table-spoons of Silver, and of Wood for the Rustick and poorer people: they make little ones of Ivory and Horn, which serve for measuring all Powders, and putting them into the scales. Many also of these ma-

materials are used in Kitchins, to despumate decoctions: Wood and Silver Spoons are also used in Shops, but not Glass ones, because they are so easily frangible; nor Iron ones, because they contract rust, as Brasen ones also: but they may use any of them, so the servants have a care to keep them clean, and absterge them as soon as they are inquinated.

CHAP. 5.

Of their Caldrons, and other Metalline Vessels.

MAny take *Ahenum* and *Cacabum* for the same; but in proper locution, *Ahenum* is a brasen vessel, profund and operculated, with a handle on the one side, whereby it may be holden in ones hand, and shut at ones pleasure: it serves especially for elixating of water in, which must either be drunk alone, or mixed with some Wine.

Rich men for sanity, or rather vanities sake, have such vessels of Silver, that the cocted water may not smell of Copper.

A Dish is another brasen vessel, much broader and larger, wherein Simples are cocted, Compounds made, and Fruits condited: it hath two ears or handles, on each side one, that it may be set on, or taken off the fire more easily: it is set on the fire upon a three-footed Iron Instrument, with hot coals under it, that the liquor therein contained may boil.

A Pottenger is another æneous, small, but patulous vessel; whereunto a long start, and a ferreous handle is suffixed, that it may be more commodiously set on the fire, and holden in either hand.

Such Medicaments as are given in small quantity, are cocted herein; as one dosis of a Medicament, a small Electuary, a Rosaceous Julip, and the like.

A Frying-pan is another kinde of dish, very patulous, with a long start, which they use in Kitchins to fry flesh, in shops to fry seeds in; as Coriander with Vinegar, to castigate some quality in it, Millet-seed with Wine, or some other liquor, fit for some part.

A Caldron is another brasen vessel, which suspended on a Chimney-hook, hangs over the fire, that whatsoever is contained in its cavity may be cocted. But seeing this, and more of the vessels are culinary ones, I shall not need to stand any longer upon their description; especially seeing the Apothecary knows them well, who uses them often to prepare the decoctions of Simples, and to the preparation of Syrupes, Unguents, and other Confections.

Chap. 6.

Of Torculars and Presses.

PHarmacopolists have also their little Torculars, wherewith they express succes and oyls by pressure; and this sort of Press is made of two short pieces of wood, alike in form and magnitude; each whereof have two holes so cunningly excavated, that within they seem to be two carved circles, not recurring one against another; wherein two iron Rods are introduced, which by turning extrinsecally, abduce the beams, and open the Press; but by turning intrinsecally, adduce and shut it, pressing the interposed matter, and expressing its watry or oleous succe.

There should be two Presses in each Pharmacopoly; one to express aqueous succes out of green fruits and herbs; and another, oleous out of Olives.

Such things as are to be pressed, should by coction or triture be prepared for the press: by coction, thus; flesh must be prepared, whose expressed succe is given to such as are tabid and lean, by long diseases: by triture, as some oleaginous Woods, Fruits, and Seeds: which last, lest they should leap and flie away, must be included in a bag, or a strong cloth, that they may be better compressed, and the tenuious substance more easily separated from the crass one. Thus Oyle of Almonds is educed; thus the juyce of Lentisks, Dates, Nuts, Line-seed, and the like, is expressed, as we shall hereafter shew.

Chap. 7.

Of Sieves and Incernicles.

PHarmacopolists have now got a custom, to call those Instruments which separate the purer portion of the Medicament from the crasser, Sieves: but this rustick enunciation is too licentious and abusive; since rusticks Sieves, not Apothecaries Instruments, are made of skins perviated with many, but small holes, to purge Corn with.

There are also other Sieves made of Horses hairs, intertexed like a web, to segregate the Bran from flower; which Aromataries sometimes use in dividing their Powders, and purging their Prunes, and Cassia-Fistula, from their stones and seed, which by them are called seraceous subcirnicles, and sometimes excussive incernicles, because agitated betwixt their hands they excuss the small Powder. They are sometimes made of Wood, as when Teile-bark is discerpted into long and small fibres, and lattice-wise connexed, for the cribration of crasser Powders.

There are many common Sieves, but one peculiar to Aromataries, which being contexed with more artifice, they call *Tamis*: it is

some-

sometimes made of Horses hair, often of fine linen, and oftest of silk, operculated above and below with a Rams skin upon a bending VVood, that the Powder received in the one casket, may by cribration pass into the other, without any loss by prosilition.

Some of these are less then others, which are more idoneous, for separating precious Powders, which are onely softly holden in ones hand, and the Powder delabes without violence; others do not transmit the tenuious Powder without much percussion.

There is yet another kinde of sieve, in form of a great box, much in use; in whose middle a certain web is intended, through which the Powders superimposed, fall into the inferiour part of the box: The trajection of the Powder will be more easie and quick, if a Tinne or Silver weight be superposed together with the Powder, that by its motion and gravity may impel the excussive sieve against some solid body.

All sieves and incernicles serving to segregate dry things, must be moved, agitated, and impelled; but for moist things, they must remain quiet and immote; yet the trajection of the things to be separated, may be helped by a Spoon or Manipulus; as the pulpes of Tamarinds, Cassia, or Prunes; as also Roots and herbs first cocted to putrelage, then transmitted by this adjument, for the confection of Cataplasms.

CHAP. 8.

Of Colatories or Strainers.

NEither can Pharmacopolies be without colatories of silk, linen, Canvas, and Woolen; some whereof are rare, others dense, and others indifferent; and some again, are new, others almost worn; and yet the newest are most used, because the whole succe of the thing to be strained, may by more valid compressure be educed, without the fracture of the cloath.

But sometimes these, sometimes the weaker are taken, according to the consistency of the succes: those that are of themselves tenuious, need a denser strainer, lest the tenuious part be not onely transmitted, but some gross matter with it. Those that are crass and viscid, must be trajected through a rare strainer; those of a middle consistency, through a cloth of a middle density.

Crass and viscid succes require three things; strong percolation, more ample dilution, and a rarer colatory or strainer: they must also be calified before collation; for so their density will be more rarified, and they more easily transmeate; yea, many will not percolate at all, unless they be very hot, others when cold, and some onely warm: some need onely one colature, others two, and others more; the first colature must be in a rare strainer, the second in a dense one, and the third in a more compact one, that passage may be obstructed to

all

an filth: those that are of a liquid consistency, if they be to be percolated twice or thrice, it may be done in the same strainer.

There are certain VVoolen Strainers, of a long and pyramidall figure, numerated amongst these colatories, which they call *Hippocrates* his sleeves, wherein the Hippocratical VVine is twice or thrice strained, till it be clear. These serve also for straining Melicras, congealing salves, and many decoctions, that all extraneous matters may be separated from them, and they remain sincere, as we have shewed in our Institutions.

CHAP. 9.

Of Furnaces.

SOme Furnaces serve onely for decoctions, and receive Kettles, Dishes, Caldrons, and other vessels; wherein simples are coct ed, prepared and compounded: others for distillations, and receive Cucurbites, Retorts, Bladders, Pots, and other vessels, accommodated to Distillations; made either by Ascent, or Descent.

Those that serve for decocting Medicaments, are not of one sort; for some are portatile and rotund, made of molten or beaten Iron; which as their inferiour parts stand upon three valid legs, so doth their superiour emit three oblong auricles, more prominent then the Furnaces lips, whereon the Vessels to be calified are superimposed.

Their supream part is patulous, like some gaping Morter; into which coals are immitted; a Gridiron, or ferreous trabicles, being supposited, which may give way to the falling ashes, which are afterwards extracted out of the posternal door, structed for that purpose: others are made of Clay, and Bricks; which are almost quadrate, fixed, and immoveable, standing upon no feet, but within like the other.

Those which serve for distillations, whether we look at the matter whereof, or form wherein, they are made, are multifarious; for some are made of Iron, others of Copper, others of Potters earth, others of common clay, Bricks, and other businesses requisite to structure; furthermore, some are round, as the Metalline Furnaces, which have ears on both sides, that they may be carried by others; Quadrilaterous, Pentagonous, Multifarious, fixed, and immoveable; wherein three Prothecaries are made; the Inferiour, the Superiour, and the Middle.

The inferiour receives the ashes, and is thence called the *Cineriſt*, or by the usual Chymical term, *Conistery*; whereinto a door opens, by which the burning coals are ventilated by the wind, the Pabulum suppeditated to the fire, and the ashes extracted: the middle Region of the Furnace, wherein the fire is, which is divided from the *Conistery* by a certain craticle, is called *Focus* by the latter age; for in it is the fomentation of the calour, which califies the superimposed, in the superiour

periour Chamber of the Furnace; which is variously formed, according to the various magnitude and figure of the vessel imposed: near that part where the Funary tube is, are certain previations for the smoak to evade by. But we have tradited the most usual description of a Furnace, in our Institutions: (*C.* 31. *Book* 2.)

And as structure of the distillative Furnaces is various, so is it in many elegant: for some are built like a Tower, like a Tortoise, and Simple, which onely contain one vessel; others are structed with very much artifice, and are manifold, assurging with five or more turricles, each one whereof contains a peculiar vessel; thus one vessel may be full of hot water, to distil by a bath; another of ashes; another of sand; another of another matter, according to the various scope of the Operator: but I would have a Pharmacopoly filled with thus many Furnaces, seeing it is made for Medicaments, rather then Instruments.

CHAP. 10.

Of Alembicks and Cucurbites.

AN Alembick in its larger acception, complects Cucurbites, Retorts, Glass-pots, and a certain Instrument of Copper, with three feet and three partitions; in the lowest wherof ashes have their place; in the middle burning coals; and in the highest a vessel covered with a rostrated capitel, in form of a Cone, and sometimes round, with a refrigeratory, formed like a small cup, that it may hold more water; which when it is hot, may be effunded through a cock, posited in its decline, and other cold water affunded into it again.

But its more angust signification, denotes onely a certain beaked distillatory vessel, joyned to another vessel, contained in the superiour part of the furnace; and such are our Alembicks, of Lead, Glass, or Potters-clay, whether uniform, or acuminated above, broad below, like a bell, whence they are so called: yet some are capitated and round, and often obvallated with a certain refrigerative vessel, which they sometimes call a Capitel, sometimes a Hat; because as the Head is covered with a Hat, so is that receptacle or vessel, which contains the stillatitious matter; whose various form alters its denomination, covered with an Alembick. It is sometimes call'd a Cucurbite; sometimes a Bladder; sometimes Boccia, Matratium, a Pot, and other names.

But the Bell, whether it be alone, or set on the receptacle, is called an Alembick; whereof there are two main differences, the one is beaked, which emits a long channel, propendent like the snout of an Elephant, through which condensed vapours delabe into the supposited vessel; the other wants this tube, and is called a blind Alembick: this is proper to the Chymists, who use it in sublimation, as the beaked one in distillation: some of these have such a long tube, that they

they can traject it through the middle of a hogs-head, full of cold water; which concretes, and contemperates the delabing water better.

Many have a beak deflected like a Serpent or Worm, which name it holds; and is most accommodate to distil *Aqua vitæ*, which the Chymists call *Elixir vitæ*.

The magnitude also, and figure of the receptacles, are various; for some are very ample, and bellied; others so small, that they exceed not the magnitude of a Walnut; and these are destinated to Chymical operations: others are moderate in capacity, some whereof are straight, as Vials, Urinals, Pots, Cucurbites, whether greater or less, and Separatories; others inflicted, as Retorts, a crooked Boccia, called Cornumuse.

Those things are distilled in straight Cucurbites, which are easily sublevated on high; as Roots, Seeds, Leaves, Flowers, and Aromata's; those in oblique ones, which are not so easily elevated, as Rosins, Lachrymæ, Fats and Gums.

CHAP. II.

Of Tables and Counters necessary in Pharmacopolies.

NO Housholdstuff so small, no cottage so mean, but it contains a Table, or some thing to eat at, and use; for the Table doth not alwayes serve for meat, but many more works; as in a Pharmacopoly, to receive simples while they be selected, separated, prepared, measured, orderly disposed, and put into composition.

Therefore when some solemn and great composition is to be made, as the Treacle, Mithridate, Aurea Alexandria, or the like, the Apothecary must make use of a long Table, not in the shop, but in some more retired cubicle, where he may more liberally select, accurately ponderate, safely keep, and exactly mix and compound his Medicaments.

And a Money-Counter, or two, must needs be had, in every Pharmacopoly; for all that are bought, or sold almost, are laid thereupon; this receives all that are measured, trutinated, brayed in small Morters, divided with Knives, or integrally exhibited.

Its form should be quadrilateral, and it should have many exemptile boxes in its antick part, which might hold many seeds, and keep other necessaries: in the other side, next the seat where the Apothecary sits, should be some larger boxes locked up, wherein some precious Medicaments may be contained.

On the top there should be a chink, or scissure, whereinto the Money received, and gained, must be dimitted.

Over the counter there should hang a certain Instrument, fastened to the beams with nails, not unlike a ⊥ inverted: in the inferiour part whereof, wooden or iron nails should be fastened, whereon Scales of diverse magnitudes, Tongs, Spatula's, and other instruments

ments ſhould be ſuſpended, which being at hand, might not be to ſeek.

Beſides the wooden ones, they ſhould have ſome Tables of Marble or Purple-ſtone, with a Brayer of the ſame matter, wherewith Precious-ſtones may be levigated.

They muſt have alſo a ſtraight Log, which for ornament may be engraven with ſeveral images, to under-ſet their greateſt Morter.

CHAP. 12.

Of little Cheſts, Boxes, and other officinary Veſſels.

ALl the veſſels in a Pharmacopoly, ſerve either for preparation of Medicaments, whereof I have already treated; or for their repoſition, of which now: and they are Bottles, Pots for Oyntments, Pots, Capruncles, Pitchers, Cheſts, and Boxes.

Bottles are well known, and they are either of Glaſs or Clay, ſerving for the repoſiture of diſtilled waters, which ſhould occupy the loweſt part of the Pharmacopoly; theſe waters being heavier, and in greater quantity then other Medicaments: and when froſt comes, theſe Bottles ſhould be repoſed in a cellar, that their waters may not be concreted, till the rigour of the cold be over.

Oyl-pots, which ſerve for keeping Oyls, are ſometimes of Potters clay; but more frequently of Tinne, and obduced with a cover, that they may be operculated or opened with ſpeed: Oyls educed by infuſion, ſhould be repoſed herein.

There are great ſtore of Pots in a Pharmacopoly; the greateſt part whereof are of Tinne, ſome of Earth, and a few of Lead: Unguents are kept and repoſed herein.

Capruncles are all of Potters-clay, white and ſmooth within, with a handle on one ſide, a tube on the other, through which the liquor may be effunded; and a very patulous orifice above, that the liquor may more eaſily be affunded: they are adorned with various colours and ſhapes: Syrupes are repoſed herein.

Beſides theſe veſſels, there ſhould be ſmall ones, like little Pitchers, of Glaſs or Clay, wherein cordial Powders may be kept; and they have a peculiar place, adorned with more artifice, to ſtand in.

There ſhould be alſo other ſmall veſſels of Tinne, wherein ſeveral Maſſes for Pills are reconded; each one in a peculiar skin wrapped.

There muſt be alſo certain ligneous veſſels, for the repoſition of Medicaments; as Baskets, Cheſts, and Boxes. Baskets are contexed of viminous boughs or ruſhes, wherein many fruits are repoſed: and they are ordinarily ſet in the poſterior tabern, or other angle of the ſhop; but if they be ſmall ones, they may be ſuſpended in the ſhop.

Cheſts are quadrilateral, conſiſting of five ſhort boards artificially conjoyned, beſides a lid; wherein Barks, Wood, Muſhromes,

Flowers, Tables, Bones, Horns, Cleyes, and the dry parts of Animals are repoſed.

Boxes are round and profund; either made with a throwe, or compoſed of a thin broad chip, brought to a round form; wherein dry ſucces, Lachrymæ, Gummes, Minerals, and ſome dry Roots, are repoſed.

The fore-part of Boxes and Cheſts which ſtand before the ſhops-door, ſhould be adorned with certain Pictures; onely a ſpace ſhould be left, wherein the Name of the contained might be inſcribed in golden or other letters.

Dry Plants are kept ſometimes in Cheſts, ſometimes in Bags; as alſo many ſmall roots; great roots are trajected on a thread ſuſpended, and ſo dryed and kept.

Thus I think I have briefly deſcribed all the Officinary ſupellectils; which if any, becauſe of the tenuity of his fortune, cannot purchaſe all, he muſt get the more neceſſary.

CHAP. 13.

Of the Conſervation of whole or parts of Simples in a Pharmacopoly.

THe number of Simples which a Pharmacopoliſt ſtands in need of, is indefinitive: for ſeeing all things ſown or produced, all things on which man conculcates, or which he can handle, are dirigible to his ſubſidy; He that would in a ſhort Catalogue compleet all Medicinal Materials, undertakes no leſs, then he that would depinge in a very ſmall Table, the vaſtity of the Univerſe. *Nic. Præpoſitus* indeed, in the beginning of his Antidotary, in many Chapters recenſeates many Simples, wherewith the Apothecary ſhould be furniſhed: but without doubt he hath not mentioned the hundredth part of all that ſerve to Medicinal uſes: for every land brings not forth every Medicament; but that which *Nic.* knew, ſome; this that he never ſaw, others whereof he never made tryal nor heard: out of *India*, and other Foraign Countreys, ſome Simples are brought, never before ſeen, nor known to us, and that daily.

And however, though to recenſeate all Simples, and deſcribe the name and form of ſuch as are of diuturnal uſe, be burthenſome and ſuperfluous, ſeeing ſpecial Phyſicians undertaking this task, have not ſo ſatisfied the mindes of young men, but many of them will ſay, That they have either forgotten many, or ſpoken of many ſuperfluouſly: But let ſuch Sycophants with-hold, whom *Jupiter* himſelf cannot pleaſe: we will proſecute our purpoſe, and recenſeate the chief Simples which ſhould be conſerved in Pharmacopolies.

And theſe Simples of uſe, are either green or dry; the green are partly ſuppeditated by the vicine Countrey, partly by Gardens; which may be depromed from each, when need requires; as Hortenſian Plants from Gardens, and Sylveſtrian from Woods, and

other rural and incultivated places. Wherefore it were needless to deduce all green Plants, whereof the Apothecary hath diuturnal use, into his Pharmacopoly, and so superfluous for him to be furnished and surrounded with these; when it is enough for him to have a few of them at opportune seasons, when exigence requires.

For a heap of green Simples, by long aservation, putrefie, and both their quality and quantity are worsted. Therefore the Apothecaries act prudently, who collect or buy green herbs onely for a half or a whole week; for it were folly for a man to onerate his shop with Mallows, Violets, Mercury, Brankursine, Pelletory of the wall, Fumatory, Endive, Sowthistle, Purslane, Borrage, Henbane, and innumerable such others, which are used onely green, and collected in small quantity. Wherefore it were ridiculous to include these in bags, or repose them in boxes, when he may easily, when exigence calls for them, deprome them out of gardens or countrey; or if their season be past, by the Physicians advice substitute some other.

Dry ones therefore are onely necessary to be kept; as of Roots, the five apertives, and many other alteratives and purgatives; as the Roots of Cypres, Angelica, Enula-campana, Grass, Liquorice, the greater Madder, Tormentil, Bistort, Oinone, Gentian, Pœony, Orris-grass, Acorus, Galingal, Ginger, Sweet-cane, both Berthworts, Asarum, Sowbread, Bartram, Dittany, Avens, both the Ferns, Water-betony, Sea-Holly, Ragwort, Bugloss, Sorrel, Chyna, Sarsaparilla, Marshmallows, the sea-Onyon, Garlick, the greater Comfrey, Bryony, Mechoacam, Turbith, Polypody, Rhaponticum, Meadow-saffron, Rhabarb, VValwort, both the Helleborcs, and others less usual; besides those that are usurped green.

Of cauls and leaves, these are especially to be preserved: both the VVormwoods, Mint, Balsamite, Southernwood, Germander, Groundpine, Hyssop, Calamint, Nep, Horehound, Peny-royal, Wintersavery, Thyme, Origanum, Dill, Rue, Lavender, Marjoran, Basil, mother of Thyme, Clary, Scordium, Chamomile, Melilot, Centory, Cetrach, Dittany, Dodder, *S.* Johns-wort, Knotgrass, Betony, Balm, Rosemary, Travellers-joy, Fluellen, Vervine, Marshmallows, yellow Henbane, Mullen, Stœchas, Tamarisk, Mother-wort, Polium, Senna, Laureol, and Bayes.

Some Flowers also must be kept, because their faculties soon perish, but especially the three cordial Flowers, and also the Flowers of Roses, Pomegranates, Sage, Rosemary, Violets, Chamomile, Melilot, Broom, Orange, VValflowers, Jasmine, Gilliflowers, Betony, *S.* Johns-wort, VVater-lillies, and Saffron.

Seeds necessary to be kept, are the four greater Refrigeratives, the four lesser Refrigeratives, and the seed of Marshmallows, Arach, Radish, Barberies, Plantain, Quinces, Fleabit, Line, Fœnugreek, Cumin, Dill, Aniseed, Fennel, Coriander, Agnus Castus, Ladies Rose, Burdock, Bastard-saffron, Dwarf, Elder, Petroseline, Smallage,

lage, Ruscus, Asparagrasos, Gromwel-gith, Poppy, Basil, Purslain, Carret, Angelico, Mustard, Brooklime, Treacle,mustard, Hartwort of Candy, Lovage, Rocket, VVinter-cherry, Bayes, Ground-Ivy, Juniper, Cardamomes, and all the Peppers, with many more.

Many Fruits also must be kept in Pharmacopolies; as, both sweet and bitter Almonds, all sorts of Nuts, Oranges, Citrons, odoriferous Apples, Russetins, Coloquintido, Sorb-apples, the fruit of the Cornel-tree, Prunes, Dates, Mulberries, Figs, Quinces, Jujubees, Galls, Olives, Capers, Cypress-Nuts, Acorns, Tamarinds, Myrobalans, Cherries, * the Beans of *Malaca*, &c.

* *Anacardium.*

Barks and Cores are either pilled off the Roots of Plants, as the bark of the Root of the Capers shrub, or of the trunk of Plants, as Cinamon; or of their Fruits, as of Oranges, Lemmons, Pomegranates, and the like: few whereof need be preserved, because when exigence calls for them, they may be taken of the Fruits and Roots.

Many Gummes are necessary; as Ammoniacum, Galbanum, Sagapenum, Bdellium, Opoponax, Assa-fœtida, Rosin, clarified Rosin, Tragacanth, Storax, Gumme-Elemni, Cedri, of the Cherry-tree, Ivy, Prune, Juniper, Arabick, Mastick, Gumme-Lacc. Myrrhe, and Frankincense, with many more.

Other succes are kept, either liquid, and in bottles, with a little Oyl above them, as the juyce of Lemmons, Gooseberries, and Barberries; or dryed, as Liquorice-juyce, as Opium, Acacia, Elaterium, Aloes, and Scammony.

More distilled VVaters also must be preserved then *Nic.* recenseates: for, who can enumerate, how many and how various, both Simples, and compound VVaters, are now distilled in shops, not onely out of Plants, but also out of integral Animals, or their parts?

But the use of cordial Waters is most frequent, and celebrated, as of the Waters of Scabiose, Devils-bit, Goats-beard, Bugloss, Borrage, Roses, Marigolds, Woodsorrel, Scordium: and of cooling Waters, these; Endive, Succory, Water-lilly, Purslain, Plantain, Nightshade, Lettice, and many other waters, which respect the Head, Lungs, or other parts of the Body; as of Betony, Balm, Eyebright, Fluellen, Coltsfoot, Liverwort, Egrimony, Groundpine, Tamaris, Pimpinel, Radish, Saxifrage, Pellitory, Hysop, Mugwort, *&c.*

CHAP.

CHAP. 14.

Of Minerals and Metals to be kept in Pharmacopolies.

THey erre equally, who ablegate all Minerals from the number of Medicament, and who usurpe them onely in expugning diseases: for, as they doe not conduce in all diseases; so it is certain, that they profit in some cases: for Minerals afford us every kinde of Medicament, to wit, Alterative, Roborative, Cathartical: Chalk, Litharge, and Vitriol, alterate; the Hyacinth, Terra-Lemnia, and Emerald, roborate; Lapis-Cyaneus, Stibium, and Mercury, purge. The effect also, besides the Testimony of perite men, shews, that there are eximious faculties in Metals; for Gold beaten into thin leaves, and taken with other idoneous Medicaments, cures many affections: *Avicenna* prescribes it chiefly to such as are Melancholical, and to such as should have their faculties roborated, or spirits exhilarated; and hence its dust is exhibited by the richer, either in cordial confections, which receive of its leaves, as *Aurea Alexandrina*, the confection of *Alkermes*, and *Electuarium de Gemmis*.

Gold is Chieftain amongst Metals, next Silver, then Brass, Tinne, Lead, and Iron: some adde a seventh, to wit, Mercury, which is a Metal rather potentially, then actually; but there are almost innumerable Minerals, as all the sorts of earths; amongst which Lemnia holds the chief seat; then, Bole-Oriental, then Erethrian, Setenusian, Samian, and Synopical earth, with Ocre, and such Minerals as are effoded out of the bowels of the Earth; as fossile Salts, Lime, Talkum, Misy, Sory, Red-Lead, Chalk, Vitriol, Chrysocolla, Auripigmentum, Alom, Sulphur, Chrystal, Stibium; and such as cleave to Metals, or are collected out of Furnaces wherein Metals are melted, as the flower of Brass, Cadmia, Ceruse, Brass-Scales, Lead-Ocre, Pompholix, Spodium, Litharge, and the dross of Brass.

Many stones also are much celebrated amongst Minerals, which for their eximious vertues, and pulchritude, are called precious stones; as the Saphyr, Ruby, Carbuncle, Emerald, Hyacinth, Granatus, Topaz, Beril, Achates, Sarda, Carchedony, Hæmatites, Jasper, Selenite, Magnet, Pumic, and Alome: whereunto we may adde those those that are elicited out of the Sea and waters; as odorate Amber, Sea-Salt, Whales-spume, Bitumen, Coral, Amber, Jeat, Antal, Dental, Coralin, Spunges, and some others, which being induced with a more imbecile faculty in Medicine, are omitted.

CHAP.

Chap. 15.

Of Animals, or parts thereof, which are to be kept in Pharmacopolies.

ANimals both nouriſh us while well, cure us while ſick, and veſt us always; or by ſome other means, whether they be living, or intemperate, tend to our emolument: as when we uſe them wholly, or ſome part or excrement of them, to the curation of our diſeaſes, nutrication of our bodies, or inſtauration of our ſtrength: for Musk and Givet, though excrements, wonderfully roborate the heart and ſpirits.

Inſects are integrally uſurped, ſuch as be Spaniſh-Flyes, Aſels, Worms, Lizards, Ants, Vipers, Scorpions, Frogs, Crabs, Swallows, and ſome littles Birds.

The Medicinal parts of Animals are many, as a mans ſcull unburied, a Harts heart-bone, Sparrows and Hares brains, Boars and Elephants teeth, Frogs hearts, Foxes Lungs, Goats Livers, Wolves inteſtines, Beavers and Cocks teſticles, Hogs bladders, Harts genitals, Serpents skins; Mans, Hogs, Gooſes, Sheeps, Ducks, Badgers, Conies, Goats, Snakes, and Land-Snakes fat; Harts, Calves, and Goats marrow; Mans, Stock-Doves, and Goats blood; all Milk, and all that comes of it, as Whey, Cheeſe, and Butter; Hens, Partridges, and Ants eggs; Honey, Wax, Propolis; Harts, Does, and Unicorns horns; Elkes, Oxes, and Goats Cleyes; Oyſters, Margarites, and many fiſhes ſhells.

And ſeeing excrements have their Medicinal vertues, Pharmacopoliſts muſt alſo have them in keeping; as Goats, Dogs, Storks, Peacocks, and Stock-Doves dung; Sheeps greaſe, Silk, Musk, Civet, and the hairs of ſome Animals.

And that I may briefly complect all, all the ſimple Medicaments we have deſcribed in our three Books of Medicinal matter, are neceſſary for a Pharmacopoliſt.

Chap. 35.

Of Compound Medicaments, to be kept in Pharmacopolies.

WHen the Pharmaceutrical Art was not yet reducted to an Art, nor any Medicaments, ſave a few, deſcribed or digeſted into order; then, what compounds ſhould be retained, and what rejected, was not determinable.

Nicolaus Præpoſitus indeed deſcribed many Medicaments; ſome whereof he himſelf diſapproves of, others he tranſcribed not faithfully, and others he depraved, by changing ſomething in them: ſo that from his writings, we cannot conjecture what to keep, or what not.

Nic.

Nic. Alexandrinus heaps up such a mole of Medicaments, that they would rather puzzle, then help an Apothecary.

Actuarius also, *Ætius*, and *Oribasius*, describe many; which consisting of unknown, and rare Simples, are found either inept, or neglected, as indued with no eximious qualities.

Amongst the latter Writers, *Ferneleus*, *Sylvius*, and *Rondeletius*, have diligently examined the Medicaments invented by the Ancients, and have rejected some as inconcinnate, others they have proved, illustrated, and commended, as invented by riper Judgements, and indued with Nobler faculties.

I have diligently selected the most excellent from learned men, and the most approved from old and expert men; and of them extracted my Pharmaceutrical shop, or Antidotary, orderly composed into six books; wherein all the approved troop of Alterative, Purgative, and Roborative Medicaments, are described; which being used either by intrinsecal assumption, or extrinsecal adhibition, I have exhibited those to be introsumed, if Alteratives, in form either of syrupes, or sapes, or conserves, or eclegms; if Purgatives, either in the form of a liquid Electuary, or a solid one, or Trochisks, or Pills; if Roboratives, either in form of a powder, or an opiate confection, or of Pastils: those to be extraneously adhibited, either in form of an Oyl, or an Unguent, or a salve.

All which receipts and forms of Medicaments we have exhibited in distinct Books and Chapters, described in a good method; wherein all the Medicaments are contained, wherewith Pharmacopolies should be furnished and guarded. He shall require no more, neither can he be well furnished with fewer, who desires well to cure the several affections of mans body.

THE

The Apothecaries Shop,

OR,

ANTIDOTARY.

THE FIRST BOOK.

Of Alterative and Preparative Medicaments,

Distinguished into eight SECTIONS.

The first whereof describes onely Syrupes selected and approved by long use.

THE PREFACE.

HOw necessary a Method is in delivering of Disciplines, I think is well known to any moderately-learned man: For without a method, there is no certain rule, neither for Learner or Teacher to walk by: but with this, Arts are more firmly established, their Theorems more optably read, and easily learned. Yet you shall scarce finde two, who in writing Antidotaries, have kept in one rode, or disposed their Compounds in one order. Some preposterously propose Nic. Præpositus *for their example; who himself imitating one* Nic. Alexandrinus, *out of whose Works he excerpted those his Works, he calls* [Joan. Agricol. Ammonius, *and* M. Tatius Alpin.] *went on Alphabetically, treating first of those Medicaments which begun with the letter* (A) *then with the letter* (B) *and so he spoke promiscuously of the Antidotes* Acetum Scylliticum *and* Amylum. Sylvius, Fernelius, *and* Joubertus, *of the later Writers, have assayed by certain Laws and Rules, to establish an orderly and duly-disposed method; yet they much dissent among themselves; and what one of them approves, another disapproves: yet all think that order is best, which curation prescribes: for a series of words onely demonstrate.*

We have observed this method in our Shop, wherein are contained all Medicaments, for the expugnation of all diseases; not confusedly described, but such as must be introsumed, are digested in the former part of the Antidotary,

tidotary, such as must be extrinsecally adhibited in the latter part thereof. The first part is distributed into three Books; the first whereof treats of Alterative and Preparative Medicaments; the second of Purgatives; and the third of Cordials, or Roboratives. Each Book is distermináted into many Sections, and they subdivided into many Chapters; the first whereof treats of Syrupes; and first of such as are made of the first and Spring-flowers, as Syrupe of Violets, Syrupe of Coltsfoot, and of the flowers of Peach-trees.

Chap. I.

Syrupus Violarum; or Syrupe of Violets.

℞ *of Violet flowers fresh, and picked* 2 ℔. *Infuse them eight houres in* 5 *pints of hot scalding water, in a close* * *pot well glazed: afterwards press them out; and the same Infusion made hot again, adde to it the same quantity as before of fresh Violets, Infusing them* 8 *hours more, and so five times repeated: adde to the Colature* 10 ℔. ℥ x. *of Loaf-sugar, and so make it into a Syrupe.*

* An Infusion-pot. The Author appoints an equal quantity of sugar to the infusion.

The Commentary.

Nature alone confects no Syrups, but they acquire their mixtion, coction, and consistence, by Art: yet that which is made of Violets, Water, and Sugar onely, is called a simple Syrupe, in reference to the more compound; which besides these, admit of the seeds of Quinces, Mallowes, Jujubs, Sebesten, and the water of Gourds; whose Authour they make *Mesue*: but, that I know of, I never found it thus confected in him. That which we call the Simple Syrupe is made in every Pharmacopoly, but not alike simply confected: for it is sometimes made of the succe of Violets and Sugar, sometimes of the same, infused and expressed twice, thrice or oftener; for many infuse and macerate new Violets seven times, others eight, and some nine. But *Fernelius* thinks that so oft iterated infusion is needless: They in vain (saith he) reiterate the maceration of Violets nine times, for Syrupe of Violets; seeing after the third or fourth infusion, the Syrupe will be as efficacious as after more: But I think that better which is confected by many infusions.

Some put the expressed succe of Violets, others the conserve of Violets, in this syrupe, incrassated by coction, to make it more Violaceous: others make it of pure succe of Violets, and white sugar; others coct their sugar first, to the consistence of an Electuary, and afterwards, with the said succe of Violets, into the crassitude of a syrupe.

Many put a difference betwixt the syrupe of Violets, and the Violaceous syrupe; calling that the syrupe of Violets, which is made of purged

purged flowers, and that violaceous, which is made of integral and not purged ones: and this indeed hath leſs of Violets faculties in it, but it is more ſolutive; for the herbaceous part is emollitive, as well as its leaves: ſome put onely four pounds of ſugar to five of ſucce, and coct it into the conſiſtence of a ſyrupe.

Syrupe of Violets breaks the acrimony of Choler, tempers the heat of the bowels, ſubduces the belly, and conduces to the vices of the breaſt. It is a ſpecial auxiliatory in pectoral and lateral inflammations, and againſt the roughneſs of the *Aſpera arteria*: and is very good againſt the heat of Fevers, cholerick and acute diſeaſes, the ardour of the intrails, and will quench thirſt. *Qualitates.*

Chap. 2.

Syrupus Tuſilaginis; *or*, *Syrupe of Coltsfoot.*

℞ *of Coltsfoot freſh m.vj. Maiden-hair m.ij. Hyſſop m.j. Liquorice ℥ ij. boyl them in four pintes of water, till the fourth part be conſumed: let the Colature be clarified, and adde thereunto of the fineſt ſugar ℔ ij. boyl it up to a Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

This ſyrupe is denominated from Tuſſilage, as from its baſis, which ingredes it in greater quantity: Its author is uncertain, and thence its preparation various. But we have exhibited the beſt deſcription, appointing the four preſcribed ſimples, to be cocted in four pounds of water, but lightly.

Thoſe that make this ſyrupe in the beginning of the ſpring, take only the flowers of Tuſſilage; thoſe that make it in ſummer, adde as much of the green leaves, as they take of its green flowers. Some make it in the middle of ſummer, onely of the ſucce of its leaves depurated, and ſugar: it may be very well made of the decoction of the flowers and ſugar, and be called ſimple ſyrupe, in reference to the former more compound, which admits of the true Maidens-hair; in ſtead whereof, Polytrichum may be ſubſtituted.

It helps ſhortneſs and difficulty of breathing, the aſperity of the windpipe; it cocts, moves, and expectorates ſpittle: but it muſt be licked like an Eclegm, that it may ſtick longer in the Oſophage, and reach the amplitude of the aſper artery.

Chap. 3.

Syrupus florum Persicorum; Or, Syrupe of the flowers of Peaches Tree.

℞ *of Peach flowers fresh* ℔ *j.*
Infuse them in three pintes of warme Water, for xij hours; afterwards Boyl them a little, and expresse them; and let the like quantity of flowers be again infused in the same Colature, and this repeated five times; and to the Colature adde ℔ *iij. of Sugar, which Boyl into a Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

This syrupe is either made of the fruits, or the flowers of the Peach-tree: that which is made of its fruits is seldom in use, as *Christophorus, Mesues* commentator, confesses; and it is made in the beginning of Autume, as that of the flowers in the beginning of the Spring. Three things require that this syrupe be made of fewer infusions; to wit, the loss, penury and amaritude of the flowers: the loss of the flowers, which can be regained by no Art; for the flowers being evelled, new ones grow not again that year, and the tree remains fruitless: the Penury of them; for this tree is sative onely, and without culture bears no fruit: their Amaritude, which will be more intolerable, by how much the infusions are more.

Vires. This syrupe educes water and choler, kills worms, frees the Mesentery from infarctures; for it opens the passages, incides and educes the humours.

Chap. 4.

Syrupus de Lupulo; Or, Syrupe of Hops.

℞ *of the clarified juyce of Hops* ℔ *iiij. the juyce of Fumatory* ℔ *ij. white sugar* ℔ *vj. Boyl them according to Art, and make it into a Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

All do not describe this syrupe alike: for some make it onely of the succe of Hops and Sugar; others adde the succe of Fumatory; to whose judgment I rather incline, for thus its faculties are bettered: it must not be made, till the season in the Spring be pretty hot; for till then, the Fumatory, whose succe is required, appears not; otherwise it must onely be made of the succe of Hops depurated, and Sugar cocted to legitimate spissitude.

Vires. It allayes the heat of the intrails, attenuates cold and crass humours,

mours, educes hot ones; it conduces to the Jaundies, Leprosie, and all diseases caused by obstructions.

CHAP. 5.

Syrupus Rosarum Pallid: or, Syrupe of Damask Roses.

℞ *of Damask Roses fresh,* ℔ *vj. infuse them eight hours in a close vessel in* ℔ *xv. of warm Water; afterwards express the flowers, and let the same quantity be again infused, and this repeated nine times; and to the Colature adde an equal weight of Sugar to the infusion, and so Boyl it into a Syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

Some put not so much sugar to it, but coct it longer, till it grow thick; and then it is more purgative, but less grateful to the palate: many following *Mesues* advice, keep the first, though twice-iterated infusion in a glass well operculated, putting Oyl upon it, and insolating it forty days; and they call this maceration of Roses, not expressed, but infused *Mucharum Rosarum.*

But lest some should judge us unmindeful of our purpose, because promising to treat here onely of Alterative and Preparative Medicaments, we have adjoyned syrupe of Roses, which is absolutely Purgative; we Answer, that we describe the most usual syrupes, in the same order that the season of the year gives them; not remitting the Purgative, which are very few, till we treat of such Medicaments: besides, these that do purge, they do it so ignavely, that they are rather Preparatives then Purgatives.

It is alterative and Hydragogous; for it tempers hotter humours, *Vires.* educes watry ones from very remote parts: if it be taken in great quantity, when it is new made, it is more Purgative; when older, less: it may safely be given to old men and children.

CHAP. 6.

Syrupe of Hispidula, or Ælurope, vulgarly called Cats-foot.

℞ *of the tops of the flowers of Cats-foot* ℔ *j. infuse them a whole night and day in warm water* ℔ *v. afterwards Boyl them gently upon a small fire, till* ℔ *iiij. of the Colature remains; to which adde Sugar* ℔ *iij. and so boyl it into a Syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

It is sure enough, that this syrupe hath been but of late use; for they of our age invented it; and, being imboldened by much ex-

experience, approved of it. *Joannes Gonerius*, a Parisian Apothecary, and perite Medick, first made it at *Paris*; who seeing the Plant whereof it was made, coming from the *Turenian* fields, sought and found great plenty of it in fields near *Paris*, and of them he made his syrupe annually, not borrowing elswhere. It is variously called, to wit, *Hispudula*, *Guaphilium*, *Coronario*, *Ælurope*, or *Cats-foot*; and improperly *Harts-foot*.

This syrupe is multifariously made; and yet none hath hitherto published its confections: some onely take the summities of the Plant, or its Down, and macerate them in water; others take its flowers and leaves; to whom I easily assent: for thus it becomes more astrictive, and more convenient to stay fluxes; others adde to its decoction, Liquorice, Jujubs, Raisins, Barley, and other bechical matters. But this description we have exhibited, is most usual; whereunto, if we adde half a pound of rosaceous sugar, its quality will be more bechical and cordial, and its sapour more gracious.

The manner of its preparation is so easie, that it needs no further dilucidation, then that which is in its perspicuous description: if no Plant but the dry one can be got, then its quantity must be less, and the waters greater.

Vires. This syrupe is eximious against many affections of the Lungs: for, Ælurope or Hispudula, being a vulnerary Plant, and astrictive, it doth not onely cure wounds, and hinder Ulcers, but heal many other vices. It is most convenient for such as have fluxes descending into their breast, or have their Lungs infarciated with much pituitous humours: for it cohibits the violence of the falling humour, coets the flux, roborates the part affected, and moves expectoration.

Chap. 7.

Syrupus Papaveris simp. or, The Simple Syrupe of Poppy. Mes.

℞ *of the heads of white and black Poppy, of each* ℥ *xij. ſs. macerate them a whole day in* ℔ *iiij. of Rain-water; and to* ℔ *j. of the Colature, adde Sugar and Penidees, of each* ℥ *vj. or* ℔ *ſs. and ſo boyl them into the conſiſtency of a Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

Mesue calls this syrupe Simple, in reference to the more compound, whose confection hath many lenitives; as the seeds of Lettice, Mallows, Quinces, Jujubs; Maidens-hair also and Liquorice ingrede: whereunto, if need be, *Fernelius* would have syrupe of Violets, or Jujubs, to make up this simple syrupe: he advises also to adde less of black Poppy, because its use is not safe, and augment the quantity of the white: To which assertion, *Jonbertus* assents against

against *Rondeletius*, and prescribes forty dragms of the black, to eighty of the white.

Vulgar Apothecaries call this Syrupe *Diacodium*, but imperitely; for Diacodium is reposed among the Opiates: yet one may supply the defect of the other, when sleep should be conciliated.

Poppies heads, by *Galens* advice, must be so long cocted after maceration, till they be flaccid and marcid, and not till the third or fourth part of the water be left; for we cannot express their succe, but when they are marcid: and therefore it is in vain to coct them longer. Rain-water is the best; in defect whereof, we may use fountain-water, if it be limpid, insipid, and void of qualities; and therefore the water conducted in leaden pipes, must not be accepted, because there is mud in them: and hence, he that drinks the dregs of such water, will be overtaken with the Dysentery, though in other cases they be wholesome.

The Ancients Diacodium was made in form of an Opiate, and very ungrateful; for it admitted of no sugar, but many insuave, and it is probable, useless things: it is not now made, but in its stead, this syrupe made of the decoction of Poppies heads and sugar, which many call improperly Diacodium.

Syrupe of Poppy conciliates sleep, mitigates the temper of the cholerick humour, and allayes the Cough: it becomes more bechical, by the access of *Penidia*, which the Arabians call *Alphenicum*, because of its whiteness: for it is a most white confection of sugar, so long cocted in the decoction of Barley, till it acquires a ductile consistence, and may be handled, ducted, and formed with ónes hands into Pastils and Rowls intorted like ropes. *Vires.*

CHAP. 8.

Syrupus Papaveris Erratici; or, Syrupe of Red-Poppy.

℞ *of the infusion of Red-Poppies twice or thrice reiterated* ℔ *ij. Sugar* ℔ j. ß. *Sugar of Roses* ℥ *iiij. boyl it into a Syrupe according to Art.*

The COMMENTARY.

Some contend, that this syrupe should be made of more infusions; but two or three are sufficient: for in so poriferous Medicaments, no intenseness of faculties are requisite: moreover, so many infusions will make the colour and sapour of the syrupe more ingrateful. The proportion of water to the sugar, is the same in this, with that in syrupe of Roses.

None of the Ancients spoke of this syrupe of Poppy; but the later age found it good against the Pleurisie, at the beginning thereof: for it is astrictive, roborative, bechical, and hypnotical; it cohibits the humours falling down from the head upon the lungs: and, that it may better effect this, some sugar of Roses must be added:

added: it may be safely given from half an ounce, to an ounce and a half, and to two ounces to the more valid; especially if the Pleurisie be but beginning, or not farre gone: for it will either stay the former flux, or hinder the rising of another.

Chap. 9.

Syrupus Nymphææ; or, Syrupe of Water-Lillies.

℞ *of Water-Lillies* ℔ *ij. infuse them six or seven hours in hot boyling water* ℔ *iij. afterwards boyl them a little; and to the Colature, adde again the same quantity of fresh flowers, and let this be repeated three times; and to the Colature, adde an equal quantity of Sugar, to boyl it up into a Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

Some make this syrupe onely of one infusion; but that is more efficacious, which is confected of two or three: the green, herbaceous, and flave part also of the flower, should be rejected, and onely the white retained. This is simple, in reference to one more compound, described by *Franciscus Pedomontanus*; which is seldome used, because the Simple one is more easie of preparation, and no less efficacious. Moreover, the description of the Compound is by some disallowed of, by some changed; by some the quantity of its ingredients is augmented, by others diminished: its description is well known.

Vires. This syrupe refrigerates much, cohibits venereous dreams, restrains the immoderate flux of the sperm, conciliates sleep, allayes the heat of the bowels, and abates the ardour of Fevers.

Chap. 10.

Syrupus Capil. vener. Com. or, Syrupe of common Maiden-hair.

℞ *of the true Maiden-hair, of the common Maiden-hair, wall-Rue, Spleen-wort, Salvia vita, of each m.j. Liquorice bruised* ʒ *ij. infuse them twelve hours in a sufficient quantity of water; afterwards boyl them gently, till it comes to* ℔ *v. adde to the Colature White Sugar* ℔ *iiij. and so make it into a Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

This is the most usual description of this syrupe; whereunto some adde Raisins and Liquorice, others Jujubs; but none of these please *Fernelius*, who thinks, that the syrupe is made more ignave and weak, by the admistion hereof: but Liquorice may be added; for besides its sweetness, it hath a quality like the capillaries; yet some re-

reject it, because it makes the syrupe more flave: but the quality and vertue must be more looked after, then the colour. The *Parisian* Apothecaries make it accurately, according to the description here given, and it is most eximiously Medicinal: they that do otherwise, mixing but a small quantity of capillaries, and macerating them lightly, make indeed a pellucid syrupe, but both in colour and vertue aqueous, and so defraud the Patient of his expectation, and the Physician of his scope.

This is the most celebrated of Preparative syrupes: for it is very useful to oppugne all affections of the breast, liver, spleen, reins, uterus, and to tenuate and prepare humours; for it tempers and cocts choler, incides phlegme, makes the melancholical humour easie to be expurged, yea often subduces the belly by much use; it moves expectoration, incides and cocts the humours contained in the Lungs, and educes them by a second purge. *Vires.*

CHAP. II.

Syrupus capel. Vener. Monspelie. or, Syrupe of Monspelian Maidens-hair.

℞ *of Maiden-hair fresh and cut m.ij. infuse it twelve hours in a sufficient quantity of water; afterwards boyl it a little; clarifie the Colature, and to ℔ v. thereof, adde ℔ iiij. of Sugar, to boyl it up into a Syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

This syrupe is most frequently and simply compounded in the City *Montpessier*, being onely made of the light decoction of true Maidens-hair clarified, and sugar cocted to the consistence of a syrupe.

For thus it is most grateful, both in colour and sapour; and yet that is more grateful to the palate, which admits of Rose-water; which is adjected by the Court-Apothecaries, that they may by guile, rather then science, gain their Princes and Nobles grace, and get their money by subtilty.

It is of affine qualities, but more imbecile then that which admits of all the Capillaries and Liquorice; for it is more ignave, in inciding and attenuating the humours, and opening the passages: and that is most imbecile, which admits of Rose-water; for its faculty being somewhat astrictive, reluctates with those of the Capillaries. *Vires.*

CHAP. 12.

Syrupus de quinta radicibus; or, Syrupe of the five opening roots.

℞ *of the root of Smallage, Fennel, Parsly, Butchers-broom, Asparagrass*

graſs, of each ℥ iiij. boyl them in a ſufficient quantity of water, till it comes to ℔ iiij. adde thereunto as much Sugar as will make it up into a Syrupe, according to art.

The Commentary.

The roots muſt be firſt cleanſed, then waſhed, cut in pieces; their middle cut out and rejected; then brayed and coćted: ſome would have the coćtion made in eight pounds of water coćted to five; whereunto, when ſtrained and clarified, they adde four pound of Sugar: which manner and proportion I approve of.

Some would have ſome Vinegar added to the decoćtion, that its inciſive faculty may be augmented; but when uſe calls for it, it may be diluted in ſome attenuating, opening, or other fit liquour, as the Medicks ſcope requires.

Some make it onely of two roots, to wit, Petroſeline, and Fennel roots: but ſeeing it is leſs efficacious, and the other roots eaſily attainable, it is better to make it with five roots, and then they ſhall not need that which is made of two: But if one more ſtudious of curioſity then neceſſity, would rather have it of two, let him take of Petroſeline and Fennel-roots each four ounces; coćt them in a ſufficient quantity of water, and adde to two pounds of the colature, two pounds of Sugar, and make a ſyrupe.

Vires. It incides and attenuates craſs and glutinous humours, diduces the paſſages, removes obſtrućtions, expels Urine, moves fluors, ejećts ſand, and emends the fœtid colour of Virgins, and the Jaundies.

Chap. 13.

Syrupus de Althea; or, *Syrupe of Marſhmallows.* Def. Fer.

℞ *of the roots of Marſhmallows ℥ ij. red Licers ℥ j. of the roots of Graſs, Aſparagraſs, Liquorice, Raiſins ſtoned, of each ℥ ſs. the tops of Marſhmallowes, Mallowes, Bellitory, Pimpinel, Plantain, both the Maidenhairs, of each m j. of the four greater and leſſer coole ſeeds, of each ℥ iij. boyl them in ℔ vj. of water, till four remain, and with ℔ iij. of Sugar make it up into a Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

The uſe of this ſyrupe is much celebrated in *Paris*, both for its eximious faculties, and its Authors dignity; to whom poſterity is much engaged, for his illuſtration of the Medicinal Art, and for thoſe many Medicaments wherewith he hath furniſhed Apothecaries ſhops. Syrupe of Althea is moſt uſeful to ſanative Medicks: its preparation is thus; The roots muſt firſt be purged and waſhed, then coćted; afterwards, the Liquorice muſt be coćted, for by long coćtion it grows bitter; then the herbs, and afterwards the ſeeds:

the

be made in water, to the diſſipation of its third part; for longer coction makes the decoction more viſcid: all the Simples whereof it conſiſts, are dilucidly explicated in the firſt Book of Medicinal Matter. Why liquorice muſt not be long boyled.

This ſyrupe expurges craſs and pituitous matters, takes away obſtructions, impels the ſand in the Reins, and abates the heat of Urine. *Qualitates.*

CHAP. 14.

Syrupus de Cichor. comp. cum Rhæo; or, Syrupe of Succory compounded with Rhabarb. Def. Nic. Florent.

℞ *of the roots of Smallage, Fennel, Aſparagraſs, Barley whole, of each* ℥ *ij. The herbs of Succory, Dandilyon, Endive, ſmooth Sowthiſtle, of each* ℥ *ij. both the Lettices, Liverwort, Fumatory, Hops, an. m. j. both the Maiden-hairs, Wall-rue, Ceterach, Liquorice, Winter-cherries, the ſeeds of Dodder, of each* ℥ *vj. Boyl theſe in* ℔ *xij. of water, or a ſufficient quantity, till a third part be conſumed: to the Colature adde* ℔ *vj. of Sugar, which boyl up to a Syrupe; and in the boyling, to every pound of the Syrupe, adde of Rhabarb* ℥ *ß. and Spikenard* ℈ *iiij. tyed up in a rag, and hung in the Syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

Nicolaus Præpoſitus, whom moſt Apothecaries have as preſident, doubles the quantity of Rhabarb preſcribed eight times, and addes four ounces of Rhabarb to every pound of ſyrupe; ſo that for every ounce of ſyrupe, there are four dragms of Rhabarb: and thus it is made all over *Paris*. That it may be exhibited when uſe calls for it without delay, ſome onely quadruplicate or triplicate the quantity. This ſo ample quantity of Rhabarb, diſpleaſes *Fernelius*, *Joubertus*, and others, as being of no utility, but much loſs; who think that it were more profitable, when uſe calls for it, to infuſe ſome Rhabarb in a convenient decoction, and mix it with the ſyrupe, becauſe its purgative faculty periſhes by coction and aſſervation. Yet they act prudently, that make it with eight times as much Rhabarb: though its faculties be more imbecile, yet it hath other qualities thereby bettered.

The ſyrupe of Succory, compounded with Rhabarb, is alliotical, roborative, and purgative: it allayes the heat of the intrails, demulceates the acrimony of choler, opens the veins, takes away obſtructions, roborates the liver, gently purges the ſtomack, and upper region of the body, educes hot and pituitous humours: if it be aſſumed in great quantity, it helps in all bilious diſeaſes, and it may be given ſafely to all ages and ſexes. *Qualitates.*

That which is made without Rhabarb, is called Simple ſyrupe, though it admit of all the deſcribed Simples, except Rhabarb and Spikenard.

But there is one farre more Simple, made onely of the ſucce of Succory depurated, and Sugar cocted to a legitimate ſpiſſitude.

Both of them are good for ſuch as have hot livers, ſtomacks, and fevers; and ſuch as labour under the ardour of bowels and obſtructions.

Chap. 15.

Syrupus de Endivia ſimplex; or, the Simple Syrupe of Endive.

℞ *of the Juyce of Endive clarified* ℔ viij. *of white Sugar* ℔ v. *boyl them into a Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

Some conceive, that this ſyrupe ſhould be made of the ſucce of wilde Succory and Sugar; others will rather have it of Endive, becauſe it is more refrigerative, and not ſo bitter: in other qualities they agree.

But ſeeing Intubus is the genus to all the differences of ſative Succory, as Endive and Broadleaf; The ſyrupe may be made of each ſucce, without diſcrepance, and yet be called the Simple ſyrupe of Endive or Intubus: nay, ſome in a larger acceptation, call it Syrupe of Succory; there being ſo much affinity both in form and faculty, betwixt the ſorts of Succory and Intubus, that each may be uſed for other, without any manifeſt errour.

Vires. It mitigates the ardour of the Liver, extinguiſhes the heat of Fevers, and obtunds Choler.

Chap. 16.

Syrupus de Fumar. ſimpl. or, The Simple Syrupe of Fumatory.

℞ *of the juyce of Fumatory clarified* ℔ *ij. ſſ. Sugar* ℔ *ij. boyl it into a Syrupe, according to Art.*

The Commentary.

There are two deſcriptions of the ſyrupe of Fumatory; the one more compound, conſiſting of more ingredients; the other leſs, conſiſting onely of the ſucce of Fumatory and Sugar: The firſt being hard to make, they often put to young Apprentices at *Paris*, to try their ingeny; and a ſyrupe prepared of thoſe Simples, which are deſcribed in its form, is very inſuave in odour and ſapour, and black of colour: and therefore it cannot be an Alterative Medicament, becauſe ingrateful and ignave; nor yet Purgative, becauſe inefficacious: it is better therefore to keep the Simple ſyrupe in Pharmacopolies. Now that it may be rightly made, the ſucce of

the

the Fumatory must be depurated in the sun; when clarified, mixed with an equal weight of sugar, if the syrupe must be sweet; if not, less: But when the Fumatory's amaritude would be ingrateful, it must be dulcorated with more sugar.

Now Fumatory is a vulgar Plant, whereof there are two sorts; the one Hortensian and bulbous, which is seldome used in Medicine; the other equally growing in cultivated and incultivated fields: of whose succe this syrupe is made.

It frees the Hypochondria from obstructions, mitigates choler, prepares Melancholy succe, and cures such Feavers as arise from the hot distemper of the Liver. *Vires.*

CHAP. 17.

Syrupus de Fumaria major; or, The greater Syrupe of Fumatory. D. Mes.

℞ *Mirobalan. Citreor. Chebul. of each ℥ ij. ß. of the flowers of Bugloss, Borrage, Violets, the leaves of Wormwood, Dodder, of each ℥ j. Liquorice, Rose-leaves, of each ℥ ß. Epithymus, Polypody of the Oak, of each ℥ vij. Prunes a hundred, Raisins stoned ℔ ß. Tamarinds, Pulp Cassia, of each ℥ ij. Boyl them a little in water, from ℔ x. till ℔ iij. remains: to the Colature of which, adde of the Juyce of Fumatory clarified, and white sugar, of each ℔ iij. make it into a syrupe, according to Art.*

The COMMENTARY.

But that I have seen this syrupe in many shops, I should willingly have omitted it: for many will reject it, and think it not worth the description, because of its sapour and colour. Besides, its description prescribes no order for its composition; but it begins sometimes with Mirobolambs, sometimes with Flowers, sometimes with Plants leaves, and sometimes with Roots and Fruits.

But that this composition may be rightly peracted, first, Polypody must be contunded and elixated; whereunto, when moderately cocted, Prunes, Raisins, Wormwood, Epithymum, Binde-weed, Roses, and Liquorice must be added; then all must boyl together, till seven pounds of the water be absumed; onely the flowers must be added a little before. Sugar must be added to the Colature, and all cocted to the consistency of a syrupe: in the cocting, the expressions of Cassia, Tamarinds, and Mirobolambs must be added, and so the syrupe, besides its other faculties, will be Purgative.

It gently subduces the belly, opens the passages, removes obstructions, takes away all affections and vices of the skin, arising from salt or adust humours. *Vires.*

CHAP.

Chap. 4.

Syrupus Bugloſſi; Or, Syrupe of Bugloſs.

℞ *of the Juyce of Bugloſs clarified* ℔ *vj. of the flowers of the ſame* ℔ *j. boyl them a little; and to the Colature ad* ℔ *iiij. of ſugar, boyl it up into the conſiſtency of a Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

This ſyrupe being eaſie to make, and of eximious faculties, may not be omitted. That it may be duly made, the brayed Bugloſs muſt lie in a moiſt and cold place a whole night, or a day; then it muſt be calified and expreſſed; for its ſucce being viſcid, will not otherwiſe be eaſily educed: when it is expreſſed, it muſt ſtand, to ſubſide. Some contund the flowers of Bugloſs, and coct them a little in that ſucce, when clarified; others coct them in water, and affund the colature with ſugar upon the ſucce: all which they coct to the conſiſtence of a ſyrupe. Some take onely the leaves, others the roots of Bugloſs; but I hold the whole Bugloſs more convenient.

Syrupe of Borrages ſucce, is made after the ſame manner, and works the ſame effects; ſo that he that hath the one, needs not the other.

Vires. It is good for ſuch as are marcid with long grief and ſadneſs, labour under the Hypochondriacal melancholy, or ſplenatick affections.

Chap. 19.

Syrupus de ſucco Acetoſæ; or, Syrupe of the Juyce of Sorrel. D. Meſ.

℞ *of the Juyce of Sorrel depurated in the ſun* ℔ *iij. white ſugar* ℔ *ij. Boyl them together, and make it up into a ſyrupe.*

The Commentary.

This is the moſt Simple of ſyrupes; ſome make it after the ſame manner with the former; others coct ſugar to the conſiſtence of a ſolid Electuary, whereunto they afterwards adde the depurated and percolated ſucce; then ferveſie the mixture, till it attain the conſiſtence of a ſyrupe. But more frequently, they coct, purge, and percolate the ſucce, and mix it with clarified ſugar, which they coct to a ſyrupe; but then its faculties are more imbecile.

Vires. This ſyrupe, according to *Meſue* its Authour, abates bilious and peſtilent fevers, extinguiſhes the flammeous ardour of the heart and ventricles, and contemperates the æſtuating bowels.

Chap.

Chap. 20.

Syrupus Acetatus simplex; or, *The simple of Syrupe of Vinegar, or Oxysacharum.* D. Mes.

℞ *of the purest Sugar* ℔ v. *Fountain-water* ℔ *iiij. boyl them together, till half the water be consumed; then adde white-wine Vinegar* ℔ *ij. or* 3 *or* 4 ℔. *according to the acidity required, and so boyl it up into the consistency of a Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

Though this syrupe may be made at any time, yet we subjoyn it to the former, because they have much affinity betwixt their faculties: it is called Oxysacharum, for the Vinegar and Sugar whereof it consists. That it may be rightly made, *Mesue* would have it cocted in Earthen, Tinne, or a Stone-vessel; not Brass or Copper, as some do: some would have distilled Vinegar; but its quality being very sharp, it hurts the ventricle and nerves: the common Vinegar is better, and more accommodate, whose various proportions the Authour may prescribe, as the Medick would have it sharper, or less sharp.

Qualitates. It refrigerates hot humours, incides crass and viscid ones, attenuates and prepares them for expulsion; it arceates putretude, quenches thirst, and allayes the inflammation of the bowels.

Myrepsus exhibits another simple syrupe of Vinegar, whose use I approve of; and it is thus described:

℞ *Vinegar* ʒ *iiij. Juyce of Pomegranates* ʒ *viij. sugar* ℔ *j. boyl it up to a fit consistency.*

It is made as the former; and both of them are called Simple syrupes, in distinction to another more compound, whose description *Nic. Præpositus* gives: But seeing it is of rare or no use, we shall omit it.

Vires. This incides crass humours, moves and impels them, if inherent; allays calid humours, refrigerates the heat of the ventricle and liver, and emends the corruption of the humours: or any syrupe of Vinegar kills worms, whether in the Intestines or in the Veins; as I saw in one of *Paris*, in whose basilical Vein was a worm of a palms length.

Chap. 21.

Syrupus de Byzant. simp. & comp. or, The Syrupe of Dynari, or the Byzantian.

Syrupe both Simple and Compound.

℞ *of the Juyce of Endive, Smallage, of each* ℔ *ij. Hops, Bugloss, Borrage, of each* ℔ *j. boyl them a little, and clarifie them; and to* ℔ *iiij. of the Colature, adde* ℔ *ij.* ß. *of sugar, to make it up into a Syrupe.*

The Compound you may thus confect:

℞ *of the aforesaid Juyces rightly clarified* ℔ *iiij. in which boyl Roseleaves* ʒ *ij. Liquorice* ʒ ß. *the seeds of Annis, Fennel, and Smallage, of each* ʒ *iij. spikenard* ʒ *iij. strain it, and adde Vinegar* ℔ *ij. the whitest sugar* ℔ *ij.* ß. *or* ℔ *iij. boyl them according to Art, to the consistency of a Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

Both the syrupes are usually made; but he may omit the Simple one, that makes the Compound; as also the Compound syrupe of Vinegar, for it will supply the want of both. The Arabians call it *Dynari*, because it purges the Ureters; not from *Denarium*, a piece of Money, as some think: neither can I credit *Bern: Dessennius*, who saith, That this Name was invented by an inept and covetous fellow, who by *Dynari* portended some sum of Money.

It is called the Byzantian syrupe, from *Byzantium*, or *Constantinople*, where it is very frequent, or was invented; or else because *Mesue* had its description from some *Byzantian* Medick.

Vires. This syrupe opens, incides, and attenuates: it frees the Liver from obstructions, as also the Spleen and Mesentery: it helps the Jaundies, moves fluors, and cures Fevers, which arise from viscid humours.

Chap. 22.

Syrupus de Moris comp. or, The compounded Syrupe of Mulberries.

℞ *of the Juyce of Mulberries not altogether ripe* ℔ ß. *of the Juyce of red Black-*berries, honey despumed, of each* ℔ *j.* ∴ *sapa* ʒ *iiij.* ß. *boyl these according to Art, to the consistency of a syrupe.*

* Before they be ripe.
∴ Wine boyled to a good consistence.

The Commentary.

As instead of Diacodium, which was made in form of an Opiate, we use now the simple syrupe of Poppies: so in stead of Dia-

morum,

morum, the ſyrupe of Mulberries; to whoſe confection, ſome now adde the ſucce of Raſsberries, and of Straw-berries, thus confecting it of three kindes of Berries; others leave both out, and ſape alſo: the ſucces muſt be cocted with honey, to the conſiſtence of a ſyrupe, which is more dilute then Diamorum, or Rob of Mulberries, which is now ſeldome made, moſt uſing this compound ſyrupe in its ſtead.

The ſimple ſyrupe of Mulberries alſo is very good, which is made of their ſucce and ſugar; whereunto, if you adde a little Roſe-water, it will be more grateful, and efficacious in roborating, and ſtaying fluxes.

The compound ſyrupe cures the eroding Ulcers of the mouth, the affections of the teeth and gums, the relaxation of the uvula or fleſh in the orifice of the throat, and all vices of the mouth. It may be taken alone out of a ſpoon, or diluted in ſome convenient decoction, in form of a Gargariſm. *Vires.*

CHAP. 23.

Syrupus Ribes & Berberis; or, Syrupe of Red-Currans or Berberries.

℞ *of the Juyce of Red-Currans or Berberries* ℔ *iiij. ſugar* ℔ *ij. ſſ. boyl them according to Art, to the conſiſtence of a Syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

The vulgar French call this *Groſſula rubra*, and Moors *Riben*, and the ſhop-men *Ribes*: they are ſmall, round, red fruits, racemouſly coherent, pregnant with much ſucce and ſmall ſtones, which tunded and preſſed, emit a ſucce; which, after clarification and colation, muſt be mixed with ſugar: but the ſugar muſt be added in leſs quantity to this, then other cold ſucces; becauſe this ſucce will keep long without corruption; and becauſe, by too much ſugar, its pergrateful acidity will be obtunded, and the ſyrupe weakened.

Berberries ſucce muſt alſo be ſo extracted, and ſo cocted with ſugar into a ſyrupe. Berberries is a word deduced from *Avicenna*'s Amyrberis, which *Dodoneus* makes Oxyacantha.

Syrupe of Ribes or Berberries, ſtayes bilious vomiting, cures hot Fevers, and Heart-aches, quenches thirſt, and cohibits the immoderate Belly-flux. *Vires.*

CHAP. 24.

Syr. de Agreſta, ſeu de Omphacio; or, The Syrupe of ſowre Grapes.

℞ *of the Juyce of ſowre Grapes depurated by reſidence* ℔ *v. white ſugar* ℔ *iij. boyl them together to a Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

Mesue makes it as the syrupe of the succe of Citrons; therefore he confects it of Omphacium and a Julep, which is of water and sugar, in a Tinne or Potters-vessel, not in a brasen or copper one: the Omphacium must first be cocted to the thirds, then the sugar must be added, which must first be cocted in thrice as much water, and clarified; then the mixture must be fervefied into the consistence of a syrupe. Some (saith *Mesue*) adde Cloves; but they are better left out. Their custome is commendable, who first coct sugar to the consistence of an Electuary: whereunto, they then adde the succe, and coct them lightly into a syrupe; whereinto, they inject the succe of immature Grapes, that it may be more acid.

Vires. This syrupe benefits the heart, stayes vomitings, and the bilious flux of the Belly; quenches thirst, allayes the heat of the Bowels, recreates the stomack loaden with hot humours, cures bilious Fevers, and is good against poysons. *Mesue.*

Chap. 25.

Syrupus Limonum & Granat. or, Syrupe of Lemmons and Pomegranates.

℞ *the Juyce of Lemmons or Pomegranates, depurated in the sun, and trajected thorow a woollen strainer* ℔ *v. white sugar* ℔ *iij. boyl them gently to the consistency of a syrupe.*

The Commentary.

These two Syrupes are joyntly described, because their Preparations are one, the proportion of sugar to their succes the same, and their faculties similar and affine. Some coct the sugar to the consistence of a solid Electuary: whereupon, they affund their limpid succe, agitate it with a Spatula, and by gentle coction reduce it to a Syrupe. And this preparation is good: for thus the faculty of the succes is not obtunded by the fire, but preserved whole and entire: others elixate the succes to the consumption of their third part, and thereupon affund a simple Julep, and coct them into a Syrupe.

Some take the succes, and dilute them in twice as much sugar, and withall calisie them together, that they may better become a Syrupe: and the Syrupe thus confected, will keep best, and hath a very idoneous consistence. So the succes be acid enough, it may also be made by insolation, without fire, by the addition of more sugar: But the method prescribed, is the easiest, shortest, and best way of making it, and most in use.

Syrupe of Oranges, and many other fruits, may also be thus confected.

The

The syrupe of Lemmons asswages continual, pestilent, and contagious Fevers, and all diseases accompanied with great ardour: it emends also the corruption of humours, heart-ach, and other heart-affections. The syrupe of Pomegranates also recreates the heart, arceates putretude, cures the diseases and vomitings of choler, and stayes Belly-fluxes. *Vires.*

CHAP. 26.

Syrupus Citoniorum simplex; or, The simple Syrupe of Quinces.

℞ *of the Juyce of Quinces* ℔ x. *boyl it, till half be consumed; let it stand two dayes to settle; afterwards strain it, and adde to it sugar* ℔ *iij. boyl it up into a syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

The manner of confecting this syrupe, is various; for some adde Wine, others Vinegar, others both, and many, Aromata's; and so make it a compound syrupe.

Some would have it more simple, and make it without cocture, purging its succe by residence and insolation; then having clarified it with sugar, percolate and coct it: some dilute the sugar in water, and coct it well, and then adject the succe, and elixate them a little into a syrupe; others make it otherwise: but the description we have given, is most usual, easie, and best.

This syrupe roborates the ventricle, stayes vomiting, represses belly-fluxes, helps such as labour under the Dysentery, Cholick, bloody-flux, immoderate flux of fluors, or Hæmorrhoids, and stayes distillations falling from the head, to the breast and inferiour parts. *Vires.*

CHAP. 27.

Syrupus de Pomis simplex; or, the simple Syrupe of Apples.

℞ *of the Juyce of sweet-Apples, the Juyce of sower-Apples, of each* ℔ *v. boyl them till half be consumed; then let it stand that it may settle; afterwards strain it, and with* ℔ *iij. of sugar, make it into a syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

Some to the confection of this syrupe, select the succe of Redolent, others of Russetins; to whom I willingly assent: though *Rondeletius* refragate, who disproves the succe of Russetins upon very infirm grounds, because their flesh is hard: the succe of those they call Apples of Paradise, is also very laudable.

Some immerge silk newly tincted with scarlet in the succe, either before, or after depuration, till it be red, and receive the vertue of

the tincture, and so become more excellent; others put Orange-juyce to it: but the description tradited is best, according to *Mesue*.

Such Apples must be selected, as are not onely fragrant with their suavity, to recreate the heart; but also subacid, to exhilarate the parts appertaining to the hearts Oeconomy, arceate putretude, and contemperate Melancholical humours.

Vires. This syrupe of Apple-juyce incides and diminishes Melancholical humours, moves sudour, abates the hearts palpitation, helps its trembling and debility; and, according to *Mesue*, prohibits swounding: so that it is of perpetual use.

Chap. 28.

Syrupus Regis Saboris; *or, King* Sabor's *syrupe.* D.Mes.

℞ *of the Juyce of sweet-smelling Apples* ℔ *iij. the clarified Juyce of Bugloss and Borage, of each* ℔ *ij. the Leaves of Senna picked from its stalks* ʒ *iiij. Amseed,* ʒ *ß. Saffron* ʒ *ij. sugar* ℔ *iiij. boyl these according to Art, to the consistency of a syrupe.*

Let the Saffron be hung in a Nodule whilest the syrupe is a boyling.

The Commentary.

No Pharmacopoly should be without this eximious syrupe; to whose confection, Senny must first be a little brayed, then macerated a whole natural day, with Anise, in the succes described; afterwards, once or twice fervefied and strained: the expression strained and clarified, must be cocted into a syrupe: Saffron bound in a linen cloth may be cocted in it: it took its name from *Sabor* King of the *Medes*; for the conservation of whose sanity, it was invented and instituted.

Vires. It recreates the vital spirits, exhilarates the mind, contemperates and purges melancholick humours, attenuates crass and viscid humours, discusses flatuosity, gently subduces the belly, and purifies the blood.

Chap. 29.

Syrupus Myrtinus, comp. or, the compound Syrupe of Myrtle.

℞ *of the berries of the Myrtle-tree* ʒ *ij. ß. white Sanders,* * *red Sumach, Pomgranate flowers, Berberies, red Roses, of each* ʒ *j. ß. Medlars* ℔ *ß. let these be bruised, and boyled in* ℔ *viij. of water, till it come to* ℔ *iiij. adde thereunto of the Juyce of Quinces and Pomgranates, of each* ℔ *ij. Sugar* ℔ *v. boyl it to a syrupe.*

*Rhois Culinariæ.

The Commentary.

This syrupe holds its old composition, wherein many astrictives are

are mixed together, to supply the defect of Myrtle-berries, which are very rare; whereof, if there were any plenty, it were better to make the syrupe onely of their succe, and Sugar. *Valerius Cordus* mixes it with the succe of wild Apples; *Fernelius*, of acid Pomegranates; which I like not.

It roborates the ventricle and bowels, abates the antiquate belly-flux, prohibits the eruption of blood, and the deflux of all humours from the head to the inferiour parts. *Vires.*

CHAP. 30.

Syrupus Menthæ simp. & comp. or, the simple and compound Syrupe of Mint. D.Mes.

℞ *of the Juyces of Mint clarified, sweet Pomegranates and sowre, of each* ℔ *j. Sugar and Honey, as much as will make it into a syrupe.*

The Compound is thus made.

℞ *of the Juyces of sweet and dulcoacid Quinces, of acid and dulcoacid Pomegranates, of each* ℔ *j. ß. macerate in these for 24 hours dried Muzorum. Mint* ℔ *j. ß. red Roses* ℥ *ij. boyl them till half be consumed: to the Acido-dul- Colature adde* ℔ *ij. of sugar, and in the boyling hang in a rag* ℥ *ij. of cium. Gallia Moschata.*

The COMMENTARY.

These syrupes, by the consent of the Author, may be made either with Honey or Sugar: but that is better, and more suave, which admits of Sugar; whereof *Fernelius* addes twice the quantity to the succe: but the more usual way of confecting the compound, admits of onely two pounds of Sugar; as *Mesue* hints, who in his own idiome, calls Dulcoacid and Semi-mature fruits, *Muzæ*, that is, pleasant; for then their sapour arrides the stomack. He that hath the compound, needs not the simple.

But if the Mint be dry, its quantity is greater; for it is enough that one pound ten ounces be cocted in the succes, and as much Sugar added to this Colature; for it will be very insuave, if made as *Mesue* describes it.

It roborates the ventricle, hinders heart-aches, vomiting, sighing and belly-flux: but the more compounded is better. *Vires.*

SECT. II.

Of Syrupes which may be made at any time.

IN the first Section, we described in order such Syrupes as should be confected in the Spring, Summer, and Autumn: for the end of the precedent season, being one with the beginning of the consequent, those Syrupes which are made in the end of the Spring, may as well be made in the beginning of Summer: so that I would not disterminate the former Thirty Syrupes into exact Sections; yet we have given their description in such order, as the collection of the Simples required; placing those first, which are made of the first flowers of the Spring; those last, which are made of fruits in Autumn; and those in the middle, which are made of flowers, roots, succes, and decoctions in Summer: But in this Section, we shall onely exhibit such as are or may be made in Winter, or other seasons.

CHAP. I.

Syr. Rosar. siccar. or, Syrupe of dry Roses. D. Fernel.

**Red Roses.* ℞ *of dryed* Roses* ℔ *j. Infuse them 24 hours in hot boyling water* ℔ *iiij. in the expression, mix of the finest sugar* ℔ *ij. boyl it up to the consistency of a syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

Every one confects this syrupe after his own arbitration; one while augmenting, another while lessening the quantity of Roses; sometimes iterating their maceration twice, and sometimes oftner: But no description can be more exact, then this of *Fernelius*; wherein is observed, a due proportion of Roses to the water, and of both, to sugar: and this syrupe, confected with one maceration, is all out as efficacious as any: but red Roses must be selected, not white or pale ones.

Vires. It stayes the belly-flux, roborates the internal parts, gently deterges and agglutinates Ulcers, asswages vomiting, and cohibits Rheumatism.

CHAP.

CHAP. 2.

Syrupus Reg. sive Alexand. &c. or, The Princely or Alexandrian Syrupe, of old called, The Julep of Roses.

℞ *of Damask Rose-water* ℔ *iij. Loaf-sugar* ℔ *ij. boyl it gently to a Syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

He that considers this syrupe's perspicuity, would, with *Mesue*, call it a Julep; its consistence, a Syrupe; and its suavity, a syrupe for *Alexander*, or some Prince: for, both Kings and delicate persons delight to use it. It is easie to make, and may be made at any time; and no Pharmacopoly can well be without it; though our Ancestors knew not of it, being not of skill to elicite Rhodostagme or Rose-water.

Mesue describes another Julep of Roses, made of their infusion; after which manner, two syrupes may be made; one of pale Roses, which is purgative; and another of dry ones: but neither of them are justly called Juleps.

This syrupe is cordial, bechical, roborative, and alterative; helping the breast, liver, ventricle, thirst, and all ardour. *Vires.*

CHAP. 3.

Syrupus de Absinthio; or, Syrupe of Wormwood. D. Mes.

℞ *of dryed Roman Wormwood* ℔ *ß. Roses* ℥ *ij. Spikenard* ʒ *iij. old white-wine, Juyce of Quinces, of each* ℔ *ij. ß. macerate them a whole day upon hot embers; afterwards boyl them, till half be consumed: and to the Colature, adde clarified honey* ℔ *ij. to make it into a Syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

Dry Pontian or Roman Wormwood, must be taken, and minutely incided, that it may be infunded with Roses and Spikenard in generous Wine, as Muskadine, or the like, in an Earthen vessel leaded, 24 hours, upon the hot ashes; that done, they must be fervefied once or twice; afterwards, honey, or rather sugar, must be added: some make two sorts; one, of honey and vulgar wormwood; the other, of sugar and lesser wormwood.

Some make this syrupe of one half pound of green wormwood, in three pounds of water cocted to the third; adding to the colature, clear, generous, and ancient white-wine, and the best white honey, of each one pound, and coct them to the consistence of

a syrupe. Which-ever of these wayes it is made, it is very ingrateful; and thence many rightly diminish the quantity of the wormwood, and augment the sugar: for those things that would roborate the ventricle, if ingrateful, subvert it.

Vires. This syrupe roborates the stomack, helps concoction, excites appetite, discusses flatuosity, opens the veins, and moves urine.

Chap. 4.

Syrupus de Stœchade; or, Syrupe of Stœcados. D. Fernel.

℞ *of the flowers of Stœcados ℥ iiij. Thyme, Calamint, Origanum, of each ℥ j. ß. Sage, Betony, the flowers of Rosemary, of each ℥ j. ß. the seeds of Rue, Piony and Fennel, of each ℥ iij. boyl them in ℔ x. of water till half be consumed: and to the Colature, adde sugar and honey, of each ℔ ij. make it into a syrupe, aromatize it with Cinamon, Ginger, sweet-Cane, of each ℥ ij. tyed up in a linen rag.*

The Commentary.

Mesue gives two descriptions of this syrupe: in both which, he puts Pepper and Bartram; which being hotter, are rejected by *Fernelius*: and he addes certain cephalical Medicaments; to wit, Sage, Betony, Pœony, and Rosemary, that it may acquire the effect the Author intends. This syrupe is cognominated from its Basis, to wit, Stœcados; whereunto the rest are adjoyned, to acquire more cephalical and noble faculties. *Sylvius* permits it to be made with sugar, and not honey, for the more delicate.

Vires. It conduces to many affections of the brain, as *Mesue* attests; to which it would nothing confer, if it were made after his description: for Stœchas, which he puts for its Basis, is more hepatical or splenical, then cephalical: therefore *Fernelius* addes many cephalicals, which make his syrupe conduce to the Epilepsie, Cramp, Trembling, and all cold affections of the brain.

Chap. 5.

Syrupus de Glycyrrhiza; or, Syrupe of Liquorice. D. Mes.

℞ *of Liquorice scraped and bruised ℥ ij. white Maiden-hair ℥ j. dryed Hyssop ℥ ß. macerate them a whole day in ℔ iiij. of rain-water, then boyl them till half be consumed: to the Colature, adde of the best honey, penidees and sugar, of each ℔ ß. Rose-water ℥ vj. and so boyl them into a syrupe.*

The Commentary.

Many do right, in not cocting dry Liquorice long, lest it grow bitter,

bitter, but put it in in the end of the coction; they clarifie the Colature with Penidia, Sugar, and Honey, then coct it to a syrupe, adding thereunto some Rose-water, before it be perfectly cocted; which some disallow of, because the syrupe is confected for purgation, and the Rose-water is astrictive; to whose opinion *Joubertus* subscribing, substitutes the water of the infusion of Roses as less astrictive; but this water is therefore commixed, that the syrupe may thereby participate of an astrictive quality, and assumed in the beginnings of diseases, stay the fluent humours, and coct such as have delabed.

The infusion may be desumed for want of the water, but not as less astrictive.

This syrupe consists not onely of simple, but compound Medicaments; to wit, of Penidees, which are made of Barly, Water and Sugar, cocted in such proportion and Art, that a very solid mass arises thence, so tractable, that it adheres not to ones fingers, but may be drawn into small, long, crass, short or intorted threads, alwayes white: and hence its name is Alphenicum.

It stayes the humours flowing from the brain, cocts such as are fallen, helps the cough, and causes the expectoration of cocted humours. *Vires.*

CHAP. 6.

Syrupus Jujubinar. or, *Syrupe of Jujubees.* D.M.

℞ *of Jujubees n.lx. Violets, the seeds of Mallows, of each ʒ v. Liquorice scraped and bruised, Maiden-hair, Barley, of each ʒ j. the seeds of Quinces, white Poppies, Melons, Lettice, Gumme Thraganth, of each ʒ iij. boyl them in ℔ iiij. of Fountain-water: to the Colature adde of sugar ℔ ij. to bring it into the consistency of a Syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

In confecting this syrupe, the cleansed Barly must first be cocted, then the Jujubs added, then the Liquorice, afterwards Maidens-hair, and the seeds of Melons, Lettice, and Poppy; at length, Violet-flowers; and Tragacanthum in the end, lest by longer coction it become fume.

It should be included with Mallowes and Quinces-seed in a linen cloth, and then cocted with the rest in four or five pounds of water, to the absumption of the third part, and elixated with the said quantity of sugar, into the consistency of a syrupe: the coction should not be to the half, unless the weight of sugar be abated.

It conduces to hoarseness, cough, pleurisy; it cocts, moves and educes spittle, and that of Violets, and is a mean betwixt the syrupe of Poppy; it cohibits all fluxions, and cocts the defluxed humours. *Vires.*

Chap. 7.

Syrupus de Hyſſopo; *or, Syrupe of Hyſſop.* D. Meſ.

℞ *of dryed Hyſſop, the roots of Smallage, Fennel, Liquorice, of each* ℥ *x. Barley* ℥ *ſs. the ſeeds of Mallows and Quinces, Gumme Thraganth, of each* ℥ *iij. Maiden-hair* ℥ *vj. Jujubees, Sebeſtens, of each n.xxx. Raiſins ſtoned* ℥ *j. ſs. dryed Figs, fat Dates, of each n. x. boyl them in a ſufficient quantity of water, to* ℔ *iiij. to the Colature, adde Penidees* ℔ *ij. make it up into a Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

This ſyrupe is cognominated from Hyſſop, its Baſis; in the confection whereof, its Author *Meſue* is ſo far from defining a quantity of water, that he mentions no water at all; but, they ſhould take eight pounds, wherein they ſhould coct the Barly half an hour; then inject the incided roots to be elixated a quarter of an hour; then all the fruits; at length the ſeeds bound in a linen cloth with Tragacanthum, and at laſt pretty dry Hyſſop, true Maidens-hair, or in its ſtead vulgar Maidens-hair: Penidees made without ſtarch muſt be added to the Colature; by coction reducted to three pounds, and clarified: ſome had rather put in ſincere ſugar; others, the water of ſape and ſugar: but it is beſt to confect it according to *Meſue's* deſcription.

The ſame Author deſcribes more preparations of this ſame ſyrupe; but this we have tranſcribed is the moſt uſual and beſt.

Vires. This ſyrupe conduces much to difficulty of breathing, pectoral dolours from a cold cauſe; it takes away obſtructions, moves fluors, and deterges ſand from the reins and bladder.

Chap. 8.

Syrupus de Aretemiſia; *or, Syrupe of Mugwort.* D. Fern.

℞ *the leaves of Mugwort m. ij. the roots of Orris, Enula-campane, Madder, Piony, Lovage, Fennel, of each* ℥ *ſs. the leaves of Peny-royal, Origanum, Calamint, Nep, Balm, Baſil, Carrets, Savin, Marjoran, Hyſſop, Horehound, Germander, Groundpine, St. Johns-wort, Feverfew, and Betony, of each m. j. the ſeeds of Anis, Petroſeline, Fennel, Rue, Gith, of each* ℥ *iij. bruiſe thoſe that are to be bruiſed, and macerate them 24 hours in Hydromel* ℔ *viij. boyl them to* ℔ *v. and with* ℔ *v. of Sugar coct it into a Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

This ſyrupe of Mugwort firſt deſcribed by *Matthæus*, containing

a mass of Medicaments perperously congested, was rightly castigated by *Fernelius*; who substracting such things as were not known, inconvenient and supervacaneous, left onely such as were useful, as *Plantius* well observed: for when it is in vain to adde more, where the thing may be better done by fewer; what need had we of so much cost and time, in seeking and congesting many Simples, when much fewer were better? yet, no cost or pains must be spared, when the sanity of a man lies at the stake; so that the labour be not lost, nor cost frustraneous. A great and solemn composition, whose bonity many ages have found, and experience sufficiently proved, must neither admit of mutation nor mutilation; but such as are described without ground or reason, must be either omitted or castigated. This syrupe is denominated from Mugwort, which is its Basis: its preparation is clear enough in the description.

Yet it may be more Simply, easily, and as efficaciously made, thus:

℞ *of the roots of Rest-harrow Madder, Grass, Butchers-Broom, of each ℥ vj. the seeds of Carret, and Roman-Gith, of each ℥ j. Mugwort m. ij. Savin, Marjoran, Nep, Hyssop, of each m. ß. boyl them in* ℔ *v. of water: to the Colature adde* ℔ *i. ß. of sugar and pliciter.* ℔ *ß. of Honey, to bring it into the consistence of a syrupe.* *Syr. de Artemisia simplex.*

This syrupe potently moves suppressed or staying fluors, and allayes the strangulation and subversion of the Uterus. *Vires.*

CHAP. 9.

Syrupus resumptivus; or, The resumptive Syrupe.

℞ *of the flesh of Snails ℥ iiij. Barley whole ℥ ij. the pulp of Dates ℥ j. Raisins, Liquorce, of each ℥ vj. Sebestens, Jujubees, of each n. xij. Cotton-seed, Melon, Cucumer, and Gourd-seeds, of each ℥ ß. The seeds of Lettice and * Poppy, of each ℥ ij. Coltsfoot, Lungwort, of each m. j. the flowers of Violets and white Lillies, of each ℥ ß. boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water to* ℔ *iiij. of Colature; to which adde* ℔ *ij. of the whitest Sugar, Sugar of Roses, and Diatraganthum frigidum, of each* ℔ *ß. cost it to a Syrupe.* * *White Ungula Cabalinæ.*

The COMMENTARY.

The resumptive syrupes, in a general acception, may be referred to all analepticall and restorative ones; wherein Medicks adhibit Snails flesh, after the example of that, whereof *Joannes Tornamyra* is Authour by assent; though I could neither see it in him, nor any other Antidotariographer in my life: and that which is now made by Medicks, is made after as many different manners, as there are different Shops wherein it is made; yea all the descriptions that I have seen of it, (and they were no few) differ among themselves; some admitting

mitting too many attenuatives; others, too viſcid ingredients; others, uſeleſs ones; and others in ſuch a confuſed form, as if they could ſcarce be prepared as deſcribed.

All of them require nemoral Snails, which yet, if there be any ſuch, are worſe, as Rubetæ amongſt Frogs, becauſe their ſucce is ſharper and more fervid, but leſs nutritive, and apt to reſarciate: therefore I judge the vulgar more wholeſom, which live partly on the water, partly on the land.

And *Rondeletius* ſaid true, that Snails could not alwayes live without water: whence theſe terreſtrial Snails, muſt be ſuch as live in muddy and fenny places, partly on limpid water, and partly on dry land.

But they muſt be duly prepared, before they accede the confection of this ſyrupe; their necks, tails, and members, muſt be firſt abſcinded; their ſhels divided or ſeparated, that all the fleſh may be extracted, which muſt be purged from all filth, cut into pieces, and cocted together with the Simples enumerated; and thoſe in ſuch order, as they that require longer coction, may be ſooner injected; thoſe that require ſhorter, later.

And ſo it were better to coct the ſimples ſeverally from the fleſh, and the fleſh firſt, or laſt, as the Medick will. Sugar and Penidees muſt be added to the Colature.

Vires. It is good for ſuch as reſurge from long diſeaſes, or are marcid, tabid, or conſumed, or labor under ſome prave affection of the lungs.

Chap. 10.

Syrupus exhilarans; or, *The exhilarative Syrupe.*
D. Dom. Laurent.

℞ *of the Juyces of Borrage and Bugloſs* ℔ *j. ß. of the Juyce of ſweet ſmelling Apples* ℔ *j. of the Juyce of Balm* ℥ *ß. of Kermes-berries* ʒ *iij. Saffron* ʒ *ß. Spec. diamarg. frigid.* ʒ *ß. Diambræ* ℈ *iiij. Loaf-ſugar* ℔ *ij. coct it into Syrupe according to Art.*

The Commentary.

Doctor *Laurentius*, the King of *France's* chief Phyſician, gives this deſcription, in a certain learned piece of his, about conſervation of the Sight, Melancholy, Catarrhs, and old Age; and he confeſſes, that his Kinſman *Caſtellanus*, the King of *France's* chief Chirurgeon, was its Author: and it is thus confected:

The grains of Kermes muſt be infuſed a whole night in the depurated ſucces, upon hot aſhes; the ſugar diluted in its ſtrong expreſſion; then all cocted into a ſyrupe; in whoſe middle, a little bundle muſt be ſuſpended, wherein the powders and Saffron are contained: its doſis may be from one ounce to two ounces, in the morning before meat, or at night before ſleep.

It

It is cognominated exhilarative, because it hath an eximious faculty in recreating the heart and vitals, erecting the faculties, abigating sorrow, and tempering the malign quality of melancholy.

This syrupe may be substituted, in stead of that that is made of Kermes, in such parts where the Illex is coccigerous: of which confection we were not unmindful; but being easie to make, we omitted it, and left to such, whom Nature hath inriched with its eximious succe.

There are inumerable more descriptions of syrupes in divers Authors; but some of them being disapproved of, others scarce proved, we will not onerate, or rather inquinate our Antidotary therewith. For the acid syrupe of Manna, the syrupe of sweet Pomegranates, of Persian Apples, of acid Prunes, of Pears, of cleansed Grapes, of Thyme, and many more, which *Mesue* describes, are out of use.

I hear of the syrupes of the greater Centaury, of St. Johns-wort, of Ivy, of Tobacco, of Fennel, and some others, not yet proved by use; of which, if the Famous Colledge at *Paris* approve, I shall approve also. *Myrepsus* his syrupe, the syrupe of Diasireos, the syrupes of Lilly, of Acorus, of Madder, of Penny-royal, of Turbith, of Grapes, of Myrobalambs, and others, which *Jacobus de Manliis*, *Andernacus*, *Wekerus*, and some of the later rank describe, are now wholly neglected.

SECT. III.

Of Syrupes dulcorated with Honey.

THere rest yet some Syrupes, which we shall describe in this Section, that are not dulcorated with Sugar, but with Honey, nor made like the rest of the decoctions of Roots, Leaves, Flowers, Seeds, and Fruits, but onely of limpid and aqueous succes: whereunto, we may well referre that Hydromel, which is called the vinous Hydromel; for in sapour, faculties and consistence, it responds to a Syrupe.

CHAP. I.

Oxymel, seu Acetum mulsum, &c. *Oxymel or sweet Vinegar:* Secanjabin *in Arabick.*

℞ *of the best Honey* ℔ *ij. of Fountain-water* ℔ *iiij. white-wine Vinegar* ℔ j. *boyl them together in a fit vessel, to the consistency of a liquid Syrupe.*

The

The Commentary.

The Honey must first be cocted in water, and despumed; then must the Vinegar be by little and little adjected; then all cocted together, till they acquire the consistence of a liquid syrupe: But the Ancients have not definitely described the quantity of Vinegar; for seeing Honey, according to *Galen*, is hot, and in hot natures turns soon into bile; so much Vinegar must be added, by *Oribasius* his advice, as will correct that bilefying faculty; and so it may be made into Oxymel, convenient and useful for all ages and sexes: for it is as sweet, as acid, and as mean, and should be made variously according to the gust of the assumer, so that it may not hurt: for things very sharp, abrade the intestines, and hinder expectoration; but that which is moderately acrimonious, is very useful to the affections of the breast and lungs; for it educes spittle, and facilitates spiration; for it incides and attenuates crass humours, expurges the bowels without molestation, and attenuates mans meat.

Its preparation then is various, and the proportion of Honey to Vinegar, and of Vinegar to water, is various; for though the aqueous be better to most, yet it agrees not to all.

Oribasius would have twice as much Honey, and four times as much water, as Vinegar; and would have them all cocted to the thirds; which is the same with that that *Mesue* gives: whereunto, *Serapius* assents, though he elsewhere makes them of equal parts; but that is too sowre.

Now the middle betwixt both, may be of one part and a half of Vinegar, to two of the best Honey, which emits not much spume: for all Honey that emits more spume, is not so good, but must be cocted, and despumed longer, and so its greatest part dissipated in coction: for it must be cocted till it effer no more spume.

Thus the quantity of the Vinegar must be augmented and diminished according to the will of the user, to whom it is more convenient as he more desires it, and so it should be made according to every disposition: yet that which is kept in shops, is usually prepared as *Mesue* hath described; and is made more sweet, or more sowre, as the assumer desires it, and the exigency calls for it.

Vires. Oxymel incides, attenuates and prepares crass and viscid humours for expurgation, conduces equally to hot and cold affections, and effects what we have before mentioned.

Chap. 2.

Oxymel Stilliticum; or, Oxymel of Squills.

℞ of *Honey despumed* ℔ *iij. Vinegar of Squills* ℔ *ij. boyl them in an earthen pipkin, to the consistency of a liquid Syrupe.*

The

The COMMENTARY.

The Medick *Marcellus* makes it after another manner, by superadding water. For he takes *of Squils* ℔ *j. Fountain-water* ℔ *iii. boyl them to a pinte and half, and so let it stand a whole day, close covered; afterwards press it out, and to the expression, adde as much Vinegar, with* ℔ *iij. of the best Honey; let it be again gently boyled to a fit consistency.*

Mervardus also, and *Bern. Dissennius*, think it cannot be made without water; to which opinion, some assent, who mix twice as much water with this, as with the Simple Oxymel: But *Sylvius* saith this is needless, seeing the Honey is first cocted and despumed in water, and the Vinegar legitimately prepared with Scilla, and the Acetum is thus made: one pound of the segments of Scilla, trajected on a thread, and dried in a shade, is macerated in eight pounds of white-Wine; the mixture is insolated in either a Glass-vessel, or an earthen one, well glazed, with an angust orifice, by the space of forty days in the hot Sun; then it is strained; and the segments being ejected, and the Liquorice preserved, which was of more use heretofore then now.

There are many and various wayes of making it; but the description we have given is most usual, and agrees with that which *Paulus Ægineta* gives of it.

There are also many wayes of making Oxymel Scilliticum; but *Democrates*, *Julian*, and the rest, make it more compound: but these are neglected, and no where made, therefore omitted by us.

It incides crass humours, takes away obstructions caused by crass humours impacted on the lungs, and cures the Epilepsie, Vertigo, Cephalalgia, and Hemitrania. *Vires.*

CHAP. 3.

Oxymel Compositum; or, Compounded Oxymel.

℞ *of the roots of Smallage, Fennel, Parsly, Butchers-broom, Asparagrass, of each* ℥ *ij. the seeds of Smallage and Fennel, of each* ℥ *j. boyl them all in* ℔ *xij. of water: in the clarified Colature, mix of the best Honey* ℔ *iiij. white-wine Vinegar* ℔ *j. coct it into a liquid Syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

The compounded Oxymel, is made like the simple Oxymel Scilliticum; one simple and usual Vinegar is here substituted in stead of the other. *Præpositus* makes a certain compounded aromatical Oxymel, and another potently diuretical, mixing with the one many Aromata's, with the other Grass-Orris and Radish-roots: but these may be added when use calls for it, and no other compositious Oxymel kept in shops.

The

The quantity of Honey is not determined by Authors, becauſe it is ſometimes to be made more acrimonious, at other times ſweeter. But if we ſhould define the quantity, we would make it in a mean, betwixt acritude and ſweetneſs.

Vires. It incides, attenuates, and abſterges viſcid and pituitous humours; frees the liver, ſpleen, and bowels from obſtructions; expels the ſand of the reins and bladder, and moves urine.

Chap. 4.

Hydromel vinoſum ſimplex; or, Simple vinous Hydromel.

℞ *of the beſt Honey* ℔ x. *pluvial or fluvial water* ℔ lx. *boyl them together, till an egge will ſwim at top; then inſolate it, and preſerve it.*

The Commentary.

If this Receipt like not any one, he may take water, and coct it to the abſumption of its third part, accurately abſterging and abjecting the ſpume: for thus the more diſſipable part of the water being vaniſhed, the remnant will have a conſiſtence like a liquid Syrupe; its ſapour will be ſweet, and the coction fit for conſervation.

Many Medicaments mutuate their baſis and appellations from Honey, as Mulſam, or Mede, Hydromel both aqueous and vinous, Oxymel, and many other Medicinal Honeys; of the ſucces of Plants, as Rhodomel; or Honey of Roſes, Honey of Violets, Mercury, Raiſins, Roſemary, and Anacardium.

Mede conſiſts onely of Water and Honey, mixed in a different proportion; and that is called dilute Mede, that admits but of little Honey, and very much water; For we make Mede, ſaith *Oribaſius*, when we mix much water with Honey, and coct them till they ceaſe to emit ſpume; for then the ſpume muſt be taken off: But the quantity of Honey muſt be augmented for pituious humours, both to alter the peccant humour, and to conciliate a more grateful guſt.

How to make Mede.

Oribaſius was out, when he thought that Mede ſhould be made of Wine and Honey, and Melicraſs of Honey and Water: for they are both one: Though *Meſue* calls Melicraſs, Oxymel, and gives two deſcriptions thereof; the one conſiſts of Wine and Honey; the other, beſides theſe two, admits of many Aromata's; as Cloves, Cinamome, ſweet-Cane, Mace, and the like; which by ſome (he aſſenting thereto) is called a Condite.

Oinomel. But this kinde of Potion, which conſiſts of Wine and Honey, is called Oinomel; it is ſometimes confected of two parts of old Wine, and one of Honey; and ſometimes of five parts of new Wine, and one of Honey: which when cold, is repoſed into Hogs-heads, (*Oribaſius C.25.L.5.Collectorum.*)

Simple and vulgar Hydromel is prepared juſt as Melicratum; ſo that they differ onely in name, not in ſubſtance: yet *Galen* ſaith, Melicratum

licratum or Mede should be made of rain-water, and Hydromel of fountain-water.

Apomeli is made also after the like manner; for according to *Galen*, it may be made of rain or any water, so it be pure, and Honey expressed from the comb; which must be so long cocted together till spume cease to exurge; which must be taken off, as soon as it emerges; for so it will depose its acrimony. The Ancients called it syrupe of Honey-combs.

Philagrius gives a better description, to a better Apomelie, thus: Let some Combs, full of the best Honey, be strongly pressed betwixt ones hands; and let a portion of the honey expressed, be injected into four times as much pure water, and let the Honey-Combs be also immerged and washed in the water, that they may depose all their Honey; then let the water be strained, then cocted over a luculent fire, and well despumed; let it then be taken off, and frigefie, and let what-ever swims upon, be abjected; then boyl it again, and despume it; which iterate thrice: and when it is at last frigefied and purged from its excrements, inject this Apomeli into an Earthen or Wooden Vessel.

Aqueous Hydromel is scarce ever preserved in shops, but presently made, when use calls for it; but the vinous is often confected by the Medicks advice, and kept in Citizens houses, as some Nectar, more precious then Malmsey: for it potently cocts frigid humours, moves expectoration, roborates the stomack, hinders crudities, helps concoction, moves appetite, discusses flatuosity, mitigates cholical dolours, moves urine, and very much profits cold constitutions.

The English were wont to make a more compositious vinous Hydromel, which they called Metegla; which received less of Honey, but more Aromata and Leaven: which is thus confected. *Metegla.*

℞ *of the best and most refined Honey* ℔ x. *of the cleerest spring-water* ℔ lx. *boyl them together, till a third part be consumed, casting away the spume as it rises; and when it begins to grow cold, put it into a convenient vessel: in which hang a nodule of Leaven* ʒ iij. *adding Cinamon, Grains, Pepper, Ginger, Cloves bruised, of each* ʒ j. *set it in a place where the sun may* * *come, then preserve it in a Wine-Cellar for future use.* *Metheaglen*

* For 40 days.

This kind of potion is most pleasent; it will often keep two years in sapour and faculties: it responds to Malmsey.

SECT. IV.

Of Succes dulcorated with Honey.

PHarmacopolies preserve some Honeys, made of the infusions of Plants, or of their succes compounded with Honey, which from their consistence and Honey, some call Syrupes of Honey; but we rather from their succes, which ingrede their confecture, and Honey, call them Melleous succes: for whether the extracted succes of Plants be adjoyned to Honey, or the Plants themselves be macerated in Honey, their succes are alwayes mixed with Honey; whence the whole mixture is rightly called, A Melleous succe.

Chap. I.

Mel Rosatum, Lat. Rhodomeli, Græc. Geleniabin, Arab. or, Honey of Roses.

℞ *Red Roses a little dryed in the shade* ℔ *ij. Honey, neither too old nor too new* ℔ *vj. mingle them, and boyl them upon a gentle fire in a Pipkin to a good consistence, and so preserve it for future use.*

The Commentary.

All do not prepare honey of Roses alike; but many, despising the descriptions of *Mesue* and *Nic. Præpositus*, one while make it with fire onely, another while by insolation, another while by both; and sometimes by none of them, but onely by maceration: some inject the whole Roses into the honey; others bray them first: some use onely the succe; others both the succe, and other Roses: the most usual preparation, is after the manner we have tradited; wherein the Roses, a little dryed, must be macerated in honey, then elixated a little, afterwards exposed to the Sun, and moved every third day, that they may be hot on every side: Whilest they are thus made, and not strained, they are called, Honey of Rose-leaves; if they be calified, and strained, as they are usually, before they be used, they are then called Honey of strained Roses; and especially that that results from brayed Roses and Honey. That which is made of two parts of the succe of exungated Roses, and one of Honey, cocted together to the absumption of the fourth part, whose spume must be diligently extracted in boyling, is called, The liquid distrained Honey of Roses.

Vires. Honey of Roses cohibits hot fluxes, whether assumed or applied: it helps, deterges, and roborates the stomack.

Chap.

CHAP. 2.

Mel Violatum; or, *Honey of Violets.*

℞ *of the fresh flowers of Violets* ℔ *j. the best Honey* ℔ *iij. mingle them in a convenient vessel with a narrow orifice: insolate it, and keep it for use.*

The COMMENTARY.

Some to the confection of this honey, bray the Violets; others mix them whole, being small flowers, with hot honey, in an earthen glazened pot; then they expose the pot to the Sun for fifteen dayes, each other day agitating the mixture with a rudicle: then they repose it; and when use calls for it, mix it with a little water, elixate it a little, strain it; and thus they get special honey of Violets: others do otherwise; and, in *Mesue*'s opinion, it may be made like honey of Roses well: but the Violets should be a little dryed, or at least deprived of all acquisititious humidity, and the honey should be used neither too new, nor too old.

Honey of Violets is commended to pectoral affections; it mitigates, absterges, refrigerates and roborates; and therefore it is usefully mixed with many Glysters and Gargarisms, and adhibited to deterge Ulcers.

CHAP. 3.

Mel Anthosatum; or, *Honey of Rosemary.*

℞ *of the flowers of Rosemary* ℔ *j. Honey well despumed* ℔ *iij. mingle them in a Jarre-glass, and set it in the Sun; which after a convenient insolation, preserve for future use.*

The COMMENTARY.

This of Rosemary, is made like them of Violets and Roses. Some commend the oldest honey, but I like the honey of a middle age, because it is neither too dilute, nor too crass. This is called *Mel Anthosatum*, because the flowers of Rosemary are for their dignity and præcellence called Anthos, or flowers.

And seeing Rosemary flourishes twice in a year, once in the Spring, and once in Autumn, honey of Rosemary-flowers may also be confected twice annually, at the aforesaid times, when its flower is fresh and fragrant: for when it is dry, it is almost inodorate and useless.

It is cephalical and nerval; it is a special ingredient in Glysters prescribed to the Lethargie, Apoplexy, and affections of the head: *Vires.*

it corrects the parts distempered by cold with its calour, and dissipates flatuosity.

Chap. 4.

Mel Mercuriale; or, Honey of Mercury.

℞ *of the Juyce of Mercury* ℔ *iij. the best honey* ℔ *iiij. mingle them, and after elixation, despume them, and so preserve them for use.*

The Commentary.

They measure not honey all in the same quantity, some adding more of the succe, and less of honey; others on the contrary; and many a like weight of both.

We judge the honey to be more præpotent, when it is made of the succe, and of leaves or flowers macerated, though its quantity exceed the succes. It is sometimes made onely of the decoction of the leaves; but this way I cannot approve of.

It may be equally confected of the succe of the Male as the Female Mercury; for both have affine faculties, and convenient for this confection.

To the male Mercury they referre Dogs Colewort; but this honey may not be confected thereof: it should be made betwixt the middle of the Spring, and end of Summer; for then Plants are more succulent, and their qualities more efficacious.

Vires. Honey of Mercury serves scarce to any other use, save to ingrede Glysters, to make them more absterstive and purgative.

Chap. 5.

Mel Passulatum; or, Honey of Raisins.

℞ *of Raisins purged from the stones* ℔ *ij. infuse them 24 hours in* ℔. *vj. of hot water, either fountain or pluvial; afterwards boyl them, till half be consumed; strain it with a strong expression; and to* ℔ *iij. of the aforesaid Colature, adde* ℔ *ij. of the best honey, which boyl up to a liquid Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

Some have described two Receipts, the one with, the other without honey; for it may admit of honey, though its Inventor *Matthæus* describes it without the intervent of honey: Whether way soever it be made, it is very grateful to the palate, and bechical, and therefore justly ingredes the composition of some Eclegms.

There are other Medicinal honeys; as, the honey of Myrtle, of Squills, of Anacardium, and that of Myrobolambs; but they being

ing of rare or no use in Medicine, are seldome made.

We have omitted the honey of Anacardium, for many causes: First, because the fruits whereof it is confected, are exotical, and very seldome brought to us: Secondly, because they are indued with a deletery faculty, or intemperate excessively: Thirdly, because of the ambiguity of Authors about its preparation; for some onely fervefie the decoction of Anacardia with honey, till it acquire a just spissitude; others bray them, and macerate them seven dayes in Vinegar, then coct them to the half, and afterwards coct them with honey into a Syrupe: others onely bray and boyl the fruits in water till it be red; collecting the innatant spume like Mellago, which they keep for honey of Anacardium. Lastly, I would not have honey of Anacardium confected, because its faculties are either noxious or useless, and inconvenient either to preserve or resarciate sanity.

SECT. V.

Of Rob or Sape, or Robub.

THe succes of Plants are conserved for future uses, either by the admixtion of something, as Honey or Sugar, in confecting Syrupes; or by some change wrought in them by Artifice; as Rob, that is, Sape, or coctedwine; or Robub, that is, the succe of any Plant incrassated by the heat of the Sun, or of fire. Rob simply, by a certain Antonomasia, denotes Sape, or sweet new Wine, inspissated by coction; but in conjunction with another word, it signifies the Sape of that same, as Rob of Berberries.

CHAP. I.

Rob, seu Sapa; or, Rob, or Sape.

℞ *of wine newly pressed from white Grapes* ℔ *xij. boyl it upon a gentle fire, till onely four pintes remain, or so long till it attains to the consistency of honey, which preserve in a convenient vessel.*

The COMMENTARY.

Sape is made three wayes: for women make Sape of all kindes of Grapes injected into their Kettles, and cocted without water, and expressed and inspissated into the consistence of honey; and they call it *Resinetum*, as if they would say, *Racematum*, that is, condited of bunches of Grapes.

Apothecaries also have their way of confecting it, but better; for they take new Wine, expressed out of white, mature, and selected Grapes,

Grapes, and coct it to the abſumption of two of its parts; the third that remains, hath the ſpiſſitude of honey, which is the Pharmacopoliſts Rob, or Sape; but is now ſeldome kept, being now ſeldome uſed.

Cooks alſo have their Sape, made of new ſweet Wine, cocted to the conſiſtence of honey, which they uſe to ſawces: they uſe alſo cocted wine, called *Defrutum*, which being elixated onely to the thirds, and deſpumed, remains ſtill liquid.

Vires. Sape is chiefly commended to the diſeaſes of the Mouth: for it doth not onely aſtringe, roborate, and cohibit the motion of the fluent matter; but alſo abſterge and digeſt it, when delabed. But we have treated of Sapes more largely in our Inſtitutions (*Cap.6. Lib.3.*

Chap. 2.

Rob Ribes; or, Rob of Currans.

℞ *of the Juyce of Red-Currans* ℔ *ix. boyl it till the third part be conſumed; then let it ſettle, and when 'tis clear, pour it off; which boyl upon a gentle fire, to the conſiſtency of Honey.*

The Commentary.

This is the ſimple Sape of Ribes, in reference to the more compound; whereunto, half as much ſugar accedes: but it is moſt uſually confected according to the preſcribed form.

It ſhould be made in *June*, for then all the Ribes are red ripe, and ſucculent; and they then brayed, and expreſſed, emit much ſucce.

Vires. Rob of Ribes is indued with many qualities; for it refrigerates, aſtringes, roborates, and recreates the heart: therefore it is very fit to alter a hot diſtemper, to roborate imbecile parts, to propugn heart-aches, and help ſuch as vomit: for by its clement aſtringence, and delectable acidity, it helps and delights all parts it attinges.

Rob of Berberries may be made after the ſame manner; or thus:

Chap. 3.

Rob Berberis; or, Rob of Berberries.

℞ *of the Juyce of Berberries well ſtrained* ℔ *viij. boyl it in an earthen Pan, upon a gentle fire, till it acquires the conſiſtency of honey.*

The Commentary.

Rob of Berberry may be very well made after the ſame manner with Rob of Ribes; for as the fruits are affine in colour, magnitude and faculties; ſo alſo are their ſucces alike confected.

It

It refrigerates, astringes, quenches thirst either arising from the heat of the ventricle, and other intrails, or a dry distemper: it helps such as labour under the disease of Choler, or consumption of the Liver, or the Dysentery, or the frequent proritation of the Belly. *Vires.*

CHAP. 4.

Rob de Cornis; or, Rob of the fruit of the Cornel-tree.

℞ *of the Juyce of Cornel-berries purged from its settlements* ℔ *ix. boyl it upon a gentle fire, till six pintes be consumed; and what remains, repose in a glass or pot for future use.*

The COMMENTARY.

Some adde Sugar to it, and make it Gelatina; but it is less efficacious, by how much more suave: and it is better to make simple Sape, and not to condite it with Sugar, that its faculties may not be broken, but whole. But seeing we have many astrictive and refrigerative syrupes, as syrupes of dry Roses, Quinces, Myrtle, and the like, we seldome use this Rob, which is most commended for its astrictive faculty; and thence was wont to be prescribed to stay the Belly-flux, Dysentery, and the Cholick, Choler, and Vomitings.

CHAP. 5.

Rob Citoniorum; or, Rob of Quinces.

℞ *of the Juyce of Quinces clarified* ℔ *ix. boyl it till two parts of it be consumed, or so long till it acquires the spissitude of Honey.*

The COMMENTARY.

That their succe may be well depurated, it should first be calified; then resided, that it may be clear; then it should be cocted on a slow fire, for so it will acquire an idoneous spissitude.

Rob of Quinces is astrictive and roborative: whence it stayes the liquid Belly, roborates the stomack, conduces to the cholerick disease, retains the Hæmorrhoids, and all Belly-fluxes. *Vires.*

The Ancients made their Robub of many other fruits, which they often used; but the later Age had rather make Syrupes and Conserves thereof.

SECT.

SECT. VI.

Of Conserves.

THe parts of many Plants are condited, for their better conservation and delightful use; and hence by Pharmacopolists called Conserves: whereof we purpose briefly (as our Method leads us) to treat in this Section; and he that knows how to condite the fruits and flowers of any Plant with Honey or Sugar, or both, he may by the same Art condite the fruits and flowers of all Plants, except some few, which require longer coction, or else shorter then ordinary. But every young Artist knows how to intend or remit calour, to give shorter or longer coction, as the nature of the thing to be condited requires.

Chap. I.

Conserva Violarum; or, *Conserve of Violets.*

℞ *of the flowers of Violets pick'd clean, and in a stone-Morter beaten very fine* ℔ *j. of the whitest Sugar* ℔ *ij. which beat together, till it becomes a perfect paste, which preserve in a pot.*

The Commentary.

Mesue would have the Violets a little dryed; but they had better keep their native humidity: for therein is their vertue posited; which being vanished, the flowers cannot easily be purged from their cauls and herbaceous parts, but they will be much diminished: and yet the cleansed flower should be onely assumed for this confection, both that its faculties may be better, and its colour more violaceous.

The Violets should be brayed very small, that no asperity may be found therein; then twice their quantity of Sugar must be added to them; then they must be again contunded together, till the mass be soft, and fit to be conserved in an idoneous vessel. *Mesue* addes thrice their quantity of Sugar; and then the Conserve is sweeter, but not so valid.

Vives. Conserve of Violets allayes the heat of Choler, extinguishes the ardour of other humours, quenches thirst, subduces the Belly, dilates and levifies the jaws and asper artery, and cures all pectoral affections.

Chap. 2.

Conserva Rosarum; or, *Conserve of Roses.*

℞ *of red Rose-buds purged from their whites* ℔ *j. beat them with a wooden*

wooden Pestel, in a stone Morter, till they become a paste; then adde of the best Sugar ℔ *iij. which beat, with the Roses, till they are perfectly mingled; and after a little insolation, put it up for future use.*

The COMMENTARY.

Mesue calls that the Sugar, which we call the Conserve of Roses; and he takes red, white, and all Roses dryed in a shade, without difference, with thrice as much Sugar, whereof he makes his Sugar of Roses; which after three moneths space he expoſes to the Sun: we take only red Roses, not dryed, but brayed, and mixed with thrice as much Sugar: some put onely twice as much Sugar to it, and so make the Conserve less suave, but more efficacious.

We call that Sugar of Rose-water, which some call Sugar of Roses, solved in equal measure, and coćted to the consistence of a solid Electuary: of which in its place.

But our Conserves of Roses are not alwayes alike; but, some are more liquid and soft, which are made as we before described them, of new flowers brayed and mixed with Sugar; others more solid, which are made of the powder of dry Roses, with eight or ten times as much Sugar, diluted in Rose-water, and coćted to the consistence of a solid Electuary: wherewithall, a little succe of Sorrel or Lemmons is mixed, which is made into red paste; out of which, oblong morsels, small at each end, and crasser in the middle, are formed. The Conserves thus confećted, at *Agendicum*, a City in the Province of *Brya*, are much commended.

Conserve of Roses is cephalical and cordial: for, it roborates the *Vires.* head and intrails, allayes their heat; and cohibits fluxions.

CHAP. 3.

Conserva Bugloſſi; or, Conserve of Bugloſs.

℞ *of the picked flowers of Bugloſs* ℔ *j. beat them in a Marble Morter very well; to which, adde of the fineſt Sugar,* ℔ *ij. beat them well together: which, after a convenient insolation, repoſe in a fit veſſel.*

The COMMENTARY.

I can scarce assent to their opinion, who would have Bugloſſes flowers, whose vertue is superficial, and easily dissipable, dryed before triture and mixtion; for they are better, by how much they are newer, and more humid: but if they loſe their native humidity, they loſe their efficacy; for they are no whit more humid, then exigence requires. Moreover, the more aqueous and excrementitious part of newly confećted Conserve, is dissipated by insolation; but if they be wet with dew or rain, they should be dryed in a shade, rather then in the Sun, before their confećture.

Vires. Conserve of Bugloss exhilarates the vital parts, recreates the heart, helps the Melancholical, conduces to such as labour in the Palsey and Cough.

Chap. 4.

Conserva Borraginis; or, *Conserve of Borrage.*

℞ *of the fresh flowers of Borrage well picked* ℔ *ß. of the whitest Sugar* ℔ *j. ß. beat them in a stone-Morter, with a Box-Pestel, till it comes to a perfect Conserve.*

The Commentary.

First the flowers must be brayed by themselves, till they be levigated; then the Sugar: then must they be mixed in triture, and made into a soft mass, which reconded in an idoneous vessel, must be insolated, and preserved. The Arabians call it *Zuccarum alchibil*, that is, Sugar of Borrages; the later age calls it, Conserve of Borrage-flowers.

Vires. It is given to the same affections with Conserve of Bugloss, for both recreate the heart and vital spirits, conduce to melancholical passions: and this, by a peculiar faculty, moves womens fluors, according to *Holerius*.

Chap. 5.

Conserva Nenuphatis; or, *Conserve of Water-Lillies.*

℞ *of the flowers of Water-Lillies purged from their herbaceous parts, and dryed a whole day in the shade* ℔ *ß. beat them very well with* ℔ *j. ß. of white Sugar, till they come to a perfect Conserve.*

The Commentary.

The flowers of Water-Lillies being more crass and humid, may be a little aerified; then contunded, that they may be levigated; afterwards the sugar must be added, brayed, subacted, and concorporated with the tunded flowers: which mass well subacted, must be reposed in a potters vessel; white flowers must be selected, whose herbaceous, green, and flave part also, which is in the middle of the flower, should be abjected. The luteous Water-Lilly neither ingredes this Conserve, nor the Syrupe before-described, because the white one is better, and more frequent: they should likewise grow in limpid and clear water; others are worse.

Vires. Conserve of Water-Lilly allayes the heat of the intrails, quenches thirst, refrigerates the brain, conciliates sleep, and is good for such as are feverish.

Chap.

CHAP. 6.

Conserva Anthos; or, Conserve of Rosemary-flowers.

℞ *of the finest flowers of Rosemary very small beaten* ℔ *ß. of the whitest Sugar* ℔ *j. ß. mix them well together, with a Box Pestel, till they become a fine paste, which keep in a Gally-pot well luted.*

The COMMENTARY.

The Rosemary-flower being of it self dry, should not be exposed to the Sun before triture, nor dryed: but this, and all calid and dryer flowers, require more of sugar, not for their conservation, but more suavity; and they need not so much insolation.

This Conserve is of much use in Medicine: for it is very cepha- *Vires.*
lical and nerval, roborates the brain, and propugns all its affections: it successfully helps or cures the Epilepsie, Apoplexy, Lethargy, Palsey, and Trembling.

CHAP. 7.

Conserva Betonicæ; or, Conserve of Betony.

℞ *of the flowers of Betony fresh, and finely picked* ℔ *j. white Sugar* ℔ *iij. beat them according to Art into a Conserve.*

The COMMENTARY.

All do not make this Conserve after the same manner; for some confect it according to the form prescribed; others coct Sugar in the water of Betony, to the consistence of a solid Electuary; then mix it with brayed flowers, and make a Conserve of most laudable sapour and faculties: it may well be made either way.

Conserve of Betony, whether assumed or adhibited, roborates *Vires.*
the head, benefits the ventricle, obtunds poysons, and propugns all affections of the brain.

CHAP. 8.

Conserva Salviæ, Melissæ, Stœchados; or, Conserve of Sage, Balm, and Stœchados.

℞ *of the flowers of Sage, or Balm, or Stœchados* ℔ *ß. white Sugar* ℔ *ß. first beat the flowers very small, afterwards the Sugar, beating them well together, till it becomes a soft mass.*

The Commentary.

The plenty of Medicinal flowers, causes plenty of Conserves; but Stœchados being very rare, and Balm emitting patulous flowers, few Conserves, if any, are confected of them: but Sage is so frequent, and endowed with so many eximious qualities, that a most commendable Conserve, for many uses, is made thereof; for by a special faculty, it roborates the Brain and Nerves, conduces much to trembling, stupour, palsey, and affections of the Brain. That which is made of Balm, gently helps the Memory: That which is made of the flowers called Stœchados, frees the Liver from obstructions, and recreates the Brain.

Vires Salviæ.

Many Pharmacopolists, it may be, have more Conserves condited of flowers, and many fewer; and if any one be not content with these, he hath liberty to make Conserves of Pœony, Tamarisks, Primrose, and Succory. Some make Conserve of Mallows flowers, which much conduces to the Stone, and vices in the Reins; for it leniates, allayes heat, diduces the passages, and expels sand from the Kidneys.

SECT. VII.

Of Fruits and other parts of Plants Condited.

Fruits to be condited, must not undergo triture, like flowers, but are condited either whole, if small, as Ribes and Berberries; or somewhat greater, as Cherries; or else cut into slices, as Quinces. Roots also purged and sliced, are condited: Of all which Conditures we shall briefly dissert in this Section.

Chap. 3.

Cerasa condita; or, Condited Cherries.

℞ *of Cherries ripe, and purged from their pedicles* ℔ *ij. white Sugar* ℔ *j. boyl them first upon a clear, then upon a gentle fire (casting off the scum as it arises) till their Juyce and the Sugar becomes a perfect Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

There are many kindes of Cherries, whereof those onely are selected for conditure, which are very red, dulcoacid, very succulent,

and

and inhære upon a ſhort pedicle; as alſo, ſuch as are obſcurely red. Now that they may be rightly condited, a little water muſt be put to them, for ſo the Sugar will more eaſily liquefie, and the Cherries be ſooner coćted. Now they are perfectly coćted, when a drop of their Syrupe effunded upon a Marble, diffuſes not; and then they ſhould be removed from the fire; and when they grow cold, be repoſed in idoneous veſſels for preſervation.

Condite Cherries, becauſe of their ſuavity and ſalubrity, are exhibited to the ſick of any diſeaſe, and at any time. *Vires.*

CHAP. 2.

Ribes & Berberis condita; or, Condited Rites and Berberries.

℞ *of red Currans, or Berberries* ℔ *j. ß. Sugar* ℔ *j. boyl them according to Art with a little water, till their humidity have acquired the conſiſtency of a Syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

Of the ſucce of theſe fruits, inſpiſſated by heat, we have a Sape; of the ſame, and ſugar duly coćted, a Syrupe alſo: Both which are eximious, in reſtoring ſanity to the diſeaſed, as we have above hinted. Theſe ſame fruits are alſo uſed for Junkets; and to that end integrally condited, that they may be kept while winter, and exhibited to the diſeaſed, to whom they are not onely pleaſant, but conducible. They uſually mix ſome water to their conditure; but their own ſucce would do better in its ſtead: for ſo the conditure would be more acid, and ſweet alſo, if an equal weight of fruits and ſugar were conjoyned.

CHAP. 3.

Pyra condita; or, Condited Pears.

℞ *of Pears decoćticated, and of the whiteſt Sugar, of each* ℔ *ij. boyl them upon a gentle fire, till the Pears become ſoft, and the liquor of the conſiſtency of a Syrupe.*

The COMMENTARY.

Other Pears may be ſo condited, as thoſe they call Rouſſelets, and others whoſe fleſh is ſolid. Some ſtick them with Cloves, that they may be more grateful to the palate: for ſo they attain an aromatical odour and ſapour with ſweetneſs. Apples having a ſofter ſubſtance, which by coćtion would be like a Pulteſs, are not condited whole, but cut into ſlices; and artificially coćted with Sugar, are made into a certain Paſte, which fećted into morſels, is ſtudiouſly dryed and kept.

CHAP.

Chap. 4.

Nuces condita; or, Condited Nuts.

℞ *of Nuts both young and green, n.l. purged from their outward Cortex, infuse them nine or ten dayes in warm water daily changed; then boyl them, till they grow soft, which spread one by one upon a cloth that they may dry, aromatize them with Cloves and Cinamon, and afterwards with an equal quantity of Sugar, to the weight of the Nuts, boyling them gently (adding thereunto a little water) to a just consistence.*

The Commentary.

Many care not for condite Nuts, because they grow black: which ingrateful colour, that it may be hindred, let the Nuts be first coct-ed, then sticked with Aromata, and reconded in a vessel; upon which superfuse Syrupe perfectly coct, while it is hot: if on the following dayes the Syrupe grow crude again, coct it again, and superfuse it; and if yet it appear too fluid, recoct it, that it may acquire a legitimate consistence, for so the condite Nuts will be whiter. They roborate the ventricle, dissipate flatuosity, cure the cholick, and help coction.

Vires.

Chap. 5.

Pruna condita; or, Condited Plums.

℞ *of Plums not perfectly ripe, of Loaf-sugar, of each ℔ j. clear water ℔ ſs. boyl them, till the liquor becomes a perfect Syrupe.*

The Commentary.

There is every-where great plenty and variety of Plums, whereof Damascens, white, black, red, and violaceous ones, are very expetible: but most of all, the Imperial Plums; which, when mature, are most grateful.

And these also, like other fruits, are condited for better preservation: and first they are decorticated, and presently cast into water, lest they should grow flave or black; and then they are cocted, till the syrupe of their succe, mixed with sugar, be of a legitimate consistence.

Thus may Peaches and ripe Apples be condited.

The Pills of Oranges and Lemmons, partly because of their hardness, and partly of their insuavity, are once or twice macerated in warm water before conditure; into which water at the first time, some inject a little bundle of ashes; at the second time, they are

cocted

cocted in ſimple water, with an equal weight of ſugar, and ſo conſerved in their ſyrupe perfectly cocted.

But for ſuch as delight onely in dry confections, they may be thus made: The Pills thus condited, muſt be taken; their ſyrupe wherewith they are madid, either gently deterged with a cloth, or lightly waſhed off with water. The Pills thus wiped and exſiccated, muſt be immerged in other ſugar, cocted to the conſiſtence of a ſolid Electuary, and again cocted therein a little; then amoved, and exſiccated in the ſun, Hypocauſte, or other hot place, and then kept. But this curious Art of conditing Fruits, appertains rather to Confectioners then Apothecaries.

CHAP. 6.

Citonia condita; or, Condited Quinces.

℞ of Quinces decorticated, cut in five or ſix parts, purged from their membranes and ſeeds, n.x. or xij. of Sugar the like weight: boyl them with a little water according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

Quinces, becauſe of their ſolidity, endure much coction; and therefore they require more water. They ſhould be cocted, not onely till they be ſoft, but till their Syrupe be craſſer; wherein they muſt be kept whole, and not diſcepted, nor reducted to a Pulteſs.

Quinces may be condited another way; to wit, cocted with Sugar: and in cocting agitated, that they may acquire the conſiſtence of a Pulteſs; and then they muſt be removed, and repoſed in ligneous Boxes: if the weight of theſe Quinces and Sugar be equal, the conditure will be more ſuave, but leſs aſtrictive.

There is yet another conditure more red and lucid, made onely of the decoction of the Pills and ſeeds of Quinces, with an equal weight of Sugar, cocted to the conſiſtence of a Syrupe, and kept in Boxes of Pine-wood: if in cocting, the veſſel be ſhut and covered which contains them, the conditure will be more red; which colour is moſt expetible in all conditures of Quinces. Some adde the ſucce of Quinces thereto, and call it clear Cidoniat.

There is alſo a Conſerve made of Quinces, but after another manner: for their ſucce is elicited, cocted and ſtrained, and twice as much ſugar added to the colature, and cocted to the conſiſtence of an Electuary; the ſucce is in equal weight mixed with ſugar, and ſo the Conſerve made of a red colour, grateful ſapour, and eximious faculties.

The

The Conditure of Leaves.

Chap. 7.

Folia Adianti condita; or, The condite Leaves of Venus-hair.

℞ *of white Maiden-hair picked from its ſtalks* ℔ *j. good Sugar* ℔ *ij. beat them ſeverally, afterwards together, till they become a perfect Conſerve.*

The Commentary.

Leaves are ſeldome condited, ſeeing, when dry, we can take their decoctions, and make Syrupes of them, indued with their faculties; or keep them dry, ſome for a whole year without damage: yet ſome are ſo volatile, that they ſcarce retain any thing of their genuine quality when dryed; as true Maidens-hair, which for its eximious faculties, is ſought by exotical Merchants, and carried in form of a Conſerve, made as before; after which manner, other dry leaves may be condited: but humid ones thus:

Chap. 8.

Folia Tuſſilaginis condita; or, The condite Leaves of Coltsfoot.

℞ *of the Juyce of the leaves of Coltsfoot* ℔ *j. Sugar* ℔ *ij. boyl them to the conſiſtency of an Electuary; to which, whileſt hot, adde of green Coltsfoot finely beaten, as much as you ſee good, and make thereof a Conſerve.*

The Commentary.

In the confecture of this Conſerve, the quantity of the leaves to be brayed, is not defined; ſome taking more, others leſs; a third part, or at moſt half as much ſugar, is enough. But Conſerves thus made, ſhould be long inſolated, and frequently agitated with a Rudicle, that they may califie all over, and their aqueous humidity be quite diſſipated, wherewith they abound. The conditures of other leaves may be thus confected.

Vires. The conditure of theſe leaves help the Cough, Lungs, and hinder the frequent delapſe of humours from the Brain, to the breaſt and vitals.

The

The Conditure of Stalks.

CHAP. 9.

Caules Lactucæ conditæ; or, The condite Stalks of Lettices.

℞ *of the ſtalks of Lettices purged from the exteriour skin or cortex* ℔ *j. Boyl them in water till they wax ſoft; afterwards dry them upon a cloth; then take the like weight of Sugar, and with a ſufficient quantity of water, boyl them, till the liquor become a craſs Syrupe: which repoſe in a fit veſſel.*

If you deſire them of a dryer form, let them be wiped and dryed; and then in Sugar boyled to the height of an Electuary, let them a little ferveſie; afterwards taken out and dryed.

The COMMENTARY.

Very few Plants Cauls are condited, either becauſe of their hardneſs, or inſuavity, or other uſeleſs qualities: But ſuch as have craſſitude, ſweetneſs, tenerity, and excellency of faculties, may rightly be condited; as the cauls of Lettice and Artichock: Of both which cauls, Confectioners uſed to make dry confectures, after the manner preſcribed.

They quench thirſt, allay the heat of the ſtomack and liver. *Vires.*

CHAP. 10.

Caules Cynaræ conditi; or, The condited Stalks of Artichocks.

℞ *of the ſtalks of Artichocks, the exteriour pellicle taken off, and purged from its fibres* ℔ *j. boyl them in water, till they grow ſoft; afterwards let them be dryed upon a cloth; then with the like weight of Sugar, and a ſufficient quantity of water, boyled to the body of a craſs Syrupe: repoſe the confecture in a fit veſſel; which if required more dry, prepare them as afore-deſcribed.*

The COMMENTARY.

The white ſtalks of Artichocks ſhould be deſumed, before they erupt out of the earth: they are uſed all winter in *Paris*, where they much abound; which ſome, upon no grounds, uſe, to ſtimulate Venery: for they afford little of genital matter, or flatulent ſpirits to the body, but much Melancholical ſucce.

The cauls of the vulgar, not of the Spaniſh Artichock, ſhould be ſelected, for that is a kinde of Carduus; as both of them ſeem to be depromed from that ſtock; onely one of them hath by culture attained a more fair aſpect, and gracious ſapour.

They are more celebrated for Junkets for the whole, then Diet for the sick.

Condited Roots.

Chap. II.

Radix Pœoniæ condita; or, The condited Root of Pœony.

℞ *of the Roots of Pœony washed and purged* ℔ *ij. boyl them in water, till they grow soft; then repose them to dry in a shade, that their humidity may be evaporated: then boyl them again with the like weight of Sugar, with a little portion of the aforesaid decoction, to the body of an Electuary; which take from the fire, and repose in a vessel for use.*

The Commentary.

Some Roots should be condited onely in the Spring, before their succe be immitted into their branches, boughs and leaves; others in Autumn, when Plants demit their leaves; for then much of the Plants vertue goes into the Roots, and then the humour is more throughly cocted, then at other times: others may be condited, both in the Spring, Summer, and Autumn, being alwayes succulent, whose cauls are either not erupted, or grown up, or else dryed: They must then be collected in that season, wherein their vertue is most prevalent; as the Roots of Ragwort and Rainbow in the Spring; the Root of Pœony in *August*, according to *Sylvius*, or rather in *March*; the Roots of Enula, Bryony, and Maidens-grass, in Autumn: as we have shewed at large in our Institutions (*Cap.* 13. *Lib.* 1.)

Some of them are amare, sharp, and insuave; which before their conditure, should be often macerated in water: others are grateful; which being one day infused in warm water, may in the same or another be cocted forthwith; as the Roots of Pœony, which may be well condited, according to this prescribed form; or some other of the like sort when they are cocted, and the Sugar cocted like a soft Electuary affunded upon them: if they become crude, the liquor must be again cocted, and that again repeated, till they cease from their crudity.

These condited, are of great potency to arceate and cure the Epilepsie, if they be moderately taken in the morning fasting, and at the hour of sleep.

Chap. 12.

Radices Eryngiorum conditæ; or, The condited Roots of Sea-holly.

℞ *of the Roots of Sea-holly cut sloping; and purged from its inward pith*

pith ℔ *j. boyl them in water, till they become soft: dry them in a shade: then let Sugar be dissolved in the same decoction, and boyled to the spissitude of an Electuary: to which adde the Roots, and again gently coctedd, that their aqueous humidity may be dissipated: repose them afterwards in a Gally-pot, and preserved.*

Sic Radices Bugloßi conduntur.

The COMMENTARY.

The Roots of Sea-holly being sweet, needs undergo but one maceration before conditure; and then be cocted in the same water, till they be soft; then condited with Sugar, as the form shews. *Mesue* addes some Aromata's, as Cinamon, and Ginger, wherewith he would have the Roots stuck; and he boyls them with a portion of Honey and Sugar; or else Honey onely, thrice the quantity of the Roots. But the form I have exhibited, is more usual, and better.

We everywhere in the Aarabian writings, meet with *Secacul*, which is hitherto taken for Sea-holly: But its description given by *Avicenna* and *Serapio*, shew, that it is another Plant, dissimilar in face, if not faculties: It grows in *India*, and is there condited, and is kept, and given for venereous matters; as also our Sea-holly, which some do perperously call *Secacul*, though their vertues be affine: for both of them are hot and moist, in the end of the first, and beginning of the second degree: They move Venery.

Therefore they do right, who for defect of the *Indian Secacul*, substitute our Sea-holly: and let such cease to be angry at this substitution, who must have something of that nature, and cannot get the true *Secacul*.

Sea-holly is of the kinde of aculeated Plants, whose leaves are tender, not spinous and rigid, and fit for cibaries. *Dioscorides* saith, they are broad asperated about their ambient, aromatical to the gust, and when perfectly grown, aculeated with many horrid spines. Its heads also are circumvalled with acute spines; its roots long, black without, white within, tender, sweet, and grateful to the gust. It is more largely described in our first Book of Medicinal Matter.

Its Root condited, nourishes, augments seed, excites venery, moves urine, and expels the sand of the Reins and Bladder. *Vires.*

CHAP. 13.

Radices Symphiti condita; or, The condite Roots of Comfrey.

℞ *of the roots of the greater Comfrey sliced* ℔ *j. macerate and boyl them in a sufficent quantity of water, till they become soft; dry them in a shade for a whole day: Let then Sugar be put to the decoction, and boyled to the spissitude of an Electuary; to which adde the roots, and again let them be boyled, till the aqueous superfluity be evaporated; and when they begin to be condited, repose them in a vessel for use.*

The Commentary.

The roots of Comfrey, as also many other, which by cocture become easily soft, are rightly condited after this prescript: yet some had rather prepare and condite them thus; First they coct the washed and cleansed roots; then they bray them; then they transmit them through a sieve; then put twice their quantity of Sugar to them, and coct them to the consistence of an Electuary; then they recalifie them, and record the conditure in Boxes. And thus they do with all other crasser roots: for thus they may be better purged from their fibres, and more perfectly confected in every part.

Vires. They stay the running of blood from any part, cohibit the delapse of homours, and agglutinate wounds in the internals.

Chap. 14.

Radices Enulæ conditæ; or, The condited roots of Enula-campane.

℞ *of the roots of Enula-campane washed, purged and sliced* ℔ *ij. infuse them in warm water for the space of four dayes, the water being daily changed; then boyl them, till they grow tender; then dry them in a shade: afterwards take the like weight of Sugar, which dissolve in the aforesaid decoction, and boyl it up to the consistency of an Electuary; then adde the aforesaid roots, and coct them together gently: which afterwards repose in boxes.*

The Commentary.

The roots of Enula must be macerated more or less, as their insuavity requires: and if it may be emended by two or three macerations, they need no longer immersion, lest their whole vertue be deposed in the water.

Vires. They roborate the stomack, recreate the heart, discuss flatulency, help concoction, resist poysons, and pestilent virulent diseases.

Chap. 15.

Radices Satyrii conditæ; or, The condite roots of Satyrion.

℞ *of Satyrion roots washed and picked* ℔ *j. boyl them in water, till they become tender; then let them be dryed in the shade, covering them with a cloth: when they are dryed, mingle them with the like proportion of Sugar, dissolved in the abovesaid decoction, and boyled to a good consistence; which coct a little, that the humidity of the water may be dissipated.*

The

The COMMENTARY.

The whole roots of Satyrion should be condited: for their mole hinders not, but that sugar may pervade their whole substance. We have adjoyned no Aromata's, that they may be more safely exhibited to such as labour under Hectick Fevers: they are indued with like faculties with Diasatyrium, but more imbecilely, as we shall shew in its due place.

Many other roots are condited after the same manner with these; which for brevities sake I omit. We have no fresh Ginger, but it comes all condited to us from *Bengala*, a countrey in *India*.

SECT. VIII.

Of Eclegms that must be preserved in Pharmacopolies.

Eclegms do by good right challenge place amongst the Preparative Medicaments; for they prepare the humours contained in the breast for expulsion, by vomit, or impact them into another place for eduction, by stool. For seeing they are either acid, or sweet, they incide viscid humours, and make them easie to be separated from the parts whereunto they adhere. The sweet ones concoct the same, and make them fit for exclusion by spittle: If they be of a mixt sapour, and dulcoacid, they both attenuate and concoct: But those that the Ancients kept in their Shops, are now almost out of use. And now when some prave affection of the highest region of the Breast, or Asper Artery, requires a Lohoch or Eclegm, they are quickly made for present use, being both for vertue and sapour at the best. So that the Ancients Eclegms, as they are less grateful, so they seem to be less useful. Yet lest our Shop should be quite void of them, we shall select a few, of more easie confecture and particular use: As,

CHAP. I.

Eclegma Scilliticum; *or, Eclegm of Squills.* D.Mes.

℞ *of the Juyce of Squills, Honey despumed, of each* ℔ *ij. boyl them together according to Art, to the consistency of Honey.*

The COMMENTARY.

This Eclegm is most easie to confect, and most simple, consisting onely of the same things, that make up Honey of Squills; onely they differ in preparation and proportion: For in Honey of Squills, the leaves

leaves are confusedly insolated with the Honey in a fit vessel, and strained when use calls for it: But in the Eclegm of Squills, onely their succe is cocted with Honey, above the consistence of a Syrupe.

Vires. Eclegms of Squills potently incide and prepare for expulsion, crass and viscid humours, impacted in the spirators. They very much help such as breath with difficulty, or have much of viscid Phlegm in their Lungs, or highest region of the Breast.

Chap. 2.

Eclegma de Caulibus; or, Eclegm of Colewort. D. Gord.

℞ *of the Juyce of Coleworts* ℔ *j. boyl it a little, and scum it; afterwards adde Saffron* ʒ *iij. Sugar and Honey, of each* ℔ *ß. boyl them according to Art, to the consistence of a Linctus.*

The Commentary.

The succe of Garden-Cauls must first be educed, then depurated by the Sun or fire; then Honey or Sugar added to it, and they perfectly cocted; then must well-pulverated Saffron be mixed therewith; or, as *Gordianus* its Author would have it, injected thereinto, while cocting, because he will have it tend to its spissitude: but it is credible, he means by his Electuary, a Lohoch, for the cure of difficulty of breathing. But the leaves of red Cauls should be selected, when the diseases of the highest part of the Breast are respected, or the Belly to be moved.

Vires. Lohoch of cauls cures difficulty of breathing, inveterate coughs; cocts, moves, and excludes spittle.

Chap. 3.

Eclegma de Pulmone Vulpis; or, Eclegm of Foxes Lungs. D. Mes.

℞ *of Fox Lungs prepared and dryed, of the Juyce of Liquorice, white Maiden-hair, sweet Fennel-seeds, Anise-seeds, of each equal parts: make it into a Lohoch, with Syrupe of Red-roses or Myrtles.*

The Commentary.

Some confect it with simple Hydrosacharum, that is, water and sugar; others with sugar solved, and cocted in Saxifrage-water; and some that would have it more roborative, with Rob, or inspissated succe of Myrtle, as *Mesue* advises. We confect it with syrupe of Roses, or *Alexanders* syrupe; for so it is more grateful, then those with Rob of Myrtle, and Hydrosacharum: yea, its faculty roborates in a mean betwixt them.

But

But if it be kept for a Roborative, it may be rightly confected with syrupe of Myrtle: but Pharmacopolists do not now preserve it.

Foxes Lungs should, if possible, be onely taken by such as are young, sound, and given to hunting: they must be washed in water, incided, according to the vessels whereto they adhere, and wherein they are suspended; their blood must be expressed; then moderately washed in white-wine, imposed in a pot, dryed in an Oven pretty hot, and kept.

When use calls for them, a portion of them must be levigated very small, and mixed with some idoneous liquor, as in this Eclegm, with the said Syrupe, and other pulverated Medicaments.

Mesue describes this Lohoch of Foxes Lungs to difficult breathers; *Vires.* but some would rather bray the Lung, and exhibit it mixed with Julep of Roses; others, upon good grounds, prefer the Lungs of other wholesome Animals; as Hogs, Rams, or Calves Lungs, for the easure of such as are troubled with difficulty of breathing: for the diseased may eat these with more delight and salubrity, to the quantity of two or more ounces; and so better consult the sanity of his Lungs, then if he uses an ounce of this Eclegm, wherein there is scarce a scruple of Foxes Lungs. Yet this should be kept in Pharmacopolies, because it is very bechical, and may be successfully used by such as are rabid.

CHAP. 4.

Eclegma sanum & expertum; or, A sound and experienced Lohoch. D. Mes.

℞ *of Raisins stoned, Figs, Dates, of each* ℥.xij. *Jujubees, Sebestens, of each* xxx. *Fœnugreek-seed* ʒ v. *Linseed, Anise-seed, sweet Fennel-seed, dryed Hyssop, Calamint, the roots of Orris, Liquorice, Cinamon, of each* ʒ ss. *Maiden-hair* m.i. *boyl them all in four pintes of water, till half be consumed: to the Calature, adde Penidees* ℔ ij. *boyl it again to the crassitude of Honey; then adde these following powders, and pastes, Pine-kernels* ʒ v. *blanched Almonds, Starch, of each* ʒ iij. *Liquorice, Gumme-Tbraganth, Arabick, of each* ʒ ij. ss. *Orris* ʒ ss. *Let all these be exactly mingled, and beaten into a Lohoch.*

The COMMENTARY.

That this Eclegm may be well confected, the root of Orris should be cut into short pieces, and be first cocted in limpid water by half a quarter of an hour; then must the seeds be injected; then the fruits and leaves; last the Liquorice and Cinamon: the powders being levigated, a part must be confusedly mixed, and conjected into the colature, duly cocted with Penidees; that of these united and agitated with a Pestel, may arise an Eclegm, which from its effect is called Sound and Expert: for it contains many fruits, seeds, leaves,

leaves, and some gummes, which commonstrate its eximious faculties; whereunto they adde Amylum, to make it more viscid.

Now Amylum may be made of many cereals; but the best is that, that is made of Wheat five times madefied with water, till it be soft: which done, the water is effused without agitation, lest something that is useful, flow out with it: when it is very soft, and the water effused, it should be calcated with ones feet, and so broken; then should water be again superfused upon it, and it again calcated, and the enatant bran received into a sieve, and the rest dried in a Basket, and forthwith baked in the sun, and kept. For thus it is grinded without a Mill, and thence called Amylum. It leniates exasperated parts, stays the fluxions of the eyes, and rejections of Blood.

Vires. This Eclegm cures the cough, and hoarseness contracted by a cold distemper: it incides, attenuates, and deterges much, and concocts cold humours.

Chap. 5.

Eclegma de Pineis; or, *Eclegm of Pine-kernels.* D.Mes.

℞ *of Pine-kernels cleansed from their skins* ℥ *xxx. sweet Almonds, Hazel-Nuts, Gumme-Thraganth, Arabick, Liquorice, Juyce of Liquorice, white Starch, white Maiden-hair, Orris-root, of each* ℥ *ß. the Pulp of Dates* ℥ *xxxv. bitter Almonds, Honey of Raisins, fresh Butter, white Sugar, of each* ℥ *iiij. Honey, as much as will suffice to make it up according to Art into an Eclegm.*

The Commentary.

That this Eclegm may be rightly made, the dry roots must first be brayed apart; then the Maidens-hair, then the fruits, then the gummes and Amylum: but such as may better be incided, as Almonds and Filberts, may be cut with a knife. When all are well levigated, Rob or Honey of Raisins must be added; then butter; then an idoneous quantity of the whitest and best Honey, that the Eclegm may be of a legitimate consistence.

Vires. It cures inveterate coughs, difficulty of breathing; moves viscid spittle: helps the asperity of the voyce, helps coction and expectoration of humours, and cures such affections of the Lungs and Breast, as arise from the plenty or noxious quality of humours.

Finis Libri Primi.

The

The Apothecaries Shop;

OR,

ANTIDOTARY.

THE SECOND BOOK.

Of most selected and approved Purgative Medicaments.

THE PREFACE.

THe multitude of Compounded Purgatives are almost innumerable, their forms multifarious, and their preparations various. We shall here exhibit the most select, best, and approved; and those either in form of a liquid or solid Electuary, as Opiates or Hieræ; or in form of Pills and Trochisks: For Pharmacopolists seldome keep Purgatives in form of Powders or Potions. We shall adde the manner and reason of their confecting, and the quality of the Confection: But we shall withall omit many Purges described by the Ancients, because their use is not salubre, nor a due order observed in their Composition, as admitting of many noxious, useless, and unknown Medicaments. We shall also neglect many described and invented by late men; who, being covetous of vain-glory, cognominated some after their own Titles, and from a fictitious effect. We shall (I say) relinquish such, and give onely the more select, approved, and useful. We dissect this Treatise into four Sections: In the first whereof we speak of liquid Electuaries; in the third, of solid ones; in the fourth, of Pills; and in the second, of bitter Confections, which Medicks call Hieræ.

Chap. I.

Diacassia. D.N. Præpos.

℞ *of the flowers and leaves of Violets, Mallows, Beets, Pellitory, Roman Wormwood, of each m.ß. boyl in* ℔ *iiij. of water, till half be consumed: to the Colature adde of Honey* ℔ *j. boyl it to the consistence of a liquid Electuary; then mingle with it Cassia* ℔ *j. and so make it into an Electuary, and repose it in a fit vessel.*

The Commentary.

All do not make Diacassia alike: for some coct the succes of Plants with honey, to a fit crassitude, and then adject the Cassia; others elixate the Plants, and in the colature dilute Cassia and Honey; and then fervefie the whole mixture, to the consistence of a liquid Electuary. But that manner wherein the Cassia is so long cocted, is disapproveable; but the other, whereby the Canes wherein the Cassia is contained, are washed in the strained decoction, and afterwards a pound of honey added, and they cocted to a legitimate spissitude, that by the adjection of a pound of Cassia, they may become an Electuary, is very good.

Some, in stead of honey, mix sugar therewith; others, both: some adde Manna; others, Senny; others, other Medicaments: and so confect various Electuaries of Cassia, whereunto I assent not. For it is enough, that we have Diacassia made according to the prescript for Glysters; and if the pith of Cassia must be assumed at the mouth, it may be extracted fresh, and taken alone, or mixed with other Medicaments, as the Medick requires.

But Ægyptian or Oriental Cassia should be selected, which is without redly black, and within full of a fat, medullous, and black matter; which is of force to contemperate heat, wash the Belly, and gently purge the Body; and may thence be securely given to Boyes, Old-men, and pregnant Women: for it subduces the Belly without molestation; but it is thought procurative of flatulency, and therefore many educe its pith in the vapour of cocted Anise or Fennel; others mix some Cinamon with it: and *Coræus* gives it with some grains of Berberries, to such as have weak Intestines.

I hear of a new kinde of Cassia brought from *Brasile*; a half ounce whereof doth more move the Belly, and copiously educe humours, then a whole ounce of the vulgar and oriental.

Diacassia is a benign Medicament, and purges clemently: it allayes the heat of the Mesentery, gently moves the Belly, humectates its siccity, and by lubrication and detersion, deposes the excrements by stool.

CHAP. 2.

Electuarium lenitivum; or, The lenitive Electuary.

℞ *of Polypody of the Oak, Senny picked, Raisins stoned, of each ℥ ij. Mercury m. j. ss. Barley, Maiden-hair, Violets, of each m. ss. Jujubees, Sebestens, of each num. xx. Prunes stoned, Tamarinds, of each ℥ vj. Liquorice ℥ ss. boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water, till a third part be consumed: to the Colature, adde Pulp of Cassia-Fistula, Tamarinds, Prunes, Loaf-sugar, and Sugar of Violets, of each ℥ vj. Senny powdred ℥ iij. ss. make it into an Electuary according to Art.*

The COMMENTARY.

The Raisins which ingrede this confection, should be purged from their stones: if white Adiantum, or true Maidens-hair cannot be had, Polytrichum may be substituted in its stead. Conserve of Violets, or Sugar of Violets, may be mixed at pleasure. He that judges Conserves inept in Electuaries, may adde Anise or sweet Fennel-seed, or a little Cinamon: yet this Electuary hath hitherto been confected without any of them, and the users have not found any molestation from flatulency.

The fruits whose pulps must be educed, must be humectated in a part of the prepared decoction; another part thereof with sugar must be made into a Syrupe, and the pulps with sugar of Violets, mixed with it while hot: then must an ounce and an half, or at least an ounce and three dragms of well-levigated Senny, be added to every pound of the Composition; whereof they say *Rhasis* is Author.

This lenitive Electuary, thus cognominated from its effect, levifies, mollifies, and subduces the Belly; educes all obvious, but especially pituitous and melancholical humours, without molestation: it helps against the Pleurisie, and other pectoral affections. *Vires.*

The Florentine Medicks describe another, by the name of the Magisterial Electuary; which admits of Turpentine, Ginger, and Scammony; which our Shop may well be without.

CHAP. 3.

Electuarium Catholicum; or, The Catholical Electuary.

℞ *of Polypody of the Oak well bruised ℔ j. pure water ℔ ix. boyl them together, till a third part be consumed; and in two parts of the decoction, let there be boyled Sugar ℔ viij. to which adde pulp of Cassia and Tamarinds, madefied with the other part of the decoction, of the leaves of Senny, of each ℥ viij. of the best Rhabarb, Polypody, sweet Fennel-seeds, Violets, of each ℥ iiij. of the four greater cool seeds, of each ℥ j. Liquorice, Penidees, Sugar-Candy, of each ℥ ss. make into an Electuary.*

The COMMENTARY.

That this universal Antidote may be duly confected, many things must be brayed, and prepared apart; and first of all, Polypody, which being twice assumed, must be bifariously prepared. In the first course it must be brayed only pretty grosly; in the second, it must be levigated very small: that which is onely contunded, must be long cocted in the prescribed, or sufficient quantity of water; and a Syrupe must be made of two parts of its colature and sugar.

The Tamarinds and Cassia must be humectated with the rest, that their pulps may be more easily separated and secerned.

The Rhabarb must be brayed alone; the Senny, Liquorice, Fennel, and Violets, both alone and together; twice as much of the Syrupe of Violets, may be mixed in stead of the Violets: the four cold seeds must be excorticated, and minutely cut with a Pen-knife; then must the Penidia and Sugar be pulverated; then must all be put together, and agitated with a ligneous Pestel or Rudicle, till they become an Electuary of a legitimate consistence.

And the composition of this solemn Medicament is not onely various, but there are also various opinions concerning its Author: for *Sylvius* seems to ascribe the invention thereof to *Galen*; *Joubertus*, to *Nicolaus Myrepsicus*; *Bauderonius*, to *Nicolaus Salernitanus*; *Adolphus Occon*, to *Nicolaus Præpositus*; *Valer. Cordus*, to *Nicolaus Alexandrinus*; who indeed hath described it, but not as it is vulgarly made.

But none know certainly, to which of these to attribute its invention: but all call it *Nicolaus his Catholicum*, not adding his Sirname.

Now this Medicament is called Catholical, or Universal, either because it expurges all humours, or because it draws them from all parts of the Body.

That which is made according to this prescript, is called *Simple Catholicum*, in reference to the more compound; which receives twice as much Rhabarb and Senny; yet neither of them substantially, or in powder, ingrede that same, as they do this simple Catholicum: but the Senny is cocted, and the Rhabarb infused, and its expression joyned with the mixture; which formed into an Electuary, is called *Catholicum Duplicatum*.

Many coct Anise and Fennel, and others Coriander-seed, with Polypody, to discuss its flatuosity: but there is Fennel enough in the description, to effect this; so that there is no need to congest so many Medicaments of the same faculty together. If any like not Anise, he may in its stead substitute sweet Fennel or Coriander, or an equal weight of each: yea, any may adde some Cinamon, to make it more grateful, and it will be of good consequence. The rest I leave to the old description, which most Medicks approve of, and prefer before many purges: which to pervert, as *Rondeletius* hath done, were a piece of a piacle.

Some

Some keep a certain Catholicum in their shops for Glysters, different from the common one, onely in this, that it admits of onely old and worse Rhabarb, and is confected with Honey in stead of Sugar.

That which is very purgative, wherein Apothecaries put Turpentine, Colocquintida, and Hermodactyls, is not good.

I hear of some that make a more liquid Catholicon, onely of Syrupe, and the infusion of some pulps: but its faculties being very imbeciles, and not respondent to the scope of the Author, whoever first made it, I think it is not now kept or prepared.

Fernelius gives more descriptions of Catholicum: one whereof, amongst other things, receives Hellecampane, Hyssop, Ginger, Cinamon, Nutmeg, and Honey; another amongst Purgatives, Agarick, Turpentine, and Diacridium: which compositions, made by a perite artificer, are good; but they are seldome kept in shops.

Let that then which we have, according to the Ancients minde here described, be continually kept for the true Catholicum in each Pharmacopoly.

It clemently and gently purges all humours, cures Fevers, and acute diseases, especially such as proceed from the prave disposition of the Spleen and Liver. *Vires.*

CHAP. 4.

Diaprunum, seu Diadamascenum simplex; or, Simple Diaprunum, or Diadamascenum. D.N.Myr.

℞ *of fresh and ripe Damask-Prunes, n.* 100. *boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water, till they grow soft; then let them be pulped through a hair-sieve: In the percolated Colature, boyl the flowers of Violets* ℥ *j. In the Colature, dissolve Sugar* ℔ *ij. boyl them into a Syrupe; to which adde the pulp of the aforesaid Prunes, inspissated by it self* ℔ *j. of the pith of Cassia and Tamarinds, of each* ℥ *j. then sprinkle in these following Powders*; viz. *White Sanders, red Sanders, Rhabarb, of each* ℥ *iij. Roses, Violets, the seeds of Purslain, Endive, Berberries, Juyce of Liquorice, Thraganth, of each* ℥ *ij. of the four greater cool seeds, of each* ℥ *j. make it into an Electuary according to Art.*

The COMMENTARY.

The description of this Electuary, shews the manner of its confection, which indeed is the best: though some make it otherwise, who wash and elixate not onely the pulps of Plums and Tamarinds, but of Cassia also, to the consistence of Honey with a Syrupe: whereunto they afterwards adde the Powders, that, together with its desired faculty, it may acquire its legitimate consistence.

But all agree not about the quantity of Violets: for some, according to *Nic. Myrepsius* his decree, take onely half an ounce, others an

an ounce and a half: we, aiming at the mean, take one ounce, to be a little coćted in the ſtrained decoction of the Plums. Some, beſides the Authors intention, adde Cinamon; but we think it unfit for a lenitive and refrigerative Medicament.

And we judge no otherwiſe of Berberries-ſeeds, though we know that they are roborative: for Diaprunum may eaſily be without their help, ſeeing it admits of Rhabarb and Roſes, which are farre more roborative, and ſeeing its main faculty ſhould rather be lenitive then roborative.

But that they call Spodium, is not once to be thought of in this confection, becauſe the Grecian Spodium is noxious, and the Arabian cannot be had, and is withall inconvenient; as alſo Antiſpodium, which being nothing but burnt Ivory, hath no affinity with the burnt Roots of Cane, which *Avicenna* calls Spodium: as we have ſhewed in our third Book of Medicinal Matter, *Chap.* 11.

Chap. 5.

Diaprunum compoſitum ſeu laxativum; or, *The Compound or laxative Diaprunum.* D.N.Myr.

℞ *of the ſimple Diaprunum afore-preſcribed* ℔ j. *Scammony prepared* ʒ ß. *mingle them, and make them into an Electuary.*

The Commentary.

Both the ſorts of Diaprunum are compounded and laxative, but the ſimple not admitting of Diacridium, ſubduces the Belly eaſily, ſcarce moving the firſt region of the Body: the other, which admitting of Diagridium, moves the Belly potently, and deduces humours from all parts, is called the more compound.

Onely one ounce of Diacridium, is added to each pound of the ſimple Diaprunum: ſo that one ounce of the Electuary, contains but one ſcruple of the ſame. *Nic. Salernitanus* doth perverſly augment the weight of the Diacridium, mixing ſeven dragms thereof, with each pound of the Electuary: for ſo its purgative faculty becomes more efferous, and its uſe more unſafe. Diacridium muſt be levigated very ſmall, and put to the Electuary while hot.

Vires. This Diaprunum, beſides thoſe qualities it hath common with the other, purges potently, and yet without moleſtation: it is ſucceſsfully uſed in the diſeaſes of the Reins and Bladder, in Fevers, and all calid affections.

Chap.

CHAP. 6.

Diaphœnicum, seu Confectio de Dactylis; or, Diaphœnicum, or Confection of Dates. D. Mes.

℞ *of Dates not perfectly ripe, macerated three dayes in Vinegar* ℥ 100. *Penidees* ℥ l. *of the best Turbith* ℥ xxx. *Diagridium* ℥ xij. *Ginger, Long Pepper, Rue dryed, Cinamon, Mace, Lignum Aloes, the seeds of Anise, Fennel, Carret, Galangal, of each* ℥ ij. *Honey despumed* lb ß. *or as much as will suffice to bring it into the consistency of a solid Electuary.*

The COMMENTARY.

Seeing Dates of a perfect magnitude, and not absolutely mature, are somewhat flave, there is no need of this word *Kirron* in the prescript, which vulgar Apothecaries usually adde: for if they derive it from the Greeks, it signifies flave; if from the Barbarians, who write it *Kheyron*, it signifies immature; or rather, as it is most credible, *Chayrum*, a Town or Field where best Dates grow: which one *Saladinus*, a Triobolar writer, seems to avouch, when he saith, that *Keiron* is a Province of the Sarazens. Seeing there is no need to seek immature Dates for this confection, when mature ones will make it astrictive enough, and castigate Scammony: yet I think, That neither absolutely immature, nor yet mature ones, but indifferent betwixt both, are best.

But before they ingrede the composition, they should be purged from their pills and stones, cut into pieces, and macerated in a small quantity of Vinegar, onely a day, if they be soft; if not, two or three, and that in an earthen pot; then must they be brayed in a Marble-Morter; then trajected through a cernicle, and afterwards elixated with despumed honey, till their vinegar be dissipated.

Some macerate Dates in Hydromel, others in white-wine; but they are fitter to the temper of Aromata's, and attenuate Phlegm, which are macerated in vinegar.

The Penidia must be of Barley, which are made of Sugar and Barley-water, cocted to an idoneous crassitude.

Turbith, Wood-Aloes, Galangal, Ginger, and other Simples, must be pulverated. Almonds must first be incided small with a knife, and then levigated with Penidees; then all the Powders may be mixed together, except Scammony, which must be brayed apart, and last of all mixed with them; not to thrice as much Honey, as *Cordus* holds, but to half a pound.

For thus much honey, suffices the Dates, Penidia and Almonds being all sweet; whose weight in all, is one pound, nine ounces and three dragms; the weight of the other Powders, eight ounces and six dragms: which put together, make two pounds and an half; which,

which, with half a pound of despumed honey, constitutes three pounds, or thirty six ounces: so that for each ounce of the compound, there is a scruple of Diacridium.

Perhaps this quantity of honey, may not to some seem copious enough to receive the Powders, nor just to bring the Electuary to a legitimate consistence; especially seeing *Bauderonius*, most perite in Pharmacy, takes thirteen ounces and an half of honey; *Bern. Dessennius*, two pounds; *Joan. Costa*, two pounds and eight ounces; and *Rondeletius*, six pounds: But Dates, Penidia, and Almonds, supplying Honey's office, the quantity we have defined may be enough, which by augmentation makes the vertue of the compound more imbecile.

Some weigh the Dates after they are macerated in vinegar; others take (and that better) their weight according to *Mesu's* definition, before their maceration; and then infuse, then bray and prepare them, as we have declared. This Medicament is denominated from them, as from its basis: which yet some call Diaturbith, because Turbith is most prepotent amongst the Purgatives, which ingrede its composition; because of which, this Medicament is Phlegmagogous.

Vires. Diaphœnicum, or confection of Dates, doth clemently and safely purge phlegm and choler, cures Belly-ach, cholick, and all diseases from crude and pituitous humours, diuturnal also, and pituitous Fevers.

He that hath this Medicament, may well be without both the *Indo's*.

Chap. 9.

Electuarium de Psyllo; or, *Electuary of Fleawort.* D.M.

℞ *of the depurated Juyces of Bugloss, Borrage, Endive, and Smallage, of each* ℔ *ij. the Juyce of Fumatory* ℥ *iij. mingle them, and macerate in them a whole day, of the leaves of Senny* ℥ *j. Anise-seed, Dodder, Asarabacca, of each* ℥ *ß. Maiden-hair, m. j. Spikenard* ℥ *ij. Let all these be fervefied together; to which adde, of Violets* ℥ *iij.* * *Dodder of Thyme* ℥ *ij. Boyl them a little, afterwards let them be strained; and infuse in the Colature for 24 hours, of the whole seeds of Fleabit* ℥ *iij. Let them be agitated well in the mixture, afterwards strained, and to* ℔ *iiij. of the Colature, adde of white Sugar* ℔ *ij. ß. Boyl it to a little above the consistence of a Syrupe; and while it is hot, mingle of Diagridium finely sifted* ℥ *iij. Trochisks of Diarrhoden Abbatis, de Antispodio, and of Rhabarb, of each* ℥ *j. Troches of Berberries, Conserve of Violets, of each* ℥ *ß. and so make it into an Electuary.*

* *Epithimum.*

The

The COMMENTARY.

Many commend this Medicament, when congested and compounded; but few celebrate the Simples whereof it consists; scarce two amongst a hundred keep to one proportion, or make it after one manner: for, some augment, some detract, and many change the weight; but we, in the apparation of this Medicament, hold the words of no Authors for Oracles, but according to the dictate of Reason, change somewhat of that our Author prescribed. For in stead of the succe of wilde Bugloss, we substitute the succe of Garden Bugloss, or rather Borrage, as better; in stead of half an ounce of Senny, which could be of no remarkable potency, we put a whole ounce; in stead of three ounces and an half of Scammony, we onely admit of three, that each scruple thereof, might respond to each ounce of the composition: For we judge, that its purgative faculty will thus be valid enough. We do not institute cocted Diacridium, to be recocted in a Quince, lest its vertue be obtunded.

We have added Conserve of Violets, that it might be more lenitive: we admit of onely half an ounce of Asarabacca, in stead of *Mesue*'s four. But it may be that weight was changed by the Printer, mistaking ℥ iiij. for ʒ iiij. Polytrichum may be substituted in defect of Maidens-hair: the manner of preparation is apparent enough in the description.

Now if any admire why *Mesue*, designing a venenate quality to Fleawort, should put it in so great quantity in this Medicament, whereof it is the Basis: I answer, That that might happen to him, which many grave men have not avoided, to wit, to speak something precipitantly, which better thoughts, and further knowledge, might castigate and change: But however he thought, Fleawort is not deletery, and therefore accedes this Electuary, which is of much use.

This Electuary doth not onely temper, but purge choler, helps in acute Fevers, and all hot and dangerous diseases, cures the Vertigo, and all such capital affections as proceed from the ascent or congestion of hot humours, and helps the hot or obstructed Liver, and other affections flowing from that fountain. *Vires.*

CHAP. 8.

Benedicta laxativa; *or, The blessed laxative.* D.N. Salern.

℞ *of Turbith, Radix, Esulæ prepared, of each* ʒ x. *Diagridium, Hermodactyls, Rose-leaves, of each* ʒ v. *Ginger, Galangal, Cloves, Cardamomes, Amomus, or in its defect Acorus, Long-Pepper, Mace, Spikenard, Saffron, the seeds of Smallage, Caraway, Fennel, Saxafrage, Gromwell, Asparagrass, Butchers-broom, Sal Gemme, of each* ʒ ij. *of despumed honey* ℔ j. *and* ʒ viij. ß. *to make it up into an Electuary.*

The Commentary.

Before the root of Esula be brayed, and used as it should, it must be macerated four and twenty hours in Vinegar; then exsiccated, and pulverated with Turbith, Spikenard cut small, Ginger, the lesser Galangal, and Hermodactyle: when these are half brayed, the Aromata's must be mixed with them, and all of them levigated together: onely Salt, Saffron, Sugar, and Scammony, must be prepared apart.

The weight of the Powders, without Salt and Sugar, is ℥ lij. and thrice as much despumed honey must be put thereto, that the confection may be of a legitimate consistence; which benignly subduces the Belly.

Their opinion must be rejected, who think that Diagridium must either be lessened in quantity, or quite substracted, lest the Medicament become too Cholagogous: for there concurring three Phlegmagogous Purgatives, this quantity is well defined, both to excite the slow faculty of Turbith, and to purge some choler with the phlegm.

Vives. It doth not onely draw these humours from the first region of the Body, but from the Reins also, and remoter parts. It absolves obstructions, expels all viscid humours, and moves phlegm from the articles.

Chap. 9.

Electuarium, seu confectio Hamech. Def. Fernel.

℞ *of the barks of Citrian, Myrobolans* ℥ *ij. Chebulans, Indian, of each* ℥ *j. ß. of Violets, Coloquintida, Polypody, of each* ℥ *j. ß. of Wormwood, Thyme, of each* ℥ *ß. of the seeds of Anise, Fennel, Rose-leaves, of each* ℥ *iij. after they are well bruised, let them be macerated a whole day in* ℔ *ij. of whey; afterwards boyled to* ℔ *j. then make a strong expression: and to the Colature, adde of the Juyce of Fumatory, pulp of Prunes, and Raisins stoned, of each* ℔ *ß. of white Sugar, and of Honey despumed, of each* ℔ *j. boyl them to the consistency of Honey; then sprinkle in these powders: of Agarick, and Senny, of each* ℥ *ij. of Rhabarb* ℥ *j. ß. Epithimus* ℥ *j. Diagridium* ℥ *vj. Cinamon* ℥ *ß. Ginger* ℥ *ij. the seeds of Fumatory and Anise, Spikenard, of each* ℥ *j. make it into an Electuary.*

The Commentary.

Fernelius hath well castigated and changed this Electuary, preserving its vertue entire, and reducing its description into an easier form: for, as *Plantius* saith, Myrobolambs twice decocted, and then brayed and imposed, are frustraneous. Rhabarbs faculty perishes

riſhes by coction; Caſſia, Manna, and Tamarinds, by coction corrupt: Diagridium alſo, when cocted, is without vertue, nor eaſily commiſcible: and yet by *Meſue*'s ancient deſcription, theſe were all thus prepared, and confuſedly mixed, without art or order. Wherefore we have extracted this deſcription from *Fernelius*, as being much better when made, and much eaſier to make, without which, no Pharmacopoly ſhould be once found: And notwithſtanding this ſame Rhythmical admonition of a certain Verſificator:

Non eris illuſus, teneas ſi quod tenet uſus.

When the uſe is prave, it muſt be changed; and that mutation is good, which is from good to better.

Meſue requires to this confection, the Whey of Goats-milk, but defines not how much: yet we may aſſume the Whey of Aſſes milk in its ſtead; and if that be wanting, of Cows-milk: in two pounds whereof, the Simples muſt be macerated and cocted, and they will depoſe their faculties therein. The pulps of Raiſins and Plums muſt be diſſolved in the colature; the Honey, Sugar and ſucce of Fumatory, muſt be all cocted therein, above the conſiſtence of a Syrupe: the reſt muſt be added as the deſcription ſhews; it is eaſie enough.

This confection purges both the Biles, and ſalt phlegm; and thence conduces to the Canker, Leproſie, Raving, Melancholy, Tetter, Itch, Scab, and ſuch cutaneous affections. *Vires.*

Barber-Chirurgeons uſe this, to purge all ſuch as are infected with the French diſeaſe; as though all had one temper, and but one humour peccant in all men. But ſuch of them as boaſt more glorioufly, and are by conference with Medicks ſomething more prudent, acknowledge the matter peccant in this diſeaſe, to be various, according to the various natures of the diſeaſed.

CHAP. 10.

Tryphera ſolutiva.

℞ *of Diagridium ʒ x. of the beſt Turbith ʒ j. of the leſſer Cardamomes, Cloves, Cinamon, Mace, of each ʒ iij. yellow Sanders, Liquorice, and ſweet Fennel-ſeed, of each ʒ ß. * Acorus, Squinant, of each ʒ j. the * Winter-bark of Citron condited, Roſe-leaves, of each ʒ iij. of Violets ʒ ij. of flag. Penidees ʒ iiij. Loaf-ſugar ℔ ß. the whiteſt Honey deſpumed in the Juyce of Apples ℔ j. with which make it into an Electuary.*

The COMMENTARY.

The acception of the word *Tryphera*, ſeems to be contrarily taken by *Meſue*; whoſe Trypheræ, as he deſcribes them, are not delicate, as the word denotes, but grateful in colour and ſapour, and

incommendable in faculties, I exhibit one indued with all these dowries; for its sapour is very grateful, its colour pleasant, and its faculties eximious, and easily tolerable, by such as need them.

We leave out Ginger, which was wont to be added to Turbith, because we have accumulated many Aromata's, to castigate its ferity, which are more sweet and cordial; which also abate of the fury of Diagridium, especially Roses, Violets, and Santals, which allay also the heat of the Aromata's: Penidia are added for mitigation, Sugar for suavity, and Honey for conservation.

Anton. Landæus, an Apothecary of *Paris*, made it after this form faithfully as I have described it, and exhibited it by my advice to many sick people, who without any insuavity to the mouth, subversion to the stomack, or torsion to the Belly, were thereby successfully purged, and securely liberated from their diseases.

It is most commodious to such who abound with many bilious and pituitous excrements, and can take no purgative Medicaments, but grateful ones: for this confection is not insuave, and yet it potently subduces the Belly, removes obstructions, purges crass and viscid humours, helps compounded Fevers, and all such diseases as arise from phlegm and bile: But it is not so good in the heat of Summer, unless it be drunk in some validly-refrigerative decoction, or other such liquor.

Chap. II.

Diabalzemer; seu Electuarium Sennatum.

℞ *of the roots of Succory, Bugloss, Polypody of the Oak, the bark of the roots of Capers, Grass-roots, Liquorice, Currans, of each ℥ vj. Maiden-hair, Mules-fern, Ceterach, Dodder, Mugwort, Fumatory, Egrimony, Betony, Balm, the flowers of Broom and Violets, of each m. ß. Boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water, till ℔ iij. of the Colature remains; in which infuse and boyl, of the leaves of Senny, the seeds of Carret and Coriander, of each ℥ j. ß. black Hellebore, Turbith, of each ʒ j. ß. Cloves ʒ ij. boyl these, till a third part of the Liquor be consumed: to the Colature, adde ℔ j. ß. of the Sugar; which again boyl, till it comes to above the consistency of a Syrupe: to which adde the infusion of ʒ ß. of choyce of Rhabarb in Steel-water, strongly expressed forth; then adde of the Powders of Senny ʒ ij. of Lapis Lazuli prepared, Cinamon, of each ʒ ß. Sassafras, ʒ j. Pyony-roots, Tamaris, Epithimus, the middle bark of Ash, of each ʒ ij. Sem. Agni Casti, Roman Gith, Spikenard, of each ʒ ij. Rosemary, Stœchados, of each ʒ ij. Make it into an Electuary.*

The Commentary.

Each disease hath its præsidy, but every Dispensatory suppedi-

tates

tates not a Salve for every sore: We shall endeavour now to adde something, wherein many have been defective, and afford an auxiliary for the Hypochondriacal; who, as yet, have been either overlooked, or taken for desperate. This Medicament is concinnated for the affections of the Hypochondriacal, Histerical, Melancholical, and such as venery hath proclaimed French-men. It is named *Diabalzemer*, from Senny its Basis, which the Arabians call *Alkázemer*; then which, no Medicament is more melanagogous; nor purge more tolerable. This we mix partly in Powder, partly in infusion, with such things as discuss flatulency, attenuate humours, remove infarctures, roborate the spleen, liver, and bowels, recreate the faculties, respect the Uterus, obtund some malign quality, and securely propel humours long since congested; not onely melancholical and contumacious ones, but viscid and pituitous also, which sometimes put on the habit of Melancholly, and some adust bilious humours: and therefore we adde Rhabarb and Turbith, that we may with the Melancholical Captain-humour, educe the Pituitous, his companion inseparable, and also the Bilious, which is pedissequous.

And because this Medicament most respects melancholy, we have selected black Hellebore for this black humour; rejecting the white, as more convenient for Phlegm.

The manner of its preparation is easie, and sufficiently demonstrated in the description. But before all be congested into the composition, the Azure-stone calls for some preparation; as thus:

A sufficient quantity thereof must be taken, brayed in a Metalline Morter, washed with common water, dryed in the Sun or hot ashes; then again washed and dryed; and so again, and again, till the water remain limpid; then must it be dryed, and that not ten, but, if need be, twenty times; then let it be washed four, five, or more times in cordial waters; then let it be dryed, and kept for use. For thus its malign quality perishes, and its purgative evades conqueror. In the confection of Alkermes it is burnt, and its purgative faculty exhaled, its cordial onely then remaining, whereof there is use.

Diabalzemer doth miraculously help the Splenical, Melancholical, Hypochondriacal, Maniacal, Epileptical, Histerical, and Elephantical: This frees Widows from their fœtid colours for want of concourse; and venereous Indians from their scarlet Noses, contracted by contact. *Vires.*

Chap. 12.

Hydragogum Eximium.

℞ *of the roots of Orris, Reed, Grass, the barks of the roots of Capers, Asarabacca, Caraway, of each* ℥ *vj. Pimpinel,* * *Maiden-hair, Egrimony, Ceterach, Mugwort, of each m.j. of the flowers of the Peach-tree m.ß. Boyl them in a sufficient quantity of water: In the Colature* * *Polytricus*

*ture infuse and boyl a little, of the leaves of Semy ℥ ij. of the seeds of Carret ℥ ij. boyl the decoction, till it comes to a pinte; to which adde Juyce of Damask-Roses lb ß. Sugar lb ß. Honey despumed in the decoction ℥ x. boyl them to a Syrupe: to which adde these following powders, Manna ℥ ij. Turbith, * Milkwort prepared, of each ℥ j. ß. Ginger ʒ j. Water-flag, Calamus, Aromaticus, of each ʒ j. Mechoacan ℥ ij. the seeds of Dwarf-eldern ℥ ß. and of Sea-Coleworts ʒ iij. Cinamon ʒ ij. make it up into an Electuary.*

* *Esula.*

The Commentary.

Many descriptions we have, which smell more of confusion, then composition, whose effects shew their brangling Authors; and therefore we reject many liquid Electuaries, as either unaccommodated for cure, by their ill composure; or obsolete, for want of custome; picking out such as are better described, and more approved by their sanative effects: As, besides the two former which we have added, this also, which for its excellence is called, The eximious Hydragogal Electuary, which we desire may be alwayes in Pharmacopolies, that it may be ready to open the fluce when the river is stopped, and the banks almost over-run; lest the hydroptical be without præsidy, and drown his vitals in his watry Belly. And because we would have this Medicament perfect, we have added such things as will emend the distemper, remove the obstructions, and roborate the whole of the Spleen and Liver, from which the hydroptical get much of his evil. We have also added some, to discuss flatuosity, and awaken the native calour; Besides many more, which duly prepared, become hydragogous. The form demonstrates the manner of their preparation.

Vires. This may be safely given to such as labour under the Dropsie; for it educes watry humours without violence; and is a most accommodate Purgative for all diseases arising from thence.

The Parisian common people used to flock to a woman-Pharmacopolist, who gave them a certain Powder, to purge the hydroptical of their watry and serous humours; but few or none recovered.

SECT.

SECT. II.

Of Hieræ.

SOme Purgative Compounds were for their excellent effects, by the Greeks called Hieræ, that is, Holy, and Great; for they are indued with great vertues, and cure great diseases: but they are most vulgarly denominated from some famous Author; as,

CHAP. I.

Hiera Picra, seu Dialoe Galeni.

℔ of Cinamon, Mace, Asarum, Spikenard, Saffron, Mastick, Squinant, of each ℥ vj. Aloes not washed ℥ 100. or ℔ j. and ℥ ß. the best Honey despumed, the treble quantity, or ℔ iiij. make it into an Electuary.

The COMMENTARY.

This *Hiera* is, by *Galen* its Author, called *Picra*, that is, amare, because of the Aloes, which is its Basis; from which it mutuates its Purgative faculty. We retain the old composition, save that in stead of Xylobalsum, which is scarce to be had, we, by *Fernelius* his advice, substitute Mace; and for the flowers of the sweet Rush, which are not brought to us, the Rush it self: and so we keep to the quantity which *Galen*, or rather *Andromachus*, prescribed to be mixed with the Aloes.

This *Hiera Picra* was most usual at *Rome*; besides other two, which *Galen* sometimes used; in which he detracted, changed, or at pleasure added what exigence called for. But now they are obsolete.

But this yet remains entire, except it be for the wood of Balm, which some take out, and substitute nothing; others the furcles of Lentisks; and others, the fruit of Balm: which is equally rare, therefore no good substitute. But Mace or Sweet-cane may well succeed in its room, and the Hiera no whit less efficacious. *Galen* is perhibited its Author, rather because he celebrated it, then invented it. It is easie to make: the Mastick, Aloes and Saffron must first be brayed apart, then the rest; and afterwards the ingredients must all be mixed in despumed honey, that they may acquire the spissitude of an Electuary.

It califies, incides, attenuates, dryes, deterges, removes obstructions, expurges bilious, pituitous, crass, and viscid humours: it conduces miraculously, helps the affections of the Ventricle, Mesentery, Liver, Head, and Junctures: to each ounce of the compound, put ℈ ij. and g. i. ß. and of the Powder of the rest, g. xv. *Vires.*

CHAP.

Chap. 2.

Hiera Picra with Agarick.

℞ *of the species of Hieræ without Aloes, Agarick trochiscated, of each* ℥ *ß. Aloes not washed* ℥ *j. Honey despumed a treble quantity, or* ℥ *iij. make it into an Electuary according to Art.*

The Commentary.

This Hieræ consists of two benign purgative Medicaments; the one Aloes, which is Cholagogous; the other Agarick, which is Phlegmagogous: For two humours might be too hard for one Medicament; therefore to a mixt distemper, we prescribe a mixt cure, or a compound of mixt qualities. And because *Galens* Hiera Picra is often given to the affections of the Ventricle and Brain, wherein much of crass phlegm lodges, as well as Bile, we have described this Hiera with Agarick, that it may expurge all at once. It is made as the precedent, whose powder is often kept in Pharmacopolies, and when use requires, mixt with Aloes and Honey, or with Aloes, Honey, and Agarick, as the Medicks scope requires.

Vires. But that which admits of Agarick, is useful to many things: for it educes all, but chiefly crass and viscid phlegm, and putrid Bile; it incides humours, takes away infarctures, exonerates the Mesentery, purges the ventricle, resarciates the appetite, helps coction, educes noxious humours from the brain, and cures the Epilepsie, Vertigo and Viligance.

Chap. 3.

Hiera Pachii; or, Pacchius his Hiera. D. Scribon.

℞ *of Stœchados, Horehound, Germander, Agarick, Coloquintida, of each* ℥ *x. Opoponax, Sagapenum, Parsley seeds, long Birthwort, white Pepper, of each* ℥ *v. Cinamon, Spikenard, Myrrhe, Indian leaf, Saffron, of each* ℥ *ß. Honey despumed a treble quantity, or* ℔ *iij. mingle them according to Art into an Electuary.*

The Commentary.

Oribasius attributes this Hiera to *Ruffius*; *Paulus*, to *Archigenus*; *Scribonius Largus*, to *Pacchius*: yet he was not the first Author, but a prudent celebrator thereof, who getting much lucre thereby, kept it to himself as a hidden Secret, till his death: When he was dead, its description, as it is here given, was brought to *Tiberius Cæsar*; from whom *Scribonius* got it, who before that time was by no art able to extort it. *Ætius* calls it sometimes the Hiera of *Archi-*

genus,

genus, sometimes of *Antiochus*; and we call it *Pacchius his Hieræ*: and it is thus made:

Sarpagenum, Opopanax, and Myrrhe, must be macerated a whole night in Hydromel or Wine, rather then Vinegar; then trajected through a strong strainer, that all their impurer parts may be secerned, afterwards mixed with despumed honey, together with other pulverated simples: but Saffron, Agarick, and Coloquintida, must be brayed apart; and in the pulveration of Coloquintida, a drop or two of Oyl put to it, that its vertue may not exhale, and that its pulveration may be more facile: yet its pulp must onely be assumed, and white Horehound rather then black.

Pacchius his *Hiera* is efficacious to many things: for it cures the *Vires.* Epileptical, the furious, vertiginous, cephalalgicous, suspirious, anhelant, comatous, and such as are obnoxious to the Incubus, and other affections of the eyes, ears, and head. It purges also the stomack, emends the affections of the Liver, takes away the sand in the spleen, and diminishes its hardness; auxiliates the diseases of the intestines, discusses or opens impostumes, either already made there, or in making; and moves fluors in such women as can hardly be purged.

CHAP. 4.

Hiera Diacolocynthidos magist. or, The Magisterial Hiera of Diacolocynthis.

℞ *of pulp of Coloquintida* ʒ *j. Agarick, black Hellebore, of each* ʒ *ß. Aloes* ʒ *x. Diagridium, Polypody, Mastick, Opoponax, Bdellium, Sagapenum, of each* ʒ *ij. of the roots of Enula-campane, Cyprus, Angelica, Cloves, Cinamon, Mace, Bay-berries, Juniper-berries, Cardamomes, Majoran, Stœchados, Saffron, Spikenard, of each* ʒ j. *Rose-leaves* ʒ *iij. Honey despumed* ℔ *j. ß. mingle them according to Art.*

The COMMENTARY.

In the Apothecaries Dispensatories, nothing is more confounded, then the descriptions of *Hieræ*, which every one arbitrarily either changes, or denominates wrong. Hence we see the same *Hiera* designed by three names; as that same which is sometimes called the Hiera of *Pacchius*, sometimes the Hiera of *Archigenus*, sometimes of *Ruffius*, and sometimes also of *Diacolocynthis*: and three different Hiera's designed by one name; as this of *Diacolocynthis*, which *Mesue* describes one way, *Nic. Myrepsus* another, and *Fernelius* another. But we prefer the Hiera of *Pacchius* before them all, which we call Magisterial, because of the excellency of its Basis and faculties. He that hath this, may easily be without all the Hiera's which admit of Coloquintida; and it is thus made:

Opoponax, Bdellium, and Sagapenum, must be macerated a whole

whole night, or else a day, in Vinegar, rather then in Wine, because of the heat of those simples which ingrede its composition: then they must be well strained, and the Vinegar resolved upon ashes; the Purgatives must be brayed apart, and a little Oyl of Almonds put to the Coloquintida, lest it molest the Brayer; then the other simples, the hardest first, the Aromata next, all must be mixed with despumed honey to a legitimate spissitude.

Vires. It is of eximious power, in curing the affections of the head, ventricle, and abdomen; which proceed from crude, pituitous, crass, or melancholical humours; but especially sanative of the Apoplexy, Drowzinesse, Lethargy, Palsey, Epilepsie, Incubus, difficulty of Breathing, Cholick, Hypochondriacal Melancholy, and all affections of the Belly arising from vitreous and crass phlegm, and all such as stupifie the senses, or hebescate motion, or both.

SECT. III.

Of solid Electuaries, and Purgative Trochisks.

THose that compose, or rather transcribe Antidotaries or Dispensatories, think they demerit much praise, if without Art or Reason they do congest a heap of Medicaments, depromed from certain Authors. But we have not onely selected all, but picked out of the most select, such as long use and Reason have best approved of. Whereunto we have added, and from which we have detracted what Reason assured us was useless, or Experience told us was rare and unknown: And this not onely in the descriptions of the Ancients, but of the more Recents also; for it often happens, that grave men both write and speak from others relations, and so hold and defend for truth, what they have miss-heard, or not known. And I therefore describe fewer Medicaments in this Shop, because I would be able to give the legitimate Composition, the true manner and reason of it, the illustration and faculties upon good grounds and experience.

CHAP. 1.

Electuarium Diacarthami; or, The Electuary of Diacarthamum, or Diacnic. Def. Arnal. Villan.

℞ *of the pith of the seeds of Bastard-saffron, Hermodactyls, Pul Diatrag. frigid. of each ʒ ß. Turbith ʒ vj. Ginger, Manna Granata, of each ʒ ij. Diagridium ʒ iij. Sugar-Candy, the Medulla of Quinces condited, Honey of Roses, of each ʒ j. white Sugar ʒ iij. ß. make it according to Art into a solid Electuary tabulated.*

The COMMENTARY.

The description of Diacarthamum is as much controverted, as it is used; which you shall scarce finde alike in two Authors. *Joubertus* describes it three manner of wayes; but Use and Reason assure us, that one of them is more certain safe, which we have borrowed from *Nic. Præpositus*, which is somewhat changed from that which its Author *Arnaldus Villanovinus* gave of it.

It takes its name from *Carthamus*, which is its Basis; though Turbith in plenty and faculties exceed it: Both their qualities are intended by the adjection of Ginger. Diagridium and Hermodactyls do not onely draw phlegm, but bile also from the articles; their efferous quality is castigated by condited Quinces flesh: Manna, Diatragacanthum and Sugar, are put to leniate and temper, to deterge and move phlegm, and Honey to conserve.

Diacarthamum must be thus prepared: The seed of Carthamus must first be decorticated, then brayed; afterwards Ginger, Turbith, and Hermodactyls must be pulverated; then Diagridium, and Candid Sugar, and Quinces, the Honey, Manna, and Cidoniatum must be then mixt with the Sugar, cocted to the consistence of a Syrupe whilst hot, and afterwards the powders, that they make a solid Electuary, to be discinded into tabels.

It is of frequent use, and is kept ready almost in all Pharmacopolies: it purges pituitous humours potently, not onely from the ventricle and Mesentery, but also from more remote parts: if it be assumed in greater quantity, it detracts also something of Bile: wherefore it helps not onely in quotidian, and meerly pituitous Fevers, but in complicated also; which arise from the mixture of divers humors. *Vires.*

CHAP. 2.

Elect. de succo Rosar. or, An Electuary of the succe of Roses.

℞ *of the depurated Juyce of red Roses ℔ j. Sugar ℔ j. ß. boyl them into a solid Electuary; to which add of the three Sanders, of each ʒ ß. Mastick ʒ ij, ϑ ij. dry Citron-pill ʒ j. Camphyr ϑ j. make of these a hard and solid Electuary, which roll out upon a board, and last into Tallets, every one to weigh ʒ j. ß. or ʒ ij. at least.*

The Commentary.

I am not he, who for oſtentation would change the old, and promulgate new ſentences, but to paſs my judgement on ſuch things as are ſpoken or written without reaſon: and here I challenge liberty to Philoſophize.

And now I ſeeing this Electuary deſcribed by *Myrepſus*, diſcerpted from *Salernitanus*, variouſly patched, and ill concinnated by the more recent; I feared not to diminiſh the too heavy weight, augment the too light, and change the inept things: All which I did with conſultation, not precipitantly; I ſeeing no reaſon that the ſucce of Roſes ſhould be of equal weight with the Sugar, I diminiſh the quantity of the ſucce, and augment the Sugar; well knowing, that a pound of Sugar will ſooner and better be coćted to the conſiſtence of a Syrupe, or an Electuary, in half a pound of Roſes ſucce, then in a whole one; and its faculties will not be much more imbecile, but roborative enough.

Something alſo I have detracted from the weight of the Santals, and have ſubſtituted a little of the Pill of Oranges in its ſtead; partly to conciliate more ſuavity, and partly to arceate putretude, and recreate the vitals. Some leave out Camphyre, becauſe of its ſtrong ſent: but I approve of it; for its halite quality makes the Electuary more grateful, and its permeative quality more efficacious.

I have, in ſtead of Spodium, which cannot be had, Antiſpodium, which being onely burnt Ivory, is not proper, ſubſtituted Maſtick, to roborate the Ventricle, and caſtigate Scammony.

Burnt Ivory is fooliſhly and ineptly called Spodium, and ſubſtituted for the fictitious Arabian Spodium: for, let Apothecaries believe as they will, there is but one true Spodium, and that is the Græcian Pompholix, which ſhould never be introſumed. The Arabian Interpreters are alſo miſerably out, in rendring *Tabaxir* Spodium, and Spodium Burnt Ivory: for *Tabaxir* is the ſucce or concreted liquor of certain Trees, or very craſs and tall Reeds, which by the agitation of the wind, and their mutual colliſion, ſometimes conflagrate; from which burning, *Avicenna* mendicated his Spodium, or rather Tabaxir, which his infidous Interpreter *Cluſius* calls his Spodium. But we get not this Tabaxir from *India*, nor the aſhes of theſe burnt Canes from *Arabia*; neither would they be of much uſe in Medicine, if we had them: nor yet doth burnt Ivory reſpond to them as a ſubſtitute; therefore they muſt either be quite expunged, or ſome other congruous Medicament placed in their ſtead.

In the vulgar deſcription, there are ℈xxxvj. of Diagridium, for each ounce of the compoſition: But in our emendation, there accedes onely half a dragm of Diagridium, to each ounce of the compound; and yet it is ſo valid and potent, that it may well retain its old name, The ſpur of Purgatives; for, in a ſmall mole, it hath much of efficacy.

The

The manner of its preparation, is the same with Diacarthamum, and that is apparent enough, by the description of the form: some take onely the distilled succe of Roses, wherein they macerate their Tragacanthum, and extract a Mucago for the comprehension of the Powders, and the concinnation of their solid Electuary. But I had rather inspissate the succe in S. *Maries* Bath, to the spissitude of a Rob, that so it might better concorporate the Powders. If any will use unprepared Scammony for Diagridium, he may upon good grounds leave the wonted quantity of Roses succe.

This Electuary is meerly cholagogous, and by educing choler potently, cures such affections as proceed from that humour. *Vires.*

CHAP. 3.

Electuarium de Citro solutivum.

℞ *of the bark of Citron-Pill condited, of the Conserve of Violets, of the Conserve of Bugloss-flowers, Pul Diatrag. frigid. of each ℥ ß. Turbith ℥ v. Ginger, ℥ ß. Senny ℥ j. sweet Fennel-seed ℥ j. white Sugar dissolved in Rose-water, and cocted according to Art ℥ x. make it into a solid Electuary.*

If this our restituted description arride not any one so well, as that antick one of *Stephanus Arnaldus*, or *Guidon Cauliacus*, he may here take it:

℞ *of the Conserve of Violets, of Borrage, of each ℥ ij. the roots of Bugloss, Citron-Pill condited, of each ℥ j. Ginger ℥ ß. Pul Diatrag. frigid. ℥ ij. Diagridium ℥ iij. Turbith ℥ ß. Senny ℥ v. Sugar ℥ x. Let this Electuary be made into Tablets, every one weighing ℥ ß. which is the just dose.*

The COMMENTARY.

This laxative Electuary of Oranges, is a Catholical, or Universal Cathartick: for it draws both the Biles and Phlegm potently, and without molestation; especially that which we described first: wherein every Purgative hath its castigator, as Senny, Fennel, Turbith, Ginger, Diagridium, condite Orange-Pill, Conserves, and Rose-water, wherein the Sugar is cocted: All which roborate the heart and faculties, and mitigate the said Purgatives. The Powder of Diatragacanthum is put in to leniate, the Sugar to deterge, leniate, and conserve.

We have also added four times the quantity of Orange-Pill, both because it is its basis, and because it recreates the principal parts of the body. We also thought good to augment the quantity of Diagridium, to bear some proportion with the rest: otherwise, its Purgative faculty being already imbecile, would be made more im-

impotent by the increment of the Conserves: the Basis then of the Medicament, the roboratives, purgatives, and castigatories being by us rightly described, the whole, as amended, may be of most safe, easie, and approved use.

The Sugar should be cocted a little below the consistence of a solid Electuary, because of the quantity of powders.

It is of very much use: for it much conduces in tertian and semitertain Agues; purges the stomack, expels the prave humours abiding in the Hypochondria; takes away loathsomness towards meat, emends the ill disposition of the body, roborates the heart and ventricle, and absumes the excrementitious humidity of the bowels.

VVe purpose in our next book, to treat of Trochisks, which are all roborative, or alliotical, or alterative; save some few, which are purgative: of which, our method leads us to treat briefly in this Section.

Chap. 4.

Trochisci de Rhabarbaro; or, *Trochisks of Rhabarb.*

℞ *of the best Rhabarb* ℥ *x. of the Juyce of Egrimony, bitter Almonds, of each* ℥ *ß. Rose-leaves* ℥ *iiij. Spikenard, Anise-seed, Madder-roots, Wormwood,* * *Asarabacca, Smallage-seed, of each* ℥ *j. Let them be formed according to Art into Troches, every one weighing* ℥ *j.*

*The Roots.

The Commentary.

Few such Pastils are kept in Pharmacopolies, seeing when use calls for them, Medicks can take some Rhabarb, and mix it with simples fit for their purpose: but prudent Apothecaries, who are not given to avarice, will not want such; whose use is salutary, and description good.

But that they may be duly made, the Rhabarb and Folesfoot must first be brayed small, that they may better pervade the Liver, the infractures of the Mesentery, and the passages of the Uterus and Reins: The rest must also be pulverated very small, and made into a mass, with a sufficient quantity of the succe of Egrimony, whereof Trochisks of any figure may be formed. If the definite quantity of Egrimonies succe be not sufficient for the receipt of the powders, it may be augmented, that all may be better subacted; and the Trochisks, when concinnated, must be dryed and kept.

Vires. Trochisks of Rhabarb are good against the cold and bilious affections, the obstructions, dolours, tumours, and depraved actions of the Liver: they help also the present or the imminent Dropsie, and the Jaundies.

Chap.

CHAP. 5.

Trochisci de Agarico; *or, Trochisks of Agarick.* D.Gal.

℞ *of the whitest Agarick grated small* ℥ *ij. or as much as thou pleasest: macerate it in white-wine, in which there hath been Ginger infused, and thereof make a soft mass, and of it, Troches; which when dry, let them be again pulverated, and with the same wine, again redacted to a paste; of which form Troches for future use.*

The COMMENTARY.

Agarick is variously prepared by *Mesue*, with sweet Wine, with Oxymel of Squills, with gemmeous Salt, with Whey of Milk, with Carrets, and other simples.

Galen forms it into Trochisks, with lesser, easier, and more commodious Preparation; which being of much use in Pharmacy, we have here described, and approve of these as best: some mix gemmeous Salt with them, that with its weight it may compel the Agarick to the bottom of the Ventricle, that by its absterstive faculty it may help purgation, and excite its slow faculty: But Ginger and Wine do not onely serve to promote its vomitory quality, but also stimulate its purgative faculty; attenuate viscid and crass humours, and attract them from remoter parts. Ginger also, by the tenuity of its parts, causes perviation; for the Agarick, by its heat, helps purgation, and by its aromaticity, recreates the Ventricle, heart, and noble parts; as Wine also, which by its ponderous substance cohibits the levity of the Agarick: by reason whereof, it delabes slowly to the bottom of the Ventricle; and the supernatant is sometimes solely excluded with humours.

Trochisks of Agarick purge pituitous humours, not onely from the first region of the Body, but from remote parts also, if taken in larger quantity. *Vires.*

CHAP. 6.

Trochisci Alhandal; *or, Trochisks of Coloquintida.* D. Mes.

℞ *of the pulp of Coloquintida purged from its seeds* ℥ *x. let it be cut small, and rubbed with* ℥ *j. of Oyl of Roses, Gumme-Arabick, Thraganth, Bdellium, of each* ℥ *vj. macerate them three or four dayes in Rose-water, or so long till they be perfectly dissolved; then with the aforesaid pulp, and part of this mussilage, make it into Trochisks; which dry in the shade, and keep.*

The

The Commentary.

Trochisks of Coloquintida or Alhandal, as the Arabians have, may be with ſucceſs injected into all compoſitions which receive Coloquintida; for this cannot be aſſumed ſimply, and uncaſtigated, without moleſtation; but formed into Trochisks, and concinnated with others, with ſafety: for thus prepared, it ingredes the compoſition of other Medicaments, whoſe faculties it acuates, and makes them educe phlegm, and other craſs and viſcid humours more potently.

But that theſe Trochisks may be right made, the whiteſt and light pulp of Coloquintida muſt be ſelected, and not onely incided, but pulverated ſmall: being craſs, and introſumed, it moves the Dyſentery, and abrades the inteſtines from ſuch portions as are contained in its gyres and anfractures. *Meſue* in his old Book preſcribes onely ℥ x. of the pulp of Coloquintida; but the place is ſuſpected for erroneous, and ℥ x. put for ʒ x. for otherwiſe the quantity of Bdellium, and other Gummes, of each whereof he hath put ℥ ij. muſt be leſſened; which is no more then ſufficient for ten ounces.

Vires. Theſe Trochisks potently purge viſcid phlegm, and other glutinous humours; and therefore conduce much to the cholical dolour ariſing from vitreous and viſcid phlegm; they cure the Apoplexy, Vertigo, Epilepſie, difficulty of breathing, and cold and arthritical Diſeaſes, not yielding to common Medicaments.

We ſhall in the ſequent Book treat of other alterative and roborative Trochisks, and ſolid Purgatives, as Pills.

SECT.

SECT. IV.

Of Pills.

WE have in the former Sections given liquid and ſolid Electuaries, accommodated to all diſeaſes and morbifical cauſes. Now our Method leads us to treat of Pills, which many prefer before all other Medicaments. And here we ſhall begin with ſuch as receive nothing that is Purgative, but Aloes; then paſs to ſuch as admit Aloes and Agarick; then to ſuch as receive Rhabarb, then Senny, then Turbith, Diagridium, Coloquintida, or ſome more potent Cathartick. We begin with Aloes, becauſe it is the Baſis of all or moſt Pills; and becauſe it recreates the bowels and noble parts, and can ſcarce be otherwiſe introſumed: for being very bitter and ingrateful, it can ſcarce be aſſumed in a liquid potion, but is given in form of Pills, that it may be more eaſily devoured; as we have ſhewn in Chap. 14. Book 3. of our Inſtitutions.

CHAP. I.

Pilulæ ſtomachicæ; Stomachical, or Pills before Meat. D. Meſ.

℞ *of the beſt Aloes* ℥ *vj. Maſtick, Roſes, of each* ℥ *ij. with Syrupe of Roſes, or Wormwood; make it into a ſolid maſs.*

The COMMENTARY.

All Pills which receive of Purgatives onely Aloes, or Aloes and Rhabarb, being clement, and drawing humours onely from the firſt region, and helping the ſtomack, are called Stomachical, or Pills before meat; becauſe they may at any time, a little before meat, be ſafely taken: of which ſort are thoſe Aloes in the ſucce of Roſes, coacted into a maſs with Wine; as alſo thoſe of *Scaliger*, *Ruffus*, and Pills of Hiera. But theſe we have given, being moſt uſual, and eaſie to make, may ſerve for a rule, for all ſtomachical Pills that ſhould be kept in Pharmacopolies: but they ſhould be made onely in ſmall quantity, that they may be alwayes new and freſh; for by long keeping they become too dry, and their faculties duller. The maſs muſt be involved in a piece of Leather well oyled, and then repoſed in a Tin-pot well ſhut.

All Pills and other Purges ſhould be given on an empty ſtomack, eſpecially ſuch as ſhould draw noxious humours from remoter parts, which may be aſſumed long before or after meat, as after the firſt ſleep; but ſtomachical Pills not ſo: for it is enough that they be taken one hour before break-faſt, or other meals, that the Belly may be gently ſubduced, and phlegm, or other prave humours, contained in the Ventricle, or other vicine parts, be educed, which all *Vires.* ſtomachical Pills effect, roborating the ſtomack, reſarciating the appetite, and exciting it to reſt.

Chap. 2.

Pilulæ Ruffi; commonly called Peſtilential.

℞ *of the beſt Aloes ʒ ij. Myrrhe ʒ j. Saffron ʒ ß. and with the beſt* * *Oinomel, make it into a maſs.*

* *Honey & Wine.*

The Commentary.

There is ſcarce any Medicament, but it is by ſome changed from that it was by its Author at firſt made. Theſe Pills are compounded by few, but variouſly changed by many: for ſome adde a third part of Myrrhe, others a fourth, and ſome onely an eighth: ſome mix Saffron and Myrrhe in equal weight; others take onely half as much Saffron as Myrrhe, and half as much Myrrhe as Aloes: according to which opinion, moſt famous Medicks preſcribe, and we have formed our deſcription.

Rondeletius denies, that *Ruffus* was the Inventor of theſe Pills; for he tradited a Potion, rather then Pills, as *Paulus Ægineta* evidences. He indeed deſcribed a certain Medicament of Aloes, Myrrhe, and Ammoniacum Storax, brayed in odorate Wine, which he calls a Potion: yet he exhibits it in the magnitude of a Bean, which concords not with potulent meaſures, but an uſual expreſſion for the quantity of ſolid things. And hence the later age, upon good grounds, pronounces *Ruffus* the Author of theſe Pills. We ſubſtitute generous Oinomel, in ſtead of aromatical Wine, for the reception of the Powders, which is more convenient; for if they ſhould be ſubacted onely with Wine, the maſs would acquire a ſtony hardneſs. Syrupe of Wormwood is alſo a fit recipient for them.

Vires. *Ruffus* his Pills are called Peſtilential, becauſe they conduce rather to the prevention, then curation of the Peſtilence; for Aloes frees the Body from excrements, Myrrhe vindicates it from putretude, and Saffron recreates the heart and vital faculties: but they very little profit when the Peſtilence is begun; for then more cordial, potent, and alexipharmacal Medicaments are required.

Chap. 3.

Pills of Maſtick.

℞ *of Maſtick ʒ ß. Aloes ʒ x. Agarick ʒ iij. mix theſe with vinous Hydromel into a ſolid maſs.*

The

The COMMENTARY.

Mesue calls all the Pills that receive Mastick, Stomachical, whereof he gives not onely various descriptions: But his Commentators, and such as wrote of the same Subject, and promulgated Antidotaries also, one while augmenting the Aloes, another time the Agarick, sometimes the Mastick, or else diminishing or adjecting.

The description we have here given, is more usual and safe; whereunto, if you adde a little Diamoschum, they will be Pills of Aloes, according to the vulgar edition: But the Agarick should be first brayed; as also the Aloes and Mastick, and subacted with Hydromel, rather then with Wine, both for efficacy and conservation.

It is thought, that *Petrus de Abano* was their Author, who would not denominate them from their exuberant Aloes, lest many Pills of the same name should be confounded.

They purge the stomack gently, roborate excellently, detract and expel all excrementitious humours from the Abdomen without molestation; cure the dolour of the head, and many affections of the Uterus. *Vires.*

CHAP. 4.

Pilulæ de tribus Solutivis; or, Pills of the three Solutives.

℞ *of Rhabarb, Aloes, Agarick, of each ℥ iij. after they are beaten fine, take Syrupe of Roses solutives, as much as will suffice to bring it into a mass.*

The COMMENTARY.

These are called the Pills of the three Solutives, because they consist onely of three Purgative Simples, and Syrupe of Roses, which indeed is purgative, but not simple. They are indeed more validly stomachical then the former, because of the Agarick; which, if it be first made into Trochisks, as it should be, will be more incisive and attenuative, but less vomitory: The manner of their preparation is easier, then that it should need explication.

They purge bilious, pituitous, crass and viscid humours from the Ventricle, cavities of the Liver and Spleen, and from the Mesentery; they roborate the stomack, and revoke appetite: and let this serve for more that might be said of them. *Vires.*

Chap. 5.

Pilulæ Imperiales D. Fern. *or,* Fernelius *his Imperial Catholical Pills.*

℞ *of the best Aloes* ℥ *ij. choyce Rhubarb* ℥ *j. ß. Agarick trochiscated, Senny picked, of each* ℥ *j. Cinamon* ℥ *iij. Ginger* ℥ *ij. Nutmegs, Cloves, Spikenard, Mastick, of each* ℥ *j. and with Syrupe of Violets, let them be subacted into a mass.*

The Commentary.

The Author did not without reason give this egregious denomination to these Pills, which from the multiplicity of their faculties, and their benignity in acting, merit a more noble title. They may also be called Catholical Pills, because they universally expurge all humours from all parts, as the Liver, Spleen, Ventricle, Brain; and if in greater quantity, from parts farther dissited.

Nic. Præpositus describes more of the same name, which are seldome made, because they consist of more things, and are less efficacious.

Vires. These Imperial Pills of *Fernelius*, purge, roborate, and liberate all the bowels from infarctures, educe all noxious and obvious humours, and help the œconomy of all nutritive parts.

Chap. 6.

Pilulæ de Eupatorio majores; or, The greater Pills of Egrimony.

℞ *of yellow Myrabolans, the Juyces of Egrimony and Wormwood, of each* ℥ *iij. Rhabarb* ℥ *iij. ß. Mastick* ℥ *j. Saffron* ℥ *ß. Aloes* ℥ *v. of the Juyce, or rather Syrupe of Endive, as much as will suffice to bring it into a mass.*

The Commentary.

Mesue describes two forms of these Pills; the former which we have here inserted, he calls the greater, the other the lesser; which are seldome (as both indeed) prepared. But these being very commendable for the Jaundies, and all obstructions of the Liver, should be kept in Pharmacopolies, that it might go better with the diseased. They should rather be denominated from Rhabarb, which is the Basis in the composition: But Authors put names upon the compounds they invent, rather according to their own wills, then valid reason.

For the due making of them, the succe of true Egrimony and Worm-

Wormwood should by evaporation be inspissated, exiccated, and afterwards pulverated; then mixed with other Medicaments, brayed apart; then all subacted into a fit mass, with Syrupe of Endive or Succory. They act perperously, who following *Mesue*'s advice, put the Powders into water of Endive, and so coact them into a mass.

These greater Pills of Egrimony do not onely cure the Jaundies, but periodical and circularly-reiterated Fevers also. *Vires.*

CHAP. 7.

Pilulæ sine quibus esse nolo; or, Pills without which I would not be. D. Nic. Præpos.

℞ *of the best Aloes ʒ xiiij. the five sorts of Myrobalans, Rhabarb, Senny, Agarick trochiscated, Mastick, Wormwood, Dodder, Rose-leaves, Violets, of each ʒ j. Diagridium ʒ vj. ß. Honey despumed with the Juyce of Fennel, as much as suffices to bring it into a mass.*

The COMMENTARY.

These are also Universal, as well as the Imperial; but more cholagogous and valid, because of their Diagridium. Their denomination being noted by a certain circumlocution, shew the efficacy and necessity of their use, which no man, or Master of a Family, that mindes his sanity, should be without. Their ingredients are such as deduce humours from all principal parts of the Body, and roborate those parts. Rhubarb is their Basis, if we respect their better part; Scammony, if their more valid and exuperant; and Myrabolambs, if the weight of fruits.

That they may be duly made, Scammony, Aloes, Agarick, and Mastick should be pulverated apart; the rest partly alone, and partly together. They must not be subacted with the water or succe of Fennel, as the Author would; but with Honey, that they may not too soon become dry and marcid.

These Pills educe Phlegm, and both the Biles, from all parts, but especially from the head, eyes, and senses: and thence they lessen the suffusions of the eyes, conserve sight, and cure the pain and noise in the ears. *Vires.*

CHAP. 30.

Pilulæ Aureæ; or, Golden Pills. D. N. Myr.

℞ *of the best Aloes and Diagridium, of each ʒ v. of red Roses and Smallage-seed, of each ʒ ij. ß. the seeds of Anise and sweet Fennel, of each ʒ j. ß. Powder of Coloquintida, Saffron, and Mastick, of each ʒ j. and with Gumme-Thraganth dissolved in Rose-water, or rather with*

with Honey of Roſes; make it up into a maſs of a legitimate conſiſtence.

The Commentary.

Nic. Præpoſitus doth juſtly inſult over *Nic. Myrepſus*, the Author of theſe Pills, That he deſcribed ſo great a quantity of Diagridium, inſomuch that the place is ſuſpected of Errour; where I believe he would have ſaid ℈ v. not ʒ v. which may be gathered from his very words, in the end of this 107 Chapter, where defining the doſis of theſe Pills, he thus writes: Let them be made like a Peaſe, with the water of the infuſion of Tragacantha, and nine or eleven of them taken at night with Mulſe or Wine: for this quantity is at leaſt ʒ j. ſſ. or ʒ ij. which admits of almoſt ʒ ſſ. of Diagridium. However, uſe hath ſo prevailed, that they are made according to the manner deſcribed: yet with this rule, That they be exhibited in a juſt and idoneous weight, according to the Medicks prudence, and diſeaſed's ſtrength; to whom, if four or five grains of Diagridium would purge him, ſo much of theſe Pills muſt be given, as receives juſt ſo much Diagridium.

Nic. Præpoſitus did well in the adjection of Maſtick, for the roboration of the Ventricle, againſt the attact of ſuch violent Purgatives. Tragacanthum is alſo juſtly commixed, to mitigate the ferity of Scammony: but the Trochisks of Alhandal were ſafer, then Coloquintida uncaſtigated; all muſt be pulverated ſmall, and coacted into a maſs of a legitimate conſiſtence, with Honey of Roſes: for ſo it will be ſofter, then if it had been ſubacted with the diſſolved Gumme of Tragacantha.

They are called Golden Pills, rather from their croceous colour, then their excellent effect: for all Medicaments which potently ſubduce the Belly, and validly expurge humours, are not preſently denominated aureous or eximious, but ſuch onely as with facility, and without moleſtation, extract noxious ones.

Vires. Golden Pills are very cholagogous; for they potently draw Bile and Phlegm alſo, not onely from the inferiour, but alſo ſuperiour Ventricle, and the head; and thence they purge the ſenſes, and acuate the eye-ſight.

Chap. 9.

Pilulæ de Agarico; or, Pills of Agarick. D. Avic.

℞ *of Agarick ʒ iij. Orris-root, Horehound, of each ʒ j. Turbith, Hieræ Picræ, of each ʒ iiij. Coloquintida, Sarcocollæ, of each ʒ ij. Myrrhe ʒ j. mingle it with as much Sape as will ſuffice to make it into a maſs.*

Chap.

The COMMENTARY.

Nic. Præpositus addes Mastick to these Pills; the Commentators upon *Mesue* like not of it: *Fernelius* approves of its use, and transcribes their description out of *Præpositus*. *Joubertus* disapproves of it, but gives no reason. I think it is neither hurtful, nor greatly profitable: for if it be exploded, the Ventricle cannot want roboratives, as long as Hiera, Myrrhe, Sape, and Orris, ingrede the compound: if it be admitted, it will neither obtund the faculties of the other, nor much better them.

Their first Author was *Avicenna*, who described them with Myrrhe; which *Mesue* omits, as *Bauderonius* observes in his Book, where he describes Agarick and Coloquintida, without any express preparation: But it is best to take them both, when made into Trochisks, and so bray and mix them. The Powder of *Galens Hieræ Sacra* must be taken with Honey, white Horehound selected, and the Root of that Orris, whose flower is cæruleous, which *Avicenna* calls the Celestial Lilly. The Purgatives must be pulverated apart; the rest partly so, partly together; and then all mixed together with Sape.

Pills of Agarick purgeth phlegm potently from all parts, conduces to the head and breast; and thence cures the sleepy Disease, Catarrhs, Vertigo, and such affections as proceed from cold humours, but especially difficult breathing; for which end *Avicenna* invented them. *Vires.*

CHAP. 10.

Pilulæ Cochiæ, D. Rhasis.

℞ *of the Powder of simple Hieræ* ʒ x. *Coloquintida* ʒ iij. ℈ j. *Scammony prepared* ʒ ij. ß. *Turbith, Stœchados, of each* ʒ v. *and with Syrupe of Stœchados make it up into a mass.*

The COMMENTARY.

The Pills of Cochia, are not so called simply from the grain which the Greeks call κόκκος, but because they are round and small like Pepper-corns; after which manner, all Pills were wont to be made: and though they be now greater, yet we give them the same name, as well as the same description. Some think them excessively purgative, because of the greater quantity of Diagridium. And seeing Pharmacopolists should have gentle purges for such as are delicate, and valid ones for the stronger; I would have made them as *Rhasis* hath described them; for they may be given in such small quantity, that they will not over-purge the Belly, but educe onely noxious humours.

Some

Some doubt in their mixtion, whether *Galens Hiera Picra* ſhould be taken, or ſome other made: We, for many reaſons, which for brevities ſake we omit, judge no other Hiera more convenient, valid, or better: but it is ſafer to admit the Trochisks of Alhandal, then Coloquintida, unprepared; and if Syrupe of Stœchas be not in readineſs, which indeed few keep; then the Powders may be ſubacted in Honey, with the decoction of Stœchas deſpumed, and coacted to the conſumption of its aqueous humidity. They are made as the precedents.

Vires. Theſe Pills purge partly bilious, partly pituitous humours; not onely from the head, becauſe of Stœchas, which is more hepatical then cephalical; but alſo from other parts, wherein ſuch humours are contained, for they potently educe them from any part.

Chap. II.

Pilulæ de Hermodactylis majore; or, The greater Pills of Hermodactyls. D. Meſ.

℞ *of Hermodacts, Aloes, yellow Myrabolans, Turbith, Coloquintida, Bdellium, Sagapenum, of each ℥ vj. Caſtor, Sarcocolla, Euphorbium, Opoponax, the ſeeds of Rue and Smallage, of each ℥ iij. Saffron ℥ j. ß. with the Juyce of Coleworts make them into a maſs.*

The Commentary.

Theſe Pills, which take their names from Hermodactyls, are very uſual, and onely ſufficient for the inveterate dolours of the arteries, and more efficacious therein, then thoſe we call arthetical Pills: yea, they are more ſecurely ſanative, then ſuch as are denominated from Sagapenum, Opoponax, or Sarcocolly; ſo that we ſhall not need to deſcribe theſe.

For their due preparation, Sagapenum and Opoponax muſt be melted in the ſucce of Coleworts; then tranſmitted through a linen cloth, and then a little cocted; then muſt the Powders of other ſimples be mixed in the ſucce cocted with Honey; and all brayed, ſubacted, and handled by hands anointed with oyl together, till they acquire a due conſiſtence: They may alſo be rightly ſubacted with the Eclegm of Cauls.

Vires. Pills of Hermodactyls potently evel craſs and ſerous humours from all extream parts, but eſpecially from the articles; and conduce to the cold diſeaſes of the head, nerves, and junctures.

Chap.

CHAP. 12.

Pilulæ Agregativæ, seu Polychrestæ; Agregative, or Pills of much use. D. Mes.

℞ *of Aloes, Turbith, of each ℥ vj. of Diagridium ℥ v. of Rhabarb, and yellow Myrabolans, of each ℥ iiij. of the whitest Agarick, Troch. Alhandal, Polypody, Chebulan, and Indian Myrabolans, of each ℥ ij. Mastick, Rose-leaves, Dodder of Thyme, Anise-seed, Ginger, Sal Gem, of each ℥ ℈ j. Juyce of Egrimony and Wormwood, of each ℥ ij. with the Syrupe of the Juyce of Damask-Roses, make it up into a mass to keep.*

The COMMENTARY.

We hold to the ancient description of *Mesue*, and change onely the order of the Simples, and substitute the Syrupe of Roses, for the subaction of the composition, in stead of the Electuary of Roses.

Mesue gives three descriptions of Pills of this name; the first whereof is most usual, and prepared almost in all Shops; the other two, both greater and lesser agregatives, are omitted. They are called agregative Pills, because of the agregation of many faculties; as also Polychrestæ, and Catholical, because they are of much use, and expurge all humours.

The manner of their mixtion is manifest; the roots must be first brayed, then the fruits, and afterwards the seeds; onely Rhabarb and Agarick must be prepared apart, the Trochisks whereof are better then the simple. The succe of Egrimony and Wormwood dryed and brayed, must be added thereunto; then all being duly pulverated, must be subacted into a mass, with the Syrupe of pale Roses, which must be involved in leather madefied with Oyl of Almonds. And it is not unreasonable, that the Powders should be received in the Syrupe of pale Roses; partly, because it accedes neareſt the minde of the Author, for nothing is liker Roses then Roses; and partly, because that Electuary of Roses, which *Mesue* mentions, is not now made in shops, seeing its composition is inept, and of no use.

Agregative Pills are not onely conducible to many affections of the head, but also of the Ventricle and Liver: for from these parts they detract and purge pituity, Bile, and Melancholical succe; and therefore help in complex and inveterate Fevers, and complicated diseases. He may be without the Pills of eight things, and five kindes of Myrabolambs, that hath agregative ones. *Vires.*

Chap. 13.

Pilulæ de Fumaria; or, Pills of Fumatory. D. Avic.

℞ *of Citrian, Chebulan, and Indian Myrabolans, Scammony prepared* ℥ *v. Aloes* ℥ *vij. and with the Juyce of Fumatory, make it into a maſs; which when dryed, let it be again beaten up with the ſame Juyce, and the third time with the Syrupe of Fumatory.*

The Commentary.

Theſe Pills are denominated from Fumatory, in whoſe ſucce their Powders muſt be twice or thrice imbuted, and then dryed as oft, according to their Authors preſcript; and at length received, not into the ſame ſucce, as many ignorantly conjecture, but into honey, wherein this ſucce hath been by longer coction diſſipated; or rather into the Syrupe of Fumatory, which is better, and more agreeable to the Authors minde: For unleſs the maſs be ſubacted in the one of theſe, or ſuch a like liquor, the powders will ſoon areſie. The manner of their preparation is eaſie, and apparent enough by the deſcription.

Vires. Pills of Fumatory purge bilious and ſharp humours, ſalt phlegm, and other aduſt and melancholical humours, from which many vices of the skin, as Scab, Itch, Tetters, and the like, ariſe.

Chap. 14.

Pilulæ de Lapide Lazuli; or, Pills of the Azure-ſtone. D. Meſ.

℞ *of Lapis Lazuli prepared* ℥ *vj. Polypody, Dodder of Thyme, Agarick, of each* ℥ *j. black Hellebore, Scammony, Sal Gem. of each* ʒ *ij.* ß. *Cloves, Aniſe-ſeeds, of each* ʒ ß. *Hieræ Picræ* ℥ *xv. and with Syrupo Regis Saboris, make it into a maſs.*

The Commentary.

That every humour might have its peculiar Cathartick, we have exhibited theſe Pills deſcribed by *Meſue*, to educe the melancholical humour. They are denominated from the Azure-ſtone, which is their Baſis; which participating of ſome alien and vomitory quality, needs ſome antecedent preparation: but it muſt not be burned, as in the confection of Alkermes, leſt its purgative faculty periſh, but pulverated very ſmall, and ten or twelve times waſhed, firſt in common water, then in the water of Bugloſs, or the like: after each lotion, it muſt be dryed, and theſe courſes iterated, till it depoſe its vomitory quality, and retain onely its dejective and roborative.

Its manner of preparation, is all one with the former; we substitute gemmeous, in stead of Indian salt, which we want; and King *Sabors* Syrupe, in stead of the water of Endive: for hereby the powders will be more commodiously subacted, and the mass hence concinnated, more safely kept, of a better consistence, more excellent faculties, and more apt to educe Melancholical humours.

These Pills help the Leprosie, Canker, quartane Fever, and all diseases that arise from Melancholical humours, or adust Bile; their faculties are the same, but better then the Pills of *Indies* have, which such may want as keep these. *Vires.*

Chap. 15.

Pilulæ Asajeret. D. Avic.

℞ *of Mastick, yellow Myrabolans, of each* ℥ *ß. Hieræ Picræ* ℥ *j. of the best Aloes* ℥ *ij. and with Syrupe of Stœchados, make it into a mass.*

The Commentary.

These Pills are also desumed from *Avicenna*, who calls them sometimes *Asahajaret*, sometimes *Sejar*; and prescribes them partly to the head, partly to the ventricle: but they draw little from parts more remote, seeing they admit not of such things as potently deduce cold humours.

The powder of *Galens Hiera Picra* must be desumed to their confection, and not *Hiera* in form of an Electuary: The Myrabolambs may be purged from their stones, and brayed apart; then *Chian* Mastick, then the Aloes; all must be received in the Syrupe of Stœchas, and made into a mass.

These Pills are indeed chalagogous, and much profit the impure and languid ventricle; and by consequence, benefit the head, and cure such affections as arise from some sympathy with the stomack, and lowest ventricle.

Pills of Hiera being almost of the same faculties, and easie to be made of the powder of Hiera (which is kept in all Pharmacopolies) by the addition of the Honey of Roses, or the like, in a sufficient quantity, need no particular description; nor those also which take both their name and matter from *Benedicta*, which are seldome or never used; for they are onely nominally eximious, as many Chymical confections, as *Aqua Benedicta*, *Spiritus Aureus*, *Elixir Vitæ*, &c. *Vires.*

Chap. 16.

Pilulæ Alephanginæ; or, *Aromatical or sweet Pills.*

℞ *Cinamon, Cloves, Cardamomes, Nutmegs, Mace, Calamus Aromaticus,*

cus; Galangal, yellow Sanders, Squinant, Rose-leaves, of each ℥ ß.

These must be brayed pretty crasly, and macerated twelve hours in four pounds of water; then boyled on a slow fire, till the third part be absumed: one pound of Aloes must be dissolved in the colature; and when the aqueous humidity is spent by hot ashes, Sun, or an Hypocauste, adde

Myrrhe, Mastick, of each ℥ ß. Saffron ℥ ij. Syrupe of Wormwood, as much as will suffice to make it into a mass.

The Commentary.

We retain a great part of the materials of sweet Pills described by *Mesue:* but we have added Galangal, as most convenient, and detracted the most rare and dear ingredients, as Carpo-balsamum, Xylo-aloes, Cubebs, and the useless ones, as Asarum. We do not allow of Aloes washed in rain-water, because it makes it imbecile: neither do we approve of the quantity of Aromata's and water, wherein they should be cocted, as defined by *Mesue:* for seeing Aromata's endure not coction, without the loss of their vertues; what need is there of cocting them in twelve pounds of water, to the absumption of seven pounds thereof? This is useless and noxious labour: but if they must be onely lightly cocted, to what end is so much water? and if the third part of the water will serve, why not the third part of the Aromata's also?

In this our description, we have the faculties and vertues of the third part of the Aromata's, better then we should have them out of the whole designed by *Mesue*, and confected after his rite, who with the absumption of the water, absumes more of the Aromata's faculties: We have in stead of Wormwood, substituted its Syrupe, for the better coalition of the mass, lest it grow too dry, or contract chinks and marcour.

Thus we have castigated *Mesue*'s sweet Pills, or rather exhibited our own, which are easier to make, better, and of lesser charges: to which, if the maker shall put a little of the liquor of Balm, they shall exceed all Pills in roborating the stomack.

Vires. Sweet Pills are most custom achical, and roborate the nervous parts best: for they at once purge crass, putrid, pituitous, and bilious humours from the ventricle and vicine parts, and recreate the fame; preserve native heat, help coction, discuss flatulency, dispel crudities, resarciate appetite, help cholical dolours, and conduce to old and frigid men at all times, to bilious and young men onely in winter.

CHAP. 17.

Pilulæ de Nitro; or, *Pills of Nitre.* D. Alex. Tral.

℞ *of Aloes, Coloquintida, Scammony prepared, black Hellebore, Bdellium, Gumme Arabick, of each* ℥ *ij. Euphorbium, Nitre, of each* ℥ *ß. and with Juyce of Coleworts or Rhodomel, make it up into a maſs.*

The COMMENTARY.

The later age retains the old deſcription of *Tralian's* Pills, but not the name: for one calls them Pills of Coloquintida, another of Nitre; and this puts more of Nitre in them, the other more of Coloquintida. But ſeeing reaſon and uſe have better approved of the weight of ſimples deſcribed by the more Recent, we ſhall follow the Ancients in the materials, but the Recents in the proportion and weight of theſe materials.

Now for their confection, prepared Coloquintida, that is, Trochisks of Alhandal, muſt be taken. Bdellium muſt be diſſolved, percolated, and coćted in the calified ſucce of Braſſica, till the ſucce be conſumed; then muſt the reſt be mixed, and a ſufficient quantity of the Honey of Roſes mixed with them: Euphorbium muſt not, by the advice of many, be added to the mixture, till thus prepared.

Some quantity of Euphorbium muſt be taken, pulverated ſmall, with a little Oyl of Almonds rubbed on a ſtone; like many Collyries; then collected and included in a Quince excavated, and obvolved with paſte; then coćted in a furnace like Scammony: and thus coćted and repared, prepoſed for uſe.

Pills of Nitre move frigid, craſs, and viſcid humours, from parts more remote: whence they conduce in nervous affections, and help the head loaden with contumacious diſeaſes; as alſo the Epilepſie, Palſey, Vertigo, and affections of the articles, becauſe they educe both flave and black Bile: ſome believe they are good againſt the Indian diſeaſe, and thence too licentiouſly call them Indian Pills. *Vires.*

CHAP. 18.

Pilulæ Mechoacanæ.

℞ *of Mechoacan* ℥ *ß. Turbith* ℥ *iij. Spurge-olive macerated in vinegar and dryed, the ſeeds of Dwarf-Elder, Agarick trochiſkized, of each* ℥ *ij. the roots of* * *Milwort prepared, Maſtick, of each* ℥ *j. ß. Cinamon, and Sal Gem, of each* ℥ *ij.* * *Eſula.*

Let them all be made into powder, that ſame ſubacted into a maſs with white-wine; then let that be dryed and brayed, and again coagulated with the ſucce of the celeſtial Orris, which dry, and bray

again;

again; and then make into paste with the Syrupe of Damask-Roses, and repose it for use.

The Commentary.

Practical Medicks seek out of Dispensatories, as out of a fœcund and fertile Garden, all kindes of Medicaments, for the deletion of all diseases; but they finde a great part of them described without Art or Reason, and onely convenient for few diseases: yea, sometimes ten Medicaments indued with the same faculties, and discriminated onely by divers names. But we have, according to the diversities of diseases and humours, tradited divers Medicaments, desumed not onely out of vulgar Dispensatories, but out of the Writings of many grave men: besides which, we do also exhibit some, proved salutiferous by Reason, Experience, and successful Event; as these Pills prescribed for the Dropsie, which having Mechoacan for their Basis, from thence mutuate their denomination, which is of Simples most præpollent, for educing water by stool. Besides which, there are five more Hydragogous Ingredients, which being all united together, with some cordial and stomachical ones, potently educe serous and watry humours, without læsion of the ventricle, not onely from the Belly, but all parts of the Body. I shall not need to adde the seeds of Keruy, or Palma Christi, and Soldanella, seeing these are enough; nor yet subjoyn the manner of their preparation, seeing it is very easie.

Vives. These Pills educing potently aqueous and serous humours, cure the Dropsie, and all diseases arising from watry phlegm.

Chap. 19.

Pilulæ Fœtidæ. D. Mes.

℞ of *Sagapenum Ammoniacum*, *Opoponax*, *Bdellium*, *Coloquintida*, *Rue-seed*, *Aloes*, * *Dodder of Thyme*, *of each* ʒ *v. Turbith* ʒ *ß. Scammony* ʒ *iij.* () *Milkwort, or Seaspurge prepared*, *Hermodactis*, *of each* ʒ *ij. Ginger* ʒ *j. ß. Cinamon*, *Spikenard*, *Saffron*, *Castoreum*, *of each* ʒ *j. Euphorbium* ℈ *ij. Dissolve the gummes in the Juyce of Leeks, and with it make the powders into a mass.*

*Epithimus

() Esula.

The Commentary.

They are called fœtid Pills, not because they educe fœtid humours, as some think, but because they consist of fœtid Medicaments; as Beavers-stones, wilde Rue, Sagapene, Opoponax, and the like. *Rhasis*, and other Arabians, give other descriptions of them; but we retain this onely as the best, which *Mesue* calls the greater, in reference to a lesser description, which we omitted, as less efficacious.

None,

None, I believe, doubt, whether the seed of wilde Hue, or of Hemlock, should rather ingrede the composition of foetid Pills: for doubtless, Hemlock-seed is poyson; though one *Constantinus* interprets the Arabian words *Harmeli, or Harmela*, Hemlock-seed, when all others say they are wilde Rue-seed; in whose stead, vulgar Rues-seed may be well substituted.

The Hermodactyls should be exotical, whose roots are tubeous and crass, not rugose; which by small contusion might be reduced to farinaceous powder.

They act perperously, who take Ephemerian, or Colchian, or our Hermodactyls, whose roots are flaccid; for their qualities are not commendable, but noxious, killing by small and short suffocation: whence they are called Strangulatories. The best Hermodactyl comes from *Syria*, and is thence called the Syrian Hermodactyl. Esula should be prepared as we have taught before; the Gummes must be melted, percolated, and cocted in the succe of Leeks; and the Powders must be adjected, mixed, and subacted with these, which must be handled with hands madefied with Oyl of Almonds, involved in Leather, and reposed in a Tin-box for use.

Foetid Pills are of much use, for they evacuate frigid, pituitous, crude, and also bilious humours; and thence cure such affections as arise from thence; as the diseases of the Junctures, Podagry, Gonagry, Dolours in the Back-bone, Leprosie, Morphews, Itch, cutaneous infections, and cholical affections. *Vires.*

Chap. 20.

Pilulæ de Hydragyro; or, *Pills of Quicksilver.*

℞ *of Quicksilver first killed in Juyce of Lemmons, and afterwards nourished in the Juyce of Sage* ℥ vj. *of the best Aloes* ℥ v. *Rhabarb* ℥ iij. *Scammony prepared* ℥ ij. *Agarick* ℥ j. *Storax the best, Cinamon, Mace, yellow Sanders, Sarsaperilla, Sassafras, Mosch, of each* ℥ ss. *Honey despumed in the decoction of Guaiacum, and boyled to the exolution of the aqueous humidity, as much as will suffice to make it into a mass, anointing it with a little Oyl of Turpentine, and wrapping it in a little Bladder for future use.*

The Commentary.

That our Antidotary might not be defective, we have not onely elicited Medicaments out of the Monuments of the Ancients, but out of the Writings and Notes of Neotericks, selected and culled what reason and successful event have celebrated; as these Pills of Quicksilver, which the Neotericks usurp, to the expugnation of a new disease: For it is just, that new diseases should have new remedies invented by Reason, and prepared by Art; especially if the inventions of the Ancients fail and prove useless.

Now

Now none, I think, will deny, that the French disease is new, seeing it was never heard of in *Europe*, before the year 1493. but then brought by *Christophorus Columbus*, and his associates, from *India* to *Italy*, and there communicated to the Italian women; who bringing victuals to the French Souldiers in the Neapolitan siege, with their bodies communicated their disease to the men; which the men retaining after conquest, gave also to other Italian women: from whom their returning husbands, persolving the debt of Matrimony, catch'd it of their own wives, who had got it of the Frenchmen, the French of Italian women, and they of *Columbus* his Souldiers.

Hence the Italians were wroth with the French, and in revenge call their disease, The French Pox; and ridiculously make their Books-fronts proclaim Ultion, by denoting the husbands Ignorance, and the wives Whoredom: their Ignorance, in that they knew not the venereous Pox; the womens Whoredom, in that they had concourse with the French.

Brassavolus, as it should seem, mindeful of this injury done to his Parents, wrote a certain book of this disease, which he calls *The French-Pox*; wherein he assigns 234 differences thereof: certainly either the honest man there played the Babler, or else so many of his acquaintance and kinswomen were compressed by the French souldiers, who left these Hieroglyphical characters, as eternal signs of their new and quaint marriages. But to my purpose. There are various preparations of the pills of Quicksilver; for each Confectioner and Chirurgeon almost, have their peculiar descriptions, which they keep for hidden Secrets; some whereof will onely by reiteration, move salivation; others frequently usurped, will a little subduce the Belly: but all of them often iterated, move sputation, hurt the nerves, and sometimes cause strangulation. Their use therefore is not safe, unless the Quicksilver be well prepared and castigated, by the admistion of other Medicaments, as Turpentine-Oyl, or such things as we have in this prescript described: The manner of whose preparation is apparent enough by the form; but there are other compounds that admit of Quicksilver: of which hereafter.

Vires. These Pills are Catholical, and Alexiterial, seeing they expurge all humours at once, and evince the malign quality of the French-Pox, and radically evel its Vestigia impressed on the parts affected.

Chap. 21.

What Pills a Pharmacopoly may be without.

As in Civil Law, many old Laws are obsolete, and of no use and vigour to a Magistrate: so in Medicine, many ancient Medicaments are either neglected, or quite disapproved of, as noxious, or at least useless. Some are omitted, because there are others of the

the same, or like efficacy and vertue, whereof the best is selected; for it were a sign of folly in a man, if he should prepare and keep all the Medicaments *Myrepsus* hath designed; who absolving his Work in 1100 Chapters, hath conjoyned two or three descriptions in one Chapter.

Yea, neither Medicks desire, nor Diseases require, that any Apothecary should make and keep all the Medicaments that *Ætius*, *Actuarius*, or *Præpositus*, and others, describe, but onely the more secure, selected, and approved.

Thus in our Antidotary we give onely eximious ones; which if Authors suppeditate not, as they do not for all diseases, we compensate by our own labour and industry, suggestiug the most approved.

We expunge those out of the number of Pills, which they call the greater and lesser Pills of Light, because they consist of much and unapt matter: And because Pills, *sine quibus*, are of efficacy enough for the affections of the eyes; we have omitted the ancient description of the Imperials, of the five kinds of Myrobalambs, of the eight Ingredients, and the Arabians Pills, because the agregative are better, and usefull for all such things as the aforesaid are prescribed for.

We have neglected the Indian Pills, and them of the stone Armentum, because them of the Azure-stone are affine to them, and more efficacious.

We weigh not the Pills of Rhabarb, because ignave, but give them of Egrimony, as more efficacious; with whom they have affinity.

Pills of Hermodactyls exclude the arthretical Pills; and the fœtid Pills exclude those that are denominated from Sagapene, Euphorbium, and Sarcocolla.

Pills of Mechoacan make them void, which consists of Esula and Mezereon.

Benedict Pills, and Hiera, may be made at any time, seeing powders are or should be alwayes in readiness in shops: whereof either Electuaries or Pills may be confected at pleasure.

Pills of Bdellium are quite neglected, because they are scarce purgative: in stead, other better, and more roborative Medicaments, easier to be made, may be confected for present use.

I pretermit many more, as unworthy to be named or used; for many men describe many Medicaments, not so much that they consult others sanity, as the augmenting of their Dispensatories grand bulk.

Cathartical Powders being ingrateful, are usually coagmented into liquid or solid Electuaries, or else Pills: yet Empiricks give the powder of Stibium onely in a little Wine, or other liquor; as also the powder of Mercury, wherewith a veneficous Circulator at *Lutetia* promised the cure of all diseases, openly professing himself a Prophet: but the wretch went about many Cities, to see

see whom he might devour: he is not worthy to be named. At last he ran away.

All prepare not Quicksilver or Mercury alike: for some include it with *Aqua fortis* in a Matracy, and exhale the water by sublimation, calling that which remains in the bottom, Powder of Mercury: It is of a yellowish red colour, and rather caustical then cathartical.

Others prepare it otherwise, but better, thus: They immerge Quicksilver in *Aqua fortis*, whereinto they inject Brine; then they let the Quicksilver reside, and the water is ejected by inclination; and the crassament that remains, which is whitish, is called Powder of Mercury. But in what proportion it should be mixed, how it may be perfectly dealbated, and with what vertue it is indued, I need not recenseate, lest Empiricks and Pseudopharmacopœans abuse it: but if it be made as *P. Pijardus*, a learned Parisian Medick taught, its vertues are eximious and efficacious in curing some Diseases, which will not yield to vulgar Medicaments.

An Appendix.

Of some Pills not Solutive.

EAch Medicament is by singular dexterity and ingenuity, effinged into a form proper for the diseased. Thus some Purgatives are liquid, others solid, and others in a mean: some Medicaments onely purge, others onely roborate, and others alter, and some perform all: but Pills are for the most part purgative; for all of them, except a few, subduce the Belly, and are exhibited especially when supervacaneous succes are to be educed from remote parts: for in such a form and consistence, they abide longer in the ventricle, and their vertue is more easily carried to the parts diseased, and oppressed with excrementitious humours. When therefore we would have a Medicament stay longer in the ventricle, we give it in a solid form; and such are not onely the prescribed purgative Pills, but the Hypnotical and Arterial ones that follow.

Chap. 22.

Pilulæ de Cynoglosso; or, Pills of Dogs-tongue.

℞ *of Myrrhe ℥ vj. Olibanum ℥ v. the root of Hounds-tongue, Henbane-seed, Opium, of each ℥ iij. Saffron, Castoreum, of each ℥ j. ß. and with Syrupe of Stœchados, make it up into a mass, which let be conveniently reposed for use.*

The

The COMMENTARY.

The Neotericks have retained the old deſcription, but not the name of theſe Pills: for *Meſue* their Author calls them from their effect, Pills for all diſeaſes; but theſe call them Pills of Cynogloſs; which is neither for quantity nor quality prepollent therein: perhaps they miſtake Cynogloſs for Arnogloſs, which might more properly give them denomination; for ſeeing *Meſue* deſcribed them for aſtriction, Arnogloſs being of an aſtrictive quality, was more convenient; but we, with *Fernelius*, admit of the new name, and adde Caſtorium for the caſtigation of Opium: But we think, that Rhodoſtagm or Roſe-water, is altogether inconvenient for the receipt of the powders, if we would have the maſs of a legitimate conſiſtence, or fit to be kept; and we ſubſtitute in its ſtead Syrupe of Stœchados, by whoſe quality the head will be roborated, and armed againſt the nocuments of Opium, and by its lentour the powders will be coacted into a more idoneous maſs: as for its confection, the root of Cynogloſs muſt firſt be brayed with the ſeed of Henbane, and then the other ſimples apart; the brayed Opium muſt be firſt ſubacted by the Syrupe, then the other powders muſt be mixed, and coacted into a maſs.

They conciliate ſleep, ſtay Catarrhs, diſtillations of the head, *Vires.* the Cough, and ſuch ſuccedent affections: for they cohibit all diſtillations, whether upon the Breaſt and Lungs, or Teeth, or elſwhere.

CHAP. 23.

Of Laudanum.

NOt many years ago, there aroſe a company of Pſeudo-Medicks, who in ſtead of the uſual Pills of Cynogloſs, exhibited a certain confection, which they called *Laudanum*; whereby they promiſed not onely to conciliate ſleep, but abigate all diſeaſes. I then ſaw a Circulator, who boaſted by his Laudanum, to revoke men almoſt exanimated or half dead; and then the Encomium of this Medicine ſo won upon men, that no Empirick ſo ſtupid, no Medicaſter ſo dull, nor Tonſor ſo plebeious, but he was a Laudaniſter, or elſe not worth naming.

I wooed ſome with prayers, ſome with price, to tell me this Medicament; but found amongſt twenty of its deſcriptions, not one like another: yea, he that was moſt ignorant, would profeſs he had the beſt.

But I heard ſome Mountebanks exhibit Pills of Cynogloſs for Laudanum, extorting for each Pill the weight of half a ſcruple in gold. And thus were the credulous Plebeians, drawn with new names, and unuſual words, circumvented by the ſubtilty of theſe vafrous Juglers.

The descriptions of Laudanum given by more perite Alchymists, are seldome and hardly made; for they consist of the best of Gems, Hyacinths, and Corals; of the essence of Saffron and Opium; of the Oyls of Cinamon, Cloves; Liquor of Margarites, Powder of Unicorns-horn, of the Bezar-stone, Amber-grise, and other precious stones: and doubtless a confection of these materials must needs be eximious: and I approve of the learned rich Alchymists acts, who make, keep, and exhibit this to the diseased: but alas! the improbous do so impose upon us, that we can scarce give the honest and good. I saw a certain Laudanum exhibited by a learned Princely Medick, which wrought happy effects.

This sequel one is eximious, and easie to be made.

Laudanum. Androm. ℞ *of the extract of the Pills of Hounds-tongue* ℥ *ij. the extract of the Roman Philonium, and Treacle, of each* ℥ *j. Amber, Mosch, of each* ℈ *ß. Bezoar-stone, Monoceros horn, of each gr. vj. Saffron* ℈ *j. and with oyl of Cloves make it up into Laudanum.*

There might be innumerable descriptions thereof given: for every one, though meanly learned, strives to adde or detract at pleasure; either for the fame, or imitation of other opiate Medicaments, as of Philonium, by which name *Crato* designed Laudanum, which he held to be nothing but a certain Philonium, which many Alchymists take for the basis of their Laudanum; and by adding magisteries, essences, and tinctures, make an hypnotical Medicament, more commendable then the vulgar Philonium. But I admire most, that every one changes the form of his Medicament, and that none can know which is the genuine, true, and best description thereof: which some take from *Paracelsus*, others from *Keckius*; some from *Andernacus*, others from *Brunerius*; and others from others: and alwayes change something, that they may be thought the first Authors. I could here adduce many descriptions, but it would be useless labour. The Chymists call it Laudanum, as though it were the most laudable Medicament; which they sometimes call also Nepenthe.

Of Bechicall Pills.

Chap. 24.

Pill. Bechicæ Nigræ; or, black Bechical Pills. D. Mes.

℞ *of the juyce of Liquorice, white Sugar, of each* ℥ *vj. Starch, Tragacanth, sweet Almonds, blanched and beaten, of each* ℥ *iij. and with the the musilidge of Quince seeds made in Rose water, make thereof a mass.*

The Commentary.

This mass is not kept whole, after the manner of other pills, but divided

divided into particles, of a whole or half ſcruples weight; which are after formed at pleaſure, one while into triangular or multifarious Trochisks; another while into round lumps or Pills: whence ſome refer them to Paſtils, others to Pills. But ſeeing they ſhould be holden under the tongue, a ſphærical form is moſt convenient for them, for ſo they may be abvolved all over, and liquefie in all the parts of the mouth. For which uſe, other Trochisks may be made, as we have ſhewed in the twentieth Chapter, firſt Section and fifth Book of our Inſtitutions. The manner of their confection is eaſie. Decorticated Almonds muſt firſt be minutely incided with a Knife, then levigated on a Marble: then Amylum and Sugar muſt be taken: afterwards the ſucce of Liquorice muſt be bray'd in a pretty hot metalline morter; then Tragacanthum: let all then be made with the Mucago, into ſome paſte, whereof plain Pills may be made, dryed and kept.

Black Bechical Pills, cure dry coughs, ariſing from ſharp and calid matter, as alſo aſperity, and hoarſeneſs, and hard excretion of the heart, as *Meſue* ſhews (*cap. de tuſſil. in ſua praxi.*) *Vires.*

CHAP. 25.

Pil. Bechicæ albæ; or, white Bechical Pills.

℞ *of the powder of Florentine, Orris, Starch, of each* ʒ *j. ß. Sugar candy, Pennidees, of each* ʒ *iiij. white Sugar* ℔ *j. and with the Muſilidge of Gum Thraganth extracted in Roſe water, make a maſs, which form into rowles and Troches.*

The COMMENTARY.

Seeing the Author of theſe Pills is uncertain, every one doth at will change their deſcription, by adding or detracting ſomething. But we have exhibited the moſt uſual form whereby Pills that are Bechical, grateful and white may be made: the manner whereof is well known to all.

They are much commended for leniating the aſperity of the jaws, curing cough and hoarſeneſs, and moving ſpittle. *Vires.*

Thus I think I have ſufficiently deſcribed, not onely all forms of purgative Medicaments, but purgative neceſſary in a Pharmacopoly. It now remains that in the ſequent Book I deſcribe Roboratives and Alteratives.

Finis Libri Secundi.

The Apothecaries Shop,

OR,

ANTIDOTARY.

THE THIRD BOOK.

Of Roborative Medicaments,

Distinct in three Sections.

The first whereof Treats of more select Cordial Powders.

THE PREFACE.

Scarce any Medicament is of a solitary faculty, but it either purges or roborates, and alters withall; but the denomination is desumed from the prepollent faculty: and that which roborates more, and alters less, is called a Roborative; that which alters more, and roborates less, an Alterative. We shall treat of both, not onely in the same confection, consisting of both qualities, but apart, and in divers Chapters, in this Third Book; because there is much affinity betwixt these Medicaments, both in qualities, consistence, and manner of preparation. The Roman Philonium, and the confection of Hyacinth, have the same preparation and consistence, and are both described amongst Roboratives; yet the former is called an Alterative. Now that we may in just order describe all the Roboratives, we shall begin with the most select Cordial Powders; partly, as they are described by famous Medicks; partly, as established by our invention, and approved by long experience. Of what use aromatical and other Powders are in Medicinal assumptions, applications, or compositions, we have at large shewed, in Chap. 9. Sect. 1. and Book 3. of our Institutions.

CHAP. I.

Diamargaritum frigidum. D. Platearii.

℞ *of pellucid Pearls ʒ iij. the four greater cool seeds picked, the seeds of Purslain, and white Poppy, white and yellow Sanders, Lignum Aloes, Ginger, red Roses, the flowers of Water-lillies, Borrage, Myrtle-berries, of each ʒ j. white and red Coral, of each ʒ ß. make of all these a fine powder, which let be kept in a glass with a narrow orifice.*

The COMMENTARY.

Aromatical or Cordial Powders, are either kept alone in a fit vessel well operculated, that their faculties may not expire; or with Honey solved into a liquid Electuary; or with Sugar cocted into a solid Electuary or Tabels. They are kept alone in shops, that a part of them, when use requires, may be dissolved into applicative Medicaments, or mixed with introsumptive ones.

This powder, which is denominated from Pearl, is so variously described, that its Author is not known, but every one changes it variously at will: This though, which we have exhibited out of *Platerius*, is by most learned Writings attested the most genuine.

And it is called frigid Diamargaritum, to difference it from another, which is hotter, but made of few or none: it is also called the compounded Diamargaritum, in reference to *Manus Christi*, which consists onely of the Sugar of Roses, and of Pearls. There is yet another compounded one, which admits of many precious Stones, Amber, and Musk; but differing from the Electuary of Gemmes, onely in that it refrigerates more. It is seldom made.

The preparation of Diamargaritum is most in triture, whereof we have largely treated in our Institutions. Pearls are oriental and pellucid, which are proved by their candor, rotundity, smoothness, weight, and magnitude. Those that are ponderous and crass, are called vinous: which because of their rarity and value, seldom ingrede Medicinal Compositions; they should, like Coral, be ducted, and levigated upon a Purple-stone: The four cold seeds must be minutely incided, and pulverated very small; then the rest, and all confusedly mixed at last.

Diamargaritum is most efficacious to resartiate strength, take away swoundings, to help difficult breathers, to coct the cough, to refresh the tabid, to recreate the languisher, and to recuperate ones former state. *Vires.*

CHAP.

Chap. 2.

Electuarium de Gemmis; *or, The Electuary of Gemmes.* D.Mes.

℞ *of pellucid Pearls* ℥ *ij. of the fragments of the Saphyr, Hyacinth, Sardis, Granate, Smaragdi, of each* ℥ *j.ß. of Setwell, and Aarons roots, Citron Pills, Mace, Basil-seeds, of each* ℥ *ij. red Coral, Amber, the shavings of Ivory, of each* ℈ *ij. both the Beans, Cloves, Ginger, Long-Pepper, Spikenard, Indian Leaf, Saffron, Cardamomes, of each* ℥ *j. Troch. Diarrhodon, Aloes wood, of each* ℥ *v. Cinamon, Galangal, of each* ℥ *j.ß. the leafs of Gold and Silver, of each* ℈ *ij. Mosch* ℥ *ß. make of these a very fine powder.*

The Commentary.

This composition is kept either in form of a powder, or of an Electuary; and that either soft, consisting of an equal quantity of powders, and of honey of Roses; or solid, consisting of the same, and Sugar of Roses: but it is most commodious, to keep its powder well occluded in fit vessels for future uses.

It takes its name from the Gems or precious stones, of which it is made, with the vulgar, and others rare and unknown cordials, whose faculties cannot be well learned from the Ancients or Neotericks, as appears by the examination we had of Been: in whose stead, we substitute Enula-Campana's roots, both roots being pastinacious, cordial, and hotter then Bugloss or Borrage, which some take for both the Beens: the root also of Tormentil may be substituted in stead of each Been. But I do not fancy their humours, who in composition of this solemn Electuary, usurp those exoticall roots designed by the name of the two Beens; for either Tormentil alone, or Enula alone, or an equal quantity of each, may be much better assumed for both Beens: and if any one would rather have Angelica's root, then that of Enula, he may.

The preparation of this powder, consists in idoneus triture; the Gemmes and Corals must be levigated on a purple stone; the roots, woods, and fruits brayed in a morter, and all at length commixed.

The Electuary of Gems is most efficacious for the cold affections of the brain, heart, ventricle, liver, and uterus, according to *Mesue*: for it helps the melancholical, sad, solitary, and fearful; it cures the palpitation of the heart, hinders swounding, roborates the languid ventricle, add recreates all the intrails: but Apothecaries seldome make it, because of the rarity and dearness of the simples that ingrede its composition.

CHAP. 3.

Diambra Dom. Mes.

℞ *of Cinamon, supposed Wolfs-bane, Cloves, Mace, Nutmegs, Indian leaf, Galangal, of each ℥ iij. Long Pepper, yellow Sanders, Aloes wood, of each ℥ ij. Ginger ℥ j. ß. both the Cardamomes, Spikenard, Amber of each ℥ j. Mosch ℥ ß. make of all these a fine powder, and so kept for use.*

The COMMENTARY.

This compound is very aromatical and sweet, both because of the Amber, from which it is denominated, and of the Musk, and other Aromata's that ingrede it. It is kept either in form of a powder, or of a solid Electuary, or of Honey: if it be required of a hard consistence, as that of Tabels, its powder must be received into Sugar of Roses perfectly cocted; if soft, like that of Opiates, its powders must be received into the Julep of Roses, or Alexandrian Syrupe.

Its preparation is onely pulveration; which must be effected as we have demonstrated in the 9 and 10 Chap. and 2 Book of our Institutions.

Diambra doth most efficaciously roborate the bowels, especially if their imbecillity be from a cold cause: for by calefaction it refects the spirits, and foments the native heat; it helps the affections of the Uterus, and is very convenient for old men and women. *Vires.*

CHAP. 4.

Pilvis Diamoschi.

℞ *of Mosch ℥ ß. the bone of the heart of a Hart, pellucid Pearl, shavings of Ivory, white and red Coral, white and yellow Sanders, Aloes wood, Cinamon, Mace, and Cloves, of each ℥ j. Rose-leaves, Water-Lillies, of each ℥ j. ß. Citron-pill, Bugloss-flowers, Spikenard, of each ℥ ß. Camphyr gr. ij. make of these a fine powder according to Art.*

The COMMENTARY.

Vulgar Pharmacopolitan Dispensatories abound with many cordial, but intensely calefactive Powders, and very few refrigeratives, consisting onely of all kindes of hot Aromata's, promiscuously and confusedly agregated without choyce or care: Of which sort, the two last descriptions (as tradited by the Ancients) were, and many more, which occur in each Antidotary, are: for, Diacyminum, Dianisum, Diazinziber, Diatrium Pipereon, Diamargaritum calidum,

Diamoschum, both sweet and amare, produce all the same effects, having all the same faculties, as compounded all of hot Aromata's. Wherefore I have not onely castigated, but neglected the antique description of Diamoschum, and substituted another, which well refers the reason of its name and composition, conducing to imbecility wrought by a hot cause: for it seemed to me superfluous, to retain the ancient description of Diamoschum, when Diambra, and the Electuary of Gems pollicitate the same effects: Therefore I have exhibited another most fragrant Diamoschum, very efficacious in curing hot distempers, and easily preparable.

Vires. Sweet Diamoschum, consisting of many Cordials, exhilarates the noble parts, especially the heart and vital faculties, made languid or imbecile from any, but mainly a hot cause: It conduces also to many affections of the Uterus.

Chap. 5.

Pulvis Electuarii Triasantali; or, The species for the Electuary of the three Sanders.

℞ *of the three Sanders, Rose-leaves, Fleabit-seed, of each ℥ ij. Rhabarb, shavings of Ivory, Juyce of Liquorice, Purslain-seed, of each ℥ j. ß. Starch, Gumme Thraganth, Arabick, the four greater cool seeds, Endive seed, of each ℥ j. Camphyr ℈ ß. make of these according to Art a Powder.*

The Commentary.

Amongst twenty descriptions of this composition, I have not found two alike: for some in stead of Zuccaria, put Hemlock-seed, as *Joubertus*; others the seeds of Psyllium, as *Foesius*; others omit both, as *Cordus*; others will have Sugar-candy; and others Violets, as *Euchsius*.

There is the same diffidence about Rhabarb, Amylum, and Camphyr; which some reject, others adde. I have with the consent also of learned Authors, described this form, and added Psyllium as very convenient: but I have expunged Amylum as unapt; for its viscidity obstructs: Camphyr I admit, that by its tenuity it may introduce the crasser Medicaments: but I have detracted from its quantity, lest by its graveolence, it should obtund or deleate the suavity of the Aromata's, which are but few.

I also allow of Tragacanthum and Arabick, which should be a little assated before commixtion, that they may depose their viscidity, and become more convenient for the Authors intention, who, whatever he was, aimed this Medicament partly to roborate, and partly to resolve obstructions.

Its preparation is like the former's, depending on due triture.

Vires. It mirificously conduces to the freeing the liver from obstructions: it helps such as have the jaundies, or are tabid, or troubled with immoderate

moderate heat in their bowels; it allayes also the heat of the ventricle, frees the first region of the body from infarctures, and vindicates the humours from putretude.

CHAP. 6.

Aromat. Rosatum; or, an Aromatical composition of Roses. D. Gabriel.

℞ *of Rose-leaves* ℥ xv. *Liquorice* ℥ vij. *choyce Cinamon* ℥ v. *Aloes-wood, * yellow Sanders, of each* ℥ i j. *Gumme Arabick, Thraganth, of each* ℥ ij. *and* ℈ ij. *Cloves and Mace, of each* ℥ ij. ß. *Spikenard* ℥ ij. *Nutmegs, Cardamomes the greater, Galangal the lesser, of each* ℥ j. *Amber* ℈ ij. *Mosch* ℈ j. *make of these a Powder.*

* *Mackazari and Citrini.*

The COMMENTARY.

Mesue describes many cordial and suaveolent Electuaries, but more especially six, which he calls aromatical; out of which I have selected this one: and he that hath this, may easily be without the rest.

It is called *Aromaticum*, from the Aromata's whereof it consists, and *Rosatum*, from its Roses, which are therein prepollent both in quantity and quality: It is cognominated from one *Gabriel*, it is probable its Author, or *Mesue*'s friend. But however, the description is good, and its use salutary.

It is kept in form of a Powder, which is easily made; or of a soft Electuary, which is effected, by admitting it to an equal quantity of the Syrupe of Roses, and of Orange-pill. But it is most usually had in form of a tabellated Electuary, the Powders being cocted in Sugar.

It roborates the brain, heart, ventricle, and the inferiour Belly; *Vires.* dissipating the excrementitious humidity of their parts: it corrects all putretude, excites appetite, helps coction, abates loathsomness and vomiting, and is very good for such as are weak, and newly recovered from a disease.

CHAP. 7.

Diarrhodon Abbatis. D. N. Salern.

℞ *of Rose-leaves, Sugar-candy, of each* ℥ iij. *white and yellow Sanders, of each* ℥ ij. ß. *Gumme Thraganth, Arabick, shavings of Ivory, of each* ℈ ij. *Mace, Lavender, Mastick, Cardamomes, Saffron, Aloes-wood, Cloves, Gallia Moschata, Cinamon, * Rhabarb, Juyce of Liquorice, the seeds of Anise, Fennel, Basil, Berberries, Endive, Purslain, white Poppies, the greater cool seeds, of each* ℈ j. *the bone in the heart of a Hart, the best Pearl, of each* ℈ ß. *Mosch gr. iiij. Campyr gr. ij. make of these a Powder.*

* I wonder what that doth there.

The Commentary.

This solemn composition hath also undergone castigation; for from its first description tradited, *Nic. Myrepsus*, *Nic. Salernitanus* hath detracted Coral, Lettice, and Mandrake-seeds: *Nic. Præpositus* following the castigation of *Salernitanus*, neither mentions the Corrector nor the Author. *Nic. Myrepsus* attributes the invention thereof to one *Abbas*, a President of a certain Colledge: and seeing no famous Medicament goes through many hands without mutation, no wonder if *Abbas* his Diarrhodum be not alwayes described alike; in whose composition, *Sylvius* admits not of Musk, nor *Rondeletius* of Rhabarb, nor I of Asarum, because it is vomitory, and an enemy to the stomack; in whose stead I have substituted Mace. Some admit onely the grains of Berberries-seeds; others, and better, the whole seeds: the four frigid seeds being easily corruptible, should not be commixed till the time of use; if it be required in form of a solid Electuary, the powders must be excepted in Sugar of Roses perfectly cocted.

Vires. Diarrhodon roborates the Ventricle and Liver, helps coction, excites appetite, discusses flatulency, cohibits belching, makes the breath sweet, allayes the heat of the bowels, and emends all vices in the body arising from heat.

Chap. 8.

Pulvis lætificans; or, A lætificant Powder of an uncertain Author.

℞ *of Basil-seed, Saffron, Setwel, yellow Sanders, Cloves, Citron-pill, Galangal, Mace, Nutmegs, Storax, of each ʒ ij. ß. shavings of Ivory, Anise-seed, Dodder of Thyme, Thyme, of each ʒ j. Amber, Mosch, Pearl, the bone in the heart of a Hart, of each ʒ ß. Leafs of Gold and Silver, of each ℈ ß. make of them all a Powder according to Art.*

The Commentary.

There are two descriptions of this name; one given by *Rhasis*, which is seldome made; the other by an uncertain Author, which we have transcribed out of *Præpositus* as better. They erre, that attribute this confection to *Galen*; for it is not contained in his Works, neither did he know many of its ingredients, as Musk, Camphyr, Amber, and Pearls.

It is called the lætificant, or Powder of gladness, from its effect; for it lætificates the heart and spirits: we have expunged Balm-wood out of its confection, being very precious and rare, and in its stead substituted Citrian Santal: Lentisks, and Aloes-wood are also good substitutes for Balm-wood; as also for the Harts heart-bone,

its

its Horn: The reſt being alwayes in readineſs, need no ſubſtitutes. The preparation is the ſame with the precedents.

The lætificant Electuary denotes its eximious faculties by its name; it lætificates the heart, and all the vital parts and faculties, recreates the bowels, abſumes excrementitious humours, diſſipates flatulency, and roborates the ventricle. *Vires.*

CHAP. 9.

Pulvis Dianthos. D.N. Myr.

℞ *of the flowers of Roſemary* ℥ *j. of Roſe-leaves, Violets, and Liquorice, of each* ʒ *vj. Cloves, Lavender, Nutmegs, Galangal, Cinamon, Ginger, Setwel, Mace, Aloes-wood, Cardamomes, Aniſe-ſeed, and Dill-ſeed, of each* ℈ *iiij. make of theſe a very fine Powder according to Art.*

The COMMENTARY.

The deſcription of this Powder is deſumed from *Nic. Myrepſus*, who put many ſimples in leſs quantity, beſides Roſemary; which *Actuarius* augmented, adding Worm-ſeed. It deſumes its name from the flowers of Roſemary, which are its Baſis, which by a certain Antonomaſia are called *Anthos*, that is, the flower; whence the Electuary is called *Dianthos*; whoſe preparation is without difficulty: Pharmacopoliſts keep it uſually in form of a Powder; and if it be required in form of a ſoft Electuary, they put the Powders in Honey; if of a ſolid one, they put them in the Sugar of Roſes perfectly cocted, and make Paſtils thereof.

It is cordial, helping the Epilepſie, and Swoundings; it univerſally auxiliates all imbecility of Body, but eſpecially the affections of the head. *Vires.*

CHAP. 10.

Pulvis Dianiſi; or, The compound Powder of Aniſe-ſeed.

℞ *of the ſeeds of Aniſe* ʒ *x. Liquorice, Maſtick, of each* ℥ *ſs. the ſeeds of Caraway and Fennel, Mace, Galangal, Ginger, Cinamon, of each* ʒ *ij. ſs. the three Peppers, Caſſia Lignea, Sermountain-ſeed, Mountain-Calamint, of each* ʒ *j. the greater Cardamomes, Cloves, Cubebs, Spikenard, Saffron, of each* ℈ *ij. and gr. v. Sugar-candy* ʒ *ij. make of theſe a Powder.*

The COMMENTARY.

This Powder is both uſual and uſeful; whoſe deſcription, as tradited by *Meſue*, we retain; onely expunging Bartram, and ſubſtituting

tuting Libistica and Sugar-candy, for common Sugar: for Bartram being hot and sharp, and not aromatical, may well be omitted; and Sugar-candy is more idoneous then common Sugar, for the asservation of the Powders. Cubebs are small round fruits, adhering to long pedicles, racemously congested; which some say are *Galen*'s Carpesia, others *Dioscorides* his wilde Myrtles, and others the grains of a Willow-tree: but they are none of these, and their description differs much from any such.

In *Jaoa* this fruit is called *Cumuc*, which the Incolists there so much estimate, that they boyl it before they sell it out, lest it should be sown, and germinate elswhere, as we have shewed, Chap. 14. Sect. 3. Book 4. of our *Medicinal Materials*.

Vires. Dianison cures the cold distemper of the ventricle, caused by crude phlegm or flatulency: it cures diuturnal coughs, proceeding from cold humours, and frees the bowels from obstructions.

Chap. II.

Diacinnamomum; or, The compound Powder of Cinamon. D. Mes.

℞ *of small Cinamon* ℥ xv. *Cassia-wood, the root of Enula-campane, of each* ℥ iiij. *Galangal* ℥ vij. *Cloves, Long-pepper, both the Cardamomes, Ginger, Mace, Nutmegs, Aloes-wood, of each* ℥ iij. *Saffron* ℥ j. *Sugar* ℥ v. *Mosch* ℈ ij. *make of these a Powder according to Art.*

The Commentary.

Of the Aromata's which this Powder admits, Cinamon is most prepollent; which is of two sorts; the one more tenuious and fragrant, which the Arabians call *Darcheni*; the other more crass, and less odorate, which we call vulgar or ligneous Cinamon. We have depinged both their Histories, in Chap. 9. Sect. 3. and Book 1. of our *Medicinal Matter*. The Neotericks, for more suavities sake, prepare Diacinnamomum with Musk. Its preparation is no more but pulveration, and the confused union of the Powders.

Vires. Diacinnamomum consisting wholly of hot and aromatical ingredients, doth miraculously resartiate strength, exhilarate the spirits, and cure all affections proceeding from cold causes.

Chap. 12.

Lithontripticon; or, A Powder to break the Stone.

℞ *of the blood of a Buck-goat prepared* ℥ j. *the blood of a Hare burnt* ℥ ß. *the roots of Sea-holly, Sowbread, Madder, Cyprus, Orris the Florentine, the seeds of Gromwel and Saxafrage, Winter-cherries, of each* ℥ ij. *Lapis Spongiæ, Egge-shells burnt, the inward tunicle of the ventricle of a Hen, Juniper-berries, Cardamomes, Cinamon, Mace,*

of

of each ℥ j. ß. the seeds of Smallage, Petroseline, Bishopweed, Asparagrass, Caraway, Carret, Hartwort, Coriander, Citron, Mallows, Melon, Pepon, and Pimpinel, of each ℥ j. the Gumme of the Cherry-tree ℥ ij. let them be all beaten, and made into a fine Powder.

The COMMENTARY.

We have rejected the old description of this Powder, which vulgar Apothecaries call Lithontribon, because it receives many astrictives, and some things that hinder its efficacy in breaking the stone, and extracting the sand of the Reins; and others that are too rare and precious, or can never be had sincere: in whose stead we give another Lithontripticon, most aptly composed, to break the stone, expel sand, and cure other affections of the Reins and Bladder.

But before Goats-blood ingrede its composition, it should be thus prepared: First, a Goat of four years old, or thereabouts, should be selected and jugulated; the blood which comes out in the middle, must be put in an earthen pot, for that which flows out first is too tenuious, the last too crass; then the pot must be covered with a rare linen cloth, and exposed to the Sun, that the blood may coagulate; the watry must be rejected, and the more crass concreted blood dryed, brayed, and kept in a glass vessel: they are too superstitious, who will not kill the Goat, till the Sun be entring into *Cancer*, and he have been nourished a long time with Saxifrage, Pimpinella, Smallage, and the like; nor collect any, save the arterial blood: for though this preparation be not useless, yet it is not necessary; nay, there can scarce be such plenty of those plants they require got, as will nourish a Goat a long time: and besides, his blood, whose pabulum is not changed, is as efficacious for breaking the stone.

The Hares-blood newly extracted, must be so assated, that it turn not to ashes, but may be pulverated. There is nothing besides in this preparation, either difficult or operous.

This Powder taken in a little white-wine, or water of Pellitory of the wall, or such convenient liquor, will expel stones and sand from the Reins, Bladder, and Ureters, and potently move Urine. *Vires.*

CHAP. 13.

Pulvis Diacalaminthes; or, The compound Powder of Mint. D. N. Myr.

℞ *Mountain-Calamint, Peny-royal, black Pepper, the seeds of Massilian* * *Hartwort, and Parsley, of each ℥ iij. and ℈ ij. the seeds of Sermountain,* () *Bishopweed, Dill, tops of Thyme, Cinamon, Ginger, of each ℈ ij. Smallage-seed ℈ j. make of these a fine Powder, and keep it in a glass with a narrow orifice.*

* *Seseleos.*
() *Ameos.*

The

The Commentary.

There are various descriptions given of this Powder; but all practical Medicks take and approve of this of *Myrepsus* as best. *Galen* exhibits the like; but he makes it too hot and sharp, by too much Ginger and Pepper: we have put Dill for Anise; yet with this reserve, That any one may without difference or damage to the compound, substitute which he pleases. This is prepared as the precedents.

Vires. Diacalaminthe extenuates crass and viscid humours, discusses flatulency, moves urine and fluors, cures the cough from cold humours, helps the distribution of the aliment to the Liver, roborates the ventricle, augments appetite: it may be given in form of a soft Electuary, if it be mixed with Honey; a solid one, if with Sugar.

Chap. 14.

Pulvis contra Pestem, seu Bezoardicus; or, A Powder against the Plague, or Bezoar-Powder.

℞ *of the roots of Tormentil, Angelico, Enula-campane, Gentian, Pyony, Aloes-wood, yellow Sanders, Harts-horn, Ivory, the bone in the heart of a Hart, Juniper-berries, Cardamomes, the seeds of Sorrel and Carduus, Cloves, Mace, Cinamon, of each ℥ j. ß. the rinds of Citron and Orange, Diptamus, Scordeum, Squinant, the aromatick Reed, Rose-leaves, Saffron, of each ℥ j. Bole-armeniack washed in Rose-water, and Lemnian-Earth, of each ℥ ij. Camphyr gr. viij. Amber-grise, Leaf-gold, of each ℈ j. make of these a very fine and small Powder, and repose it in a glass; which sign,* Pulvis Bezoardicus.

The Commentary.

Medicaments which oppugn the Plague, expugn Poysons, evert their harm, and defend life, are by the Greeks called *Antidota*, by the Arabians *Bezaardica*; of which sort there are some simples, as the Bezar-stone, Zerumbet, and Precious-stones; some compounds, as Cordials, and Theriacals, which consist of many things that roborate the heart, spirits, and vital parts, extinguishing poysons and venenate qualities: therefore they are said to be in a mean, participating both of our nature and poysonous qualities; as Mithridate, whose frequent use is not safe, where there is no suspicion of a venenate quality; for if it finde no object on which it may act, it leaves the vestigia of its inimick quality impressed on the parts, accending the humours, and preying upon the native calour.

But such compound Medicaments as consist onely of cordial and roborative ingredients, and by some special faculty oppugning poyson, are at all seasons convenient for all temperatures and diseases;

as

as this Powder we have described, whose faculties are eximious in expugning malign affections, and defending the noble parts.

And it is given in water, or some cordial decoction, or idoneous conserve; or else it is excepted in the Syrupe of Kermes, or Lemmons, or concinnated into the form of an Opiate: it may also with Honey despumed in some cordial water, be coagmentated into the form of a liquid Electuary, and kept in shops like other confections. Its faculties will be more eximious, if Precious-stones, Unicorns-horn, and Bezar-stone, be added to it. The Powder is easie to be made, and the ingredients may be had.

It is miraculously efficacious in expugning venenate, contagious, and pestilent diseases, and in recreating and defending the principal parts. *Vires.*

CHAP. 15.

Pulvis Antilyssos, seu contra Rabiem; or, A Powder against the biting of a mad Dog. D. J. Pal.

℞ *of the leaves of Rue, Vervine, Sage, Plantain, Polypody, common Wormwood, Mint, Mugwort, Balm, Betony, S. Johns-wort, the lesser Centaury, of each m. j. let them be dryed, and at last reducated into a fine Powder.*

The COMMENTARY.

This alexiterial Powder I desumed from the famous *Jul. Palmarius*, who wrote seven Books of contagious Diseases: the eximious faculties, and admirable effects of this Medicament, not onely he, but *Dominus de Pyrou*, hath frequently and successfully experienced upon many; from whom he confesses he had its first description: for as many as were bitten with mad Dogs, and used this, were presently freed from imminent and incipient Hydrophoby, if no part of the head above the teeth, or cold member, were abluted; for then there were small hopes of remedy.

We call this Powder *Antilyssum*, because in arceating madness, it is inferiour to none: it cures wounds inflicted by mad Dogs, and impedes that terrible symptome, whereby those wretches are fearful of water.

The preparation of this famous Antidote is easie; wherein these three things are chiefly observable: First, that the Simples be then collected, when they are most vertuous, to wit, in the beginning or end of the Spring; That they be not dryed either by the scorching Sun, or in a moist place; That when they are dry, they be kept, with this reserve, that they be renovated annually.

There is no need, that any great quantity of this eximious Powder be kept in Pharmacopolies: for it is enough, if half a pound thereof be reconded in a fit vessel for present use: But its materials

or ſimples ſhould be kept in abundance, artificially dryed, incloſed in chartaceous bags, and ſecurely repoſed, that Flyes may not conſparcate them, nor Mice erode them; and when exigence calls for them, an equal weight of each ſhould be pulverated, and a whole or half dragm thereof given in the morning before meat, in a ſpoon, with twice as much Sugar; or elſe in pottage, or other convenient liquor, as Wine, Sider; or elſe in Honey, like an Opiate.

And although one or two dragms be a doſis ſufficient for a very robuſt man; yet three or four may ſometimes be exhibited, by ſuch eſpecially, who have been bitten long before, or are already begun to fear water.

This Powder is indeed very eximious; but it would be more efficacious, if the Powder of Pimpinel and burnt River-Crabfiſhes were mixed with it: Its name Alyſſum ſhews, that it is juſtly preferred before all other of that ſort; for *Galen* and *Dioſcorides* call it ſo, becauſe it cures madneſs, and extinguiſhes its poyſon.

But this plant is rare, and known onely to few: it is in aſpect like Horehound, but each genicle emits onely two criſped, hoary, and almoſt inodorate leaves; ſpinous cups do verticularly circumveſt its Caulicles: I have often ſeen it in the Colledge-Garden in *Paris*.

There is another kinde in *Germany*, called *Echioides*, like Tizil in form; but it is inferiour to that of *Galens*: yet he that wants the one, may ſubſtitute the other.

Chap. 16.

Crocus Martis; or, Mars his Saffron.

This Medicament is ſo denominated, partly from its matter, as it is the filings of Steel, or Iron, dedicated to *Mars*; and partly from its colour, which reſembles Saffron: Its preparation is multifarious; for every one prepares it after his own Model, in which every one diſſents from another: whence ſome have neglected, or diſapproved of its preparation, as uſeleſs; and *Rivierius* exhibits the bare limature of Iron, for true Saffron of *Mars*, without uſtion or ablution; profeſſing it to be ſafer, and more efficacious in curing the fœtid colours of Virgins: but he that will follow the method of ſo raſh a Periclitator, ſhall be more formidable then the very diſeaſes.

I finde two preparations of this Saffron, more uſual then the reſt: the firſt is vulgar, and well known to Pharmacopoliſts, who burn the filings of Steel twice, or more, in a crucible, and waſh it as oft, partly in Vinegar, partly in Roſe-water, or other fit liquor; then dry it, and make a ſubrufe ponderous Powder, which they call prepared Steel.

The ſecond is uſed by the Chymiſts, who make this ponderous Powder volatile; whoſe preparation they thus effect: ſometimes they

they assume the limature of Steel, sometimes of Iron, or of both, for the qualities are similar; they burn it a day or two in their fire, then they inject it into water, and assume and keep what swims above; and, abjecting the water, take what is in the bottom, and inject it again into the reverberatory fire, where they burn it as before, and again dimit it into water: what swims above, they again take and keep; what sinks to the bottom, they again burn, till it subside not, but remain upon the superficies of the water; which they collect, dry, and keep for special Chymical Martial Saffron.

Some make it thus: They put the limature of Iron on a dish in a very hot fire, and permit it to be red hot: when it is cold, they bray it laboriously in an Iron-Morter; then wash it, that the more sublime part may be separated with the water: the crasser is again burned, and brayed as before; which they iterate seven or more times, till all the limature become croceous.

Some wash the limature of Iron in Brine, before they calcinate it; and afterwards in Vinegar: some macerate it in Urine, others put Salt to it, and others Tartar: some burn it with Sulphur, others turn it into Rubigo: but as these preparations are too curious, so are they needless; and it is better to hold to one good way, then hover doubtful amongst so many.

But the dust of Iron must be filed very small for this purpose, that it may be better calcinated by the fire; then it must be brayed, afterwards demerged, and much agitated in water, and the supernatant part collected, dryed with moderate heat, and kept without further calcination: the crasser part must be again immitted into the fire, till the whole become volatile, and then it is true Martial Saffron.

Alchymists make it also of other Metals; for they have Saffron of Tinne, Saffron of *Venus*: but by how much they seem more perite Artificers, by so much they are more imperite Medicks.

They say, that *Mars* his Saffron roborates the liver and spleen, takes away the obstructions of the bowels, and therefore cures the fœtid colour of Virgins. *Vires.*

Of this and other Cordial Powders, prudent Medicks make a Confection in form of a soft Electuary or Tabels, called *Diastomoma*, most efficacious in removing obstructions, wherewith they mix the Powder of Worms: But I had rather make it thus:

℞ *of Steel well prepared* ℥ *ij. Cinamon* ℥ *ß. the species for the Electuary of the three Sanders, and de Gemmis, of each* ℈ *j. the Powder of Dictamus* ℈ *ß. with Sugar dissolved in Balm-water* ℥ *iiij. of which make Tablets of* ℥ *iij. weight, or* ℥ *ß. one whereof take in the morning fasting.* They used to put more Sugar to Cordial Tabels, but then they are less efficacious.

THE SECOND PART.

Of Powders neceſſary to be had in Shops.

IN the former part of this Section, we have tradited onely moſt ſelect Cordial Powders; omitting onely ſuch, whoſe qualities were affine and ſimilar, whoſe deſcriptions were ungrounded, and uſe diſapproved. Now in this ſecond part we ſhall treat of ſuch, as, being more frigid and ſweeter, are not as the former, Aromatical, but Bechical and Thoracical; for they are convenient for the Cough of the Lungs, and all Thoracical affections.

Chap. 17.

Pulvis Diaireos ſimplex.

℞ *of Florentine Orris ℥ ſs. Sugar-candy, Pul. Diatrag. frigid. of each ʒ ij. make of them all a Powder to be kept for uſe.*

The Commentary.

The Author of this Powder is moſt uncertain, but its uſe moſt frequent: it ſhould be conveniently excepted in Sugar, duly coćted in the white of an Egge, clarified with Coltsfoot-water, and concinnated into Tabels or Lozenges: Each ounce of Powder muſt have a pound of Sugar; yea, they ſometimes put two ounces of Sugar to one dragm of Powder: and the Electuary thus made, is more grateful, but leſs efficacious; as on the contrary, when each dragm of Powder receives an ounce of Sugar.

The manner of its preparation is ſo eaſie, that it needs no further deſcription.

Vires. It ſtayes the diſtillation of the Jaws, attenuates, coćts, and expectorates craſs humours.

There is another compoſition of *Diaireos*, denoted by *Solomons* name; which being harder to make, more inſuave, and no whit more efficacious, is ſeldome made.

Chap.

CHAP. 18.

Pulvis Diatragacanthi frigidi; *or*, *The Powder of cold Diatragacanthum.* D. Myrep.

℞ *of Penidees* ℥ *iij. Gum Thraganth* ℥ *ij. Gum Arabick* ʒ *x. Starch* ℥ *ß. the seeds of white Poppy* ʒ *iij. of the four greater cool seeds, Liquorice, of each* ʒ *ij. Camphyr* ℈ *ß. make of these a Powder.*

The COMMENTARY.

This Powder hath its name and basis from Tragacanthum, which in its composition is most prepollent. It receives many Bechical, viscid, refrigerative, and lenitive simples, whereunto *Myrepsus* its Author addes Nettle-seed, as very accommodate for the attenuation and expurgation of crass humours: which, because it makes the compound both in colour and sapour ingrateful, is by Neotericks omitted, others supplying its faculty better.

It is kept either in form of a Powder, as the rest; or of a tabulated Electuary; each ounce of Powder admitting of a pound of Sugar.

It helps all hot affections of the lungs and breast, conduces much to such as are macilent or consumed; it cures the Pleurisie, asperity of the tongue and jaws, and cocts and expectorates spittle. *Vires.*

CHAP. 19.

Pulvis Diapendii sine speciebus; *or*, *The Powder of Penidees without species.* D.N. Myrepsi.

℞ *of Penidees* ℥ *ij. Pine-nuts, sweet Almonds decorticated, white Poppy-seed, of each* ʒ *iij. the Juyce of Liquorice, Gum Thraganth, Arabick, the four greater cool seeds, Starch, of each* ʒ *j. ß. Camphyr gr. viij. make of them all a Powder.*

The COMMENTARY.

Diapenidion is made either without species, as in this form, or with them: when Cinamon, Cloves, and Ginger, are added thereto, as *Myrepsus* its Author describes it, and the said species, Almonds, Poppy-seed, and Liquorice-juyce are put in equal weight.

It is kept either in form of a Powder, or of a solid Electuary; which, by the Authors advice, may be thus made: Three ounces of Violets must be macerated and cocted in a pound of water, till the water be of a violaceous colour; one pound of Sugar must be cocted in the colature, to the consistence of a solid Electuary; wherewith, whilst hot, the Penidees, and other levigated simples, must be so

so mixed and subacted, that the mass may acquire a solid form, whereof tabels or Rhomboides may be concinnated and reposed for use. All with one consent contect Penidees thus, but few agree in the proportion of the simples; for each one changes their weight: this we have delivered is the most usual form.

Vires. This Powder conduces very much to those that are infested with a cough, pleurisie, difficulty of breathing, asperity of jaws, hoarseness, and many vices of the lungs. If it be made with the species, besides the enumerated effects, it also incides, attenuates, and coats viscid, crass, and cold humours, preparing them for expectoration.

Chap. 20.

Confectio de Rebecha.

℞ *of the Powder of Diaireos, cold Diatraganth. of each* ℥ *ij. Powder of Liquorice* ℥ *ß. Sugar-candy* ℥ *iij. and with Gum Thraganth dissolved in Rose-water make a Paste, of which Rolls.*

The Commentary.

Though this confection be of an unknown Author, yet it is most usual, grateful for sapour, and commendable for effects. The Powders whereof it consists, are indeed kept severally, till they be mixed with Tragacanthum, solved in Rose-water, or other convenient liquor; or else coacted with Sugar, cocted in some idoneous humour into a mass, whereof Pastills or Bacills may be formed. We anumerate it amongst Bechical Powders, because it is of the same use and consistence. Some think this confection is called *Rebecha*, from *Bechia*, for it is Bechical, some ignorant fellow reading *Rebechi*, for ℞ *Bechi*, in some ancient Medicks receipt, gave the name to this Confection, which is now called Rebecha.

Vires. It cures such as cough, breathe difficultly, spit corrupt blood, are infested with the Peurisie, asperity of the tongue and jaws, and hoarseness.

Chap. 21.

Of Penidees.

Penidees are much commended amongst bechical and arteriacal Medicaments, which consist but of a few ingredients; for they are made of Sugar and Barley-water, mixed in such proportion, and so cocted, that a mass expurges thence, of such solidity, that it is tractable, not adhering to ones fingers, but easily ducible into long or short, crass or small threads: which, that it may be duly effected, the mass, while hot, is adduced, reduced, and drawn upon a ferreous hook affixed to the Beam, till it be dealbated, and several

severall figures made out of those threads.

Bulcasis, the Author of this Compound, made it of pure water, Sugar, and Honey, mixed with as much Oyl of bitter Almonds: But now we take Barley-water, omit Honey, and onely anoint the hands of the subacter, and the Marble on which it is projected, with Oyl.

The shop-men call this Medicament *Alphenicum*, from the whiteness it contracts by subaction and duction.

It cures the cough, hoarseness, and asperity of the artery; moves, cocts, and excludes spittle, and helps all affections of the Lungs and Breast. *Vires.*

SECT. II.

Of liquid Antidotes.

THere are of the Powders described, and other Cordial and Alexiterial ones, diluted in some idoneous liquor, certain soft confections made, which we sometimes call Liquid Antidotes, sometimes Opiates, and sometimes Cordial Confections. Now some of them are onely Cordial, recreating the spirits and vital parts; others Alliotical and Hypnotical, altering and conciliating sleep; and others Theriacal, working the same effects, and withall oppugning and expugning poyson, if they meet with any. We will begin with the true Cordials.

CHAP. I.

Confectio Alkermes; or, The Confection of Alkermes. D.M.

℞ *of the Juyce of fragrant Apples, of the best Damask Rosewater, of each* ℔ *j. ß. infuse in them for the space of a whole day, the husks or Cods of * Silk-worms* ℔ *j. make a strong expression; to which adde the best Juyce of Kermes-berries* ℔ *j. Sugar* ℔ *ij. boyl them till they come almost to the body or consistence of Honey; to which, whilst hot, adde ∴ crude Amber small cut* ℥ *ij. and when 'tis dissolved, cast in these Powders, of Cinamon, Aloes-wood, of each* ℥ *vj. the Azure-stone burnt and washed, Pearl, of each* ℥ *ij. Leaf Gold* ℥ *j. Musch* ℈ *j. make thereof a soft Electuary.*

* *Sericum crudum.*

∴ It is better to grinde the Amber with the Powders, and so to mix it.

The COMMENTARY.

The greater part of Pharmacopolists infuse silk dyed in the succe of tinctured grains, or Kermes newly tincted in Rose-water: But *Joubertus*, to whom I assent, would rather infuse crude silk in the said liquor, and then adde the succe of Kermes to the expression; for so there

there is less loss; and the vertue of the silk, if it have any, may be easily elicited before tincture, by infusion: And though its first Author *Mesue* instituted it otherwise, yet it is no piacle to discede either from him, or any other Author, if the thing may be made either better, or more useful thereby. I rather assent therefore to such as infuse crude silk in Rose-water, and succe of Apples, and afterwards adde Kermes to the expression.

It is prudently provided in the Roman Antidotary, that onely four ounces of silk be macerated, seeing it may not be totally omitted with loss to the Medicament: for, as I would not be refractory, so would not I be too credulous, nor suffer every thing that is spoken or written, too precipitantly to inhere in my minde. And that I may speak freely, *Sericum* being the excrement of a certain sordid Insect, I can scarce perswade my self, that it is indued with so great vertue as the Ancients put upon it. I know indeed that Clay is not destitute of faculties, and that the qualities of Animals Hair, Cleys, and very dung, are not contemptible; but, if not cordial, yet efficacious, by their sharp and troublesome quality. But more of silk in its proper place. I now return to our confection, wherein the Azure-stone is put; yet not so prepared, as in the confection of those Pills, which are denominated from it: for therein it is exhibited crude, that its purgative faculty may remain intire; but here burnt, that it may perish; in both pulverated, and frequently washed, that it may depose its vomitory, and keep its cordial and roborative faculty.

It must be burned in a crucible or small earthen pot, then brayed, and often washed, first in common water, then in cordial, as Rose-water, or such convenient liquor, and dryed, till the water after lotion remain limpid.

This is a precious, but not so operous a compound, as the *Augustane* Dispensatory portends: it is prepared as other Confections. The sole dissent about its composition, is in the tincture of the silk, and the weight of Musk, which some augment, others minuate: if Aloes-wood cannot be had, Citrian Santals may be substituted.

Kirts. It is very efficacious for many things; for it cures the palpitation of the heart, swoundings, doting, and sadness without a manifest cause; and much helps such as are languid, wearied with long sickness, and newly recovered.

Chap. 2.

Confectio de Hyacintho; or, *The confection of Hyacinth.*

℞ *of Hyacinths, red Coral, Lemnian-Earth, Bole-Armeniack, of each* ℥ ß. *Kermes-berries, Tormentil-root, Dittany, Citron-seed, Saffron, Myrrhe, red Roses, all the sorts of Sanders, the bone in the heart of a Hart, Harts-bone burnt, shavings of Ivory, the seeds of Sorrel and Purslain, of each* ℥ j. *Saphyr, Smaragd, Topaz, Pearl, crude Silk, filings*

filings of Gold and Silver, of each ℈ ij. Camphyr, Muſch, Ambergriſe, of each gr. v. with Syrupe of Lemmons make it up into a Confection.

The COMMENTARY.

Neotericks invented this Confection, which the *Mompelian* Medicks, who were firſt ſeen to uſurp it, had in much uſe. It agrees onely nominally with that in the firſt Section of the greater Luminary, which is denominated of Hyacinth, under the authority of its Inventor *Galen.* But whoever was the Author of this, he hath ſelected the beſt Medicaments, congeſted them in the beſt Method and Order; and therefore I judge nothing changeable herein, unleſs it be Ivory, which I think were better crude then burnt; and Silk, which I would willingly detract, or tinct it in Kermes before compoſition.

Some require a greater weight of ſimples, who may by my permiſſion either augment or leſſen the quantity, if they detract not from the vertue and efficacy of the mixture; for a little change is none.

It much helps the heart and noble parts in their affections; it cures the Syncope, exhilarates the heart, emends palpitation, dulcorates the breath, takes away melancholy, and her ſiſter ſadneſs, without a manifeſt cauſe: it cures venenate and contagious diſeaſes, and produces the ſame effects with the confection of Scarlet grains. *Vires.*

CHAP. 3.

Roſata novella; or, A new invented Opiate of Roſes. D. N. Myrep.

℞ *of Roſe-leaves, Sugar, Liquorice, of each ℥ ix. Cinamon ℥ ij. Cloves, Spikenard, Ginger, Galangal, Nutmegs, Setwel, Storax, Cardamomes, Smallage-ſeed, of each ℈ ij. make of all theſe a Powder, adding thereunto deſpumed Honey, as much as will ſuffice to make it an Opiate.*

The COMMENTARY.

This confection admits of Roſes for its Baſis and Nomenclature, and of many Aromata's, both to attenuate and concoct craſs and frigid humours, and to recreate the ſpirits, and roborate the native heat; and of ſome Bechical ingredients alſo, to move and promote ſpittle. It is ſometimes kept in form of a Powder, but more frequently of a ſoft Electuary, or Opiate. We have omitted ſome ſcruples and grains, added, its probable, upon ſmall grounds, to the greater weights; which he that will, may ſuper-adde: for

the detriment will be none; and the utility as much.

Vires. It roborates the imbecile ventricle, takes away loathsomness, discusses flatulency, excites appetite, helps concoction, incides viscid humours, cures cholical dolours, stayes vomiting, and helps the imbecility of the heart and stomack, (*Myrep. cap.* 214. *Sect.* 1.)

Chap. 4.

Confectio de Baccis Lauri; or, The confection of Bay-berries.

℞ *of dryed Rue* ℥ x. *Sagapenum* ℥ iiij. *Opoponax* ℥ iij. *Bay-berries, the seeds of Bishopweed, Cucumer, Lovage, Roman Gith, Carret, Caraway, Long-Pepper, black Pepper, true Acorus, bitter Almonds, Origanum, Horsemint, Castoreum, of each* ℥ ij. *Honey despumed, as much as will suffice to make it up into an Opiate.*

The Commentary.

In this confection, Bay-berries, (which give the name) the leaves of Rue, Origanum, and wilde Mint, make up a Basis: it admits of many hot and inciding seeds, to attenuate viscid humours, califie frigid humours, and dissipate flatulency; of Gummes, to deterge and discuss; and of Honey, to receive and conserve the Powders, and to make the compound more efficacious and pleasant.

The Gummes being few, and prescribed in small quantity, need not be solved in any liquor, but minutely incided, and pulverated with the rest; then all received together in despumed Honey, whilst yet hot, and coacted into the form of an Opiate.

Vires. It cures the cholical dolour arising from crude humours and flatulency, the tympany, turbulency in the guts, belching; and helps cold natures.

Chap. 5.

Antidotus Diasatyrion; or, An Antidote exciting Venery.

℞ *of Satyrion roots fresh and succulent* ℥ ij. *the roots of Garden-Carret, and Sea-holly, Indian Nuts, of each* ℥ j. *Pine-kernels, Pistaches, of each* ℥ j. ℈. *Cloves, Ginger, Anise-seed, Rocket-seed, Birds-tongue, commonly called Ashton-keyes, of each* ℥ v. *the loyns of Scinci, the seed of Bulbus, or Nettle, of each* ℥ ij. ℈. *Mosch gr.* vij. *Honey despumed in the decoction of the aforesaid roots* ℔ iij. *make it into an Opiate.*

The Commentary.

There are many descriptions hereof, of which this is the best, most usual, and useful; but there being many kindes of Satyrion, that

that which hath but one testicle must be selected, and that in the beginning of the Spring, when it is most succulent.

Some rather take Parsnips-root, then that of Eryngium; but I much matter not which, for their faculties are affine: and I do not so much esteem them, as labouring Rusticks, who almost daily feed upon them both, and yet are no more salacious then before. Rocket indeed I value more, for that will excite the most slow to Venery; though Land-Crocodiles or Scinci do most potently excite thereto, the flesh of whose Loyns I prefer before their Tayl. There is some dubitation about Onyon-seed: seeing no Medick hath explicitely determined, of what sort, among so many varieties of Onyons, the seed must be; therefore I substitute Nettle-seed, which is most congruent to that purpose, in its stead.

And it is thus made: First the roots must be boyled in sufficient water, till they be tabid; then they must be baked, and transmitted through a hair-sieve; then mixed with despumed and cocted Honey, and then again fervefied on a slow fire, till the aqueous humidity be absumed; afterwards the Pine-kernels and Pistack-nuts must be taken, and minutely cut, and then levigated like the rest; the Musk must be brayed apart, and last of all confusedly mixed with the Cinamon. The old description hath an equal weight of Pistack-nuts and Satyrion; whereas the Pistack being insuave, and more unapt for the end, should be taken in much less quantity.

Diasatyrion augments the seed, stimulates venery, erects the Yard, excites the languid and drowsie to venery, roborates the imbecility of the reins and bladder, and augments strength. *Vires.*

CHAP. 6.

Antidotus Analeptica D.F. *or, The roborative Antidote of* D. Fern.

℞ *of Rose-leaves, Liquorice, of each ʒ ij. gr. v. Gumme Arabick, Thraganth, of each ʒ ij. and ϑ ij. white and red Sanders, of each ϑ iiij. Juyce of Liquorice, Starch, the seeds of white Poppy, Purslain, Lettice, and Endive, of ʒ iij. the four greater cool seeds, the seeds of Quinces, Mallows, Cotton, Violets, Pistaches, Pine-kernels, sweet Almonds, Pulp of Sebestens, Storax, Cloves, Cinamon, shavings of Ivory, of each ʒ ij. Saffron gr. v. Penidees ʒ ß. when they are all beaten, take the treble quantity of syrupe of Violets, to make it into an Electuary.*

The COMMENTARY.

This Analeptical Antidote or restaurative Electuary, as *Præpositus* calls it, is much celebrated by *Fernelius*; in whose description he found nothing to be changed, but onely the order of the simples, and the grains of Berberries; in whose stead he reposed Pistacks:

But he omitted Storax, which is moſt commendable and uſeful in this confection, whoſe manner of preparation is ſo eaſie, as that it needs not any more declaration.

Vires. It reſtores loſt ſtrength, hinders ſwoundings and ſyncope, reſarciates the habit of the body, extenuated by long fluxes, or other immoderate vacuations. It helps and benefits the macilent and conſumed, by humectating, nouriſhing, and roborating them.

Chap. 7.

Antidotum Aſyncritum; or, The incomparable Antidote of Actuar.

℞ *Myrrhe ℥ ij. and ℈ ij. Opium ℥ vj. black Pepper, the ſeeds of Smallage, Parſley, and Muſtard, of each ℥ ß. Squinant ℥ ß. Amomus, the beſt Storax, of each ℥ ij.* * *Hedychroi Magnatis ℥ j. and ℈ ij. Caßia-Lignea, white Pepper, the ſeed of Hartwort, of each ℥ j. and ℈ j. Honey deſpumed, as much as will ſuffice.*

* Ἡδύχροι.

The Commentary.

Actuarius calls this the Aſyncrital, that is, the incomparable Antidote, becauſe it hath no equal in excellency. Now that it may be made to the Authors minde, the Opium muſt be macerated in ſweet Sape, till it be of the conſiſtence of Honey: the Storax muſt be diduced in honey, wherewith ſome dry Powders may be commixed. We have upon good grounds, and much conſent, ſubſtituted vulgar ligneous Caſſia, or Cane, in ſtead of the Author's Ægyptian Caſſia; and not Caſſia Fiſtula, or the purgative Cane, which *Actuarius* all along calls Black Caſſia, which is no convenient ingredient in an Antidote.

Vires. This Antidote cures old head-aches, mitigates vertiginous and comitial affections, takes away too much vigilancy, and reſtrains fury and frenzy: it indulges the dolours of the eyes by defluxion, helps the tooth-ach, difficulty of breathing, old coughs, the inflammation of the ſides, both dry and humid: it exhauſts all the humidity from off the lungs, condenſes thin ſpittle, and makes it more fit for excretion.

It is of preſent help for the ſtomack, aſtringing its humid laxity; it takes away loathſomneſs and ſighing, hinders vomitings, and ſo ſtayes the meat newly ingeſted, ſolves all inflations of the ſtomack and belly into ructures, cures the Jaundies, conduces to melancholy, abrogating its ſad ſymptomes, removes the gravity of the ſpleen, reſtores colour to the face, diſpels obſtructions, moves urine, deturbates ſand, cures the calamities of the Uterus, and cholical dolours, and many other affections, if what *Actuarius* hath publiſhed of this Opiate be true.

Chap.

CHAP. 8.

Philonium magnum seu Romanum; or, The great or Roman Philonium.

℞ *of white Pepper, Cassia Lignea, Cinamon, of each ʒ ij. Saffron, Euphorbium, Pellitory, of each ʒ ß. Setwel, Spikenard, of each ϑ ij. Henbane-seed ʒ ß. Opium ʒ ij. ß. Castoreum, Myrrhe, of each ʒ j. ß. the seeds of Smallage, Fennel, Carret, Parsley, of each ʒ j. Honey despumed, as much as will suffice to make it into an Opiate.*

The COMMENTARY.

No Medicament is so doubtful and various, as *Philonius* the Philosopher's Antidote; to which it happens, as it doth to wine which is poured out of one vessel into another, which cannot be without loss: for as many as have written of Pharmacy, have retained its name, but nothing more. *Galen* alone approves of it; but withall he saith, he subscribes many under it more famous and better. *Myrepsus* gave four Antidotes of that name; one whereof admits of Opium; one dimits it: the other are scarce like these, and very incongruent to the true Philonium. *Præpositus* detracted a few things from the former description, and added many more: some have added Castorium, others Poppy-seed: We approve of *Præpositus* his description, in stead of Costum, substituting Castorium, the true castigator of Opium. We have otherwise disposed the order of the Simples, and lessened the quantity of Pepper, Euphorbium, and Bartram; for so we have made it more secure, without fear of inflammation: For we have seen some complaining of great ardour in the bottom of the belly, and the straight intestine, by the injection of a Glyster, wherein half a dragm of Philonium had been dissolved; which is no wonder, seeing it consists of seventeen Simples, all hot, besides Opium, which some say is hot also, and Henbane: yea, it can scarce be swallowed, but it offends the jaws with its ardour and acrimony. But as it is by us emended, it may be safely assumed at the mouth, without any offence to the ventricle, gale or jaws. It is called Roman Philonium, because it was much used at *Rome*.

It is prescribed to the Pleurisie and Cholick; whence some call it the Cholical Antidote; and to all internal dolours. It conci- *Vires.*
liates sleep, stayes blood issuing from the internals, takes away loathsomness, allayes the dolours of the belly, spleen, liver and reins, arising from a cold distemper, flatulency, or crude humours, and stayes sighing.

It must be assumed at the mouth onely in small quantity, as the bigness of a Pease, or little more, according to the age and strength of the assument; and it must be variously dissolved, for various purposes;

poſes; ſometimes in the decoctions of Plants; ſometimes in wine: *Actuarius* gave it to the ſick in the ſtomack, in the ſucce of the ſprigs of Ciſtus, and a little wine.

But it is moſt frequently injected into the belly by the fundament in a decoction of Glyſters; which are preſcribed for the cure of the moſt grievous cholical dolours: whereunto, this much conduces.

Chap. 9.

Opiata Solomonis; *or*, Solomon's *Opiate*. D. Joubert.

℞ *Citron-pill condited* ℔ *ß. conſerve of old Roſes, and Sorrel, of each* ℥ *j. ß. conſerve of Enula-campane, and Bugloſs, Mithridate, of each* ℥ *vj. conſerve of Roſemary-flowers* ℥ *ß. Wormſeed, Citron-ſeed, of each* ℥ *iij. Cinamon* ℥ *ij. Cloves* ℥ *j. the root of white Dittany, Carduus Benedictus, dryed Citron-pill, of each* ℥ *ij. gr. v. Aloes-wood* ℥ *j. Cardamomes, Mace, of each* ℈ *ij. and gr. xv. Gentian-roots* ℥ *ß. the bone in the heart of a Hart* ℈ *j. Juniper-berries infuſed a whole night in Vinegar of Squills n. xxv. Sugar* ℔ *ß. Syrupe of Citrons, as much as will ſuffice to make it into an Opiate.*

The Commentary.

Joubertus deſcribes this Opiate from one *Solomon*, a man of no note in Medicine, and commends it for many uſes. He ſaith its Author was *ἄδηλον*, or uncertain, he onely receiving it at the hands of women, no little depraved; as it happens to ſuch things as are committed to writing, and not to print: Therefore I ſhould rather call *Joubertus* its caſtigator, the Author of it, then theſe women, or one *Solomon*, of whom I have not otherwiſe heard. But if any one will, for more oſtentation, or Encomium to the Opiate, deſign it by the name of that great King, who ruled Gods people, I ſhall ſuffragate with him, ſeeing many fictitious names are without any better grounds impoſed upon other Medicaments. It is eaſie to make: for want of Aloes-wood, Citrian Santal may be taken; and for the roots of Carduus and Dittany, their leaves and ſeeds: The reſt are vulgar, and eaſie to be had.

Vires. It cures peſtilent and contagious diſeaſes, roborates the principal parts, arceates putretude, kills worms, ſtayes vomitings, and helps the languid and weak, from what cauſe ſoever.

Chap. 10.

Electuarium de Ovo; *or*, *The Electuary of an Egge.*

℞ *of Saffron* ℥ *j. ß. or* ℥ *ij.*

Let them be included with the yolk of an Egge in an Egge-ſhell, open onely at one end, where the white hath had its paſſage out; and

and shut it up with another Egge-shell, or with Paste, and bake it in an oven: Let the matter be taken out, and pulverated small; whereunto, adde

Dittany, Tormentil, of each ℥ ij. Harts-horn, Nux vomica, of each ℥ j. Angelica, Setwel, Juniper-berries, Enula-campane, of each ℥ ij. ß. Cinamon, Mace, of each ℥ j. ß. Camphyr ℥ j. Treacle ℥ iij. and so mix all together: contund them well, and put as much Syrupe of Lemmons to them, as will make them into an Electuary.

The COMMENTARY.

The description of this Electuary is as uncertain, as the former's Author's name; for neither are known: Yet there is no Seplasiary so rude, but he will boast, That he hath its best description. I have seen many, but never two alike: that is best, which is divulged by the *Augustane* Medicks; yet some things therein are not tolerable: for though its ingredients be few, and described in small quantity, yet there is half an ounce of Camphyr, and as much Mustard as may equalize both the Saffron and Egge yolk there prescribed: whereas neither of them may be so admitted; the Mustard being very hot, and not cordial; the Camphyr cordial, but not suaveolent, save in small quantity. Besides, those grave men command the Powders and the Theriack to be mixed together, without the intervent of Honey, or a Syrupe: and so it cannot be an Opiate, but a Paste, more solid then any mass for Pills. But we have detracted Mustard from it as noxious, and Pimpinella as useless; adding thereto Enula, Mace, and Cinamon, as cordial and bezoardical; we have instituted a just dosis of Camphyr, an idoneous quantity of Theriack, and a fit Syrupe for their receipt and subaction. It should be a new Hens-egge, of a moderate magnitude, through whose perforated head, the White should be educed, and the Yolk left: what is empty, should be filled with Oriental, not pulverisatous Saffron; and the hole stopped with Paste, or another shell, that nothing might expire; then the included being cocted in a furnace or oven, by a slow fire, must be pulverated, the shells being abjected.

Some disallow of the vomitory Nut, because it is deletery to Dogs and Cats, and subverts Man's ventricle. But we have oft satisfied to this dubitation, for the nature of Man differs from that of Brutes; for that is often poyson to men, which to beasts is meat. Thus Starlings feed on Hemlock, which is death to man; Aloes and bitter Almonds kill Foxes, which man safely uses. Furthermore, the vomitory Nut being alexiterial, and provoking vomit, is very convenient; for vomits conduce much in contagious diseases, especially to such, whose first region abounds with prave humours: for the chief parts being thereby purged from their corruption, their faculties are more operative, and apt to oppugn poyson.

The use of this Electuary hath been rare in *France* hitherto; but I hope

hope when our emendation is better known, it will be more frequent: for thus described, it is most efficacious for the cure of the Pestilence; for it is a certain small Theriack, which later sedulity hath invented.

Vires. It is very commendable, both for the prevention and curation of the Plague, and all pestilent diseases: it is either given alone, or with some conserve, water, or cordial decoction.

Chap. 12.

Mithridatium Damocratis; or, Damocrates *his Mithridate, out of* Galen.

℔ *of the best Myrrhe, Saffron, Agarick, Ginger, Cinamon, Spikenard, Olibanum, Treacle, Mustard-seed, of each* ℥ x. *Massilian Hartwort, Opobalsamum, or Oyl of Nutmegs, Squinant, Arabian Stœchados, the best Costus, Galbanum, Turpentine, Long-Pepper, Castoreum, Juyce of Cistus, Storax, Opoponax, Indian-leaf, of each* ℥ j. *Cassia-lignea, Mountain-polian, white Pepper, Scordeum, Cretian Carret-seed, Carpobalsamum, or in its place Cubebs, Troches of Cypheos, Bdellium, of each* ℥ vij. *Celtick-Nard, Macedonian Parsley-seed, Gum Arabick, Opium, the lesser Cardamomes, sweet Fennel-seed, Gentian-root, red Rose-leaves, Cretian Dittany, of each* ℥ v. *Anise-seed, round Birthwort, Acorus, Orris of Florence, Valerian, Sagapenum, of each* ℥ iij. *Cyprian Spignel, Acacia, the tops of S. Johns-wort, the bellies of Scinci (a certain Crocodile in Nilus) of each* ℥ ij. ß. *Malago or generous wine* ℔ j. *or as much as will suffice to dissolve the Gummes, Liquors and Juyces; Honey despumed, a treble quantity, or* ℔ ix. *and* ℥ viij. *make it into an Opiate.*

The Commentary.

This solemn Antidote is cognominated from its Inventor *Mithridates* King of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*; for he was a most generous and most learned Monarch, who understanding the Languages of twenty two Nations, and having much skill in Medicine, made this noble Antidote against Poyson, whereof he was most afraid: by the use whereof, he lived long free from all virulent and deletery qualities; for being vanquished by *Pompey*, and fearing he would lead him alive in triumph to *Rome*, he assumed Poyson, from which he received not the least trouble: but becoming weary of longer life, called one *Bituitus* a Souldier to him, desiring him to kill him; whose slow and detracting trembling hand, he himself forced to his own slaughter, and so was said to have trajected himself, as *Appianus* hath it. Amongst his treasuries and spoils, there was a Roll of Medicinal Commentations found, which the King had laid up most safely, as the most curious of Secrets. *Pompey* brought these to *Rome*, and gave them to the Roman Physicians, as *Damocrates* and *Andromachus*,

machus, who approved of all the remedies, but especially of the Mithridate, whose description *Damocrates* rendred in Latine Verses, that it might not be changed: and though he was not its author, but transcriber, yet is it cognominated from him, *Damocrates his Mithridate*. *Galen* also delivers another description from *Andromachus*, not much unlike this; but it is not so orderly disposed, but somewhat depraved: for it hath an uncertain dosis of the Indian Leaf, of Gentian, Meum, and Cardamome, and Spikenard twice iterated under two appellations, signifying the same thing. There are furthermore, many simples most convenient for this Antidote, left out, as the fruit of Balm, and its fit succedany, Dittany, white Pepper, and Bdellium. It is probable, *Andromachus* changed the former description, either to get some glory, or to vindicate it to himself; or else because he found some such an one amongst the Secrets of *Mithridates*; or else received it from *Pompey*: But however, that of *Damocrates* is more frequently prepared, and more celebrated.

Neither was *Nic. Præpositus* less desirous of vain-glory, who described a Pseudo-Mithridate out of *Myrepsus*, congested of a great heap of Simples, which he, for the most part, described in the barbarous Idiome, mixed confusedly, and disposed in undue order and proportion. In brief, that Antidote hath much difficulty in its preparation, and little utility in its exhibition: and therefore we leave it to such as will swear to what-ever he saith; and, like blinde men, will follow their blinking Author whithersoever he leads them.

The chief difficulty in its preparation, is the pervestigation and selection of the simples which we often want, especially such of them as are exotical; in whose stead, we are forced to substitute succedaneous ones; as, for the Oyl of Balm, the Oyl of Cloves or Nutmeg; for the fruit of Balm, Cubebs, or Lentisks-seed; for Falernian wine, other generous wine; for Attick Honey, indigenous Honey: we have added to this out of the Roman Antidote, the root of Florentine-Orris; and for Arum, which some admit, and others omit, we use round Birth-wort; all the Gummes, Lachrymæ, and Succes, save Gum-Arabick, and Olibanum, which should be brayed, must be macerated in wine: in the mean while, the roots must be brayed, and the rest in their order, as we have often denoted. When the Gummes are macerated, they must be a little fervefied, that the wine may be absumed; then both these and the Powders must be levigated, and transmitted through a sieve, and mixed with despumed Honey; and so an Opiate must be made, reposed in a fit vessel, and agitated once a day, for the first moneth, with a rudicle; in the second moneth, twice a week; in the third, once a week; in the fourth, thrice of all: and so left, till the sixth moneth, and then once again agitated. *Vires.*

It is the most safe præsidy against Poyson, and contagious Diseases; it hath more faculties; but they are so well known, that I shall not need to recenseate them.

Chap. 12.

Theriaca Androm. *jurioris, ex* Gal. &c. *or,* Andromachus *junior his Theriack out of* Galen, *who calls it* ταλαν, *comn only known now by the name of* Venice-Treacle.

℞ *of the Troches of Squills* ʒ *xlviij. of the Troches of Vipers, Magnatis Hedychroi, Long-Pepper, Opium, of each* ʒ *xxiiij. dryed Roses, Sclavonian Orris, Juyce of Liquorice, sweet Navew-seed, Scordium, Opobalsamum, Cinamon, Agarick, of each* ʒ *xij. Myrrhe, sweet-smelling Costus, Corycius Saffron, Cassia-Lignea, Spikenard,* * *Squinant, Olibanum,* ∴ *white Pepper, black Pepper, flowers of Dittany, fresh Horehound, Pontick Rhabarb, Stœchas (or Arabian Lavender) Macedonian Parsley-seed, Mountain-Calamint, Chian Turpentine, the roots of Cinqfoil, and Ginger, of each* ʒ *vj. Polium from Crete, Ground-pine, Storax, Spignel of Athamas, Celtitk Nard, Amomum, Pontick Valerian, the seed of Cretian Germander, Indian leaf,* () *Vitriol, burnt Lemnian Earth, Gentian root, Anise-seed, the Juyce of Cystus, Carpobalsamum, Gum-Arabick, sweet Fennel-seed, Idæan Cardamomes, the seeds of Hartwort, Treacle, Mustard, and Bishop-weed, S. Johns-wort tops, Acacia, Sagapenum, of each* ʒ *ß. Castoreum, small Birth-wort-root, Cretian Carret-seed, Judæan Bitumen, Tops of the lesser Centaury, Opoponax, Galbanum, of each* ʒ *ij. generous Wine, as much as will suffice to dissolve the Liquors and Gummes, Narbonian Honey, or any other sort that's good, a treble quantity, or* ℔ *xiiij. ß. or as much as will suffice: Make it up according to Art into an Opiate, which keep in an idoneous vessel well covered.*

* *Juncus odoratus.*

∴ *Aglia.*

() *Chalcytidis.*

The Commentary.

It is not without ground, that they call Mithridate the Father, and Theriack the Mother of Medicaments; seeing in dignity and excellency they farre exceed all others, and comprehend all others faculties; for there is scarce any preternatural affection, whereunto the one of these duly prepared doth not conduce.

Mithridates is justly made the Author of both; for he invented and congested the matter whereof they both consist: *Andromachus* and *Damocrates* disposed it onely more orderly, and added some few things. Thus Theriack had its original from Mithridate, which *Criton* first so called from a Viper, which the Greeks call θηρίον, whose flesh duly prepared, as we shall hereafter shew, *Andromachus, Nero*'s chief Physician, added to Mithridate, and made its faculty, which before was void and imbecile, as to wild beasts and venenate Serpents stings, now most efficacious. And thus of Mithridate is made a Theriack, the most present Remedy against Poyson;

son; from which, all Medicaments that extinguish any poyson, are called Theriacal. *Andromachus* his sedulity was very commendable, who digested and adorned these two Antidotes with good order and form, which were before without order and form: in imitation whereof, the later age hath described many Compositions and Theriacks, wherewith some Pharmacopolies are rather onerated then adorned.

All Theriacks tradited by *Rhasis*, *Avicenna*, *Mesue*, *Serapio*, *Paulus*, *Oribasius*, *Aetius*, *Myrepsus*, and Neotericks, do not onely dissent from one another, but all from the ancient one delivered by *Andromachus*; and therefore they are seldome made, but neglected as useless.

And although the Theriack of *Andromachus* senior be described in Verses, and so may not be perverted; yet that which his Son gives in Prose, is more celebrated; which we here exhibit. However, there is no difference of moment betwixt them.

Many things accede to this confection, which cannot be alwayes had; in whose stead, others must be substituted alike in first or second qualities, though not in kinde; as when we make one herb succedaneous to another, one seed to another, and one metal to another. But we usurp such substitutes as are indued with like qualities, though we have not the best of that kinde. Thus *Galen* substitutes Wormwood for bitter Almonds; Doves-dung for Euphorbium; Ginger for Pepper: But now adayes the Parisian Apothecaries spare no cost, in acquiring the most precious and rare Medicaments and Simples; and many of them, that scarce know their seconds, have all the kindes of Aromata's, Precious-stones, and rarest Simples in their Pharmacopolies: yea, they scorn to let any Simple be unknown, that ingredes the composition of Medicaments.

But if any one, as it often falls out, can neither by Art, Labour, nor Price, acquire some things necessary for confecting this Theriack, he may, in stead of Opobalsamum, which is most rare, subrogate Oyl of Cloves, or of Nutmeg; in stead of Costus, Setwel; in stead of Schœnantum, sweet Cane; for Cretian Dittany, indigenous; for Amome, Acorus; for Carpobalsamum, Cubebs, or seeds of Lentisks; for Falernian, other generous wine. But nothing must be substituted for Pastils, whose preparation we shall give in the next Section. For want of small Aristolochy, the long may be used; for the Illyrian Orris, the Florentine; for Calcithis, Vitriol: which many think may be omitted, as conducing nothing to the vertue, but onely to the colour of the Theriack: yet if a Theriack should be without that colour, its Confector would be derided for his pains. Others on the contrary hold, that it is upon good grounds admitted, because by its styplicity, it roborates the intrails, and by its siccity arceates putretude: Moreover, it is mixed in small quantity, and half burnt, or else Vitriol in its stead, which is burnt totally, and thence participates of little acrimony. Of old it was otherwise prepared: but the true manner of its confection, is that which we have given to Mithridate.

And as θηρίον comprehends all venenate and wild Animals in general, and by a more peculiar signification denotes a Viper, whose Male is called ἔχις, and Female ἔχιδνα: so Theriack complects all Antidotes, which either by assumption or admotion tranquillitate diseases: *Galen* calls it παναπὴ; for it is most expertly alexiterial against all evils: and it cures not onely venenate diseases, but many common ones; for assumed in sweet wine, it cures diuturnal headaches, the Vertigo, heavinesse of hearing, hebetude of eyes, Epilepsie, and difficulty of breathing: it emends the vices of the stomack, difficult coction, and imbecility of the ventricle: it cures the inflations, cholical and ileous dolours of the intestines; it kills all kindes of worms, cures swoundings and imbecility: exhibited with the water of Radish-roots, or Pellitory of the wall, it breaks the stone, and helps against the hard mixtion in the reins and bladder: it is of approved use in the inclining to, or beginning of Fevers, especially quartane Agues: it dissipates flatulency, absumes putrid humours in the bowels and ventricle, removes obstructions, emends the colour, helps the palpitation of the heart; moves womens fluors, ejects the dead birth; and given opportunely, cures Hydrophoby, and the bitings of mad Dogs.

Vires.

Chap. 13.

Opiata Neapolitana; or, The Neapolitan Opiate.

℞ *of Senny ℥ j. ß. Hermodacts, Turbith, of each ʒ vj. the shaving of the* * *Holywood, Sarsaperilla, Sassafras, of each ℥ ß. of the best Honey despumed in the decoction of China-root, and cocted to the absumption of the aqueous humidity ℔ j. make it into an Opiate.*

* *Palisanti.*

The Commentary.

There is no Pharmacœan novellist so ignorant, but he can boast of some secret Remedy he hath, for the virulent flux of sperm, or any veniereous Ulcer; concerning which affections, and their cures, Empiricks are most busie: whereunto, the vulgarity of Apothecaries frequently run, not without peril; for this kinde of people, being greedy of novelties, and too credulous, will amplect any errour, though capital, so it smell but of Medicine; and take from deceivers their most deletery Medicaments. It is indeed miserable, that such as are unwilling to dye, should yet thrust themselves willingly into the hands of the killer. I would exhort all worthy Apothecaries, to move, induce, and valiantly infer war upon such nefarious wretches, and use onely such remedies as are delivered and approved by most perite and learned Authors.

We describe this Opiate, for the help of such Youngsters as Venery hath caught: it is invented by much Reason, described by much Art, and proved by much Experience; for given when and where

where it ſhould, it ſucceſsfully cures the Indian Pox, which they call the Neapolitan Diſeaſe: whence it is juſtly cognominated the Neapolitan Opiate. We have often ſeen another of the ſame name, in the Pariſian Chirurgeons hands; which being ill deſcribed at firſt, was daily changed by every freſh-man: for ſome onely make it of Guaiacum, Senny, Honey, and Aqua-vitæ; others adde Bayberries: ſome take away Guaiacum, and ſubſtitute Sarſaperilla; ſome approve of Hermodactyls, others Turbith, others both, and ſome neither. We exhibit it according to the preſcript eſtabliſhed and proved by Reaſon and Effect. Some adde Aqua-vitæ; but I think Cinamon-water is more conducible: but neither, to hot waters; either, to cold ones.

It cures the Venereous Diſeaſe: it is given every other day, and oftentimes every morning faſting, from ℥ ij. to ℥ ß. It is moſt convenient for ſuch, as for buſineſs cannot lye long, and ſtay much in their Cubicles.

We have omitted many other Antidotes, deſcribed by *Meſue*, *Actuarius*, *Myrepſus*, and *Præpoſitus*; whoſe compoſition is not probable, nor uſe laudable: before which, we prefer theſe we have tranſcribed. For Zazenea, Atanaſia, both the Requies of *Nicholaus*, Diaſulphur, Acariſtum, Adrianum, and the confection of Storax, are ſeldome or never prepared, becauſe Aſyncritum, both in facility in preparation, and faculty in operation, is much before them all: For their chief vertue conſiſting in conciliating ſleep, it is enough that we have one or two Medicaments, as Pills of Dogs-tongue, and the Roman Philonium, that can with felicity effect this end.

And we judge the ſame of Alfeſſera, of Eſdra, and of the Hamagogous Antidote; and other almoſt innumerable Confections, collected by Authors, or rather Tranſcriptors, which would make a man nauſeate their number.

SECT.

SECT. III.

Of Alterative and Roborative Trochisks.

WE have hitherto exhibited Roboratives in form of Powders, ſoft Electuaries, and Opiates. It now reſts, before we put an end to this Book, that we explicate all Trochisks of conſimilar vertues, and all neceſſary for Pharmacopolies; as well thoſe which are compounded, that they may ingrede the confection of other Medicaments, as thoſe that are given alone, and ſerve to the benefit of no others. And leſt we ſhould have confuſedly congeſted Roborative and Purgative Trochisks together, as many do, and that perperouſly; we have adjoyned all the Cathartical, as Trochisks of Rhabarb, of Agarick, and of Alhandal, to the end of the third Section of our ſecond Book. And now acceding to the explication of Roborative and Alterative Trochisks, we ſhall begin with thoſe that conſtitute parts of Mithridate and Treacle.

Chap. I.

Trochiſci de Vipera; or, Trochisks of Vipers.

℞ *of the fleſh of Vipers boyled in water with Dill and Salt* ℔ ß. *the Medulla of the whiteſt Bread, dryed and powdered* ℥ ij. *beat them well together; and with hands aneinted with Opobalſamum, or its ſuccidency, make little Troches, every one to weigh* ℥ j. *dry them to keep.*

The Commentary.

Theſe are called Viperine or Theriacal Paſtils; for whoſe confection, the Vipers muſt be taken about the end of the Spring, or beginning of Summer, when they have been recreated with their wonted meat and air: The Female ſhould be rather ſelected then the Male, but not while pregnant; but agile, with a long neck, a fiery aſpect, rutilous and red eyes, a broad compreſſed head, a ſnout reflected upwards, an ample belly, a tayl not involved, growing more gracile by little and little, void of fleſh, a firm, but ſlow pace. The Males tayl grows ſenſibly more gracile, and is not deſtitute of fleſh; the trunk of its body is ſmaller, its neck thicker, its head more anguſt, with onely two canine teeth; the Female hath four. Such as inhabit ſalt and maritimous places, are not ſelegible; thoſe that are taken new, are better then the old. But that they may be rightly prepared, they ſhould be killed with Rods; for their anger being thereby incenſed, they will ſpit out their poyſon. Their head and tayl muſt be abſcinded from them when beaten, each of them to the meaſure of four fingers, which is enough in greater Vipers: thoſe, which after this amputation, move no longer, nor

effuſe

effuse any more blood, but lye still, and are exanguous, must be rejected as useless: The useful must be excoriated, eviscerated, and purged from all their fatness, washed well three or four times in clear water, and then cocted in a fit pot, with sufficient of water, with a little Salt, and more or less of green Dill, as the number of the Vipers is, in the prudent Apothecaries judgement; as, one handful and a half, or two, for four or five Vipers: which number will make up three ounces of Trochisks, requisite for the confection of the Theriack. They must be cocted on a luculent, but not a violent fire, without smoke, that their flesh may be easily detracted from their spina; then the separated flesh must be brayed in a stone-Morter, with a wooden-Pestel, exactly: whereunto, in pulveration, a third or fourth part of dry pulverated white-bread must be adjected, that six dragms, or one ounce of bread, may respond to four ounces of flesh. He that addes more bread, makes the Pastils more imbecile; and he that addes less, more efficacious.

The flesh and bread thus mixed by triture, and subacted into Paste, must be made into Pastils or Orbicles. They act perperously, who inject any of the broath, wherein this flesh was decocted, into the triture; for so it becomes too humid, the Trochisks thereof too rancid, contracting filth, and not easie to be exsiccated: they must be small, and composed with hands anointed with the Oyl of Balm, Cloves, or Nutmeg; they must be reposed, dryed, and kept daily in a dry, but not an aprique place.

They are indued with much vertue against the bitings of venenate Animals: from them the Theriack mutuates its so profitable a faculty, and all other things that help the Leprosie, and bitings of mad Dogs. *Vires.*

CHAP. 2.

Trochisci Hedychroi; or, Sweet-smelling Trochisks. D. Androm. *out of* Galen.

℞ *Aloes-wood, Asarabacca-root, the herb Mastick, and sweet-Marjoran, of each ℥ ij. Calamus aromaticus, Squinant, Costus, Pontick Valerian, Opobalsamum, Xylobalsamum, of each ℥ iij. Indian Leaf, Spikenard, Cassia-Lignea, Myrrhe, Saffron, of each ℥ vj. Amomi ℥ xij. Mastick ℥ j. all which, with generous Wine, bring into a mass, which form into Pastils.*

The COMMENTARY.

Andromachus did prudently, to write this description in Verses; for if he had done otherwise, it would have retained little or nothing of its pristine integrity, seeing *Galen* is found in the description, and in the defining the dosis of the Simples. *Rhasis* and *Avicenna*

are not excuſable, who rather for novelties or vanities ſake, then want of Simples, changed the Trochisks: The European Medicks do not ſubvert, but ſubſtitute in ſuch compounds as are rationally and legitimately deſcribed. And it is more eaſie to get the deſcriptions of the Arabian and Græcian Medicaments, then the Simples whereof they conſiſt; though they muſt be very rare, if our Pariſian Apothecaries compaſs them not. He that hath not all opportunely in readineſs, may for Aſphalathum repoſe Citrian Santal; for Marum, true Majoran, or Dittany; for Amaracum, Motherwort; for Coſtum, Angelica; for Xylobalſamum, Wood of Aloes or Lentisks; for Caſſia, Cinamon; for Amomum, Acorus.

Rhaſis and *Avicenna* adde the bark of the root of *Darſihahan*; but what Plant that is, is neither apparent by its name, form, nor faculties. They call theſe *Trochiſci Andaracari*; but *Andromachus* and *Galen*, *Hedychroi*; ſome, *Idiocry*, from the author *Idiocrius* and *Idiocrytus*, that firſt compoſed it: for its confection, firſt the roots muſt be prepared, then the Aromata's, afterwards the reſt; but Saffron, Maſtick, and Myrrhe, which is laſt, muſt be prepated apart, and firſt mixed with wine; then the other Powders; at length, the Oyl of Balm, or for want thereof, of Cloves: theſe all brayed and ſubacted, will make a maſs, whereof Trochisks muſt be made, and dryed in a ſhade.

Vires. But theſe are not made, ſave when Theriack calls for them; therefore they are onely diſpenſed in ſmall quantity, yet conſiſting of many efficacious Simples: they may be given alone, for the cure of many evils; as *Ætius* noted in a certain rich man, who deſired an odorate Medicine for the cure of his Ozena; to whom he gave theſe Paſtils, ſubacted with old odorate fragrant wine: and, ſaith he, it was ſtrange to ſee how ſoon his affection was cured.

Chap. 3.

Trochiſci Stillitici; or, Trochisks of Squills. D. Androm.

℞ *of baked Squills* ℔ *j. the flower of Orobs* ʒ *viij. beat them in a Morter, and make thereof a Paſte; of which, form Troches, and dry them in a ſhade.*

The Commentary.

Theſe Paſtils of Squills are alſo made for Theriacks ſake, which ſhould, by *Galen*'s advice, be made after this manner: Squills muſt be collected in the middle of *June*, their exteriour bark deraded, the inferiour parts, whereby they adhere to their fibrous Rudicles, muſt be cut off, ſeparated, and abjected; they muſt be involved in Barley Paſte well ſubacted, not in Clay; and then cocted in hot aſhes, or rather in a furnace or oven, till the Paſte be hard, and the Squills ſoft;

soft; then their exteriour crust, and interiour pith, must be taken, washed, and brayed in a Morter: whereunto, a third part of the cribrated flower of white Orobs must be adjected, as eight ounces of Orobs, to one pound of Squills; all which, well subacted, make a mass, whereof Trochisks may be formed, which must be dryed in the shade.

The true and best Squills must be selected, as the Spanish Squills; they should be evelled in *July* or *August*, or a little sooner or later, when their whole stalk and leaves are erupted.

White Ervy or Orobs also must be chosen, not yellowish; which are not so amare, and yet more alexiterial: some take the root of white Dittany, in stead of white Ervy; but Ervy being frequent, it is better, with *Andromachus* and *Galen*, to admit of the genuine description, then substitute any thing without necessity, and defraud the Author of his minde.

Trochisks of Squills incide viscid and crass humours, take away infarctures, hinder putretude, cure the Epilepsie, and venenate diseases. *Vires.*

CHAP. 4.

Trochisci Cypheos. D. Androm.

℞ *of the pulp of Raisins, well cleansed from their stones and skins, pure Turpentine, of each* ℥ *xxiiij. Myrrhe, Squinant, of each* ℥ *j.ß. Cinamon* ℥ *ß. Bdellium, Spikenard, Cassia-Lignea, Cyprus-root, Juniper-berries, of each* ℥ *iij. Calamus Aromaticus* ℥ *ix. Aloes-wood* ℥ *ij.ß. Saffron* ℥ *j. of the best Honey, as much as will suffice, with a little wine, to make them into Troches.*

The COMMENTARY.

Cyphi is an ancient word, denoting Perfumes and Odoraments, from whence *Mithridates* cognominates these Trochisks, which *Damocrates* afterwards described in Verse: they consist of many odorate simples, which give a convenient name, and commendable effect to the confection; which the King of *Pontus* well knew, when he mixed them with his Antidote, which he would denominate after his own name.

The preparation is neither difficult, nor laborious; the Myrrhe and Bdellium must first be diduced in generous wine: whereunto, Turpentine must be first added; then the pulp of cleansed Raisins, and then the Powders: all must be received, and subacted in despumed Honey into a mass; whereof Trochisks may be formed, which must be dryed in a shade, and reposed and kept in a glass or earthen pot.

They are not onely used in perfecting Mithridate, but are given alone to Ulcers, and many affections of the Lungs and Liver. *Vires.*

Chap. 5.

Trochiſci Galliæ Moſchatæ. D.Meſ.

℞ *of the beſt Aloes-wood* ℥ *ij.ſſ. Amber* ℥ *j. Moſch* ℥ *ſſ. Gum-Thraganth diſſolved in Roſe-water, as much as will ſuffice to make it into Troches.*

The Commentary.

The word *Gallia* no little troubled *Jac. Manlius*, in ſeeking to accommodate the reaſon of that name to theſe Trochisks: one while he refers it to an odoriferous Herb; another while to ſome Province in *France*: but that Herb is fictitious, and *Meſue* never dreamed of *France* in his life: Neither is it probable did he deſign this Compoſition by the name of *Gallia*; for aromatical Confections are by the Arabians called *Alephanginæ*, as conſiſting of hotter Aromata's; and ſometimes by *Rhaſis*, *Ramich*; and more ſpecially *Such*, when they are compounded of Musk, Amber, Civet, and ſuch ſuaveolent things. But theſe may rather be called the ſweet Trochisks of Aloes-wood, then of *Gallia*. Yet I do not yield to change the name, which a whole age hath received and approved: neither will I labour in the perveſtigation of the name, where I know the thing.

For their preparation, each muſt be brayed apart; and firſt Aloes-wood, then Amber, laſt Musk; then all muſt be received in Tragacanthum diluted in Roſe-water, and made into Trochisks, which will emit a pleaſant halite: but Pharmacopoliſts keep them more for ſanity then for ſuavity. There is much mention of them in many Medicaments which they ingrede.

Vires. They recreate the heart, brain, and ſpirits, commend the odour of the body, roborate the imbecility and vomitory diſtemper of childrens ventricles, and reſartiate loſt ſtrength.

Chap. 6.

Trochiſci Alipiæ Moſchatæ. D.N.Sal.

℞ *Ladanum* ʒ *iij. Storax* ʒ *ij.ſſ. Aloes-wood* ℥ *ij. Amber* ℥ *j. Camphyr* ϑ *ſſ. Moſch* ϑ *j. and with Roſe-water, let them be formed into Troches.*

The Commentary.

Theſe Trochisks are ſeldomer made then the former, although in halite, ſuavity and odour, they are very affine: they are laborioufly made, after *Salernitanus* his deſcription; but eaſily thus: Ladanum muſt be brayed in a hot Copper-Morter, with a hot Iron-

Peſtel,

Pestel, in Rose-water, till by much duction and agitation, it become like a smooth Unguent, without the least asperity; then must the Storax be added, and much diduced with the Pestel; afterwards Xylo-aloes, Camphyr, Musk, and Amber, washed apart in a little Rose-water in anotner vessel, all brayed, confusedly mixed, and subacted into a mass, may be made into Trochisks, dryed in a shade, and reposed in pots.

They most efficaciously corroborate the brain, heart, liver, ventricle, and all nutritive parts, and refresh the spirits. *Vires.*

CHAP. 7.

Pastilli Neræ. D.N.

℞ *of the best Amber* ʒ *j. Aloes-wood* ʒ *iij. Mosch* ϑ *ß. Camphyr gr. ij. and with mustidge of Gum-Thraganth, or liquid Amber, form them into Troches.*

The COMMENTARY.

The Trochisks of *Nera*, so called, as it is credited, from the Inventor, are very precious, and very rarely confected, save for Princes and Kings: neither should they be prepared in great quantity, & kept in shops, but be forthwith confected, when use calls for them: they differ from those of *Gallia*, onely in the dosis of the Simples, and superaddition of Camphyr. That they may be duly confected, the Amber must be mollified in a hot Morter, with a hot Pestel, and Aloes-wood, very small pulverated, added to it; then the Musk must be brayed alone, and last of all the Camphyr: all must be well agitated, subacted, and mollified, and a little Oyl, liquid Amber, or Opobalsamum superadded, that they may be coacted into a more convenient mass; whereof Pastils may be formed.

They have the same faculties with Trochisks of *Gallia*, but more efficacious: Noble-men oftner use them for Perfumes.

CHAP. 8.

Trochisci de Caphura; or, *Trochisks of Camphyr.* D.Myr.

℞ *of Camphyr* ʒ *ß. Saffron* ʒ *ij. Storax* ʒ *iij. red Roses, Gum-Arabick, Thraganth, shavings of Ivory, of each* ʒ *ß. the seeds of Cucumer and Purslain, Liquorice beaten, of each* ʒ *j. and with mustidge of Fleabit-seed, made in Rose-water, make them into Troches.*

The COMMENTARY.

Of the various sorts of Trochisks of Camphyr described by the Ancients, that is onely made, which *Mesue* prescribes for hot Fevers, the ardour of Bile, and of the Liver, Blood and Ventricle, and thirst inextinguishable; but it consisting of many hot Simples, as

Spikenard, Xylo-aloes, Saffron, and Cardamome, I cannot easily conjecture, how it can effect these things. I exhibit others of the same name, much better, more efficacious for those ends, and more easie to make, out of *Myrepsus*; in whose description, I finde nothing mutable, but the order of the Simples: onely in stead of Spodium, if there be any such thing besides Pompholix, or the Græcian, I would rather exhibit crude Ivory then burnt, for many reasons before-urged. The preparation is neither troublesome nor laborious: the powder or scrapings of Ivory must be levigated apart, and also the other simples, Saffron, Camphyr, Amylum, Roses and Liquorice; the Gummes must be brayed in a hot Morter, Cucumers-seed must be decorticated, then minutely cut and levigated; then must they all be received in the musilidge of Fleabane, and made into a Paste for Trochisks.

Vires. They mitigate the heat of the liver and other bowels, temperate the acrimony of Bile, and stay the fluor of humours delabing upon the Lungs.

Chap. 9.

Trochisci Diarrhodon. D. Mes.

℞ *of red Roses* ℥ *j. Liquorice* ℥ *ß. Spikenard, Aloes-wood, of each* ʒ *ij. and* ℈ *ij. Mastick* ʒ *ij. burnt Ivory* ℈ *iiij. Saffron* ℈ *ij. make them into Troches with white-wine.*

The Commentary.

Various Authors give various descriptions of these Pastils: for every one at his pleasure addes, detracts, perverts, changes, and oftentimes designs the same Medicament with divers names, calling two or three by one word of the same acceptation. Besides this of the Trochisks of Diarrhodon, or of Roses, *Mesue* describes others, whose significations include others. Their reasons are futilous, who endeavor to prove the diversity of these, from the diversity of names: But if I may, with an approved Author, speak my minde, I will call these the Trochisks of Diarrhodon, and not of Roses; whose prepararion further to declare, were superfluous, seeing it bears nothing of difficulty in it. In stead of Spodium, we put the vulgar Antispodium, which is burnt Ivory.

Vires. They cure pituitous, inveterate, and implicite Fevers; they allay the dolours of the ventricle, and deterge the humours adherent thereunto: they are mixed in many great compounds described by *Mesue*.

There are other Troches of Diarrhodon described by *Myrepsus*, which are made after this manner:

℞ *of red Roses* ʒ *iij. Spodium* ʒ *ij. red Sanders* ʒ *j. ß. gr. xij. white Sanders* ʒ *j. gr. xij. Saffron* ℈ *ij. ß. Camphyr* ℈ *ß. which with Rose-water form into Troches.*

Chap.

CHAP. 10.

Trochisci de Carabe; or, Troches of Amber. D.Mes.

℞ *Amber ℥ j. Harts-horn burnt, Gum-Arabick burnt, Thraganth, Coral burnt, Acacia, Juyce of Cystus, Balaustians, Mastick, black Poppy-seed, of each ℥ ij. and ℈ ij. Olibanum, Saffron, Opium, of each ℥ ij. and with the musilidge of Fleabane-seed, form them into Troches.*

The COMMENTARY.

I have selected these Pastils of *Mesue*, as most efficacious amongst fifteen of that name, described by as many Authors: a great part whereof are onely nominally like these. They are denominated from Amber, which the Arabians call *Karabe*; and the Græcians *Electrum*; which is very good to roborate the bowels, cohibit bloody flux, and stay the Rheumatism of the Uterus. Its incrassative faculty is augmented by the interjection of Gumme and Opium; its astrictive faculty by the shrubs of Cistus and Acacia; Opium is castigated by Saffron; the ventricle is roborated by Mastick; all are comprehended in the musilidge of Fleabane, and the asperity of their parts levigated. *Mesue* commands many things to be burned for their preparation; but if they be admitted crude, the Medicament will be no worse: for if Harts-horn or Coral have any eximious vertue in them, it is probable they have it while crude, and not by ustion. I am not ignorant, what ustion conduces to Medicaments, what it takes from them, or what it addes to them; onely some are so weak, that they will not indure such preparation without much loss: But let those burn them that will, so they retain their faculties with their ashes. Acacia and Hypocistis should be first minutely cut, then pulverated with Pomegranate-flowers, and then the rest: Trochisks may be made of all of them, brayed in order, and by art, with the musilidge of Fleabane.

They are roborative and astrictive: one dragm of them taken in *Vires.* Plantain or Rose-water, stay all flux of blood, especially from the upper region of the body, the Lungs, Liver, Reins, Uterus and Hæmorrhoids; they cure the Dysentery, whether assumed at the mouth, or injected at the Fundament.

CHAP. 11.

Trochisci de Antispodio; or, Trochisks of Antispodium. D.Mes.

℞ *of red Roses ℥ vij. Antispodium, or burnt Ivory ℥ ss. Purslain-seed, Juyce of Liquorice, of each ℥ ij. and with the musilidge of Fleabane-seed, make them into Troches.*

The

The Commentary.

If we may babble with others, we shall call these Pastils, the Trochisks of Spodium, though unwillingly; for Spodium is not Basis, but rather Antispodium, which vulgar Apothecaries usurp for the burnt roots of Tabaxir: But let that Pseudospodium, and the Arabian Spodium be gone, these Trochisks are made and denominated from Antispodium, so called by us, with the addition of Roses, Purslain-seed, and Liquorice-juyce, complected in the succe of Fleabane.

Vires. And thus made, they do not onely ingrede the composition of the Electuary of Psyllam, but are given alone in acute Fevers, inflammations of the Liver, and vehement thirstings.

Mesue gives others more compound, admitting of Sorrel-seed, the pulp of Sumach, Amylum, Coriander, Pomegranate-flowers, Berberries, and Gumme-Arabick excepted in the succe of Omphacium: But they are less usual, and agree not with the said Electuary.

Chap. 12.

Trochisci de Berberis; or, Trochisks of Berberries.

℞ *of the berries of Berberries with their Juyce, of the Juyce of Liquorice, the seeds of Purslain, burnt Ivory, of each* ℥ *iij. red Roses* ℥ *vj. Spikenard, Saffron, Starch, Thraganth, of each* ℥ *j. Camphyr* ℥ *ß. and with Manna dissolved in the Juyce of Berberries, make them into Troches.*

The Commentary.

Mesue hath another description of the same name, but now obsolete. *Serapio*, *Avicenna*, and others that write Antidotaries, have many also; but this, as best, may serve in stead of all: which must be thus prepared: The Spikenard, Purslain-seed, and Liquorice-juyce, must first be incided, then brayed with Roses; but Spodium, Amylum, Camphyr, and Tragacanthum, apart: when all are brayed, they must with Manna be excepted in the melted succe of Berberries, and made into a mass for Trochisks.

Vires. They are commended in hot Fevers, and the hot distemper of the Liver and Ventricle; as also in inextinguishable thirst, and flux of the Belly: they also accede the composition of the Electuary of Sea-leeks, according to *Mesue*'s description; who, according to his Interpreters traduction, calls them *Trochisks of Oxyacantha:* but they ingrede not the Electuary of Roses delivered by *Mesue*, as *Foesius* thinks. They are made in small quantity, because they serve most for other compositions.

Chap.

CHAP. 13.

Trochisci Gordonii.

℞ *of the four greater cool seeds picked, of the seeds of white Poppy, Mallows, Cotton, Purslain, Quinces, Myrtles, Gum-Arabick, Thraganth, Pine-kernels, Pistacks, Sugar-candy, Penidees, Liquorice, Barley, the musilidge of Fleabane, sweet Almonds excorticated, of each ℥ ij. Bole-Armeniack, Dragons-blood, Spodium, Rose-leaves, Myrrhe, of each ℥ ß. and with Hydromel make them into Troches; let every one weigh ℥ j.*

The COMMENTARY.

These Pastils are by *Bauderonius* faithfully, by *Joubertus* depravedly described; for he changed not onely the weight of the Simples, but adjoyned others too precious, and not necessary. Their composition is manifold, for they consist of refrigeratives, detersives, astrictives, roboratives, lenitives, and some apertives: some of them are prepared by vulgar triture, pulverated solely by the percussion of a Pestel; as the roots, woods, harder seeds, gummes, Bole-armeniack, and Myrrhe: yet these two last should not be pulverated confusedly, but apart. Some must first be cut small, then brayed, and mixed with others; when they are all well brayed, they must be confusedly mixed with the succe of Sea-onyons and Hydromel, and so coacted for Trochisks.

Now for Dragons-blood, we must neither take *Dioscorides* his Cinnabris, nor with *Pliny*, the blood of a Serpent, or other Animal; nor yet any thing made of Cynople, Bole-armeniack, or Sorbes and Bricks brayed and subacted; but the Lachryma of a certain exotical tree called *Draco*, as we have taught in our Book of Simples.

Gordonius prescribes them to the Ulcers of the Reins; and they *Vires.* are also good for the Ulcers of other internal parts; for they leniate, deterge, allay acrimony, and roborate: One dragm exhibited in Milk, much helps internal Ulcers; which, if they be in the Bladder, it must be distempered with Milk, and projected by a pipe.

CHAP. 14.

Trochisci de Capparibus; or, Troches of Capers.

℞ *of the bark of the roots of Capers, Vine-seed, of each ℥ vj. Gumme-Ammoniacum ℥ ß. Gith, Calamint, Acorus, bitter Almonds, Cresse-seeds, Rue, round Birthwort, Juyce of Egrimony, boyled up to a good consistence, of each ℥ j. which after triture, with Ammoniacum dissolved, form them into Troches.*

The

The Commentary.

We have admitted of *Mesue*'s old description, without any immutation, as performing what it pollicitates; for these, of all incisive and reserative Trochisks, are the most efficacious, consisting of many things, which attenuate and incide crass, melancholical, and terrene humours, take away infarctures, and mollifie hardness. Whereunto, if any will adde of the Gumme of Lacca and Madder, an. ℥ j. he shall make them much more efficacious; and he shall not need Trochisks of Lacca, because the Trochisks of Capers are enough, according to *Plantius*, for the obstructions of the Spleen, and old affections. Both these and the superiour are made alike. Ammoniack must be dissolved in Vinegar, cocted to the consistence of Honey, and therein the Powders subacted for Trochisks.

Vires. They are much commended against all obstructions, hardness, inflations, and preternatural tumours in the Spleen and Liver: they help in the Kings-Evil, and the beginning Dropsie; they take away infarctures, and discuss flatulency: their dosis is one dragm with tenuious wine, or the water of the decoction of Capers-roots, ashes, or Tamarisks-bark. *Mesue* saith, some make them more valid, by duplicating the Ammoniack.

Chap. 15.

Trochisci de Myrrha; *or, Trochisks of Myrrhe.* D. Rhas.

℞ *of Myrrhe* ℥ iij. *Lupines* ℥ v. *Rue, Horsemint, Penyroyal, Cumin, Madder, Assa fœtida, Opoponax, of each* ℥ ij. *and with the Juyce of Mugwort, make them into Troches, every one weighing* ℥ ij.

The Commentary.

These Trochisks described by *Rhasis*, denominated from Myrrhe, and used by all Medicks, must in no wise be omitted; to whose composition, many things accede, which liberate the Mesentery from obstructions, diduce the passages, take away infarctures, and potently deturb such humours as either with their abundance aggravate, or quality offend. That they may be duly confected, the Gummes must be melted in the hot decoction or succe of Mugwort; then trajected through a linen cloth, to dissipate their aqueous humidity, that they may be of the consistence of Honey.

Hereunto must the other simples, when pulverated very small, be added: for such things as remove obstructions, open passages, and protrude any matter forth, should be levigated very small: for Asarum, and many simples redacted to most subtile dust by triture, move urine copiously, which when brayed more crasly, stay longer, and work more dully.

These

These Pastils are frequently used, when fluors retard their course, when secunds are retained, and lochia suppressed: they are given from ʒ j. to ʒ ij. ß. and sometimes to ʒ iij. with water, or a fit decoction.

CHAP. 16.

Trochisci Alexiterii; or, Alexiterial, or Trochisks against the Plague.

℞ *of the roots of Gentian, Tormentil, Florentine-Orris, Settwel, of each ʒ ij. Cinamon, Cloves, Mace, of each ʒ ß. Ginger ʒ j. Angelica-root ʒ iij. Coriander prepared, Rose-leaves, of each ʒ j. Citron-pill dryed ʒ ij. make of these a Powder, and with the Juyce of Liquorice ℥ vj. make it into a soft Paste; of which form either Troches or Rolls.*

The COMMENTARY.

These Trochisks are very convenient for the prevention of the Plague; for a little of them detained in ones mouth, leaves a grateful sapour, and an odour which arceates and emends the malign quality of the inquinated air, hindring it from infecting the spirits: for such things as are insipid and inodorate, as Unicorns-horn, Bezaar-stone, Margarites, Precious-stones, and many more obsistents to poyson, exert their faculties, onely when ingested into the body, or some way infused; which are almost inefficacious, if onely contained in the mouth, emitting no sapour or halite, whereby the ferity of the air may be tamed.

But these Trochisks, whether they be onely detained in the mouth, or ingested into the ventricle, they are of eximious faculties, and most efficacious in evincing pestilent poyson. That they may be duly made, the Liquorice juyce, wherein the powders must be excepted, must be mollified in St. *Maries* Bath, till it be ducible, and may be concorporated with the whole quantity of powders; which, to the perite, will be but easie, though to the inexpert it seems too operous: who may adde thereto a little Hypocras, or such convenient liquor, that he may have the Paste soft for Pastils. What Hypocras is, is well known; it is made of ℔ ij. of blackish Wine, ℔ ß. of Sugar, and ℥ ß. of Cinamon: some adde ʒ ß. of Ginger, and ℈ j. of Cloves.

CHAP. 17.

Trochisci Hysterici; or, Hysterical Troches.

℞ *Assa fœtida, Galbanum, of each ʒ ij. ß. Myrrhe ʒ ij. Castoreum ʒ j. ß. Asarabacca, Savine, Birthwort, Nep, Motherwort, of each ʒ j. Dittany ʒ ß. and either with the Juyce, or the decoction of Rue, make them into Troches.*

The Commentary.

We call these our Pastils Hysterical, because they cure the aberration of the Uterus, and other hysterical affections; for being assumed, they compel, stay, and hinder the Uterus, or vapours from thence ascending upwards, and those most grievous symptomes which follow thereupon: For the Uterns delighting in odorate things, though not under the species of odour, is resisted by these fœtid Trochisks from its ascent: and further, by opening the passages, and loosing obstructions, they protrude the prave humours that are in womans continents.

They are easily made, if the pulverables be pulverated small, and be comprehended in the Gummes macerated in the decoction or succe of Rue strained, and elixated to the consistence of Honey.

Vires. They cure the fœtid colours of Virgins and Widows, and help all those symptomes which proceed from the filthy vapours of the sperm, or of corrupt menstruous blood, or of the Uterus ascending to the Midriff.

Chap. 18.

Trochisci ad Gonorrhœam; or, Trochisks for the flux of Sperm.

℞ *of the seeds of the white Vine, and Lettice, Roses, Pomegranate-flowers, of each* ℥ *j. shavings of Ivory, Amber, of each* ℥ *j.* ß. *Bole-armeniack washed in Knotgraß-water* ℥ *ij. Plantain-seed* ℈ *iiij. Sassafras* ℈ *ij. and with the musilidge of Quince-seeds, extracted in the water of Water-Lillies, make them into Troches.*

The Commentary.

The flux of Sperm is either voluntary, as in copulation; or involuntary, as when it flows without venery: and that flux is either simple, participating of no malign quality, proceeding either from the plenitude and quality of the seed, or from labour, running, equitation, and too much use of hot peppered things; or else it is virulent, which is contracted by impure congress, together with the French Pox; wherein white poyson, or greenly flave, falls from the seminals, without sense, whether waking or sleeping. This disease is often as ill in women as men, especially when it is so strong, as it can creep over, and affect all the parts of the body.

Vires. Our Pastils are good for both; for the simple, if the body be before blooded; and for the virulent, while incipient, and not inveterate, if the body be once or twice purged before, and the blood

blood diminished: they are given with the decoction of the seeds of Poppy and Melons, or with Rose-water. Their dosis is from ʒ j. to ʒ ij. ß. or ʒ iij. at the most. These, as also the precedents, are easie to make.

Of two sorts of Trochisks which are extrinsecally adhibited.

CHAP. 19.

Trochisci Narcotici; *or, Narcotical Trochisks.* D.Fern.

℞ *Gummes of Arabick and Thraganth, Starch, of each* ʒ ß. *Ceruse washed in Rose-water* ʒ vj. *Storax, Myrrhe, Castoreum, Opium dissolved in Sape, of each* ℈ iiij. *Saffron* ʒ ß. *let all these be beaten, and with the musilidge of Fleabane-seed, form them into Troches.*

The COMMENTARY.

There are yet two usual sorts of Pastils onely adhibited extrinsecally, which we rather here adjoyn, then deferre to the second Part of our Shop, though it treat of Medicaments extrinsecally adhibited: the former of them *Fernelius* calls Narcotical Trochisks, because when applyed, they drown the sense, by stupefying the part. The composition of these is apt, their use necessary, and none of like efficacy have been known. For their preparation, all their ingredients must be brayed apart, and then mixed confusedly, and excepted in the succe of the seed of Fleabane, and coacted for Trochisks.

These Pastils duly applyed, drown the dolours of head and tooth-aches: they procure sleep in the ardour of Fevers; they extinguish St. *Anthony's* fire, and inflammations; they allay the dolours of all external parts. *Vires.*

CHAP. 20.

Trochisci Albi; *or, White Trochisks.* D.Rhas.

℞ *Ceruse washed in Rose-water* ʒ x. *clear Sarcocolla* ʒ x. *Starch* ʒ ij. *Gumme-Arabick, Thraganth, of each* ʒ j. *Camphyr* ʒ ß. *and with womans Milk, make them into little Troches.*

The COMMENTARY.

The Arabians enumerate these Trochisks amongst Sief or Collyries. The Neotericks have very much changed their old descri-

ption; for ſome have added Gumme-Arabick, others Amylum; ſome reject Opium, and ſubſtitute Camphyr: for thus the Paſtils are whiter, and more efficacious and uſeful in ocular affections; but in bitter dolours, Opium ſhould be added, or they ſhould be prepared after two manners, as *Joubertus* ſaith, with or without Opium, as the exigence requires; or a little Opium may be added when uſe calls for them. The preparation is ſo eaſie, as it needs no further explication.

Vires. They are very conducible to many ocular affections: for they allay their dolours, mitigate their inflammations, ſtay their fluxions, deterge, exſiccate and digeſt the matter, and roborate the part.

Now I think I have recenſeated the moſt uſual and principal Paſtils which ſhould be kept in Pharmacopolies: for others, which occurre in vulgar Antidotaries, are either of none uſe, or diſapproved; or elſe they may be eaſily comprehended under theſe, and ſupplyed by them.

Finis Libri Tertii.

THE

THE SECOND PART OF The Apothecaries Shop, OR, ANTIDOTARY.

Of EXTERNALL MEDICAMENTS,

Distinct into three BOOKS.

In the first whereof we shall treat of all kindes of Oyls; and add thereunto an Appendix of Balsams.

THE PREFACE.

TOpical *Medicaments are many, as Fomentations, Epithems, Liniments, Collyries, Lotions, Frontals, Cataplasms, Synapisms, Dropax, Vesiccatories, Bucklers, Bags, Coifes, and many more, which are made for present use, and will not keep long without corruption; whereof we have treated at large in the fifth Book of our Institutions: Others may be kept a whole year or two without damage, for future uses; as Oyls, Cerates, Unguents, and Salves; whereof we have purposed to treat in this second Part of our Shop: whose use is both more grateful and tolerable, then those that are ingested at the mouth; for such, by oppugning diseases, subvert the Ventricle, take away Appetite, excite Torments, and disturb the whole œconomy of Nature. Whence* Cornelius Celsus *would have Medicaments and Potions seldome used; for seeing they can scarce be exhibited in a just dosis, or when exhibited, do their office, seeing they often*

often move, but move not throughly, or propel laudable humours, deserting the malign, or leaving the internals distempered: They are sometimes perillous; for Ætius *knew an imperite Medick, who by the undue exhibition of a Medicament, killed a man: But Topical Medicaments are safe, and may be usurped, not onely to external, but internal vices. For as we seeing Extuberancies appear without, use purges to coerceate the exuperant humours: So when we are infested with something within, we often apply Unguents, Oyls, and Liniments without. For whether the Stomack or Liver, Reins, or other interiour bowel be pained, much help may be administred by due external applications: For all the Medicaments of old were external, which the Ancients, following their Captain Nature, used, without experience; and Countrey-men yet hurt with a blow, a fall, cut, or knock, without choyce assume the first occurrent Plant, and apply it to the part affected; and it often falls out, that a noxious Medicament, upon strong natures, produce successful effects. Now we shall in these three Books, shew what Medicaments Topical are best, which should be kept in Pharmacopolies, and how they are made. And as we have methodically proceeded in the three former; First, describing the most liquid, as Syrupes; then the more crass, as Eclegms; then the most crass, as Electuaries; and last, the most solid, as Pills and Trochisks: So now, in the three later Books we shall begin with Oyls first; then pass to the more spisse, as Unguents; and then to the most crass, as Emplaisters. Taking then our rise from Oyls, whereof Cerates, Unguents, and Emplaisters mutuate much of their parts; we shall first treat of such as are made by impression or infusion; then fly to such as are made by expression; and at last to such as are elicited by ascent or descent.*

THE

The Apothecaries Shop, OR, ANTIDOTARY.

THE FOURTH BOOK.

Of Topical or External Medicaments.

AND FIRST,

Of Medicinal Oyls made by infusion.

OYls, whereof there is frequent use in Medicine, are either simple, or compound: Those are simple, which have nothing from Art, but their eduction; admitting of no mixture, but educed by expression; as Oyl, simply so called, expressed from mature, and Omphacinum, from immature Olives; as also the Oyl of Almonds, the Oyl of Walnuts, and many more, expressed out of fruits and seeds, which mutuate their various qualities from the variety of seeds whence they are educed; as hot Oyls from hot; cold, from cold seeds, *&c.* Oyl absolutely so termed, is meant of that onely which is extracted from mature Olives; whose expression appertains no more to Apothecaries, then the expression of Wine, or confection of Bread, as to their manners how: which laborious work and business is duly committed to Rusticks, and diuturnal labourers. Seeing all these are aliments, and fitter for Tables then Shops, therefore an Apothecary should not sollicite himself about the expression of common Oyl, but about such as are elicited meerly by Art: Of all which we shall treat in this Book. In whose former Section, we shall examine all such as are made by impression or infusion of Medicaments, beginning with the Oyl of Violets, which are the first flowers of the Spring.

CHAP.

Chap. I.

Oleum Violatum; or, Oyl of Violets.

℞ *of washed Oyl* ℔ v. *of the flowers of Violets fresh and bruised, of the Juyce or water of the infusion of Violets* ℔ *ij. Insolate them together for a whole week; then take out the Violets by a strong expression, and new ones put in, afterwards boyl it till the water be consumed.*

The Commentary.

All the Students in Pharmacy, with one consent, follow the dictates of *Mesue* their Captain, whom they extol with praises, and adore with admiration: Yet his Laws and Precepts in compounding Medicaments, cannot by duration challenge to themselves infallibility; for we see many of them improved, and many disproved: and it is no imprudence to recede from him, or any old Author, though they merit most of praise, when one sees by long use and experience, a better and more compendious way. And thus we have something detracted from, or something added to the composition of some Medicaments, or their method changed. Thus they dissent in Medicinal Oyls, made by infusion and maceration; as in this Oyl of Violets, to whose confection *Mesue* commands the Oyl of mature Olives, and of Almonds or Sesama to be taken and washed; then the flowers to be macerated seven dayes therein, insolated and expressed; afterwards to be cocted three hours in a double vessel; and this to be iterated thrice, the expressed flowers being always abjected, and fresh ones immitted; and then to be cocted on a slow fire, till the watry humidity be dissipated, and then they reposed in a fit vessel.

Many Apothecaries follow this prescript; others will not swear to his words, but follow the dictate of their own Reasons, and change some things ever and anon: for it is easie to adde, when a thing is invented, or detract something that is superfluous, or castigate what is ill disposed.

But the Oyl of Violets is now made every-where, almost, after this manner: First, a certain quantity of sincere common Oyl is assumed, verberated, and washed in Fountain-water, and imposed in a glass, or earthen vessel well glazened; new Violet flowers are infused therein, and so macerated a whole week, and if the season permit, insolated; then they are boyled a little on a slow fire, that they may be expressed; afterwards, new flowers are immitted, as before, and expressed; which is thrice iterated: then the flowers, after the last infusion, are abjected, the Oyl cocted on a flow fire, till its aqueous humidity be dissipated; and then it is reposed and kept in a fit vessel.

Vires. The Oyl of Violets extinguishes inflammations, helps the Pleurisie,

rifie, leniates the asperity of the Artery and Lungs, allays hot impostumes, remits all inflammations, and mitigates dolours.

CHAP. 2.

Oleum Keirinum; or, Oyl of Wall-flowers. D. Mes.

℞ *of Wall-flowers ʒ vij. of the best Oyl ℔ j. ß. of the water of the decoction of the flowers ʒ iij. ß. mingle them, and after insolation, expresse the flowers, adding the same three times over; boyl the water away, and preserve the Oyl.*

The COMMENTARY.

The copious Wall-flowers occur next, which the Arabians call *Keiri*; out of which, *Mesue* educes Oyl by impression, as he doth out of Chamomile and Roses; that is, by three infusions, insolated and expressed, with a little of the succe or decoction of the same flowers, which after the last maceration, he absumes by gentle coction; and having expressed and strained the Oyl, he reposes it in a fit vessel, and keeps it. But it is now commonly made by one or two infusions, without any commixtion of any succe or decoction; the flowers being left a whole month confusedly immerged in the Oyl before colature: but this manner is not good; for hereby the Oyl is more turbid, and its faculties weaker.

Being duely made, it calefies moderately, attenuates, allays, digests, mitigates dolours from flatulency, cold, or pituitous matter; it benefits such as are gowty or paralytical, and cures the dolours of the nerves and junctures. *Vires.*

CHAP. 3.

Oleum Irinum; or, Oyl of Orris.

℞ *of the roots of Orris ℔ j. the flowers of the same ℔ ij. macerate them in a sufficient quantity of the decoction of the same root, adding sweet Oyl, or Oyl of the Pulse Sesamum ℔ v. Boyl them in an idoneous vessel, straine out the roots and flowers, adding a fresh quantity three times over; and the Oyl which is last pressed out, keep for future use.*

The COMMENTARY.

There are many sorts of Orris, which we have enumerated in our book of Simples: the best whereof, is the Celestial Orris; next, the white or Florentine. Oyl is made by infusion out of both, but especially the former, their roots and flowers being macerated and expressed, as is declared: some take onely the roots a little bray-

ed, and their flowers tunded, and coct them with the ſucce of other roots, and then pour Oyl upon them, and elixate them again, till all the water be abſumed; and the Oyl thus made, is very odorate and efficacious: yet it would be more efficacious, if this were twice or thrice iterated, as of old.

There is no diſſention amongſt Authors about the proportion of the flowers to the roots, ſeeing all give twice as much flowers as roots: but they agree not about the other roots, which muſt be elixated in the water, and about the water it ſelf; nor yet about the Oyl wherein it muſt be infuſed. But leaving, for brevities ſake, the variety of opinions about this matter, we ſay, That one pound of roots muſt be taken, and cocted in four or five pounds of water at the moſt, till half be abſumed. Some adde to this definite weight of roots, flowers, and water, onely two pounds of Oyl; others, ſeven pounds and a half; and others, eight pounds: I mix five pounds, and coct them all on a ſlow fire, till the watry humidity be diſſolved.

Vires. It calefies, mollifies, tenuates, digeſts, reſolves, concocts, penetrates, opens, ripens, takes away the ſounding in the ears, diſcuſſes biles and other hard tumours, emends the cramp and native fœtour, and allayes dolours from cold matter.

Chap. 4.

Oleum Roſatum completum; or, complete Oyl of Roſes. D. Meſ.

℞ *of common Oyl waſhed* ℔ *iiij. freſh Roſe-leaves* ℔ *j. ß. infuſion of Roſes* ℔ *j. put them into a cloſe veſſel well covered; inſolate them for ſeven dayes; then boyl them in a ſtrong veſſel upon a gentle fire for half an hour: afterwards let the flowers be expreſſed, new put in; and this repeated three times; at laſt, what Oyl is preſſed out, preſerve for uſe.*

The Commentary.

Meſue calls this the complete Oyl of Roſes, becauſe it is made of Oyl of mature Olives, frequently waſhed, and the leaves of red Roſes perfectly explicited, inſolated a whole week, and thrice changed, as it is in the deſcription, wherein we have given a juſt definite weight of each out of *Meſue*, who left all to every mans judgment & will, except the water of the infuſion of the Roſes, which he equalized with the Oyl: we believe a third or fourth part will be ſufficient for the Oyl; for when it is put in more quantity, it is not eaſily reſolved by infuſion; and Oyl, by longer coction, acquires alien colour, and loſes much of its native ſuavity. The other three deſcriptions given by *Meſue*, we omit.

The

The ablution of Oyl is multifarious; for it is either put in some pot or fit vessel with some water, and long verberated, so that it may be easily separated when the water is setled; or in a glass vial, whose bottom is perforated, where it is long agitated, having both its orifice and inferiour foramen occluded; then let it stand an hour, and the inferiour foramen being opened, the water that did subside will flow out; the same being shut, the Oyl will remain in the vial: whereunto sometimes more water is affunded. But we have abundantly disserted about the preparation of Medicaments, in our Institutions.

The Oyl of complete Roses extinguishes inflammations, roborates, cocts, densates, tempers the hot ventricle, and recreates it; allayes the ardour of the reins, cures head-ach from a hot cause, stayes fluxions, and cohibits the force of humours. *Vires.*

CHAP. 5.

Oleum Rosatum Omphacinum, vulgo dicitur incompletum; or, the Oyl of incomplete Roses.

℞ *of the washed Oyl of unripe Olives* ℔ *iiij. of Rose-buds* ℔ *j. mingle them in a fit vessel, and insolate them for seven dayes; repeat the same three times over, and make thereof an Oyl.*

The COMMENTARY.

This is called incomplete Oyl, because it is made of Roses not completely expanded, and of Oyl expressed from immature Olives, which is called Omotribes, crude, green, and Omphacian-Oyl; which is extracted solely for Medicinal uses: in whose want, we substitute common Oyl washed in Omphacium, that it may acquire acidity, and a refrigerative faculty. The Roses must be red, new, and not perfectly explicated; which must be purged from their white parts, brayed in a stone-morter with a wooden-pestel, macerated in Oyl, insolated a whole week, and then expressed: these Roses being abjected, other fresh ones must be immitted, insolated, and expressed, and the Oyl extracted kept for use.

This Oyl refrigerates and roborates much, and therefore helps such diseases as proceed from a hot cause; extinguishes St. *Anthonies* fire, allayes ardours, cohibits the flux of humours, and mitigates the heat of the ventricle and bowels. *Vires.*

CHAP. 6.

Oleum Rosatum simplex, ac vulgare; or, simple and vulgar Oyl of Roses.

℞ *of common Oyl washed* ℔ *ij. ß. Roses cut from their whites and bruised* ℔ *j.*

mingle them, insolate them forty dayes, then boyl them, till the evaporation of the excrementitious humidity; afterwards make a strong expression, and the Oyl expressed, keep for use.

The Commentary.

This description of Oyl of Roses, being the most simple and easie to make, is most usual: but they consult their own ease, more then the diseased's sanity, who will not make up any Medicament, that hath to do with Art and Reason, though it be never so easie. And thus Apothecaries now adayes do, who take any new Roses, though but reddish, and not exungulated, and macerate them forthwith in Oyl, exposing them to the Sun in a glass, or figuline vessel, by the space of two months or more; afterwards, when use calls for them, they coct them with a little of the decoction or succe of Roses, and express them, and so repose the expression.

Vires. Simple Oyl of Roses hath like faculties with Omphacium, but weaker: yet the greatest part of Apothecaries use it both alone, and with other Medicaments; and when a Medick for an inflammation prescribes an Oxyrrhodinum, they take three parts of this Oyl, and adde a fourth of Vinegar, and so confect their Oxyrrhodinum, or Vinegar of Roses.

Chap. 7.

Oleum Liliorum simplex; or, Simple Oyl of Lillies. D.Mes.

℞ *of mature Oyl* ℔ *ij. of the flowers of Lillies detracted from their yellow filaments* ℔ *ß. or* ℥ *vij. ß. macerate, and insolate them; and by iterating maceration and insolation, let the Oyl be made as before described.*

The Commentary.

Mesue gives two descriptions of this Oyl: the one whereof is simple, which we here exhibit, as better and more useful; the other more compositious, which we omit as useless.

All do not make this alike; for some, contenting themselves with the most simple preparation, infuse, insolate, and express the flowers onely once, others iterate all these thrice, and adde a fourth part of the water of the decoction of Lillies, to the Oyl, which by slow coction they exhale: and the Oyl thus made, is most efficacious, and fit to be reposed for use; for by its ternal maceration, insolation, and expression, it acquires more vertue.

Vires. It calefies moderately, resolves, allayes dolours, from what cause soever; mitigates all acrimony, and tempers all the ardours and dolours of the Breast, Ventricle, Reins, Uterus, and Bladder.

CHAP. 8.

Oleum Nenupharinum; or, Oyl of Water-Lillies.

℞ *washed Oyl* ℔ v. *the flowers of Water-Lillies purged from their herbaceous part without, their filaments within* ℔ ij. *of the decoction of the same flowers* ℔ j. *and* ℥ iiij. *let these be reposed in a fit vessel, insolated, and expressed; and this reiterated three times, as before described.*

The COMMENTARY.

This Oyl is made after the same manner with that of Violets: The Oyl, whether mature or immature, must be first washed; for *Mesue* gives neither definitively: However, the immature is more convenient and accommodate then the other; in which, the flowers of the white, not luteous Water-Lilly, must be macerated, and infused for a Senate; then must the whole be a little fervefied, and expressed; having before received one pound and three ounces of the water of the decoction of white Water-Lilly-flowers: when all this is again iterated, and the aqueous humidity exhaled by a slow fire, the Oyl expressed is duly made, and may be reposed for use. But that the decoction which should be mixed therewith, may be rightly taken, four ounces of the flowers of white Water-Lillies must be cocted in a pound and an half of Fountain-water, till three or four ounces thereof be dissipated; and the colature hereof must be mixed to the maceration.

It refrigerates more then Oyl of Violets: it conciliates sleep, allayes the heat of the Liver, Reins, and Bowels; obtunds Venery, hinders stiffness of the Yard, and cures head-aches from a hot cause. *Vires.*

CHAP. 9.

Oleum de Mentha; or, Oyl of Mint.

℞ *of Oyl* ℔ ij. ℈. *Garden-Mint* ℔ j. *of the Juyce of the same* ℥ vij. ℈. *mingle them; exhibit them to the Sun seven dayes, afterwards pressed out, and three times fresh Mint put in, and the Oyl expressed, preserved.*

The COMMENTARY.

Some assume Omphacium to the confection of this Oyl, that it may by its stypticity roborate the ventricle; others take mature and complete Oyl, that it may califie more, and help concoction: whence some call it Eustomachical Oyl. Sative Mint should be selected crisp and green, whose leaves should be tunded and macerated in Oyl, and thrice changed, according to the prescript.

Oyl

Vires. Oyl of Mint calefies the cold, and roborates the imbecile ventricle: it helps concoction, ſtayes vomiting, revokes appetite, helps the nauſeative ſtomack, and diſcuſſes flatulency.

Chap. 10.

Oleum de Abſynthio; or, *Oyl of Wormwood.*

℞ *of common Oyl* ℔ *v. Tops of Wormwood* ℔ *ij. Juyce of the ſame* ℔ *j. and* ℥ *iiij. mingle them, and macerate them, as before preſcribed.*

The Commentary.

This Oyl is of an uncertain Author: and though it be deſcribed by many, yet the proportion of the Wormwood to the Oyl, is alwayes diverſe; ſome adding a very ſmall quantity thereof; others, a very great one: We, following the excellent method of the Pariſian Pharmacopœans, adde five parts of Oyl to two of VVormwood, and a fourth part of its ſucce in proportion to the Oyl. Some, to make it more roborative, would have Roſes added to its confection: but we think it better as deſcribed; for VVormwood participates of ſtypticity, eſpecially the Pontian and vulgar. If any would have it more aſtrictive, he may, when uſe calls for it, mix a little Oyl of Myrtle or Roſes with it.

Vires. It calefies and roborates, eſpecially the ventricle: it moves appetite, coćts crude humours, diſſipates flatulency, kills worms, and takes away obſtrućtions from a cold cauſe.

Chap. 11.

Oleum Anethinum & Chamæmelinum; or, *Oyl of Dill and Chamomile.*

℞ *of common Oyl* ℔ *ij. flowers of Chamomile, or tops of Dill* ℔ *j. of the decoction of the ſame* ℔ *ſs. mingle them, and inſolate them for ſeven dayes, and boyl them till the watry part be evaporated; let this be repeated three or four times, and afterwards kept for uſe.*

The Commentary.

As theſe two Oyls have the ſame faculties, ſo the ſame manner of confection: ſome dry the flowers of Chamomile a whole day, in a place not expoſed to the Sun; neither defining the doſis of them, nor of the Oyl. Many take an equal weight of flowers, and of their decoction, and as much Oyl as will ſerve for their due maceration. Some immerge onely one pound of flowers in five pounds of Oyl, and inſolate them about half a month in the Dog-dayes; then expreſs them, and repoſe the expreſſion.

But

But if the judication of the good or ill mixtion and preparation be desumed from the power or imbecility of the Medicament, these Oyls will be most efficacious, if confected after this description.

Oyl of Chamomile calefies and resolves moderately, allayes dolours sprung from a cold cause, and roborates the nerves.

The Oyl of Anethum resolves, calefies, discusses flatulency, roborates the Nerves, takes away lassitude, mitigates the dolours of the articles, relaxates the spiracles of the veins, and helps in convulsive fits.

The Oyl of Rue is and ought to be made after the same manner: Indeed *Nic. Alexandrinus* describes a more compositious one, which, besides the tund leaves of Rue, admits of sweet Marjoram and Cumin. But it is seldome made for keeping; for that which *Mesue* gives, will potently enough effect what this pollicitates. It calefies, attenuates, digests, allayes the dolours of the Uterus, proceeding from a cold cause, discusses flatulency, and is, according to *Aquarius*, accommodate to all dolours, in all parts that require calefaction.

The Oyl of sweet Marjoram is either simple, which *Mesue* confects of its leaves and succe, or of its decoction and Oyl; or else more compound: which, besides these, admits of Myrtle-leaves, of wilde Betony, Southernwood, Water-Mint, and ligneous Cassia; but this is scarce ever made, the former seldome, save to the confection of Melilote: and, according to *Mesue*, the former is made like Oyl of Myrtle; this, like Oyl of Melons or of Quinces; that is, the leaves and succe of sweet Marjoram are confusedly macerated, insolated, expressed, and thrice changed in Oyl. What Sampsuchus is, and if it differs from Marjoram, we have shewed in our Book of Simples.

It calefies and roborates the head, and all kinde of Nerves.

Oyl of Jasmin should, by the decree of all Medicks, be kept in Pharmacopolies: for it hath most efficacious faculties, both in allaying dolours from a cold cause, and in digesting and resolving. But it is most commendable for Belly-aches, which much molest children: it must be confected, as the complete Oyl of Roses, or of VVall-flowers, are made.

Chap. 12.

Oleum Hypericonis simplex; or, The simple Oyl of S. Johns-wort.

℞ *of the tops of S. Johns-wort not altogether ripe* ℔ *j. common Oyl* ℔ *ij. of the decoction of the flowers and leaves of the same* ℔ *ß. mingle them, and insolate them for a whole week; then boyl them, and afterwards expreß them, and repeat this three times.*

Ole-

Oleum Hyperici magis compoſit. or, *The more compound Oyl of S. Johns-wort.* D. Jac. de Manl.

℞ *of the tops of S. Johns-wort* ℥ *iij. infuſe them for two or three dayes in* ℥ *x. of Wine; then boyl them to* ℥ *iij. which preſs out, adding a few more, which macerate, boyl, and ſtrain; to which adde, Oyl* ℥ *vj. Turpentine* ℥ *iij. Saffron* ℈ *j. boyl them till the wine be conſumed; then preſs out the ingredients, keep the Oyl.*

The Commentary.

There are three ſorts of Oyls made of S. Johns-wort; the moſt ſimple and uſual, is made of its leaves and flowers, with Oyl; the more compound admits of Turpentine, VVine, and Saffron, beſides theſe.

The third and moſt compound, admits of other Oyls, Lachrymæ, Succes, Roots, Leaves, and Earth-worms. The firſt is kept in Apothecaries ſhops; the ſecond in Chirurgions taberns; and the third ſometimes in one, ſometimes in another, as the Medicks deſign.

The more ſimple Oyl is better, if it be made of the flowers alone macerated thrice in Oyl, inſolated, and expreſſed. Some take the Summities onely of the flowers, with its little leaves and grains, to the confection of this Oyl: which way ſoever it be made, it is very red, and as it were bloody; of a kinde of middle conſiſtence, betwixt an Oyl and an Unguent.

It roborates the Nerves very much, deleates red ſpots, digeſts and reſolves humours, mitigates dolours, and recreates the junctures.

That which *Manlius* deſcribes, ſeems rather to be ſome Balſam or Unguent for agglutinating wounds, then an Oyl; yet being eximious, we will not omit it. If the wine firſt affunded, be exhaled by the firſt ebullition, more muſt be affunded, that it may be diſſipated by the laſt.

It calefies and ſiccates, conduces very much to pricks or wounds in the Nerves: it cures burnings, helps him that hath the Sciatica, and is ſucceſsfully uſurped in all dolours contracted by cold.

The Cyprian or Lyguſtrian Oyl, which the Arabians call Oyl of Alcanna, is made like that of Rue, but it is ſeldom kept; nor yet the Oyl of Enula, of Melilote, of Carthamus, Citrian Santal, and many more, which Authors deſcribe rather out of oſtentation, then neceſſity.

Chap. 13.

Oleum de Pomis Mandragoræ; or, Oyl of Mandrake-Apples.

℞ *of the Juyce of ripe Mandrake-Apples, Oyl of Jaſmin, or common Oyl, of each equal parts, boyl them till the Juyce be evaporated; afterwards adde again as much ſucce, which evaporate as before; and this repeat three times.*

The

The COMMENTARY.

There are two deſcriptions of this Oyl; one tradited by *Meſue*, which we here exhibit, as being eaſier and ſafer; another by *Præpoſitus*, which is too ſtupefactive and narcotical: for it admits not onely of the ſucce of Mandrake, but alſo of Henbane, Poppy and Hemlock, with Opium alſo. And ſeeing benign Narcoticks, unleſs they be duely prepared, and rightly exhibited, conſopite the ſenſes, extinguiſh innate heat; we need not congeſt ſo many Medicaments of contrary qualities into one. Moreover, we do not in the uſe of Narcotical Medicaments, ſo much deſire the ſtupefaction of the ſenſes, as the mitigation of the inflammation and dolour. If you have not Apples enough in this confection, you may help out the quantity with the ſucce of the roots thereof; for no ſubſtitute is ſo affine to any part of Mandrake, as another part of the ſame. The preparation is apparent enough by the deſcription.

It extinguiſhes all inflammations, allayes dolours, ſtupefies the ſenſes, helps the head-ach and phrenſie; and by way of liniment, moderates the ardour of the reins. *Vires.*

CHAP. 14.

Oleum Myrtinum; or, Oyl of *Myrtles*. D. Meſ.

℞ *of the leaves of green Myrtle* ℥ *v. Oyl of unripe Olives* ℔ *j. mingle them, and inſolate them eight dayes; boyl them in a bath, take out the leaves, and let freſh be immerged, and that three times reiterated; the Oyl expreſſed preſerve.*

Oleum Myrtillorum; or, Oyl of *Myrtle-berries*.

℞ *of Myrtle-berries* ℔ *j. Oyl of unripe Olives* ℔ *ij. ß. of the water of the decoction of the leaves and berries* ℥ *vij. macerate, and boyl them till the abſumption of the water, then eject the berries, and freſh ones added, which muſt be macerated and boyled till they grow ſoft; which muſt be repeated three times, if the efficacy of the Oyl requires it.*

The COMMENTARY.

That is called Oyl of Myrtles, which is made of Myrtle leaves macerated and expreſſed; that of Myrtles, which is made of Myrtle-berries: both are uſual and eximious. But for want of berries, the other is more frequently kept in ſhops. He that hath onely dry berries, and would make Oyl thereof, muſt immerge them in odorate wine till they be ſwelled; then mix them with Oyl, and coct and expreſs them, and repoſe the expreſſion for uſe.

They ſometimes make the Oyl of Myrtles, only of the ſucce of their

leaves and Oyl with a little Ladanum; but the way we have described is more usual, and better.

Vires. Both of them refrigerate, condense, astringe, roborate the brain, nerves and ventricle, retain hairs, stay them from falling off, cure the gummes and teeth-ach, confirm loose members, and emend biles or lumps erumping by way of liniment.

Chap. 15.

Oleum Cydoniorum; or, *Oyl of Quinces.* D. Mes.

℞ *of the Medulla or flesh of Quinces, and of the Juyce of the same, of each* ℔ *ß. Oyl of unripe Olives* ℔ *j. and* ʒ *iij. let them be insolated in a glass for fifteen dayes, afterwards boyled to the consumption of the Juyce; and after the Oyl is expressed, adde thereunto fresh Quinces; and let this be repeated three or four times, keeping the last expression.*

The Commentary.

This Oyl, which the Greeks call μηλινον, is made in Autumn, when the Quinces have attained their perfect magnitude, before maturity. They must be plucked, not depelled, purged from their Down, then rasped, or deraded, with an instrument, exasperated with some segments; afterwards an equal weight of their succe, and flesh, not brayed, but deraded, and not expressed, must be taken, confusedly mixed with the Oyl, thrice insolated, cocted and expressed, as in the prescript. *Sylvius* saith, that the succe of Quinces will so crack and move while it is cocted in Oyl, as that it will excuss all the Oyl out of the vessel; therefore (saith he) this Oyl should be cocted in a double vessel, lest by this impression on the Oyl, the Quinces faculties evade more imbecile.

Vires. It refrigerates, astringes, roborates the retentive faculty of the ventricle and intestines, helps concoction, stayes vomiting; and thence conduces to the disease of Choler, Lientery, and Dysentery, confirming and roborating each loose and imbecile part.

Chap. 16.

Myrelæum, seu Oleum Pigmentatum; or, *Oyl of the Oak of Jerusalem.*

℞ *the tops of the Oak of* Jerusalem, *or of the herb so called m. iij. the berries or seed of the same* ʒ *viij. white-wine* ℔ *ß. good Oyl* ℔ *j. ß. mingle them, and insolate them for seven dayes; afterwards put them in a bath, till the wine be evaporated, and the expressed Oyl keep.*

The

The COMMENTARY.

This Oyl ſhould be made about the beginning of Autumn: we call it Myreol, or Unguent of Pigment, becauſe both the Plants whereof it conſiſts, are called by the French Pigmentum; as if they ſhould ſay, Pigment; and by ſome Ambroſia: for by the fragrance of its halite, it exhilarates; and by its aromatical lentour, inviſcates the fingers of the contrectants.

When *Don Claudius Gonerius*, a man of much learning and integrity, of whom we have oft made mention in our Books of Medicinal Matter, had accurately ſought into the nature of theſe Plants; whoſe diligence in finding the varieties and faculties of Simples, hath been very great; He was moved, that Medicks ſhould not celebrate and uſurp ſuch eximious Plants, which Nature it ſelf had deſigned excellent by their odour, ſapour, and pinguetude. But it may be theſe Plants are contemptible, becauſe of their frequency: the herb indeed grows moſt commonly in cultivated Gardens; but the ſhrub fruticates ſpontaneouſly in all places about *Paris*; much whereof, in the beginning of *September*, is brought into the City, and bought by women, to conciliate fragrance and ſuavity to their veſtments.

When I had long explored their faculties, and found them efficacious, I made this Oyl of them, which reſponds in faculties to many Balſams: for it conduces much to the Palſey, trembling and imbecility of the Nerves; it cures the cold dolours of the articles, digeſts watry humours, takes away dolours ſprung from phlegm, coćts and reſolves crude tumours, roborates the Brain and Nerves, and with a little Turpentine, draws dyſepulotical Ulcers to ſanity. *Vires.*

SECT. II.

Of ſuch Oyls as may be confected at any time.

IN the former Section of this Book, we have comprehended all Oyls more uſual and neceſſary for Pharmacopoliſts, which ſhould be made in the Spring, Summer, or Autumn, by infuſion; thoſe ſeaſons ſuppeditating freſh and eximious Medicaments in great plenty. Now it reſts, that we deſcribe ſuch as Art may elicite at any time.

Chap. 1.

Oleum Maſtichinum; or, Oyl of Maſtick. D.Meſ.

℞ *Maſtick ℥ iij. Oyl of Roſes ℥ xij. generous Wine ℥ iiij. boyl them till the conſumption of the wine; then ſtrain it, and let the Oyl be repoſed in a pot for uſe.*

The Commentary.

Meſue gives two deſcriptions of the Oyl of Maſtick; one, conſiſting of the Oyl of Seſamum and Maſtick; the other, of Wine, Maſtick, and the Oyl of Roſes, which is frequently uſed. *Præpoſitus* propounds a third, which all reject. *Myrepſus*, beſides the former, gives two other, ſcarce at all uſed: This deſcription then that we give out of *Avicenna* and *Meſue*, is ſolely admitted; for whoſe confection, the Maſtick muſt be tunded pretty craſsly, then cocted and agitated in a double veſſel, together with Oyl of Roſes and red VVine, till the VVine be exhaled.

Vires. It roborates the brain, nerves, ventricle, liver, and articles: it mollifies hard tumours, and allayes dolours.

Chap. 2.

Oleum Nardinum ſimplex; or, Simple Oyl of Spikenard. D.Meſ.

℞ *Spikenard ℥ iij. Wine and Water, of each ℥ ij. ſ. Oyl of the Pulſe Seſamum ℔ j. ſ. boyl them upon a gentle fire, till the water be conſumed, ſtirring of them, leſt they burn*

The Commentary.

Meſue is too much occupied in varying the ſame Oyl: for he gives four ſorts of the Oyl of Roſes, three of Spikenard; amongſt which, thoſe onely that are firſt deſcribed, are uſurped, the reſt ſeldome or never; as other two which *Myrepſus* gives, ſo ſumptuous, that they rather ſeem Balſams or Unguents, then Oyls.

For the confection of this ſimple Oyl of Spikenard, in defect of Oyl of Seſamum, ſweet Oyl may be ſubſtituted, without much errour: for *Meſue* ſometimes preſcribes that of Seſamum or ſweet Oyl at pleaſure. The Spikenard muſt be minutely cut, and macerated three or four hours in a glaſs or fictile pot, in Wine, Water and Oyl; then all cocted, till the water and wine be diſſipated. Some macerate it onely in water and wine for a whole day; but ſo its faculties are worſted: they had better infuſe it for a ſhort ſpace in Oyl, water and wine, calefied a little upon the aſhes. Now half a pound of Oyl ſeeming too little for three ounces of Spikenard, much

much whereof is very light, the Roman Medicks have added to it a pound more; so that it is ℔ j. ʃʃ.

This Oyl is called *Benedict*, for its eximious vertues: it calefies, attenuates, digests, and astringes moderately; and thence conduces much to all cold flatulent affections of the Brain, Ventricle, Liver, Spleen, and Uterus, and emends the odour and colour of the body. *Vires.*

CHAP. 3.

Oleum Croci; or, *Oyl of Saffron.* D. Mes.

℞ *of Saffron, Calamus Aromaticus, of each* ℥ *j. Myrrhe* ℥ ʃʃ. *macerate them five dayes in Vinegar; then infuse for a whole day Cardamomes* ℥ *ix. afterwards boyl them upon a gentle fire, till the Vinegar be consumed, with* ℔ *j.* ʃʃ. *of the best Oyl; let the Colature be put in a fit vessel.*

Cordumeni, i. Carui, in ejus loco Cardamomi.

The COMMENTARY.

There is scarce a disease more frequent, then the Neapolitan, or a Medicament more usual to it, then the Emplaister of Frogs, described by *Jo. Vigonius*; for there is not an Oppidane Barber so stupid, but he hath made both tryal and gain of this Medicament: to whose confection, Oyl of Saffron acceding, it should be kept in Pharmacopolies; otherwise, the Medicament will be ill confected: yet I think *Mesue* invented it not for that end; for it is credible, he never heard of the Venereous Pox, else he would not have been silent in that point: but he made it to roborate the Uterus and Nerves, allay their dolours, mollifie and discuss hardness, and conciliate colour. What Cordumeni is, we have shewed in our Book of Simples.

CHAP. 4.

Oleum de Capparibus; or, *Oyl of Capers.*

℞ *of the bark of the roots of Capers* ℥ *j. the middle bark of Tamarisk, Tamarisk-leaves, the seeds of white Willow, Spleen-wort, Cypress-root, of each* ℥ *ij. Rue* ℥ *j. Vinegar, generous White-wine, of each* ℥ *ij. mature Oyl* ℔ *j. boyl them, till the Vinegar and the Wine be consumed, and let percolated Oyl be reposed idoneously for future use.*

The COMMENTARY.

The invention of this Oyl is attributed to the Neotericks: for none of the Ancients, that I know of, speak of it. Its Author is uncertain; but whoever he was, he described this Oyl, which is eximiously Medicinal, both legitimately and methodically: Which

is therefore alwayes almoſt made after the deſcription we have exhibited; ſave by *Braſſavolus*, who ſtudying novelties, changed it: who, I think, is one of them that had rather be ſeen then eſtimated.

But that it may be duly confected, the roots of Cypreſs muſt firſt be minutely incided, then brayed with the barks of Capers and Tamarisks; the other ſimples alſo, as Tamarisks, Scolopendrium, or Ceterach and Rue, muſt be tunded together; only the ſeed of Agnus Caſtus apart; then all muſt be mixed together, macerated fifteen dayes in Wine, Vinegar, and Oyl; then cocted in a double veſſel, till the wine and vinegar be diſſipated; and then the Oyl ſtrained and kept.

Vires. It much helps the affections of the Spleen, for it cures its hardneſs, ſwelling, obſtructions, and dolours: it opens the ſpiracles and pores of the skin, reſolves humours, and diſcuſſes flatulency.

Chap. 5.

Oleum ex Euphorbio; or, Oyl of Euphorbium. D.Meſ.

℞ *Euphorbium* ℥ ß. *Oyl of Wall-flowers, odoriferous Wine, of each* ℥ v. *boyl them together, till the conſumption of the wine.*

The Commentary.

As water may by Art be made more cold, or more hot; ſo may Oyl, according to *Galen*, which may be made very refrigerative, if Sedum or Sempervive be macerated therein; refrigerative and ſtupefactive, if Mandrake; and hot, if Pepper or Euphorbium be macerated in it. From all which legitimately adhibited, Oyls may be by impreſſion elicited, moſt accommodate for Medicinal uſes: for though Euphorbium be exceeding hot and ſharp, yet *Galen* commends it for many uſes; as mixed with wax, for the affections of the Hips; melted with Oyl, to the Hemicrany from a cold cauſe: from the lection whereof, *Meſue* being made more learned and bold, brought this Oyl, which he invented, amongſt thoſe other he deſcribes; adding another out of *Avicenna*, whereunto he adjects ſome few things; but that is of no uſe, obſelete: but for the confection of the former, white and new Euphorbium ſhould be ſelected; in defect whereof, by *Galens* advice, twice as much old muſt be uſurped: it muſt be levigated into ſmall powder, and a little wine, or Oyl of Keyri ſuperfuſed, leſt it ſhould offend the noſe and brain of the tunder; when it is brayed, it muſt be mixed with Oyl of wine, and moved alwayes with a rudicle, then cocted ſlowly, till all the wine be exhaled, and then the diſtrained Oyl muſt be repoſed.

Vires. It much helps the cold affections of the brain and nerves, the Cephalalgie, Hemicrany, and Lethargie, being immitted up the noſtrils: it alſo helps the cold dolours of the junctures, liver and ſpleen.

Chap.

CHAP. 6.

Oleum Moſchellinum; or, *A ſweet ſmelling Oyl.*

℞ *of Nutmegs num. ij. Moſch* ℥ *ß. Indian leaf, Spikenard, Coſtus, Maſtick, of each* ℥ *vj. Storax, * Caſſia-Lignea, Myrrhe, Saffron, Cloves, Cubebs, Bdellium, of each* ℥ *ij. pure Oyl* ℔ *iij. generous Wine* ℥ *iij. let them be bruiſed that are to be bruiſed, and mingled together, boyling of them till the Wine be conſumed: let the ſtrained Oyl be preſerved for uſe.*

* *Xylo-Caſſia.*

The COMMENTARY.

Moſt diſſent about the Author, Deſcription, Name of this Oyl, and the doſis of its ſimples: for all that have ſpoken of it, either adding or detracting ſomething, have obſcured its origine, and changed its antique deſcription; which *Joubertus* finding ſhamefully depraved, caſtigated, and reduced to a better form; which here we have exhibited, under the name of Musk-Oyl: for it having two baſes, both eximious, and yet affine in faculty, it may be denominated from either: for whether we call it *Muſcellinum*, from Musk, or *Moſcatellinum*, from Nutmeg, it may legitimately bear the name. But it is fooliſhly, by ſome, called Oyl of Balanus, which is an odorate ſimple, as though it were elicited out of the brayed Unguentary Acorn.

That it may be duly made, all its ingredients muſt be brayed apart, and put together into Oyl and VVine, to be there macerated in an obturated veſſel, upon hot aſhes, for a day or two, except Storax and Musk; then they muſt be all coćted in a double veſſel, till the wine be evaporated; then the Oyl muſt be percolated, and the pulverated Storax added to the hot colature; which muſt be again fervefied on a ſlow fire, and at length the Musk added, and the mixture kept. Some adde ℥ ij. of Musk; others ℥ iij. which, if it pleaſe rich men, let them take it; but poor men may not compaſs it.

Alexandrinus aſſumes Oleum Pumicum, which ſome interpret pure Oyl, others Carthaginean Oyl: we, with *Joubertus*, take ſweet and ſincere Oyl; for water, wine; for Neregil, that is, the Indian Nut, Nutmegs: for Coſtum, if it may not be had, Angelica's root; for Xylo-Caſſia, craſs Cinamon; for Carpobalſamum, Cubebs, or the ſeed of Lentisks, or Turpentine-tree: the reſt are frequent.

It is good for all corporal frigidity, eſpecially for the cold of the ventricle, which it roborates: it caleſies and helps concoction; it cures Strangury, Cholick, and almoſt all nervous affections. *Vires.*

SECT.

SECT. III.

Of such Oyls as are confected of whole Animals, or of their parts.

MEdicinary Oyls are neither all, nor alwayes elicited out of Plants, but confected of whole or parts of Animals, by infusion or expression: for seeing all living Creatures were made for Mans use; some he hath for Meat, others for Clothing; some for Service, and others for Medicine: for Sheep nourish him, the Silk-fly clothes him, the Horse works for him, and Worms cure him. But more serve for mans Medicament, then his Aliment; whose Medicinal faculties are diversly extracted, prepared, and exhibited by perite Medicks, whereof they most frequently confect Medicinal Oyls: As,

Chap. I.

Oleum Lumbricorum; or, *Oyl of Earth-worms.*

℞ *Earth-worms washed in White-wine, of Red-wine, and generous Wine, of each* ℔ *ß. clear and old Oyl* ℔ *ij. boyl them till the absumption of the Wines; let the percolated Oyl be kept for use.*

The Commentary.

Those descriptions which are founded on the testimony of no famous man, never pass through many hands without some maims, seeing any may freely change them, without fear of rebuke. Yet this Oyl, though of an uncertain Author, is alike described of all; wherein there is no difference, but onely in the dosis of wine and worms, which are in some exemplars equal, in others not: Some describe less wine then will suffice for the coction of the worms; others, so much as will require longer coction. VVe have given a a legitimate proportion of each to other. For its preparation, the Earth-worms must be often washed in change of waters, and then in white-wine, where they may subside an hour; the lotion being finished, and the wine abjected, the worms must be put into a double vessel, the Oyl with red or white wine affunded, and all cocted, till the wine be evaporated; then may the Oyl, trajected through a Canvas strainer, be reposed for use. Some bray the worms, mix them with Oyl in form of an Unguent: but such are of rare use.

Vires. It allayes the dolours of the articles, roborates the imbecility of the nerves from a cold cause, and recreates all the nerves by way of liniment.

Chap.

CHAP. 2.

Oleum de Scorpionibus simp. or, Simple Oyl of Scorpions. D.Mes.

℞ *of Scorpions nu. xx. or more or less, according to their magnitude, Oyl of bitter Almonds* ℔ *ij. macerate them in a glass with a narrow mouth well stopped, for thirty dayes, in the heat of the Sun: and then let the Oyl be strained, and kept.*

Oleum de Scorpionibus comp. or, Compound Oyl of Scorpions. D.Mes.

℞ *of the roots of round Birthwort, Gentian, and Cypress, of the bark of the roots of Capers, of each* ℥ *j. Oyl of bitter Almonds* ℔ *j. s. insolate them together in a vessel well covered for twenty days; then adde Scorpions from ten to fifteen, according to their bigness, which insolate for a month; afterwards let it be strained, and kept.*

The COMMENTARY.

Nature takes man for her Son, whom she nourishes, defends, and liberates from diseases; which she abigates either by the opposition of contraries, or by the similarity or dissimilarity of Alexiterials. Thus the Theriack, which is in a mean betwixt the nature of man and of poyson, cures malign, contagious, and pestilent diseases. Thus Scorpions, always to us offensive, do not only cure the wounds themselves inflicted, but also other venenate diseases, by evoking the malign quality; out of which, by infusion and expression, *Mesue* makes a simple Oyl, consisting only of Scorpions and bitter Almonds, and another more compositious, besides these admitting of Cypress, Aristolochy, Gentian, and the bark of the root of Capers. If any one, following *Manardus* his advice, mix Scorpions with more Antidotes, it shall be work worth his labour; for it is of eximious vertue against all poyson and pestilence. I have omitted the description of such more compositious Alexipharmacal Oyls, because the frequent description of the same Medicament, would make a man nauseate it. *Mesue* took the compound Oyl we have transcribed from *Rhasis*; which should rather be confected then the simple, because more Medicinal and efficacious: for whose confection, the root of Cypress, as also Aristolochy, Gentian, and the root of Capers, must be minutely incided & contunded, then macerated in Oyl, insolated and acted as the prescript shews. *Sylvius* understands by one Kist of oyl, one Sextary; but we have put one pound and a half for a more certain dosis.

By way of liniment, it helps venenate diseases, breaks the stones of the Reins and Bladder, diduces the passages, mitigates dolours, and expels sand; which it doth more effectually, if the affected be therewith anointed after he comes out of a Bath. Both of these Oyls have like faculties, but the compound hotter and better. *Vires.*

CHAP. 3.

Oleum de Castorio; or, Oyl of Beavers stones.

℞ *of Beavers stones cleansed from their membranes* ℥ *j. white-wine* ℥ *iij. Oyl* ℔ *j. let all be boyled together to the exhalation of the wine; afterwards strained, and kept.*

The COMMENTARY.

Præpositus is not unjustly accused of latrociny; for he stole the description of the Ancients, not detecting their Authors, that he might draw to himself their glory: as it appears by that mole of Medicaments which he hath transcribed; amongst which, if there be any of his own

invention, they are not like the genuine offspring of a perite Medick, or dexterous Apothecary: which thing, his description of the Oyl of Beavers stones sufficiently evinces; for whose confection, he prescribes ℥ j. of Beavers stone, to be decocted in ℔ j. of Oyl, till the third be dissipated, without the intervent of any wine, water, or fit decoction; which the yongest Apprentice would finde to be imprudence: for who knows not, that Oyl will endure a whole dayes coction without sensible jacture, unless it burn? such things therefore as are cocted in Oyl, mollifie not, but become hard. This Oyl may indeed be made without any liquor, if it be onely macerated, insolated, and left; for it was of old kept without percolation. *Fernelius* adjects ℥ j. of Aqua-vitæ; but this so small a portion cannot long endure fire. *Manlius* gives another more compositious description; which being harder to make, and more sumptuous, is seldome used: we shall therefore hold to *Præpositus* his description, with some castigation, which shall effect as much as that of *Manlius*'s pollicitates.

Vires. For it conduces to trembling, to the dolours of the nerves and articles, to convulsious Fits, and Palsey.

Mesue makes an Oyl of whole black Vipers, cocted on a slow fire in an earthen vessel well leaded, with a narrow orifice, till their flesh be dissolved, for the Itch, Tetters, and other cutaneous vices.

Fallopius assumes two Vipers of any colour, cuts them in pieces, immerges them in Oyl, exposes them to the Sun about the canicular days, in a vessel with a strait orifice; afterwards expresses and keeps them: which expression he prescribes as most conducible in curing the Ulcers of the French Pox.

Chap. 4.

Oleum Vulpinum; or, Oyl of Foxes.

℞ *a Fox at his full growth, and fat, his intrails taken out, and his skin pulled off, and cut into small pieces; of common Salt ℥ iij. tops of Dill, Thyme, Germander, of each m. j. boyl them together in an equal quantity of water and white-wine, till the flesh be separated from the bones; and to ℔ ij. of the Colature, add ℔ iiij. of Oyl, Sage, Rosemary, of each m. j. boyl them together, till the water be consumed; then let the Oyl be strained, and kept.*

The Commentary.

It is not enough that we select the best simples, but also rightly prepare, rationally describe, duly mix, and exactly unite them into compounds, that no useful part thereof be lost. But how ill doth the old description of Foxes Oyl accord with these Laws, let its form speak: for *Mesue* commands, that a Fox should be exenterated, and then cocted integrally, both body, skin, hairs, feet and all, in Fountain and Sea-water, Oyl and Salt, till the members be dissolved; and a little Hyssop and Anise injected into the coction, and some more water affunded; whereas there was a pound of each sort before. And thus you should have a pot of hairs, bones, flesh, and plants, cocted to putretude, whose expressed pinguetude is *Mesue*'s Foxes Oyl. *Paulus* would have a Fox exenterated, and yet cocted alive, till his bones were separated: but I cannot conjecture, how an eviscerated Fox should be

be coctedalive. *Rondeletius* would have one boyled with his skin and guts, and only the excrements of the belly abjected: but it is past my skill, to eject the recrements, and leave the intestines in the carcase. His Colleague *Joubertus*, would rather have the skin abjected, then the bowels, who would have the intrail washed, and elixated with the flesh. We reject both skin, tayl, and intrails, as useless; afterwards, we cut the members and trunk, and coct them in wine and salt, with nerval and digestive herbs. We adde to the colature, Oyl, Sage, and Rosemary, and so coct it again, till the aqueous and vinous humidity be dissipated.

The Oyl thus made is very eximious, and most efficacious in what *Mesue* promises: for it potently digests and resolves, roborates the nerves, defends them from cold injuries, and cures the diseases of the articles. *Vires.*

CHAP. 5.

Oleum Formicarum; *or, Ants Oyl.*

℞ *of Ants with wings* ℥ *ij. mature Oyl* ℔ *ß. macerate them for the space of forty dayes in a vessel well covered, exposing it to the heat of the Sun; afterwards let the Oyl be expressed, and kept.*

The COMMENTARY.

This Oyl is seldome made, being onely expetible for calefying the colder genitals, and exciting venery: yet in that it may be confected with ease and small cost, and desired by such as are of a cold constitution, I would not have our Shop quite destitute of it.

SECT. IV.

Of Oyls educed by Expression.

THere are four kindes of Oyls; the first absolutely and properly so called, which is educed from mature Olives; the second not so properly so called, which consists of the said Oyl, wherein some parts of Animals have been infused and insolated, or cocted; the third is cognominated from the adjunct whereof it is made, as Oyl of Almonds, the Oyl of Laurel-berries; the fourth is proper to Alchymists, which is elicited by ascent. The extraction of the first being sufficiently notorious, but withall operous, is committed to Rusticks; of the second, we have treated at large in the former Sections. It now remains, that we treat of the rest: and first, of such as are extracted from oleaginous seeds brayed and expressed; and first of the Oyl of sweet Almonds.

CHAP. I.

Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium; *or, The Oyl of sweet Almonds.*

℞ *of sweet Almonds, dry, not rancid, blanched from their cortex, as many as you please; beat them in a stone-Morter very small, involve them in a bag, and with a press, extract the Oyl.*

The Commentary.

Almonds are either ſweet or bitter: Oyl is expreſſed out of both; ſometimes brayed and expreſſed with, ſometimes without their membranous Pill; ſometimes with, and ſometimes without the adjument of fire or external heat: That which is elicited without fire, is beſt. The Pharmacopoliſts therefore are to blame, that had rather be idle, then occupied in preparing Simples duly. Whence it is no wonder, that the diſeaſed complain of the rancour, acrimony, and inſuavity of the Oyl of Almonds. Now that it may be rightly confected, the Almonds to be aſſumed, muſt be new and dry, purged from both their skins, that the Oyl may be more ſincere and pure; they muſt be long tunded in a ſtone-Morter, that their oleous internal humidity may come out; they muſt be put in a bag of Horſe-hair, and then excepted in a Torcular or common Preſs, ſuch as Stationers uſe, when they cut their Books that are bound.

It ſhould be expreſſed by little and little, that it may be more pure, pellucid, and ſweet: for that which is haſtily extracted, is turbid and fœculent. It will flow more readily, if the Almonds before expreſſion be calefied by the fire or Sun; for ſo its oleaginous humidity is attenuated, melted, and made more fluxile: it erupts more eaſily, readily, and copiouſly; yea, by ſo much more readily, by how much the Almonds are hotter, if they be not burnt: but that which ſhould be introſumed at the mouth, ſhould be elicited without fire.

Almonds are purged two wayes: Firſt, they muſt be macerated long in warm water, and then compreſſed with ones fingers, that the cortex may cleft: Secondly, they may be put in ſome Frying-pan, with a ſmall quantity of flower, and agitated with ones hand over a ſlow fire, till the Involucrum diſrupt, which will afterwards come eaſily off by rubbing; which ſecond way is better then the firſt: for macerated Almonds, unleſs they be well dryed before their triture, will effund aqueous Oyl. One pound of Almonds will emit ſix ounces of Oyl; and a brayed Magma, irrigated with water, and calefied upon the aſhes, till the water be diſſipated, and then preſſed, will emit as much: but this will be more fœculent, and fit onely for Liniments, Unguents, and External Medicaments.

Vires. Oyl of Almonds is commended to many uſes: for it conduces to the tabid and conſumed, refecting the macilent body, with humid, viſcid, fat, and aereous aliment: it leniates the aſperity of the throat, of the lungs, and other parts; if injected, it allayes the heat of the Uterus, and of the Bladder; if it be applied as an Unguent, is perduces rough places to equality, erugates the skin, mollifies hard lumps, and emends the ſiccity of all the Junctures, and other parts.

Chap.

CHAP. 2.

Oleum Amagdalarum amarum; or, The Oyl of bitter Almonds.

THe Oyl of bitter Almonds is educed also by expression, though *Alexandrinus* makes it by infusion: for he macerates two pounds of purged brayed Almonds three dayes in five pounds of Oyl, and afterwards coćts them to the half, and expresseth the Oyl. But neither the Oyl, nor the manner of its confection, is good: For *Alexandrinus* erres, in thinking that Oyl can be coćted to the half; for it will rather burn, then dissipate like water. Besides, the Oyl thus drawn by infusion, is not half of it Oyl of Almonds; it is not so ingrateful, nor yet so eximious as by expression. It is therefore better to draw pure and sincere bitter Oyl out of bitter Almonds, by triture and expression: which Oyl is much commended; for it solves obstructions, dissipates flatulency, allayes the dolours of the nerves, mollifies hardness, deleates the Pimples of the face, and cures the tinkling of the ears.

For it calefies, incides, digests, and deterges potently: wherefore *Vires.* it helps such as have the Stone, Strangury, breathe difficultly, and are Splenatick: it cures many vices of the skin, kills worms; being assumed, it helps the coldness of the Uterus; being applyed, it cures difficulty of breathing, and hardness and dolour in the nerves from a cold cause.

The Oyl of Peach-stones is educed after the same manner; which having the same or like faculties, is not made.

CHAP. 3.

Oleum Nucum; or, Oyl of Nuts.

SUch things as are onely Medicinal, and serve onely to prevent or cure diseases, should be tractated by Pharmacopolists alone: but such things as besides these, are accommodated to esure, or other uses, are seldome by Apothecaries, but frequently by perite Rusticks, confected in great quantity. Thus Wine is left to Vintners, and Bread to Bakers: Thus also common Oyl, Oyl of Walnuts, and Sesamum, are left to servants to express, who used in Hand-mills or fit Presses, to grinde seeds, and express plenty of Oyl for nutriment to bodies, or to lamps, for the custody of sanity, or cure of diseases. These Oyls therefore are seldome made in Pharmacopolies. But because the Oyl extracted from Walnuts by Rusticks, is insuave and turbid, it were better that Apothecaries would extract that which they use; for so it would be more limpid, suave, and efficacious.

It is of much use: for it resolves crass humours, dissipates tu- *Vires.* mours, cures the Cholick, whether from flatulency, or cold humours:

mours: by its digestive and siccative faculty, it cures the punctures and sores of the nerves. It heals burnings by a special propriety; it is indued with the same vertue that Oyl of Acorus hath; for by the tenuity of its substance, its resolvative faculty and heat, it resolves flatulent matter. He then that hath Oyl of Walnuts, needs not Oyl of Acorus.

Vires. If it be extracted from new and tender Walnuts, it will hinder the eruption of Pimples, if childrens faces be anointed therewith.

Chap. 4.

Some Oyls that are seldome made; and their faculties.

As all men follow not one Law and Rule in Life; so neither are all taken with one course of Medicaments: for as the old Verse hath it;

Utitur ingenio patria quæque suo:

Some admit of a Medicament, others reject it; some approve of none but new inventions, others of none but old ones: and though both this and that troop be my friends, yet Reason is my neerest friend, which I have in writing and acting made my Rule. I adore *Mesue* in most things; yet in some I leave him to those he wrote to, leaving some of his Medicaments to such as he left them to, as appears by the Catalogue of Medicaments contained in this our Shop. He describes some Oyls which are not used; yet he will not omit them, because their faculties are above contempt: whereof we shall treat in brief.

Mesue saith, that the Oyl of Filberds allayes the dolours of the nerves and articles: it is made as the Oyl of Almonds. A Filberd is a small Nut, in Greek *νεττυδεων*, sometimes called the Pontian or Prænestine Nut, from the places where the Plant grows copiously, whose oleous humidity is adonynous, discusses humours, and is thence fit for the said affections.

The Oyl of Apricot-stones mitigates the dolour of the fundament, and the Hæmorrhoids, and digests the tumours of those parts, and Ulcers. It is made after the same manner with the former. These stones are taken out of some Apples, which from the place where they are, are called Armeniacks; from their colour, Golden Apples; and from their speedy maturity, Præcocks: Their carnosity is very sapid and sweet, but their kernels sharp, bitter, and ingrateful.

The Oyl of Peaches kills worms, removes obstructions, allayes the dolours of the ears, benefits the tumid and dolourous Hæmorrhoids. Furthermore, it calefies, attenuates, resolves, and effects the same with Oyl of bitter Almonds: for the stones of Peaches, whereof it is made, are bitter, calefactive, and diaphoretical.

The

The Oyl of Kerva or great Spurge diſcuſſes craſs flatulency, attenuates viſcid phlegm, cures the dolours of the belly and inteſtines, proceeding from that humour, and helps the Hydroptical, whether it be aſſumed or applyed. *Avicenna* recenſeates more of its utilities; but it is very ſeldome made.

The Oyl of wild Saffron, incides and deterges, thence it cures the Jaundice, the dolour of the breaſt, lungs and ventricle, from a cold cauſe. But this is not oft made.

The Oyl of Piſtack-Nuts, and Pine-Apples, leniates the aſperity of the throat, mitigates the dolour of the breaſt, cures the Cough, fattens the macilent and tabid, and augments Sperm: but they are better for eſure.

And that I may in brief ſpeak of many things, Oyls may at any time be confected of Cherry-ſtones, Unguentary Acorn, Orange, and Lemmon-ſeeds, and the four cold ſeeds, and the like, which will have the ſame faculties that their fruits, ſeeds and ſtones, whereof they are confected, have.

CHAP. 5.

Oleum de nuce Moſchata; or, The Oyl of Nutmeg.

THe Oyl of Nutmeg is ſtomachical, aromatical, and ſweet; for it roborates the weak ſtomack, cheriſhes its faint heat, moves appetite, helps coction, cocts cold humours, reſolves hot ones, diſſipates flatulency: it is made of Nutmegs brayed, calefied, and preſſed; which emit Oyl, which at firſt is liquid, and concretes afterwards into the ſolidity of an Unguent.

But becauſe Nutmegs are very precious, and their Oyl is better new then old; it ſhould be confected but in ſmall quantity, and as exigence calls for it, iterated. This ſimple Oyl differs much from that Moſchatelline Oyl, confected of many ſimples by maceration, which hath Musk and Nutmeg for its Baſis.

CHAP. 6.

Oleum Ovorum; or, Oyl of Egges.

THe Oyl of Egges is made of their Yolks, indurated by coction, which broken in ones hands, are fryed in a Frying-pan, continually moved with a ſpoon, or the like, till they exude ſome pinguetude; which, while they are hot, muſt be involved in a Canvas bag, and committed to the preſs, that their Oyl may be expreſſed and kept.

There may alſo an Oyl be extracted from theſe, by coction, triture, and expreſſion, without frixion, like that of Almonds, and ſo the Oyl will be more pure, ſweet, and leſs ruddy; but in leſs quantity, and not ſo efficacious in deleating cutaneous vices, whereunto it

is

is prescribed, about twenty or thirty new Egges should be taken, their Whites separated from their Yolks, which by pressure will emit Oyl.

It takes away the fœdity of the skin, deleates scars, or at least lessens them, cures burnings and Tetters, helps all cutaneous affections, and very much benefits the malign Ulcers of the feet, fundament, and hands.

Chap. 7.

Oleum Laurinum; *or*, *Oyl of Bayes.*

For the confection of this Oyl, new and mature Laurel-berries must be selected, brayed in a Morter, cocted in a Kettle without water, and expressed out of a hollow, not plain Press, into a subditious vessel, wherein the Oyl that swims above the water, may be collected. The mass may be again brayed, and moistened with water, and pressed in a hollow Torcular, that more oleous fatness may be elicited.

Dioscorides confects it a little otherwise; for he elixates the mature berries in water, which exude their fatness through their skins, which he subacts with his hands, and puts in a shell: but the former way is more usual; yet Apothecaries make it not, but buy it thus ready made, of such, as congesting a great quantity of berries together, make it their work to elicite Oyl. Some bray the fresh and mature berries without other mistion, and express their Oyl out of them in a Torcular.

Oyls may be thus extracted out of the berries of Lentisks, Turpentine-trees, Ivy, Junipers, and the like, which bear odorate berries.

The Oyl of Laurel-berries is calefactive, mollitive, apertive, and discussive: and hence it cures all cold distempers, whether simple, or mixed with phlegm and flatulency; as also the cholical dolour arising hence, if it be injected into the intestines with some convenient decoction: it presently cures all cold affections of the brain, nerves, articles, and loyns: it takes away lassitude, opens the spiracles of the veins, cures the Palsey and Trembling, if the Backbone be anointed therewith.

Chap. 8.

Oleum Balsami; *or*, *The Oyl of Balm.*

The next of this kinde is Oyl of Balm, which flows from a peregrine Tree, which is low of stature, and not elegant; of a subcineritious colour, with a luteous flower, like Jasmins; its leaves fall off about the end of Autumn, and grow again in Spring. It fruticates copiously in the Arabian, Ægyptian, and the Babylonish tract,

tract, it is ſcarcely cicurable in colder Regions. They ſometimes cut off its tender ſuccles, whereunto they annex Canes oblited with wax, that their fat ſucce may flow into them: Sometimes they vulnerate its craſſer boughs; out of which wounds, that precious Lachryma which is ſo much celebrated, diſtils.

Some drops of this Oyl exhibited on a jejune ſtomack, help difficulty of breathing, take away the obſtructions of the Liver, move fluours, allay ſtomachical dolours, help the tabid and conſumed, and excite appetite.

CHAP. 9.

Liquid Amber.

LIquid Amber is a certain oleous Roſine, flowing from the inciſures of a Prægrand and Venuſt tree, of a vaſt magnitude, whoſe leaves are hederaceous, cortex, craſs and cineritious; which being vulnerated, emits this Oyl, called from its ſuaveolence, Liquid Amber, or Oyl of Amber.

The Trees from which it flows, are ſo fragrant, that they ſend a ſweet odour from the place where they grow, into vicine Regions. This Liquor is of much uſe in Medicine; for it calefies, roborates, reſolves, mollifies all tumours, removes obſtructions, moves fluors, cures the ſuffocation of the Uterus, and other diſeaſes of women.

CHAP. 10.

Petreolæum; or, Oyl of Peter.

PEtreol is the work and effect of Natures hand, not of the Apothecaries; for he onely collects it, or buys, keeps and uſes it when collected: for Nature confects it in the bowels of the Earth, and it eructates out of the clefts of Rocks; whence it is called Petreol, or Rock-Oyl.

It is to be had in thoſe Regions where Bitumen is, whereunto it is related: for Bitumen is either denſe or liquid; the denſe, is as it were the fatneſs of the earth, which ſwims upon the water, and by agitation of the winds, is caſt upon the ſhore, and there concretes, and becomes tenacious and denſe. The legitimate Bitumen is Judaical, by ſome called, Bitumen of *Sodom*, becauſe it is found on the banks of *Sodom*. It is very rare in *Europe*. The liquid, which the Greeks call *Naphta*, is very white of colour, and rapacious of fire; inſomuch, that fire will leap to it from diſtance, as alſo to all denſe Bitumen. Beſides this Naphta, there is another ſort yet more fluxile, like Oyl, which diſtils from Rocks and Stones; as that which abounds in the Mutinian fields on the Mount *Gibion*.

There is also a fossile and terrene Bitumen, and that of two sorts; the one too hard and frangible, which they commonly call Stone-coal; the other very dense, and intensely black with nitre, called *Gagates:* of which we have treated in our Book of Simples. Some, and that upon good grounds, affirm, that Amber is a kinde of hard Bitumen.

Bitumen then is of large comprehension: to whose family, many refer Pissaphaltus and Mumy. However, Pissaphaltos is a kinde of mixture made of Pitch and Asphaltos, or dense Bitumen, which is used in maritimous towns, to Pitch Ships withall. The Arabians call Pissaphaltus, *Mumy*, which in their Language denotes Balm: in stead whereof, the Syrians and Arabians of meaner fortune, used Pissaphaltos, in embalming their dead carcases. And thus they take Pissaphaltus for Balm, and Balm for Mumy, which agree not so much as in name: for natural Balsam or Balm, is Opobalsamum; artificial, consists of many Aromata's, used in conditing Kings bodies. Pissaphaltos, is a certain mixture of Pitch and Asphaltos: Mumy is a thing arising from one or both of them, and the putretude of a carcase: whose illicite use now to prosecute and disprove, appertains not to our purpose; whereunto, I shall now return. Petreol is not to be rejected by Apothecaries; for its faculties are of much use: It calefies, siccates, by the tenuity of its substance opens, penetrates, digests, resolves all excrementitious matter, helps many diseases of the brain and nerves, as the Epilepsie, Lethargie, and Palsey.

Vires.

SECT. V.

Of Oyls extracted by Distillation: and first of such as are elicited by descent.

Besides these wayes of confecting Oyls, Mesue *subjoyns many more; all which, he saith, are made by Resolution. Eduction by descent and ascent, is a Chymical term; of whose Oyls, opportune occasion now gives leave to treat,* Mesue *also leading the way. Of which I shall onely subjoyn a few words, both because laborious work, long time, and great cost, are necessarily requisite to this eduction of Oyls; and also because they are now adayes made by some base, imperite, and ignorant Circulators, who defraud the Commonalty with their vain promises, and spend their time in seeking secret Fopperies, and confecting Magisterial Bables. I do not now speak of men of approved skill, learning, and knowledge; who, given to the study of abstruser*

struser Sciences, seek the more secret Closets of Nature, and finde the more miraculous vertues of Creatures: who make Medicaments after several manners, change them into several forms, and by divers preparations, give them divers qualities, sejoyning what is useless, and retaining what is expetible; and so coacting them, that in small quantity they have much vertue. But such Medicaments should not be exhibited, but by the perite; for else they are perillous, and precipitate men into open danger: Yet skilful Medicks and Apothecaries following Mesue *their Chieftain, may after a Chymical manner educe certain Oyls by distillation; and that either by descent, whereunto descension by transudation or by draining, is referred; or else by ascent, whereunto distillation by Inclination is also referred.*

Eduction of Oyl by descent, is, when the elicited humour distils downwards, without any elevation, into a subditicious vessel, which hath no way for ascent; the liquefied humour, which is elicited in form of a vapour, being coacted, and then falling downwards. Now Oyls are elicited by descent, not onely out of such things as are aqueous, but out of Woods, Rosines, and such things as are destroyed by the ascending calour. And the Oyls thus educed being crass and black, are of an ingrateful odour and sapour, and onely usurpable to external affections: Yet if they can be introsumed at the mouth, they promise eximious effects. Many may be made after the example of one or two.

CHAP. I.

Oleum Guaiaci; or, The Oyl of Guaiacum.

THe Guaiacum must be brayed, put in a Cucurbite of glass or earth, with a strait orifice, which must be obduced with a plate of Tinne full of holes, and thrust into the more patent orifice of another Cucurbite, and both well joyned and circumlited with tenacious argil, paste or clay; then must the empty vessel be dimitted into a hole, and buried in the earth, so that the earth may touch the middle of the Cucurbite, which contains the wood of Guaiacum; and then a fire must be accended all about it, and Oyl will distil from the superiour into the inferiour.

Thus are the Oyls of Juniper, Ivy, Ash, and many more woods, berries and rosines, educed.

This Oyl of Guaiacum is truly alexiterial to the French Pox: *Vires.* for a few drops thereof taken in a morning on a jejune stomack, with water, or some fit decoction, delcate the venereous Pustuls, allay the night-tormenting dolours, accelerate the Ulcers sanity, and extinguish the malignant quality of this affection.

Chap. 2.

Oleum Tamariſci; or, Oyl of Tamarisks.

A Boccia muſt be filled with the tunded wood and barks of Tamarisks, its orifice muſt be occluded with a foraminous plate, and it ſelf ſo placed in the ſuperiour part of the furnace, that its belly looking upwards, may be with clay well conjoyned to the top of the furnace; and its orifice tending downwards, and trajecting it ſelf through the upper room of the furnace, may be committed to the orifice of the inferiour Boccia, that ſo Boccia may be ſet againſt Boccia; then the inferiour one muſt be ſetled on a Trivet, that it may ſtand immoveable; the fire muſt be built, and accended about the ſuperiour Boccia, that the matter within it may calefie, and exude its Oyl into the inferiour, which is recipient.

This way is like the former; onely the inferiour Boccia is not buried in the earth, but placed on an Iron; and the ſuperiour is as it were ſuſpended, its orifice protending it ſelf below the chamber of the furnace, and its belly looking up; out of which, the Oyl liquefied by the fire, wherewith it is circumcinged, delabes into the inferiour receptacle. *Wekerus*, in the third Book of his *General Antidotary*, gives an effigies hereof; after which, others may be formed.

Vires. The Oyl of Tamarisks conduces much to Splenatick affections; for it reſpects and roborates that part by a ſpecial propriety; it prepares melancholical humours for ejection; it mitigates its quality, it opens, attenuates, diſſolves, removes obſtructions, and diſcuſſes flatulency.

Many more may be educed thus; as Oyl of Junipers, which is moſt eaſily affected after the ſequel mode.

Chap. 3.

Oleum Juniperi; or, Oyl of Juniper.

AN idoneous quantity of Juniper-berries muſt be put into a figuline veſſel, with a foraminous bottome; whereunto, the orifice of another veſſel muſt be adjoyned, and glewed with tenacious argil, or glutinous paſte: they muſt be ſo diſpoſed, that the empty one may be put in ſome hole, and covered with earth; the other, which contains the Juniper, muſt be above the earth: which when the fire is accended all about it, will demit its oleaginous pinguetude into the pot underneath it.

Oyl may by this Art be deduced out of the wood of Juniper, as alſo out of Agats ſtone; and ſome Roſines.

Vires. Oyl of Juniper is much commended for cutaneous affections: it cures the Morpheous Tetter, and other more profound vices: it con-

conduces also to the diseases of the reins: it helps the colder Uterus, and makes it more prompt for conception.

As it is laborious, so were it superfluous to enumerate more Oyls educed after the like manner: We shall therefore now subjoyn some few, which are elicited by transudation or deliquium in a moist place.

CHAP. 4.

Oleum Tartari; or, Oyl of Tartar.

THe Tartar must be put in a fictile pot, and calcinated in a furnace till it be white; then it must be brayed; then it must be imposed in *Hippocrates* his Sleeve, or some such Pyramidal receptacle, and suspended in a moist place; and an idoneous vessel set under it, to receive the liquor that will distillatively delabe.

Tartar is some Wine-dregs, adhering to the sides of the Hogshead; which, in generous wine, whether it be white or red, is alwayes good: out of which, a certain Oyl, or rather salsugineous liquor, is educed, put in a fit vessel, and burned till it be white; which being refrigefied, and brayed, is received into a Hempen-bag, or linen cloth, and suspended three or four dayes in the moist air in a Wine-cellar: for thus the contained matter tabefying, emits a certain liquor or sudour into the subdititious receptacle. This Tartar is often called *Petra Vini.*

Some macerate their Tartar in Vinegar, then coct and burn it under hot ashes, till it be black; then they bray it, and keep it in a declining vessel for eight or more dayes, till it be resolved into an aqueous Oyl: but it is better to calcinate the Tartar till it be white, repose it in a bag, and suspend it in a moist place, till its liquor or Oyl exude into the subjected vessel.

This Oyl erugates the skin, cures the scab, and the running Ulcers of the head: it conduces also to the cure of the Pustuls of the French disease; it solves obstructions, moves fluors, and opens the passages, if it be desumed in water, or some fit decoction. *Vires.*

This same Tartareous liquor may also be extracted by ascent: of which by and by.

CHAP. 5.

Oleum Myrrhæ; or, Oyl of Myrrhe.

LEt some new Egges be cocted till they be hard, then cut in the middle, either long way or broad way; let the Yolks be taken out, the cavities be filled with fat, and brayed Myrrhe; then let the incided parts of the Whites be conjoyned, and a little constringed with a thread; then let them be collocated upon a foraminous plate betwixt two Platters, and let these be placed in some sub-

ſubterraneous and humid cell, for then the liquefied humour of the Myrrhe will delabe diſtillatively into the lower Platter.

Some uſe ſticks in ſtead of plates, which they adaptate Lattice-wiſe unto the inferiour Platter, on which they lay their hard whites, gravidated with brayed Myrrhe: whoſe cavities muſt not be ſo ſtrictly bound, as to deny entrance to the liquor; for unleſs it get ſome chink, out of which it may delabe, it will not diſtil into the inferiour Platter. Theſe ſticks are ſometimes adapted to a Frying-pan, or the like veſſel; and the Myrrhe containing Egges, ſuperpoſited thereon, and the veſſel ſuſpended in a well, a foot or two above the water, and there left a day or two, that the liquor may exude out of the Myrrhe into the ſubjected veſſel. This Oyl may be alſo educed by aſcent.

Vires. Which way ſoever it be educed, it is commendable for many uſes; and ſpecially efficacious in curing cutaneous affections. They erre, that take either of them for Stax, as we have ſhewed in our Book of Simples.

Chap. 6.

Of Oyls extracted by aſcent.

The prolectation of oleous liquors, is either by deſcent, of which we have briefly treated; or by aſcent, of which as briefly as we may. Now this eduction is effected two wayes; either by an Alembick, or by Inclination: which later way is, in proper ſpeaking, neither by aſcent nor deſcent, but participates of both. To the diſtillation made by an Alembick, a ſtraight Cucurbite is required, whereon the roſtrated Alembick may reſide: the Alembick ſometimes in ſtead of a beak, portends out of its head a certain Pipe, long and crooked, with turning gyres like a Serpent: whence it is called an Intort or Worm. The neck of the Alembick ſhould be long and gracile, if the matter to be diſtilled be ſmall and tenuious; but ſhort, and more patent, if the matter be craſſer: and ſeeing it muſt be often changed and renovated, an Urinal will be apter then a Cucurbite.

Sometimes Sand, Salt, or the like, is added to the matter to be diſtilled, when it fervefies and aſcends eaſily.

The veſſel containing the matter, ſhould be ſo fitted, that the heat might be put under it, and that there may be a way above for the ſpirits, which may paſs through the beak, whereunto the long tube is appended; which tending downwards, and trajecting it ſelf through the Refrigeratory, carries the delabing matter into its receptacle. Now diſtillation is either dry or moiſt: the dry diſtillation is made in a furnace, ſometimes by the intervent of Coals, ſometimes of Sand, and ſometimes of hot aſhes; the humid is made in St. *Maries* Bath. Now there are as many varieties of Baths and Furnaces, as there are different wayes of diſtillation; ſo that

that they can scarce be completed: But now we shall briefly explicate, how the most usual Oyls are elicited.

CHAP. 7.

Oleum de Lateribus; or, *Oyl of Bricks.*

LEt inveterate Bricks, broken into small pieces, be burned on accended coals, till they be red-hot; then inject and dimit them into clear and old Oyl, till they be filled therewith; then beat them into powder, and put the powder in a vitreous Cucurbite: on which impose a rostrated Alembick, and place it in a furnace duly structed: accend the fire underneath it, and keep the Oyl that flows from it.

The Bricks that are made of old earth, should be selected as best; which should be broken into crasser pieces, of the weight of ʒ vj. or ʒ j. which after ignition, must be extinguished in clear antique Oyl, or Oyl of Rosemary, if it may be spared, and pulverated very small, then injected into a vitreous Cucurbite, well adapted to the furnace, and bedaubed with clay, that the powder may therein calefie by the fire under it, and exude this Oyl; which is diversly denominated: for some Medicks call it rightly Oyl of Bricks, others improperly, Artificial Petreol, in opposition to the Natural, which distils spontaneously out of Rocks; others, by a more special Nomenclature, call it, The Holy, Divine, and Blessed Oyl. The Alchymists do more arrogantly call it, The Oyl of Magisteries, and the Philosophers Oyl; whom therefore *Sylvius* derides, because they onely call themselves Philosophers, in their daily speech and writings, affirming themselves the sole Philosophers; seeking that nominally, which they cannot attain really.

This Oyl extenuates, penetrates, digests, and absumes all excrementitious matter; conduces to the cold affections of the Spleen, Reins, Bladder, Nerves, Uterus, and Articles; it cures also the Lethargie, Palsey, and Epilepsie. It is hot in the third degree, and by so much more efficacious, by how much more antique. *Vires.*

CHAP. 8.

Oleum Vitrioli; or, *Oyl of Vitriol.*

TEn or twelve pounds of Vitriol may be injected into a vitreous vessel, obduced with clay, and set on the fire, till its phlegm be extilled; then it should be taken off and brayed, and purged from its phlegm; which should be again iterated, till no phlegm would emanate, but the spirits leap out; then should it be taken off the fire, and its red calx taken, pulverated, and imposed in a crooked, or rather straight Cucurbite: whereunto, an ample Recipient should be adapted, and diligently conjoyned with clay, and the

Oyl

Oyl diſtilled by a luculent fire, continuing both night and day: when all is cold, the whole Liquor exempted, and impoſed in a vitreous vial; firſt the inſipid water, then the acid, which they call Oyl, may be ſegregated from the ſediment. If this Oyl be often imbrued in its phlegm, or the circulation of the ſpirit of wine, it will be ſweet: for Alchymiſts mix an equal quantity of this, and this Oyl; then they digeſt and evoke them out of a ſingular Vial, till the Alome being ſeparated from the Sulphur of the Chalcantum, the Oyl remain ſweet.

Vitriol affords many ſeveral Medicinal Remedies; as, Spirits, Oyl, both acid and ſweet, Salt, Colchotar, and a certain thing the Chymiſts call Balſam. The Spirit of Vitriol differs from its Oyl, in its preparation, tenuity, and active vertue: for it is the more ſubtile liquor of Vitriol; or, that I may ſpeak in their own language, the quinteſſence thereof; which is made after many manners, as thus: The Vitriol is agitated very much with the vehement heat of the fire, within its ſtraight Vial, ſo that that which diſtils upon the pulverated earth (which they call Colchotar) is alwayes reſunded, and at length, by the vehemency of the fire, propelled through the crooked glaſs: and this is the moſt efficacious Spirit. Some diſtil water and Oyl together out of the beſt Vitriol, which are craſſer Spirits; which they purge from their dregs, till they be attenuated into ſubtiler Spirits. But they are better elicited, while they are driven through a new Alembick, by affunding the extillatitious liquor alwayes upon the dead head, and then circulating it a whole week.

The common Oyl of Vitriol, is educed after this vulgar manner: A certain quantity of natural and good Cyprian Vitriol is taken, calcinated in a veſſel of Copper, till it be quite red, and its phlegm diſſipated; then it is brayed and included in a Cucurbite, obduced with clay, irrigated with Aqua-vitæ, and ſo left for a day; then it is collocated, and ſetled in a furnace duly ſtructed, and at firſt a modorate, then a vehement fire accended under it, that all its liquor may extil: which after refrigeration, is put in a ſmall Cucurbite coarctated with a capitel; and ſo its aqueous liquor ſtills in S. *Maries* Bath, and its pure Oyl remains in the bottome of the veſſel: which is again put into another Cucurbite, circumcinged with accended fire, that it may be better and more throughly purged. Its colour is more or leſs red or white, as its efficacy and calour is more or leſs moderate. ℥ iij. of Oyl may be elicited out of ℔ j. of rubefied Vitriol.

Vires. All the qualities of the Oyl of Vitriol are ſo intenſe, that it cannot be aſſumed alone, but mixed with ſome water, decoction, or fit conſerve: and though it be exceeding hot, yet a few drops thereof mixed with much water, become acid, and both grateful and uſeful to the Feveriſh. It penetrates by its tenuity, carries the water to remote parts, removes obſtructions, arceates putretude, recreates the bowels, and conduces much to the Peſtilence, Epilepſie, Palſey,

Palsey, and Strangury. It doth not infect the simple decoction of Roses, but the Syrupe of Violets, with a purpureous and elegant acid sapour; for a few drops thereof cast into an ounce of the said Syrupe, will make it from violaceous, purpureous.

CHAP. 9.

Oleum Sulphuris; or, Oyl of Sulphur.

LEt a broad dish be so suppositedto a suspended Campana, that their brims may be distant about three fingers; and let a vessel containing Sulphur, which hath not yet suffered fire, be put in the bottome of the dish, and accended and agitated with a red-hot Iron; when that is absumed, let more be set on, and ignited as before, that out of its copious vapour erected into the Campana, a concrete oleous liquor may delabe into the dish.

Some take an equal quantity of Sulphur and Pumice or Flint-stone brayed, and putting the mixture into a crooked Cucurbite, adhibit it to a moderate fire, and educe most excellent Oyl thence.

Oyl of Sulphur is educed many more wayes: for some adde Spirit of VVine, to pulverated Sulphur, and accend them; when the water is absumed, they bray the Sulphur, and mix sand with it, including them in a Vial, and eliciting Oyl by a slow fire. Some adde Calx, others Tartar, and others Salt: but that is best, which is educed out of Sulphur solely; and that next, which is educed without these things.

The Oyl of Sulphur is not onely profitable for external ap- *Vires.*
plications, as to dealbate the teeth, deleate cutaneous fœdities, and cure venereous Ulcers; but is also introsumed for the expulsion of such diseases as arise from flatulency, or frigid, crass, and putrid matter: it also much conduces in the Pestilence, Epilepsie, difficulty of breathing, and many other affections of the Lungs, if it be taken in water, or some fit decoction: it cures the tooth-ach, if the dolorous tooth be but touch'd therewith. It infects the infusion of Roses with its prætubrous colour, if a few drops of it be injected thereinto.

CHAP. 10.

Oleum Mellis; or, Oyl of Honey.

LEt a fit quantity of good Honey be injected into a Boccia with a third or fourth part of Sand; then let a rostrated capitel be fitted on it, and fire accended below it, or else hot ashes or sand set about it, that Oyl may be elicited.

Sand, or brayed Flint-ſtones, are mixed with the Honey in the eduction of its Oyl, becauſe elſe the whole Honey would aſcend by the heat of the fire, which ſhould be luculent: therefore the Cucurbite and Recipient veſſel ſhould be incruſtated with clay, and the roſtrated capitel ever and anon covered with cold wet clothes. The liquor that flows firſt, is not the ſame with that that flows next: for the firſt is as it were white water, the ſecond ſomewhat red and oleous: they are ſometimes kept apart for ſeveral uſes; but if they be mixed together, the bath will ſegregate them, by extilling the more aqueous, and retaining the more oleous part.

Vires. It cures the Podagry and Wounds; it cauſes hair to grow well and thick, and infects it with a red colour.

Chap. II.

Oleum Ceræ; or, Oyl of Wax.

LEt ſome quantity of odorate Virgin-wax be melted, and mixed with a third part of brayed Flint-ſtones, or ſand purged from filth. When the mixture is cold, let it be put into a ſtraight Ampulla, covered with a roſtrated capitel; let its fire be at firſt ſlow, afterwards more luculent, that the Oyl may be educed.

We have ſelected this as the ſhorteſt and eaſieſt of all thoſe wayes by which this efficacious Oyl is educed; yet if any would make it otherwiſe, let him project the odorate liquefied wax into water eight or ten times, alwayes agitating it with his hands; and then put it in the Retort, and educe its Oyl by fire, or hot aſhes. Now if you would not have it ſo ſpiſſe (for it is of the ſpiſſitude of Butter) iterate its diſtillation twice or thrice, and it will be liquid and fluxile.

An Oyl may be after the ſame manner educed out of the Gumme Elemni, moſt accommodate for the cure of Wounds; yea, Oyl may after the ſame manner be educed out of Fats, by the addition of brayed Flint, Sand, or broken Bricks.

Chap. 12.

Oleum Terebinthinæ; or, Oyl of Turpentine.

THe Oyl of Turpentine may be drawn either in a ſtraight or crooked Cucurbite, with Sand purged from duſt, and a fire accended under it, at firſt ſlow, afterwards more valid. The Oyl that comes firſt out, is clear and tenuious; the ſecond more craſs and aureous: each ſhould be repoſed by it ſelf.

Some adde to three pounds of Turpentine, one handful of Salt, and a little Aqua-vitæ; theſe confuſedly mixed and included in a Boccia, emit Oyl by the help of fire.

The

The Oyl of Turpentine is introsumed to cure Asthma, Empyema, difficulty of breathing, the Stone, cholical dolour, and frigid and flatulent affections. It is externally adhibited to cure Nerves that are sautiated, or labour under any distemper; and to fill wounds with flesh, agglutinate them, and draw them to scars. *Vires.*

It extinguishes Quicksilver, which is then good for the French Disease.

CHAP. 13.

Oleum Caryophyllorum; or, Oyl of Cloves.

LEt a fit quantity of Cloves be macerated twelve hours, or a whole day in Rain-water, in a straight or retorted Boccia well obturated, that nothing may expire; then let the capitel be set on it, and it moved with hot ashes, to extil Oyl, which may afterwards be sejoyned from the water.

This Oyl may also be easily educed by an Alembick of Copper artificially structed; as also by descent, like the Oyl of Guaiacum: some adde a part of stillatitious wine to the Cloves.

Its excellent faculties make it a good substitute for Opobalsamum: for being introsumed, it recreates the principal parts and spirits, arceates putretude, dissipates flatulency, opens the passages, digests cold humours, and dissipates melancholical succe: extrinsecally adhibited, it cures new wounds and old Ulcers; it emends the corruption of bones, and allayes Tooth-ach, arising from a cold cause.

Oyl of Mace may be extilled after the same manner: it calefies and digests frigid humours, roborates the ventricle, helps concoction, moves appetite, and much more benefits the user.

The Oyl of Cinamome is educed with more labour and cost: for one pound thereof extils not above ℥ j. of Oyl; but its excellency equalizes it with natural Opobalsamum almost.

The Oyl of Nutmeg is extilled as that of Mace, and exhibited to and for the same uses; as also the Oyl of Nutmegs by expression.

CHAP. 14.

Oleum Anisi; or, Oyl of Anise-seed.

LEt a pound, or more or less of Anise-seed, be contunded and macerated some hours in eight or ten times as much water; then let it be put in a Copper Alembick, with a vicine Refrigeratory; then let it be distilled, first with a moderate, afterwards a more valid fire; then segregate the Oyl from the water.

When the Water and Oyl thus ascend and descend together into the Receptacle, they must be sejoyned; which may be done by a

certain instrument like a Tunnel, whereinto the whole liquor must be injected; which must be so collocated, that the acuminated and angust part thereof, which should be obturated with wax, may hang downwards; and so the water will occupy the lowest, and the Oyl the highest place: the wax then being rubbed off, and the hole opened, the water will run out, and the Oyl stay.

Vires. It cures the cholical dolour arising from flatulency and cold; it conduces also to the Tympany, inflation of the belly, crudities, acid belching, and rumbling of the Guts.

Oyls may by this Art be educed out of the seeds of Petroseline, Fennel, Dauces, and Cumin; which coming from affine Plants, have affine qualities.

Chap. 15.

Oleum de Spica; or, Oyl of Spike.

Let the greater Spike, or latifolious Lavender, be macerated in white odorate wine, distilled through an Alembick, and then its oleous liquor segregated from its watry, and kept.

This Oyl is seldome used alone, but often mixed with other, especially Topical Medicaments; as the Vigonian salve; and is adhibited to many more uses, besides Medicinal ones.

The Oyl of Thyme is educed by the same artifice: whether it be intrinsecally or extrinsecally adhibited, it conduces to cold effects.

There may be a certain Liquor extracted from Pearls, brayed, macerated in Lemmon-juyce, or distilled vinegar, solved, pulverated, madefied with Rain-water, and artificially distilled: But the work and cost exceeding its worth, we judge it not necessary for Shops.

Chap. 16.

Olea Metallorum; or, Oyls of Metals.

Alchymists do not onely out of Plants and Minerals, but of Metals also, exhibit certain Oyls, by much art, labour, and mixtion; yet they are not so eximious as they would make them: for no Metals almost, except Gold and Silver, are affine to our nature; and the Oyls of these do little good. But grant we, that the tincture, or else some Liquor educed or acquired from Salnitre, distilled Vinegar, Spirit of Wine, Aqua-fortis, or any, or all of these, as also from the succe of Lemmons, should bring any help to other Medicaments; yet in themselves they are not eximious: But whatever they be, they may not be introsumed without damage, neither are their effects more then ancipitous, when extrinsecally adhibited; which *Hieronymus Rubeus* seems to confess, who was a

most

most perite Alchymist: They may (saith he) being extrinsecally applyed by a perite Medick, profit; but I dare not prove their vertue by introsumption, because they are drawn from acute waters, and the force of the fire hath invested them with a quality very pernicious to the bowels: upon which account, I much suspect many Remedies that *Paracelsus* extols: and many write, That all those that introsumed his Metalline Remedies, though they found some help at first thereby, dyed within a years space.

A prudent Apothecary then should not spend his time, nor waste his substance in reducing Metals to Powder, macerating them in vinegar, solving them, elaborating them with the Salt of Tartar, Nitre, or other artificial mixture, seeing those Medicaments they usually keep in their shops, are sufficient for Pharmacy. Here I will not disprove the use of certain Oyls educed by distillation, for the abigations of such diseases as yield not to ordinary Medicaments. For seeing an ill knot must have a hard wedge, if the accustomed remedy will not end the fault, we may, without a Piacle, betake our selves to more artificial extractions: we have therefore here given the description of certain useful and moderate Oyls, which the prudent Medick may sometimes use. And as we have neglected many more educed by distillation; so we have also omitted many elicited by expression and impression, as superfluous, and seldom used; as, the Oyl of Costus, the Indian Nut, of Frogs, Pepper, and the like, which were rather invented for ostentation, then necessity.

An Appendix to the Oyls.

Of Balsams.

Balsam, in a general signification, denotes the Wood, Succe and Fruit of a certain peregrine Tree; in its more special signification, onely the Succe thereof, which the Greeks call Opobalsamum. *The Alchymists do wrongfully wrest the name of Balsams to their Tinctures, Oyls, Liquors, Quintessences, and Extractions. Medicks also too licentiously, though not improperly, name some crass and red Liquors, confected with much art and mixture, and indued with eximious faculties, Balsams: but they should be rather called Antibalsams, or Balsameols; which name they mutuate for Turpentine, which is as it were the Basis from which all Aromatical and Rosinous Mixtures, which are analogous to Balsams, have their odours, colours and faculties. They are most commonly made by inclinative Distillation, in a Retort, wherein the aqueous liquor is at first extolled, and then it delabes laterally through the neck of the Retort, into the Receptacle; the oleous comes next; the third is crass like Honey.*

Some

Some Balſams are made without diſtillation, they including ſome Medicaments a month or two in a fit Ampulla, in horſe-dung, which they call the Belly, or other place, till they be macerated, diluted and purified. Thus the water that is collected of Elm-leaves, when the worms within are abjected, Turpentine, Oyl of S. Johns-wort, and a little Gumme-Elemni included in an Ampulla, concorporated and inſolated, or otherwiſe fomented, become a Balſam moſt efficacious, and accommodate for many uſes: for it cures Ulcers, though Dyſepulotical and Malign, and all Wounds quickly.

Balſamum primum D. Meſ. *or, The firſt Balſam of D.* Meſ. *falſly attributed to* Guidon.

℞ *choyce Myrrhe, Hepatick Aloes, Spikenard, Dragons blood, Frankincenſe, Mumy, Opoponax, Bdellium, Carpobalſamum, Ammoniacum, Sarcocolla, Saffron, Maſtick, Gumme-Arabick, liquid Storax, of each* ℥ *ij. Ladanum, Caſtoreum, of each* ℥ *ij* ß. *Moſch* ℥ ß. *Turpentine the weight of them all.*

Let the dry ingredients be brayed, macerated in wine, and percolated; then let all be mixed together with Turpentine; the whole mixture put in an Alembick: out of which, the fire will at firſt force a tenuious liquor, and then a craſs and flave one, which is the beſt Balſam.

The deſcription of this Balſam, is deſumed from its Author *Meſue*, who recenſeates its faculties to admiration: It is good (ſaith he) for all things; and if a dead body be anointed therewith, it putrefies not: it ſtrengthens the Soul and Nature.

It roborates the Nerves, removes cold diſtempers, excites and foments native heat, conciliates ſtrength to the Members. If the backbone be anointed therewith, it miraculouſly cures the Palſey and Stupour: in ſuch affections as hinder ſpeech, a little of it immitted into the ears and noſe, or holden under the tongue of the ſpeechleſs, will quickly help him. *Petrus Apponenſis* calls this Balſam, The Medicament of Medicaments, for the ſpeedy roboration of the heart, and reſtitution of ſtrength.

Balſamum 2. D. Hollerii; *or, The ſecond Balſam.* D. Holler.

℞ *Olibanum, Maſtick, of each* ℥ *ij. Aloes-wood* ℥ *j. Cloves, Galangal, Cinamon, Setwel, Nutmeg, Cubebs, of each* ℥ *vj. Myrrhe, Aloes, Ladanum, Sarcocolla, Caſtoreum, of each* ℥ ß. *Bayberries, Pine-nuts, of each* ℥ *vj. Orris, round Birthwort, Dittany, the greater Comfrey, of each* ℥ *j. Gumme-Elemni, Opoponax, Benzoin, of each* ℥ *ij. Juyce of Ground-pine and Cowſlips, of each* ℥ *ij. Turpentine the weight of them all.*

Concorporate and diſtil all in an Alembick, water will firſt extil,

extil, then that which is more oleous, and last the crassest.

The Author saith, This Balsam roborates the Nerves, cures Stupour and Palsey; it helps all frigid distempers, and excites native heat.

Balsamum 3. *vulnerarium*; *or, The third Balsam which is vulnerary.*

℞ *of Venetian and Cyprian Turpentine, of each* ℥ *iij. Gum-Elemni, Olibanum, of each* ℥ *ij. Aloes, Myrrhe, Mastick, Benzoin, Bole-armeniack, Dragons-blood, of each* ℥ *ß. Aqua-vitæ* ℥ *iiij.*

These confusedly mixed, and included in a Retort, extil a Balsam which yields to none in agglutinating wounds, and filling them with flesh: it also roborates the Nerves, foments the innate heat of the part, makes the scar not nodous, and emends distempers.

Balsamum 4. D. Fallopii; *or, The fourth Balsam of* D. Fallop, *which is also vulnerary.*

℞ *of clear Turpentine* ℔ *ij. Linseed Oyl* ℔ *j. Rosine of the Pine-tree* ℥ *vj. Frankincense, Myrrhe, Aloes, Mastick, Sarcocolla, of each* ℥ *ij. Mace, Saffron, Lignum Aloes, of each* ℥ *ij.*

Put all into a Retort; let your fire be at first moderate, and it will reduce clear water; then incend it, and you will have rubicund Oyl; keep each apart: They are special Medicaments for the cure of wounds.

Balsamum 5. *Med.* Florent. *or, the fifth Balsam by the Medicks of* Florence.

℞ *of Turpentine* ℔ *j. old Oyl* ℥ *vj. Oyl of Bayes* ℥ *iiij. Cinamon, Spikenard, of each* ℥ *ij. new Tyles well boyled* ℥ *viij.*

Bray such as are to be brayed, and distil them in an Alembick.

It moves Urine, breaks stones, kills worms, helps the hissing of the ears, the Palsey, Cramp, Gout, and all dolours of the Junctures, either by way of Potion or Unguent: a small quantity thereof in a water fit for the affection, may be drunk.

Balsamum 6. *Euonymi*; *or, The sixth Balsam* D. Euonym. *which is yet vulnerary.*

℞ *of Turpentine* ℥ *ß. Olibanum* ℥ *vj. Aloes, Mastick, Galangal, Cinamon, Saffron, Nutmegs, Cloves, Cubebs, of each* ℥ *j. Gum of Ivy* ℥ *ij.*

Pulverate and mix them with Turpentine; then put them in a glass Alembick, and adde to them

Camphyr

Campyr, and Amber-grise, of each ℥ ij.

Distil them with a slow fire: the first water will be white and clear, and is called the Wine of Balsam; the second is flave, called Oyl; the third croceous, and that is the surest Balsam.

This Balsam is much commended for its excellent faculties: for it is the most speedy collective of wounds, sarcotical to hollow Ulcers, and epulotical to all: it is a sure help for the Palsey, and imbecility of the Nerves.

Balsamum 7. & vulgare; or, The seventh and vulgar Turpentine.

℞ *of Venetian Turpentine* ℔ *j. Gum-Elemni* ℥ *v. common Rosine* ℥ *iij. let these be melted together, adding thereunto the powder of long Birthwort* ℥ *ij. Dragons-blood* ℥ *iij. repose it in a vessel to cool.*

This Balsam is inferiour to none, in perducing old or new Ulcers to sanity: it especially cures the external diseases of the head: it is easie to make.

Balsamum 8. *& admirabile; or, The eighth and admirable Balsam.*

℞ *of the leaves and flowers of Tutsan, or the grains; of the leaves, flowers or tops of S. Johns-wort, the tops of both the Oaks of* Jerusalem, *of the leaves of Ground-Ivy, of each m. ß. of both sorts of Sage, and of Ground-pine, of each m. ß.*

Macerate them two dayes in ℔ ij. of white and generous wine; adde

℔ *ij. ß. of old Oyl:*

Boyl them on a slow fire, till the wine be dissipated: adde to the colature

of Turpentine ℔ *j. Olibanum* ℥ *iiij. Myrrhe* ℥ *iij. Mastick, Dragons-blood, of each* ℥ *ij. Storax* ℥ *j.*

Boyl them a little on a slow fire; then repose them seven dayes in the Sun, and repose them in an earthen or glass vessel for use.

This Balsam is not causlesly called, The Wonderful one; for many affections which contemn other Præsidies, are miraculously cured by the adjument of this. It presently cures any new Wound or Ulcer: it heals also inveterate and dyepulotical ones; it roborates the nerves, cures trembling and palsey; conduces to all external affections of the head, especially cold ones: it foments innate heat, allayes frigid dolours, and roborates the parts.

I could describe more, but they are needless, if these be in readiness.

Finis Libri Quarti.

The Apothecaries Shop,
OR,
ANTIDOTARY.
Of External Medicaments.
THE FIFTH BOOK.
Of Unguents and Cerecloths.

THE PREFACE.

Unguents were of old in such use and fame, that he that handled or sold them solely, or them and other Medicaments, was called an Unguentary and Myropolist. The Arabians often call Cerecloths and Salves, Unguents: as Dioscorides *doth many odorate Oyls; according to that of* Hippocrates, *A Medick should be Unguented, that is, Perfumed, that by the fragrant halite of his vesture, he may purchase glory amongst the vulgar. But now Unguents are in a more angust acceptance, taken onely for those Medicaments which adhibited and illited onely on external parts, are thought to auxiliate them, when other Medicaments would either through their gravity burthen them, or through their humidity hurt them; and are olaginous, of a middle consistence, betwixt a Cerecloth and a Liniment, as a Cerecloth is betwixt an Unguent and a Salve. Now the proportion of Oyl in the confection of an Unguent, is such, that one ounce thereof responds to each dragm of Powder, and two dragms of Wax: So that there is four times as much Oyl as Wax, and eight times as much Oyl as Powder. And seeing heat makes the consistence of an Unguent softer, and cold harder, Myropolists used to mix more Oyl in Winter, and less in Summer, with their ingredients. Now seeing there is much conformity betwixt a Cerecloth and an Unguent, both consisting of the same Materials, onely differing in proportion; the Unguent receiving more Oyl and less Wax, that it may be of a middle consistence betwixt a Liniment and a Cerecloth, more spisse then the one, and more liquid then the other: We have determined to treat of them both in this Book: In whose first Section we shall describe the most approved*

and usual Unguents; in the second, Cerecloths. Now Unguents are either made with fire, as those that admit Wax, Rosines, and decoctions of Simples; or without fire, as such as need onely nutrition and subaction, as the crude Unguent, and the Unguent of Quicksilver; of which we shall in particular treat in this Book; beginning with the Refrigerative: The first whereof that occurs, is the Unguent of Roses.

Chap. I.

Unguentum Rosatum; or, The Unguent of Roses. D.Mes.

℞ *Hogs-suet nine times washed in hot and cold water, fresh red Roses, of each* ℔ *iij. mingle them, and let them be macerated seven days; afterwards boyl them upon a gentle fire, and let them be strained; afterwards fresh Roses put in, macerated, boyled, and strained, as before; afterwards pour upon it, of the Juyce of red Roses* ℔ *j. ß. Oyl of sweet Almonds* ℔ *ß. boyl them upon a gentle fire, till the Juyce be consumed; and if in boyling you adde a little Opium, it will be excellent to procure sleep.*

The Commentary.

That this Unguent may be duly confected, the Hogs-grease should be accurately purged from its membranes, nine times washed in warm water, and nine times in cold, that it may depose all its odour; for so it will be more apt to receive any odour, and easily admit of the fragrance of Roses. Now the maceration of the Roses should be iterated, that they may be more efficacious: half as much of their succe, and the sixth part of as much of the Oyl of Almonds, as there is of grease, should ingrede the colature, according to *Mesue*. But to three pounds of Hogs-grease, we put a pound and an half of the succe of Roses, and half a pound of the Oyl of Almonds. Some, in stead of the Oyl of Almonds, put the Oyl of Roses or Omphacinum; but then the Unguent will not open the pores of the skin, nor permeate so quickly. It may be made without any Oyl, seeing it is liquid enough of it self: and thus, almost, all Myropolists make it. But it is better to have it too liquid with the Oyl of Almonds, then too crass without it: And as it is against the Rules of Art, that all the quantity of Oyl which *Mesue* prescribes, should be taken; so is it contrary to right Reason, that all should be refused.

Some, to acquire a greater redness, and more elegant colour, whereof Aromataries are most studious, mix Alcanet-root with the coction: but it were much better to mutuate that colour from Roses, then other irrequisite simples.

Mesue would have Opium diluted in Rose-water, accede its confection, that it might withall conciliate sleep to the interruptly vigilant: whereunto I willingly assent, and wish, that Apothecaries

caries would confect, if not all, yet part of this Unguent with Opium.

It extinguishes immoderate heat, inflammations, pimples, and S. *Anthonies* fires: it allayes the dolours of the head from a hot cause: it mitigates the ardour of the Ventricle, Reins, and Liver: that which admits Opium, effects all these more validly; and besides conciliating of sleep, cures Phrensie, and refects strength.

Unguents of Violets, Water-Lillies, and other flowers, of all qualities, may be confected after the same manner.

CHAP. 2.

Unguentum Album Rhasis; *or*, Rhasis *his white Unguent.*

℞ *Oyl of Roses* ℥ *ix. Ceruse washed in Rose-water* ℥ *iij. white Wax* ℥ *ij. make it into an Unguent.*

The COMMENTARY.

This Unguent consists of few things, and is described alike by few Authors. We conjecture, that the variety of its descriptions arises from this, That *Rhasis* its author gave not the dosis of the simples definitely, and therefore every one augments, diminishes, and changes them at his own will. Some, rather desiring the grace of odour then vertue, adject Camphyr; others the succe of Tragacanthum: some Lithargie; others the whites of Egges: so that its description is nowhere certain, but at *Paris*, where all the Apothecaries make it after this; who so rub the Ceruse on the setaceous sieve, that it will go thorow; then they wash it often in common water, afterwards in Rose-water; then they dry it, and after siccation, rub it to powder, which they mix with wax melted in the Oyl of Roses, and by agitation with a Spatle, reduce it into an Unguent of a white colour, and legitimate consistence, which is indued with much vertue; for it cures the Itch, Scab, Adustion, Galling, Ulcers, the eruption of Pimples, Tetters, the hot distemper of Ulcers, and many other cutaneous vices. *Vires.*

CHAP. 3.

Unguentum Populeon; *or*, *The Unguent of Poplar.* D.N.Myr.

℞ *of the buds of the black Poplar-tree* ℔ *j. ss. of the leaves of black Poppy, Mandrake, the tender tops of Bramble, Henbane, Nightshade, Lettice, small Stonecrop, the greater and lesser House-leek, Violet-leaves,* * *Kidney-wort, of each* ℥ *iij. fresh Hogs-suet* ℔ *iij. make it into an Unguent according to Art.* * *Cotyledon*

The Commentary.

Salernitanus borrowed this description of *Myrepsus*, and *Præpositus* of *Salernitanus*; but neither of them gave due honour to its Author, both covering his Name. Now it is called the Populean Unguent, from its Basis, the tender eyes or buds of the black Poplar, which erupt out of its summities in the beginning of the Spring, and are collected in *March*, before they be perfectly explicated: whereunto, many Refrigeratory and Hypnotical Medicaments are adjoyned, as the leaves of Mandrake, Poppy, Henbane, Lettice, and Nightshade, and of both the House-leeks, and Stone-crop: but that Vermicular should be selected, which bears white flowers, and affects not the tongue with any acrimony. The leaves also of Kidney-wort, which perite Herbalists call sometimes Cymbal, sometimes Coral, and sometimes *Venus* her Navel, must be added hereunto; and it is thus made: The fresh buds of the Poplar must be contunded, and mixed with the grease purged from its membranes, and put into a figuline vessel well operculated, and reposed in moderate heat, till *May* or *June*, or till the other expetible Plants may be had; which must then be collected, purged, brayed in a Morter, and concorporated with the former fermentated mixture; which must then again be reposed in a warmer place for a week or longer; then put in a Caldron with one pound of Wine, or Vinegar, which many think more convenient: but wine in so small a quantity will not harm the Refrigeratives; whereas some would adde Burre-dock, which is hotter; some take Nightshades succe to it, that the colour may be greener.

Vires. It conciliates sleep, helps such as labour under hot Fevers or Headaches from hot causes, if their foreheads and temples, their feet-plants or hands-palms be anointed therewith.

Chap. 4.

Unguentum Natritum, seu crudum; or, The crude or Triapharmacal Unguent of Lithargie. D. Mes.

℞ *of Oyl of Roses* ℔ *j. Litharge finely beaten* ℔ *ß. Vinegar* ℥ *iiij. beat these together in a Morter, till they acquire the consistency of an Unguent.*

The Commentary.

This is one of those Unguents which are depraved by each Artist, because of the indefinite dosis of the simples whereof it consists: for *Mesue* prescribes onely to this preparation, That sometimes Oyl, sometimes Vinegar and Lithargie, accede, which should be well laboured in a Morter: yea, many to this day neither limit the quantity

quantity of Oyl nor of Vinegar, but onely describe as much as will suffice; others take equal parts of both, and as much Lithargie; others, and that better, take one pound of Oyl, half a pound of Lithargie, and three ounces of Vinegar: We have given a due proportion of each; yet if the Myropolist in its agitation finde one thing too little or too much, he may at his judgement change it. Now this Unguent should be continually agitated with a Pestel, till it acquire a fit spissitude. Much of Oyl or Vinegar must not at first be affunded on the Lithargie, lest it be submerged, and never be able to attain an Unguentary consistence. Some agitate it in a plumbeous Morter, with a plumbeous Pestel, that it may be more desiccative: but this obscurer tincture many like not in Unguents; others wash Lithargie in Rose-water: some adde the succe of Nightshade with Ceruse; but it is best to prepare it after the form given, which the Parisian Apothecaries follow: yet all need not at all times to take Oyl of Roses, but, without errour, sometimes common Oyl. It is called the crude Unguent, because it is made without fire; the nutritum, because with much nutrition it acquires an Unguentary form; sometimes the Triapharmacal, from the union of the three simples whereof it consists: of which, duly cocted, may be made a salve, that should be kept in all shops, as most usual.

It represses, desiccates, generates flesh in hollow Ulcers, and heals them. *Vires.*

CHAP. 5.

Unguentum de Bolo; or, The Unguent of Bole.

℞ *Bole-armeniack* ℔ *ss. of the Juyces of Nightshade and Plantain, of each* ℥ *iij. Vinegar* ℥ *ij. Oyl of Roses* ℔ *j. Mingle them, and stir them together in a Morter, till they come to the consistency of an Unguent.*

The COMMENTARY.

Guido Cauliacus gives the same or like description, which, they say, he discerped from the ninth Book of *Galens* simples: but I evolving that Book, finde no such thing. But whoever was its Author, it is a Medicament very expetible by Chirurgeons. The preparation of this and of the precedent, is one; and both being made without fire, may be called Crude Unguents.

It is refrigerative, astrictive, and roborative; very convenient for the beginnings of fluxions, and therefore hinders the eruption of Pimples, Inflammations, and the like.

CHAP.

Chap. 6.

Unguentum Stypticum; or, *The Styptical Unguent.* D. Fern.

℞ of *Oyl of Roſes often waſhed in Alome-water* ℔ *j. ſs. white Wax* ℥ *iiij. unripe Galls, Cypreſs Nuts, Balanſtians, Pomegranate-Pill, Acorn-Cups, Acacia, Sumach, Maſtick, of each* ℥ *j. and with the Juyce of Medlars and Sorb-apples, make it up into an Unguent.*

The Commentary.

This Unguent being moſt validly aſtrictive, may, according to *Plantius*, be uſurped for the Unguent of Comitiſſa, or any other aſtrictive. That it may be rightly made, all its ingredients muſt be pulverated ſmall, and macerated about four dayes in the ſucces of Sorb-apples and Medlars, or each of them; then dryed on a ſlow fire, and mixed with wax melted in Oyl.

It is the principal of aſtrictives; it roborates imbecile parts; it ſtayes fluent humours, and anguſtates and conſtringes laxer parts: *Vires.* for it intercepts all fluxions, cohibits the prolapſe of the Matrix, Uterus, Fundament, and Inteſtines; and by adhibition, ſtayes the bloody flux, retracts the pendent Mammillaries, makes them leſſer, and erugates the belly after birth.

Chap. 7.

Deſiccativum rubrum; or, *The red Deſiccative.*

℞ *Oyl of unripe Olives* ℔ *j. white Wax* ℥ *v. Terra-Lemnia, or Bole-armeniak, Lapis Calimiaris, of each* ℥ *iiij. Lithargie of Gold, Ceruſe, of each* ℥ *iij. Camphyr* ℥ *j. make it into an Unguent according to Art.*

The Commentary.

This Topical Medicament, which is moſt uſual and ſucceſsful, is from its effect called Deſiccative; from its colour, Red. And though its Author be uncertain, yet all deſcribe it and make it after this form: Ceruſe, Camphyr, and Lithargie muſt be brayed and levigated apart, the wax by moderate heat melted in Oyl; yet ſo, that the Camphyr may be laſt injected: all this confuſedly mixed together, muſt be diligently agitated with a ligneous Spatula, that they may acquire a legitimate ſpiſſitude.

It may alſo be made as *Sylvius* would have it: The Lithargie may be firſt nutrited by fire, then mixed with the other powders; but thus coadunated, it is more Deſiccative, and leſs Refrigerative: ſome make it with Lemnian-Earth; but Bole makes it as efficacious.

It

It refrigerates, roborates, ſtayes fluxions, defends parts affected; digeſts, abſumes, and ſiccates excrementitious humidity, and heals Ulcers and Wounds.

CHAP. 8.

Unguentum Diapompholygos; or, The Unguent of Pompholyx. D. N. Alex.

℞ *of Oyl of Roſes* ℥ x. *the Juyce of Nightſhade grapes* ℥ iiij. *boyl them gently, till the Juyce be conſumed; adde white Wax* ℥ v. **waſhed Ceruſe* ℥ iij. *Powder of Lead, Pompholyx, of each* ℥ ij. *Frankincenſe* ℥ j. *Reduce them into the form of an Unguent.* * *Pſimmythii.*

The COMMENTARY.

This Unguent is deſumed from *Alexandrinus*, but the doſis of its ſimples changed, and its ſelf redacted to a better form, according to *Sylvius* his caſtigation: Its Baſis is Pompholix. What this Pompholix is, and how it differs from Tutia, hath been declared. *Alexandrinus* preſcribes the powder of burnt Lead, to be aſſumed and waſhed; but I had rather uſe the powder of crude Lead, as better. However, he that will have burnt Lead, he may uſe it thus, by *Dioſcorides* his advice: Put thin plates of Lead into a new earthen pot, and ſprinkle Sulphur upon them; then put in more, and ſtill ſprinkle Sulphur on them, till the pot be full; then accend the Sulphur, and ſtir the flagrant Lead with a ferreous rudicle, till it be perfectly redacted to powder, and cleave to the rudicle; then ſtopping your noſtrils, leſt the halite offend you, take out the Lead: the file-duſt of Lead may be eaſily burnt with Sulphur; as alſo without it, if thin plates thereof be impoſed on a luculent fire, and moved with a ferreous rudicle, till all be ſolved into aſhes.

Some burn it without Sulphur, thus: They repoſe it in a new earthen pot, and circumcepting it with burning coals; melt it, alwayes ſtirring it with a ferreous rudicle, and augmenting the intenſe heat of the fire, till it eructate much ſpume, and at laſt wholly become ſpume, which is like aſhes, and may be eaſily pulverated by a ſecond adhibition to the fire: when it is burnt and pulverated, it muſt be waſhed like Cadmia; but it might be eaſily redacted to powder, while crude, if its thin plates were minutely incided, immerged three dayes in ſharp Vinegar, daily changed, and then exempted, dryed and brayed without uſtion. Now for the confection of the Unguent, firſt coct the ſucce of Nightſhade in the Oyl of Roſes, till the ſucce be diſſipated; then melt the wax in the ſame Oyl; then adde the ſmall powders, and agitate the mixture with a ligneous rudicle, till it be cold, and in form of an Unguent.

It is the beſt curer of wounds: for it mitigates their heat, dryes their humidity, tames their malignity, allayes their dolour, impletes their cavities, and draws them to ſcars: it is moſt convenient for the Ulcers of the Legs. *Vires.*

CHAP.

Chap. 9.

Unguentum ad Pruritum; or, An Unguent for the Itch.

℞ *Hogs-ſuet often waſhed in the Juyce of Scabious, ſowre Dock-roots boyled to Pulteſs, and pulped; Brimſtone waſhed in Juyce of Lemmons, of each ℥ j. ſs. Unguenti Populeon nouriſhed in the Juyce of Enula-campane ℥ ſs. mix them well together in a Morter.*

The Commentary.

Whilſt I was writing theſe things, there came a Ruſtick to implore my help for a Kinſman of his, who being continually peſtred with a paſtulous Itch, and had been forced to buy a Remedy of a Barber-Surgeon; the Barber ſold him a familiar Unguent made of Mercury, Sulphur, and Swines-greaſe, wherewith he anointed his body once or twice: but the Unguent did ſo violently move the Colluvies of his whole body towards his neck and throat, that by violent ſputation, the man was almoſt ſuffocated. I will recenſeate no more ſuch ſtories: for hence it ſufficiently appears, what errour the imperite are hurried into, while they unhappily preſcribe a Liniment confected of Quickſilver and Fat, or Butter and Sulphur. But leſt they again run into the like folly, or for want of others, preſcribe ſuch dangerous ones, we give this Unguent, which is eaſie to make, and moſt efficacious in curing the Itch; for it mitigates bilious humours, and ſharp and ſalt phlegm: it moderates all calid humours, and cures the itchy Scab.

Chap. 10.

Unguentum Ophthalmicum; or, The Ophthalmical Unguent.

℞ *Bole-armeniack waſhed in Roſe-water ℥ j. Lapis Caliminaris waſhed in Eyebright-water, Tutty prepared, of each ℥ ij. Pearl finely beaten ℥ ſs. Camphyr ℈ ſs. Opium gr. v. freſh Butter often waſhed in Plantain-water ℥ v. make it into an Unguent.*

The Commentary.

It can ſcarce be credited, to how many and great diſeaſes and ſymptomes the eye is obnoxious: for the oppugning whereof, many kindes of Medicaments are profitable; but the forms of all are not idoneous; for the eyes will not tolerate any, ſave Collyries and Unguents: for Cataplaſms, Salves, and the like, may ſometimes profit, when applied to the Eye-lids; but immitted into the Eye, they would blinde it. This Ophthalmical Unguent, ſo called from its effect, arceates the fluxions of humours, temperates their heat, mitigates

mitigates their acrimony, ſtayes and dryes away tears, allayes dolour, takes away redneſs, and roborates the Eye, if after its univerſal remedies, purgation and phlebotomy, it be adhibited to the Angles of the Eyes and Eye-lids.

CHAP. II.

Unguentum de Minio; or, The Unguent of Red-Lead, or the red Camphyrated Unguent.

℞ *of ſifted Red-Lead* ℥ *iiij. Lithargie* ℥ *ij. Ceruſe* ℥ *j.ß. Tutty* ℥ *iij. Camphyr* ℥ *ij. Oyl of Roſes* ℔ *j.ß. make it into an Unguent according to Art.*

The COMMENTARY.

There are two deſcriptions of this Unguent; one more ſimple, which is made without; the other more compoſititious, which is made with Camphyr. It is called the red Unguent, from its colour, and its Baſis Red-Lead: it conduces to ill and inveterate Ulcers, which ſcarce admit of integral curation, and perduces them to ſcars.

Of hot Unguents.

CHAP. 12.

Unguentum Reſumptivum; or, The Reſumptive Unguent. D. Præp.

℞ *yellow Wax* ℔ *ß. Hogs-ſuet quart. j. Gooſe, Duck, and Capons-greaſe, Oyl of Almonds, Dill, and Chamomile, of each* ℥ *ij. the muſilidge of Marſhmallow-roots and Linſeed, of each* ℥ *j.ß. the * Greaſe that proceeds from the necks of ſheep* ℥ *ß. make it into an Unguent.* * *Oeſypum.*

The COMMENTARY.

Rondeletius finding this Unguent in *Præpoſitus* his Antidotary, in many things reprehenſible; ſome things he detracted, others he ſubſtituted; others he diſallowed of, as inaccommodate to that purpoſe; and the whole Compoſition he much changed: for in ſtead of white wax, he puts ſlave; in ſtead of Oyl of Violets, the Oyl of Almonds: but he expunges the ſucce of Tragacanthum, Gum-Arabick, and Quinces-grains, as inconvenient by their aſtrictive vertue to digeſt humours. But if in reſolving the principles of Diſeaſes, ſome Roboratives be requiſite; when uſe calls for this Unguent, a little Oyl of Quinces, or Omphacium, or the like, as occaſion requires, may ſoon be mixed therewith. Now that it may be more digeſtive, the ſucce of Fœnugreek is added thereto, though

in ſmall quantity, becauſe its odour is inſuave. If the Marrow of Calves-bones be adjected, it will be more emollitive and laxative, according to *Fernelius*. That it may be duly made, the wax firſt cut into pieces, muſt be melted with the Oyl; then the Butter and Greaſes: when all are melted, Oeſypus muſt be added to them, and all agitated with a rudicle; then they may be taken from the fire, and the ſucces extracted firſt in common, or, as ſome ſay is better, in Roſe-water, muſt be mixed with them, and all moved with a ſtick, till they acquire a due ſpiſſitude.

This Unguent leniates the dolours of the Breaſt, coćts the humours that cauſe coughing, moves ſpittle, helps the pleuriſie, reſolves the uſeleſs and noxious humours that adhere to the Muſcles of the Breaſt, and relaxates, leniates, and mollifies the parts.

Chap. 13.

Unguentum de Althea; or, *The Oyntment of Marſhmallows.* D. Myrepſ.

℞ *of Marſhmallow-roots, Linſeed, and Fœnugreek, of each* ℔ *ß. Squills* ʒ *iij. let them be waſhed, and macerated for three dayes in* ℔ *v. of water; then boyl them, till they grow thick: to a pound of this muſilidge, adde* ℔ *ij. of Oyl; boyl them, till the muſilidge be diſſipated; then adde Wax* ℔ *ß. clarified Roſine, common Roſine, of each* ʒ *iij. Turpentine, Gum-Thraganth, Gum of Ivy, of each* ʒ *j. Let all theſe be melted in a Kettle, ſtirred, and ſo removed from the fire, till it grows cold, and becomes into the conſiſtence of an Unguent.*

The Commentary.

Fernelius gives a far more ſimple deſcription of this Unguent, omitting Squills, Scammony, Galbanum, and Ivy Gum, becauſe they make the Unguent too ſordid: and leſt theſe ſhould impair its digeſtive faculty by their abſence, he addes ſome ſimples to make it efficacious. Yet I think theſe ſo neceſſarily requiſite, that he that expunges them, expunges much of the odour and vertue of the Medicament. If Ivy Gum cannot be had, its ſucce may be ſubſtituted. The quantity of water, which was three pounds, being too little to elicite and coćt the ſucces in, is augmented to five pounds.

The reſt are eaſie; the manner of its confećtion, and the deſcription, plain.

Vires. It calefies, mollifies, mitigates, humećtates, and digeſts: thence it removes the cold diſtemper, and cures the hardneſs of the nerves; it emends too much ſiccity, and cures the Pleuriſie, and other affećtions ariſing from crude humours adhering to the Muſcles.

CHAP. 14.

Tetrapharmacum; or, The lesser Basilicon. D.Mes.

℞ *yellow Wax, Rosine, black Pitch, of each* ℥ *ij.ß. sweet Oyl* ℔ *j. make it into an Unguent according to Art.*

Basilicum majus; or, The greater Basilicon.

℞ *Wax, clarified Rosine, Heifers-suet, Ship-Pitch, Frankincense, Myrrhe, of each* ℥ *j. Oyl* ℔ *j. make it into an Unguent.*

The COMMENTARY.

This Medicament is from its prepollent faculty in cocting and suppurating humours, called the Basilical or Regal Unguent: which, when it consists onely of four Simples, is called Tetrapharmacum, or lesser Basilicum; when of more, the greater Basilicum: both of them are Diapyetical, or suppurative; but the simple one is more imbecile, and less calid, then the more composititious: wherefore, being temperate, it is more idoneous for cocting and suppurating humours. For the temperate Medicament is truly pepastical and maturative, having more cognation with our native calour: whence *Galen* saith, It rather acts by quantity then quality; whereas Resolvatives, being more valid, work more by quality then by quantity, not absuming superfluous humours. Seeing then that this Tetrapharmacum is as it were symmetral, it must needs be the best suppuratory; and by cocting humours, rightly convert them into slimy matter, just as the temperate palm of a mans hand, moved long on any part abounding with prave humours.

Rosine and black Pitch, which hath not yet been used in pitching ships, must be melted with Oyl, and when cold, agitated with a Pestel into the consistence of an Unguent.

The Tetrapharmacal or Basilical Unguent, mitigates dolours, cocts noxious humours impacted on the part, allay their acrimony, and fill Ulcers with flesh. *Vires.*

CHAP. 15.

Mundificatum expertum; or, The expert Mundificative.

℞ *of Wormwood, the lesser Centaury, Egrimony, Speedwel, Clary, Plantain, of each m.j. macerate them in* ℔ *xij. of water, and boyl them upon a gentle fire; and in* ℔ *ß. of the colature, dissolve common Honey* ℔ *ß. boyl them again, till the water be almost consumed; to which, adde Oyl of Roses* ℔ *j. wax melted in the same* ℥ *iij. powder of burnt Crabs* ℥ *iij. flower of Lupines, and powder of Gentian, of each* ℥ *ij. Myrrhe, Aloes, of each* ℥ *j.ß. Orris, Verdigrease, of each* ℥ *j. make these into an Unguent according to Art.*

The Commentary.

Seeing vulgar Dispensatories afford no eximious Mundificative, responsible to Chirurgeons mindes in deterging Ulcers, we have for their sakes concinnated this rhyptical or exterſive Medicament, indued with such faculties, as *Galen* requires, Reason calls for, and Use approves of to that end: For seeing such a Medicament should by the tenuity of its substance, and its exsiccative faculty, exterge the Ulcer, and separate the filth from the part whereunto it is adhibited; one that is emplastical and viscid, aggesting and cohibiting the excrements and filth within the Ulcer, is much distant from such. But the vulgar Mundificatives, being for the most part made of Sarcocolla, Frankincense, and Mastick; and sometimes of Rosine, Comfrey, and House-leek, are so farre from cleansing Ulcers, that they much defile them. Let then this our rhyptical Unguent, which will effect what it pollicitates, be kept in shops, and the rest ejected.

It receives burnt River-crabfishes, which are eximious in exterging and exsiccating: The River-crabfishes should be selected; but in defect thereof, Sea-crabs may be assumed. They must be burned on a red-hot Platter, till they may be easily levigated; their powder must be mixed with the powders of the other simples brayed apart; then must all be incorporated, agitated, and united into an Unguent of just crassitude.

Vires. It absumes the watry, separates the crasser, and exterges all humours from the Ulcer: yet such as are conspurcated with crasser corruption, and cadaverous flesh, require a more valid and catharetical Deterſive. However, this by a peculiar and eximious faculty, cures wounds inflicted by mad Dogs, extinguishes their virulency by a specifical propriety, and exterging, siccating, and absuming their infected humours.

Chap. 16.

Unguentum Aureum; or, *The golden Unguent.* D. Mes.

℞ *of Oyl* ℔ *ij. yellow Wax* ℔ *ß. clear Turpentine* ℥ *ij. Rosine, clarified Rosine, of each* ℥ *j. ß. Olibanum, Mastick, of each* ℥ *j. Saffron* ℥ *j. make it into an Unguent according to Art.*

The Commentary.

This Ungnent is called Aureous, from its colour; and Regal, from its vertue: for it is flave as Gold, and so eximious, as it is fit for a Prince: it is scarce ever exhibited without success, and yet so easie to make, that the youngest Apprentice cannot erre therein. They act perperously, who for Parsimonies sake, abstract Saffron and Mastick

Maſtick from it; for ſo they rob it of its aureous colour, and regal vertue.

It rightly made, it agglutinates wounds with ſanity, fills hollow and cleanſed Ulcers with fleſh, mitigates dolour, if there be any, and quickly perduces them to ſcars.

The Fusk Unguent, which is made of a pound and an half of Oyl, four ounces of new wax, black Pitch and Sagapene, of each two ounces, Maſtick, Galbanum, Frankincenſe, and Turpentine, of each one ounce, is indued with the ſame or like faculties; for both are ſarcotical, filling Ulcers with fleſh, and perducing them to ſanity.

CHAP. 17.

Unguentum Enulatum cum Mercurio; or, The Oyntment of Enula with Mercury.

℞ *of the root of Enula boyled in Vinegar, and pulped* ℔ *j. Hogs-ſuet* ʒ *iij. new Wax* ʒ *j. Quickſilver killed, clear Turpentine, of each* ʒ *ij. common Salt* ʒ *ß. make it into an Unguent of a juſt conſiſtence.*

The COMMENTARY.

Præpoſitus diſcerpted this deſcription from *Myrepſus*, who hath ſuch an Unguent in the end of his third Section; who, that he might ſeem the firſt Author, added Oyl, Wax, Salt, and Turpentine, and made it more efficacious: yet before this adjection, *Myrepſus*, becauſe of its admirable faculties, called it, The wonderful Unguent.

Pharmacopoliſts make it moſt uſually after the greater deſcription, as more ſecure then the ſimple one; though both of them are averſe to Nature, becauſe of the Quickſilver: yet its extinction by ſpittle, or the ſucce of Lemmons, may excuſs all fear from their mindes. Moreover, Turpentine and Swines-greaſe are added thereto; which would obſcure its ferity, if any remained. Some put Sulphur in ſtead of Quickſilver; others the ſucce of Fumatory, or Lemmons: ſome, to the confection of this Unguent, onely bray the root of Enula in Vinegar, and traject it through a ſieve; but it is better to coct it to putrelage, in two pounds of Vinegar, and two pounds of water, rather then in Vinegar onely, for ſo it is too acrimonious.

Let the greaſe therefore be added to the wax, melted in Oyl, and afterwards adde the pulp of Enula, then the Quickſilver, Salt, and Turpentine; which mix together, agitate, and ſubact into an Unguent.

It is very efficacious in curing the dry and moiſt Scab from what cauſe ſoever, and other fœdities of the skin. *Vires.*

CHAP.

Chap. 18.

Unguentum ad Vermes; or, An Unguent against Worms.

℞ *of the leſſer Centaury, Wormwood, flower of Lupines, of each ℥ j. Pulp of Coloquintida macerated in Vinegar and dryed ℈ ij. Oyl of bitter Almonds ℔ ß. Wax ℥ j. ß. make it into an Unguent of a juſt conſiſtence.*

The Commentary.

Worms are generated in many parts of the body, eſpecially in ſuch, where there is any corrupt excrementitious matter; as in the Inteſtines; out of which, three kindes of Worms are rejected: out of the ſuperiour Inteſtines, round and long ones; out of the Colon, broad ones; and out of the ſtraight gut, aſcarides, or ſhort grubs: all are killed by ſharp, ſalt, acid, and amare Medicaments introſumed, as by Aloes, Southernwood, and Rhabarb; or externally adhibited, as by the Unguent we have here deſcribed: for whoſe preparation, Coloquintida muſt be firſt brayed, and macerated in Vinegar; then dryed by inſolation, or the heat of aſhes; afterwards it muſt be mixed with wax, melted in Oyl, with the other ſimples redacted to powder; then all muſt be agitated, and accurately united into an Unguent.

Vires. It kills Worms, if the umbilical region be anointed therewith, or the whole belly; or if a part thereof be injected into the belly like a Glyſter up the Fundament.

Chap. 19.

Unguentum ad Achoras, vulgo Tineam; or, An Oyntment againſt Moth. D. Gordion.

℞ *of white and black Hellebore, living Brimſtone, Auripigmentum, Lithargie, Lime-ſtone not quenched, Alome, Galls, Soot, of each ℥ ß. Quickſilver killed, Verdigreaſe, of each ℥ ij. make of theſe a Powder, which boyl upon a gentle fire in the Juyces of Borrage, Scabious, Fumatory, Sorrel, and Vinegar, of each ℥ iij. and when the Juyces are conſumed, adde old Oyl ℔ j. liquid Pitch ℥ ß. Wax a little, to make it up into an Unguent.*

The Commentary.

Gordonius is perhibited the firſt Author of this Unguent, though *Johannes de Concoregio* mentions one, who diſſents from the doſis of the Hellebores limited by him; as alſo *Guido Cauliacus*, who detracts much from the quantity of Quickſilver and Verdigreaſe; whoſe caſtigation we follow. The Quickſilver may be extinguiſhed after

after many manners; but the moſt uſual way is by jejune ſpittle, or ſucce of Lemmons, or ſometimes of Henbane: the reſt are eaſie to prepare, and the form is plain.

Gordonius ſaith, that this Unguent is of ſuch eximious vertue, that it will, without doubt, after purgation of the body, cure all infections curable by humane knowledge; as the Moth, Scab, Malid Mortuum, Morphews, and all other infections: wherefore (as he ſaith) it ſhould be had in much honour and reverence. *Vires.*

CHAP. 20.

Unguentum Apoſtolorum; or, The Oyntment of the Apoſtles. D. Avic.

℞ *of common Oyl* ℔ *ij. Wax, Turpentine, Roſine, Ammoniacum, of each* ℥ *xiiij. Lithargie of Gold* ℥ *ix. round Birthwort, Olibanum, Bdellium, of each* ℥ *vj. Myrrhe, Galbanum, of each* ℥ *ß. Opoponax, Verdigreaſe, of each* ℥ *ij. make it into an Unguent.*

The COMMENTARY.

They ſay *Avicenna* both invented and denominated this Unguent; and yet he neither knew the number of the Apoſtles, nor worſhipped God in that way: for ſuch as follow Gods Laws, and know him truly, know thus much for certain, that the Apoſtles cured the diſeaſed by words, and the very ſhadow of their veſtures, and not by Unguents. Whence I eaſily believe, that the Interpreters of the Arabian Tongue erred, in rendring this Unguent, which *Avicenna* calls *Alhauarim*, The Apoſtles Unguent. But whoever impoſed this Nomenclature, I will not diſallow of it; for it deſigns a Compouud of ſo many Simples as there were Apoſtles: which is thus made:

Firſt the Gummes are macerated twelve hours in Vinegar; then ſtrained, and cocted on a ſlow fire, to the ſpiſſitude of Honey; wherein, whilſt hot, Turpentine ſhould be diluted: in the mean-while, the Lithargie ſhould be levigated in Oyl, and nutrited on a ſlow fire; in which, the Wax and Roſine muſt be melted: with which, after ablation from the fire, the Gummes duly prepared muſt be injected; then Ariſtolochy, Myrrhe, and Frankincenſe; and at length Ruſt; whoſe doſis many imperitely augment, that they may make the Unguent more green: but it acquires more vehement acrimony, together with its colour, and thence becomes too mordacious and noxious.

It expurges wounds and contumacious Ulcers by deterſion, abſumes dead fleſh, and accelerates the reſtitution of new fleſh.

The Unguent of Chalk ſeven or ten times waſhed in common water, and then in Roſewater, and excepted into a ſufficient quantity of Oyl, and redacted to the craſſitude of an Unguent, doth very much agree with this in quality; for it efficaciouſly exterges corruption from

from Ulcers, abſumes humidity, and heals them. There is another more compoſititious Unguent of this ſort made, whereunto they adde Ceruſe, Pompholyx, Lithargie, Calves-fat, and the Unguent of Roſes; but it is ſeldome in uſe.

Chap. 21.

Unguentum Ægyptiacum; or, The Ægyptian Unguent.

℞ *Verdigreaſe ℥ v. Honey ℥ xiiij. ſtrong Vinegar ℥ vij. boyl them upon a fire, till they be brought into the form of an Unguent.*

The Commentary.

That all Ægyptians were Medicks, is now a Proverb; and that the firſt Laws of curing, and many Medicaments, were deduced from them, their ancient Writings and Monuments atteſt. But the Greeks, alwayes covetous of glory, have ſo craftily changed what they borrowed from them, that they are now thought the firſt Authors: yet there are yet ſome Oyls and Unguents from them denominated, as this now deſcribed, which was at firſt divulged by an Ægyptian. For it is probable, that it rather derived its name from this cauſe, then from its dusky colour, like that of the Ægyptians. Many call it the Melleous Unguent, from its Baſis, which is Honey; but uſe muſt ſometimes be preferred before reaſon: We, with Myropoliſts, call it the Ægyptian Unguent. It is thus made: The Honey muſt be coćted with Vinegar, and pulverated Verdigreaſe, in an earthen veſſel, on a ſlow fire, till the Vinegar be diſſipated, the tinćture of the Verdigreaſe changed, and all brought to the conſiſtence of an Unguent. *Meſue* calls it the great Unguent, that is, the eximious; not in difference of any leſſer.

It is of moſt uſe for inveterate and fiſtulous Ulcers; for it deterges them, arceates putretude, abſumes corruption, eats up excreſcent and dead fleſh, but not without ſenſe of dolour: if maſculine Frankincenſe be added to it; whereunto *Meſue* ſeems to aſſent, it will be ſomewhat milder, and not ſo ſarcotical.

Chap. 22.

Unguentum Agrippæ. D. Myr.

℞ *Bryony-root ℔ ij. wilde Cucumer ℔ j, Squills ℔ ß. Orris ℥ iij. Fern, Ebony, Water-Caltrop, of each ℥ ij. old Oyl ℔ iiij. yellow Wax ℥ xv. make it into an Unguent according to Art.*

The Commentary.

Myrepſus calls this Unguent γρύπα, the Latines *de Agrippa*, referring it

it, by what reaſon I know not, to King *Agrippa*. But perhaps it is ſo called, becauſe it is made of the ſucces of wilde ſimples left by maceration in Oyl, for ἄγριππον is wilde ſucce, whence its Nomenclature is detorted. But I mean not to diſſert about the reaſon of the name, ſeeing the thing is well known. *Salernitanus* changed a little this deſcription given by *Myrepſus*, taking in ſtead of the root of wilde Althea, the root of Aſinine Cucumer, as more convenient for his purpoſe, in educing watry humours, and more accommodated to the cure of the Dropſie, for which *Myrepſus* inſtitutes it. Its preparation is of this ſort: Firſt freſh roots muſt be ſelected, waſhed, diligently purged from their filth, and brayed; then they muſt be macerated in Oyl five or ſix dayes in a Potters veſſel upon hot aſhes; then coćted till they be tabid, and their aqueous humidity be exhaled, then ſtrained; the colature muſt again be adhibited to the fire: whereinto, when it is ready to boyl, the wax muſt be injećted, and ſo an Unguent made by Art; wherewith the Hydropticals belly may be anointed for benefit, and the Splenaticks left Hypochondrium. It ſubduces the belly, though it be but extrinſecally applied, but eſpecially childrens and weaker mens bellies: it is indued with many more qualities, which for brevities ſake I omit. *Vires.*

CHAP. 23.

Unguentum Aregon. D. Myrepſ.

℞ *of Laurel* ℥ *ix. Calamint* ℔ *ß. the roots of wilde Cucumer, and Orris, Marjoram, tops of Roſemary, Mother of Thyme, Rue, of each* ℥ *iiij. ß. Bayes, Sage, Savin, of each* ℥ *iij. Ginger, Pepper, of each* ℥ *ß. Pellitory, Euphorbium, Oyl of Peter, of each* ℥ *j. Maſtick, Frankincenſe, of each* ℥ *vj. Oyl of Nutmegs* ℥ *ß. Bayes, Bears-greaſe, of each* ℥ *iij. pure Wax* ℥ *xv. common Oyl* ℔ *v. Let the herbs and the roots be macerated in Wine, boyled with the Oyl, ſtrained, and then the Fats and Powders added, and ſo make it into an Unguent according to Art.*

The COMMENTARY.

They that will evolve the Commentaries of Medicks about the preparation of this Unguent, ſhall finde as many varieties as Authors in its deſcriptions: for *Salernitanus* addes the roots of Bryony, Aſinine Cucumer, and the leaves of both Fleabanes; *Fernelius* admits of this addition, and omits the roots of Orris, and changes the doſis; others either adde or detract other things. We follow *Joubertus*, who more faithfully adheres to the Author; and we exhibit the deſcription he redacted into due order. It preparation is

thus: The roots and herbs must be brayed, purged from their filth, and macerated a whole day; next day they may be taken out, and well brayed; then immerged in Oyl, where they should continue seven dayes; then let them be cocted and strained: to the colature, adde Butter, Fat, and Wax: when these are melted, let Oyl be poured on, and then the Powders mixed with it: all, thus permixed and subacted, confect an Unguent of a legitimate consistence, which from its effect is called ἐπικούρειον, that is, Auxiliatory; by some, Adjutory; by *Præpositus* foolishly, Aragon.

Vires. It cures cold affections, convulsions, resolutions, cholical and articulate dolours: it is good to anoint the back-bone and shoulder-points with it, before the invasion of the Quartane-Ague.

Chap. 24.

Unguentum Martiatum. D. Myrepsi.

℞ *of old Oyl* ℔ *ij. Wax* ℔ *j. Rosemary, the leaves of Bayes, Rue, of each* ℥ *iiij. Marjoram, Dwarf-Elder, Savin,* * *Balsamite, Basil, Sage, Mountain-Polium, Calamint, Mugwort, Enula-campane, Betony, Bears-breech, Goose-grass, Windflower, Pimpinel, Agrimony, Wormwood, Cowslips, or rather Primerose, Garden Costus, i. Grecian Mint, tops of Eldern, Stone-crop, the greater House-leek, Yarrow, Germander, narrow-leafed Plantain, the lesser Centaury, Strawberries, Cinqfoil, of each* ℥ *ij.* ℥ *ij. Marshmallow-root, Cumin, Myrrhe, of each* ℥ *j. ß. Fœnugreek, Butter, of each* ℥ *vj. Nettleseed, Violets, white Poppy-seed, Garden-Mint, and wilde-Mint, the roots of Madder, sowre Dock, of Maiden-hair, Carduus Benedictus, Woodbinde, Mosch Cranes-bill, Camomile-flowers, Spleen-wort, Ox-eye, Southernwood, Storax, the Marrow of a Hart, of each* ℥ *ij. of Bear, Capon, and Goose-grease, Mastick, of each* ℥ *ß. Oyl of Spikenard* ℥ *j. Let the roots and herbs be bruised, and macerated in Wine, boyled, and the Oyl added to them; which again let be boyled: in the strained liquor, dissolve the Wax, afterwards the Butter and the Fats, and last of all the Powders.*

*Or, *Water Mints.*

The Commentary.

Salernitanus thinks, that this Unguent should be called Martianum, from *Martianus*; *Manlius* saith, Martiatum, from *Martiaton*, a most perite Medick, and its Inventor: But whose-ever it was, he hath described it a most efficacious and useful Medicament: which consisting of many Simples, is called, The great Martiate, in reference to one more simple, delivered by *Alexandrinus*.

But lest any one should erre in its dispensation, we shall dilucidate the obscure appellations of some of its simples: By Acanthum then we understand Brank-ursine; by Balsamita, Water-Mint; by

by Eleliſphacum, Sage; by Spargula, the Greeks Gooſe-graſs; by herba Venti, not Pellitory of the wall, ſometimes ſo called, but wilde Anemone: however, either of them may be taken without any errour; by herba Paralyſis, Primeroſe; by Noſtras Coſtus, Grecian Mint, commonly called, S. *Maries* graſs; by Sempervive, Houſe-leek, or the greater Aizoon; by Quinque Nervia, Plantain; by Cardiobotanum, Carduus Benedictus; by Periclymenum, Woodbinde; by herba Moſchata, the firſt ſpecies of Storks-bill; by Criſpulum, wilde Camomile, not ſtinking Camomile, which we call Ox-eye; by herba Camphorata, Southernwood: the reſt are eaſie.

We do not, with *Joubertus*, put Feverfew, but Marjoram, in ſtead of Tamarisk, as more convenient for the purpoſe. For its preparation, the roots and herbs that are gathered in the middle of Spring muſt be waſhed, purged, brayed, and macerated in a ſufficient quantity of generous wine in a fit veſſel, and then cocted upon hot aſhes, till half the wine be diſſipated; then muſt the Oyl be affunded, and all again cocted, till all the wine be perfectly diſſipated; then removed from the fire, put in a bag, and preſſed; then ſet again on the fire, and the wax added and melted; then muſt the Butter, Fats, Marrow, and Pulverables be uſurped, all diſſolved, well mixed, and united by agitation; then removed from the fire, that they may become an Unguent.

It cures the cold affections of the Brain, Nerves and Articles; the trembling Palſey, Convulſion, and Gout: it conduces to the hard tumours of the Spleen, and all dolours ſprung from crude humours.

CHAP. 25.

Unguentum Citrinum. D. Myrepſ.

℞ *of Borax, white Marble, of each ʒ ij. Camphyr ʒ j. white Coral ʒ ß. Alome, the Sea-Navel, Antal, Dental, Chryſtal, Nitre, Tragacanth, Amiantum Starch, Olibanum, of each ʒ iij. * the fœcula of Dragons-root ʒ j. * Gerſa. Ceruſe ʒ vj. Hogs-ſuet ℔ j. ß. Goats-ſuet ʒ j. ß. Capons-greaſe ʒ j. Pome-citron num. ij. make it up into an Unguent according to Art.*

The COMMENTARY.

Seeing this Unguent hath its name, not colour, from Oranges (for it is white) it ſhould rather be called, The Unguent of Oranges, then the Citrian Unguent: but the affinity of the names makes the errour ſmall. It is rather of the number of thoſe that appertain to the Coſmetical and Exornatory Art, then the Medicinal: for it conſiſts of many things, which erugate and deterge the skin, emend its prave colour, and reduce it to a more laudable ſtate. Many of its ingredients are enunciated in barbarous words; which, leſt by their ambiguity, or multifarious acceptations, they ſhould deceive

the imperite, we ſhall thus interpret: By ſweet Amiantum or Amentum, we mean ſciſſile Alome, or plumeous, not coćted Targot, as *Manlius* ſuggeſts; by Sea-navels, Sea-ſhels, repreſenting a Mans Navel; by Antalium, a marine Tube of a fingers length, ſtriated without, of the number of ſhells; by Dentalium, a ſmall, long, round, white ſhell, ſmooth within, crooked, and acuminated on one ſide, wherein a certain Sea-worm lives. Now Antalium and Dentalium being Conchiles, Sea-welks, and Cockles, may be ſubſtituted in their ſtead.

By Gerſa, we underſtand a certain Ceruſe or Fœcula, made of the root of the herb Dragon; or in defect thereof, of the root of Jairy, and Roſe-water; which is thus prepared: The roots of the greater herb Dragon muſt be collećted in the Spring, waſhed, purged and dryed; then pulverated very ſmall in a Stone-Morter, and put in an earthen or glaſs veſſel with Roſe-water; then covered with a linen cloth, and dryed in the Sun; afterwards brayed, madefied with Roſe-water, and dryed by inſolation, which muſt be iterated three or four dayes; then the powder madefied with odorate wine, coaćted into Paſtils, dryed in a ſhade, repoſed for uſe, and uſurped for Garſa.

The Unguents preparation is after this manner: The greaſes muſt all be melted together in an earthen pot, wherein two Citrons or Oranges cut into pieces, muſt be materated a whole night; the next morning coćted and percolated; the Marble, Chryſtal, Coral, Navels, Antals, and Dentals, muſt be pulverated very ſmall, as alſo the reſt, but all of them apart, eſpecially Camphyr, Amylum, Frankincenſe, Amiantum, and Boras: but Gerſa being friable, may be levigated, by light motion, on an inverted ſieve. When all are duly levigated, they muſt be mixed and agitated together with the melted, ſtrained, and hot fats, that they may concrete to an Unguent. But the quantity of Fats ſeems too little for the Powders, which therefore muſt either be augmented, or they leſſened: for Apothecaries require for one pound of Powders, ſeven or eight of Fat; but the Powders may be ſaved, and when uſe calls for them, mixed with a ſufficient quantity of Fats.

Vires. It repreſſes Pimples ariſing from bile or ſalt phlegm in the skin, but eſpecially in the face. It exterges Tetters, black and blue places, deleates fœtid ſcars, takes away the redneſs of the eyes, and cures cutaneous affections.

Chap. 26.

Unguentum Spleniticum; or, An Oyntment for the Spleen.

℞ *Oyl of Capers, of Jaſmine, of each ℥ ix. freſh Butter ℔ ß. Juyce of Bryony, and Sowbread, of each ℔ ß. Gum-Ammoniacum diſſolved in Vinegar ℥ ij. of the Powder of the bark of Tamariſk, Aſhton-keyes, Ceterach, white Willowſeed, of each ℥ j. Cumin-ſeed ℥ ij. new Wax, as much as will ſuffice to body it into an Unguent.*

The

The COMMENTARY.

Many are infested with the tumour of their Spleen; others with its induration, without any great tumour; and others with both: all of them have gravity and gripings in their Hypochondria, tumours in their left sides, difficulty of breathing, and prave and plumbeous colours, black and turgid veins towards their Spleens, inflation of feet; and lying on the left side is grievous to them.

This Unguent adhibited to the regions of their Spleens, after general Præsidies will much profit; for it is malactical, or mollitive, resolvative, apertive, roborative, and splenetical; whence it hath that name. It should not therefore be omitted; but seeing its use is salubrious, should be kept in Pharmacopolies.

For its preparation, let the Oyls and Butter boyl on a slow fire with the succes, till the succes be dissipated; then mix dissolved Ammoniack with them, then the Powders, afterwards the Wax, and make an Unguent: whereunto, adde some Oyl of Spike, which by its tenuity will cause better permeation for the rest, and emend the Unguents odour.

CHAP. 27.

Unguentum Neapolitanum; or, The Neapolitan Unguent.

℞ *of Hogs-suet washed in the Juyce of Sage* ℔ *j. Quicksilver killed* ℥ *iiij. Oyl of Bayes, Chamomile, and Worms, of each* ℥ *ij. of Spike* ℥ *j.ß. Aqua-vitæ* ℥ *j. yellow Wax* ℥ *ij. Turpentine washed in the Juyce of Enula-campane* ℥ *iij. Powder of Ground-pine and Sage, of each* ℈ *ij. mingle them.*

The COMMENTARY.

I wish, that Medicks would speak of the venereous disease and its cure, without injury to any Nation: For many, ignorant of its original, cause and nature, referre it to such, from whom they received it, whether justly or injustly. Hence some call it the Spanish, others the Italian, and others the French disease. But the French, being men that will not put up an injury, hearing the disease imposed on them, which they had rightly called the Indian, or Venereous Pox; they called both the disease and its remedy, Italian, because the Italians had wronged them first; and sometimes the Indian: for the Spaniards brought it first out of *India* into *Italy*; whence the French, taking *Neapolis*, brought home this Neapolitan fruit. But to my purpose. This Indian Unguent may serve in stead of very many of that name, which are unduly confected of Swines-fat, and Quicksilver, and sometimes a few simples unduly united, and kept in many Pharmacopolies; whereby the diseased, in stead of helps

help, gets the Palsey, Stupour, and Trembling: But this we have described, consists of many things that hinder such affections, that roborate the Nerves, extinguish the malign and peccant quality of the humours, and resolve the humours, propelling many by sputation. Some adde Petreol and Euphorbium, which being exceeding hot and tenuious, may help cold natures; but they much harm the bilious and temperate. Some also adde Mithridate and the Theriack; but we omit them, as not alexiterial to this disease: but Quicksilver is very efficacious, if duly prepared, as we have elsewhere demonstrated.

For the preparation of this Unguent, the wax must first be melted on a moderate fire with the Oyls; then Aqua-vitæ added to them, which must be agitated and calefied till the water be exhaled; then incorporate them with Quicksilver, Fat, and Turpentine; whereunto adde the Powders, and subact all into an Unguent.

That the Quicksilver may be duly prepared, it should first be trajected through a woollen cloth, that its plumbago may be segregated; then extinguished with jejune and sound spittle: for being thus tamed, it is fitter for this confection, then when extinct in the succe of Henbane and Lemmons, though the Grease and Turpentine take away much of its ferity. Its malign quality may be very well castigated in the Oyl of Turpentine duly prepared.

It cures the flux of the mouth, or the exputation of virulent humours through the mouth, if after purgation, the parts be twice or thrice anointed therewith.

We have neglected many Unguents described in vulgar Antidotaries, because their use is either not approved of, or disallowed of, or their faculties respondent to, and contained in these we have described. For he that hath the Styptical Unguent, or Aregon of *Fernelius*, needs not the Unguent of Comitissa and Arthanita.

SECT. II.

Of Cerecloths.

AS Cerecloths are in the middle betwixt Unguents and Salves; so we describe them in the middle. They are called Cerata, *because they admit of Wax; as also* Ceronea; *which are now made of such solidity, that they differ not from Salves, but are taken indiscriminately by Chirurgeons, who call such as repose broken or disjoynted bones, Ceroneous Salves. But* Cerata, *in a more angust acceptation, denote an external Medicament aggregated of Oyl, Wax, the parts of Plants, Animals, Metals, and Minerals, to a middle consistence, betwixt Unguents and Salves: for they admit of more Wax then Unguents, and less then Salves. Now the proportion of Wax to Oyl in Unguents, is of two dragms and an half to one ounce; in*

Cerata,

Cerata, *of two dragms and a half to an ounce; in Salves, twice, thrice, or four times as much Wax as Oyl: which proportion varies, according to the different mixtion of other Ingredients, and the season they are confected in; for where there is required much of Powders, there must be more; where little, there less Oyl: in Summer also less Oyl is requisite, then in Winter; so that it is in the perite Artists power to change, augment, or lessen the quantity of Wax and Oyl: and as* Cerone *is used for an Emplaister; so is* Ceratum *for an Unguent: for their preparation, commixtion, and spissitude, are almost one; yea, a* Ceratum *is sometimes more liquid then an Unguent.*

CHAP. I.

Ceratum refrigerans Gal. *or, The cooling Cerate of* Galen.

℞ *of white wax* ℥ *j. Oyl of Roses* ℥ *iiij. melt them together, and pour on a little cold water, keeping it continually stirring; at the last, adding Vinegar* ℥ *ß. make it into a Cerate.*

The COMMENTARY.

There is not amongst all compound and euporistical Medicaments, one more frequent or simple, then this described and celebrated by *Galen*; which some call an Unguent, some *Ceratum Album*, and some *Ceratum refrigerans* Galeni.

You may thus make it: Divide the wax into pieces, melt it in the Oyl of Roses not perfectly explicated; take it from the fire, and transfuse it into another vessel; and when it is cold, and moderately concreted, affund cold water upon it, and agitate it; which iterate, till the mixture will take no more: whereunto, if you adde a little thin white-wine Vinegar, it will be more humectative and refrigerative. *Galen* advises, when it should be made very refrigerative, to put the succes of Lettice, Nightshade, Sempervive, and such refrigerants to it. But this needs not be done, but when the time of use calls for it, these may be added; for it is better to have it made in the shops after the most simple form.

It cures Inflammations, S. *Anthonies* fires, Pimples, Carbuncles, *Vires.* red Swellings, and all hot distempers. It also much helps the Feverish, if it be put upon their Hypochondria.

CHAP. 2.

Ceratum Santalinum; or, The Cerate of Sanders. D. Mes.

℞ *of Rose-leaves* ℥ *xij. red Sanders* ℥ *x. white and yellow, of each* ℥ *vj. Bole-armeniack* ℥ *vij. white Wax washed* ℥ *xxx. Ivory* ℥ *vij. Camphyr* ℥ *ij. Oyl of Roses* ℔ *j. make into a Cerate.*

The

The Commentary.

The Pharmacopoliſt that wants Sugar, is not ſo deriſible, as he that wants this Ceratum; whoſe continual and happy uſe, ſufficiently nobilitate it. It is from Wax called *Ceratum*; from Santals, *Santalinum*. You may make it thus:

Firſt pulverate all the Santals together; the Roſes, Bole-armeniack, Ivory, and Camphyr apart; then mix the Wax with the Oyl, that they may be liquefied on a ſlow fire; when they are confuſedly melted, and a little cold, waſh them thrice or more in Roſe-water; whereunto adject the ſaid powders, yet in ſuch method, that the Camphyr be laſt put in; then agitate, ſubact, and unite all into the conſiſtence of a *Ceratum*. We have put crude, not burnt Ivory, for Spodium: and why we have ſo done, hath been frequently ſhewed.

It allayes the inflammations, exuſtions, and hot diſtempers of the Ventricle, Liver, and other parts, with much efficacy.

Chap. 3.

Ceratum Stomachicum; or, *A Cerate for the Stomach taken out of* Meſ.

℞ Roſes, Maſtick, of each ℥ x. dryed Wormwood ℥ vij. ß. Spikenard ℥ v. Wax ℥ ij. Oyl of Roſes ℥ ix. make it according to Art into a Cerate.

The Commentary.

This *Ceratum* of *Meſue*'s being more efficacious then thoſe two which *Galen* deſcribes, it is more uſual and frequent in ſhops. For its preparation, melt the Wax and Oyl; when cold, waſh them oft in Roſe-water; melt them again, and waſh them in equal portions of the ſucce of Quinces and of black auſtere wine, with a little Vinegar (which may be well omitted.) In the mean-while, pulverate the Roſes and VVormwood together, Maſtick and Spikenard apart; then confuſedly mix all the powders with the wax and Oyl duly waſhed, and ſubact them into a legitimate ſpiſſitude. *Galen*, to whom *Meſue* attributes its deſcription, gives it otherwiſe; therefore the invention of the deſcription, or at leaſt of the better deſcription, is due to *Meſue*. It it called Stomachical, becauſe it conduces to that part; for it foments the heat of the ſtomack, and of the whole Ventricle, helps concoction, diſſipates flatulency, cocts crude humours, moves appetite, and ſtayes vomiting: but it ſhould and muſt be extended all over the region of the ſtomack, and ſometimes the whole Ventricle; for it roborates that alſo, and makes it more prompt and apt to perform its office.

CHAP. 4.

Ceratum Oesypatum, Gal. *tributum*, D. Mes.

℞ *Oesypi* ℥ x. *Oyl of Camomile, Orris, of each* lb ß. *Wax* ℥ iiij. *Mastick, Turpentine, of each* ℥ j. *Rosine* ℥ ß. *Spikenard* ℥ ij. ß. *Saffron* ℥ j. ß. *Ammoniacum* ℥ j. *Storax* ℥ ß. *make it into a Cerate according to Art.*

The COMMENTARY.

Mesue describes three Cerata's, whereof we select this one, attributed to *Galen*, as most efficacious and usual: which yet *Rondeletius*, by the addition of Ammoniack and Storax, hath made more effectual: for thus confected, it performs those effects which the descriptions of *Pilagrius* and *Paulus* pollicitate. Wherefore he that hath this, may be without the others. It is called *Oesypatum*, from its Basis Oesypum; which you may thus extract: Take a fit quantity of wooll evelled from the necks, bellies and privities of sheep; macerate it eight hours in hot water, agitate it all the while with a stick; then fervefie it on the fire, till it depose its fatness into the water: extract, and violently express the wooll; and then transfuse the water from one vessel to another with much force, that it may eructate much spume; which collect, and repose in a vessel apart: iterate the transfusion in the hot Sun, till all the fat spume be collected; which wash, and agitate in pure water, till its filth be segregated, and the last water remain limpid, and the fatness leave no acrimony on the tongue; then put it in a dense earthen pot, and keep it in a cold place. It is emollitive, resolvative, calefactive and anodynous.

The Ceratum you may thus confect: first pulverate the Saffron, Mastick, Spikenard and Storax apart; then mix their powders together; macerate Ammoniack in Vinegar, melt it, and coct it to the consistence of Honey; then liquefie the wax in Oyl; take them from the fire, and put therein Oesypum, dissolved Ammoniack, and Turpentine together; then agitate and subact all the powders together, that they may acquire due spissitude.

It mollifies, resolves, digests, and allayes dolours; and thence conduces to the hard tumours of the Liver, Spleen, Uterus, Nerves, Articles, and other parts.

Authors describe other external Medicaments, under the name of *Cerata*; which being of a harder consistence, we shall prosecute in our next Book of Salves. *Mesue* describes some softer then these, which are seldome or never made.

Finis Libri Quinti.

The Apothecaries Shop, OR, ANTIDOTARY.

Of External Medicaments.

THE SIXTH BOOK.

Of Emplaisters.

THE PREFACE.

Both the Matter and Vertue of Unguents and Salves are one, their consistence different; which in the one is soft and liquid, in the other crass and solid: which are therefore made into Rolls and Bacils of a fingers length and crassitude, and sometimes much more; and not reposed in vessels like Unguents, but involved in papers, and so kept in Pharmacopolies. That they may acquire that crassitude, they admit of more Wax, and less Oyl then Unguents; as twice, thrice, and sometimes four times as much Wax as Oyl: which quantity of Wax must be augmented or lessened, according to the quantity of Rosines and concrete succes; as also the quantity of Oyl, as the dosis of Fats, Grease and Marrow may ingrede the confection. Now Salves are confected of the parts of Plants and Animals, of Minerals and Metals; some whereof give onely the body and consistence, without any great vertue, as Wax, common Oyl, Quicksilver, and some Rosines; others with matter, give also vertue and efficacy, as Minerals, Plants, and the other Ingredients. All Salves do not admit of Wax and Rosines, but receive Ladanum, Frankincense, and other things for their matter: Some also are made without Wax and fire, whose materials are Honey, viscid Succes, Cream, and the like, concreted to a due spissitude; as the Salve of Bread-Crusts and Bayberries, and the like. This order must be observed in confecting Salves: first the Wax must be melted in Oyl; then the liquors, succes, and Mucagines mixed therewith, and coctedon a slow fire, till the aqueous humidity be exhaled; then must the Fats and Rosines be added; as also all kindes of Gummes: Some whereof are mixed sincere,

others

others diluted, colated, and coëted in Wine, Vinegar, or other liquor: if Turpentine be required, it may be added when the Salve is percoëted, and abstracted from the fire; then must the hard Powders be cast and sprinkled, agitated, subacted, and concreted into a mass neither soft nor hard, but moderate and viscid, which will not inquinate the contrectants hands. If liquid succes, as Wine, Vinegar, Medicinal Waters or Decoctions, ingrede a Salves confection, they must be coëted till their aqueous humidity be dissipated. New and spiss Succes must be dissolved in some liquor, which must also be dissipated by coction; dry and friable ones must be pulverated and mixed therewith. And as it is of great moment, which must be first put in the dispensation, and which last: so also, which must be longer, which less coëted. For the light coction of Lithargie makes the Medicament white; the longer, black. Verdigrease makes it sometimes citreous, sometimes green, and sometimes fusk, according to the various heat of the fire: And the mutation of colour, often argues the mutation of qualities; for Lithargie, by longer coction, makes the Salve both blacker and more exsiccative. And though the consistence and faculties be the most looked after in Salves; yet their colour and odour make them more commendable. But seeing we have abundantly treated of general Precepts in confecting Salves, in our Institutions (Chap. 4. Book 3.) *it now onely rests, that we discuss the particular preparation and confection of each of them:*

CHAP. I.

Diachylon simplex. D. Mes.

℞ *old Oyl* ℔ *j. Lithargie finely beaten* ℔ *j. ß. of the mucilidge of Marshmallow-roots, Linseed, and Fœnugreek, of each* ℥ *iiij. make it into a Plaister of a legitimate consistency.*

Our *London*-Apothecaries usually add as much water as Oyl, to boyl it with.

The COMMENTARY.

The denomination of this Salve is multifarious: for from the mucagineous succes, which it admits in great plenty, it is called *Diachylon*; from its colour, *Album*; from its usual frequency, *Commune*; and from the five Simples that ingrede its Confection, *Pentapharmacum*; and often, *Simple Diachylon*, in reference to another more compositious. The whole Family of Myropolists acknowledge *Mesue* its Author, though *Serapio* and *Avicenna* gave descriptions thereof before him: and all exhibit it according to the superiour form, wherein Oyl and Lithargie suppeditate matter and corpulency, and Succes efficacy; which mixed in divers proportions, and after divers preparations, make up this Emplaister. For more dilucidation, prepare it thus: Purge the Lithargie from its Lead, drosse, and filth; then levigate it small, agitate, and subact it twelve hours in a Metalline-Morter with Oyl; then coct it on a slow fire, alwayes stirring it, till the Lithargie incrassate to a melleous consistence, and adheres not to the

bottom of the Kettle; then take it off the fire, that it may cool; then fervefie the ſucces extracted in water apart, till their more aqueous parts be exhaled; then mix about a third part thereof accurately with the Lithargie, and coct them again, till the Lithargie incraſſate as before; then put the reſt to it, and agitate them, letting them fervefie on a ſlow fire, till they be all united, and concorporated into a Salve of a legitimate conſiſtence; and if you put an ounce of the powder of Orris, to each pound of this Salve, then you have *Diachylon Ireatum.* It is a ſign the Salve is perfectly cocted, when a part thereof adheres not to a Marble, nor inquinates the contrectants hands: yet it ſhould be ſequacious and viſcid, that Rolls may be formed thereof, involved in paper, and kept.

It is the beſt Mollitive: for it mollifies the hard tumours, and cocts the humours of the Liver, Spleen, Ventricle, and other parts: that which admits of Orris, attracts, incides, and reſolves more.

Chap. 2.

Diachylon Magnum. D. Meſ.

℞ *of Lithargie of Gold finely powdered* ℔ *j. Oyls of Orris, Dill, and Camomile, of each* ℔ *ß. muſilidge of Marſhmallow-roots, Figs, Linſeed, Fœnugreek, Iſinglaſs, Juyces of Orris, Squills, Oeſypi, of each* ℥ *xij. ß. Turpentine* ℥ *iij. Roſine, Wax, of each* ℥ *ij. make it into a Plaiſter according to Art.*

Diachylon Magnum cum Gummis.

℞ *Bdellium, Sagapenum, Ammoniacum, of each* ℥ *ij. diſſolve them in wine, and boyl them to the craſſitude of Honey; adding the maſs of Diachylon Magnum, and make it into a Plaiſter.*

The Commentary.

As the Simple and Ireatum were, ſo the great and Gummatum Diachylon are conjoyned, and deſcribed all in one order, becauſe in name and faculties they have much affinity. *Paul. Ægin.* diſſents much from *Meſue*, in the deſcription and confection of the greater. *Oribaſius* diſſents from *Paulus*; and the uſual method accommodated to *Meſue*, from both: which we now follow, onely neglecting Raiſins; in whoſe ſtead we, by *Guido*'s advice, ſubſtitute Althea's-root: and you may thus confect it: Agitate and move Lithargie, already brayed and purged in a Morter of Copper with Oyl very long; then coct it on a ſlow fire, alwayes ſtirring it, till it incraſſate; then adde the muſilidges, and coct them, till their watry humidity be abſumed; afterwards put Fiſh-glue diluted in the ſucce of Orris and Squills, into the confection, and coct them till the ſucces be ſpent: in ſtead of Alkanach, you may put Alkam, or Bird-lime, which is more

more convenient for this Emplaister: The Wax and Rosine must be put into these, whilst they are on the fire; the Turpentine and Oesypus may be added, when they are abstracted from the fire: all the mass must be continually agitated, that its consistence may be idoneous. Some, by industrious sedulity, mix a small quantity of the Mucagines, at first, with the Oyls and Lithargie, that they may hinder its subsidence to the bottom of the vessel, and make the Salve whiter.

Its faculties effect the same with the former, but more efficaciously: for it mollifies, cocts, and digests better: The Gummatum Diachylon attracts, mollifies, and resolves potently.

CHAP. 3.

Emplastrum de Mucaginibus, seu Diachylon compositum; or, The Plaister of Musilidges, or Diachylon compound.

℞ *of the Musilidge of the seeds of Marshmallows, Lin, Fœnugreek, the middle bark of Elm, of each* ℥ *iiij. Oyl of Camomile, Lillies, and Dill, of each* ℥ *j. Ammoniacum, Galbanum, Opoponax, Sagapenum, of each* ℥ *ß. new Wax* ℥ *xx. Turpentine* ℥ *ij. Saffron* ℥ *ij. make it into a Plaister according to Art.*

The COMMENTARY.

Though this Salve be of an uncertain Author, yet all Pharmacopolists make it after this description which we exhibit from *Fernelius* its Transcriber: for whose confection, first extract the Chyles in water; then coct them with Oyls on a slow fire, till their aqueous humidity be dissipated; cut the wax into pieces, and melt it herein, agitating it with a spatle: adde the Gummes diluted first in Vinegar, strained and cocted to the absumption of the Vinegar; then take them off the fire, and adde Turpentine and Saffron to them, still agitating the mass, till it acquire a due consistence: whereof form Rolls of half or a whole ounce weight.

It partly mollifies, partly cocts and maturates, and therefore conduces to the cure of humours preternaturally indurated. It is enumerated amongst the mollitive and suppurative Salves, and frequent in use.

CHAP. 4.

Emplastrum de Meliloto; or, Melilot Plaister. D. Mes.

℞ *of Melilot* ℥ *vj. Camomile-flowers, tops of Wormwood, wilde Marjoram, Fœnugreek, Bayberries, Marshmallow-roots, of each* ℥ *iij. the seeds of Smallage, Bishopweed, Cardamomes, Orris, Cypress, Lavender, Cassia-Lignea, of each* ℥ *j. ß. Ammoniacum* ℥ *x. Storax, Bdellium,*

Bdellium, of each ℥ v. Turpentine ℥ j. ſſ. Figs num. xij. Goats-ſuet, Roſine, of each ℥ ij. ſſ. Wax ℥ vj. Oyl of Marjoram and Spike, of each ℥ vj. of the water of the decoction of Melilot, Camomile, and Fœnugreek, as much as ſuffices to reduce it to a Plaiſter.

The Commentary.

This Salve conſiſts of many things; which ſhould be artificially prepared apart, before they accede to its confection: and firſt of all the roots muſt be brayed; ſecondly the ſeeds; thirdly the herbs and flowers; and then Cinamon and Storax, but apart both; then muſt all be mixed. Bdellium and Ammoniack muſt in the meanwhile be macerated in Vinegar, rather then the decoction of Melilote, Camomile, and Fœnugreek; though the Mucagines or Chyles of the roots of Althea and Fœnugreek, ſhould and ought to be extracted therein: To whoſe colature, brayed Figs, macerated in the ſame decoction, and trajected through a ſieve, ſhould be added; then Turpentine, and at laſt the Powders: whereinto, when well ſubacted, ſix dragms, or an ounce at moſt, of the Oyl of Marjoram, and as much of the Oyl of Spikenard muſt be adjected. For *Bauderonius*, by the addition of ſix ounces, makes the Confection an Unguent, not a Salve. If the Figs be dry, both they and the Bdellium may be pulverated: but it is better to macerate and ſtrain them. Caraway-ſeed may be ſubſtituted for Cordumenum; not Cardamome, as many think, becauſe of the affinity of the words.

It mollifies, coćts, and reſolves the inveterate hardneſs of the Liver, Spleen, Ventricle, and other parts; it laxates the tenſions of the Hypochondria, and diſcuſſes flatulence.

Joubertus deſcribes the Triapharmacal Emplaiſter, amongſt the number of the Mollitives and Reſolvatives: but as its compoſition is ſimple; ſo is its faculty imbecile, and its uſe rare. Its matter is the ſame with that of the crude Unguent, or Unguent of Lithargie; for it conſiſts of Oyl, Lithargie and Vinegar, coćted to an Emplaſtical conſiſtence.

Chap. 5.

Emplaſtrum Oxycroceum. D.Myt.

℞ *of Saffron, Ship-pitch, clarified Roſine, Wax, of each ℥ iij. Turpentine, Ammoniacum, Galbanum, Myrrhe, Frankincenſe, Maſtick, of each ℥ j. and ℥ iij. make theſe into a Plaiſter according to Art.*

The Commentary.

Myrepſus invented and inſtituted this Salve alſo, for mollifying and digeſting hardneſs; who gave it a name from Vinegar, wherein its Gummes are macerated and diſſolved; and from Saffron, wherewith it is infected. You may make it after this manner: Bray Am-

Ammoniack and Galbanum a little, macerate them a whole night in Vinegar, that they may be dissolved; then coct them till the Vinegar be exhaled; in the mean-while, melt the wax in a fit vessel; when it is melted, adde Ship-Pitch and Scammony to it; then with these, mix the Gummes duly liquefied, and take them from the fire; then adde Turpentine, then Myrrhe, Frankincense, Saffron and Mastick, all brayed apart; unite them all by agitation into a fit mass: which inject upon a Marble anointed with Oyl of Mastick, insperged with powder of Saffron, and form Rolls of the accustomed magnitude: Some diminish the quantity of Saffron, which being done without loss, may be assented to.

This Salve is mollitive and digestive, allaying the dolours of the nerves and articles, and helping broken bones.

He needs not make Ceroneum, that hath this, because of the great affinity betwixt their faculties.

CHAP. 6.

Emplastrum de Janua; or, The lesser Plaister of Betony. D.P.

℞ *of the Juyces of Betony, Smallage, Plantain, of each* ℔ *j. yellow Wax, Rosine, Turpentine, Pitch, of each* ℔ *ß. make it into an Emplaister according to Art.*

The COMMENTARY.

There are two Emplaisters of Betony; one of a lesser description, which Apothecaries call *Emplastrum de Janua*; and another of greater composition, which they call simply, Betonies Salve: which is hitherto frequently made, because of the excellency of its faculties. *Andernacus*, they say, is its Author; but *Præpositus* invented this *de Janua*: which, according to his description, you may thus confect: Melt the Wax, Pitch, and Rosine, in the succes of Plantain, Betony, and Smallage, strained, but not depurated; then coct them with a portion of Turpentine, alwayes moving them, that the succes may be resolved; then adde the rest of the Turpentine, and fervefie them all again, that they may be united into a mass of a fit consistence: whereof form Rolls for use.

It is maturative and digestive, and by a peculiar faculty, roborates the head, and cures its Wounds and Ulcers.

CHAP. 7.

Emplastrum de Betonica; or, The greater Plaister of Betony. D. Andern.

℞ *of green Betony, Pimpinel, Agrimony, Sage, Penyroyal, Cinqfoil, the greater Comfrey, Garden-Clary, of each* ℥ *vj. Frankincense, Mastick,*

stick, of each ʒ iij. Orris, round Birthwort, of each ʒ vj. white Wax, Turpentine, of each ℔ ß. * Gum-Elemni ʒ ij. Rosine of the Pine-tree ʒ vj. Oyl of the Firre-tree, white-wine, of each as much as will suffice to make it into a Plaister.

*Gum-Olei Æthiopiæ.

The Commentary.

Seeing there are many capital Diseases, which besides the help of Chirurgeons, require Topical Medicaments; and few of them onely can be helped by the Emplaister *de Janua*: *Andernacus* did well, to describe this of Betony, which is more efficacious, perfectly curing more preternatural affections of the head. You may thus prepare it: Contund the herbs well in a Morter, macerate them a whole week in white-wine, agitate and coct them, express and strain the wine, and coct it, till the third part be absumed; then put Oyl of Firre to it, then melted wax, afterwards Gummes and Rosines, and last of all Turpentine: when these are pretty cold, adde to them the rest that are pulverated or concreted, alwayes agitating them till the whole humour be exorbed; last of all put Goats-milk or Cows-milk to them, and make Rolls.

Vires. It unites fractures, covers bones with flesh, detracts the splinters of bones, and evokes such as are deeply sunk: it restores lost and hard flesh; it absterges, digests, and siccates notably.

Chap. 8.

Emplastrum de Baccis Lauri; or, The Plaister of Bayberries. D. Mes.

℞ of Bayberries ʒ ij. Olibanum, Mastich, Myrrhe, of each ʒ j. Cypress, Costus, of each ʒ ß. Honey despumed, as much as will suffice to make it into an Emplaister.

The Commentary.

Mesue neither addes Oyl, nor Wax, nor Fat, to this confection; onely an indefinite quantity of Honey to receive the rest: whose dosis he leaves to the Artificers judgement; who think, that one and a half, or two ounces, are sufficient for the comprehension of the powders, which give a legitimate consistence to this Emplaister, which *Mesue* describes as most efficacious in curing the Dropsie, if the quantity of Cypress be triplicitated, and as much Goats or Cows-dung as the weight of the whole amounts to, added. But it is better to confect it more simple, or else onely to triplicitate the Cypress; or, when use calls for it, to adde the dungs of both or one.

For its confection, pulverate all apart but Honey; and adde Cypress and Costus to the Honey, while hot, despumed, but not cocted:

coćted: when it is cold, put Frankincenſe, Myrrhe, and Maſtick to it, and make Rolls of it; but becauſe they will ſoon dry, ſome repoſe them cloſe in earthen pots, and ſo they keep longer without damage.

It allayes the dolours of the Ventricle, Inteſtines, Liver, Reins, Uterus, and Bladder, ſprung from flatulency, or a cold cauſe: it conduces to the dry Hydroptical perſon; by diſcuſſing the more tenuious and flatulent matter. *Vires.*

CHAP. 9.

Emplaſtrum Tonſoris; *or, The Barbers Plaiſter.* D. Ætii.

℞ *of dry Pitch* ℔ *ij. Wax* ℔ *j. Roſine of the Pine-tree* ℔ *ſs. the flower of Fœnugreek, the flower of the root of the black Chamæleon-Thiſtle, of each* ℥ *iiij. Cumin-ſeed powdered* ℥ *ij. make it into a Plaiſter.*

The COMMENTARY.

Medicks do daily preſcribe Medicaments for preſent uſe, better then the vulgar Diſpenſatories ſuppeditate; which Pharmacopoliſts have deſcribed and kept, after they have noted their effects; and thus women keep ſome Receipts in their Cloſets, from which they once found eaſe: And thus a Bythinian Barber had a Salve from ſome of his coætaneous Medicks, which being often ſucceſsfully uſed, is ſince always called, The Barbers Salve. Thus alſo a Weaver of *Paris* got a black Unguent, like the vulgar Baſilicon, which he exhibited to all Sores; and when he was dead, his Son made, and gave the like: Inſomuch, that one could ſcarce live half a week in *Paris*, but he would ſee and try the Weavers Unguent.

And although Medicks often diſapprove of ſuch as the ignorant approve of; yet *Ætius* much commends this Barbers Salve, for the cure of the Spleen, Dropſie, and Sciatica: for, ſaith he, it hath freed many from the dolour of the Hips; for it attracts, digeſts, and reſolves watry humours; which it effects more facilely, if it be confected with Oyl of Orris, or ſome Fat: nay, it can ſcarce be made without Fats; therefore I think half a pound of Oyl ſhould be adjected.

If Chamæleons-root cannot be had, an equal weight of the root of vulgar Bryony, commonly called White-vine, may be added in its ſtead; eſpecially when it is required for the cure of the Spleen and Dropſie. But the root of the other Bryony, which they call The bleſſed Virgins Seal, is a more convenient ſubſtitute for the cure of the Sciatica, or any arthritical dolour.

Which wilde Bryony is a kinde of ſoft Ivy, ſo delighting in arundineous and watry places, that it alwayes ſeeks water-banks; inſomuch, that where-ever Botanicks finde this Plant, they conclude there is water underneath.

Arnoldus Villonavanus calls it, The Celestial Sigil; and saith, that it cures the Gowty dolours; in these words, The heavenly Sigil will cure Podagry for ever.

Chap. 10.

Emplastrum Palmeum, seu Diachalciteos.

If water be not added, you may stirre till Doomsday before it will be white.

℞ *of old Oyl, Lithargie of Gold, of each* ℔ *iij. Hogs-suet* ℔ *ij. white Vitriol* ℥ *iiij. boyl it upon a gentle fire, continually stirring it with a Spatula, till it comes to a white Plaister.*

The Commentary.

Myropolists and Chirurgeons do rather from Custom then Reason retain this Name of *Diapalma*, which was given to this Salve, because it is in cocting, agitated, moved, and subacted with a rudicle of Palm-wood: some, mutuating its name from its Basis, call it more rightly, The Emplaister of Diachalcitis; but such as put a difference betwixt Vitriol and Chalcitis, say, that this is made of Chalcitis, Diapalma of Vitriol, and in all things else they are alike. However, many make them not alike: for in the confection of this of Diachalcitis, they put onely three ounces of burnt Chalcitis, injecting into its coction, by *Galen*'s advice, some branches of the Palm minutely incided: but they make the palmeous Emplaister after the form prescribed, agitating it alwayes with a palmeous spatle; and first of all they coct the Lithargie minutely pulverated on a slow fire, with Oyl and Fat, alwayes agitating it with a rudicle of the Palm, or some other astrictive Tree, as the Oak or Medlar, newly cut from the Tree. And that the Salve may communicate more of its Medicamental faculty, they prescind its extremities, and abrade it to the very radical moisture. When the mixture is cocted and incrassated, they substract it from the fire, and put Roman or white Vitriol in it; and in defect of the true Chalcitis, inject the pulverated one, and subact it: and so they have a mass of a just consistence, whereof they make Rolls. Many would have the Vitriol cocted with the other Ingredients, that it might depose part of its acrimony: in which there is reason.

It cures green wounds, pestilent tumours and exitnres; as also Ulcers, Bruises, and divelled parts.

Chap. 11.

Emplastrum gratia Dei; or, A Plaister by the grace of God.

℞ *of Rosine* ℔ *j. Turpentine* ℔ *ß. white Wax* ℥ *iiij. Mastick* ℥ *j. Vervain, Betony, Pimpinel, of each m. j. after they are bruised, let them be boyled in white-wine; and in the decoction, let the other Simples be boyled, till the liquor be consumed; and so make it into a Plaister.*

The

The COMMENTARY.

This Salve is one of them which is indued with a ſpecious name for oſtentations ſake; as that *Iſotheos Antidotus* in *Ætius*, that *Emplaſtrum Iſis* in *Paulus*, and that other which *Ætius* mentions, that is called *Man*, conſiſting onely of Sandyx and Oyl: for by ſuch a name not onely Ruſticks, but thoſe of the Citizens, that think themſelves wiſer, are incited to buy ſuch a Medicament. We will therefore, with the troop of Aromatories, call this Medicament *Emplaſtrum de gratia Dei*, and confect it thus: We take green herbs newly gathered, cut them ſmall, bray them well in a ſtone-Morter, macerate them a whole day in a ſufficient quantity of generous wine; then coct them, till half the wine be abſumed; then we expreſs the herbs, and abject them, breaking or cutting the wax into the percolated liquor, there to be melted and cocted, continually agitating it till the liquor be abſumed; then we bray, commix, and melt therein the Roſines; and taking it off the fire, unite the Turpentine therewith: when it is almoſt cold, we adject the Maſtick, and ſo we acquire a Salve of a legitimate conſiſtence.

It purges and cloſes wounds and Ulcers, roborates the parts to which it is adhibited: all which it would do more efficaciouſly, if it were made with red wine. *Vires.*

CHAP. 12.

Emplaſtrum Divinum; or, *The Divine Plaiſter.*

℞ *of the Loadſtone* ℥ *iiij. Ammoniacum* ℥ *iij. and* ℥ *ij. Bdellium* ℥ *ij. Galbanum, Myrrhe, of each* ℥ *j. and* ℥ *ij. Olibanum* ℥ *j.* ℥ *j. Opoponax, Maſtick, long Birthwort, Verdigreaſe, of each* ℥ *j. Lithargie of Gold, common Oyl, of each* ℔ *ß. new Wax* ℔ *ß. mingle them to a Plaiſter.*

The COMMENTARY.

Whilſt I reade or hear theſe ſpecious Names, I cannot but think of the eximious Remedies of the Alchymiſts, who ſeeing their Elixir-vitæ grow thread-bare, called it The Angelical Potion: but the name is tolerable, where the faculties are reſponſible; as in this Emplaiſter, which being very efficacious, though not Divine, we ſhall by authority call Divine.

You may thus confect it: Agitate, move, and ſtir well-pulverated Lithargie for twelve hours ſpace with Oyl; and alwayes moving it, coct it to the craſſitude of Honey; then cut the wax in pieces, mix it with the Oyl, and melt it: in the mean time, macerate, diſſolve, and ſtrain the Gummes in Vinegar, or tenuious white-wine, and coct them till the aqueous humidity be diſcuſſed and evaporated; then

then mix Turpentine therewith, and inject and incorporate them all with the Lithargie, united with Oyl and Wax: to all these, adde the Powders of Myrrhe, Mastick, Frankincense, Aristolochy, and the Magnet brayed apart; then mix Verdigrease brayed, but not cocted too long, lest it make the Salve red: These well united, and commixed, will be a Salve of a due spissitude. Some, in stead of the Powder of Amyentis, take the Powder of sweet Amentum, that is, the fat of Glass: but it is better confected with the Magnet.

It mollifies the parts whereunto it is adhibited; it allayes dolours, attracts, digests, and resolves humours.

Chap. 13.

Emplastrum de Cerusa; or, The Plaister of Ceruse.

℞ *Oyl of Roses* ℔ *ij. Ceruse* ℔ *j. ß. white Wax* ℥ *iiij. boyl them together, and make them into a Plaister.*

The Commentary.

The Author indeed of this Emplaister is uncertain; but the description, dosis of its simples, and the manner of its preparation, are farre more uncertain: for some confect it in form of an Unguent, as *Præpositus*; others in form of an Emplaister: to whose composition, some assume Lithargie, Amylum, and the Whites of Egges, as *Paulus* and *Myrepsus*; others make it of Wax, Ceruse, and Oyl: Some again assume twice as much Oyl as Ceruse; others, a like quantity of both: Some take more Wax, others more Oyl. The description we give is most usual, the confection we teach is most easie, and the composition we approve of most efficacious; wherein we rather assume two pounds of Oyl of Roses and Omphacinum, then of common Oyl, a pound and an half of Ceruse, and onely four ounces of Wax. Now before Ceruse ingrede the confection, it should be often washed in common or Rose-water, then agitated in a Marble-Morter with a ligneous Pestel; then it should reside; and when it is setled, the water be effused, and more again affunded, with which it must be agitated; which must be iterated, till the water appear pure and limpid; which then may be ejected, and Trochisks formed out of the remaining white Ceruse, which must be dryed in the Sun, and reposed for use: whereof the described quantity must be taken, and levigated very small, for the confection of this Salve: But after levigation, it must be first cocted in the radiant Sun over a slow fire, and agitated continually with a spatle; then must the wax be melted, and stirred with it, that all may acquire a due spissitude.

It is of much use, not onely in drying cutaneous vices, and superficial Exulcerations, but also in coagulating greater Ulcers, allaying

allaying Inflammations, and curing Clefts and Kins: it also heals burnings.

CHAP. 14.

Emplastrum pro Stomacho; or, A Plaister for the stomach.

℞ *of Wormwood, Mint, Marjoram, Roses, Pomegranate-flowers, Cypress-Nuts, of each ℥ iij. Ginger, Nutmegs, Cloves, the seeds of Dill and Carret, of each ℥ ij. Benzoin, Storax, of each ʒ ß. Oyl of Mastick and Quinces, of each ʒ iij. yellow Wax ℔ ß. make it into a Plaister.*

The COMMENTARY.

What Medicaments soever are extrinsecally imposed upon the stomach, they are too licentiously called by *Asclepiades* and *Andromachus*, Malagms; *Galen* calls them better, Stomachicals, because they roborate the stomach, as those they call Splenicals do the Spleen; for they mutuate their names from the places whereunto they agree most, not from such as they may by consequence profit: whence they are well called Stomachical Emplaisters, which roborate the stomach, and resarciate its imbeciler faculties; as also many Simples, which recreate it by calefaction, and from a certain affinity respect its help; of which we have selected some, and concinnated this Emplaister: for we do not approve of that Chaos of Simples, whereof vulgar Stomachicals are confected; wherein the Pharmacopœan Apothecary undergoes much of labour, cost, and unnecessary burthen. This Emplaister then shall consist of fewer, but more Eustomachical Ingredients: for whose confection, first melt and agitate the Wax with Oyl; then mix together brayed Storax and Benzoin, and then the rest duly levigated, moving and subacting all into a legitimate crassitude.

CHAP. 15.

Emplaistrum de Mastiche; or, The Plaister of Mastick.

℞ *of Mastick ℥ iij. Bole-armeniack washed in black wine ʒ j. ß. Roses ℥ vj. shavings of Ivory, Red Coral, of each ʒ ß. Turpentine ʒ ij. yellow Wax ℔ ß. Oyl of Myrtle-berries ʒ iij. or as much as suffices to make it into a Plaister.*

The COMMENTARY.

This Emplastick is also Stomachical, but not so hot as the former: for seeing all imbecility of stomach arises not from cold causes; as subversion, which frequently happens without a cold distemper;

distemper; and proneness to vomit, which follows upon any distemper, without vicious humours, it is not equal that its roborative Medicament should be alwayes hot; but Reason commands, that it should be varied and changed, according to the variety of the peccant cause: for it is impossible to finde out a Medicament that is best for all affections, but it will more efficaciously help one, and another more imbecilely; and it often falls out, that a hot Emplaister may profit the stomach, and offend the hot Liver. Hence the Proverb:

Stomachicum juvat, & occidit Hepaticum.

This Emplaister then may safely be adhibited to the hotter imbecile Ventricle: For whose preparation, all must be pulverated and brayed apart; then the wax must be melted with the Oyl, and the Turpentine added when it is substracted from the fire; then must Bole, Ivory, Roses and Coral, after just levigation, be commixed therewith; then must all be accurately subacted with the Mastick into a just crassitude.

It roborates the whole Ventricle, contemperates its heat, eohibits supinity, and subversion, stayes vomiting, and removes imbecility.

Chap. 16.

Emplastrum pro Matrice; or, *A Plaister for the Fits of the Mother.* D. Præp.

℞ *of Bistort-roots* ℔ *ß. Aloes-wood, sweet-smelling Sanders, Nutmegs, Berberries, Rose-seeds, of each* ℥ *ß. Cinamon, Cloves, Squinant, Camomile-flowers, of each* ℥ *ij. Frankincense, Mastick, Aliptæ Moschatæ, Galliæ Moschatæ, red Storax, of each* ℥ *ß. Mosch gr. v. yellow Wax* ℥ *ix. Turpentine* ℥ *iij. Ladanum* ℔ *ij. Ship-pitch* ℔ *j. ß. Oyl of the Musk-wood, Crowfoot* ℥ *ij. make it into a Plaister according to Art.*

The Commentary.

The Matrix or Uterus doth not onely abound with Diseases, but is the very Spring and Continent of most Muliebral Affections: for when that suffers, the whole Body is ill-affected; when that is recreated, the whole Body recruits. And hence Medicks have prescribed many Medicaments for its solace, as Priapiscota, Fomentations, little Baths, Liniments, Unguents, and Salves, wherein suaveolent and aromatical Ingredients are admitted; with whose fragrancy, whether interiously immitted, or exteriously adhibited, it is much delighted, though not under species of odour, as we have noted in our Institutions. Its most usual Topical Medicament is this Emplaister, thence denominated: for whose confection, you must

must take wax and Ladanum cut into pieces, and melt and agitate them with Oyl: when they are thus melted, remove them from the fire; and while they are hot, put Turpentine and Storax to them: when these are thus united and refrigerated, mix the rest of the powders with them, alwayes agitating and subacting them, till they acquire due spissitude. *Præpositus* addes neither Fat nor Oyl: but it cannot be well made without the one of these; we have therefore adjoyned Moschatelline Oyl, as most convenient for the scope and part. We may hence gather, how inept a Writer *Præpositus* was, who speaks so barbarously; and how imperite a Pharmacopœan, who knows not the legitimate Composition, nor the manner of due preparation, nor the idoneous consistence of Medicaments. I admire that this later Age will tolerate the Name of so foolish an Author, and precipitantly evolve his leaves, and not expunge each line for folly. But this by the way: I will not carp at the dead; Though such dead men bite those that receive their perillous Medicaments. But to my purpose. Some think, that the Oyl of Jeat, or some such fœtid stuff, should be adjected hereto, that it may better agree to the strangulation of the Uterus: but such ratiocination smells of no skill; for no imposition of fœtid Medicaments to the region of the Uterus, can hinder its suffocation. But such must be adhibited to the Nostrils, if they be taken for benefit. And though we should grant, that some graveolents might profit the Uterus, yet they should not surely be mixed with Musk, Citrian Santal, and such aromatical Materials. Here note, That by *Antera*, we understand the inferiour part of Roses, accompanied with capillaments and grains; not *Anthera*, that is, florid, which was an ancient Medicament described for the vices of the mouth, but now obsolete.

CHAP. 17.

Emplastrum Herniam; or, A Plaister against Rapture. D. N. Præp.

℞ *Ship-pitch, Aloes, of each ℥ iij. Lithargie, white Wax, clarified Rosine, Galbanum, Ammoniacum, of each ℥ ij. Misletoe of the Oak ℥ vj. long and round Birthwort, * Gypsum, of each ℥ iiij. Myrrhe, * A species Frankincense, of each ℥ vj. Turpentine ℥ ij. ∴ Earth-worms, Galls, of Talkum. the greater and lesser Comfrey, Bole-armeniack, of each ℥ iiij. Mans ∴ Yscolo- Blood ℔ j. Oyl of Mastick and Quinces, of each ℔ ß. of the Broth rum. of the skin of a Ram, as much as will suffice to body it into a Plaister.*

The COMMENTARY.

It is easie to know those Medicaments which *Præpositus* transcribed, from those he described and invented: for those he invented are

are either defective or exceſſive; or peccant in the doſis of the Simples, or in the manner of their preparation; or elſe ineptly deſcribed, as this very Emplaiſter, which, if made after the Authors minde, would in conſiſtence reſemble a hard Paſte, no Salve; for it would be preſently dry, hard, and pulverable: therefore I thought good to adde ſome Oyls, with other Simples accommodated to the ſcope, and convenient for the colligation of the Powders.

That you may duly confect it, cut the skin of a young Ram newly detracted, into pieces, and coct it, and the wooll on it, twelve hours, or a whole day, if need be, that it may diſſolve; then expreſs the decoction, and abject the wooll; in one pound of the colature, coct the berries of the Miſsletoe of the Oak, or of ſome other tree, of like quantity, till their aqueous humidity be abſumed; then ſtrain them: in the mean while, waſh Earth-worms in wine, cocting them, till they be diſſolved, and then ſtrain them; mix Oyl with the colature, and ſet it again on the fire, till its watry humour be diſcuſſed; then mix the two colatures together, and therein melt the Wax, Colophony, and Pitch, exactly agitating them, that they burn not; mix Galbanum and Ammoniack, which muſt firſt be diſſolved, ſtrained, and cocted to a melleous ſpiſſitude, with the liquor almoſt conſumed by cocture: ſubſtract all from the fire, and put Turpentine to them; and then adde the powders artificially levigated: and all theſe duly prepared, mixed, united and ſubacted, will be an Emplaiſter of a legitimate conſiſtence.

In defect of the berries of the Miſsletoe of the Oak, *Joubertus* ſubſtitutes a Succedanium, adding many more aſtrictives, that the Salve may be more agglutinative. *Arnaldus* fooliſhly poſtulates the blood of a red Man; as though the blood of another ſound and ſanguineous Man were not better: but Swines blood is all out as convenient. *Præpoſitus* requires red wax, that is, new wax, which is ſo flave, that it ſeems ſubrubeous; but white wax is more accommodate. He would alſo have the Marble whereon the maſs is injected, madefied with Oyl of Violets: we chuſe the Oyl of Maſtick for that purpoſe.

It moſt efficaciouſly conſtringes and roborates lax parts, cohibits fluxions: it coarctates the dilatation of the Peritonæum, through which the Inteſtines delabe: whence it cures burſting, and is by ſome Pharmacopoliſts called the Emplaiſter for burſting; and by others, The Emplaiſter of the Rams-skin.

Chap. 18.

Emplaſtrum Catagmaticum; or, A Plaiſter for Fracturated Bones.

℞ *the root of the greater Comfrey, Marſhmallow-root, Miſsletoe, of each ℥ ij. Plantain, Ground-pine, S. Johns-wort, of each m. j. Boyl them in equal parts of black Wine and Bean-water, till half be conſumed:*

sumed: To the colature, adde of the Musilidge of Quince-seeds, extracted in the decoction of Tripes, Oyl of Mastick, and Roses, of each ℥ iiii. Virgins Wax ℔ j. Lithargie of Gold ℥ ij. Turpentine ℥ iij. Pomegranate-flowers, Roses, Myrtles, Acacia, of each ℥ ß. Mumy, Grains of Tutsan, clarified Rosine, Mastick, Amber, of each ℥ vj. Ship-Pitch ℥ j. ß. Bole-armeniack, Volatile flour, Frankincense, of each ℥ j. ß. Dragons-blood ℥ ij. Make them into a Plaister according to Art.

The COMMENTARY.

As the parts of the Body are dissimilar in form, temper, and actions: so must their Medicaments, whereby each part is conserved or cured, be dissimilar; for the Eyes call for one, the Lungs another, the Uterus another, and the Bones another: yea, the same part oft requires divers Medicaments, according to the diversity of the affection wherewith it is pestered. For those Medicaments that conduce to the rottenness and wormeatenness of the Bones, are not used in their Fractures: for the curing whereof, most Chirurgeons perperously adhibit onely astrictives; some exhibiting onely *Oxycroceum*; others, *Emplastrum de pelle Arietina*, or *Contra Rupturam*; others, *The vulgar Ceroneuth*: whence, perhaps, the Nomenclature of that Emplaister is decocted, which is so much celebrated at *Paris*, which they give indiscriminately to all that crave help, and adhibit promiscuously to all diseases and parts. And hence many, by the occlution of their passages, and retention of their excrementitious humours, are loaden with dolours, infested with the Itch, or beset with Ulcers.

Apothecaries therefore should have peculiar skull-Plaisters, which may not be onely astrictive and roborative, but withall conservative, accelerating generation and increase; as this we now exhibit, whose preparation we shall a little open for Apprentices sakes: First then the roots must be cleansed, and cut into pieces; the herbs cut small, and cocted in an equal portion of black wine, and steel-water, till half thereof be dissipated; the succes must be injected into the strained liquor, and boyled there, till the aqueous humidity be exhaled; then must the Oyls be commixed, afterwards the Wax, and then the Lithargie: when they are taken off the fire, percolated, and united by agitation, the Turpentine must be added, and then the Powders; and all must be well mixed, agitated, and subacted, that they may make up an Emplaister of a due consistence.

If Tutsan cannot be had, the seed or summities of S. Johns-wort may be substituted in its stead. By Virgins-wax, we mean that which is flave, citrian, and newly segregated from the Honey, which is more apt and useful in roborating the Nerves.

This Salve hath an excellent faculty in curing the fractures of Bones; for it helps and accelerates their coalition, when they are coagulated, increases their brawniness, foments the innate calour of the part, and stayes the fluxions of humours.

I could wish all Chirurgeons to make this Emplaister, and not to suffer some ignorant fellows so freely; who with one *Ceroneum* (as they call it) unduly prepared (it is probable) promise the cure of all Sores.

Chap. 19.

Emplastrum Vigonium *de Ranis*; *or*, Vigo's *Salve of Frogs.*

℞ *Oyl of Camomile, Dill, Spike, and of Lillies, of each* ℥ *ij. Oyl of Bayes* ℥ *j. Oyl of Saffron* ℥*j. Calves fat* ℔ *ß. Euphorbium* ℥ *v. Frankincense* ℥ *x. Vipers fat* ℥ *ij. ß. Living Frogs num. vj. Worms washed in Wine* ℥ *iiij. ß. the Juyces of the roots of Dwarf-elder and Enula-campane, of each* ℥ *ij. Squinant, Stœchas, Motherwort, of each m. j. odoriferous Wine* ℔ *ij. boyl them to the consumption of the Wine: and to the Colature adde Lithargie* ℔ *j. clear Turpentine* ℥ *ij. White or yellow Wax, as much as will suffice, Liquid Storax* ℥ *j. ß. after it is removed from the fire, adde* ℥ *iij. of Quicksilver killed with fasting spittle, stirring it with a Spatula.*

The Commentary.

As *India*, by the institution of Nature, first produced both the Venereous Pox and its Remedy: so *Italy*, which first infected *Europe* with this Disease, refects the same with the best Medicament: for *Joannes de Vigo*, an Italian, consulting his own (it may be) and Countreys good, composed this Emplaister, of eximious vertue, for the cure of the Italian, which they ineptly call the French disease: whose description is good, though the manner of preparation which he prescribes, be ill enough; for he would have all confusedly cocted together, till he come at Lithargie. But Neotericks do thus better instruct.

First wash the Earth-worms in wine, and coct them and living great Water-frogs together, in the Fats of a Swine and a Calf, and wine, till the third part of the wine be absumed; then adde Motherwort, Stœchados, and Schœnantum; and then boyl them again, till the wine be exhaled; and then adde the succes and Oyls, and a little after, the Fat of a Viper, or, for want thereof, of a Snake; then coct them, till the aqueous humour be absumed; and afterwards express them strongly: in the Colature, coct the Lithargie duly levigated, agitating and stirring it into the form of an Unguent; then adde the wax, and melt it; then take it off the fire, and conject brayed Frankincense and Euphorbium into it; afterwards Turpentine and Storax: when you have duly mixed, agitated, united, and refrigerated these, traject the Quicksilver through a dense cloth, after its extinction by jejune spittle, and mix it with the rest: which subact and reduce into the idoneous form of an Emplaister, whereof form Rolls for use.

This

This is the best form for the composition of this Emplaister, which the most Apothecaries follow; some whereof duplicate, others triplicate the quantity of Quicksilver, that the Medicament may be more efficacious in expugning the Indian Pox. Some like not its extinction by jejune spittle, but had rather have it done with a little Turpentine, or Hogs-grease; and it may indeed be very well extinguished by any of these wayes: but I had rather have it done with Sage; for the Quicksilver so castigated will not hurt the Nerves.

Some desire to know what Oyl they must take, of the many varieties of them of Spike: I answer, That *Vigo* means that Oyl which is educed by distillation from the greater latifolious Lavandula, and not the other that is educed by infusion out of the Indian Spike, which the same Author, and *Mesue*, always call Oyl of Spikenard, calling the other Oyl of Spike simply.

Neither do all consent about Frogs: for some say Water-frogs, others Wood-frogs, and others Palustrian-frogs: I always prefer the Water-frogs before the other, which are often venenate; but any, in defect thereof, may well enough supply the place: and any one may at liberty chuse these or the other, seeing they all agree equally almost to this external Medicament.

The faculties of this Medicament, which some make in form of a Ceratum or an Unguent, are well known, not onely to Medicks and Chirurgeons, but all such as have been harmed by Venery.

CHAP. XC.

Tela Galteri; commonly called Saradrap:

℞ *Oyl of Roses* ℔ *ss. Rams fat* ℥ *iiij. Wax* ℥ *x. Lithargie, Rosine of the Pine-tree, Frankincense, Mastick, of each* ℥ *ij. Bole-armeniack, Volatile flowers, of each* ℥ *j. make it into an Emplaister according to Art; and while it is hot, immerge a cloth, that it may be salved.*

The COMMENTARY.

To the number of Emplaisters, they referre a certain cloth Emplastical on both sides, which Neotericks call *Sparadrappa*; whereof there are as many sorts, as a Cloth may be infected with Salves: for some are vulnerary, others catagmatical; the one used in agglutinating wounds, the other bones: but no diseases call for Sparadraps so frequently, as inveterate Ulcers, and holes left by Pyroticks; whereunto this we have described is most useful. For whose confection, first melt the fat and wax with Oyl, mix the brayed Lithargie with the liquament; wherein, agitate, stir, and coct it: afterwards, adde the other Powders, always stirring, mixing, and uniting them into a legitimate Emplaister; wherein, a cloth somewhat worn must be demerged, and incalcated while it is hot, till it

be all over infected, inquinated, and incruſtated: which then extract, expoſe to the air that it may dry, and repoſe for uſe.

This Cloth is partly Sarcotical, partly Collective and Epulotical; that is, it generates fleſh, agglutinates, ſiccates, and heals wounds and Ulcers: it ſtayes fluxions, and roborates the parts whereunto it is adhibited.

He that would have more deſcriptions of Sparadrappes, may reade the laſt Chapter of the ſecond Section of our fifth Book of Inſtitutions.

There may as many Sparadrappes be made by Art, as Emplaiſters.

We have omitted ſome few Salves; as ſuch as we could either not approve of, or diſallow of; or elſe ſuch as were more then ſupplyed in thoſe we have deſcribed. For the uſe of the Salves of *Barbary* and *Diaphœnician*, is quite decayed; the Apoſtolical Salve is ſeldome made; and he that hath the *Divinum*, may well be without it; as he that hath *Oxyeroceum*, without *Ceroneum*. We have given the beſt and moſt uſeful, not onely of Salves, but alſo of other Medicaments, for internal aſſumption, and external adhibition: All which, if an Apothecary will make, and keep in his Shop, he ſhall not want any thing for the expugnation of Diſeaſes.

Finis Libri Sexti.

AN

AN APPENDIX.

Of some Medicinal Waters made by Art.

BEsides simple distilled Waters, some others are kept in Pharmacopolies, more composititious, whose use is commendable in many things; and that not onely in external adhibitions, but internal assumptions; also to correct distempers, roborate the parts, and erect the faculties: Of which sort, these are the most usual and eximious; which, lest any thing necessary should be wanting, we have here subjoyned, beginning with such as are introsumed.

Aqua Theriacalis; or, A Theriacal Water.

℞ *of the roots of Enula-campane, Tormentil, Angelica, Masterwort, of each ℥ j. Cypress, Orris, of each ʒ vj. Setwel, the Pills of Citron, and Orange, Cinamon, Cloves, the seeds of Carduus, Ivy-berries, and Juniper, of each ℥ ß. Dittany, Scordium, Balm, Marigolds, of each m. ß. Macerate them a whole day upon hot embers in a vessel well covered, with* ℔ *vj. of white-wine; the next day adde of the decoction of Goats-beard, Betony, and Water-lillies* ℔ *ij. afterwards boyl them a little upon a gentle fire: In which dissolve Treacle ℥ iiij. afterwards put them into an Alembick, and distil it in a Bath.*

There is no Theriacal and Alexiterial Water better, or more efficacious, then this; for it doth not onely recreate the faculties, but oppugn and extinguish all pestilent and venenate qualities. It cures the Syncope, Palpitation, Swounding, Vertigo, Lethargie, Epilepsie, Apoplexy, and Palsey. *Vires.*

Aqua Theriacalis alia; or, Another Theriacal Water, more easie to make.

℞ *of the roots of Enula-campane, Angelica, of each ℥ iiij. Carduus-seed, Cloves, Juniper-berries, of each ℥ j. Scordium, Vipers Bugloss, Goatbeard, Marjoram, Balm, Betony, of each m. i. boyl them in water to* ℔ *iiij. in which, infuse for a whole day and half Mithridate*

and

and Treacle, of each ℥ ij. put them into an Alembick, and distil of the water according to Art.

Its faculties are affine to, but more imbecile then those of the former: not onely Pharmacopolists, but also any one may make it; for it consists but of a few things, and they easily compassable.

Aqua Cinamomi; or, Cinamon-Water.

℞ *of the best Cinamon bruised* ℔ *ß. of the best Rose-water, and generous white-wine, of each* ℔ *j. mingle them, letting them stand in a fit vessel for two dayes well covered; afterwards distilled off according to Art, and let the Water be preserved.*

All do not consent about the proportion of Cinamon to Wine and Rose-water; for some put twice as much wine, and four times as much Rose-water as Cinamon; others put water and wine in equal quantity: wherein they macerate Cinamon, and distil the whole; which is the most usual and best way.

This water accelerates Birth, expels Secunds, moves fluors, recreates the faculties, and discusses flatulency.

Aqua vulgo Clareta dicitur; or, The Water commonly called, A Claret.

℞ *of Mace, Cloves, Cinamon, of each ℥ j. Galangal ℥ ß. Cardamomes, Squinant, of each ℥ ij. Ginger ℥ ß. infuse them in Aquavitæ* ℔ *j. in a Bath for 24 hours, the waters of Wormwood and Roses, of each* ℔ *ß. Sugar ℥ viij. let them be trajected three or four times thorow* Hippocrates *his Sleeve, and make thereof a Claret, which keep in a fit Bottle.*

It roborates the stomach, helps coction, discusses flatulency, corrects the cold distemper of the nutritive parts, restitutes the hearts strength, and erects the faculties.

Clareta alia; or, Another Claret.

℞ *of the roots of both Pyonies, Mißletoe, of each ℥ ij. the wood of Bayes, and Lentisk, of each ℥ ß. the flowers of Betony, Sage, and Rosemary, of each p. ij. macerate them a whole day in* ℔ *j. ß. of white-wine, and* ℔ *ß. of Balm-water, and afterwards distilled; and in the distilled water, macerate Cinamon ℥ j. Sugar-Candy ℥ v. which strain and keep.*

This doth most admirably help for the cure of the Epilepsie, Lethargie, Palsey, Apoplexy, and other cold affections of the Brain and Nerves.

Clareta

Clareta alia; or, Yet another Claret.

℞ *of the Waters of Balm and Coltsfoot, of each* ℔ *ß. infuse therein a whole night Enula-campane* ʒ *ij. Orris* ʒ *j. Cinamon* ʒ *iiij. make an expression, and filtrate it, adding dissolved or liquid Sugar-Candy* ʒ *iij. which after a little insolation, put up.*

Put the sugar in a bladder, and hang the bladder in water, and it will dissolve it.

It hath an excellent faculty in curing difficulty of breathing, coughs from a cold cause, and expectoration; for it incides, attenuates, cocts, and moves spittle.

The ardent Syrupe is made of Sugar diluted in Aqua-vitæ accended: for after its conflagration, the liquor that is left is oleous, and of the spissitude of a Syrupe.

Clareta vulgaris; or The vulgar Claret.

℞ *of the best Aqua-vitæ* ℔ *ß. of red Rose-water* ʒ *iiij. Sugar* ʒ *iij. Cinamon* ʒ *j. traject them three or four times through* Hippocrates *his Sleeve, and make thereof a Claret.*

This Claret is most grateful, recreating the heart and principal parts, fomenting innate calour, and discussing flatulency.

Aqua contra Calculum; or, A Water against the Stone.

℞ *of the roots of Smallage, Restharrow, Sea-holly, Radish cut in slices, of each* ʒ *ij. Bean-cods* ʒ *iij. all the Saxifrages, Sea-Rattlegrass, Pimpinel, Bishopweed, tops of Marshmallows, of each m. ij. Winter-cherries, Red Cicers, the seed of Grumwel, of each* ʒ *ij. Citrons cut orbicularly num. iij. macerate them a whole day in a sufficient quantity of white-wine; afterwards distil it, and put to the distilled water, a little Oyl of Vitriol, to make it more acid to the gust.*

This water is eximious in breaking and expelling the Stone, moving Urine and Fluors, accelerating Birth, attenuating viscid humours, and removing obstructions: two spoonfuls, or thereabouts, according to the age and strength of the assument, should be taken in the morning fasting, or long after meat.

Aqua ad Gonorrheam; or, A Water for the flux of Sperm.

℞ *of Bears-breech, Garden-dock cut small, tops of Marshmallows, of each m. ij. the flowers of Water-Lillies m. i j. Linseed, Hawthorn-seed, of each* ʒ *j. ß. the four greater cool seeds, of each* ʒ *j. macerated a whole day in Asses or Heifers Milk, afterwards distilled in a Bath.*

It

It leniates, takes away acrimony, purges the Reins, Ureters, and Seminaries from filth, and emends their diſtempers.

Of Topical Waters, or ſuch as are externally adhibited.

Aqua Ophthalmica; or, A Water for the Eyes.

℞ *of the Juyces of Salendine, Fennel, Rue, Smallage, and Clary, of of each ℔ ß. Honey ℥ iij. Goats-Gall ℥ j. the Galls of Cocks and Capons, of each ℥ ß. Aloes ʒ vj. Cloves, Nutmegs Sarcocolla, of each ʒ ij. put them into an Alembick, and diſtil of the Water according to Art.*

This cures many ocular affections; as hebetude, dulneſs, and debility of ſight.

Aqua Communitatis; or, The Water of Community.

℞ *Eyebright m.ij. Salendine, Vervine, Betony, Groundpine, Dill, tops of Clary, * Pimpinel, Biſhopſweed, Avens, of each m.j. Roſemary m.ß. Long-Pepper ʒ ij. Macerate them in white-wine for a whole day, and then diſtil of the Water.*

* *Red-flowered.*

It is called the Water of Community, becauſe it is common, and ſhould not be wanting in any houſe. It cures imbecility of ſight, deterges the eyes from filth, takes away ſpots or Pearls, cures Ulcers, hinders ſuffuſion of blood, augments the clarity of the eye, and roborates it.

Aqua ad Epiphoram, & oculorum ruborem; or, A Water for the dropping and redneſs of the Eyes.

℞ *White-wine, Roſe-water, of each ℔ ß. Tutty prepared ℥ j. Powder of Mace ℥ ß. Let theſe be mingled in a Vial well ſtopped, and inſolated for three weeks.*

It deleates the redneſs of the eyes, exſiccates tears, roborates the Tunicles, and cures its Ulcers.

Aqua

Aqua Calcis; or, Water of Lime.

THe Water wherein Chalk or Lime hath been often extinguished, is thence called *Aqua Calcis:* it is very eximious in curing many Cankerous and Dysepulotical Ulcers; which seeing it may easily be made at any time, needs no farther description.

Aqua Fortis.

AQua Fortis appertains rather to Goldsmiths then Apothecaries; which they use in separating Silver from Gold; and thence called, *The Separatory Water*; in French, *Eau de depart:* for it melts the Silver, and moves not the Gold. Now that same which they have once used, and that hath admitted of a portion of water; or is become ignave, and of an azure colour, is commonly called *Aqua secunda*; which all Chirurgeons keep for the Præsidy of such as have got the Plague of Venery.

It is made of Vitriol and Saltpeter, included and closely shut in a Morter, or other fit vessel well bedawbed; into which, Spirits are forced by the fire.

Another sort is made of Auripigment, Salnitre, the flour of Brass, and Rock-Alome, which I leave to such as use it.

De Aquis Comptoriis, seu Fucatoriis; or, Of Comptory or Ornatory Waters.

I Cannot think that pulchritude or deformity of Body, conduce any thing to the probity or improbity of manners: for many more deformed then *Therstes*, have been famous; and many more beautiful then *Adonis*, infamous. I have also known many deformed women, impious to purpose: But I purpose not to exhibit Paints to these, nor Comptory Waters to toothless old Hags, to erugate or emend their Faces; herein following the prudence of *Galen*, though a Pagan, who disallows of not onely the Painting of Faces, but the Tinctures of Hair; professing, that he never exhibited any thing of that nature, to such as took more delight in Ornaments then Health.

Our Antidotary then shall want these nefarious Medicaments, wherewith Harlots incite and deceive Youngsters: for this Fucatory Art, we see, is exercised by none but some Juglers, and vafrous Knaves, who seeking secretly to pick a Whores Purse, promise her Oyl of Talkum, which they never saw, wherewith she may not onely erugate her Face, but restore her self to Youth again; and then exhibit two Unguents, the one Red, and the other White, both Spanish, and participating of a malign quality. For that which they

call *album Hiſpanum*, admits *Sublimatum* in its confecture: which though it conſiſts of equal parts of Quickſilver, Vitriol, and common Salt, rather then of Amoniack; which are not lethal apart in themſelves, but are duly mixed in a Glaſs ſublimatory veſſel, whereunto fire is added gradually for the ſpace of twelve hours: They make a Powder ſo cauſtical and deletery, as can ſcarce be cicurated by any art. And hence it is, that women who uſe theſe Sublimata's, have black Teeth wormeaten, corrugated Faces, and prævious old Age. The Colour therefore which Nature's Pencil draws is beſt: whoſe Works, whileſt we admire, let us give Eternal Glory and Praiſe to the Creator.

FINIS.

A Table of the Matters and Words of principal note, in this Work contained.

A.

Acacia. pag. 77
The kindes thereof. Ibid.
Its vertues. Ibid.
Achates what. 419
Acetabulum. 137
Acetum Mulsum. 325
Acopa. 123
Acorus. 273
How it differs from Calamus Aromaticus. Ibid.
Acutella. 302
Adrobolon. 388
Aeluropis. 363
Aetites. 420
Its vertues. Ibid.
Aethiopidis Herba, its force and vertue. 7
Aeschylus *would never pen Verses, till toxicated with Wine.* 219
Agallochum, what it is. 286
Why so rare. Ibid.
Its vertues. Ibid.
Ageratum. 357
Agat. 419
Agnus Castus, its description. 340
Its vertues. Ibid.
Agwick. 258
Which is best. Ibid.
Where it grows. 259
Its vertues. Ibid.
Agrimony. 356
Its vertues. Ibid.
Agripalma. 372
Ajuga. 326
Aizoon. 351
Alabaster. 421
Alana. 398
Alcea. 230
Alembeck. 89, 487
Its manifold acception. 113, 487
A crooked one. Ibid.
A blinde one. Ibid.
Aliment what it is. 6
An inexplicable Faculty therein. 13
Medicinal Aliment. Ibid.
Alioticks. 28
Almonds. 387
Their vertues. Ibid.
Plutarch's *story of them.* Ibid.
How they are to be blanched. 55
Alcanna. 452
Alcool. 107
Aloes, its description. 256
Cabalina. Ibid.
Succotrina. Ibid.
Where most of it growes. Ibid.
Its vertues. Ibid.
Its faculty. 10
How to know the best. 256
How to wash and nourish it. 58
It shuts the veins. 256
Aloes-wood its description, and how to know it. 286
Its vertues. Ibid.
Alome what it is. 401
The several sorts of it. Ibid.
Catinum,
Fœcum,
Liquid,
Pulmbeous,
Round,
Rock,
Scissile,
Synamose, } 401, 402
The way to burn it. 68
Alphenicum. 615
Alterative Medicaments are of three sorts. 10
Their kindes. Ibid.
Altertum. 349
Amber what it is. 406
How to know the best. Ibid.
Its vertues. Ibid.
Amber-Grise what it is 405
How it may be adulterated. 158
Its vertues. 405
Liquid Amber, what it is. 673
Its vertues. Ibid.
How it may be adulterated. 158
Amethystus. 419
Amigdalates, how made. 163
A description of such as are commonly used at Lutetia. Ibid.
Amomum, what it is. 247
Its vertues. Ibid.
Amphora. 137
Amulets are of two sorts. 20
Ana what it signifies. 136
Anachardian honey, how it is made. 78
Anagalidis. 319
Andromachus, *who he was* 626
What his praise was. 627
Androsæmum. 328
Anemone. 309
Angelica. 298
Its vertues. Ibid.
Annis. 244
Animals, which have fat, and which have grease. 443
Parts of Animals, are commodious for many things. 9
Anodynous. 29
Antals, what they are. 461

St. Anthonies *Fire, how it is to be cured.* 7
Anthropomorphon. 344
Antidotus analepticus, or a roborative antidote. 619
Antidotus Diasatyrion, or an antidote to excite venery. 618
Antidotum asyncritum. 620
Antidote of Mithridates *of what it consists.* 323
Antimony. 437
A story of it. Ibid.
Ants. 470
Their description. Ibid.
Apples. 370
Ἀποκρεστικὸν. 29
Apomel. 529
Its best description. 101
Apophlegmatisms. 166
Their matter and profit. Ibid.
Apothecary, what he ought to be. 4
Who may be adjudged dangerous. Ibid.
What his conversation should be. Ibid.
What his duty. 5
What things he ought to know. 32
How his house should stand, and his Shop be built. 471
Apozeme, what it is. 159
Whence it received its denomination. Ibid.
Its matter and effects. Ibid.
How it differs from a Syrupe. Ibid.
The Apozeme of the Ancients. 159
An opening Apozeme. 160
An Apozeme to allay the heat of a Feaver. 160
How they are made. Ibid.
Apricocks. 375
Aqua Aluminosa, or Alome water. 198
Aqua Aluminosa magist. or the magisterial water of Alome. Ibid.
Aq. Calcis, or water of Lime. 737
Aq. contra Canculum, or water against the Stone. 735
Aq. Cephalicæ, or waters for the head: what they are, and how many. 151
Aq. Cordialis, or Cordial waters: what they are, and how many. 150
Aq. Cinamoni, or Cinamon water. 734
Aq. Clareta, or Claret-water. 734
Aq. Communitatis, or the water of Community. 736
Aq. ad Epiphorum, or a water for the redness of the eyes. 736
Aq. ad Gonorrheam, or a water for the flux of Sperm. 735
Aq. Fortis. 737
Aq. Ophthalmica, or a water for the eyes. 736
Aq. Theriacalis, or Treacle-water. 733
Arach its description and kindes. 232
Arabick. 305
Arboreſcens. 229
Archangel. 298
Arcana's of the Medicinal Art, are not to be disclosed. 137
Areolum. 135
Armenian Apples. 370
Aromaticks, how they are to be kept. 147
Aromaticum Rosatum, whence called, and why. 603
Aromatization, what it is. 85
Arnabo what. 271
Arsnick what it is. 407
Its affinity with Sandarack Ibid.
Arsen. 344
Artichoak. 333
How to preserve the Stalks. 545
Asa how it differs from Assa. 400
Ascyrum. 308
Ash and Ashton keys. 341
Asparagras. 239
Aspes skin dried, for what. 17
Aspica. 286
Asphaltus, what it is. 673
Assafœtida, the kindes thereof. 399
Asarabacca. 325
Assation, what it is, the manner thereof, its use. 66
Asselli domestici. 204
Attrition, what it is. 62
Auripigmentum. 407
The way to burn it. 69
Axungia, what it is. 445
Azure-Stone. 417
Its vertues. Ibid.

B.

Baara. 7
Baggs. 210
Balnea Mariæ. 88
Balneum Roris. Ibid.
Balm. 317
Balsam Tree, its description and vertues. 282
Balsam de Peru, de Tollu. 283
How to know the best. 282
Balsam, what it signifies. 685
Balsam of Eronimus. 687
Of Falopius. *Ibid.*
Of Hollerius. 687

Of the Florentine Medicks. 687
of Mesue. 686
A Balsam that is easie to be made. 688
A strange and wonderful Balsam. Ibid.
A vulnerary Balsam. 687
Barberies. 386
To preserve them. 541,420
Barks that are to be kept in shops. 492
Barly. 366
Barly cream. 163
Barly-water, how it is made. 164
Bary graccalon. 364
Basil, why so called; its vertues. 313
A story of it. Ibid.
Baths, their threefold use. 185
Their profit. 186
Cost in their structure. 185
A Bath of the decoction of herbs. 186
For the Morphew. 186
The various forms of Baths. 89
A dry Bath. Ibid.
Bdellium the best. 388
Bears grease. 445
Beets their difference. 232
Been its kindes. 275
Its succidany. Ibid.
Belzoin. 381
How it may be adulterated. 158
Benedict Laxativum. 561
Beryllus. 420
Bees. 135
Betony. 318
Bezoar, whence it hath its name. 457
How 'tis generated. Ibid.
A true sign to know it. 458
Birthwort. 324
Why called the apple of the earth. 325
Biscake, how made. 171
Bishopweed, its sorts and vertues. 246,247
Bistort. 359
Bitumen, what it is. 403
How it may be adulterated. 58
The Bitumen of Sodom. 403
Blatta Bizant. 460
Blood of Plants. 393
Boccia. 88
Bolus what it is. 167
Its matter. Ibid.
They have not Cassia always for their Basis. Ibid.
Bole-Armeniack. 396,397
A cooling Bolus. 167
Boars-tooth, its vertue. 16
Borax. 399
How to burn it. 69
Borage, how it differs from Bugloss. 228
'Tis always green. Ibid.
Boxes to be had in an Apothecaries shop. 489
Brass, whence it is. 429
How to burn it, Its Flower, Its Fleaks. Ibid.
Broom. 339
Bricks. 424
Bryony, how it differs from Mechoachan. 258
Bugloss, its vertues. 228
Bulbus. 306
Burning of Med. 67
What things require burnings. Ibid.
The kindes thereof. Ibid.
Why Sulphur and Nitre must be added. 69
Burnet. 325
Butchers-Broom. 240
Its vertues. Ibid.
Butter. 448

C.

CAbage, its description and vertues. 318
Cadmia. 433
Factitious, Fossile. 434
How it is washed and prepared. 53,69
Calamint. 315
Calaminaris. 433
How to wash it. 53
Calamus Aromaticus. 273
Calchanthum, what it is. 399
Caldrons that are to be used in shops, what, and how many. 483
Calefaction, what it is. 71
Cambyses his Present to the King of Ægypt. 2
Champhor. 385
How it may be adulterated. 158
How to powder it with ease. 57
How to preserve it. 147
Cancannum, what it is. 397
Its vertues. Ibid.
How to candy seeds. 106
Cantharides, how they move Urine. 470
For what use they are. 469
How to prepare them. 470
Capers. 338
Capillary Herbs, whence they have their name. 233
Their difference. Ibid.
Capons, their difference. 447
Capons-grease, its vertues. Ibid.
Cappes, how they are quilted. 209
Caranna. 383
Caraway. 246
Carbo Petræ. 403

Car-

A TABLE.

Cardamomes. 280
Cardiaca. 332
Cardiobotanum. Ibid.
Cardutellum. 333
Carduus Benedictus. 331
Black Carduus. Ibid.
Carot. 248
Carneol. 415
Carpesium. 281
Carpobalsamum. 282
Carthamus. 261
Cassia Fistula how to extract it. 81
Cassia and Cinamon are the same. 253
Cassidony. 320
Castor what it is. 450
His Cods. Ibid.
The biting of a Castor is terrible. Ibid.
Which Cods are to be taken. Ibid.
Cataplasmes, what they are, their use and matter. 200
A Cataplasme to asswage pain, and mollifie hardness. 200
To open and discuss Flatuosity. Ibid.
Catapasmes, what. 201
Catapotia, why so called. 114
Cathartick, what properly it is, and what it signifies. 10,28
Cathartick, purging by Attraction, Compression, Lubrication, 15
How to infuse them. 56
A Liquid Cathartick purges sooner then any other. 264
Their variety of doses. 163
Cautery, how it differs from a vesicatory; its matter and manner of making. 206
Centory greater and lesser. 335
Cephalicks. 18
Cerate, what it is. 123
Why so called. 710
Cerecloth. Ibid.
The method to be observed in the making of a Cerecloth. Ibid.
Ceratum Oesypatum, or the Cerate of wools grease. 713
Cerat. refrig. Galeni: or Galen's cooling Cerate. 711
Cerat. Santalinum, or the Cerate of Saunders. Ibid.
Cerat. Stomachicum, or a Cerate for the Stomach. 712
The form of a Cerecloth must be according to the part affected. 123
Cerus, what it is. 432
How to make it. Ibid.
Its preparation. 433
Its Lotion. 53
Its burning. 68
Ceterach, its description and vertues. 235
Chalk. 423
Chalcus. 135
Chamelæa. 267
Chamæleon thistle. 333
Characters of Paracelsus, are the Medicines of the Devil. 159
Cheme. 136
Cherries. 378
How to preserve them. 540
Chymical Extracts. 79
Chymists Opinion of the purging faculty. 14
Chymists Philosophical month. 72
Their menstruum. Ibid.
China root. 289
Its vertues. 290
Chrystal. 422
Chrysocolla. 399
How to burn it. 69
Chrysolapis. 420
Cicers. 365
Cinaberis. 408
Cinamon, its kindes. 277
Cinamon water. 734
How it may be adulterated. 158
Cinkfoil. 361
Circulation. 92
Cistern-waters why unwholsome. 218
Cistus, its description. 391
Citrons. 373
How to candy their peels. 543
Citruls. 241
Civet. 451
Claret. 734
Against the Stone. 735
Clarification how many ways it is made. 84,85
Clary, its description and vertues. 32
Cleavers. 361
Cloves. 280
How they may be adulterated. 158
Cochlearium. 136
Coccus Baphicus. 284
Cocks-combe rosted, for what. 16
Coction, what it is. 64
The order and time. 65
Cohobation. 92
Colchicum, how it differs from Hermodacts. 262
Collation. 82
Collocation. 86
How many wayes it may be acquired. Ibid.
Colyries, their difference. Ibid.
Dry Colyries. Ibid.
Their matter. Ibid.
A Colyry for the Scab of the Eye-

A TABLE.

Eye-lid. 196
To quicken sight. 195
To cool the Eye. 196
To dry the Rheume. Ibid.
A Collyry of Lead. Ibid.
Of Lanfrancus. Ibid.
Colophony. 377
Colocynthida. 266
How it may easily be powdered. 57
Colwort. 358
Coltsfoot. 359
How to preserve the leaves. 544
Common Grass. 304
Comfrey. 350
How to candy the roots. 547
Composition of Medicaments what. 97
The end thereof. 94
Compounds, why termed simples. 76
Concha. 137
Condites, their matter. 169
Conditures. 87
A cordial Condite. 169
How it differs from regal paste. Ibid.
Why made. 169
Condites in general. 106
Liquid Condites. Ibid.
Congius. 137
Confectio Alkermes. 615
Its vertue. 616
Conf. de baccis Lauri, or the Confection of Bayberries. 618
Conf. de Dactylis, or the Confection of Dates. 559
Conf. Hamech. 562
Conf. de Hyacintho, or the Confection of the Hyacinth. 616. 616.
Conf. de Rebecha. 614
Conserves, why to be insolated. 71
Their difference. 104
Conserve of Balm. 539
Of Betony. Ibid.
Of Borage. 538
Of Bugloss. 537
Of the Flowers of Mallows. 537
Of water-Lillies. 538
Of Rosemary-Flowers. 539
Of Roses. 536
How it is to be made. 105
How to be made red. Ibid.
Of dried Roses. 536
Of dryed Roses. 536
Of Sage. 539
Of Stœchados. Ibid.
Of Violets. 536
Contemptible things procure health. 2
One contrary is opposed to another. 8
Copper. 427
Coral. 406, 407
Cordial waters, what they are, and how many. 150
Cordial flowers, what they are, their vertues. 227
Coriander. 337
How to prepare the Seed. 66
Cornel Tree. 376
Cowslips. 357
Costus, bitter, sweet. 274
Its succidany. Ibid.
Crabs. 464
How to burn them. 68
The propriety of their ashes. 12
Cranes Bill. 329
Cribration. 81
Its use. Ibid.
Crocus Martis. 610
Whence it hath its name. Ibid.
The divers preparations of it. 611
Crude Unguent, of what it consists. 87
Various Opinions about it. Ibid.
Cubebs. 281
Cucumber. 241
Wild Cucumber. 266
Culeus. 137
Cumin. 245
Curands. 386
How to candy them. 541
Custome of leacherous courtiers. 86
Cyathus. 137
Cyperus. 297
Cypress Nuts. 389
Paracelsus *his Opinion of them.* Ibid.

D.

Δάμασκον. 79
Damask Powder, various descriptions thereof. 122, 213
Damasens. 377
Dandilyon. 243
Darius *his esteem of Medicine.* 2
Dates, which are the best. 382
How long they are to be macerated. 59
Decoctions that are to be drunk, are not to be ungrateful. 161
Their frequent use. Ibid.
What water is required to a Decoction. 162
What Decoctions are most usual. 161
A pectoral Decoction. 163
Common Decoction for Glysters. 183
A common Medicinal Decoction. 162
Defrutum, what it is, how made. 104
Every degree hath three parts. 153
When that in the fourth degree

Extract of Pills. Ibid.
Extract of Rhabarb. Ibid.
Etraction. 78
To clear the eye-sight. 17

F.

Faculty of Medicaments what it is. 10,33
Inexplicable Faculty. 12
The Faculties of a purging Medicament, whence they proceed, how they operate, their due denomination. 14
The several Faculties of Medicaments. 11
The first and second faculties of a Med. Ibid.
The third faculty. 12
Its extent. Ibid.
Farture. 87
Fats, how they are to be washed. 54
Their difference from suet. 443
Feaverfew. 327
Fennel. 239
Fenugreek. 364
Ficaria, its vertue. 7
What Fire ought to be in Distillations. 89
Figs, their kindes and vertues. 381, 382
Filberds. 386
Fission. 63
Fleabane. 358
Flowers, how they are to be kept. 146
Flowers, how to infuse them. 57
Cordial Flowers, what. 150
Flower of Salt. 402
Flower of Nitre. 403
Flower of the Sea. 402
Flower de Luce. 196
Folium. 285
Foments their profit. 189
A Foment to strengthen the Stomach. 189
For the Spleen. Ibid.
For the Pleurisie. 190
For the Gravel in the Kidneys. Ibid.
How they differ from Epithemes. Ibid.
Dry Foments. Ibid.
Foxes lungs. 449
Frankincense. 381
Froggs. 462, 463
Frontals. 198
Their various forms. 199
Fruits, how to keep them. 146
A Frontal mitigating pain, and conciliating sleep. 119
Fumatory. 334
Furnace, how to be built. 89
Their various use. Ibid.

G.

Galls. 392
Galanga. 272
Galbanum. 401
Galens *father had bitter honey.* 101
His opinion concerning the purgative faculty. 12
Gargarisms what they are. 161
A Gargarism to purge flegm from the brain. Ibid.
A cleansing Gargarism. Ib.
For Venereous ulcers in the throat. Ibid.
When they are to be used. Ibid.
Gems. 419
Genitals of a Hart. 454
Gentian. 300
Germander. 326
Ginger, its description: where the best grows: its vertues. 270
Girasola. 420
Gith. 328
Glysters, their use 183
Glyster-decoction, how long it may be kept. Ibid.
Who was their first inventor. Ibid.
Those that have no fats, purge stronger. 184
A carminative Glyster. Ib.
A Glyster for the Apoplexie. 184
For the Dysentery. Ibid.
Goats suet. 444
Goats hoof. 161
Goats blood, its preparation. 442
Gourds their difference. 241
Gold is good and evil. 426
Its vertues. 427
Gold glue. 399
Goose-grease. 446
A superstitious opinion about it. Ibid.
Goose-grass. 361
Goose-berry-tree. 386
Gossipium 362
Gradation. 92
Grain, what it is. 135
Granate. 415
Grass, its kindes. 303
Vertues. 304
Knotgrass. 349
Grief, what it is. 113
Its effects. Ibid.
Gromel. 323
Grapes. 385
Ground-pine. 326
Guaiacum, its differences and vertues. 288
How long it should be macerated. 59
Gum, what it is. 394
How gums are to be infused. 56
Gum-Arabick. 395
Traganth. 396
Elemni. 383
Ivy. 403
Gypsum, what it is. 422

H.

HAEmatites 419
Hare burnt is good for

A TABLE.

for the Stone. 67
A Hare that had Horns. 443
Sea-Hare. Ibid.
Hares Blood. Ibid.
Harts-pizle dried, its vertues. 16
Harts-flesh burnt expels stones. Ibid.
Harts tears. 454
Harts heart-bone. Ibid.
Harts marrow. 443
Hartwort. 299
Its varieties & vertues 300
Hemina. 137
Haxagion. 135
Hartichoak. 333
How to preserve their stalks 345
Hellebore, its kindes. 265
Vertues. Ibid.
Hemionitis. 236
Henbane, its kindes and vertues. 349
Hepaticks. 19
Hepatiorum. 356
Hepatica. Ibid.
Herbs, where they are to be kept. 145
Capillary Herbs. 150
Whence they have their name. Ibid.
Emollitive Herbs. 151
How Herbs are to be dried. 145
Hermodactyls used in the Shops. 262
How they differ from Ephemerus and Colchicus. Ibid.
Hiera Picra, whence it hath its name. 111
Why Galen called it so. 112
The variety of descriptions thereof. 113
Hiera Picra Galeni, or Galens Hiera. 567
Hiera Picra cum Agarico, or Hiera with Agarick. 568
Hiera Pachij. Ibid.
Hiera Diacolocynthides. 569
Hieracia. 243
Hipocistus. 391
Hippocrates Wine. 56
Hypolapathum. 253, 356
Hispidula. 363
Honey. 224
The first inventor of it 100
How the best may be known. 225
When it is to be despumed by it self. 84
What bodies it will preserve 99
Honey of Fruits. 225
Bitter Honey. 100
Anacardian Honey, how it is made. 78
Honey of Rosemary. 531
Of Mercury. 532
Of Raisons. 102
Of Roses. 530
Of Violets. 531
Hogs grease. 445
Hoglice. 204
Honeysuckles. 338
Hops. 359
Hordeat, what it is. 164
Horehound. 318
Hounds-tongue. 348
Housleek. 351
Humectation is a kin to Infusion. 57
For what Med. it is useful. Ibid.
Humor that is cold and gross will be but slowly purged. 141
Hyachinthus. 415
Hydragogous. 28
Hydragoge Eximium. 565
Hydrolapathum. 356
Hydromel, what is to be understood by its name. 100
What proportion of Honey to water in Hydromel. Ibid.
Hydromel. Melicratum, and Mulsum, are the same Ibid.
Hydromel of the country mans. Ibid.
Hydromel vinosum simp. or simple vinose. 528
Hydromel. Ibid.
Hypercathartick. 28
Hypnoticks. 29
Hypocaust, what it is. 188
What must be done before going into it. Ibid.
Hypoplomon. 344
Hyssop. 329

I.

Jasper. 419
Imbution, what it is. 53
Indian Leaf. 285
Induration, what. 75
Infection. 59
Infusion, how it is made. 56
Its use. Ibid.
Inseß, its materials and use. 186, 187
An Inseß to asswage the pain of the reins. Ibid.
To allay the Cholick. 187
Insipid. 39
Insolation, what. 71
Intinct Green. 77
Intybolachanum. 243
Intybum. Ibid.
Joseph had Pharmacy in great esteem. 3
Irrigation, what. 192
Irrigation provoking sleep, Ibid.
It may be reduced to Humectation. 57
Iron, the kindes thereof. 430
It is not evil in it self. 431
Its rust. Ibid.

Isinglaß

Isinglass, how it is made. 452
Judaicus Lapis. 420
Juice, what it is. 394
How it may be kept long without putrefaction. 78
How to repose them. 146
Juice of Liquorish. 392
How it is made. 393
Juices mixt with Honey 102
Jujubees. 381
Julep, what it is. 166
Its dose. 167
How it differs from a Syrupe and Apozeme. Ibid.
A Julep conciliating sleep. 167
Julepus Ziziphorum. 166
Juniper Berries. 391
Ivory. 454
Gum of Ivy. 403

K.

Καταγμάτικον. 31
Katharetiticon. Ibid.
Keiri. 309
Kermes Berries what. 283
Their vertues. Ibid.
Their Juice. 284
Kings antient care of the health of their Armies 2
Kings in time past did prepare Med. Ibid.
Knotgrass. 349
Κοιλιακόν. 31

L.

Lacca, what it is. 393
Lacryma of the Ethiopian Olive. 383
Laddanum, what it is. 391
Ladies Rose. 247
Lake of Sodom. 403
Lapis Bezoardicus, whence it hath its name, where it is generated, how to know it. 457
Lapis Caliminaris. 433
Lapis Heraclius. 417
Lapis Judaicus. 420
Lapis Lazuli. 417
The difference between it and Lapis Armeni. Ibid.
Lapis Nephriticus. 420
Lapis Etites. Ibid.
Lapis Selenites. Ibid.
Laranna. 383
Larix. 258
Laserpitium. 399, 400
Laudanum. 595
Lavender greater. 286
Lead, its sorts and vertues. 428
How to wash it. 54
How to powder it. 62
How to burn it. 69
Leeks. 307
Leopards bane. 330
Lemond. 370
How to candy their peels. 543
Lentisk. 384
Lettice. 241
Why so called, its differences and vertues. Ibid.
It may be both aliment and poyson. 5
How to preserve their stalks. 545
Libisticum. 299
Liccorish. 392
Its Juice. 393
Lice, the principle of it is fire and water. 217
Ligula. 136
Lillies. 250
Lilly Convalli. Ibid.
Limation. 63
Lime, how washed. 54
Lime water. 737
Line. 364
Liniment, what it is. 193
A Liniment for the Pleurisie. Ibid.
To allay pain. Ibid.
For a cold distemper. Ibid.
Liquation. 74
Liquid Amber, what it is. 673
Liquor, what. 394
Litharidge. 437
Lithantripticon. 606
Liverwort. 356
Loadstone. 417
Lohocs, their use. 165
Lohoc of Cassia. 110
Lohoc e Pulmone Vulpis, or Lohoc of Foxes Lungs. 550
A Lohoc for Glysters. Ibid.
A Lohoc inciding Flegme. 165
A Lohoc concocting Flegm. Ibid.
To stay a Catarrh. Ibid.
Lohoc sanum. 551
Lotion, what it is. 191
To kill Lice. Ibid.
To pull off Hair. Ibid.
To cause sleep. Ibid.
Lotion of Medicaments, what it is. 52, 53
Licopersium. 346

M.

Mace, what it is. 278
Macedonian Parsly. 337
Macer. 278
Maceration. 59
Mackrooms. 170
Macropiper. 279
Madder, its description and vertues. 302
Magnete. 417
Who it was that first found out its vertue. Ibid.
How it attracts Iron. Ibid.
Maiden-hair true and common, with other differences. 233, 234

How

A TABLE.

How its Leaves may be condited. 544
Malabathrum. 285
Malacticon. 30
Mallows, why so called.
Man is obnoxious to many Diseases. 5
Mans Skull, its faculty. 9
Mans blood. 440
Mans flesh. 441
Mandrake. 344
Manipalus, what it is. 135
Manna, what it is cleerly demonstrated. 226
Its qualities. Ibid.
Calabriensis. Ibid.
Brianſonensis. Ibid.
Larigna. Ibid.
Maſtichina. 227
Manna Thuris. 226
Manna de folio. Ibid.
How it may be adulterated. 158
Its vertues. 227
Manus Chriſti, with pearl. 174
Marble the kindes thereof. 421
Alabaſtrites, Ophites, Parium, Pleugiticum, Porphirites, Zebblicum, } Ibid.
Marchpanes, of what they conſiſt. 170
Marchpanes, to dicuſs wind. 171
Margarites and Unions, how they differ. 458,459
Marjoram. 311
Marks of ſeveral Weights uſed in Phyſick. 135,136
Marmaled. 171
Marrow in general, its vertues. 443
How it is to be waſhed. 54
Marſh-mallows. 229
Maſtick, what it is. 384
Its vertues. 385
How to powder it. 57
Maſticatories. 166
Matter of Medicine is large and ample. 1
Maturation. 92
Mazapane. 106
Meaſures uſed in Phyſick. 136
Mechoachan, how it differs from Bryony. 258
Meconium. 389
Mede how to make it. 528
Medicinal matter, whence it is taken. 9
Medicament, what it is. 5
It is a medium between Aliment and Poyſon. Ibid.
Medicament as to its faculty is threefold. 10
Alterative Med. what it is Ibid.
Purgative and roborative, what. Ibid.
Gentle Med. what it is. 142
A ſtrong Med. what it is. Ibid.
An ingrateful Med. Ibid.
In what quantity a Med. is to be adminiſtred. 143
Compound Medicaments, why called ſimple. 7
What the Eſſence of a Med. is. 33
Its faculties and ſubject. Ibid.
Its temperament. Ibid.
Med. taken from Plants, Minerals and Animals. 8,9
What election or choice of Med. may be made from the place, &c. 43
Med. that may be ſelected from an extrinſecal diſpoſition. 34
How long Med. will retain their vertue. 41
The force of a Medicament is at ſometimes more valid then at another. 42
The freſher ſometimes the better. Ibid.
When they may be ſaid to be good, though old. Ibid.
And when in a mean between both. Ibid.
Why the ſmell of a Cathartick Med. ſubduces the belly. 10
One Med. ſometimes hath many baſis. 730
The forms or Receits of Med. require a due order 131
The Rules that are to be obſerved in the penning of Receits, demonſtrated. Ibid.
Why Med. are compounded. 94
Who it was that laid the Foundation-Stone of the Medicinal Art. Ibid.
The uſe of compound Med. 4
Why ſo neceſſary. Ibid.
The reaſons why they ſhould be compounded. 97,129
Why they are to be preſcribed in a plat-form. 132
Who requires ſtrong, and who weak Med. 141
What the election of a Med. is. 33
What a benigne. 32
What a maligne. Ibid.
What election may be made from the odor, &c. 34
The Doſe of Med. is various. 139

Med.

Med. ſometimes are to be changed. 128
What *Med.* require a cautulous preſcription. 140, 142
What they are that muſt be exhibited in a ſmall Doſe. 142, 143
The too coſtly compoſition of a *Med.* is vain and frivolous. 133
The end of their compounding. 134
Why *Med.* are aromatized, and how many general Preparations of *Med.* there be. 50
The firſt quality of a *Med.* 11
The ſecond. Ibid.
The extent of the third. 12
Why *Med.* are dried. 66, 67
Why dried in the Sun. Ibid.
Some *Med.* are hard to be powdered, ſome not, &c. 61
What order muſt be obſerved in the powdering of *Med.* 62
What *Med.* require Humectations. 57
Med. taken from poyſonous Animals. 26
The reaſon why *Med.* are to be prepared. 49
The general preparations of *Med.* 50
Somniferous *Med.* muſt be taken in ſmall quantity. 114
The baſis of a *Med.* ought chiefly to be regarded. 130
The quantities of thoſe *Med.* that are to be exhibited. 138
One and the ſame *Med.* taken in the ſame quantity, hath not always the ſame effect. Ibid.
Succidaneous Medicaments deſcribed. 151
What *Med.* in particular may be ſubſtituted in the want of other. 154
How much Seeds, Herbs, Flowers, and Roots a compound *Med.* requires. 143
A deſcription of ſuch comp. *Med.* as are to be kept in Shops. 494, 495
Medlars. 375
Mel. Roſatum, or honey of Roſes. 530
Mel Violatum, or honey of Violets. 531
Mel Anthoſatum, or honey of Roſemary. Ibid.
Mel Mercuriale, or honey of Mercury. 532
Melangogous *Med.* 28
Melancholy, what things deduce it. 165
Melicratu, the ſame with Hydromel. 101
Melilot. 363
Melons. 241
Mercury, the kindes thereof. 231
Its vertues. Ibid.
Mercury is ſtronger in act then any other Metal. 409
Mercury is not the Sperm or original of Metals, as the Chymiſts fancy. Ibid.
A ſtrange ſtory of it. 410
Who he was that firſt uſed it for venereal diſtempers. 410
The pernicious force of it. Ibid.
The ſpecies and qualities of it. 411
The powder of it. Ibid.
Metals, whence they have their name. 425
The matter of them. Ibid.
How many there be. Ibid.
Their names according to the Chymiſts. Ibid.
Seventh Metal. 432
When to be waſhed. 53
How to be eaſily melted. 75
Metheaglin, how it is made, 529
Metal. 346
Metretes. 137
Meum. 336
Mezereon. 267
Milk its property. 448
Virgins Milk. 197
Minerals and Metals that are to be kept in ſhops 493
Mint, its kindes and vertues 314
Milfoil. 368
Myrrhe. 387
Mirtle. 367
Miſletoe of the Oak, what it is. 342
Mithridates, how he freed himſelf from poyſon. 2
Mithridate, of what it conſiſts. 322
Mithridate of Androm. Of Nicholaus, Of Democrit. 624
Mollition. 75
Monoceros, the various Opinions about him. 456
The vertues of his horn. 16
Moonefearn, its various denominations. 236
Morella. 345
Motion is the Soul of water. 217
Mother of Thime. 310
Mugwort. 317
Mulſa, what it is. 101
Mulberry-Tree. 379

Mum-

Mumy 441
A foolish opinion of it. Ibid.
The Mumy of the Ancients is not to be had. Ibid.
Mucilidge, its use, 194
A Mucilidge for an Inflammation. Ibid.
For the pain in the eyes. Ibid.
Muck, what it is. 450
How to know the best Ibid.
Its vertues. Ibid.
How it may be adulterated. 157
Mustard. 292
The differences. Ibid.
Its vertues. 293
Treacle-Mustard. Ibid.
Where it grows. 294
Myrobolans. 255
How they are to be nourished. 58
Mystum. 136
Mixaries. 380

N.

Naphia Babylonica. 403
Narcotical. 113
Celtick Nard. 286
Sea-Navel. 460
Nep. 315
Nephritick Stone. 240
Nervals. 19
Nettles, their kindes and vertues. 295, 296
Nettle-seed, for what it is good. 56
Nightshade. 345
The species thereof. 346
Nitre its flour. 403
Noli me tangere. 390
Nuts, their several differences and vertues. 386
How to candy them. 542
Nutmeggs. 278
Pine-Nuts. 388
Cypress-Nuts. 789
Wall-Nuts. 387
Fisticle Nuts. 386
Nutrition is a kin to Humectation. 58

O.

Ocre. 398
Odonticks. 19
Odor, what it is. 38
Ill Odours are ungrateful, and have noxious qualities. 212
Odoraments. 212, 213
Oesypus, what it is. 253
The manner how it is made Ibid.
Oinomel. 101--528
Oleum Acopum 59
Ol. Absynthii, or the oyl of Wormwood. 654
Oyl Amigd. dulc. & amar. or, oyl of sweet and bitter Almonds. 667, 668
Ol. Anethi, or oyl of Dyll. 654
Ol. Anisi, or the oyl of Aniseeds. 683
Ol. Balsamum, or the oyl of Balm. 672
Ol. de Caparibus, or the oyl of Capers. 661
Ol. Cartham. or the oyl of Meadow-Saffron. 666
Ol. Cariophylorum, or the oyl of Cloves. 683
Ol. Castoreum, or the oyl of Beaver-stones. 665
Ol. Cerae, or the oyl of Wax. 662
Ol. Chamom. or the oyl of Chamomile. 654
Ol. Cynamoni, or the oyl of Cynamon. 683
Ol. Croci, or the oyl of Saffron. 661
Ol. Cidoniorum, or the oyl Quinces. 658
Ol. Enula, or the oyl of Enulacampane. 656
Ol. Euphorbeum. 662
Ol. Formicarum, or the oyl Ants. 667
Ol. Guaiacum. 675
Ol. Hyperic. comp. simp. or the simple and compound oyl of St. Johns wort. 659
Ol. Irinum, or the oyl of Orris. 649
Ol. Juniperi, or the oyl of Juniper-berries. 676
Ol. Ketrinum, or the oil of Wall-flowers. 649
Ol. de Lateribus, or the oyl of Bricks. 679
Ol. Laurinum, or the oyl of Bays. 672
Ol. Liliorum, or the oyl of Lilies. 652
Ol. Mandrag. or the oyl of Mandrake. 656
Ol. Mastichi. or the oyl of Mastich. 660
Ol. Meliloti, or the oyl of Melilot. 656
Ol. Mellis, or the oyl of Honey. 681
Ol. Menthae, or the oyl of Mint. 653
Ol. Metallorum, or the oyl of Metals. 684
Ol. Moschelinum, or sweet smelling oyl. 663
Ol. Myrrhae, or the oyl of Myrrhe. 676
Ol. Myrtillor. or the oyl of Myrtles. 657
Ol. Myrthinum, or the oyl of Myrtle-berries. Ibid.
Ol. Nucum, or the oyl of Nuts. 669
Ol. Nucis Moschat. or the oyl of Nutmegs. 671, 683

Ol. Omotribes, or the Oyl of ripe Olives. 119
Ol. Omphacinum, or the Oyl of unripe Olives. Ibid.
Ol. Ovorum, or the Oyl of Egs. 119,671
Ol. Persicorum, or Oyl of Peaches, its vertues. 670
Ol. Pigmentorum, or the Oyl of the Oak of Jerusalem. 658
Ol. Petreoli, or the Oyl of Peter. 673
Ol. de Pineis, or the Oyl of Pine-Apples. 671
Ol. Rosatum complet. or the compleat Oyl of Roses. 650
Ol. incompletum Rosatum, or the incompleat Oyl of Roses. 561
Ol. Rosarum simp. or the simple Oyl of Roses. Ibid.
Ol. de Santalis, or the Oyl of Saunders. 656
Ol. de Scorpion simp. comp. or the simple & compound Oyl of Scorpions. 665
Ol. Spicæ, or the Oyl of Spike. 684
Ol. Sulphuris, or the Oyl of Sulphur. 681
Ol. Tamaris, or the Oyl of Tamarisk. 676
Ol. Tartari, or the Oyl of Tartar. 677
Ol. Terebinthina, or the Oyl of Turpentine. 682
Ol. de Verm. or the Oyl of Worms. 664
Ol. de Viperis, or the Oyl of Vipers. 665
Ol. Violarum, or the Oyl of Violets. 648
Ol. Vitriole, or the Oyl of Vitriol. 679
The usual manner of drawing it. 680
Ol. Vulpinum, or the Oyl of Foxes. 666
The best way of preparing it.
Olibanum. 381
Olives. 383
Omphacium, what it is. 119
Omphacy. 222
Opalus. 419
Ophiogenes. 25
Ophthalmicks. 19
Opium, the varieties thereof, and qualities. 386
How it may be adulterated. 158
Opiates, their large denomination. 113
why invented. Ibid.
Their use and matter. 168
An Opiate very cordial. Ibid.
Opiat. Neapolitan, or the Neapolitan Opiate. 628
Opiat. Solomonis, or Solomons Opiate. 622
Opobalsamum. 282
Opoponax. 394
Orabus. 365
Oranges. 373
How to candy their Peels. 543
Orange-Flower-Water. 373
Orange-Flowers. Ibid.
Origanum. 313
Orris, its description, with the varieties thereof. 196
Oxylapathum. 356
Oxymel. 101,325
Its qualities. 101
Its preparation. 102
Oxymel. comp. or the compound Oxymel. 527
Oxymel Scilliticum, or the Oxymel of Squills. 526
Oyl is Aliment and Medicament. 118
The varieties of it. Ibid.
Its Inventor. Ibid.
How to keep Oyls. 120
Oyl is not to be boyled without some other Liquor. Ibid.
How to wash it. 54
Oyls extracted by ascent. 678
By ascent and descent. 119
Oyls were named by the Ancients, Unguents. 120
The proportion of Oyl in the making of Plaisters. 126
Oyntments, what they are. 121
The difference between an Oyntment and Cerate. Ibid.
Their varieties. 122
The four hot and cold Oyntments. 151
A sweet smelling Oyntment 213
An Oyntment for Moth. 702
The Egyptian Oyntment. 704
What quantity of Oyl Oyntments require. 689
In what vessels they ought to be kept. 122
The varieties of Oyntments. Ibid.
White Oyntment. 691
Golden Oyntment. 705
Yellow Oyntment. 707
Crude Oyntment. 87,122
Neapolitan. 708
Oyntment for the eyes. 696
Oyntment for the Itch. Ibid.
Oyntment of Roses. 690

P.

Pain, what it is. 113
Its effects. Ibid.
Palimpissa. 378
Palma Christi. 269
Pandalæa's. 172
Panax. 394
Panthera. 240
Paracelsus degraded for his impiety. 159
Parigorical. 113
Parsly of Macedonia. 337
Pasta Regalis, how it differs from Condites. 170
A Paste to loose flegm. Ibid.
Pastils of Neræus. 635
Peaches. 378
Pears. 371
How to condite them. 541
Pearl. 458,459
Mother of Pearl. Ibid.
Pellitory, its description. 231
Its vertues. 232
Pellitory Spain, its description and vertues. 291
Penicils, what they are, and how to be made. 181
Penicils to allay the pain in the fundament. 181
To cleanse an ulcer. Ibid.
To dry it. Ibid.
Peniroyal, why so called. 312
Penidees, how made. 614
Peppers, their kindes and vertues. 279
Perfumes, their matter. 212
Pessaries, their form. 179
A Pessary to bring down the Tearms. 180
To stay the immoderate flux thereof. Ibid.
Peters wort. 328
Petreolum. 673
Petrooel artificial. 404
Petroseline. 238
Pharmacy, what it is. 1
In what it consists. Ibid.
The knowledge thereof is difficult to attain. Ibid.
How it ought to be esteemed. 2
Its dignity and antiquity drawn from Scripture. Ibid.
Philonum Romanum. 621
Its vertues. Ibid.
Physitians not without due merit called Dii tutelarii, i.e. protecting Deities. 2
They are the sons of God. Ibid.
They were our first Schoolmasters in teaching us to make bread. 49
Their epidemical errour. 110
Phœnigms, what. 202
Pication, how made. 203
For what distempers it is most convenient. Ibid.
Pilewort, its property. 7
Pills, why so called. 114
Why called Catapotia. Ibid.
The form of Pills, to what end. Ibid.
What Pills a shop may be without. 593
The ingrateful gust of Pills. 115
How the composition of Pills may be rightly made. Ibid.
When strong Pills are to be taken. 116
When gentle ones. Ibid.
The dose of Pills. Ibid.
The Verdict of Reason for the suppressing the numberless number of Pills. 593
Pil. de Agarico, or pills of Agarick. 582
Pil. Aggregativæ, or pills of much use. 585
Pil. Aleophanginæ, or Aromatical pills. 587
Pil. de Aloe lota, or of washed Aloes. 577
Pil. de Aromatibus, or of sweet things. 587
Pil. Asaiaret, or Chalagogow pills. Ibid.
Pil. Aur. or golden pills. 581
Pil. Bechicæ albæ, or white Bechical pills. 597
Bechicæ nigræ, or black Bechical pills. 596
Pil. Ben. or blessed Pills. 587
Pil. Coch. or round pills. 583
Pil. de Cynoglosso, or pills of Dogs-tongue. 594
Pil. Eupatoriæ, or pills of Egrimony. 580
Pil. fœtidæ, or strong-sented pills. 590
Pil. Fumariæ, or pills compounded of Fumatory. 586
Pil. Hermodact. major, or the greater pills of Herm. 584
Pil. Hieræ, or pills of Hiera. 587
Pil. de Hydrag. or the Alexit. pills of Quicksilver. 591
Pil. Imp. or the Catholical & Imperial pills. 580
Pil. de lap. Lazuli, or pills of the Azure stone. 586
Pill. Mastichinæ, or pills of Mastich. 578
Pil. Mechoachanæ, or pills of white Jalap. 589
Pil. de Nitro, or pills of Saltpeter. 589
Pil. Ruffi, or Rufus his pestilential pills. 578
Pil. sine quibus, &c. or pills without which I would not be. 581
Pil. de tribus solut. or pills of three solutives. 579
Pil. non solutivis, or pills not solutive. 594
Pil. Stomachicæ, or Stomachical pills. 577
Pimpinel. 325

Pine-nuts. 388
Piniolates. 171
Pignolates. Ibid.
Piſſaphaltos. 404
Piſtaches. 386
Pitch and Roſine, how they differ. 378
The manner of making it. Ibid.
Why it is black. Ibid.
Liquid Cedrian. Ibid.
How to waſh it. 54
Plaiſters. 124
Their compoſition and qualities are various. Ibid.
Two general ſcopes in compounding of Plaiſters. 125
The method that is to be obſerved in the making of plaiſters. 125,126
The quantity of Oyl that is to be allowed to the conſiſtencie of a plaiſter. Ibid.
A plaiſter to ſolidate and roborate the bones. 127
Another to draw ulcers to a Cicatrice. Ibid.
Plantain. 348
Plants, their wonderful and ſtrange nature. 7
The blood of plants. 393
Saccariferous plant. 223
Plums, how to candy. 542
Polychreſtum. 28
Polytriche. 235
Polium, whence it hath its name. 212
Pomanders, how to make them. 213
Pomegranates. 373
Pompholix, what it is. 436
Poplar, the kindes thereof, with its vertues. 342
Poppy, the differences thereof, with the vertues. 348
Powders. 174
Powders that are finely beaten, quickly paſs thorow the body. 133
Cordial powders. 175
How to be ſifted. 81
Powders for quilted caps 209
A powder to make white the teeth. 211
A ſweet ſmelling powder 213
A cordial powder. 177
Mercury powder. 592
A vulnerary powder. 107
Why Medicaments are made into powders. Ibid.
A powder to break wind 174
An Epulotical powder. 107
Damask-powder. 213
A powder to ſuffumigate the brain. 214
Powder of Lead. 62
A powder to ſtay the flux of humors. 214
The frequent uſe of powders in Chirurgery. 107
French Pox their orig. 592
Who brought them firſt into theſe parts. Ibid.
Poyſon attracts poyſon. 27
Much poyſon is taken from Minerals. Ibid.
Compound poyſons diſproved Ibid.
Poyſon ſometimes is generated in mans body. 25
Of what things it is taken. Ibid.
Poyſons ſometimes are Medicaments. 26
Poyſonous ſimples convenient for many diſtempers 25
Primeroſe. 357
Propomates, what they are 99
Prunes. 376
Pſylothers, what. 204
The Pſyloth. of Rondoletius. Ibid.
Another to take off hair. Ib.
Ptiſan, what it is. 164
The Ptiſan of the Ancients. Ibid.
Pulvis Antilyſſus, or a powder againſt the biting of a mad dog. 609
Pulv. Bezoardicus, or the compound powder of Bezoar. 609
Pulv. Diaireos, or the comp. powder of Orris. 612
Pulv. Epuloticus, or a powder to cloſe a wound. 107
Pulv. digeſtivus, or a digeſtive powder. 174
Pulv. lætificans, or a heart-chearing powder. 604
Pulv. Mercurii, or the powder of Mercury. 592
Pulv. Dianiſi, or the comp. powder of Aniſeed. 605
Pul. contra peſtem, or a powder againſt the plague. 608
Pulv. Diaſtomoniæ, or a powder removing obſtructions. 611
Pulmoniacks. 19
Pulverization what it is. 60
Three ſcopes of it. Ibid.
The various manner of it. Ibid.
Pumice-ſtone, how to burn it. 69
Purges, why moſt convenient in form of potions. 164
The doſe of purges. 143
The doſe of a purging potition ſhould not exceed three ounces. 164
Queazie ſtomacks are averſe to purges. 10
Purging Medicines are of two ſorts. 45
When gentle purges are not to be exhibited. 32
When malign Purges are to be uſed. Ibid.
Purges too ſtrong ought to be avoided. 139
What things purge by { *Attraction, Compreſſion, Lubrication* } 15

A TABLE.

A purging Potion to educe choler. 165
To educe phlegm. Ibid.
To purge melancholy. Ibid.
Purslain, its seed and vertues. 242
Putrefaction. 72
Piony, its kindes. 301
Its vertues. Ibid.
How to candy the roots 546
Pyroticks, why so called. 206
How they differ from Vesicatories. Ibid.
Their matter. Ibid.
Manner of making. Ibid.

Q.

THe inexplicable Quality of Aliment. 2
The several Qualities of Medicaments. 11
The first and second Qualities of a Med. Ibid.
The third, or occult Quality, together with its extent. 12
The Qualities of purging Medicaments; whence they proceed, and how they operate. 14
Their several denominations. Ibid.
Quartarius. 137
Quicksilver the monster of Nature. 409
How to kill it. 410
Quid pro quo. 153
Quinces. 374
How to preserve them. 543
Quilted Caps. 209
How they are to be prepared. Ibid.
Their matter. 209

R.

RAms, why so called 453
Rape, the kindes thereof. 308
Raisons, why so called. 385
Rasion. 63
Refrigeration, what. 72
Regal paste. 170
How it differs from an Opiate. Ibid.
Chymical Remedies ought not to be neglected. 51
What Chymical Remedies should be used. Ibid.
Resberries. 380
Restharrow. 302
The differences of it. Ibid.
Its vertues. 303
Retort. 90
When it is to be used in Distillations. Ibid.
Rhabarb. 252
Our common Rhabarb is not Rhapontick. Ibid.
Where the best grows. 253
Extract of Rhabarb. 80
Rhadish. 308
Rhapontick. 335
It is not the greater Centotory. Ibid.
Rhodomel. 102
Rhus. 367
Risagalum. 407
Rob, what it is. 533
Rob of Berberries. Ibid.
Rob of Quinces. 535
Rob of red Currans. 533
Rob of Cornel-berries. 535
Rocket, the differences thereof.
What roots may be gathered at any time of the year. 41
Where they are to be kept. 146
How they are to be cleansed. 55
The greater and lesser opening roots. 150
The way to prepare the five opening roots. 56
Rosemary. 340
Roses. 248
Vinegar of Roses. 72
Rosine, what it is. 377
The varieties thereof. Ibid.
How to wash it. 54
Rosata novella, or a new-invented Opiate. 617
Rue. 322
Rubetæ, what they are. 463
Rusma of the Turks. 205

S.

SAcculus, what it is. 210
A Sacculus for the Cholick. Ibid.
To comfort the heart. Ibid.
For the Lethargie and Apoplexie. Ibid.
Saffron of Mars. 610
Saffron, where the best grows. 251
Sagapenum, what it is. 401
Its vertues. Ibid.
Sage, its vertues. 321
St. Johns wort. 327
Salt. 402
It savours all things. Ibid.
Its vertues. Ibid.
Its flower and spume. 403
Sal. *Alkali.* *Amoniaci.* *Fossilis.* *Gemmeus.* *Indus.* *Lacustris.* *Marinus.* *Nitrum.* *Petræ.* *Phrygius.* 402, 403
Salt, how it must be burned. 68
Saliture. 87
Salvia vitæ. 236
Sampsuchum. 311
Sandarack and Arsnick are near akin. 68, 407
Sandrax. Ibid.
Sandyx. 409
Sapa, what it is. 103, 533
Simple and compound. 104
Sapbyre. 413

Sarcocolla. 403
How it is nouriſhed. 58
Saradrap. 731
Sarcotick the beſt. 129
Sarda, what it is. 415
Sardis. Ibid.
Sarſaperilla, what it is. 289
How it differs from Smilax; with its vertues. Ibid.
Saſſafrax. 287
Satyrium. 306
How to know the beſt. Ibid.
How to candy the roots. 548
Savine, the kindes thereof, with their vertues. 339, 340
Saunders, the varieties thereof, with their qualities. 287
Which is beſt. Ibid.
Saxafrage. 324
Scabious. 362
Scammony plant. 264
How its juyce is to be drawn out. Ibid.
That of Antioch is the beſt. Ibid.
By what ſignatures the beſt may be known. Ibid.
It vertues and correction. Ibid.
Why called Diacridium. 265
Scariola. 243
Scechachul. what it is. 276
Its ſuccidany. Ibid.
Scincus marinus. 467
Scolymus. 333
Scordium. 322
Scorpions, what kinde of animals they are. 467
Many kinds of ſcorpions. 468
Scum or ſpume, how it is to be detracted. 83
Scutum, what it is for. 208
Two deſcriptions of it. Ibid.
Sea-bull. 306
Sea-navel. 460
Sea-bindweed. 269
Sea-colwort. Ibid.
Sea-crabs, their property. 8
Sebeſtens. 380
Section, what it is. 63
Seeds, which ought to be kept in Apothecaries ſhops. 492
Where they are to be placed. 146
What quantity of ſeed is to be taken in the compounding of a Medicament. 144
The ſmall and great hot ſeeds. 150
The ſmall and great cool ſeeds. 241, 242
Sieves, how many are requiſite for an Apothecaries ſhop. 81
Sifting, its uſe, and manner how. 81, 82
Selenites. 420
Senna. 257
Serapine. 401
Sericum muſt not be burned. 61
What it is. 471
Serris. 243
Setwal. 272
Sharp things, why by burning loſe their acrimony. 67
Shop-inſtruments, what they are, and how many they be. 472
Sicilicus. 135
Sidar, how it is made. 77
Sief, what it is. 107
Siliqua, what it is. 135
Silk-worms. 471
Silver, how it's made. 427
'Tis the ſoul and blood of mortals. Ibid.
What ſimples ought to be kept in Apothecaries ſhops. 490, 491
The ancient uſe of ſimples. 6
Sinapiſms, how they are made. 202
How they differ from Veſicatories. Ibid.
Solanum veſicarium. 349
Soldanella. 269
Smaladge. 237, 238
Smaragd. 412
Where the beſt is found. Ibid.
Its vertues. 413
A ſtory of it. Ibid.
Snapdragon 319
Sopor, what it is. 34
Sorb-apples. 375
Sorrel. 353
Soul called ſalt of the body. 88
Sowthiſtle. 243
Sowre Dock. 556
Spaniſh ſpurge. 319
Spaniſh flyes 469
Sparadraps. 127
Sparrows brains excite to venery, or carnal copulation. 66
Spatula's, why ſo called. 482
Speedwell. 319
Spec. *Antilyſſos.* 609
Aromat. Roſat. 603
Bezoardicus. 608
Diacalaminthes. 607
Diacinamomum 606
Diaireos ſimp. 612
Diambræ. 601
Diamarg. frig. 599
Diamoſchi. 601
Dianiſi. 605
Dianthos. Ibid.
Diarrhodon Abbatis. 603
Diapenidii. 613

A TABLE.

Spec. { Diatraganth frigid. Ibid. / De Gemmis. 600 / Lætificans. 604 / Lithontripticon. 606 / Triasantal. 602

Sperage. 239
Sperma ceti, what it is. 404
Spica Celtica. 282
Spikenard. 285
Spignel. 336
Splenicks. 19
Spodium is but of one sort. 434
The Arabian is fictitious. 435
How it is made. Ibid.
The Grecian, where and how made. Ibid.
Sponges, their differences. 424
The efficient cause thereof. 84
Stones found in sponges. 424
Spurge olive, its vertues. 267
Spurge flax, its vertues. 268
Spanish spurge. 319
Squama eris, what it is. 429
Squinant. 284
Squills. 305
How to be prepared. 71
Stact, what it is. 386
Steel, what it is. 431
Why so called. Ibid.
How to wash it, and prepare it. 53
The Chymical preparation of it. Ibid.
Stibium flour not to be neglected or despised. 432
Stincus marinus, what it is, and what kinde of animal. 467
Stœchados. 320
Stomachicks. 19
Stones, how to be burnt. 68
Stone-crop. 324
Storax, what it is. 386
From whence the best comes. Ibid.
A story worth taking notice of. 13
A story of a Spaniard that hated fish. Ibid.
A story of a girl fed with poyson. 25
A story of a country-fellow that found out an herb that drew blood. 46
A story of Galen's worth: a serious observation. 129
Stramonium. 346
Strawberry-bush. 360
Sublimation. 92
Sublimate, what it is. 737
Sublingues, how made. 173
What substitutes ought not to be allowed of. 133
Succidaneous Medicaments ought not to be thrust into a Composition without a Doctors advice. 107
Succory, and other succaraceous plants. 243, 244
Sufful. 107
Suffumigations, their differences. 213
A suffumigation to preserve health. 214
For what affections they are convenient. Ibid.
To roborate and dry the brain. Ibid.
A suffumigation to stay the flux of humors from distilling to the lungs. Ibid.
To corroborate the heart. Ibid.
To provoke the tearms. 215
A suffumigation for the Pox. Ibid.
Sugar-plant. 223
Sugar that is red. Ibid.
How it is made white. 224
How sugar-candy is made. Ibid.
Its vertues and qualities. Ibid.
Sugar of roses. 537
Sumach. 367
Suppositories, their use and form. 181
Their basis. Ibid.
A suppository for the worms. 182
Syncomestum. 201
Syrup, what it is. 98
Its matter. 98, 99
The etymologie of the name Ibid.
Its difference from a Julep and Apozeme. Ibid.
Syrupus Absynthii, or the syrup of Wormwood. 519
Syr. Acetosæ simp. or the simple syrrup of sorrel. 511
Syr. of the juyce of sorrel. 510
Syr. de Agrest. or the syrup of Grapes. 513
Syr. Alexandrin. or the Alexandrian syrup. 167
Syr. Altheæ, or the syrup of Marsh-mallows. 506
Syr. Arthemisiæ, or syrup of Mugwort. 522
Syr. e succo Borag. or syrup of the juyce of Borage. 510
Syr. e succo Buglossæ, or the syrup of the juyce of Bugloss. Ibid.
Syr. Dynarii, &c. or the Byzantian syrup simple & compound. 512
Syr. Capiller. vener. com. or the common syrup of Maiden-

Maidenhair. 504
Syr. capil. vener. Montpelienſis; or, the ſyrup of Montpelier *Maidenhair.* 505
Syr. de Cichoreo comp. or, the compound ſyrup of *Succory.* 507
De Cichoreo ſimp. or the ſimple ſyrup of *Succory.* 508
Syr. Citoniorum ſimp. or the ſimple ſyrup of *Quinces.* 515
Syr. Endiviæ ſimp. or the ſimple ſyrup of *Endive.* 508
Syr. exhilarans, or the heart-chearing ſyrup. 524
Syr. flor. Perſicorum, or the ſyrup of *Peach-flowers.* 500
Why it is not made of many infuſions. 501
Syr. Fumariæ ſimp. or the ſimple ſyrup of *Fumatory.* 508
De Fumaria comp. or the compound ſyrup of *Fumatory.* 509
Syr. Granatorum, or the ſyrup of *Pomegranates.* 514
Syr. Glycirrhizæ, or the ſyrup of *Licoriſh.* 520
Syr. de Eluropo, or the ſyrup of *Catsfoot.* 501
Syr. de Hyſſopæ, or the ſyrup of *Hyſſop.* 522
Syr. Jujubarum, or the ſyrup of *Jujubees.* 521
Syr. Limonum, or the ſyrup of *Lemons.* 501
Syr. de Lupulo, or the ſyrup of *Hops.* 734
Syr. de Moris comp. & ſimp. the compound and ſimple ſyrup of *Mulberries.* 512,513
Syr. de Mentha ſimp. & comp. or the compound and ſimple ſyrup of *Mint.* 417
Syr. Myrthinus comp. or the compound ſyrup of *Myrtle-berries.* 516
Syr. de Nymphæa, or the ſyrup of *Water-lilies.* 504
What part of the flowers are to be taken for it. Ibid.
Syr. de Papaver ſimp. or the ſimple ſyrup of *Poppies.* 502
Syr. Papaver errat. or the ſyrup of *red Poppies.* 503
Why in this ſyrup many infuſions are required. 504
Syr. de Pomis ſimp. or the ſimple ſyrup of *Apples.* 515
Syr. de quinque Radicibus, or the ſyrup of the *five opening roots.* 505
Syr. de duabus Radicib. or of *two roots.* Ibid.
Syr. Regius, or the *Julep of Roſes.* 519
Syr. Ribes & Berberries, or the ſyrup of *red Currans and Berberries.* 513
Syr. Reſumptivus. 523
Syr. Roſatus, or the *Julep of Roſes.* 167
Syr. Roſatus Rondel. or the ſyrup of *Roſes of* Rondeletius. Ibid.
Syr. Roſarum Palidarum, or the ſyrup of *Damask-roſes* 501
Syr. Roſarium ſiccarum, or the ſyrup of *dried Roſes.* 518
Syr. Regis Sabor. or *King* Sabor's ſyrup. 516
Syr. ſimplex, or ſimple ſyrup. 166
Syr. de Stœchade, or ſyrup of *French Lavender.* 520
Syr. de Tuſilagine, or the ſyrup of *Colisfoot.* 499
Syr. Violatus, or the ſyrup of *Violets.* 498
The difference between Violatus *and* Violaceus. Ibid.

T.

Tablets, how much Sugar they require to their conſiſtencie. 173
Purging Tablets, how much they require. Ibid.
Tablets to roborate. 174
Tables of Marble. 489
Taccamahacca. 383
How it may be adulterated. 158
Talkum, what it is. 422
Tamarinds. 254
Tamaris. 369
Taraxacum. 243
Tartar, what it is. 392
Its Oyl. Ibid.
How to be burnt. 68
Taſtes, their ſeveral differences. 36
Sharp taſte, what it is. Ibid.
Sowre, bitter, auſtere, ſweet, &c. 37,38
Sweet taſtes are grateful. Ibid.
Tears of a Hart. 454
Tela Galterii. 127
Temperaments, how many there be. 33
Tenthrio. 312
Terra Lemnia. 396
How to know it to be good. Ibid.

Ter. { Mellitæa. Samia. Chia. Selinusia. Cimolia. 397, Eretria. 398 Rubrica. Ochra. Alana. Tripolis. }

Theamides. 418
Therion *signifies all poysonous animals.* 464
Thymelæa. 268
Thyme, its description and vertues. 310
Tincture of Roses. 72
Tincture, what it is. 59
Tin, how made. 427
Topaz stone. 416
Tormentil. 301
Tortoises, what they are. 462
Transmarina. 230
Treacle-Mustard. 293
Treacle, why so called. 464
Treacle-water, of what it is compounded. 733
Triapharmacum, what it is. 58
Triasantalum. 602
Triture, what it is. 60
What things require much triture. Ibid.
What moderate, what little. 62
Troches, what they are under a general notion. 116
Their matter. Ibid.
Such as are Roborative, Purgative and Alterative. 117
Trochisci de Agarico, or the troches of Agarick. 575
Troch. albi Rhasis, *or* Rhasis *his white troches.* 643
Troch. Alexiterii, or troches against infection. 641
Troch. Alhandal. or troches of Coloquintida. 575
Troch. de Antispodio, or troches of burnt Ivory. 637
Troch. de Berberis, or troches of Berberries. 638
Troch. de Caphura, or the troches of Camphor. 635
Troch. de Caparibus, or the troches of Capers. 639
Troch. de Carabe, or the troches of Amber. 637
Troch. Cypheos, or Aromatical troches. 633
Troch. Galliæ Moschatæ, or troches compounded of Aloes wood. 634
Troch. Aliptæ Moschatæ, or the odoriferous troches of Musk. Ibid.
Troch. Diarrhodon, or the Aromatical troches of Roses. 636
Troch. Gordonii, *or Dr.* Gordonius *his troches.* 639
Troch. ad Gonorrhæam, or troches for the flux of Sperm. 642
Troch. Hedicroi, or sweet smelling troches. 631
Troch. Hysterici, or Hysterical troches. 641
Troch. Myrrhæ, or troches of Myrrhe. 640
Troch. Narcotici Fernel. *or the stupefying troches of* Fernelius. 643
Troch. de Rhabarbero, or the troches of Rhabarb. 574
Troch. Scillitici Androm. *or the troch of Squills prescribed by* Andromachus. 632
Troch. de Spodio cum semine, or the troches of Spodium with Sorrel-seed. 638
Troch. de Viperis, or the troches of Vipers. 630
Tryphera solutiva. 563
Turchesa. 419
Turbith, its description. 263
Various opinions about it. Ibid.
How to know the best. Ibid.
How to prepare it. 56
Turpentine. 379
Masculine, *Feminine.* 380
Tutty, what it is. 436
How to prepare it. Ibid.
Its vertues. Ibid.
How to wash it. 53

V.

Valerian. 333
Vaporary, its constitution and use. 187
A Vaporary to bring down the Tearms, and move the Hemorrhoids. 187
To stay them both. 188
To allay the pain thereof. Ibid.
Vegetables which by a certain Antinomasia, are to be preferred before others. 149
Venice-Treacle. 626
Verdigrease, what it is. 429
Its species and qualities. 430
How to burn it. 69
Vermilago. 332
Vermilion. 408
Vesicatory, how it differs from a Sinapism. 205
Its utility. Ibid.
The Country-mans Vesicatory. Ibid.
Vineger. 221

Its

Its qualities. 101,221
Which is best. Ibid.
Vineger of Roses, how to be made. 72
Vineger of Squills. Ibid.
Vine. 219
Vinous Hydromel, how made. 71
Vinum Hippocraticum, what it is. 56
Vinum ex Herbis. 77
Vipers, what they are. 764
Why so called. Ibid.
Their differences. Ibid.
Why their heads and tails in their preparation must be cut off. 465
How to burn them. 67
The manner of preparing their Axungia. 466
When they are to be taken for the composition of Treacle. Ibid.
The powder of their skins will cause hair to grow. 16
Virgins milk, why so called. 197
How it is made. Ibid.
Its vertues. Ibid.
Vitriol. 399
Which may be called the best. Ibid.
How to burn it. 68
How to burn Red Vitriol. 69
Ulcers in the eyes are cured by washed Cadmia. 53
Unguent, what it is. 121
The difference of an Unguent and Cerate. Ibid.
Their varieties. 122
What quantity of Oyl Unguents require. 121
In what vessels they must be kept. Ibid.
The four hot and cold Unguents, what they are. 151
A sweet smelling Ung. 213
Unguentum ad Achorus vulgo Tineam; or, an Unguent for Moths, &c. 702
Unguentum Adjutorium, or the Adjutory Unguent. 706
Ung. Egyptiacum, or the Egyptian Oyntment. 704
Ung. Crudum, or the Crude Oyntment. 87, 122
Ung. Agrippæ, or the Oyntment of the juyce of wild simples. 704
Ung. Apostolorum, or the Oyntment of the Apostles. 703
Ung. album Rhasis, *or* Rhasis *white Oyntment.* 705
Ung. Altheæ, or the Oyntment of Marshmallows. 698
Ung. Aregon, or the helping Oyntment. 705
Ung. Aureum, or the Golden Oyntment. 700
Ung. Basilicum, or the Princely Oyntment. 699
Ung. de Bolo, or the Oyntment of Bole. 693
Ung. Caphuratum, or an Oyntment with Camphor. 697
Ung. Citrinum, or the Oyntment of Citrons. 707
Ung. de Siccativum rubrum, or the red drying Oyntment. 694
Ung. Diapompholigos, or the Oyntment of Pompholix. 695
Ung. Enulatum cum Merc. or the Oyntment of Enulacampane with Mercury 701
Ung. Fuscum, or the Agglutiating Oyntment. Ibid.
Ung. de Lythargyro, or the Oyntment of Litharidge. 692
Ung. magnum, or the eximious Oyntment. 704
Ung. Martiatum, or Martiatons Unguent. 706
Ung. Melleum, or the honey Oyntment. 704
Ung. de Minio, or the Oyntment of Red-lead. 697
Ung. Mundificativum expert. or the Experienced cleansing Oyntment. 699
Ung. Neapolitanum, or an Oyntment for the Venerean disease. 709
Ung. nutritum, or the nourished Oyntment. 692
Ung. Ophthalmicum, or an Oyntment for the eyes. 696
Ung. Populeon, or the Oyntment of Poplar. 691
Ung. ad Pruritem scabiosem, or an Oyntment for the Itch. 696
Ung. Resumptivum, or the Resumptive Oyntment. 697
Ung. Rosatum, or the Oyntment of Roses. 690
Ung. Sanctum, or a Sacred Oyntment. 3
Ung. Spleniticum, or an Oyntment for the Spleen. 708
Ung. Stipticum, or the Astringent Oyntment. 694
Ung. Tetrapharmacum, or an Oyntment of four things. 699
Ung. Triapharmacum, or an Oyntment of three similar things. 692
Ung. ad Vermis, or an Oyntment for the Worms. 702

Unicorn and his horn. 456
Its description and vertues. Ibid.
Unions, how they differ from Margarites. 459
Whence they have their name. 458
Vomits, which should especially be made choice of. 45,46
Ureticks, what they are. 29
Urna, what it is. 137
Ustion, what it is. 67
The various modes thereof. Ibid.
When it may be said to be finished. 68
Why by Ustion sharp Medicaments lose their acrimony. 67
It is cousin german to Assation. 69
Utensils for an Apothecaries shop, what they are. 472
A catalogue thereof. 473, &c.
Vulnerary powder. 107

W.

All-flower. 309
Wall-nuts. 387
Wall-wort. 261
Water and fire the principles of life. 217
What the soul of Water is. 218
How the goodness of Water may be known. Ibid.
The differences thereof. Ibid.
Which may be called the best. Ibid.
What the levity of Water is. 218
The quantity of Water to be put in a Decoction. 162
The quantity of Water to be used for a dose. Ibid.
Why Cistern-waters are unwholesome. 218
Why running-Water is the best. 99
Waters after Distillation are to be insolated. 90
A Water of the extinction of Gold. 70
A Water for a Gonorrhœa. 735
A Water of Community. 736
A Water for the redness of the eyes. Ibid.
A Water against the Stone. 735
Alome-Water. 77,198
Cinamon-Water. 734
Cephalical Waters, how many they are. 151
Cordial Waters, what they be. 150
Claret-Water. 734
Treacle-Water. 733
Water-flag. 273
Water-lilies. 249
The juyce thereof, what vertue it hath. 7
Wax, which is best. 393
Virgins Wax. Ibid.
Its washing and making white. Ibid.
Weights, their several denominations. 134
Their Arabian names. 135
What things are diligently to be weighed. 142,143
Widow-wail. 267
Willow white. 340
Windeflower. 309
Wine, who first mixed water with it. 220
Wine, its utility, with the differences thereof. 219, 220
It excites the spirits. Ibid.
Wine of Herbs. 77
Hippocrates Wine. 56
Winter-Cherries. 349
An extreme cold Winter. 145
Woodbind. 338
Wolfs liver, how it is to be prepared. 54
How to be washed. Ibid.
Wolfs intestines, their preparation. Ibid.
Wolfs grease, how made. 453
Words, their force, according to the Hebrews. 21
Worms generated of salt and snow. 469
Silk-worms, what kinde of animals they are. 471
Earth-worms their vertue. 469
Wormwood, its species and vertues. 316
Roman Wormwood. Ibid.

X.

Antonian. 316
Xnes. 377
Xylobalsamum 282
Xylocolla. 452
Xylon. 362

Y.

Arrow. 368

Z.

Adar. 272
Zadura. Ibid.
Zamarat. 412
Zapeticon. 451
Zea. 366
Zedoaria. 271
Zeduar. 272
Zeopyrum. 366
Zerumbet. 271
How it differs from Ginger. Ibid.
Its vertues. Ibid.
Zinzipha. 381
Zizipha. Ibid.
Zopissa. 378

FINIS.